

This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

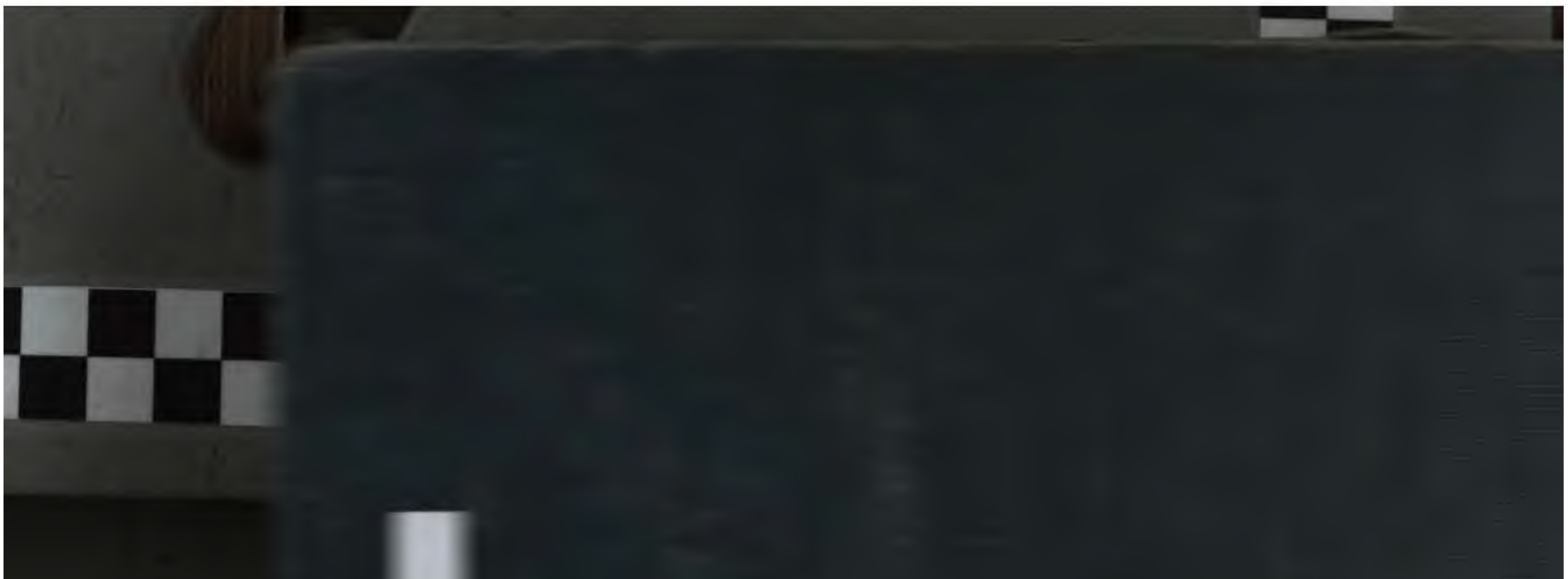
+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

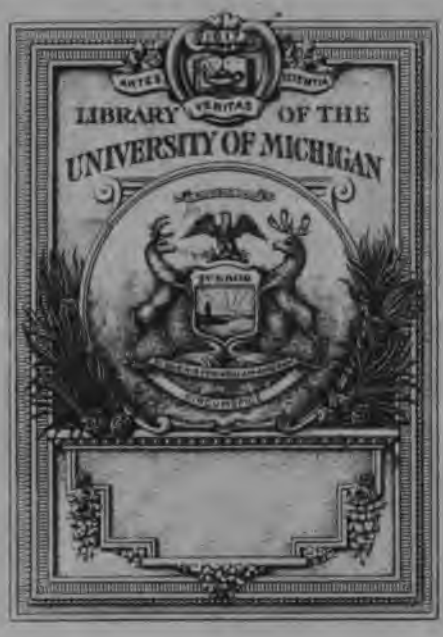
+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`




ARTES
VERITAS
SCIENTIA
LIBRARY OF THE
UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN









GUIDE TO THE STUDY OF MEDIEVAL HISTORY

FOR STUDENTS, TEACHERS, AND LIBRARIES

BY

LOUIS JOHN PAETOW, PH.D.

ASSOCIATE PROFESSOR OF MEDIEVAL HISTORY
IN THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA PRESS
BERKELEY
1917





UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA SYLLABUS SERIES No. 90

Copyrighted, 1917, by
L. J. PAETOW

PREFACE

Ever since the fall of 1914 the stream of historical writing on the middle ages has become thinner and thinner, so that today it is comparatively easy to keep abreast with the literature on the subject due to the phenomenal decrease of new contributions by European scholars. This sudden lull, preceded by a period of almost feverish activity in book-making, is a peculiarly propitious time for the making of inventories of the wealth of historical literature which has been produced in the century since the close of the Napoleonic wars. Such a task for medieval history is attempted in this *Guide*.

The book has grown out of mimeographed syllabi prepared for two courses offered in the University of California, a general course in medieval history designed especially for juniors, and an advanced course in medieval culture for seniors and graduate students. These two syllabi have furnished the bases for parts II and III of this *Guide*. Part I, containing the most important general books useful in a study of medieval history, has been added in order to make the manual as complete and comprehensive as is possible within its limits. These general books are referred to constantly in parts II and III by cross references to the black-faced numbers by which they are designated. The table of contents furnishes an analysis of the general books in part I.

Part II is divided into thirty-five sections and part III into twenty-eight sections. The titles and Roman numbers of these sections are indicated by means of analytical page headings. A section comprises a well-defined subject which represents approximately one week's work in the courses mentioned above. Each section is divided into three parts: A, Outline; B, Special Recommendations for Reading; and C, Bibliography. "A," the Outline, aims to present the subject matter of the section in an orderly fashion, including the principal names and dates which readers will encounter in the books which are listed, and thus dispenses with the need of a text book. Under 'B,' Special Recommendations for Reading, are indicated such books and articles as are likely to appeal to undergraduates in college who have only a limited amount of time to give to the subject. The references are made as specific as possible and are graded and classified to suit various library conditions, individual tastes, and special requirements. Care has been taken to indicate, wherever possible, the original sources which are easily accessible and translated into English. "C," the



Preface

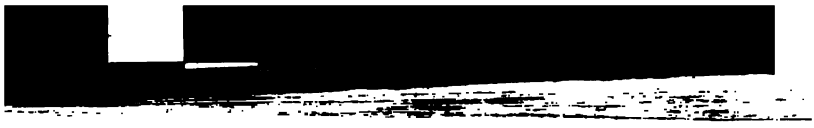
Bibliography, presents a classified list of the most important special books and articles which will guide students in making reports and in preparing papers, but which is particularly designed for mature readers and for investigators who desire a survey of the most important literature in the fields in which they are interested. Ordinarily the literature on a given subject is thus divided under "B," Special Recommendations for Reading, and "C," Bibliography, and should be sought for under both headings. At the end of each section are listed the special bibliographies which must be consulted by those who wish to pursue the subject to its ultimate limits.

While the mimeographed syllabi mentioned above were designed for only certain grades of college students, this printed *Guide* has been modified and augmented so as to appeal to all classes of students and readers who have advanced beyond the textbook stage and who have access to good libraries. It is hoped that teachers will find it useful and that librarians will give it a place among their books of reference. The task of selection, which is always difficult, has been rendered peculiarly delicate by the plan to make the book appeal to so wide a circle of readers. The present resources and the future needs of the University of California Library have been made the basis of selection. In this *Guide* there are listed all books, valuable for a study of medieval history, which now are in this library, and in addition, all others on this subject, which, in the opinion of the author, should be acquired by the library in the near future. It is hoped that this basis of selection will be considered as practical and as representative as any which might have been adopted to suit conditions in America.

The difficulty of choosing from the mass of literature in the various modern European languages has been met by selecting all the best material in English, French, and German, and by making a more limited selection from books in Italian and Spanish. Except in rare instances, all the other modern European languages have been neglected.

English history is not treated fully because in America the subject is usually taught in separate courses and because we have such admirable bibliographical guidance for the medieval period in the second edition of C. Gross, *The sources and literature of English history.*

In a book of this kind there is not much space for commentary and criticism of individual works. Confronted by the great difficulty of evaluating such a huge amount of literature, one is sorely tempted to give way to fear and to modesty by grouping books



PREFACE

phabetically in long unclassified lists. But this way out of the fficulty has been avoided because the average reader dislikes to ıoose altogether for himself, or at least he is curious to know ıother's choice before he makes his own. Critical notes have ɔen inserted here and there, but the main task of criticism is vealed in the selection itself and in the order in which the books ıd articles are listed. Throughout the work classification has been ade as minute as possible and with rare exceptions, as in the case ' text books on pages 41–44, under each heading the books which 'e considered the most important are listed first. On the whole, ɔoks written in English are probably judged a little more leniently ıan those in foreign languages, because in all doubtful cases the nglish books were given the benefit of the doubt. The occasional lvantage of the alphabetical arrangement of books is not entirely st by this system of grouping because it is in large measure ıpplied by the index.

The index contains in one alphabet authors, editors, translators ' medieval books, titles of large collections, and subjects on which .ere is special literature. All articles and papers, as well as ɔoks, are included. The blackfaced figures refer to numbers in ırt I; the light-faced figures to pages in parts II and III. Reference made to the place where the title of a work is given in full. the reader wants complete information concerning the title of a ork which he finds mentioned in abbreviated form he should turn the index which indicates the place where he will find the ɜired details. Librarians will find that the information given about ɔoks is sufficient to locate them readily in the trade catalogues.

Again and again the author has been tempted to submit the anuscript to his friends who are specialists in this field of history, ıowing full well how much the book would be benefitted by their iticism; but sore experience in bibliographical work has convinced m that it would not be fair to impose even portions of this sk upon his friends. Thus he decided to be content with what- ·er others had prepared for him in the form of printed books ıd syllabi and to do alone as much as his time, strength, patience, ıd the facilities at his command permitted. Perhaps this will duce those whom he spared and others to be all the more willing point out mistakes and omissions and to offer suggestions for ıprovement.

L. J. PAETOW.

Berkeley, California,
October 17, 1917.



CONTENTS

PART I
GENERAL BOOKS

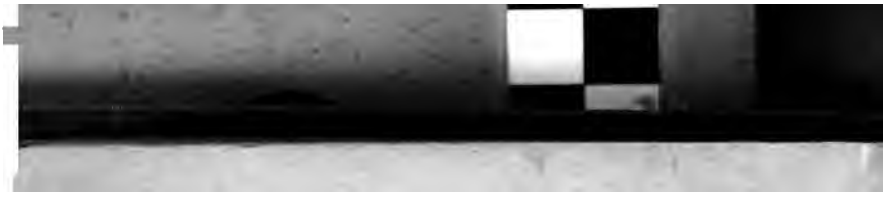
CHAPTER I
BIBLIOGRAPHICAL WORKS

PAGE

§1. Bibliographies of Bibliographies 1
§2. General Bibliographies: Catalogues of Large Libraries and Archives 1
§3. Bibliographies of Periodical Literature 3
§4. General Historical Bibliographies 3
§5. General Bibliographies of the Middle Ages 4
§6. Bibliographies of Various Countries 5
(*a*) France 5
(*b*) Germany and Austria 6
(*c*) England 7
(*d*) Italy 7
(*e*) Spain 7
(*f*) Switzerland 8
(*g*) Belgium and Netherlands 8
(*h*) Russia 8
(*i*) Poland and Bohemia 8
(*j*) Scandinavia 8
§7. Bibliographies of Various Subjects 8
(*a*) Church 8
(*b*) Philosophy 9
(*c*) Education 9
(*d*) Law and Politics 10
(*e*) War 10
(*f*) Jews 10

CHAPTER II
BOOKS OF REFERENCE

§1. Miscellaneous Books of Reference 11
(*a*) Guide to Reference Books 11
(*b*) Historical Method 11



Contents

PAGE

(c) Chronological and Tabular Aids ... 11
(d) Guides to Historical Fiction ... 12
(e) Words and Expressions Famous in History ... 12
(f) Guides to the Learned World ... 13
(g) Dictionary of Names ... 13
(h) Book Reviews ... 13
§2. Biographical Dictionaries ... 13
§3. Encyclopaedias ... 14
(a) General Encyclopaedias ... 14
(b) History of the Church and Religion ... 16
(c) Political Economy ... 17
(d) Education ... 17
(e) Jews ... 17
(f) Islam ... 18
§4. Atlases and Other Geographical Aids ... 18
(a) General Historical Atlases ... 18
(b) Atlases for Church History ... 18
(c) Atlas for the History of Medieval France ... 19
(d) Dictionaries of Geographical Names ... 19
(e) Historical Geographies ... 19
§5. Historical Periodicals ... 20
(a) General Historical Periodicals ... 20
(b) Periodicals Devoted Especially to Medieval History ... 22
(c) History of Culture and Literature ... 22
(d) Byzantine Empire ... 23
(e) Church History ... 23
(f) History of Philosophy ... 23
(g) History of Education ... 23
(h) History of Law ... 23
(i) Periodicals for Teachers of History ... 24
§6. Pictorial Works ... 24
§7. Guides to Learned Societies ... 26

Chapter III

SOME AUXILIARIES TO THE STUDY OF MEDIEVAL HISTORY

§. Latin Palaeography ... 27
(a) Handbooks ... 27
(b) Abbreviations ... 28
(c) Facsimiles ... 29
§2. Diplomatics and Sphragistics ... 29

Contents

PAGE

§3. Chronology 31
§4. Genealogy 32
§5. Heraldry 33
§6. Numismatics 34
§7. Archaeology 34
§8. Philology 35

CHAPTER IV

GENERAL MODERN HISTORICAL WORKS

§1. Universal Histories 36
§2. Medieval and Modern History 37
§3. Medieval History 39
(a) Standard General Surveys 39
(b) Large Sections of the Middle Ages 39
(c) Impressionistic Surveys of the Middle Ages 40
(d) Recent Foreign Text Books 40
(e) Selections from Modern Historians 41
(f) The Mediterranean 41
§4. Text Books of Medieval History in English 41
§5. Source Books: Short Selections from the Sources for Schools. 43
§6. Histories of the Church 44
(a) General Histories of the Church 44
(1) History of Religions 44
(2) Voluminous Standard Accounts 44
(3) Shorter Accounts and Text Books 45
(4) Miscellaneous 46
(b) The Ecclesiastical Hierarchy 47
(c) The Latin Church in the Middle Ages 47
(1) Extensive Standard Accounts 47
(2) Text Books 47
(3) Miscellaneous 48
(d) The Medieval Papacy 48
(e) Church and State in the Middle Ages 49
(f) The Church in France in the Middle Ages 50
(g) The Church in Germany in the Middle Ages 50
(h) The Church in Italy in the Middle Ages 50
(i) The Church in Spain in the Middle Ages 51
(j) History of Church Councils 51
(k) History of Dogma 51
(l) Monasticism 52
(m) Collections on Church History 53

Contents

PAGE

§7. The Medieval Empire in the West 53

§8. France 54

(a) General Histories of France 54

(1) Monumental Works 54

(2) Shorter Accounts 55

(3) One-volume Histories 55

(b) General Histories of Medieval France 56

(c) French Institutions 56

(d) Foreign Relations of France 57

(e) Great Regions of France 57

(f) Miscellaneous 57

§9. Belgium and the Netherlands 58

§10. Germany 59

(a) General Histories of Germany 59

(1) Monumental Works 59

(2) Shorter Accounts and Text Books 59

(b) Germany in the Middle Ages 59

(c) German Institutions 60

(d) Austria 61

(e) Prussia 62

(f) Alsace-Lorraine 62

§11. Italy 62

(a) General Histories of Italy 62

(1) Political History 62

(2) Constitutional History 63

(3) Maritime History 63

(b) Medieval History of Italy 63

(1) Monumental Works 63

(2) Shorter Works and Text Books 64

§12. Spain and Portugal 64

(a) General History of Spain 64

(1) Monumental Works 64

(2) Shorter Works and Text Books 65

(3) Constitutional History of Spain 65

(b) Portugal 66

§13. The Byzantine Empire 66

(a) General Accounts 66

(b) Greece in the Middle Ages 68

(c) Constantinople 68

(d) Miscellaneous 69

Contents

	PAGE
§14. Eastern Europe	69
(*a*) General Accounts	69
(*b*) Russia	69
(*c*) Finland and the Baltic Provinces: Livonia, Esthonia, and Courland	70
(*d*) Poland	71
(*e*) Bohemia and Moravia	71
(*f*) Hungary	72
(*g*) Balkan States	72
(1) General	72
(2) Rumania	72
(3) Bulgaria	72
(4) Serbia and Bosnia	72
§15. Scandinavian Countries	73
(*a*) General	73
(*b*) Denmark	73
(*c*) Norway	73
(*d*) Sweden	74
(*e*) Iceland	74
§16. History of Culture and Civilization	74
(*a*) General Histories of Civilization	74
(*b*) History of Freedom of Thought	75
(*c*) Medieval Civilization in General	76
(*d*) Medieval Intellectual Life in General	76
(*e*) France	77
(*f*) Germany	77
(1) Medieval and Modern Times	77
(2) The Middle Ages	78
(*g*) Histories of Literature	78
(1) General Histories of Literature	78
(2) Ancient Classical Literature and Learning	79
(3) Literary History of the Middle Ages	79
(4) Byzantine Literature	80
(5) France	80
(6) Germany and Austria	80
(7) Italy	81
(8) England	81
(9) Spain and Portugal	81
(10) Russia and Scandinavia	81
(*h*) History of Philosophy and "*Weltanschauung*"	82
(1) Medieval "*Weltanschauung*"	82
(2) General Histories of Philosophy	82

Contents

PAGE

(3) Medieval Philosophy 83
(i) History of Education 83
(1) General Histories of Education 83
(2) History of Medieval Education 84
§17. Jews 84
(a) General History of the Jews 85
(b) Jews in the Middle Ages 85
(1) Social and Economic History 85
(2) Intellectual Life of Medieval Jews 86
(3) Medieval Jewries 86
(4) General Accounts and Miscellanea 87
§18. Collections 87
(a) Important Academies and Learned Societies 88
(1) France and Belgium 88
(2) Germany and Austria 89
(3) England 89
(4) Italy 89
(5) Spain 90
(b) Collections of Historical Essays 90
(c) Commemorative Essays 91
(d) Miscellaneous Collections 92

Chapter V

LARGE COLLECTIONS OF ORIGINAL SOURCES

§1. General Collections 93
§2. Medieval Church 93
(a) General Collections of Ecclesiastical Writings 93
(b) The Papacy 94
(c) Church Councils 95
(d) Lives of Saints 96
(e) Monastic Rules 96
§3. France and Belgium 96
§4. Germany, Austria and Switzerland 99
§5. Italy 100
§6. England 101
§7. Spain and Portugal 102
§8. Byzantine Empire 103
§9. Eastern Europe 103
§10. Northern Europe 104
§11. Education and Learning 104
§12. Jews 104

CONTENTS

PART II

GENERAL HISTORY OF THE MIDDLE AGES

PERIOD I. 500–1100

		PAGE
I.	Introduction	105
II.	The Latin West in the Sixth Century	107
III.	The Greek East in the Sixth Century	113
IV.	Monasticism in the Sixth Century	117
V.	The Rise of the Papacy in the Sixth Century	121
VI.	Expansion of Orthodox Latin Christendom from about 590 to 755	125
VII.	The Rise of the Franks to the Time of Charlemagne.	132
VIII.	Charlemagne	138
IX.	Foes of Western Christendom from the Eighth to the Eleventh Century. From the South. Mohammedans	144
X.	Foes of Western Christendom from the Eighth to the Eleventh Century. From the North. Northmen.	150
XI.	Foes of Western Christendom from the Eighth to the Eleventh Century. From the East. Slavs and Asiatic Nomads	155
XII.	Early Medieval Institutions	159
XIII.	The Beginnings of the Greater Medieval Monarchies.	165
XIV.	Revival of the Medieval Empire in the West in Germany	169
XV.	The Church from the Eighth to the Eleventh Century.	173
XVI.	The Investiture Strife, 1056–1122	179
XVII.	The Byzantine Empire from the Death of Justinian, 565, to the First Crusade, 1095	184
XVIII.	The Culture of the Early Middle Ages	191

PERIOD II. 1100–1500

XIX.	The Beginning of a New Era in the History of Western Europe about 1100	193
XX.	The Normans	194
XXI.	The Crusades	201
XXII.	The Popes and the Hohenstaufen	211

Conditions.....
The Life of the Nobles in the Middle Ages
Culture in the Twelfth and Thirteenth Centu
The Church from about 1300 to about 1450....
France during the Hundred Years' War.....
Germany from the Great Interregnum to the
Half of the Fifteenth Century.....
Italy in the Fourteenth and Fifteenth Centuri
The Remarkable Interest in Ancient Classical
ture, Art, and Archaeology in Italy duri
Fourteenth and Fifteenth Centuries.....
Christian Spain in the Later Middle Ages.....
Eastern and Northern Europe in the Later M
Ages

CONTENTS

PART III

MEDIEVAL CULTURE

PERIOD I. 500–1100

I. The Transition from Ancient to Medieval Culture..... 333
II. Types of the Transition Period, about 400–600..... 339
III. The Transformation of Ancient Rome into a Medieval City 344
IV. The Classical Heritage of the Early Middle Ages..... 348
V. Medieval *"Weltanschauung"*..... 352
VI. The Faith, Morals, and Learning of the Merovingian Franks and of the Visigoths in Spain..... 357
VII. Learning in the British Isles from the Fifth to the Eighth Century 361
VIII. The Age of Charlemagne..... 364
IX. Learning in and about the Imperial Court during the Ninth and Tenth Centuries..... 368
X. Mohammedan Culture in the West..... 373
XI. The Eve of a New Era in Medieval Culture. The Eleventh Century..... 380

PERIOD II. 1100–1300

XII. The Twelfth and Thirteenth Centuries in the History of Culture 384
XIII. The City of Paris in the Middle Ages..... 385
XIV. Growth of a Spirit of Inquiry Based on Logic. Abelard and Bernard of Clairvaux..... 391
XV. The New Aristotle..... 396
XVI. Heresies and the Inquisition..... 399
XVII. Systematization of Medieval Philosophy and Theology. 405
XVIII. Rise and Decline of Interest in the Ancient Classics. 410
XIX. The Ars Dictaminis and the Ars Notaria..... 417
XX. The Study of Roman and Canon Law..... 420
XXI. Rise and Decline of Interest in the Natural Sciences. 426
XXII. Medieval Universities..... 437

Contents

		PAGE
XXIII.	Latin Language and Literature in the Twelfth and Thirteenth Centuries	445
XXIV.	Medieval French Language and Literature	452
XXV.	Historiography and Political Thought	457
XXVI.	Medieval Books and Libraries	462
XXVII.	Medieval Art	470
XXVIII.	The Scholarship of Dante	478
	INDEX	485



PART I
GENERAL BOOKS



CHAPTER I

BIBLIOGRAPHICAL WORKS

§1. Bibliographies of Bibliographies

1. STEIN, H. Manuel de bibliographie générale. Paris, 1898. (Manuels de bibliographie historique, II.)

Historical bibliographies are treated in ch. XIII, 401–466, but many other sections are of interest to the historian. Contains criticisms of some books. Much more useful than PETZHOLDT, but does not supersede it altogether.

2. PETZHOLDT, J. Bibliotheca bibliographica: kritisches Verzeichniss der das Gesammtgebiet der Bibliographie betreffenden Literatur des In- und Auslandes. Leipzig, 1866.

Pages 771–875 deal with history and cartography.

§2. General Bibliographies: Catalogues of Large Libraries and Archives

3. British Museum. Catalogue of printed books in the library of the British Museum. Many parts, but no definite division into volumes. London, 1881–1900. Supplement, 1900–1905.

An alphabetical list according to authors, but also contains subject entries, some of which were sold as separates, e.g., "Dante." Since 1880 there has been published a *Catalogue of new books* which brings the printed catalogue up to date. These new books have been classified every five years in an excellent subject-index by G. K. FORTESCUE, *Subject-index of the modern works added to the library of the British Museum in the years 1881–1900*, 3 vols., London, 1902–03; works added in 1901–05, 1 vol., 1906; works added in 1906–10, 1 vol., 1911. The following aids are valuable: *List of books forming the reference library in the reading room of the British Museum*, 4th edition, 2 vols., London, 1910; and G. W. PORTER, *List of bibliographical works in the reading room of the British Museum*, 2nd edition, revised by G. K. FORTESCUE, London, 1889. For guides to manuscript material in England consult GROSS, no. 36 below. See also H. C. SHELLEY, *The British Museum: its history and treasures*, Boston, 1911; and R. A. PEDDIE, *The British Museum reading room: a handbook for students*, London, 1912.

4. Bibliothèque nationale. Catalogue général des livres imprimés de la Bibliothèque nationale. Paris, 1897ff. Vol. LXIV (to Grosvenor) appeared in 1916.

This is strictly an author catalogue; there are no subject entries. Three series are contemplated, of which this is the first: 1. Authors (including anonymous works whose authors are known); 2. Anonymous works; 3. Publications of a special nature. This catalogue is being supplemented by a *Bulletin mensuel des publications étrangères*, 1874ff.; and a *Bulletin mensuel des récentes publications françaises*, 1882ff. For other French libraries consult the *Catalogue général des bibliothèques publiques de France*, Paris, 1893–1903, which includes the departments of France and the libraries of Paris except the Bibliothèque nationale.

See also the *Catalogue alphabétique des livres imprimés mis à la disposition des lecteurs dans la salle de travail* [of the Bibliothèque nationale], *suivi de la liste des catalogues usuels du département des manuscrits*, Paris, 1910. This list of catalogues of manuscripts [included in the work just cited] is the most complete list of catalogues of manuscript material kept in libraries, such as the *Catalogue général des manuscrits des bibliothèques publiques de France*, Paris, 1885ff. Far more than a mere bibliography is the very extensive *Notices et extraits des manuscrits de la Bibliothèque nationale et autres bibliothèques*, Paris, 1787ff., no. 885 below. The same is true of B. HAURÉAU, *Notices et extraits de quelques manuscrits latins de la Bibliothèque nationale*, 6 vols., Paris, 1890–1893.

For archive material see the exhaustive guide of C. V. LANGLOIS, *Etat des inventaires des Archives nationales au 1er janvier 1914*, Paris, 1914, 80pp. A collection, by no means complete, of inventaries of archives (French and foreign) is now on the shelves of the reading-room of the Archives nationales in Paris, but no list of it has been printed yet. See also nos. 20 and 25 below.

A. FRANKLIN, *Guide des savants, des littérateurs, et des artistes dans les bibliothèques de Paris*, Paris, 1908, is a valuable handbook for students of history working in Paris.

The best guide for American students in France now is *Science and learning in France: with a survey of opportunities for American students in French universities*, published by The Society for American fellowships in French universities, 1917.

5. MAZZATINTI, G. Inventari dei manoscritti delle biblioteche d'Italia. 13 vols. Forli, 1891–1904.

See also G. MAZZATINTI, *Gli archivi della storia d'Italia*, Florence, 1897ff., and no. 41 above. For the Vatican the best guide for American historians is still C. H. HASKINS, "The Vatican archives," in *American historical review*, II (1896), 40–58; but see also G. BROM, *Guide aux archives du Vatican*, 2nd edition, Rome, 1911; C. R. FISH, *Guide to the materials for American history in Roman and other Italian archives*, Washington, D. C., 1911; also E. BEGNI, *The Vatican: its history, its treasures*, New York, 1914.

6. GRAESEL, A. Handbuch der Bibliothekslehre. 2nd edition. Leipzig, 1902.

This standard handbook for librarians contains excellent bibliographies and a wealth of miscellaneous information of importance to all frequenters of libraries and archives. A. GRAESEL, *Führer für Bibliotheksbenutzer*, Leipzig, 1905, 2nd edition, 1913, is a primer for beginners.

The article on "Libraries" in the *Encyclopaedia Britannica* is a valuable guide (with good bibliographies) for all the large libraries of the world, to be supplemented by *Minerva: Jahrbuch der gelehrten Welt*, no. 83 below.

The most comprehensive periodical in this field is the *Centralblatt für Bibliothekswesen*, Leipzig, 1884ff., which no historian can afford to overlook. See also *Bibliothèques, livres et libraires: conferences faites à l'Ecole des Hautes-Etudes Sociales sous le patronage de l'Association des Bibliothècaires français*, Paris, 1912ff.

For the literature on archives and libraries in Germany, see DAHLMANN-WAITZ, no. 28 below, pp. 27–33.

7. SONNENSCHEIN, W. S. The best books. London, 1891. 3rd edition in three parts. Parts I–II, 1910.

§3. Bibliographies of Periodical Literature

8. POOLE'S index to periodical literature. Boston, 1802ff. Continued by Annual library index, N. Y., Publishers' weekly, 1893ff.

9. Reader's guide to periodical literature. White Plains, N. Y., 1905ff.

10. Bibliographie der deutschen Zeitschriftenliteratur. Leipzig, 1896ff. (Internationale Bibliographie der Zeitschriftenliteratur, Abteilung A).

11. Bibliographie der fremdsprachigen Zeitschriftenliteratur. Gautzsch, near Leipzig, 1911ff. (Internationale Bibliographie der Zeitschriftenliteratur, Abteilung B).

In some measure this continues the *Répertoire bibliographique des principales revues françaises*, 1897–99, 3 vols., Paris, 1898–1900.

§4. General Historical Bibliographies

12. LANGLOIS, C. V. Manuel de bibliographie historique. 2 vols., in one. Paris, 1901–04.

Part I, Instruments bibliographiques; part II, Histoire et organisation des études historiques. A work of fundamental value to every advanced student of history.

13. Jahresberichte der Geschichtswissenschaft. Berlin, 1880ff. 36 vols. in 1916.

Annual surveys of historical literature covering the years 1878–1913. Unfortunately the volumes appear two or more years after the close of the year surveyed. The plan of this comprehensive work is explained by J. JASTROW, *Handbuch zu Literaturberichten*, no. 147 below.

14. HERRE, P. Quellenkunde zur Weltgeschichte. Leipzig, 1910.

Includes both sources and modern works. C. K. ADAMS, *A manual of historical literature*, New York, 1882, was an over-ambitious attempt to write short reviews of the "best books" covering the whole field of history and is now out of date. C. M. ANDREWS, J. M. GAMBRILL, and LIDA L. TALL, *A bibliography of history for schools and libraries*, New York, 1910, reprinted with slight alterations, 1911, is a very handy little volume especially useful to teachers in high schools.

15. Check-list of collections relating to European history [by the Committee of Bibliography of the American Historical Association]. Proof edition with locations, March, 1912.

This list, although incomplete and imperfect, is of value to American scholars because it indicates in what American libraries the large sets of historical material for European history can be found.

§5. General Bibliographies of the Middle Ages

16. CHEVALIER, U. Répertoire des sources historiques du moyen âge: bio-bibliographie. 2 vols. Paris, 1877–86. 2nd edition, 1905–07.

17. CHEVALIER, U. Répertoire des sources historiques du moyen âge: topo-bibliographie. 2 vols. Paris, 1894–1903.

These two works cover the period from the beginning of the Christian era to 1500 A.D. They are invaluable guides for the literature on persons, places, and things in the middle ages, but are difficult to use because no attempt has been made to weed out worthless material. Good and bad, old and new, accounts are jumbled together in long alphabetical lists.

18. POTTHAST, A. Bibliotheca historica medii aevi: Wegweiser durch die Geschichtswerke des europäischen Mittelalters bis 1500. Berlin, 1862. Supplement, 1868. 2nd edition, enlarged and improved, 2 vols., Berlin, 1896.

A stupendous undertaking devoted to the classification of the primary sources of medieval history. No modern works are mentioned except those which explain the sources. Only printed annals, chronicles, etc., are noted which were written between 375 and 1500. Printed archive material is rigorously excluded.

Part I contains accurate titles and brief descriptions of all important printed collections of sources; part II is an alphabetical list of medieval authors and their works, with lists of the manuscripts, editions, translations and commentaries on each work. A third edition would be very welcome. For criticisms of the second edition see the review by A. VIDIER, in *Le moyen âge*, IX (1896), 73–83.

19. BRESSLAU, H. "Quellen und Hilfsmittel zur Geschichte der romanischen Völker im Mittelalter." In Grundriss der Romanischen Philologie, no. 305 below, II, part IV (1896), 431–515.

20. OESTERLEY, H. Wegweiser durch die Literatur der Urkundensammlungen. 2 vols. Berlin, 1885–86.

The period covered is 500–1500 A.D. Naturally the work is best for Germany.

§6. Bibliographies of Various Countries

(*a*) FRANCE

21. MOLINIER, A. Les sources de l'histoire de France. Vols. I–VI on middle ages. Paris, 1901–06. (Manuels de bibliographie historique, III.)

This is now the standard bibliography of the history of France devoted primarily to the original sources, but also including modern works which throw light on the sources and their authors. Vol. VI is the index for the middle ages. The first portion of vol. V contains an introduction to the medieval portion of the work. Numbers in italics in the index volume refer to sections in this introduction. See also H. BRESSLAU, no. 19 above.

22. MONOD, G. Bibliographie de l'histoire de France: catalogue méthodique et chronologique des sources et des ouvrages relatifs à l'histoire de France depuis les origines jusqu'en 1789. Paris, 1888.

Until the appearance of MOLINIER, no. 21 above, this was the chief guide for the study of the history of France. Even now it still maintains a proper place beside MOLINIER because MONOD pays particular attention to modern works. A second edition was announced in 1910. For good recent bibliographical notes see no. 508 below.

23. FRANKLIN, A. Les sources de l'histoire de France: notices bibliographiques et analytiques des inventaires et des recueils de documents relatifs à l'histoire de France. Paris, 1877.

24. STEIN, H. Bibliographie générale des cartulaires français ou relatifs à l'histoire de France. Paris, 1907.

25. LANGLOIS, C. V. and STEIN, H. Les archives de l'histoire de France. 3 parts. Paris, 1891–93.

Supplemented by L. MIROT, "Les inventaires d'archives," in *Congrès bibliographique internationale, compte rendu,* II Paris, 1900, pp. 186–210; and the *Rapport au ministre sur l'administration des archives nationales, departmentales,* etc., Paris, 1902. See also the *Annuaire des bibliothèques et des archives,* Paris, 1886ff.

26. LASTEYRIE, R. DE, A. VIDIER, and others. Bibliographie générale des travaux historiques et archéologiques publiés par les sociétés savantes de la France. Paris 1888ff. (Vol VII appeared in 1914.)

27. LELONG, J. Bibliothèque historique de la France, contenant le catalogue des ouvrages, imprimés et manuscrits, qui traitent de

l'histoire de ce royaume ou qui y ont rapport. New edition, by FEVRET DE FONTETTE. 5 vols. Paris, 1768–1778.

Still important for ancient books. Contents analyzed in A. FRANKLIN, no. 23 above, 1–9.

(*b*) GERMANY AND AUSTRIA

28. DAHLMANN-WAITZ. Quellenkunde der deutschen Geschichte. 8th edition, by P. HERRE and many others. Leipzig, 1912. 1st edition by F. C. DAHLMANN, in 1830.

The most perfect of all bibliographies of national history. It covers both the medieval and the modern history of Germany and includes original sources and modern works. The comparative value of books is indicated to some extent by differences of type. It has a model index.

29. WATTENBACH, W. Deutschlands Geschichtsquellen im Mittelalter bis zur Mitte des dreizehnten Jahrhunderts. Berlin, 1858. 6th edition, 2 vols. Berlin, 1893–94. Vol. I in 7th edition by E. DÜMMLER. Stuttgart and Berlin, 1904.

30. LORENZ, O. Deutschlands Geschichtsquellen im Mittelalter seit der Mitte des dreizehnten Jahrhunderts. Berlin, 1870. 3rd edition, 2 vols., 1886–87.

These two model works of WATTENBACH and LORENZ supplement each other. They are not mere bibliographies of the original sources but are rather histories of medieval history writings which concern Germany. WATTENBACH is the best introduction to the *Monumenta Germaniae historica*, no. 978 below.

31. VILDHAUT, H. Handbuch der Quellenkunde zur deutschen Geschichte. 2 vols. Arnsberg, 1898–1900. 2nd, revised edition. Werl, 1906, 1909.

Popularizes and supplements WATTENBACH and LORENZ, nos. 29 and 30 above, and takes cognizance of the literature which appeared since the second edition of POTTHAST, *Wegweiser*, no. 18 above, came out in 1896.

32. LOEWE, V. Bücherkunde der deutschen Geschichte: kritischer Wegweiser durch die neuere deutsche historische Literatur. Berlin, 1903. 4th edition. Altenburg, 1913.

The first edition, *Kritischer Wegweiser durch die neuere deutsche historische Literatur*, Berlin, 1900, appeared under the pseudonym "F. FÖRSTER."

33. JANSEN, M. and SCHMITZ-KALLENBERG, L. Historiographie und Quellen der deutschen Geschichte bis 1500. 2nd edition. Leipzig, 1914. (Grundriss der Geschichtswissenschaft, no. 331 below, I:7.)

A book for students. Similar to VILDHAUT, no. 31 above, but on a much smaller scale.

34. JACOB, K. Quellenkunde der deutschen Geschichte im Mittelalter [to 1400]. Leipzig, 1905. Vol. I, 2nd, enlarged edition, 1913 (Sammlung Göschen, 279).

Practically a short epitome of DAHLMANN-WAITZ, no. **28** above, for schools.

35. CHARMATZ, R. Wegweiser durch die Literatur der österreichischen Geschichte. Stuttgart, 1913.

(*c*) ENGLAND

36. GROSS, C. The sources and literature of English history from the earliest times to about 1485. New York and London, 1900. 2nd edition, revised and enlarged, 1915.

No other bibliographical tool for the history of medieval England deserves mention beside the second edition of this fine achievement of American scholarship. When CHARLES GROSS died in 1909 he was Professor of History in Harvard University.

(*d*) ITALY

37. CIPOLLA, C. Pubblicazioni sulla storia medioevale italiana. Venice, 1914.

38. CALVI, E. Biblioteca de bibliografia storica italiana. Rome, 1903. Supplement, 1907.

39. LOZZI, C. Bibliotheca istorica della antica e nuova Italia, saggio di bibliografia analitico, comparato e critico. 2 vols. Imola, 1886.

40. CAPASSO, B. Le fonti della storia delle provincie Napolitane dal 568 al 1500. Re-edited by E. O. MASTRJANI. Naples, 1902.

41. Quellen und Forschungen aus italienischen Archiven und Bibliotheken. Issued by Preussisches historisches Institut in Rome. Rome, 1898ff.

Contains a yearly survey of new books on Italian history. See also H. BRESSLAU, no. **19** above.

(*e*) SPAIN

42. ALTAMIRA, R. Historia de España, no. **628** below, vol. IV (1914), 587–672.

This is a short bibliographical guide to the literature on Spanish history. See also BRESSLAU, no. **19** above, pp. 450, 503–511. R. ALTAMIRA, *La enseñanza de la historia*, 2nd edition, Madrid, 1895, contains bibliographical matter of importance. For a description of the rich manuscript collections of Spain consult R. BEER, "Handschriftenschätze Spaniens," in *Sitzungsberichte* of the Vienna Academy, 1891, 124ff. M. MENÉNDEZ Y PELAYO was assigned the task of writing a bibliography of the history of Spain for the *Historia general de España*, no. **622** below, but the book has not appeared.

(*f*) SWITZERLAND

43. BARTH, H. Bibliographie der Schweizer Geschichte, enthaltend die selbständig erschienenen Druckwerke zur Geschichte der Schweiz. Vols. I and II, 1914–15. (Quellen zur Schweizer Geschichte. Neue Folge, IV Abtlg., Handbücher.)

44. BURCKHARDT, F. Bibliographie der Schweizer Geschichte. Jahrgang, 1913. Bern, 1915. (Beilage zu Bd. 12, N. F. des Anzeigers für Schweizer Geschichte.)

(*g*) BELGIUM AND NETHERLANDS

45. PIRENNE, H. Bibliographie de l'histoire de Belgique: catalogue méthodique et chronologique des sources et des ouvrages principaux relatifs à l'histoire de tous les Pays-Bas jusqu'en 1598 et à l'histoire de Belgique jusqu'en 1830. Ghent, 1893. 2nd edition, Brussels, 1902.

(*h*) RUSSIA

46. BESTUSCHEW, K. Quellen und Literatur zur russischen Geschichte von den ältesten Zeiten bis 1825. Translated into German by T. SCHIEMANN. Mitau, 1876.

For recent literature see RAMBAUD, no. 682 below, and R. J. KERNER, *The foundations of Slavic bibliography*, University of Chicago Press, 1916, 39 pp. R. J. KERNER will publish in the fall of 1917, *Selected bibliography of Slavic Europe, in western European languages, comprising history, language, and literature*, Harvard University Press.

(*i*) POLAND AND BOHEMIA

47. FINKEL, L. Bibliografia historyj polskiej. 3 vols., in 7 parts. Cracow, 1891–1906.

For Bohemia, see C. ZIRBT. *Bibliografie ceské historie*, 4 vols., Prague, 1900–09.

(*j*) SCANDINAVIA

48. SETTERWALL, K. Svensk historisk bibliografi, 1875–1900. Stockholm, 1907.

Supplemented by a yearly survey in a Supplement to the *Historisk Tidskrift*.

§7. Bibliographies of Various Subjects

(*a*) CHURCH

49. BRATKE, E. Wegweiser zur Quellen- und Literaturkunde der Kirchengeschichte: eine Anleitung zur planmässigen Auffindung der literarischen und monumentalen Quellen der Kirchengeschichte und ihrer Bearbeitungen. Gotha, 1890.

See the unfavorable review of it by C. MIRBT in *Historische Zeitschrift*, LXV (1890), 117–120.

50. SMEDT, C. DE. Introductio generalis ad historiam ecclesiasticam critice tractandam. Ghent, 1876.

Still a serviceable elementary bibliography of ecclesiastical history. J. A. FISCHER, *A select bibliography of church history*, Boston, 1885, is insufficient and antiquated. Beginners will find much additional material in the bibliographies in FLICK, no. 428 below. See also J. F. HUNT, *Literature of theology: a classified bibliography of theology and general religious literature*, New York, 1896.

51. HURTER, H. Nomenclator litterarius theologiae catholicae, theologos exhibens aetate, natione, disciplinis distinctos. 4 vols. 3rd edition. Innsbruck, 1903–1910.

Does for theological literature of the middle ages what POTTHAST, no. 18 above, has done for chronicles and historical texts.

52. HÜBLER, B. Kirchenrechtsquellen. 3rd edition. Berlin, 1898.

53. Bibliotheca hagiographica latina antiquae et mediae aetatis. 2 vols. Brussels, 1898–1901.

Supplements and completes the section "Vita" in POTTHAST, no. 18 above. The best bibliography of hagiographical literature. See *Acta Sanctorum*, no. 963 below.

54. Bibliographie der Kirchengeschichtlichen Literatur: aus der Bibliographie der theologischen Literatur. Edited by B. PÜNJER, later G. KRÜGER. Leipzig, 1882ff.

55. Theologischer Jahresbericht. Freiburg, 1882ff.

(*b*) PHILOSOPHY

56. Philosophisches Jahrbuch. Issued by the Görres-Gesellschaft. Fulda, 1888ff.

57. Die Philosophie der Gegenwart: eine internationale Jahresübersicht. Edited by A. RUGE. Heidelberg, 1910ff.

(*c*) EDUCATION

58. Historisch-pädagogischer Literaturbericht.

The *Bericht* for 1911 appeared as the 4th Beiheft of the *Zeitschrift für Geschichte der Erziehung und des Unterrichts*, Berlin, 1913.

See also *Pädagogischer Jahresbericht*. Leipzig, 1846ff.

59. CUBBERLEY, E. P. Syllabus of lectures on the history of education, with selected bibliographies. New York, 1902.

Contains extensive bibliographies. Other similar syllabi are: P. MONROE, *Syllabus of a course of study on the history and principles of education*, New York, 1911; and W. J. TAYLOR, *A syllabus of the history of education*, Boston, 1910.

(*d*) LAW AND POLITICS

60. MÜHLBRECHT, O. Wegweiser durch die neuere Literatur der Rechts- und Staatswissenschaften. 2nd edition. Berlin, 1893. Supplement, 1901.

See also *Uebersicht der gesammten staats- und rechtwissenschaftlichen Literatur,* edited by O. and H. MÜHLBRECHT, Berlin, 1869ff.

(*e*) WAR

61. POHLER, J. Bibliotheca historico-militaris: systematischer Übersicht der Erscheinungen aller Sprachen auf dem Gebiete der Geschichte der Kriege und Kriegswissenschaft seit Erfindung der Buchdruckerkunst bis 1880. 4 vols. Cassel, 1899.

(*f*) JEWS

62. List of works relating to the history and condition of the Jews in various countries. The New York Public Library, 1914.

CHAPTER II

BOOKS OF REFERENCE

§1. Miscellaneous Books of Reference

(*a*) GUIDE TO REFERENCE BOOKS

63. KROEGER, ALICE B. Guide to the study and use of reference books: a manual for librarians, teachers, and students. Boston, 1902. 2nd edition, revised and enlarged, 1908. Supplement, 1909–1910, by ISADORE G. MUDGE, American Library Association, Chicago, 1911. Supplement 1911–13, Chicago, 1914.

A new edition was announced in 1916. The *Library Journal* (February and March) supplements the publication from year to year.

(*b*) HISTORICAL METHOD

64. BERNHEIM, E. Lehrbuch der historischen Methode. 5th and 6th edition, Leipzig, 1908.

65. LANGLOIS, C. V. and C. SEIGNOBOS. Introduction aux études historiques. Paris, 1899. 4th edition, Paris, 1909. Translated by G. G. BERRY, Introduction to the study of history. London, 1898. Reprinted in a cheaper edition. London, 1912.

66. WOLF, G. Einführung in das Studium der neueren Geschichte. Berlin, 1910.

Contains much which interests the student of medieval history.

67. VINCENT, J. H. Historical research. New York, 1911.

Designed to be an introduction for beginners in historical research work in American universities. See also the article "History" by C. H. HASKINS and H. E. BOURNE in the *Cyclopedia of education.*

(*c*) CHRONOLOGICAL AND TABULAR AIDS

68. PLOETZ, C. Epitome of ancient, mediaeval and modern history. Translated from the German, and enlarged by W. H. TILLINGHAST. Boston, latest edition, 1915.

69. HEILPRIN, L. The historical reference book: comprising a chronological table of universal history; a chronological dictionary of universal history; a biographical dictionary with geographical notes, for the use of students, teachers, and readers. 6th edition. New York, 1902.

70. HAYDN'S Dictionary of dates and universal information relating to all ages and nations. 25th edition. London, 1910.

See also E. F. SMITH, *A dictionary of dates*, London and New York, 1911 (Everyman's library).

71. LITTLE, C. E. Cyclopedia of classified dates. New York, 1900.

72. PUTNAM, G. P. Tabular views of universal history: a series of chronological tables presenting in parallel columns a record of the more noteworthy events in the history of the world from the earliest times down to the present day. New York, 1914.

73. MORISON, M. Time-table of modern history, A.D. 400–1870. New York, 1901. 2nd edition. 1908.

74. NICHOL, J. Tables of European history, literature, science, and art, from A.D. 200 to 1909; and of American history, literature, and art. 5th edition. New York, 1909.

75. HASSALL, A. A handbook of European history, 476–1871, chronologically arranged. London, 1897.

76. History for ready reference from the best historians, biographers, and specialists. Edited by J. N. LARNED. 5 vols. Springfield, Mass., 1895–1901.

Vol. VI is devoted to recent history.

(*d*) GUIDES TO HISTORICAL FICTION

77. BAKER, E. A. A guide to historical fiction. New edition, entirely rewritten and greatly simplified, with an index of 170 pages. London, 1914.

78. NIELD, J. A guide to the best historical novels and tales. London, 1902. 4th edition, 1911.

79. BUCKLEY, J. A. and WILLIAMS, W. T. A guide to British historical fiction. London, 1912.

(*e*) WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS FAMOUS IN HISTORY

80. BÜCHMANN, G. Geflügelte Worte. 24th edition. Berlin, 1910.

81. HERTSLET, W. L. Der Treppenwitz der Weltgeschichte: geschichtliche Irrtümer, Entstellungen und Erfindungen. 8th edition. Berlin, 1912.

82. FOURNIER, E. L'esprit dans l'histoire: recherches et curiosités sur les mots historiques. Paris, 1857.

(*f*) GUIDES TO THE LEARNED WORLD

83. Minerva: Jahrbuch der gelehrten Welt. Strassburg, 1890ff.

84. Minerva: Handbuch der gelehrten Welt. Vol. I. Die Universitäten und Hochschulen, etc.: ihre Geschichte und Organisation. Strassburg, 1911.

85. Pantheon: Adressbuch der Kunst- und Antiquitäten-Sammler und -Händler, Bibliotheken, Archive, Museen, Kunst-, Altertums- und Geschichtsvereine, Bücherliebhaber, Numismatiker: ein Handbuch für das Sammelwesen der ganzen Welt. Erzlingen, 1914.

(*g*) DICTIONARY OF NAMES

86. The century cyclopedia of names: a pronouncing and etymological dictionary of names in geography, biography, mythology, history, ethnology, art, archaeology, fiction, etc. Edited by B. E. SMITH. Revised and enlarged edition. New York, 1911.

(*h*) BOOK REVIEWS

87. Bibliographie der deutschen Rezensionen, mit Einschluss von Referaten und Selbstanzeigen. Supplement zur Bibliographie der deutschen Zeitschriften-literatur. Leipzig, 1901ff. (Internationale Bibliographie der Zeitschriftenliteratur, Abteilung C.)

Two thousand to three thousand periodicals are scoured. Since 1912 the title is *Bibliographie der Rezensionen*, and each volume is published in two parts: 1, German periodicals; 2, periodicals in other languages, of which about 130 are English and American. In its new form this valuable publication makes a world-wide appeal to scholars. Since August, 1914, no literature from enemy countries is included. See supplement volume XX, p. 3.

88. Book review digest. White Plains, 1905ff. Vol. I is entitled, Cumulative book review digest.

Covers about fifty leading English and American periodicals. Gives extracts from reviews. The sign + indicates favorable comment; —, unfavorable comment.

§2. Biographical Dictionaries

89. Dictionary of national biography. Edited by L. STEPHEN and S. LEE. 63 vols. and 3 supplementary vols. London, 1885–1901. 2nd edition, 22 vols., 1908–09.

A model work of its kind. Confined to English biography, but that includes many men who made a reputation upon the continent in the middle ages, e.g., Roger Bacon. It contains signed articles with good bibliographies.



90. Allgemeine deutsche Biographie. 55 vols. Leipzig, 1875–1910. Vols. XLVII–LV are supplements.

Described by R. v. LILIENCRON, in *Götting. Gelehrten Anzeigen* (1898), 160, 655ff.

91. Biographisches Lexikon des Kaiserthums Österreich. Edited by C. v. WURZBACH. 60 vols. Vienna, 1856–91.

92. Biographie nationale, publiée par l'académie royale de Belgique. Brussels, 1866ff.

93. Biographie universelle. Edited by a society of literary men. 52 vols. with supplements. Paris, 1811–62. New edition, 45 vols. Paris, 1854–65.

For want of something better, this general biography must serve in the place of a national biography for France. See also the French encyclopedias, nos. **98–99** below, for names. In 1913, a *Dictionnaire de biographie française* was announced, to be edited by L. DIDIER and others.

94. SMITH, Sir W., and WACE, H. Dictionary of Christian biography, literature, sects, and doctrines. 4 vols. London and Boston, 1877–87.

Extends to the time of Charlemagne. A revised, but abridged, edition of the above is H. WACE and W. C. PIERCY, *A dictionary of Christian biography and literature to the end of the sixth century* A.D., London and Boston, 1911. This new edition does not supersede the old, which must still be consulted for the more extended articles and for all material falling in the seventh and eighth centuries.

95. Who's who: an annual biographical dictionary. London, 1848ff.

Students of medieval history have occasion to consult this and similar manuals when they desire information about living authors of books on the middle ages. For America, see *Who's who in America: a biographical dictionary of notable living men and women of the United States*, Chicago, 1899ff. For France, *Qui êtes-vous? Annuaire des contemporains*, Paris, 1908. For Germany, *Wer ist's?*, Leipzig, 1904ff.; *Deutsche Literaturkalender*, edited by J. KÜRSCHNER, Leipzig, 1878ff.; and *Biographisches Jahrbuch und deutscher Nekrolog*, edited by A. BETTELHEIM, Berlin, 1898ff. For further means of finding modern authors see *Centralblatt für Bibliothekswesen*, XII (1896), 115ff.

§3. Encyclopaedias

(*a*) GENERAL ENCYCLOPAEDIAS

96. Encyclopaedia Britannica: a dictionary of arts, sciences, literature, and general information. 11th edition, 29 vols. Cambridge University Press, 1911.

Vol. XXIX consists of a very important index. Most of the articles are signed and some contain good bibliographies, although in many cases they have not been brought up to date in this edition. Many foreign scholars have contributed. In 1914 the publication of separately bound reprints of articles on the history of various countries was begun. There have appeared the *History of France; History of Germany; History of Belgium, Italy, and Switzerland; History of Austro-Hungary and Poland;* and the *History of Russia and the Balkan States.*

97. New international encyclopaedia. 2nd edition. 24 vols. New York, 1914–1916.

98. La Grande encyclopédie: inventaire raisonné des sciences, des lettres et des arts, par une société de savants et de gens de lettres. 31 vols. Paris, 1885–1903.

A very serviceable work of reference for students of history. It was not a mere publisher's venture, but was the work of a learned society headed by the famous chemist BERTHELOT. Subject entries are more numerous than in the *Encyclopaedia Britannica.* Many articles are signed. Its biographical articles are especially good and supplement no. **93** above.

99. LAROUSSE Grand dictionnaire universel du XIX^e^ siècle. 17 vols. Paris, 1866–90. Smaller, not an abridged, edition by C. AUGÉ, Nouveau Larousse illustré, 7 vols. Paris, 1898–1904. Supplement, 1907.

A dictionary and an encyclopaedia combined. The very unique and compact *Petit Larousse illustré,* Paris, 1906, has been simmered down until it is little more than an ordinary dictionary.

100. Allgemeine Encyklopädie der Wissenschaften und Künste. Founded by J. S. ERSCH and J. G. GRUBER. 170 vols. Berlin, 1818–90.

Still incomplete. The most voluminous undertaking of its kind addressed exclusively to the world of scholars.

101. BROCKHAUS Konversations-Lexicon: allgemeine deutsche Real-Encyklopädie. 14th edition. 16 vols. Leipzig, 1892–95. Vol. 17 is a supplement, 1897.

102. MEYERS Konversations-Lexicon: ein Nachschlagewerk des allgemeinen Wissens. 24 vols. 6th edition, revised and enlarged, Leipzig, 1902–1913.

These two German works are similar in character and of about equal value to students of history. Perhaps MEYERS is slightly more serviceable on account of its excellent bibliographies and fine maps. Articles are not signed.

103. Enciclopedia universal ilustrada Europeo-Americana. Barcelona [no dates]. Vol. XXXI (Lon-Madz), had appeared in 1916.

(*b*) HISTORY OF THE CHURCH AND RELIGION

104. Catholic encyclopedia: an international work of reference on the constitution, doctrine, discipline, and history of the Catholic Church. 15 vols. and an index. New York, 1908–1914.

Designed to serve as a general encyclopaedia with special emphasis on the part played by Catholics in the advancement of learning. Thus everything even remotely connected with the church is included. Scholars from all parts of the world have contributed. Articles are signed. It is handsomely illustrated. There are some excellent bibliographies appended to articles (e.g., Roger Bacon).

105. Encyclopaedia of religion and ethics. Edited by J. HASTINGS and others. Edinburgh and New York, 1908ff. Vol. VIII, to Mulla, appeared in 1916.

106. The new SCHAFF-HERZOG encyclopedia of religious knowledge. Based on the third edition of the Realencyklopädie founded by J. J. HERZOG and edited by A. HAUCK. Edited by S. M. JACKSON and others. 12 vols. New York and London, 1908–1912.

See no. 112 below.

107. Encyclopédie des sciences religieuses.

Composed of the following separate works: 1. *Dictionnaire d'archéologie chrétienne,* no. 111 below; 2. *Dictionnaire d'histoire et de géographie ecclésiastique,* by BAUDRILLART, no. 110 below; 3. *Dictionnaire de théologie catholique* by VACANT and MANGENOT, no. 109 below; 4. *Dictionnaire de la bible,* by VIGOUROUX; and 5. *Dictionnaire du droit canonique* (in preparation). When completed, this will be the largest work of reference on religion in any language. It incorporates the highest achievements of Roman Catholic scholarship in France.

108. SMITH, Sir W., and CHEETHAM, S. Dictionary of Christian antiquities. 2 vols. London, 1876–80.

Covers the period to the time of Charlemagne. Now being superseded by *Dictionnaire d'archéologie chrétienne,* no. 111 below. See also J. S. BUMPUS, *Dictionary of ecclesiastical terms,* Philadelphia, 1910.

109. Dictionnaire de théologie catholique, contenant l'exposé des doctrines de la théologie catholique, leurs preuves et leur histoire. Edited by A. VACANT and E. MANGENOT. Paris, 1909ff.

A very ambitious undertaking on a vast scale, distinctly Roman Catholic in tone. Good bibliographies, with special emphasis on the sources. Unfortunately, the type is excessively small. Articles are signed.

110. Dictionnaire d'histoire et de géographie ecclésiastique. Edited by A. BAUDRILLART and others. Paris, 1912ff. Vol. II, to Aneurin, appeared in 1914.

111. Dictionnaire d'archéologie chrétienne et de liturgie. Edited by F. CABROL. Paris, 1907ff.

Extends to the time of Charlemagne.

112. Realencyklopädie für protestantische Theologie und Kirche, begründet von J. J. HERZOG. 3rd edition, edited by A. HAUCK. 24 vols. Leipzig, 1896–1913.

As its name implies, it is decidedly Protestant in tone. The articles dealing with history are particularly good. See no. 106 above.

113. Kirchenlexikon oder Encyklopädie der katholischen Theologie. Edited by H. J. WETZER and B. WELTE. 12 vols. Freiburg-i-B, 1847–60. 2nd edition by J. HERGENRÖTHER and F. KAULEN, 13 vols., Freiburg, 1882–1903. French translation, with modifications by J. GOSCHLER, 26 vols., 1869.

Distinctly Roman Catholic in tone. A well-balanced work.

114. MORONI, G. Dizionario di erudizione storico-ecclesiastica da S. Pietro ai nostri giorni. 103 vols. Venice, 1840–61. Six index vols., 1878–79.

(*c*) POLITICAL ECONOMY

115. Dictionary of political economy. 3 vols. and appendix. Edited by R. H. I. PALGRAVE. London, 1894–1908.

116. Handwörterbuch der Staatswissenschaften. Edited by J. CONRAD and others. 3rd edition, revised. 8 vols. Jena, 1909–1911.

See also *Wörterbuch der Volkswirtschaft*, edited by L. ELSTER, 2 vols., Jena, 1898, 3rd edition, 1911.

(*d*) EDUCATION

117. A cyclopedia of education. Edited by P. MONROE. 4 vols. New York, 1911–13.

118. SCHMID, K. A. Enzyklopädie des gesammten Erziehungs- und Unterrichtswesens. 2nd edition by W. SCHRADER. 10 vols. Gotha and Leipzig, 1876–87.

See also *Enzyklopädisches Handbuch der Pädagogik*, edited by W. REIN. 2nd edition, 9 vols., Langensalza, 1902–1909.

(*e*) JEWS

119. Jewish encyclopaedia: a descriptive record of the history, religion, literature, and customs of the Jewish people. 12 vols. New York, 1901–06.

(*f*) ISLAM

120. The encyclopaedia of Islam. Edited by M. T. HOUTSMA and others. London, 1913ff.

See also T. P. HUGHES, *A dictionary of Islam*, London, 1885, 2nd edition, 1896.

§4. Atlases and Other Geographical Aids

(*a*) GENERAL HISTORICAL ATLASES

121. SHEPHERD, W. R. Historical atlas. New York, Henry Holt, 1911.

The best general atlas for the use of students in schools and undergraduates in college. Due to the war, the book is temporarily out of print, because the plates are made in Germany. R. MUIR, *Hammond's new historical atlas for students*, 2nd edition, New York, 1915, and E. W. DOW, *Atlas of European history*, New York, 1907, are fair substitutes. A very cheap *Atlas of historical geography: Europe*, New York, 1910, is published in the *Everyman's library series*. (See also the volumes on Asia and Africa.) The appearance of these recent atlases in English, with good indexes, makes it unnecessary for American students to refer to such popular German atlases as F. W. PUTZGER, *Historischer Schulatlas*, American edition 1903, 35th edition, 1911; *Meyers historischer Handatlas*, Leipzig, 1911 (which, however, has a unique map for the Normans in Europe); and J. PERTHES, *Geschichts-Atlas*, Gotha, 1898, 2nd edition, 1904.

122. POOLE, R. L. Historical atlas of modern Europe from the decline of the Roman empire. Oxford, 1902.

123. DROYSEN, G. Allgemeiner historischer Handatlas. Leipzig, 1886.

124. SCHRADER, F. Atlas de géographie historique. Paris, 1896. New edition, Paris, 1907.

125. SPRUNER, K. VON and MENKE, T. Handatlas für die Geschichte des Mittelalters und der neueren Zeit. 3rd edition, Gotha, 1880.

126. VIDAL DE LA BLACHE, P. Atlas générale: histoire et géographie. Paris, 1897. New edition, Paris, 1913.

(*b*) ATLASES FOR CHURCH HISTORY

127. HEUSSI, K. and MULERT, H. Atlas zur Kirchengeschichte. Tübingen, 1905.

128. MCCLURE, E. Historical church atlas. London, 1897.

(*c*) ATLAS FOR THE HISTORY OF MEDIEVAL FRANCE

129. LONGNON, A. Atlas historique de la France. Plates I–XV [to 1380 A.D.]. Paris, 1885–89.

The work was left incomplete. A valuable descriptive text is published under a separate cover.

(*d*) DICTIONARIES OF GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES

130. GRAESSE, J. G. T. Orbis latinus: oder Verzeichniss der lateinischen Benennungen der bekanntesten Städte . . . Meere, Seen, etc., in allen Teilen der Erde nebst einem deutschlateinischen Register. Dresden, 1861. New, revised, edition, 1909.

131. Dictionnaire de geographie ancienne et moderne à l'usage du libraire et de l'amateur de livres. Par un bibliophile [P. DECHAMPS]. Paris, 1870.

For Gaul, up to the tenth century, there are excellent tables of Latin geographical names with their modern French equivalents in A. LONGNON, *Atlas historique de la France, Texte explicatif,* no. **129** above.

132. EGLI, J. Nomina geographica: Sprach- und Sacherklärung von 42,000 geographischen Namen aller Erdräume. Leipzig, 1872. 2nd edition. Leipzig, 1893.

133. EGLI, J. Geschichte der geographischen Namenkunde. Leipzig, 1886.

134. OESTERLEY, H. Historisch-geographisches Wörterbuch des deutschen Mittelalters. 2 vols. Gotha, 1883.

135. BISCHOFF, H. T. and MÖLLER, J. H. Vergleichendes Wörterbuch der alten, mittleren, und neuen Geographie. Gotha, 1892.

136. GRÖHLER, H. Ueber Ursprung und Bedeutund der französischen Ortsnamen. Part. I: Ligurische, iberische, phönizische, griechische, gallische, lateinische Namen. Heidelberg, 1913.

137. CHEVIN, L'ABBÉ. Dictionnaire latin-français des noms propres de lieux ayant une certaine notoriété, principalement au point de vue ecclésiastique et monastique. Paris [1897].

138. Dictionnaire topographique de la France. Vols. I–XXVII. Paris, 1861–1912.

(*e*) HISTORICAL GEOGRAPHIES

139. FREEMAN, E. A. The historical geography of Europe. 2 vols. London, 1881. 2nd edition, 1882. 3rd edition, by J. B. BURY. London, 1903.

To be used in connection with his *Atlas of the historical geography of Europe,* 3rd edition, London, 1903.

E. W. DANN, *Historical geography on a regional basis: Europe,* London, 1908; and K. JOHNSTON, *A sketch of historical geography,* London, 1909, are recent school books.

See also *no. 110 above.*

140. HIMLY, A. Histoire de la formation territoriale des états de l'Europe centrale. 2 vols. Paris, 1876. 2nd edition, 1894.

141. KRETSCHMER, K. Historische Geographie von Mitteleuropa. Munich and Berlin, 1904. (Part IV of no. 330 below.)

142. KÖTZSCHKE, R. Quellen und Grundbegriffe der historischen Geographie Deutschlands und seiner Nachbarländer. Leipzig and Berlin, 1906. In Grundriss der Geschichtswissenschaft, no. 331 below, I, part II, 397–449.

A good short account of ground covered in Krętschmer, no. 141 above.

143. GÖTZ, W. Historische Geographie. Leipzig, 1904. (In "Die Erdkunde," XIX.)

144. BÖTTCHER, C. Geschichtlich-geographischer Wegweiser für das Mittelalter und die neuere Zeit. Leipzig, 1891.

A school-book.

145. KNÜLL, B. Historische Geographie Deutschlands im Mittelalter. Breslau, 1903.

146. VIDAL DE LA BLACHE, P. Tableau de la géographie de la France. Vol. I, part I, of Histoire de France, no. 508 below. Paris, 1908.

§5. Historical Periodicals

147. JASTROW, J. Handbuch zu Literaturberichten. Berlin, 1891.

See pp. 177ff. for a list of periodicals pertaining to history. See also no. 13 above. STEIN, no. 1 above, gives a list of historical societies and periodicals, pp. 697–708.

(*a*) GENERAL HISTORICAL PERIODICALS

148. American historical review. New York, 1895ff. Index, vols. I–X, 1905; vols. XI–XX, 1915.

149. English historical review. London, 1886ff. Index for vols. I–XX, 1906; vols. XXI–XXX, 1916.

150. Historische Zeitschrift. Munich, 1859ff. Index, vols. I–LVI, 1888; LVII–XCVI, 1906.

151. Historische Vierteljahrschrift. Freiburg, 1898ff.

A continuation of the *Deutsche Zeitschrift für Geschichtswissenschaft*, 1889–1898. This continued the older and valuable "Bibliotheca historica" under the title "Bibliographie zur deutschen Geschichte," which is now continued in the *Historische Vierteljahrschrift*. This list serves a temporary purpose, until the *Jahresbericht*, no. 13 above, appears. The *Historische Zeitschrift* supplements the list in the *Historische Vierteljahrschrift* mainly because it takes cognizance of a good deal of periodical literature, and because it reviews many books sent to it directly from different countries.

152. Historisches Jahrbuch. Munich, 1880ff.

This is the organ of the Roman Catholic Görresgesellschaft. It is a scholarly periodical, containing excellent reviews, and pays particular attention to eastern Europe. Index, vols. I–XXXIV, 1914.

153. Mitteilungen aus der historischen Literatur. Herausgegeben von der historischen Gesellschaft zu Berlin, 1873ff. Index, vols. I–XX, 1893.

154. Historisches Literaturblatt: kritisch-bibliographisches Organ für Geschichte und ihre Hilfswissenschaften. 1898ff.

155. Korrespondenzblatt des Gesamtvereins der deutschen Geschichts- und Altertumsvereine. Berlin, 1853ff.

156. Revue historique. Paris, 1876ff. Index vols. I–XIV, 1881; XV–XXIX, 1887; XXX–XLIV, 1891; XLV–LII, 1896; LIII–LXXIV, 1901; LXXV–LXXXIX, 1906; XC–CV, 1911.

See also the *Revue des études historiques*, publiée par la Société des études historiques, Paris, 1834ff. This title was adopted in 1899; it had varied considerably between 1834 and 1899.

157. Revue des questions historiques. Paris, 1886ff. Index for vols. I–XX, 1887; XXI–XL, 1889; XLI–LX, 1897.

Pays exceptional attention to historical literature on Scandinavia and Russia.

158. Revue de synthèse historique. Paris, 1900ff. Index for the vols. covering the years 1900–1910, Paris, 1912.

159. Revue critique d'histoire et de littérature. Paris, 1867ff. Index for the vols. covering the years 1866–90 in 1894.

Established "to enforce respect for method, to execute justice upon bad books, to check misdirected and superfluous work."

160. Archivio storico italiano. Florence, 1842ff. 5 series.

A vast collection of sources, essays, reviews, with special reference to Italian history. Indexes, first series, 1857; 1855–1872, Florence, 1874; fourth series, 1891; fifth series, 1900.

161. Revista storica italiano. Turin, 1884ff. Index 1884–1901. 2 vols., 1904.

A *Nuova rivista storica*, edited by A. ANZILOTTI, and others was begun in Milan, January, 1917.

162. Bullettino dell' Istituto storico italiano. Rome, 1886ff.

163. Revista de archivos, bibliotecas y museos. Madrid, 1871–78; 1881–82; 3rd series, 1897ff.

Much broader in scope than its title would indicate. Covers all phases of Spanish history and the auxiliary studies, and contains the best current bibliographies of historical work in Spain.

(*b*) PERIODICALS DEVOTED ESPECIALLY TO MEDIEVAL HISTORY

164. Bibliothèque de l'Ecole des chartes: revue d'érudition consacrée spécialement à l'étude du moyen âge. Paris, 1839ff. Indexes, 1839–49, Paris, 1849; 1870–79, Paris, 1888.

The contents of the first thirty-six volumes are analyzed in A. FRANKLIN, *Les sources de l'histoire de France*, no. **23** above, 399–429. In the bibliographies, which are very full, special attention is given to palaeography and diplomatics. See *Livret de l'Ecole des chartes, 1901–1913: supplément au Livret publié en 1902*, Paris, 1913.

165. Le moyen âge: revue d'histoire et de philologie. Paris, 1888ff.

Vol. VIII has bound with it: A. VIDIER, "Répertoire methodique du moyen âge français . . . année 1895." The *Repertoire* for 1894 forms a regular part of this volume.

166. Mitteilungen des Instituts für österreichische Geschichtsforschung. Innsbruck, 1880ff.

Especially devoted to the middle ages and to the auxiliary sciences.

167. Neues Archiv der Gesellschaft für ältere deutsche Geschichtskunde. Hannover, 1876ff. A continuation of Archiv der Gesellschaft etc., 12 vols., Hannover, 1824–74.

Reports on progress of work in connection with the *Monumenta Germaniae historica*, no. **978** below.

168. Archivio Muratoriana. Vol. I was completed in 1914.

Supplements no. **988** below.

(*c*) HISTORY OF CULTURE AND LITERATURE

169. Archiv für Kulturgeschichte. Edited by G. STEINHAUSEN. Berlin, 1902ff.

Follows the *Zeitschrift für Kulturgeschichte*, 1894–1901. For other predecessors, see DAHLMANN-WAITZ, no. **28** above, no. 1693.

170. Archiv für Literatur- und Kirchengeschichte des Mittelalters. Edited by H. DENIFLE and F. EHRLE. Vols. I–VII. Berlin, 1885–1900.

171. Revue de l'histoire littéraire de la France. Paris, 1894ff.

A periodical which reports on work done in connection with no. **803** below.

172. Bulletin critique de littérature, d'histoire et de philologie. 1880ff.

173. Studi medievali. Edited by F. NOVATI and R. RENIER, Turin, 1904ff.

(*d*) BYZANTINE EMPIRE

174. Byzantinische Zeitschrift. Founded by K. KRUMBACHER. Leipzig, 1892ff. Index of vols. I–XII, 1908.

175. Vizantijskij vremennik [Byzantine chronical]. Published by the Academy of Sciences of Petrograd. 1894–1915.

Continued by: *Vizantijskoe obozriénie* [*Byzantine review*], 1915ff. Contains articles, reviews, and texts. The new review publishes articles in Russian, French, English, Latin, and Greek, but not in German.

(*e*) CHURCH HISTORY

176. Zeitschrift für Kirchengeschichte. Edited by T. BRIEGER and B. BESS. Gotha, 1877ff. See vols. XXVI–XXX (1905–09) for a bibliography of church history.

177. Analecta Bollandiana. Edited by C. DE SMEDT, etc. Paris, etc., 1882ff.

Reports on progress of work in connection with the *Acta sanctorum*, no. **963** below.

178. Revue d'histoire ecclésiastique. Edited by A. CAUCHIE. Louvain, 1900ff. Bibliography beginning with vol. V (1904).

179. Römische Quartalschrift für christliche Altertumskunde und für Kulturgeschichte. Rome, 1887ff.

180. Revue de l'histoire des religions. Paris, 1880ff.

(*f*) HISTORY OF PHILOSOPHY

181. Archiv für Geschichte der Philosophie. Edited by L. STEIN. Berlin, 1888ff.

As an appendix; *Jahresbericht über sämmtliche Erscheinungen auf dem Gebiete der Geschichte der Philosophie.*

(*g*) HISTORY OF EDUCATION

182. Mitteilungen der Gesellschaft für deutsche Erziehungs- und Schulgeschichte. Founded by K. KEHRBACH. Berlin, 1891ff. Continued as, Zeitschrift für Geschichte der Erziehung und des Unterrichts. Berlin, 1911ff. Includes Beihefte. They contain the Historisch-pädagogische Literaturberichte in nos. 15, 17, 19, 21. Berlin, 1906ff.

(*h*) HISTORY OF LAW

183. Zeitschrift der Savigny-Stiftung für Rechtsgeschichte. 3 parts: Germanic, canon, and Romanic Law. Weimar, 1880ff.

From 1861–1880 it was published under the title: *Zeitschrift für Rechtsgeschichte.*

(i) PERIODICALS FOR TEACHERS OF HISTORY

184. History teachers' magazine. Philadelphia, 1909ff.

185. History. London, 1912–1916.

Since April, 1916, the organ of the Historical association [England]. A new series began with this number under the title *The quarterly journal of the Historical association*, new series, no. 1, April 1916. The new journal is devoted chiefly to the teaching of history, and is edited by A. F. POLLARD.

186. Vergangenheit und Gegenwart: Zeitschrift für den Geschichtsunterricht und staatsbürgerliche Erziehung in allen Schulgattungen. Edited by F. FRIEDRICH and P. RÜHLMANN. Leipzig.

§6. Pictorial Works

See also nos 318, 775 below.

187. PARMENTIER, A. Album historique. Publié sous la direction de M. Ernest Lavisse. 4 vols. Paris, 1897–1907. Edition de luxe, vols. I–III, 1901–1902. Vol. I: Le moyen âge (du IV^e^ au XIII^e^ siècle), 2nd edition, 1900. Vol. II: La fin du moyen âge (XIV^e^et XV^e^ siècles), 1897.

188. LACROIX, P. and SÉRÉ, F. Le moyen-âge et la renaissance: histoire et description des moeurs et usages, du commerce et de l'industrie, des sciences, des arts et des littératures en Europe. 5 vols. Paris, 1847–52. Several later editions. Translated into English in 4 vols: Manners, customs and dress during the middle ages, and during the renaissance period, London, 1874; Science and literature in the middle ages and at the period of the renaissance, London, 1878; Military and religious life in the middle ages and at the period of the renaissance, London [n. d]; The arts of the middle ages, and at the period of the renaissance, London, 1870.

189. KLEINPAUL, R. Das Mittelalter: Bilder aus dem Leben und Treiben aller Stände in Europa. 2 vols. Leipzig [1895].

190. ESSENWEIN, A. Kulturhistorischer Bilderatlas. Vol. II. Mittelalter. Leipzig, 1883.

191. RACINET, A. Le costume historique. 6 vols. Paris, 1876–88. 500 plates.

Vols. III and IV on the middle ages. The Brooklyn Public Library published a reading and reference list on costume, 1909.

192. LACROIX, P. Costumes historiques de la France d'après les monuments les plus authentiques . . . Avec un texte descriptif. 10 vols. Paris [1852].

193. PLANCHÉ, J. R. A cyclopaedia of costume, including a general history of costumes. [A.D. 1–1760.] 2 vols. London, 1876–79. Many illustrations.

194. HEFNER-ALTENECK, J. H. DE. Costumes du moyen-âge chrétien. 3 vols. Frankfort, 1840–54. 420 plates.

Now see also vol. III of C. ENLART, *Manuel d'archéologie française*, Paris, 1916.

195. Zur Geschichte der Costüme. Munich, 1874. New edition 1895. Colorierte Ausgabe. Munich, 1913.

196. ROSENBERG, A. Geschichte des Kostüms. Vol. I, Berlin, 1910.

197. DEMAY, G. Le costume au moyen-âge d'après les sceaux. Paris, 1880.

198. CLINCH, G. English costume from prehistoric times to the end of the eighteenth century. Chicago, 1910.

199. QUICHERAT, J. Histoire du costume en France. Paris, 1877.

200. BRETT, E. J. A pictorial and descriptive record of the origin and development of arms and armour. London, 1894. 133 good plates.

201. Longman's historical illustrations: England in the middle ages. 1910.

202. BELLOC, H. The book of the Bayeux tapestry, presenting the complete work in a series of colour facsimiles. London, 1914.

The Bayeux tapestry is also produced in color in vol. VI, 1916–1923 of *Vetusta monumenta*, Society of Antiquaries of London, 7 vols., London, 1747–1906, which is interesting for many other fine illustrations. Another reproduction of the tapestry is in F. R. FOWKE, *The Bayeux tapestry*, London, 1898. See GROSS, no. 36 above, no. 2139.

203. DIEDERICHS, E. Deutsches Leben der Vergangenheit in Bildern. 2 vols. Jena, 1908. Vol. I, 15th and 16th centuries.

204. DAERING, O. Deutschlands mittelalterliche Kunstdenkmäler als Geschichtsquelle. Leipzig, 1911.

205. VAN DER LINDEN, H. and OBREEN, H. Album historique de la Belgique. Brussels, 1912.

206. HERRAD VON LANDSBERG (Abbess of Hohenburg, died 1195). Hortus deliciarum; publié aux frais de la Société pour la conservation des monuments historiques d'Alsace. Strassburg, 1901.

For other literature on this interesting book see DAHLMANN-WAITZ, *Quellenkunde*, no. 5723.

207. LABARTE, J. Histoire des arts industriels au moyen âge. 4 vols. Paris, 1864–66. 2nd edition, 3 vols., 1872–75. Many illustrations.

His *Handbook of the arts of the middle ages*, 1855, is a translation of a smaller work.

§7. Guides to Learned Societies

See also no. 83 above.

208. Carnegie Institution of Washington. Handbook of learned societies and institutions: American. Washington, 1908.

A similar handbook for the rest of the world is in preparation. The material which is accumulating for it may be consulted at the Library of Congress in Washington, D. C. See "List of European historical societies," in *Annual Report of the American historical association*, 1914, vol. 1, 301–310. STEIN, no. 1 above, pp. 642–649, gives a list of academies and miscellaneous learned societies and their publications.

209. Year-book of the scientific and learned societies of Great Britain and Ireland, giving an account of their origin, constitution, and working. London, 1884ff.

210. DELAUNAY, H. Les sociétés savantes de France. Paris, 1902.

See also no. 26 above.

211. MÜLLER, J. Die wissenschaftlichen Vereine und Gesellschaften Deutschlands im neunzehnten Jahrhundert: Bibliographie ihrer Veröffentlichungen seit ihrer Begründung bis auf die Gegenwart. Berlin, 1883–87.

Chapter III

SOME AUXILIARIES TO THE STUDY OF MEDIEVAL HISTORY

§1. Latin Palaeography

(*a*) Handbooks

212. Thompson, E. M. An introduction to Greek and Latin palaeography. Oxford, 1912. 250 plates. The author regards it as an enlarged edition of his Handbook of Greek and Latin palaeography, London, 1893, 3rd edition, 1906.

In its enlarged form, the book is the best handbook in any language. See the bibliography at the end.

The best book for the history of writing in the middle ages, apart from the form, is W. Wattenbach, *Das Schriftwesen im Mittelalter*, Leipzig, 1871; 3rd edition, 1896 (see outline XXVI in part III below). Wattenbach also has an *Einleitung zur lateinischen Palaeographie*, Leipzig, 1869; 4th edition, 1886.

Beginners will be interested in H. W. Johnston, *Latin manuscripts: an elementary introduction to the use of critical editions for high school and college classes*, Chicago, 1897; and E. E. Thoyts, *How to decipher and study old documents: being a guide to the reading of ancient manuscripts*, London, 1893, 3rd edition, revised, 1909. Now see also J. E. Sandys, *A companion to Latin studies*, Cambridge, 1910, 765–805.

213. Paoli, C. Programma scolastico di paleografia latina e di diplomatica. 3 parts, Florence, 1883–98. 3rd edition of part 1, 1901. Translated by K. Lohmeyer, Grundriss der lateinischen Paläographie und der Urkundenlehre. Innsbruck, 1885ff. 3 parts. 3rd edition of part I, 1902.

214. Prou, M. Manuel de paléographie latine et française suivi d'un dictionnaire des abréviations; aves 23 fac-similés. Paris, 1890. 3rd edition with an album of 24 plates. Paris, 1910.

See the bibliography on pp. 2–12.

215. Reusens, E. H. J. Eléments de paléographie. Louvain, 1891. Enlarged edition, Louvain, 1899.

See bibliography, pp. 468–79.

216. Steffens, F. Lateinische Paläographie: 100 Tafeln mit einer systematischen Darstellung der lateinischen Schrift. Fri-

bourg, 1903. Supplement, 1906. 2nd edition, 125 plates, Trier, 1907–09. French edition, by R. COULON, Paléographie latine. Trèves, 1910. 125 plates.

See also his *Proben aus Handschriften lateinischer Schriftsteller zur ersten Einführung*, Trier, 1907.

217. BRETHOLTZ, B. "Lateinische Palaeographie." In Grundriss der Geschichtswissenschaft, no. 331 below, vol. I. Leipzig, 1906, pp. 21–130. 2nd edition, 1912.

218. TRAUBE, L. Zur Paläographie und Handschriftenkunde. Munich, 1909. In vol. II of his Vorlesungen und Abhandlungen (posthumous edition by F. BOLL).

219. HALL, F. W. A companion to classical texts. Oxford, 1913.

See especially chapter IX, "The nomenclature of Greek and Latin MSS. with the names of former possessors."

220. LOEW, E. A. The Beneventan script: a history of the south Italian minuscule. Oxford, 1914.

221. CHASSANT, A. Paléographie des chartes et des manuscrits du XI^e^ au XVII^e^ siècle. 8th edition, Paris, 1885.

222. WAILLY, N. DE. Eléments de paléographie. 2 vols. Paris, 1838.

223. MARUCCHI, O. Epigrafia cristiana. Milan, 1910. Translated by A. WILLIS, Christian epigraphy. Cambridge University Press, 1912.

(*b*) ABBREVIATIONS

See also nos, 244, 245 below.

224. CAPPELLI, A. Dizionario di abbreviature latine ed italiene. Milan, 1899. German edition with additions, Lexicon abbreviaturarum: Wörterbuch lateinischer und italienischer Abkürzungen. Leipzig, 1901. 2nd edition, revised, 1912.

225. CHASSANT, A. Dictionnaire des abréviations latines et françaises du moyen âge. Paris, 1846. 5th edition, 1884.

226. CHATELAIN, E. Introduction à la lecture des notes tironiennes. Paris, 1900.

227. PERUGI, G. L. Le note tironiane. Rome, 1911.

228. GUENIN, L. P. and E. Histoire de la sténographie dans l'antiquité et au moyen âge: les notes tironiennes. Paris, 1907.

229. ZIMMERMANN, A. Geschichte der Stenographie in kurzen Zügen vom klassischen Altertum bis zur Gegenwart. Vienna, 1912.

(c) FACSIMILES

230. The Palaeographical Society. Facsimiles of manuscripts and inscriptions. Edited by E. A. BOND, E. M. THOMPSON, G. F. WARNER and W. WRIGHT. Series I–II; 465 facsimiles with descriptive text, transliteration, tables of contents, etc., and indices. London, 1873–1901. New Palaeographical Society. Facsimiles of ancient manuscripts. Parts I–X. London, 1903–1912. 250 plates.

231. Recueil de fac-similes à l'usage de l'Ecole des Chartes. 4 parts. 100 plates. Paris, 1880–87.

See also the *Album paléographique*, edited by L. DELISLE, for the *Société de l'Ecole des Chartes*. 50 plates. Paris, 1887.

In 1911 there was formed in Paris a society for the photographic reproduction of the most important medieval manuscripts, especially illuminated ones.

232. CHROUST, A. Monumenta palaeographica: Denkmäler der Schreibkunst des Mittelalters. 2 series. Munich, 1899ff.

233. Archivo paleografico italiano, edited by E. MONACI. Rome, 1882ff.

234. WILLIAMS, H. S. Manuscripts, inscriptions, and muniments oriental, classical, mediaeval and modern, described, classified and arranged, comprehending the history of the art of writing. 200 facsimiles. 4 vols. London [about 1901].

235. SILVESTRE, J. B. Paléographie universelle, collection de fac-simile d'écritures de tous les peuples. 4 vols. Paris, 1839–41. Translated by F. MADDEN, Universal palaeography. 2 vols. London, 1850.

236. GALABERT, F. Album de paléographie et de diplomatique: facsimilés phototypiques de documents relatifs à l'histoire du Midi de la France, et en particulier de la ville de Toulouse. Paris, 1912ff.

237. ARNDT, W. Schrifttafeln zur Erlernung der lateinischen Paläographie. Berlin, 1897ff. 4th edition of parts I and II, Berlin, 1904–1906. Part III, Berlin, 1903. 2nd edition, unchanged, 1908.

§2. Diplomatics and Sphragistics

238. MABILLON, J. De re diplomatica libri VI. Paris, 1681; supplement, 1704. 2nd edition, 1709. 3rd edition, 2 vols., Naples, 1789.

This book, together with TOUSTAIN and TASSIN, *Nouveau traité de diplomatique*, 1750–65, laid the bases of this discipline. See also R. ROSENMUND, *Die Fortschritte der Diplomatik seit Mabillon, vornehmlich in Deutschland-Oesterreich*, Munich and Leipzig, 1897.

239. GIRY, A. Manuel de diplomatique. Paris, 1894.

For a very recent brief sketch see R. THOMMEN, L. SCHMITZ-KALLENBERG, and H. STEINACKER, *Urkundenlehre*, 2nd edition, Leipzig and Berlin, 1913 (in *Grundriss der Geschichtswissenschaft*, no. 331 below, I, parts 2 and 2*a*).

240. BRESSLAU, H. Handbuch der Urkundenlehre für Deutschland und Italien. Vol. I, Leipzig, 1889. 2nd edition, vol. I, 1912, vol. II, part I, 1915.

The second edition of vol. I covers only nine of the nineteen chapters of the first edition. Now see also the important book by R. L. POOLE, *Lectures on the history of the papal chancery down to the time of Innocent III*, Cambridge University Press, 1915.

241. LEIST, F. Urkundenlehre: Katechismus der Diplomatik, Paläographie, Chronologie, und Sphragistik. Leipzig, 1882. 2nd edition, 1893.

242. JOHNSON, C. and JENKINSON, H. English court hand, A.D. 1066–1500, illustrated chiefly from the public records. Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1915. One vol. together with an atlas of 44 plates.

See also H. JENKINSON, *Palaeography and the practical study of court hands*, Cambridge University Press, 1915.

243. HALL, H. Studies in English official historical documents. Cambridge, 1908.

Supplemented by his *Formula book of English historical documents*, parts I–II, Cambridge, 1908–1909.

244. MARTIN, C. T. The record interpreter: a collection of abbreviations, Latin words, and names used in English historical manuscripts and records. London, 1892. 2nd edition, 1910.

245. WALTER, J. L. Lexicon diplomaticum: abbreviationes vocum in diplomatibus exponens. 3 parts. Göttingen, 1745–47. Another edition, Ulm, 1756.

Still the most complete list of abbreviations in official documents of the middle ages.

246. ROMAN, J. Manuel de sigillographie. Paris, 1913.

247. ILGEN, T. Sphragistik. 2nd edition, 1912. (In Grundriss der Geschichtswissenschaft, no. 331 below, I, part 4, pp. 1–58.)

Has a very full bibliography.

248. Archiv für Urkundenforschung in zwanglosen Heften herausgegeben von K. BRANDI, H. BRESSLAU, and M. TANGL. Leipzig, 1907ff.

249. Kaiserurkunden in Abbildungen. Edited by H. v. SYBEL and T. v. SICKEL. Berlin, 1880–91.

§3. Chronology

250. GROTEFEND, H. Zeitrechnung des deutschen Mittelalters und der Neuzeit. 2 vols. Hannover, 1891–98.

251. GROTEFEND, H. Taschenbuch der Zeitrechnung des deutschen Mittelalters und der Neuzeit. Hannover and Leipzig, 1898. 3rd edition, 1910.

This is a condensation of the previous work. A still briefer account, but the most recent of all, is the following:

252. GROTEFEND, H. Abriss der Chronologie des deutschen Mittelalters und der Neuzeit. 2nd edition. Leipzig, 1912. (In Grundriss der Geschichtswissenschaft, no. 331 below, vol. I, part 3.)

253. IDELER, L. Handbuch der mathematischen und technischen Chronologie. Berlin, 1825–26. 2 vols. 2nd edition. Breslau, 1883.

254. RÜHL, F. Chronologie des Mittelalters und der Neuzeit. Berlin, 1897.

A very convenient general account. The same is true of GIRY, *Manuel de diplomatique*, no. 239 above. See also B. M. LERSCH, *Einleitung in die Chronologie*, 2 parts, 2nd edition, Freiburg, 1899.

255. l'Art de vérifier les dates. 2nd part. Depuis la naissance de Jésus-Christ [to 1770?]. Paris, 1750. 3rd edition, 3 vols., 1783–87. 4th edition by SAINT-ALLAIS, 18 vols., 1818–19.

256. MAS-LATRIE, L. DE. Trésor de chronologie, d'histoire et de géographie pour l'étude et l'emploi des documents du moyen âge. Paris, 1889.

257. GINZEL, F. K. Handbuch der mathematischen und technischen Chronologie. 3 vols. Leipzig, 1906–1914.

258. KELLNER, K. A. H. Heortologie: oder die geschichtliche Entwicklung des Kirchenjahres und der Heiligenfeste von den ältesten Zeiten bis zur Gegenwart. Freiburg, 1901. 2nd edition, 1906. Translated from the 2nd German edition, Heortology: a history of the Christian festivals from their origin to the present day. London, 1908.

259. HAMPSON, R. T. Medii aevi kalendarium: or dates, charters, and customs of the middle ages. 2 vols. London, 1841.

260. SCHMID, J. Die Osterfestberechnung in der abendländischen Kirche bis zum Ende des VIII. Jahrhunderts. Freiburg, 1907.

261. SCHRAM, R. Kalendariographische und chronologische Tafeln. Leipzig, 1908.

262. CAPPELLI, A. Cronologia e calendario perpetuo: tavole cronografiche e quadri sinottici per verificare le date storiche dal principio dell' era cristiana ai giorni nostri. Milan, 1906.

263. BOND, J. J. Handybook of rules and tables for verifying dates with the Christian era: giving an account of the chief eras and systems used by various nations, etc. London, 1866. 4th edition, London, 1889.

Especially valuable for English history.

264. WISLICENUS, W. F. Astronomische Chronologie: ein Hilfsbuch für Historiker, Archäologen, etc. Leipzig, 1895.

265. WISLICENUS, W. F. Der Kalender. Leipzig, 1905.

266. BRINKMEIER, E. Praktisches Handbuch der historischen Chronologie aller Zeiten und Völker, besonders des Mittelalters. 2nd edition. Berlin, 1882.

267. BILFINGER, G. Die mittelalterlichen Horen und die modernen Stunden: ein Beitrag zur Kulturgeschichte. Stuttgart, 1892.

§4. Genealogy

268. LORENZ, O. Lehrbuch der gesamten wissenschaftlichen Genealogie. Berlin, 1898.

269. LORENZ, O. Genealogisches Handbuch der europäischen Staatengeschichte. 3rd edition. Stuttgart, 1907.

270. STOCKVIS, A. M. H. J. Manuel d'histoire de généalogie et de chronologie de tous les états du globe. 3 vols. Leyden, 1888–91.

271. FORST-BATTAGLIA, O. Genealogie. Leipzig and Berlin, 1913. In Grundriss der Geschichtswissenschaft, no. 331 below, I, part 4*a*.

See also his *Genealogische Tabellen zur Geschichte des Mittelalters und der Neuzeit: Abteilung Mittelalter*, erste Lieferung, Vienna, 1914.

272. HEYDENREICH, E. Handbuch der praktischen Genealogie. 2nd edition. 2 vols. Leipzig, 1913.

273. DEVRIENT, E. Genealogisches Handbuch der europäischen Staatengeschichte. 3rd edition. Stuttgart, 1908.

274. HÜBNER, J. Genealogische Tabellen. 5 vols., with appendix, Leipzig, 1725–33. 2nd edition with continuation, 1737–66. Supplements, 6 numbers, Copenhagen, 1822–24.

275. GROTE, H. Stammtafeln. Leipzig, 1877.

276. GEORGE, H. B. Genealogical tables illustrative of modern history. 5th edition, revised, Oxford, 1916.

277. Almanach de Gotha: annuaire généalogique, diplomatique et statistique. Gotha, 1763ff.

Since 1871 published in both French and German.

278. ALLSTRÖM, C. M. Dictionary of royal lineage of Europe, etc. 2 vols. Chicago, 1902–04.

279. RYE, W. Records and record searching: a guide to the genealogist and topographer. London, 1888. 2nd edition, 1897.

280. MARSHALL, G. W. The genealogist's guide. London, 1879. 4th edition, Guildford, 1903.

281. HOFMEISTER, A. "Genealogie und Familienforschung als Hilfswissenschaft der Geschichte." In Historische Vierteljahrschrift, XV (1912), 457–492.

282. WOODS, F. A. Mental and moral heredity in royalty: a statistical study in history and psychology. With 104 portraits. New York, 1906.

283. BRACHET, A. Pathologie mentale des rois de France: Louis XI et ses ascendants; une vie humaine étudiée à travers six siècles d'hérédité (852–1483). Paris, 1903.

§5. Heraldry

284. BOUTELL, C. A manual of heraldry. London, 1863. 3rd edition, Heraldry, historical and popular. London, 1864. Abridged under the title, English heraldry. London, 1867; 10th edition, with 464 illustrations, by A. C. FOX-DAVIES, 1908; 11th edition, revised as Handbook of English heraldry, 1913.

See also W. A. SHAW, *The knights of England*, 2 vols., London, 1906.

285. FOX-DAVIES, A. C. A complete guide to heraldry. London, 1909.

See also his *The art of heraldry: an encyclopaedia of armory*, London, 1904.

286. WOODWARD, J. and BURNETT, G. A treatise on heraldry, British and foreign. 2 vols. Edinburgh, 1892. New edition, 1896.

287. GRITZNER, M. Handbuch der heraldischen Terminologie in zwölf Zungen. Nürnberg, 1890.

Now see his Heraldik, 2nd edition, Leipzig and Berlin, 1912, in *Grundriss der Geschichtswissenschaft*, no. 331 below, I, part 4, pp. 59–97.

288. SEYLER, G. A. Geschichte der Heraldik. Nüremberg, 1890.

289. PEDRICK, G. A manual of heraldry: a popular introduction. London [no date, ca. 1913].

290. SACKEN, E. Katechismus der Heraldik. 6th edition, 1899 (Webers Katechismen).

291. [HOZIER, L. P. D']. Armorial général de la France. 12 vols. Paris, 1865ff.

§6. Numismatics

292. ENGEL, A. and SERRURE, R. Traité de numismatique du moyen âge. 3 vols. Paris, 1891–95.

Contains comprehensive bibliographies.

293. LUSCHIN VON EBENGREUTH, A. Allgemeine Münzkunde und Geldgeschichte des Mittelalters und der neueren Zeit. Munich, 1904. In Handbuch der mittelalterlichen und neueren Geschichte, no. 330 below.

See also the following two elementary books on the subject: H. HALKE, *Einleitung in das Studium der Numismatik*, 3rd edition, Berlin, 1908; and H. DANNENBERG, *Grundzüge der Münzkunde*, 1891, 2nd edition, 1899 (Webers illustrierte Katechismen).

294. BLANCHET, J. A. and DIEUDONNÉ, A. Manuel de numismatique française. Vol. I, Paris, 1912.

295. FRIEDENSBURG, F. Deutsche Münzgeschichte. 2nd edition. Leipzig and Berlin, 1912. In Grundriss der Geschichtswissenschaft, no. 331 below, I, part 4, pp. 98–132.

296. FRIEDENSBURG, F. Die Münze in der Kulturgeschichte. Berlin, 1909.

297. POOLE, S. L. Coins and medals: their place in history and art. London, 1885. 3rd edition, 1894.

298. KEARY, C. F. Coinages of western Europe, Honorius to Charles the Great. London, 1879. 3rd edition, 1894.

§7. Archaeology

See also no. 754 below.

299. ENLART, C. Manuel d'archéologie française depuis les temps mérovingiens jusqu'à la renaissance. Vols. I–III. Paris, 1902–1916.

A second edition of vol. I was announced in 1917. See also J. A. BRUTAILS, *Précis d'archéologie du moyen âge*, Paris, 1908.

300. GAY, V. Glossaire archéologique du moyen âge et de la renaissance. Vol. I (A–G). Paris, 1882–1887.

301. LECLERCQ, H. Manuel d'archéologie chrétienne depuis les origines jusqu'au VIII[e] siècle. 2 vols. Paris, 1911.

302. KAUFMANN, K. Handbuch der christlichen Archäologie. Paderborn, 1905. 2nd edition, enlarged, 1913.

§8. Philology

303. BÖCKH, A. Enzyklopädie und Methodologie der philologischen Wissenschaften. Leipzig, 1886.

This handbook does for philology what BERNHEIM, no. **64** above, does for history.

304. KÖRTING, G. Enzyklopädie und Methodologie der romanischen Philologie. Heilbronn, 1884–88.

His *Enzyklopädie und Methodologie der französischen Philologie*, Leipzig, 1894; and his *Handbuch der romanischen Philologie*, Heilbronn, 1896, are little more than extracts from the above.

305. Grundriss der romanischen Philologie. Edited by G. GRÖBER. 2 vols. Strassburg, 1886–1902. Vol. I, 2nd edition, 1904–1906.

Supplemented by *Kritischer Jahresbericht über die Fortschritte der romanischen Philologie*, Munich and Leipzig, 1892ff.; as well as by the *Répertoire des travaux historiques contenant l'analyse des nouvelles publications faites sur l'histoire des monuments et de la langue de France*, Paris, 1882ff.

For further details on the French language and literature in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries, see outline XXIV in part III below.

306. MORF, H. Die romanischen Literaturen, and W. MEYER-LÜBKE, Die romanischen Sprachen. Berlin and Leipzig, 1909.

Part of vol. I of no. **729** below.

307. Grundriss der germanischen Philologie. Edited by H. PAUL. 2 vols. in 3. Strassburg, 1891–93. 2nd edition, 3 vols. in 4, 1900–1909; 3rd edition, many vols., 1911ff.

Supplemented by the *Jahresbericht über die Erscheinungen auf dem Gebiete der germanischen Philologie*, Berlin, 1800ff.

308. The Oxford English dictionary: a new English dictionary on historical principles, founded mainly on the materials collected by the Philological society. Edited by J. A. H. MURRAY. Oxford, 1888ff. Vol. IX (Si–Th) appeared in 1916.

309. Thesaurus linguae latinae editus auctoritate et concilio academiarum quinque Germanicarum: Beroliensis, Gottingensis, Lipsiensis, Monacensis, Vindobonensis. Leipzig, 1900ff.

Extends to the end of the sixth century. For DU CANGE and medieval Latin language and literature in general, see outline XXIII in part III below.

310. Münchener Archiv für Philologie des Mittelalters und der Renaissance. Munich, 1913ff.

311. Archiv für slavische Philologie. Berlin, 1876ff.

312. Die osteuropäischen Literaturen und die slawischen Sprachen. Berlin and Leipzig, 1908.

Part of no. **729** below.

CHAPTER IV

GENERAL MODERN HISTORICAL WORKS

§1. Universal Histories

313. Allgemeine Geschichte in Einzeldarstellungen. Edited by W. ONCKEN. 45 vols. Berlin, 1879–93.

Commonly known as the "ONCKEN" series.

Part II, *History of the middle ages*, 10 works in 15 vols., contains the following: 1. G. F. HERTZBERG, *Geschichte des römischen Kaiserreiches*, 1880; 2. F. DAHN, *Urgeschichte der germanischen und romanischen Völker*, 4 vols., 1881–89; 3. E. WINKELMANN, *Geschichte der Angelsachsen bis zum Tode König Aelfreds*, 1883; 4. A. MÜLLER, *Der Islam im Morgen- und Abendland*, 2 vols., 1885–87; 5. B. KUGLER, *Geschichte der Kreuzzüge*, 1880; 6. H. PRUTZ, *Staatengeschichte des Abendlandes im Mittelalter von Karl d. Grossen bis auf Maximilian*, 2 vols., 1885–87; 7. G. F. HERTZBERG, *Geschichte der Byzantiner und des Osmanischen Reiches bis gegen Ende des sechszehnten Jahrhunderts*, 1883; 8. L. GEIGER, *Renaissance und Humanismus in Italien und Deutschland*, 1882; 9. S. RUGE, *Geschichte des Zeitalters der Entdeckungen* [no date]; 10. T. SCHIEMANN, *Russland, Polen und Livland bis ins 17 Jahrhundert*, 2 vols., 1886.

314. History of all nations. 24 vols. Philadelphia, 1902–05.

Vols. VI–VII by J. VON PFLUGK-HARTTUNG; and vols. VIII–X, by H. PRUTZ, are on the middle ages.

315. Weltgeschichte. Edited by H. F. HELMOLT. 9 vols. Leipzig and Vienna, 1899–1907. 2nd, revised, edition by A. TILLE, 10 vols., 1913ff. Translated into English, The history of the world. 8 vols. New York, 1902–07.

A co-operative work arranged anthropologically and ethnologically, not chronologically. Based on the ideas of F. RATZEL. It is rather confusing. The portions on the middle ages are not so good as other parts of the work.

316. RANKE, L. VON. Weltgeschichte. 9 vols. 5th edition, Leipzig, 1896–98. Popular edition, without notes, 4 vols. Leipzig, 1895.

Extends to the end of the 15th century.

317. WEBER, G. Allgemeine Weltgeschichte. 15 vols. and 4 index vols. 2nd edition, Leipzig, 1882–89.

318. Weltgeschichte: die Entwickelung der Menschheit in Staat und Gesellschaft, in Kultur- und Geistesleben. 6 vols. Berlin,

1907–10. Edited by J. VON PFLUGK-HARTTUNG. Vol. II, Geschichte des Mittelalters. Berlin, 1909.

Beautifully illustrated. See facsimiles of bulls and charters, with translations.

319. L'évolution de l'humanité. Edited by H. BERR. Paris, 1915ff.

A proposed general history to embrace about 100 vols. A list of the 51 vols. asigned to ancient and medieval history is printed in the *Revue de synthèse historique*, XXVIII (1914), 338–342.

320. Bibliothek der Geschichtswissenschaft. Edited by E. BRANDENBURG. Leipzig, 1908ff.

The various volumes pertaining to the middle ages in this set and in nos. 321–327 below will be mentioned in appropriate places.

321. Story of the nations series. New York, G. P. Putnam's Sons.

322. The making of the nations series. London, Adam and Charles Black.

323. The great peoples series. New York, Appleton.

324. Heroes of the nations series. New York, G. P. Putnam's Sons.

325. The world's epoch makers. Edited by O. SMEATON. New York, Charles Scribner's Sons.

326. Monographien zur Weltgeschichte. Edited by E. HEYCK and others. Bielefeld, 1897ff. Illustrated.

327. Weltgeschichte in Karakterbildern. Edited by F. KAMPERS and others. Part II on the middle ages. Illustrated.

§2. Medieval and Modern History

328. Histoire générale du IV^e^ siècle à nos jours. Edited by E. LAVISSE and A. RAMBAUD. 12 vols. Paris, 1893–1901.

Vols. I–III cover the period 395–1492 A.D. A co-operative work of fundamental importance. About a dozen scholars have contributed to each volume. A new illustrated edition is planned. It is to be hoped that it will be supplemented by an index and an atlas of maps.

E. LAVISSE, *Vue générale de l'histoire politique de l'Europe*, 2nd edition, Paris, 1890; translated by C. GROSS, *General view of the political history of Europe*, New York, 1897, is a remarkably lucid and stimulating summary of a couple of hundred pages.

329. Periods of European history. 8 vols. London and New York, Macmillan.

C. W. C. OMAN, *The dark ages, 476–918*, 1893, 2nd edition, 1894. T. F. TOUT, *The empire and papacy, 918–1273*, 1898. R. LODGE, *The close of the middle ages, 1273–1494*, 1901.

330. Handbuch der mittelalterlichen und neueren Geschichte. Edited by G. v. BELOW and F. MEINEKE. Munich and Berlin, 1903ff.

An undertaking like the *Handbuch der klassischen Altertumswissenschaft*, edited by I. MÜLLER, but broader in scope. The volumes are appearing irregularly. In a measure this publication is supplemented by the *Grundriss* edited by MEISTER, no. **331** below, and by the *Bibliothek der Geschichtswissenschaft*, no. **320** above.

331. Grundriss der Geschichtswissenschaft: zur Einführung in das Studium der deutschen Geschichte des Mittelalters und der Neuzeit. Edited by A. MEISTER. Leipzig and Berlin, 1906ff.

Not confined to German history. Special attention is given to sciences auxiliary to history. The various numbers which have appeared thus far will be mentioned in their appropriate places.

332. Allgemeine Staatengeschichte. Hamburg, 1829ff. Gotha, 1855ff. Founded by A. H. L. HEEREN and F. A. UKERT. Continued by W. v. GIESEBRECHT and K. LAMPRECHT. Part I. Geschichte der europäischen Staaten.

Started by the same impulses which created the *Monumenta Germaniae historica*, no. **978** below. WOLF, no. **66** above, pp. 459–62, gives a good description of it and mentions some of the more useful works included. A complete list of the volumes is given by LOEWE, *Bückerkunde*, no. **32** above, Anhang.

333. LINDNER, T. Weltgeschichte seit der Völkerwanderung. Vols. I–VII, Stuttgart and Berlin, 1901–1910.

334. KLOPP, O. Politische Geschichte Europas seit der Völkerwanderung. 2 vols. Mainz, 1912.

335. Epochs of modern history. Longmans.

R. W. CHURCH, *The beginnings of the middle ages*, 1885; A. H. JOHNSON, *The Normans in Europe*, 1877; G. W. COX, *The crusades*, 1875.

336. FORREST, J. The development of western civilization. Chicago, 1907.

337. DEWE, J. A. Mediaeval and modern history: its formative causes and broad movements. London, 1907.

338. HILL, D. J. A history of diplomacy in the international development of Europe. 2 vols. London, 1905.

339. WOOLEY, R. M. Coronation rites. Cambridge, University Press, 1915. (Cambridge handbooks of liturgical study.)

§3. Medieval History

(*a*) STANDARD GENERAL SURVEYS

340. The Cambridge medieval history. Planned by J. B. BURY. Edited by H. M. GWATKIN and J. P. WHITNEY. London and New York, 1911ff. Vol. II appeared in 1913.

Vol. I, *The renaissance*, of the *Cambridge modern history*, 12 vols., London, 1902ff., is important for the history of the fifteenth century and some chapters reach back even farther.

341. GIBBON, E. [1737–1794]. The history of the decline and fall of the Roman empire. Edited with introduction, notes, appendices and index by J. B. BURY. 7 vols. London, 1896–1900.

The first edition appeared 1776–1781. It covers the period from the 2nd century A.D. to the close of the 16th century. The scope of the work is so broad that it practically is a general history of the middle ages. BURY'S edition was reprinted in 12 vols. by Fred de Fau and Company of New York in 1906, in *The works of Edward Gibbon*, vols. I–XII. This reprint is in large clear type on good white paper which adds much to the enjoyment of reading GIBBON. A very cheap new edition in six volumes, is now in *Everyman's library*. no. 944 below. It is edited by A. SMEATON, who has utilized the notes of GUIZOT, MILMAN, WENDT, SMITH, and BURY, besides adding some of his own. The notes of GIBBON are given in full.

342. ASSMANN, W. Geschichte des Mittelalters. Parts I and II [to 1273] in 2nd edition by E. MEYER. Brunswick, 1875–79. Part III [Germany from 1273 to 1517] in 3rd edition by A. VON R. FISCHER, B. SCHEPPING and L. VIERECK. Brunswick, 1902–06.

343. PRUTZ, H. Staatengeschichte des Abendlandes im Mittelalter von Karl dem Grossen bis auf Maximilian. 2 vols. Berlin, 1885–87.

Part of no. 313 above.

344. PRUTZ, H. and PFLUGK-HARTTUNG, J. v. Geschichte des Mittelalters. Berlin, 1889.

(*b*) LARGE SECTIONS OF THE MIDDLE AGES

345. HODGKIN, T. Italy and her invaders. 8 vols. Oxford, 1880–99. Vols. V–VI in a second edition, revised by R. H. HODGKIN, 1916.

I, *The Visigothic invasion;* II, *The Hunnish invasion: the Vandal invasion and the Herulian mutiny;* III, *The Ostrogothic invasion, 476–535;* IV, *The imperial restoration, 535–553;* V,

The Lombard invasion, 553–600; VI, *The Lombard kingdom, 600–744;* VII, *Frankish invasions, 744–774;* VIII, *The Frankish empire, 774–814.*

In spite of its restricted title, this work is practically a general history of Europe from the 4th to the 9th century.

346. CURTEIS, A. M. History of the Roman empire from the death of Theodosius the Great to the coronation of Charles the Great. London and Philadelphia, 1875.

347. LOSERTH, J. Geschichte des späteren Mittelalters von 1197 bis 1492. Munich, 1903.

Part of no. 332 above. It contains excellent bibliographies.

(*c*) IMPRESSIONISTIC SURVEYS OF THE MIDDLE AGES

348. HALLAM, H. View of the state of Europe during the middle ages. 2 vols. London, 1818. 11th edition, 3 vols., 1855. Often reprinted.

349. YOUNG, G. F. East and west through fifteen centuries: being a general history from B.C. 44 to A.D. 1453. To be complete in 4 vols. London, 1916ff. Vols. I and II [to the middle of the 8th century] appeared in 1916.

350. FLETCHER, C. R. L. The making of western Europe: being an attempt to trace the fortunes of the children of the Roman empire. In 2 vols. Vol. I: The dark ages, A.D. 300–1000. Vol. II: The first renaissance, A.D. 1000–1190. London, 1912ff.

In popular vein, like his *History of England.*

351. SOUTTAR, R. A short history of mediaeval peoples: from the dawn of the Christian era to the fall of Constantinople. New York, 1907.

352. DEL MAR, A. The middle ages revisited or the Roman government and religion and their relation to Britain. New York, 1900.

Contains a curious bibliography.

353. SHEPPARD, J. G. The fall of Rome and the rise of new nationalities. London, 1861.

A series of lectures.

(*d*) RECENT FOREIGN TEXT BOOKS

354. BELLONOTTO, Storia del medio evo (dal 475 al 1313). Vol. I. Turin, 1913.

355. FELTEN, W. Geschichte des Mittelalters: von Christi Geburt bis zur Entdeckung Amerikas. Vienna, 1910.

356. MOELLER, C. Histoire du moyen âge (476–950). Louvain and Paris, 1904. Second impression, augmented by an analytical table, 1910.

357. SEIGNOBOS, C. Le moyen âge. Paris, 1911.

(*e*) SELECTIONS FROM MODERN HISTORIANS

358. LANGLOIS, C. V. Lectures historiques: histoire du moyen âge (395–1270). Paris, 1901. 2nd edition, 1912.

Short selections from French historians, together with good bibliographies.

359. MUNRO, D. C., and SELLERY, G. C. Mediaeval civilization. New York, 1904. Enlarged edition, 1907.

A collection of comparatively short selections, most of them translated and adapted from standard French and German works.

(*f*) THE MEDITERRANEAN

360. MANFRONI, C. Il dominio del Mediterraneo durante il medio evo. Rome, 1900. (Reprint from Rivista marittima, 1900.)

361. HERRE, P. Der Kampf um die Herrschaft im Mittelmeer. Leipzig, 1909. (Wissenschaft und Bildung, 46.)

§4. Text Books of Medieval History in English

362. ADAMS, G. B. Medieval and modern history. New York, Macmillan, 1899.

A portion of his old *European history*, very slightly revised.

363. ADAMS, G. B. Civilization during the middle ages. New York, Scribner, 1896. New, revised, edition, 1914.

364. BELL, K. Mediaeval Europe: a text-book of European history, 1095–1254. Oxford, 1911. (Oxford text-books of European history.)

365. BÉMONT, C., and MONOD, G. Histoire de l'Europe et en particular de France de 395 à 1270. Paris, 1891. Translated by MARY SLOAN and G. B. ADAMS, Medieval Europe, 395–1270. New York, 1902.

366. BOURNE, H. E. History of mediaeval and modern Europe. New York, Longmans, 1905.

367. DAVIS, H. W. C. Medieval Europe. New York, Holt, 1911.

368. DAVIS, W. S. A history of mediaeval and modern Europe. Boston, Houghton, Mifflin and Company, 1914.

369. DURUY, V. Histoire du moyen âge. Paris, 1861. Translated and abridged from the 12th edition by E. H. and M. D. WHITNEY, with notes and revisions by G. B. ADAMS, The history of the middle ages. New York, 1891.

370. EMERTON, E. Introduction to the middle ages (375–814). Boston, Ginn and Co., 1888.

371. EMERTON, E. Mediaeval Europe (814–1300). Boston, Ginn and Co., 1894.

Professor EMERTON is preparing a volume entitled, *The beginnings of modern Europe, 1250–1450.*

372. GRANT, A. J. A history of Europe. New York, Longmans, 1913.

373. HARDING, S. B. New medieval and modern history. New York, American Book Co., 1913.

Based on the author's *Essentials in mediaeval and Modern history,* 1909.

374. HOWE, S. B. Essentials in early European history. New York, Longmans, 1913.

375. MEYERS, P. V. N. Mediaeval and modern history. Boston, Ginn and Co., 1885. Revised edition, 1902, in 2 parts; I, The middle ages; II, The modern age. The 1902 edition was published again in 1905 in one volume, constituting a slightly abridged edition of the 1902 text.

376. MUNRO, D. C. A history of the middle ages. New York, D. Appleton and Co., 1902.

377. ROBINSON, J. H. Medieval and modern times: an introduction to the history of western Europe from the dissolution of the Roman empire to the opening of the great war of 1914. Boston, Ginn and Co., 1916.

Practically a new edition of the author's *An introduction to the history of western Europe,* Boston, Ginn and Co., 1902.

378. SEIGNOBOS, C. History of mediaeval and modern civilization. New York, Charles Scribner's Sons, 1907.

379. Six ages of European history from A.D. 476 to 1878. 6 vols. Edited by A. H. JOHNSON. For the higher forms of schools. London and New York, The Macmillan Co., 1910.

J. B. H. MASTERMAN, *The dawn of mediaeval Europe, 476–918;* BEATRICE A. LEES, *The central period of the middle age, 918–1273;* ELEANOR C. LODGE, *The end of the middle age, 1273–1453.*

380. TERRY, C. S. A short history of Europe from the fall of the Roman empire to the fall of the eastern empire. London, Rutledge, 1911.

381. THATCHER, O. J. and SCHWILL, F. Europe in the middle age. New York, Charles Scribner's Sons, 1897.

L. THORNDIKE, *The history of medieval Europe,* Boston, Houghton, Mifflin Company, has been announced in 1917 as a text book written especially for college students.

382. WEST, W. M. The modern world, from Charlemagne to the present time. Boston, Allyn and Bacon, 1915.

Based upon the author's *Modern history*, Boston, 1907.

§5. "Source Books": Short Selections from the Sources for Schools

These books are included here rather than under Sources, nos. **949–1013** below, because they are so closely associated with text books in the schools.

383. AYER, J. C. Source book of church history for the first six centuries. New York, Scribner's Sons, 1913.

A similar source book which covers about the same ground but prints documents in the original Greek and Latin is the *Enchiridion fontium historiae ecclesiasticae antique*, edited by C. KIRCH, Freiburg-i.-B., 1910.

384. COULTON, G. G. A mediaeval garner. London, 1910.

385. DUNCALF, F., and KREY, A. C. Parallel source problems in mediaeval history. New York, Harper and Brothers, 1912.

386. FLING, F. W. European history studies: civilization during the middle ages. Selections made by G. JONES. Ten numbers. Chicago, 1900.

The Teutonic barbarians; Monasticism; Extracts from the Koran; Chivalry and the mode of warfare; etc.

387. HENDERSON, E. F. Select historical documents of the middle ages. London and New York, The Macmillan Co., 1892.

388. MATHEWS, S. Select mediaeval documents and other material, illustrating the history of church and empire, 754–1254. Boston and Chicago, 1892. 2nd edition, 1900.

The documents are printed in the original Latin.

389. OGG, F. A. A source book of mediaeval history. New York, American Book Co., 1908.

390. REICH, E. Select documents illustrating mediaeval and modern history. London, King, 1905.

Documents are in Latin.

391. ROBINSON, J. H. Readings in European history. 2 vols. Chicago, Ginn and Co., 1906. Abridged in one vol., 1906.

Contains good critical bibliographies at the end of chapters. Vol. I covers the middle ages.

392. THATCHER, O. J., and MCNEAL, E. H. A source book of mediaeval history. New York, Scribners, 1905.

393. Translations and reprints from original sources in European history. Department of history, University of Pennsylvania. Also sold by Longmans, Green and Co., New York, 1894ff.

The following numbers pertain to medieval history: Vol. I, No. 2 (15 cents), No. 4 (25 cents); Vol. II, No. 3 (10 cents), No. 4 (10 cents); No. 7 (20 cents); Vol. III, No. 2 (20 cents), No. 3 (20 cents), No. 4 (20 cents), No. 5 (20 cents). The publishers will bind all these together in one volume.

§6. Histories of the Church

(*a*) GENERAL HISTORIES OF THE CHURCH

(1) *History of Religions*

394. REINACH, S. Orpheus: histoire générale des religions. 3rd edition, Paris, 1909. Translated by FLORENCE SIMMONDS, Orpheus: a general history of religions. New York, 1909.

Since no attempt is made in this *Guide* to list books on the history of religions, this popular little manual, with its bibliographical notes at the end of chapters, will serve as an introduction to those who wish to go deeper into the subject.

(2) *Voluminous Standard Accounts*

395. MOEILER, W. Lehrbuch der Kirchengeschichte. 3 vols. Freiburg, 1889–94. 2nd edition, in 4 vols, 1893–1902. Vol. III in 3rd edition, 1907. Translated by A. RUTHERFORD and J. H. FREESE, History of the Christian church. 3 vols. London and New York, 1893–1902.

Vol. II on the middle ages. Protestant.

396. SCHAFF, P. History of the Christian church. New edition in 7 vols. New York, 1882–1910.

Protestant. Vol. V, which is by D. S. SCHAFF, his son, extends to 1517.

397. HERGENRÖTHER, J. VON. Handbuch der allgemeinen Kirchengeschichte. 3 vols. 5th edition, by J. P. KIRSCH. Freiburg, 1911ff. (Theologische Bibliothek).

There is a French translation by BELET. Roman catholic.

398. MOURRET, F. Histoire générale de l'église. 8 vols. Paris, 1909ff.

399. NEANDER, J. A. W. Allgemeine Geschichte der christlichen Religion und Kirche [to 1430]. 6 vols. Hamburg, 1826–52. Translated by J. TORREY, General history of the Christian religion and church. 9 vols. London, 1847–55.

Protestant.

400. GIESELER, J. C. L. Lehrbuch der Kirchengeschichte. 3 vols. Bonn, 1824ff. In 6 vols. in 5, 1828–57. Translated by S. DAVIDSON, A text-book of church history. 5 vols. Edinburgh, 1854; American edition, New York, 1876–80.

Protestant.

401. ALZOG, J. Universalgeschichte der Kirche. Mainz, 1841. 10th edition, by F. X. KRAUS, 1882. Translated from the 9th German edition by F. J. PABISCH and T. S. BYRNE, Manual of universal church history. 4 vols. Dublin, 1889–1902.

402. SHELDON, H. C. History of the Christian church. 5 vols. New York, 1894.

403. BAUR, F. C. Geschichte der christlichen Kirche. 5 vols. 3rd edition of vol. I; 2nd edition of vols. II, III, IV. Tübingen, 1863–1877.

404. MÖHLER, J. A. Kirchengeschichte, edited by P. B. GAMS. 3 vols. Regensburg, 1867–1870.

(3) *Shorter Accounts and Text Books*

405. FISHER, G. P. History of the Christian church. New York, 1888.

Protestant. *A guide to the study of the Christian religion*, edited by G. B. SMITH, Chicago [1916]. W. HOBHOUSE, The *church and the world in idea and in history*, London, 1910, 2nd edition, revised, 1911 (Bampton lectures, 1909). A. BAUDRILLART, *L'église catholique, la renaissance, le protestantisme*, Paris, 1904, translated by Mrs. P. GIBBS, *The catholic church, the renaissance and protestantism*, London, 1908, is a series of lectures. A. MATER, *L'église catholique: sa constitution, son administration*, Paris, 1906, is historical in its treatment.

406. MÜLLER, K. Kirchengeschichte. 2 vols. [to 1555]. Tübingen, 1892–1902. In Grundriss der theologischen Wissenschaften, 4, 2.

See the author's short sketch entitled, "Christentum und Kirche Westeuropas im Mittelalter," in *Kultur der Gegenwart*, no. 729 below, part I, IV, 2nd edition, Berlin and Leipzig, 1909.

407. KURTZ, J. H. Lehrbuch der Kirchengeschichte. Mitau, 1894. 14th edition, by N. BONWETSCH and T. TSCHACKERT. 2 vols. Leipzig, 1906. Translated from the 9th German edition by J. MACPHERSON, Church history. 3 vols. London, 1888–93.

Protestant.

408. KNÖPFLER, A. Lehrbuch der Kirchengeschichte auf Grund der akademischen Vorlesungen von K. J. v. HEFELE. 5th edition, Freiburg, 1910.

Roman catholic.

409. FUNK, F. X. Lehrbuch der Kirchengeschichte. 5th edition. Paderborn, 1907 (Wissenschaftliche Handbibliothek).

Roman catholic.

410. KRAUS, F. X. Lehrbuch der Kirchengeschichte. 6th edition. Trier, 1909.

Roman catholic.

411. SCHUBERT, H. v. Grundzüge der Kirchengeschichte. 4th edition. Tübingen, 1909.

412. SOHM, R. Grundriss der Kirchengeschichte. Leipzig, 1887. 16th edition, 1909. Translated by MAY SINCLAIR, from the 8th German edition, Outlines of church history. London, 1901.

413. LOOFS, F. Grundlinien der Kirchengeschichte. Halle, 1901. 2nd edition, 1909.

414. HEUSSI, K. Kompendium der Kirchengeschichte. Tübingen, 1909.

415. HURST, J. F. A history of the Christian church. 2 vols. New York, 1897–1900 (Library of biblical and theological literature, vols. VII and VIII).

416. WEINGARTEN, H. Zeittafeln und Überblicke zur Kirchengeschichte. 6th edition, by C. F. ARNOLD. Leipzig, 1905.

417. Unsere religiösen Erzieher: eine Geschichte des Christentums in Lebensbildern. Edited by B. BESS. 2 vols. Leipzig, 1908.

(4) *Miscellaneous*

418. Epochs of church history. Edited by M. CREIGHTON. London, Longmans, Green and Co.

A. PLUMMER, *The church of the early fathers;* A. CARR, The *church and the Roman empire;* H. M. GWATKIN, *The Arian controversy;* H. F. TOZER, *The church and the eastern empire;* W. R. STEPHENS, *Hildebrand and his times;* U. BALZANI, *The popes and the Hohenstaufens.*

419. RENAN, E. Etudes d'histoire religieuse. 7th edition. Paris, 1864. Nouvelles études d'histoire religieuse. Paris, 1884.

420. VACANDARD, E. Etudes de critique et d'histoire religieuse. 2 vols. Vol. I, 4th edition; vol. II, 2nd edition, Paris, 1909–1910.

421. Kirchengeschichtliche Festgabe ANTON DE WAAL zum goldenen Priester-Jubiläum (11 October 1912) dargebracht. Edited by F. X. SEPPELT. Freiburg, 1913. (In Römische Quartalschrift, Supplementheft XX.)

Analyzed in *Revue historique,* CXXII (1916), 322.

(*b*) THE ECCLESIASTICAL HIERARCHY

422. EUBEL, C. Hierarchia catholica medii aevi. 3 vols. Münster, 1898–1910. Vol. I, 2nd edition, Münster, 1913.

Extends from 1198 to 1600 A.D.

423. GAMS, P. B. Series episcoporum ecclesiae catholicae. Ratisbon, 1873. Supplement, 1886.

(*c*) THE LATIN CHURCH IN THE MIDDLE AGES

(1) *Extensive Standard Accounts*

424. MILMAN, H. H. History of Latin Christianity. 6 vols. London, 1854–5. Latest edition, 9 vols., London, 1883.

Extends to the middle of the fifteenth century. Protestant. See also J. C. ROBERTSON, *History of the Christian church to the reformation*, 6th edition, 8 vols., London, 1874–1875.

425. BARONIUS, C. (died 1607). Annales ecclesiastici a Christo nato ad annum 1198. 12 vols. Rome, 1588–93. Edited by J. D. MANSI. 35 vols. Lucca, 1738–59. Apparatus, 1 vol., 1740. Index, 4 vols., 1757–9. New edition, with all continuations, 37 vols. Barle-Duc and Paris, 1864–83. This edition was to comprise about 50 vols., but was not completed.

Fragmentary translations of this work have been made into French, Italian, German, Polish, and Arabic. BARONIUS printed many extensive selections from the sources.

426. DUFOURCQ, A. L'avenir du christianisme. 8 vols. Paris, 1908ff.

427. LANGEN, J. Geschichte der römischen Kirche. 4 vols. (to Innocent III). Bonn, 1881–1893.

(2) *Text Books*

428. FLICK, A. C. The rise of the mediaeval church. New York, 1909.

429. FICKER, G., and HERMELINK, H. Handbuch der Kirchengeschichte für Studierende: das Mittelalter. Tübingen, 1912.

430. SELL, K. Christentum und Weltgeschichte bis zur Reformation. Leipzig, 1910 (Aus Natur und Geisteswelt, 297).

431. LAGARDE, A. The Latin church in the middle ages. Translated by A. ALEXANDER. New York, 1915 (International Theological Library).

432. HARDWICK, C. A history of the Christian church: middle age. 4th edition, revised, and edited by W. STUBBS. London, 1874.

(3) *Miscellaneous*

434. LEA, H. C. A history of auricular confession and indulgences in the Latin church. 3 vols. Philadelphia, 1896.

435. LEA, H. C. An historical sketch of sacerdotal celibacy in the Christian church. 2 vols. Philadelphia, 1867. 3rd edition, 2 vols., London, 1907.

436. LEA, H. C. Studies in church history: the rise of the temporal power; benefit of clergy; excommunication; the early church and slavery, etc. Philadelphia, 1883.

437. MORIN, G. Etudes, textes, découvertes: contributions à l'histoire des douze premiers siècles. Vol. I. Paris, 1913.

438. TRENCH, R. C. Lectures on medieval church history. New York, 1878.

(*d*) THE MEDIEVAL PAPACY

439. MANN, H. K. The lives of the popes in the early middle ages. London, 1902ff.

Vol. VIII (to 1130), appeared in 1910. For the history of the papacy in the later middle ages, see CREIGHTON, PASTOR, etc., under outline XXIX of part II below.

440. GREGOROVIUS, F. Geschichte der Stadt Rom im Mittelalter. 8 vols. Stuttgart, 1859–72. 5th edition, Stuttgart, 1903ff. Translated from 4th German edition by ANNIE HAMILTON, History of the city of Rome in the middle ages. 8 vols. in 13. London, 1894–1902.

441. GRISAR, H. Geschichte Roms und der Päpste im Mittelalter. Freiburg, 1898ff. Translated by L. CAPPADELTA, History of Rome and the popes in the middle ages. St. Louis, 1911ff.

442. REUMONT, A. v. Geschichte der Stadt Rom. 3 vols. Berlin, 1867–1870.

Chiefly on the middle ages.

443. GREENWOOD, T. Cathedra Petri: a political history of the great Latin patriarchate. 14 books in 6 vols. London, 1856–72.

Extends to the reformation.

444. BARRY, W. The papal monarchy from St. Gregory the Great to Boniface VIII (590–1303). London, 1902 (The story of the nations series).

445. DÖLLINGER, J. J. I. VON. Die Papstfabeln des Mittelalters. Munich, 1863. 2nd edition by J. FRIEDRICH. Stuttgart, 1890. Translated by H. B. SMITH, Fables respecting the popes in the middle ages. New York, 1872.

446. DÖLLINGER, J. J. I. VON [Psuedonym, JANUS]. Der Papst und das Konzil. Leipzig, 1869. 2nd edition, by J. FRIEDRICH, under

the title, Das Papsttum, Munich, 1892. Translated into English, The pope and the council. Boston, 1870.

See J. HERGENRÖTHER, *Anti-Janus*, Freiburg, 1870. Although these books reflect the ecclesiastical politics in Germany of the time when they were written, they are full of interest to the student of medieval history.

447. NORDEN, W. Das Papsttum und Byzanz: die Trennung der beiden Mächte und das Problem ihrer Wiedervereinigung bis 1453. Berlin, 1903.

448. SEPPELT, F. X. Das Papsttum und Byzanz. Breslau, 1904 (Kirchengeschichtliche Abhandlungen, ed. by M. SDRALEK, 2).

449. MCKILLIAM, A. E. A chronicle of the popes from St. Peter to Pius X. London, 1912.

See also the old but detailed ARTAUD DE MONTOR, *Histoire des souverains pontifes romains*, 8 vols., Paris, 1847.

450. MCCABE, J. Crises in the history of the papacy. New York, 1916.

451. ROCQUAIN, F. La papauté au moyen âge: Nicolas I., Grégoire VII., Innocent III., Boniface VIII. Paris, 1881.

452. KRÜGER, G. Das Papsttum: seine Idee und ihre Träger. Tübingen, 1907 (Religionsgeschichtliche Volksbücher). Translated by F. M. S. BATCHELOR and C. A. MILES, The papacy: the idea and its exponents. New York, 1909.

453. WURM, H. Die Papstwahl: ihre Geschichte und Gebräuche. Cologne, 1902.

See also L. LECTOR, *Le conclave: origines, histoire, organisation, législative ancienne et moderne*, Paris, 1902.

454. BEET, W. E. The medieval papacy, and other essays, London, 1914.

(*e*) CHURCH AND STATE IN THE MIDDLE AGES

See also nos. 499–504, 670, 725 above.

455. EICHMANN, E. Kirche und Staat. Vols. I–II [750–1350 A.D.] Paderborn, 1912–1914.

456. SCADUTO, L. Stato e chiesa negli scritti politici dalla fine della lotta per le investiture sino alle morte di Ludovico il Bavaro (1122–1347). Florence, 1882.

457. NIEHUES, B. Geschichte des Verhältnisses zwischen Kaiserthum und Papstthum im Mittelalter. 2 vols. 2nd edition, Münster, 1877–87.

To the time of Otto the Great.

458. FRIEDBERG, E. Die mittelalterlichen Lehren über das Verhältnis von Staat und Kirche. Part I. Leipzig, 1874.

See also his *Die Grenzen zwischen Staat und Kirche*, Tübingen, 1872.

459. GREENWOOD, ALICE D. The empire and the papacy in the middle ages. 3rd edition, London, 1901.

Too broad in scope. It practically is a short general history of the middle ages.

(*f*) THE CHURCH IN FRANCE IN THE MIDDLE AGES

460. Gallia Christiana in provincias ecclesiasticas distributa. Begun by the Benedictines of St. Maur and continued by the Académie des inscriptions et belles-lettres. 16 vols. Paris, 1715–65. Gallia Christiana novissima. 3 vols. 1895–1900.

Contents analyzed by A. FRANKLIN, *Les sources de l'histoire de France*, no. 23 above, 465–85. See also P. DESLANDRES, *Histoire de l'église catholique en France*, Paris, 1913; and H. FISQUET, *La France pontificale*, 2 vols., Paris [1864–1866].

(*g*) THE CHURCH IN GERMANY IN THE MIDDLE AGES

461. HAUCK, A. Kirchengeschichte Deutschlands. Vols. I–V, part I. Leipzig, 1887–1911. Vol. I in 3rd to 4th edition, 1904; vol. II in 3rd to 4th edition, 1911; vol. III in 3rd to 4th edition, 1906.

See also A. NAEGLE, *Kirchengeschichte Böhmens: quellenmässig und kritisch dargestellt*, vol. I (on the introduction of Christianity), Vienna, 1915; and W. MOLL, *Kerkgeschiedenis van Nederland voor de hervorming*, 2 vols., Arnhem and Utrecht, 1869, index 1871; German edition by P. ZUPPKE, *Die vorreformatorische Kirchengeschichte der Niederlande*, 2 vols., Leipzig, 1895.

462. HINSCHIUS, P. Das Kirchenrecht der Katholiken und Protestanten in Deutschland. Part I. Das katholische Kirchenrecht. 6 vols. in 7. Berlin, 1869–97.

Incomplete. Although a book on church law, this vast work is placed here because it is a mine of trustworthy details on all phases of the church.

463. WERMINGHOFF, A. Geschichte der Kirchenverfassung Deutschlands im Mittelalter. Vol. I. Leipzig, 1905.

His *Verfassungsgeschichte der deutschen Kirche im Mittelalter*, Leipzig, 1907, in *Grundriss*, no. 331 above, vol. II, 6, is essentially an abridgment of his *Geschichte*.

(*h*) THE CHURCH IN ITALY IN THE MIDDLE AGES

464. SAVIO, F. (S. J.). Gli antichi vescovi d'Italia dalle origini al 1300 descritti per regioni: la Lombardia, parte I., Milano. Florence, 1913.

The beginning of a very important Italia sacra, which will supersede F. UGHELLI, *Italia sacra*, 9 vols., Rome, 1644–62; 2nd edition, 10 vols., Venice, 1717–22.

465. DRESDNER, A. Kultur- und Sittengeschichte der italienischen Geistlichkeit. Breslau, 1890.

466. CAPPELLETTI. Le chiese d'Italia dalla loro origine sino ai nostri giorni. 21 vols. Venice, 1844–70.

(*i*) THE CHURCH IN SPAIN IN THE MIDDLE AGES

467. España sagrada. Edited by H. FLOREZ, etc. 51 vols. Madrid, 1754–1879.

Contains many original sources. Index of the first 49 vols. in vol. XXII of *Colección de documentos ineditos para la historia de España*, no. **997** below. See also V. DE LA FUENTE, *Historia ecclésiastica de España*, 2nd edition, 6 vols., Madrid, 1873–75.

468. GAMS, P. B. Die Kirchengeschichte von Spanien. 3 vols. Regensburg, 1862–1879.

(*j*) HISTORY OF CHURCH COUNCILS

469. HEFELE, C. J. VON. Conciliengeschichte. 7 vols. Freiburg-i-B., 1855–74; 2nd edition, 6 vols., 1873–90. Continued by J. A. C. HERGENRÖTHER, vols. VIII–IX, 1887–90. Translated by W. R. CLARK, History of the councils of the church, vols. I–V [to 787], Edinburgh, 1871–96. Translated and augmented by H. LECLERQ, Histoire des conciles. Paris, 1907ff. Vols. I–V, part I, in 9 vols. [to 1152]. Paris, 1907–12.

470. LANDON, E. H. A manual of councils of the holy catholic church. 1845. New and revised edition by his son, P. LANDON. 2 vols. Edinburgh, 1893.

Arranged in dictionary form, thus constituting a handy work of reference.

471. DESLANDRES, P. Les grands concile des Latran. Paris, 1913. (In Questions historiques, science et religion, no. 682.)

E. CECCHUCHI, *Histoire des conciles oecuméniques*, Lyons, 1901.

(*k*) HISTORY OF DOGMA

472. HARNACK, A. Lehrbuch der Dogmengeschichte. 3 vols. Freiburg-i-B., 1886ff. 4th edition, revised, in 3 vols. Tübingen, 1909–10. Translated from the 3rd edition, by N. BUCHANAN, History of dogma, 7 vols., London, 1897–99.

See also his *Dogmengeschichte*, 4th edition, Tübingen, 1905.

473. TIXERONT, J. Histoire des dogmes. 3 vols. 2nd to 4th editions. Paris, 1906–12. Translated by H. L. B., History of dogmas. St. Louis, 1910ff.

Extends to 800 A.D.

474. FISHER, G. P. History of Christian doctrine. New York, 1896 (The international theological library, IV).

A history of doctrine as well as of dogmas. See also K. R. HAGENBACH, *A history of Christian doctrines* [English translation], Edinburgh, 1883–1885.

475. LOOFS, F. Leitfaden zum Studium der Dogmengeschichte. Halle, 1889. 4th edition, 1906.

Protestant.

476. SEEBERG, R. Lehrbuch der Dogmengeschichte. 2 vols. 2nd edition. Leipzig, 1908–10.

See also his *Grundriss der Dogmengeschichte*, 3rd edition, Leipzig, 1910.

477. BONWETSCH, G. N. Grundriss der Dogmengeschichte. Munich, 1908.

478. BACH, J. Die Dogmengeschichte des Mittelalters vom christologischen Standpunkt. 2 vols. Vienna, 1873–75.

(*l*) MONASTICISM

479. MONTALEMBERT, COMTE DE [C. F. R. DE TRYON]. Histoire des moines d'occident depuis S. Benoît jusqu'à S. Bernard. 7 vols. Paris, 1860–1877. Authorized translation, The monks of the west, 7 vols., Edinburgh, 1861–79; another edition, with introduction by F. A. GASQUET, 6 vols., London, 1896.

480. WISHART, A. W. Short history of monks and monasteries. Trenton, 1902.

481. WORKMAN, H. B. The evolution of the monastic ideal: from the earliest times down to the coming of the friars. London, 1913.

482. ECKENSTEIN, LINA. Women under monasticism: chapters on saint-lore and convent life between A.D. 500 and A.D. 1500. Cambridge, 1896.

See also ETHEL R. WHEELER, *Women of the cell and cloister*, London [1913]; and AGNES B. C. DUNBAR, *A dictionary of saintly women*, 2 vols., London, 1904–1905.

483. HEIMBUCHER, M. Die Orden und Kongregationen der katholischen Kirche. 2 vols. Paderborn, 1896–97. 2nd edition, 3 vols., 1907–08.

484. ZÖCKLER, O. Askese und Mönchthum. 2 vols. 2nd edition. Frankfurt, 1897.

These two books contain excellent bibliographies.

485. MORIN, G. L'ideal monastique et la vie chrétienne des premiers jours. 2nd edition, revised. Paris, 1914.

486. WOODHOUSE, F. C. Monasticism, ancient and modern. London [1896].

487. JAMESON, ANNA. Legends of the monastic orders. Corrected and revised edition. Boston [1884].

(*m*) COLLECTIONS ON CHURCH HISTORY

488. Freiburger historische Studien. Edited by A. BÜCHI, etc. Fribourg (Switzerland), 1905ff.

489. Forschungen zur christlichen Literatur- und Dogmengeschichte. Edited by A. EHRHARD and J. P. KIRSCH. Paderborn, 1900ff.

490. Kirchengeschichtliche Abhandlungen. Edited by SDRALEK. Breslau, 1902ff.

491. Kirchenrechtliche Abhandlungen. Edited by U. STUTZ. Stuttgart, 1902ff.

492. Kirchengeschichtliche Studien. Edited by A. KNÖPFLER, etc. 6 vols. Münster, 1891ff.

493. Papers of the American society of church history. 2nd series. Edited by W. W. ROCKWELL. New York, 1908ff.

494. Studien und Mitteilungen aus dem kirchenhistorischen Seminar der theologischen Fakultät zu Wien. Vienna, 1908ff.

495. Studien zur Geschichte der Theologie und der Kirche. Edited by N. BONWETSCH und R. SEEBERG. Leipzig, 1897ff. Neue Studien, etc. Same editors. Berlin, 1907ff.

496. Veröffentlichungen aus dem kirchenhistorischen Seminar zu München. Edited by A. KNÖPFLER. Munich, 1899ff.

497. FUNK, F. X. v. Kirchengeschichtliche Abhandlungen und Untersuchungen. Vols. I–III. Paderborn, 1897–1907.

498. HARNACK, A. Reden und Aufsätze. 2 vols. Giessen, 1904. 2nd edition, 1906.

§7. The Medieval Empire in the West

See also no. 538 below; and the general books on Germany and Italy, nos. 560–621 below.

499. BRYCE, J. The holy Roman empire. Oxford, 1864. 2nd edition, revised, 1866. A new edition, enlarged and revised, London and New York, 1904.

This is the best book on the subject in any language. See E. A. FREEMAN'S enthusiastic review of the 1st edition, with some references to the 3rd edition, 1871, in his *Historical essays*, first series, London, 1871, pp. 126–160 (first printed in the *North British review*, March, 1865). For GIBBON, *Decline and fall*, see no. 341 above.

500. FISHER, H. The medieval empire. 2 vols. London, 1898.

From Otto I to the end of the Hohenstaufen. This is not a systematic narrative of events, but rather a series of essays, mostly constitutional.

501. GIESEBRECHT, W. v. Geschichte der deutschen Kaiserzeit. 5 vols. Brunswick and Leipzig, 1855–88. Vols. I–III, 5th edition, Leipzig, 1881–90; vol. IV, 2nd edition, Brunswick, 1877; vol. VI, edited and continued by B. v. SIMSON, Leipzig, 1895.

502. ZEUMER, K. Heiliges römisches Reich deutscher Nation: eine Studie über den Reichstitel. Weimar, 1910 (Quellen und Studien, by K. ZEUMER, IV, 2).

503. FICKER, J. Das deutsche Kaiserreich in seinen universalen und nationalen Beziehungen. Innsbruck, 1861. 2nd edition unaltered, 1862.

504. BIROT, J. Le saint empire du couronnement de Charlemagne au sacre de Napoléon. Paris, 1903.

505. STENGEL, E. E. Den Kaiser macht das Heer: Studien zur Geschichte eines politischen Gedankens. Weimar, 1910.

506. HAHN, L. Das Kaisertum. Leipzig, 1913 (Das Erbe der Alten, vol. VI).

See ch. VIII, "Die Erben der römischen Kaiser."

507. GUGLIA, E. Die Geburts-, Sterbe- und Grabstätten der römisch-deutschen Kaiser und Könige. Vienna, 1914.

See also M. KEMMERICH, "Die Porträts deutscher Kaiser und Könige bis auf Rudolf von Habsburg," in *Neues Archiv*, XXXIII (1907), 461–513.

§8. France

(a) GENERAL HISTORIES OF FRANCE

(1) *Monumental Works*

508. Histoire de France depuis les origines jusqu'à la revolution. Edited by E. LAVISSE. 8 vols in 16. Paris, 1900–1912.

A new illustrated edition has been planned, which will, we hope, be supplied with maps and an index. This monumental co-operative work is now the standard history of France and has in large measure superseded the following older monumental histories of France, nos. 509–513 below. Good bibliographies are scattered in footnotes.

A very handy condensed history of France for the general reader is being published under the title, *Histoire de France racontée à tous*, edited by L. BATIFFOL, to be completed in six volumes, of which four had appeared in 1916; translated by ELSIE F. BUCKLEY, *The national history of France*, New York, 1916ff.

509. SISMONDI, J. C. L. S. DE. Histoire des français depuis l'origine jusqu'en 1789. 31 vols. Paris, 1821–44.

510. MARTIN, H. Histoire de France depuis les temps les plus reculés jusqu'en 1789. 19 vols. Paris, 1838–54. 4th edition in 17 vols., 1855–60. Popular, illustrated, edition, 7 vols., 1867–85.

511. DARESTE, M. C. Histoire de France depuis les origines jusqu'à nos jours. 3rd edition. 9 vols. Paris, 1884–85.

512. MICHELET, J. Histoire de France depuis les origines jusqu'en 1789. 17 vols. Paris, 1833–67. New edition, 19 vols., 1879. Abridged translations by G. H. SMITH, History of France, 2 vols., New York, 1845–47.

513. LAVALLÉE, T. Histoire des français depuis les temps des gaulois jusqu'en 1873. 7 vols. Paris, 1864–1873.

(2) *Shorter Accounts*

514. KITCHIN, G. W. A history of France (to 1793). 3 vols. Oxford, 1873–1877. Vol. I, 4th edition, revised, 1899.
Vol. I extends to 1453.

515. MACDONALD, J. R. M. A history of France. 3 vols. New York, 1915.

516. CROWE, E. E. The history of France. 3 vols. London, 1830.

517. GUIZOT, F. P. G. A popular history of France from the earliest times. Translated by R. BLACK. 6 vols. Boston [187–?].

(3) *One-volume Histories*

518. ADAMS, G. B. The growth of the French nation. New York, 1896.

519. BELLOC, H. A history of the French people. Vol. 1. London, 1913.

520. HASSALL, A. The French people. London, 1902.

521. HEADLAM, C. France. London, 1913 (The making of the nations.)

522. DURUY, V. Histoire de France. New edition, 2 vols., Paris, 1884. Translated and abridged from the 17th French edition by Mrs. M. CAREY; with an introduction by J. F. JAMESON, A history of France. New York, 1889.

523. CAVAIGNAC, E. Esquisse d'une histoire de France. Paris, 1910.

524. JERVIS, W. H. The student's France: a history of France from the earliest times to the establishment of the second empire in 1852. New York [no date, ca. 1862].

525. MACKINNON, J. The growth and decline of the French monarchy. London and New York, 1902.

The first four chapters, which are on the middle ages, are scarcely more than an introduction to the work, which is devoted mainly to the modern monarchy.

(*b*) GENERAL HISTORIES OF MEDIEVAL FRANCE

526. MASSON, G. The story of mediaeval France: from Hugh Capet to the beginning of the 18th century. New York, 1888 (Story of the nations series).

(*c*) FRENCH INSTITUTIONS

See also no. 584 below.

528. GLASSON, E. Histoire du droit et des institutions de la France. 8 vols. Paris, 1887–1903.

Extends to the end of the middle ages.

529. VIOLLET, P. Droit public: histoire des institutions politiques et administratives de la France. 3 vols. Paris, 1890–03.

Extends to the end of the middle ages. See also his *Histoire du droit civil français*, 3rd edition, Paris, 1905.

530. LUCHAIRE, A. Manuel des institutions françaises, période de Capetiens directs. Paris, 1892.

531. BRISSAUD, J. Manuel d'histoire du droit français. Issued in 5 parts. Paris, 1898–1904. Translated in part by J. W. GARNER, History of French public law. Boston, 1915.

Sums up the researches of VIOLLET, FLACH, LUCHAIRE, ESMEIN, FUSTEL DE COULANGES, etc.

532. ESMEIN, A. Cours élémentaire d'histoire du droit française. Paris, 1892. 8th edition, 1907.

533. HOLTZMANN, R. Französische Verfassungsgeschichte von der Mitte des neunten Jahrhunderts bis zur Revolution. Munich and Berlin, 1910.

Part of no. 330 above.

534. CAM, HELEN M. Local government in Francia and England. London, 1912.

535. FUNCK-BRENTANO, F. L'ancienne France: le roi. 3rd edition. Paris, 1913.

See also H. SCHREUER, *Die rechtlichen Grundlagen der französischen Königskrönung*, Weimar, 1911.

536. MAYER-HOMBERG, E. Die fränkischen Volksrechte im Mittelalter: eine rechtgeschichtliche Untersuchung. Vol. I, Die fränkischen Volksrechte und das Reichsrecht. Weimar, 1912.

(*d*) FOREIGN RELATIONS OF FRANCE

537. CORBIN, P. Histoire de la politique extérieure de la France. Vol. I. Les origines et la période anglaise (jusqu'en 1483). Paris, 1912.

538. LEROUX, A. Les conflicts entre la France et l'empire pendant le moyen âge. Paris, 1902.

Contains a very important bibliography. See also, H. OTTO, "Das Streben der Könige von Frankreich nach der römischen Kaiserkrone," in Kgl. Gymnasium zu Hadamar, *Bericht über das Schuljahr 1898–99, Beigabe.*

539. LANGLOIS, C. V. "The comparative history of England and France in the middle ages." English historical review, V (1890), 259–263.

(*e*) GREAT REGIONS OF FRANCE

540. DEVIC, DOM C. and VAISSETTE, DOM J. Histoire générale de Lanquedoc. New edition in 15 vols. Toulouse, 1872–1904.

541. MOYNE DE LA BORDERIE, A. LE. Histoire de Bretagne [to 1715]. Vols. I–V. Paris, 1896–1913.

542. FEBVRE, L. Histoire de Franche-Comté. Paris, 1912 (Vieilles provinces de France).

(*f*) MISCELLANEOUS

543. LANGLOIS, C. V. The historic rôle of France among the nations. An address delivered at the University of Chicago, October 18, 1904. Chicago, 1905.

544. STEPHEN, SIR J. Lectures on the history of France. 2 vols. London, 1851.

545. Collection des meilleurs dissertations, etc., relatifs à l'histoire de France: composée en grande partie de pièces rares, etc. Edited by C. LEBER. 20 vols. Paris, 1838.

For an analysis of its contents, see FRANKLIN, no. 23 above, 343ff.

546. LA RONCIÈRE, C. Histoire de la marine française. 4 vols. Paris, 1889–1910.

547. CHEVALIER, E. Histoire de la marine française depuis les débuts de la monarchie jusqu'au traité de paix de 1763. Paris, 1902.

548. MOLINIER, A. Les obituaires françaises au moyen âge. Paris, 1890.

§9. Belgium and the Netherlands

549. PIRENNE, H. Histoire de Belgique. 4 vols. Brussels, 1900–11. Vols. I–III [to 1567], 2nd edition, 1901–12. 3rd edition of vol. I, 1909. Translated into German by F. ARNHEIM, 4 vols., Gotha, 1899–1913, which is part of no. 332 above.

550. PIRENNE, H. Les anciennes démocraties des Pays-Bas. Paris, 1910. Translated by J. V. SAUNDERS, Belgian democracy: its early history. London and New York, 1915. (In Publications of the University of Manchester, Historical series, XXVII.)

A very convenient manual for those who cannot master PIRENNE'S larger works.

551. VAN DER LINDEN, H. Manuel d'histoire de Belgique. With a preface by H. PIRENNE. 2 vols. Brussels, 1910.

552. VANDERKINDERE, L. La formation territoriale des principautés belges au moyen âge. 2 vols. 1st and 2nd editions. Brussels, 1902.

553. MILLARD, E. Les Belges et leurs générations historiques. Brussels, 1902.

554. BOULGER, D. C. The history of Belgium. 2 vols. London, 1902–09.

See also his *Belgium*, Detroit, 1913.

555. VAN DER ESSEN, L. A short history of Belgium. Chicago [1916].

556. ENSOR, R. C. K. Belgium. New York, 1915. (In Home university library, 95.)

557. BLOK, P. J. Geschiedenis van het Nederlandsche Volk. 8 vols. Groningen, 1892–1908. Translated by O. A. BIERSTADT and RUTH PUTNAM, History of the people of the Netherlands. 5 vols. New York, 1898–1912. Vol. I, to the beginning of the fifteenth century. Vols. I–IV (to 1648) translated into German by A. G. HOUTROUW, Gotha, 1901–09, which is part of no. 332 above.

558. ROGERS, J. E. T. Holland. New York, 1900 (Story of the nations series).

559. WENZELBURGER, K. T. Geschichte der Niederlande. 2 vols. [to 1648]. Gotha, 1878–86.

Part of no. 332 above.

§10. Germany

(*a*) General Histories of Germany

(1) *Monumental Works*

See also nos. 499–507 above.

560. Bibliothek deutscher Geschichte. Edited by H. v. Zwiedeneck-Südenhorst. Stuttgart, 1876ff.

A general work something like the *Histoire de France*, no. 508 above, but published in separate volumes which will be mentioned in their proper places. A complete list of them is given by Loewe, *Bücherkunde*, no. 32 above, Anhang.

561. Lamprecht, K. Deutsche Geschichte. 12 vols. in 16 parts. Berlin, 1891–1909. Partly in 2nd to 4th editions, 3 supplements, 1902–04.

For literature on this and other works of Lamprecht, see Dahlmann-Waitz, no. 28 above, no. 1451.

(2) *Shorter Accounts and Text Books*

562. Handbuch der deutschen Geschichte. Edited by B. Gebhardt. 2 vols. Stuttgart, 1891. 4th edition by F. Hirsch. Berlin and Leipzig, 1909–10.

This co-operative history is the best short general work on Germany.

563. Henderson, E. F. A short history of Germany. 2 vols. in 1. New York, 1902. New edition in 2 vols., 1916.

564. Holland, A. W. Germany. London, 1914 (The making of the nations).

565. Lewis, C. T. A history of Germany from the earliest times. Founded on D. Müller, History of the German people. New York, 1886.

566. Heyck, E. Deutsche Geschichte: Volk, Staat, Kultur- und Geistesleben. 3 vols. Bielefeld, 1905–06.

567. Jäger, O. Deutsche Geschichte. 2 vols. Munich, 1909.

568. Kämmel, O. Deutsche Geschichte. 2 vols. 2nd edition. Dresden, 1905. 3rd edition, Leipzig, 1910.

See also his *Der Werdegang des deutschen Volkes*, 2 vols., 3rd edition, Leipzig, 1911–12.

569. Schäfer, D. von. Deutsche Geschichte. 2 vols. Jena, 1910.

(*b*) Germany in the Middle Ages

570. Jahrbücher der deutschen Geschichte [to 1250]. Under the auspices of the Munich Academy. Berlin and Leipzig, 1862ff.

27 vols. in 1909.

571. RICHTER, G., and KOHL, H. Annalen der deutschen Geschichte im Mittelalter von der Gründung des fränkischen Reichs bis zum Untergang der Hohenstaufen. Mit fortlaufenden Quellenauszügen und Literaturangaben [to 1137]. 4 vols. Halle, 1873–98.

572. ZELLER, J. Histoire d'Allemagne. 7 vols. [to Luther]. Paris, 1872–92. Vol. III, L'empire germanique et l'église au moyen âge, in 2nd edition, 1884.

573. NITZSCH, K. W. Geschichte des deutschen Volkes bis zum Augsburger Religionsfrieden. Nach dessen hinterlassenen Papieren und Vorlesungen. 3 vols. Leipzig, 1883–1885. 2nd edition by G. MATTHÄI, Leipzig, 1892.

574. GERDES, H. Geschichte des deutschen Volkes und seiner Kultur im Mittelalter. 3 vols [to 1250]. Leipzig, 1891–1908.

575. HENDERSON, E. F. A history of Germany in the middle ages. London, 1894.

576. STUBBS, W. Germany in the early middle ages (476–1250). London and New York, 1908.

577. STUBBS, W. Germany in the later middle ages (1200–1500). Edited by A. HASSALL. London and New York, 1908.

(*c*) GERMAN INSTITUTIONS

578. WAITZ, G. Deutsche Verfassungsgeschichte. 8 vols. [to the 12th century]. Kiel and Berlin, 1844–1878. 6 vols., 2nd and 3rd editions, Berlin, 1880–1896.

W. ALTMANN and E. BERNHEIM, *Ausgewählte Urkunden zur . . . Verfassungsgeschichte Deutschlands im Mittelalter,* 4th edition, Berlin, 1909, serves the same purpose for German as W. STUBBS, *Select charters,* does for English constitutional history. See also W. STUBBS, *Constitutional history of England,* in GROSS, no. 36 above, no. 643.

579. BRUNNER, H. Deutsche Rechtsgeschichte. 2 vols. Leipzig, 1887–1892. Vol. I, 2nd edition, 1906.

A very good text is his *Grundzüge der deutschen Rechtsgeschichte,* Leipzig, 1901, 4th edition, 1910. See also his *Forschungen zur Geschichte des deutschen und französischen Rechtes,* Stuttgart, 1894.

580. GIERKE, O. Das deutsche Genossenschaftsrecht. 4 vols. Berlin, 1868–1914.

Part of vol. III translated by F. W. MAITLAND, *Political theories in the middle ages.* London, 1900.

581. BELOW, G. VON. Der deutsche Staat des Mittelalters: ein Grundriss der deutschen Verfassungsgeschichte. Leipzig, 1914.

See also A. HEUSLER, *Deutsche Verfassungsgeschichte,* Leipzig, *1905.*

582. MEISTER, A. Deutsche Verfassungsgeschichte, von den Anfängen bis ins 15 Jahrhundert. Leipzig, 1907.

Part of no. 331 above.

583. SCHRÖDER, R. Lehrbuch der deutschen Rechtsgeschichte. 5th edition. Leipzig, 1907.

584. MAYER, E. Mittelalterliche Verfassungsgeschichte: deutsche und französische Verfassungsgeschichte vom 9 bis zum 14 Jahrhundert. 2 vols. Leipzig, 1899.

585. DUNGERN, O. D. War Deutschland ein Wahlreich? Leipzig, 1913.

586. PFLEIDERER, O. Das deutsche Nationalbewusstsein in Vergangenheit und Gegenwart. Berlin, 1896.

587. HOOPS, J. Reallexicon der germanischen Altertumskunde. Vol. I, A–E. Strassburg, 1911–13.

Extends to about the 12th century.

(*d*) AUSTRIA

588. KRONES, F. v. Handbuch der Geschichte Österreichs von der ältesten bis zur neuesten Zeit. 6 vols. Berlin, 1879–81.

See also his *Grundriss der österreichischen Geschichte*, Vienna, 1882; and his *Österreichische Geschichte*, 2 vols., Leipzig, 1899–1900 (*Sammlung Göschen*). A recent Italian work is A. DUDAN, *La monarchia degli Absburgo, 800–1915*, 2 vols., Rome, 1915.

589. HUBER, A. Geschichte Österreichs. Vols. I–V [to 1648]. Gotha, 1885–95.

Part of no. 332 above.

590. LEGER, L. Histoire de l'Austriche-Hongrie depuis ses origines jusqu'à l'année 1894. 5th edition. Paris, 1907. Translated by B. HILL, History of Austro-Hungary. London, 1889. Also translated by W. E. LINGELBACH in no. 314 above.

591. KRALIK, R. Österreichische Geschichte. Vienna, 1914.

592. MAYER, F. M. Geschichte Österreichs mit besonderer Rücksicht auf das Kulturleben. 2 vols. 3rd edition. Vienna and Leipzig, 1909–10.

593. HUBER, A. Österreichische Reichsgeschichte. Leipzig, 1895. 2nd edition by A. DOPSCH, 1901.

594. LUSCHIN VON EBENGREUTH, A. Österreichische Reichsgeschichte. 2 vols. Bamberg, 1895–96.

See also his *Grundriss der österreichischen Reichsgeschichte*. Bamberg, 1899.

(*e*) PRUSSIA

595. RANKE, L. v. Zwölf Bücher preussischer Geschichte. 5 vols. Leipzig, 1874. 2nd edition, Leipzig, 1878–79. (Vols. XXV–XXVII of his complete works.)

596. PRUTZ, H. Preussische Geschichte. 4 vols. Stuttgart, 1899–1902.

H. TUTTLE, *History of Prussia*, 4 vols., Boston, 1884–1896 (vol. I, A.D. 1134–1740, in second edition), touches but slightly on the middle ages.

(*f*) ALSACE-LORRAINE

597. DERICHSWEILER, H. Geschichte Lothringens: der tausendjährige Kampf um die Westmark. 2 vols. Wiesbaden, 1901.

Condensed in his *Geschichte Lothringens*, Leipzig, 1905 (*Sammlung Göschen*).

598. PUTNAM, RUTH. Alsace and Loraine from Caesar to Kaiser. New York, 1915.

§11. Italy

(*a*) GENERAL HISTORIES OF ITALY

(1) *Political History*

Many of the general works on Germany just listed above must be consulted for the history of Italy in the time when German emperors were constantly crossing the Alps.

599. Storia politica d'Italia scritta da una ›ietà di professori. Edited by P. VILLARI. Milan, 1881ff.

600. CANTU, C. Storia degli Italiani. 6 vols. Turin, 1854. 4th edition, 1892. Translated into French by A. LACOMBE under the supervision of the author and from the 2nd edition, Histoire des Italiens. 12 vols. Paris, 1859–62.

601. CAPPELLETTI, L. Storia d'Italia (476–1900). Genoa, 1902.

See also E. BESTA, *La Sardegna medioevale*, 2 vols., Palermo, 1908–1909.

602. SEDGWICK, H. D. A short history of Italy (476–1900). Boston, 1905.

603. BELVIGLIERI, C. Tavole sincrone e genealogiche di storia italiana dal 306 al 1870. Florence, 1885.

604. FEDELE, P. "La coscienza della nazionalità in Italia nel medio evo." Nuova Antologia (1915).

(2) *Constitutional History*

605. PERTILE, A. Storia del diritto italiano. 6 vols. and index. Padua, 1873–87. 2nd edition by P. DEL GIUDICE, Turin, 1891–1903.

606. BESTA, E. Storia del diritto italiano. Pisa, vol. II, 1914.
Vol. II relates to the Lombard period.

607. FICKER, J. Forschungen zur Reichs- und Rechtsgeschichte Italiens. 4 vols. Innsbruck, 1868–74.
See also WAITZ, no. 578 above.

608. MAYER, E. Italienische Verfassungsgeschichte von der Gothenzeit zur Zunftherrschaft. 2 vols. Leipzig, 1909.

609. SCHUPFER, F. Manuali di storia del diritto italiano. 4th edition. Città di Castello, 1908.

(3) *Maritime History*

610. MANFRONI, C. Storia della marina italiana dalle invasioni barbariche al trattato di Ninfeo (1261). Leghorn, 1899. Continued by his Storia della marina italiana (1261–1453). 2 vols. Leghorn, 1902.
A third work continues the story in modern times.

(*b*) MEDIEVAL HISTORY OF ITALY

(1) *Monumental Works*

See also no. **345** above.

611. HARTMANN, L. M. Geschichte Italiens im Mittelalter. Leipzig, 1897ff. Vol. III² appeared in 1911.
Now the most reliable and scholarly work on medieval Italy. Part of no. **332** above.

612. MURATORI, L. A. Annali d'Italia. 12 vols. Rome, 1744–1749. Often reprinted. Translated into German by BANDIS. 9 vols. Leipzig, 1745–50.
From the beginning of the Christian era to 1749. See C. TROYA, *Studi intorno agli "Annali d'Italia" del Muratori*, 2 vols., Naples, 1877.

613. SISMONDI, J. C. L. S. DE. Histoire des républiques italiennes du moyen âge. 16 vols. Paris, 1809–1818. 5th edition, 8 vols. Brussels, 1838–39. Translated, condensed, and revised by W. BOULTING, History of the Italian republics in the middle ages. London [ca. 1905].
This is practically a general history of medieval Italy. In large measure it supersedes MURATORI, no. **612** above.

614. TROYA, C. Storia d'Italia del medio evo. 17 vols. Naples, 1839–59.

Extends from the fall of the Roman empire in the west to the end of the Lombard kingdom. The author had planned to carry it to 1321. It is still of importance and is not entirely superseded by HODGKIN, *Italy and her invaders*, no. 345 above, and perhaps not wholly even by HARTMANN, no. 611 above.

(2) *Shorter Works and Text Books*

615. VILLARI, P. Le invasioni barbariche in Italia. Milan, 1901. Translated by LINDA VILLARI, The barbarian invasions of Italy. 2 vols. London, 1902.

616. VILLARI, P. L'Italia da Carlo Magno alla morte di Arrigo VII. Milan, 1910. Translated by his daughter, Mrs. C. HULTON, Mediaeval Italy from Charlemagne to Henry VII. London, 1910.

These two works form the best general history of medieval Italy available in English.

617. COTTERILL, H. B. Mediaeval Italy during a thousand years (305–1313). London, 1915 (Great nations series).

618. BROWNING, O. Guelfs and Ghibellines: a short history of mediaeval Italy from 1250–1409. London, 1893. The age of the condottieri: a short history of mediaeval Italy from 1409–1530, London, 1895.

619. GABOTTO, F. Storia dell' Italia occidentale nel medio evo, 395–1313. Vols. I and II [to 568 A.D.], 1912.

620. LANZANI, F. I comuni, da Carlomagno ad Henrico VII. Milan, 1880.

Part of no. 599 above.

621. KLEIN, V. Italiens historie i middelalderen med saerlight blik paa kulturudviklingen. Copenhagen, 1907.

§12. Spain and Portugal

(*a*) GENERAL HISTORY OF SPAIN

(1) *Monumental Works*

622. Historia general de la España. By members of the Real Academia de la Historia. 18 vols. Madrid, 1890–98. No more published.

623. LAFUENTE, M. Historia general de España. 30 vols. Madrid, 1850–67. 2nd edition continued by J. VALERA. 24 vols. Barcelona, 1888–90.

624. ROSSEEUW, SAINT HILAIRE. Histoire d'Espagne. 2nd edition. 14 vols. Paris, 1844–79.

See also M. ROMEY, *Histoire d'Espagne*, 9 vols., Paris, 1839–1849.

625. MARIANA, J. DE. Historia general de España. Toledo, 1601; Madrid, 1623. New editions, 8 vols., Madrid, 1819; 10 vols., Barcelona, 1839.

The original work was published in Latin, *Historiae de rebus Hispaniae libri XX*, Toledo, 1592, with ten additional books in 1616, and was translated into Spanish by the author himself.

626. LEMBKE, F. W. Geschichte von Spanien. Vol. I, Hamburg, 1834; vols. II and III by H. SCHÄFER, Hamburg, 1844, and Gotha, 1861; vols. IV–VII (to 1516), by F. W. SCHIRRMACHER, Gotha, 1881–1902.

Part of no. **332** above. Rather antiquated.

627. DUNHAM, S. A. Spain and Portugal. 5 vols. London, 1832–33.

(2) *Shorter Works and Text Books*

628. ALTAMIRA, R. Historia de España y de la civilización española. 4 vols. Barcelona, 1900–1911. 3rd edition, 1913–14.

629. BURKE, U. R. A history of Spain from the earliest time to the death of Ferdinand the Catholic. 2 vols. London, 1895. 2nd edition, with additional notes, and an introduction by M. A. S. HUME. 2 vols. London, 1900.

630. DIERCKS, G. Geschichte Spaniens von den frühesten Zeiten bis auf die Gegenwart. 2 vols. Berlin, 1895–96.

See also his *Spanische Geschichte*, Leipzig, 1905 (*Sammlung Göschen*, 266).

631. HUME, M. A. S. The Spanish people, their origin, growth and influence. London, 1901. In The great peoples series.

See the Bibliography.

632. PERKINS, CLARA C. Builders of Spain. New York, 1909.

(3) *Constitutional History of Spain*

633. COLMEIRO, M. De la constitución y del gobierno de los reinos de León y Castilla. 2 vols. Madrid, 1855. 2nd edition, 1873–75.

See also his *Derecho administrativo español*, 3 vols., 4th edition, Madrid, 1876–80; J. M. ANTEQUERA, *Historia de la legislación española*, Madrid, 1849, 4th edition, 1895; F. MARTÍNEZ MARINA, *Ensayo histórico-critico sobre la antiqua legis-*

lación . . . de León y Castilla, Madrid, 1808, 2 vols., 1834; and A. MARICHALAR and C. MANRIQUE, *Historia de la legislación y recitaciones del derecho civil de España,* 9 vols., Madrid, 1861–1876.

634. DANVILA Y COLLADO, M. El poder civil en España. 6 vols. Madrid, 1885–87.

The introduction to vol. I is a long and very important general survey of the middle ages.

635. CÁRDENAS, F. DE. Ensayo sobre la historia de la propriedad territorial en España. 2 vols. Madrid, 1873–75.

(*b*) PORTUGAL

636. HERCULANO, A. Historia de Portugal desde ó começo da monarchia até ó fin do reinado de Alfonso III (to 1279). 4 vols. Lisbon, 1846–53. 4th edition, 1868ff.

See also the more popular book by J. P. OLIVEIRA MARTINS, *Historia de Portugal,* 2 vols., 6th edition, Lisbon, 1901.

637. RIBEIRO, J. P. Dissertações chronologicas e criticas sobre a historia e iurisprudencia ecclesiastica e civil de Portugal. 5 vols. in 7. Lisbon, 1810–36.

638. STEPHENS, H. M. Portugal. London, 1891 (Story of the nations).

639. SCHÄFER, H. Geschichte von Portugal. 5 vols. Hamburg and Gotha, 1836–54.

Part of no. **332** above.

640. MACMURDO, E. The history of Portugal from the commencement of the monarchy to the reign of D. João V. 3 vols. London, 1888–89.

641. GAMA BARROS, H. DA. Historia da administração publica em Portugal nos seculos 12 a 15. 2 vols. Lisbon, 1885-1897.

642. MICHEL, F. Les Portugais en France et les Français en Portugal. Paris, 1882.

§13. The Byzantine Empire

(*a*) *General Accounts*

See also no. **418** above [TOZER].

643. BURY, J. B. A history of the later Roman empire 395–800 A.D. 2 vols. New York, 1889.

644. BURY, J. B. A history of the eastern Roman empire from the fall of Irene to the accession of Basil I (A.D. 802–867). London and New York, 1912.

These two works form the standard history of the period which they cover.

645. FINLAY, G. "History of the Byzantine empire, from DCCXVI to MLVII." New York, 1906 (Everyman's library).

This is a reprint of vol. II of his *History of Greece*, no. **656** below.

646. OMAN, C. Story of the Byzantine empire. New York, 1892 (Story of the nations series).

647. FOORD, E. A. The Byzantine empire: the rearguard of European civilization. London, 1911.

Very inadequate.

648. BUSSELL, F. W. The Roman empire: essays on the constitutional history, 81–1081 A.D. 2 vols. London, 1910.

Very disappointing.

649. GELZER, H. Byzantinische Kulturgeschichte. Tübingen, 1909.

See also his *Ausgewählte kleine Schriften*, Leipzig, 1907; and his "Abriss der byzantinischen Kaisergeschichte," Appendix to no. **800** below.

650. HESSELING, D. C. Byzantium: Studien over onze Beschaving na de Stichting van Konstantinopel. Haarlem, 1902. French translation, Essai sur la civilization byzantine, with a preface by G. SCHLUMBERGER. Paris, 1907.

651. GRENIER, P. L'empire byzantin, son évolution sociale et politique. 2 vols. Paris, 1904.

652. HERTZBERG, G. F. Geschichte der Byzantiner und des osmanischen Reiches bis gegen Ende des sechszehnten Jahrhunderts. Berlin, 1883.

Part of no. 313 above.

653. ROTH, K. Geschichte des byzantinischen Reiches. Leipzig, 1904 (Sammlung Göschen).

654. KRAUSE, J. H. Die Byzantiner des Mittelalters in ihrem Staats- Hof- und Privatleben, insbesondere vom Ende des 10ten bis gegen Ende des 14ten Jahrhunderts nach den byzantinischen Quellen. Halle, 1869.

655. LE BEAU, C. Histoire du Bas-Empire. 28 vols. Paris, 1757–1817.

(*b*) GREECE IN THE MIDDLE AGES

656. FINLAY, G. History of Greece from its conquest by the Romans to the present time. Begun 1843. Edited by H. F. TOZER. 7 vols. Oxford, 1877.

657. MILLER, W. The Latins in the Levant, a history of Frankish Greece (1204–1566). London, 1908.

658. HERTZBERG, G. F. Geschichte Griechenlands seit dam Absterben des antiken Lebens bis zur Gegenwart. 4 vols. Gotha, 1876–79.

Part of no. **332** above.

659. HOPF, K. Geschichte Griechenlands vom Beginn des Mittelalters bis auf unsere Zeit (395–1821). 2 vols. Leipzig, 1867–68.

Vols. 85–86 in no. **100** above. See also D. BIKÉLAS, *La Grèce byzantine et moderne*, Paris, 1893.

660. GREGOROVIUS, F. Geschichte der Stadt Athen im Mittelalter. 2 vols. 2nd edition, Stuttgart, 1889.

(*c*) CONSTANTINOPLE

661. HUTTON, W. H. Constantinople: the story of the old capital of the empire. London, 1900. 3rd edition, 1907 (Mediaeval towns series).

See also J. EBERSOLT, *Le grand palais de Constantinople et le livre des cérémonies*, Paris, 1910; and J. B. BURY, "The great palace," in *Byzantinische Zeitschrift*, XX (1911).

662. GROSVENOR, E. A. Constantinople. 2 vols. Boston, 1895.

663. VAN MILLIGEN, A. Byzantine Constantinople: the walls of the city and adjoining historical sites. London, 1899.

See also A. D. MORDTMANN, *Esquisse topographique de Constantinople*, Lille, 1892; and W. J. BROADRIBB and W. BESANT, *Constantinople: a sketch of its history from its foundation to its conquest by the Turks in 1453*, London, 1879.

664. BAKER, B. G. The walls of Constantinople. London, 1910.

665. DWIGHT, H. G. Constantinople old and new. Illustrated. New York, 1915.

666. CLEMENT, CLARA E. Constantinople: the city of the Sultans. Boston, 1895.

667. BARTH, H. Constantinople. Paris, 1906 (Les villes d'art célèbres).

668. GURLITT, C. Konstantinopel. Berlin [1908] (Die Kultur).

669. SCHULTZE, V. Konstantinopel. Berlin, 1913.

See also E. OBERHUMMER, *Constantinopolis: Abriss der Topographie und Geschichte*, Stuttgart, 1899.

(*d*) MISCELLANEOUS

670. SESAN, V. Kirche und Staat im römisch-byzantinischen Reiche seit Konstantin dem Grossen bis zum Falle Konstantinopels. Czernowitz, 1911ff.

Vol. I extends to 380 A.D.

671. COBHAM, C. D. Patriarchs of Constantinople. Cambridge University Press, 1911.

672. ZACHARIAE VON LINGENTHAL, K. E. Geschichte des griechisch-römischen Rechts. 3rd edition, Berlin, 1892.

673. DIEHL, C. Figures byzantines. 2 vols. Vol. I in 4th edition; vol. II in 3rd edition. Paris, 1909.

674. DIEHL, C. Etudes byzantines. Paris, 1905.

675. KRUMBACHER, K. Populäre Aufsätze. Leipzig, 1909.

676. RAMBAUD, A. Etudes sur l'histoire byzantine. Paris, 1912.

677. GFRÖRER, A. F. Byzantinische Geschichten. 3 vols. Graz, 1872–77.

678. MCCABE, J. The empresses of Constantinople. London, 1913.

679. DIETERICH, K. Byzantinische Charakterköpfe. Leipzig, 1909 (Aus Natur und Geisteswelt, 244).

§14. Eastern Europe

(*a*) GENERAL ACCOUNTS

680. MARQUART, I. Osteuropäische und ostasiatische Streifzüge: ethnologische und historisch-topographische Studien zur Geschichte des 9. und 10. Jahrhunderts (ca. 840–940). Leipzig, 1903.

See also A. WIRTH, *Geschichte Asiens und Osteuropas*, vol. I, *Von den Anfängen bis 1790*, Halle, 1904.

(*b*) RUSSIA

681. KLUCHEVSKY, V. O. A history of Russia. Translated from the Russian by C. J. HOGARTH. 3 vols. London and New York, 1911–13.

A very poor translation of the best book we have on the history of Russia. M. BARING, *The Russian people*, London, 1911, is based largely on Kluchevsky's lectures, which form the basis of his book. Another reflection of Kluchevsky is the first volume of J. MAVOR, *An economic history of Russia*, 2 vols., London and New York, 1914.

682. RAMBAUD, A. Histoire de la Russie depuis les origines jusqu'à nos jours. 6th edition, revised by E. HAUMANT. Paris, 1914. Translated by LEONORA B. LANG, A popular history of Russia, in 3 vols., Boston, 1882. New edition, 1886.

The best general history of medieval and modern Russia by a western scholar. See pp. 933–953 in the latest French edition for an extensive bibliography. Now see also F. P. GIORDANI, *Storia della Russia secondo gli studî più recenti*, 2 vols., Milan, 1916.

683. MORFILL, W. R. Russia. London, 1890 (Story of the nations series).

684. BRÜCKNER, A. Geschichte Russlands, bis zum Ende des 18 Jahrhunderts. 2 vols. Gotha, 1896–1913.

Part of no. **332** above.

685. SCHIEMANN, T. Russland, Polen und Livland bis ins 17 Jahrhundert. 2 vols. Berlin, 1886–87.

Part of no. **313** above.

686. PANTENIUS, T. H. Geschichte Russlands von der Entstehung des russischen Reichs bis zur Gegenwart. Leipzig, 1908.

687. BESTUSCHEW, K. Geschichte Russlands. A German translation from the Russion by T. SCHIEMANN. Mitau, 1874.

688. LEROY-BEAULIEU, A. L'empire des tsars et les Russes. Paris, 1881–82. Translated from the 3rd French edition by Z. A. RAGOZIN, The empire of the tsars and the Russians. 3 vols. New York, 1894–1902.

This book on modern Russia constantly reaches back to the middle ages to find explanations for present conditions.

689. REEB, W. Russische Geschichte. Leipzig, 1903 (Sammlung Göschen).

690. PIERLING, P. La Russie et le Saint-Siège. 4 vols. Paris, 1896–1907. Vol. I in 2nd edition, 1906.

(c) FINLAND AND THE BALTIC PROVINCES: LIVONIA, ESTHONIA, AND COURLAND

See also no. **717** below.

691. SERAPHIM, E. Geschichte Liv-, Esth- und Kurlands von der "Aufsegelung" des Landes bis zur Einverleibung in das russische Reich. 2 vols. 2nd edition. Reval, 1897–1903.

See also his *Geschichte von Livland*, vol. I, Gotha, 1905, part of no. **332** above; his *Baltische Geschichte im Grundriss*, Reval, 1908; and L. ARBUSOW, *Grundriss der Geschichte von Liv-, Esth- und Kurland*, 3rd edition, Riga, 1908. For Livonia see also no. **685** above.

692. SCHYBERGSON, M. G. Finlands historica. 2 vols. Helsingfors, 1887–89. German edition by F. ARNHEIM. Gotha, 1896.

Part of no. 332 above.

(*d*) POLAND

See also no. 685 below.

693. ORVIS, JULIA S. A brief history of Poland. New York, 1916.

694. MORFILL, W. R. Poland. London, 1893 (Story of the nations series).

S. A. DUNHAM, *The history of Poland*, London, 1834. L. LEPSZY, *Cracow, the royal city of ancient Poland: its history and antiquities*, translated by R. DYBOWSKI, London, 1912.

695. PHILLIPS, W. A. Poland. Home university library, 1915.

696. ROEPELL, R. Geschichte Polens. Vol. I. Continued by J. CARO, vols. II–V (to 1506). Hamburg and Gotha, 1840–86.

Part of no. 332 above.

697. CARO, J. Geschichte Polens. Gotha, 1863.

698. BRANDENBURGER, C. Polnische Geschichte. Leipzig, 1907 (Sammlung Göschen).

(*e*) BOHEMIA AND MORAVIA

699. MAURICE, C. E. The story of Bohemia from the earliest times to the fall of national independence in 1620. New York, 1896 (Story of the nations series).

700. BRETHOLZ, B. Geschichte Böhmens und Mährens bis zum Aussterben der Premysliden (1306). Munich and Leipzig, 1912.

The old standard work on Bohemia was F. PALACKY, *Geschichte von Böhmen*, vols. I–V [to 1526], Prague, 1836–67, vols I–III in 3rd, but unchanged edition, 1864–1896. See also A. ZYCHA, *Ueber den Ursprung der Städte in Böhmen und die Städtepolitik der Premysliden*, Prague, 1914.

701. BACHMAN, A. Geschichte Böhmens. Vols. I and II. Gotha, 1899–1905.

Part of no. 332 above. Vol. I extends to 1400 A.D.

702. LÜTZOW, F. H. H. V. Bohemia, an historical sketch. London [1909] (Everyman's library). First published in 1896.

See also his *Lectures on the historians of Bohemia*, London, 1905 (Ilchester lectures for 1904), and his *The story of Prague*, London, 1907.

703. MONROE, W. S. Bohemia and the Čechs: the history, people, institutions, and the geography of the kingdom, together with accounts of Moravia and Silesia. Boston, 1910.

(*f*) HUNGARY

704. VÁMBÉRY, A. The story of Hungary. New York and London, 1886 (Story of the nations series).

705. SAYOUS, E. Histoire générale des Hongrois. 2 vols. Paris, 1876.

(*g*) BALKAN STATES

(1) *General*

706. MILLER, W. The Balkans: Roumania, Bulgaria, Servia, Montenegro. New York, 1896 (Story of the nations series).

N. FORBES, A. J. TOYNBEE, D. MITRANY, and D. G. HOGARTH, *The Balkans: a history of Bulgaria, Serbia, Greece, Rumania, Turkey*, Oxford, 1915. W. HOWARD-FLANDERS, *Balkania: a short history of the Balkan states*, London, 1909. L. LEGER, *Serbes, Croates et Bulgares*, Paris, 1913.

707. JIRECEK, K. J. Die Romanen in die Städten Dalmatiens während des Mittelalters. 3 vols. Vienna, 1901, 1903, 1905 (Denkschriften of the Vienna academy).

(2) *Rumania*

708. JORGA, N. Geschichte des rumänischen Volkes. Vols. I–III (to 1640). Gotha, 1905–10.

Part of no. **332** above.

709. XÉNOPOL, A. D. Histoire des Roumains. 2 vols. Paris, 1896.

Vol. I, 513–1633 A.D. See also his *Les Roumains: histoire, état matérial et intellectuel*, Paris, 1909.

(3) *Bulgaria*

710. SONGEON, R. P. G. Histoire de la Bulgarie depuis les origines jusqu'à nos jours (485–1913). Paris, 1913.

711. SAMUELSON, J. Bulgaria past and present: historical, political and descriptive. London, 1888.

712. BOUSQUET, G. Histoire du peuple bulgare depuis les origines jusqu'à nos jours. Paris, 1909.

713. JIRECEK, K. J. Geschichte der Bulgaren. Prague, 1876.

(4) *Serbia and Bosnia*

714. JIRECEK, K. J. Geschichte der Serben. Vol. 1 [to 1371]. Gotha, 1911.

See the review of this book by W. MILLER, "The mediaeval Serbian empire," in *Quarterly review*, CCXXVI (1916), 488–507.

715. KANITZ, F. Das Königreich Serbien und das Serbenvolk von der Römerzeit bis zur Gegenwart. Vol. I. Leipzig, 1904.

716. THALLÓCZY, L. Studien zur Geschichte Bosniens und Serbiens im Mittelalter. Translated by F. ECKHART. Munich, 1914.

V. KLAIC, *Geschichte Bosniens*, Leipzig, 1885. S. NOVAKOVIC, "Les problèmes Serbes," in *Archiv für slavische Philologie*, XXXIII–XXXIV (1912).

§15. Scandinavian Countries

(*a*) GENERAL

717. STEFANSSON, J. Denmark and Sweden with Iceland and Finland. New York, 1916 (Story of the nations series).

E. C. OTTÉ, *Scandinavian history*, London, 1874.

718. SINDING, P. C. The Scandinavian races: the northmen; the sea-kings and vikings; their manners and customs . . . up to the present time. New York, 1866. New edition, 1875.

The first edition bears the title, *History of Scandinavia from the early times of the northmen and vikings to the present day.*

719. MAURER, K. v. Vorlesungen über altnordische Rechtsgeschichte. Vols. I–IV. Leipzig, 1906–1909.

A posthumous work.

(*b*) DENMARK

720. Danmarks riges historie. By J. STEENSTRUP and others. Vols. I–VI. Copenhagen, 1896–1907.

721. ALLEN, C. F. Histoire de Danemark depuis les temps les plus reculés jusqu'à nos jours. French translation, by E. BEAUVOIS, from the 7th Danish edition. 2 vols., Copenhagen, 1878.

The French translation adds important bibliographies.

722. DAHLMANN, F. S. Geschichte von Dänemark. Vols. I–III. Vols. IV–V (to 1648) by D. SCHÄFER. Hamburg and Gotha, 1840–1902.

Part of no. 332 above.

(*c*) NORWAY

723. GJERSET, K. History of the Norwegian people from the earliest times to the present day. 2 vols. New York, 1915.

724. BOYESEN, H. H. The story of Norway. London, 1886 (Story of the nations series).

725. WILLSON, T. B. History of the church and state in Norway from the tenth to the sixteenth century. Westminster, 1903.



(*d*) SWEDEN

726. GEIJER, E. G. Geschichte Schwedens. Vols. I–III. Vols. IV–VI by F. F. CARLSON. Vol. VII (to 1772) by L. STAVENOW. Hamburg and Gotha, 1832–1908.

Part of no. **332** above.

727. MONTELIUS, O. Sveriges historia från äldsta tid till vara dagar. 6 vols. Stockholm, 1877–1881.

(*e*) ICELAND

728. HERRMANN, P. Island in Vergangenheit und Gegenwart: Reise-erinnerungen. 3 vols. Leipzig, 1907–1910.

Vol. I, ch. III, "Geschichte Islands." See references to other works cited in the footnotes and especially J. BRYCE, "Primitive Iceland," in I, 236–300, of his *Studies in history and jurisprudence*, 2 vols., Oxford, 1901.

§16. History of Culture and Civilization

(*a*) GENERAL HISTORIES OF CIVILIZATION

See also nos. **187–207** above.

729. Die Kultur der Gegenwart: ihre Entwickelung und ihre Ziele. Edited by P. HINNEBERG. Berlin and Leipzig, 1905ff.

About 22 vols. had appeared in 1914. Most of the separate works in parts I and II have some bearing upon the middle ages. The most important of them will be mentioned in appropriate places.

730. Kulturgeschichtliche Bibliothek. Edited by F. FOY. 3 sections. Heidelberg, 1911ff.

731. Quellen und Forschungen zur Sprach- und Culturgeschichte der germanischen Völker. Edited originally by B. TEN BRINK and W. SCHERER. Strassburg, 1874ff.

732. BREYSIG, K. Kulturgeschichte der Neuzeit. Vols. I and II. Berlin, 1900–01.

Vol. II, part 2, is on the middle ages.

733. HELLWALD, F. v. Kulturgeschichte in ihrer natürlichen Entwicklung bis zur Gegenwart. Augsburg, 1874. 4th edition, revised and enlarged by eighteen German scholars. 4 vols. Leipzig, 1896–1898.

Vol. III is on the middle ages. See also E. DRIAULT, *Vue générale de l'histoire de la civilisation*, 2 vols., Paris, 1909 (Bibliothèque de l'histoire contemporain).

734. HENNE-AM-RHYN, O. Allgemeine Kulturgeschichte von der Urzeit bis auf die Gegenwart. 9 vols. Leipzig, 1877–1908.

735. Social England: a record of the progress of the people in religion, laws, learning, arts, industry, commerce, science, literature, and manners. Edited by H. D. TRAILL and written by various specialists. 6 vols. London, 1894–97. Illustrated and revised edition, 6 vols., 1901–04.

736. GUIZOT, F. Histoire de la civilisation en Europe depuis la chute de l'empire romain. Paris, 1828. Translated by C. S. HENRY, History of civilization from the fall of the Roman empire to the French revolution, as vol. I of History of civilization. 4 vols. New York, 1846.

See no. 763 below.

737. MILYOUKOV, P. Skizzen russischer Kulturgeschichte. German edition by E. DAVIDSON. 2 vols. Leipzig, 1898–1901.

738. BAUDRILLART, H. Histoire du luxe privé et public, depuis l'antiquité jusqu'à nos jours. 2nd edition. 4 vols. Paris, 1880–1881. Vol. III, Le moyen âge et la renaissance.

(*b*) HISTORY OF FREEDOM OF THOUGHT

See also no. 817 below.

739. WHITE, A. D. A history of the warfare of science with theology in Christendom. 2 vols. New York, 1896.

740. BURY, J. B. A history of freedom of thought. New York [1913] (Home university library).

741. LECKY, W. E. H. History of the rise and influence of the spirit of rationalism in Europe. 2 vols. 1865. Revised edition, London, 1870.

742. ROBERTSON, J. M. A short history of free-thought, ancient and modern. 2 vols. 2nd, revised edition, London, 1906.

743. SANTAYANA, G. The life of reason: or, The phases of human progress. 5 vols. New York, 1905–06.

See especially vol. III, *Reason in religion.*

744. RUFFINI, F. Religious liberty. Translated from the Italian by J. P. HEYES, with a preface by J. B. BURY. London, 1912.

745. WHETHAM, W. C. D., and WHETHAM, CATHERINE D., his wife. Science and the human mind: a critical and historical account of the development of natural knowledge. London, 1912.

746. DRAPER, J. W. History of the intellectual development of Europe. 2 vols. Revised edition, New York, 1876.

747. HOLLAND, F. M. The rise of intellectual liberty from Thales to Copernicus. New York, 1885.



748. ZÖCKLER, O. Geschichte der Beziehungen zwischen Theologie und Naturwissenschaften mit besonderer Rücksicht auf die Schöfungsgeschichte. 2 vols. Gütersloh, 1877–79.

(*c*) MEDIEVAL CIVILIZATION IN GENERAL

749. Beiträge zur Kulturgeschichte des Mittelalters und der Renaissance. Edited by W. GOETZ. Leipzig and Teubner, 1908ff.

750. Vom Mittelalter zur Reformation: Forschungen zur Geschichte der deutschen Bildung. Edited by K. BURDACH. Berlin, 1912ff.

Very broad in scope. By no means strictly confined to Germany, e.g., publication began in 1912 with parts 3 and 4 of vol II, *Briefwechsel des Cola di Rienzo*, edited by K. BURDACH and P. PIUR. Original sources are edited along with special studies.

751. GRUPP, G. Kulturgeschichte des Mittelalters. 2 vols. Stuttgart, 1894–95. 2nd edition, 4 vols, Paderborn, 1907–14.

752. KURTH, G. Les origines de la civilisation moderne. 2 vols. 5th edition, Brussels, 1903.

Extends to the time of Charlemagne.

753. LECKY, W. E. H. History of European morals from Augustus to Charlemagne. 2 vols. London and New York, 1870. New, cheap impression, London, 1911.

754. WRIGHT, T. Essays on archaeological subjects, and on various questions connected with the history of art, science, and literature in the middle ages. 2 vols. London, 1861.

755. MERRYWEATHER, F. S. Glimmerings in the dark: or lights and shadows of the olden time. London, 1850.

(*d*) MEDIEVAL INTELLECTUAL LIFE IN GENERAL

756. TAYLOR, H. O. The mediaeval mind. 2 vols. New York, 1911. 2nd edition, revised and enlarged, 1914.

757. WORKMAN, H. B. Christian thought to the Reformation. New York, 1911.

758. NOVATI, F. L'influsso del pensiero latino sopra la civiltà italiana del medio evo. 2nd edition, Milan, 1899.

759. HAURÉAU, B. Singularités historiques et littéraires. Paris, 1861.

Ten studies, among which are the following: Ecoles d'Irlande; Théodulfe, évêque d'Orléans; Odon de Cluny; Anselme le Peripatéticien; Guillaume de Conches.

760. MAITLAND, S. R. The dark ages: a series of essays intended to illustrate the state of religion and literature in the ninth, tenth, eleventh, and twelfth centuries. London, 1844.

This is a curious old defence of the culture of the period. Probably its oldest prototype is J. MABILLON, *Traité des études monastiques*, Paris, 1691.

761. FIGUIER, L. Vies des savants illustrés avec l'appréciation sommaire de leurs travaux. 5 vols. Paris, 1866–1870.

Vol. II, *Moyen âge;* vol. III, *Renaissance.*

(*e*) FRANCE

See also no. 781 below.

762. RAMBAUD, A. Histoire de la civilisation française, 7th edition, 2 vols., Paris, 1898.

763. GUIZOT, F. Histoire de la civilisation en France. Vols. I–V. Paris, 1829–1838. 2nd edition, vols. I–IV, Paris, 1840. 6th edition, 4 vols., Paris, 1857. Translated by W. HAZLITT as vols. II–IV of History of civilization. New York, 1846.

Extends from the 5th to the 14th century.

764. ROSIÈRES, R. Histoire de la société française au moyen âge (987–1483). 2 vols. Paris, 1880. 3rd edition, 1884.

765. REYNAUD, L. Les origines de l'influence française en Allemagne: etude sur l'histoire comparée de la civilisation en France et en Allemagne pendant la période précourtoise (950–1150). Vol. I. Paris, 1913.

766. VOSSLER, K. Frankreichs Kultur im Spiegel seiner Sprachentwicklung. Heidelberg, 1913.

767. CHALLAMEL, A. Mémoires du peuple français. 8 vols. Paris, 1873.

(*f*) GERMANY

(1) *Medieval and Modern Times*

768. STEINHAUSEN, G. Geschichte der deutschen Kultur. Leipzig, 1904. 2nd edition, revised, 2 vols., 1913.

Popular, but reliable. The best general survey.

769. FREYTAG, G. Bilder aus der deutschen Vergangenheit. 4 vols in 5. Leipzig, 1859–62. 27th to 32nd editions, 1908–09.

Vols. I–II, part 1, to 1500.

770. HENNE-AM-RHYN, O. Kulturgeschichte des deutschen Volkes. 2 vols. Berlin, 1886. 3rd edition, 1898.

771. RICHARD, E. History of German civilization: a general survey. New York, 1911. 2nd, revised, edition, 1913.

772. SCHEER, J. Deutsche Kultur- und Sittengeschichte. Leipzig, 1852–53. 12th edition, 3 vols., 1909.

773. SCHEER, J. Germania: zwei Jahrtausende deutschen Lebens kulturgeschichtlich geschildert. 6th edition by H. PRUTZ. Stuttgart, 1905.

774. BIEDERMANN, K. Deutsche Volks- und Kulturgeschichte. 4th edition. 3 vols. Wiesbaden, 1901.

775. Monographien zur deutschen Kulturgeschichte. Edited by G. STEINHAUSEN. 12 vols. Leipzig, 1899–1905. Two supplementary vols., Deutsches Leben der Vergangenheit in Bildern. 1907–08.

For a list of vols. see DAHLMANN-WAITZ, no. 28 above, no. 1733.

(2) *The Middle Ages*

776. HERRE, P. Deutsche Kultur im Mittelalter in Bild und Wort. Leipzig, 1912.

777. STEINHAUSEN, G. Kulturgeschichte der Deutschen im Mittelalter. Leipzig, 1910 (Wissenschaft und Bildung, 88).

778. LÖHER, F. v. Kulturgeschichte der Deutschen im Mittelalter. 3 vols. Munich, 1891–94.

779. MICHAEL, E. Culturzustände des deutschen Volkes während des dreizehnten Jahrhunderts. 5 vols. Vols. I–V, Freiburg, 1897–1911.

780. STEINHAUSEN, G. Geschichte des deutschen Briefes. 2 parts. Berlin, 1889–91.

See also the source-book, *Deutsche Privatbriefe des Mittelalters*, edited by G. STEINHAUSEN, 2 vols., Berlin, 1899–1907.

781. CHÉLARD, R. La civilisation française dans le développement de l'Allemagne (moyen âge). Paris, 1900.

(*g*) HISTORIES OF LITERATURE

(1) *General Histories of Literature*

782. BAUMGARTNER, A. Geschichte der Weltliteratur. 7 vols. St. Louis, 1897–1912. Vol. IV. Die lateinische und griechische Literatur der christlichen Völker. 1900.

The author is a Jesuit.

783. SAINTSBURY, G. A history of criticism and literary taste in Europe from the earliest texts to the present day. 3 vols. Edinburgh and London, 1900–04.

Vol. I, Classical and mediaeval criticism.

784. SISMONDI, J. C. L. S. DE. Historical view of the literature of the south of Europe. Translated from the Italian by T. ROSCOE. 4 vols. London, 1823.

(2) *Ancient Classical Literature and Learning*

785. SANDYS, J. E. A history of classical scholarship. 3 vols. Cambridge, 1903–06. Vol. I, From the sixth century B.C. to the end of the middle ages, in a 2nd edition, 1906.

There is an abridged edition in one volume, *A short history of classical scholarship from the sixth century B.C. to the present day*, Cambridge, 1915. See also A. GUDEMAN, *Grundriss der Geschichte der klassischen Philologie*, 2nd edition, Leipzig, 1909; and H. T. PECK, *A history of classical philology, from the 7th century B.C. to the 20th century A.D.* London and New York, 1911.

786. NORDEN, E. Die antike Kunst-prosa vom 6ten Jahrhundert vor Christus bis in die Zeit der Renaissance. 2 vols. Leipzig, 1898. New edition, 1909.

(3) *Literary History of the Middle Ages*

See also no. 170 above.

787. MANITIUS, M. Geschichte der lateinischen Literatur des Mittelalters. Vol. I. Munich, 1911.

This is now the standard handbook for the history of medieval Latin literature. The first volume extends to about 1050. Until the work is carried into later centuries, we must be content with G. GRÖBER, "Übersicht über die lateinische Literatur von der Mitte des 6. Jahrhunderts bis 1350" in *Grundriss*, no. 305 above, vol. II, part I, 98–432; and with SANDYS, no. 785 above.

788. EBERT, A. Allgemeine Geschichte der Literatur des Mittelalters im Abendlande. 3 vols. Leipzig, 1874–87. Vol. 1 in 2nd edition, 1889.

Extends to the beginning of the 11th century. There is a French translation by J. AYMERIC and J. CONDAMIN, 3 vols., Paris, 1883–1889.

790. HERVIEUX, A. L. Les fabulistes latins depuis le siècle d'Auguste jusqu'à la fin du moyen âge. 5 vols. Paris, 1893–1899.

791. SPENCE, L. A dictionary of medieval romance and romance writers. London, 1913.

792. LUDLOW, J. M. Popular epics of the middle ages of the Norse-German and Carlovingian cycles. 2 vols. London, 1865.

793. KER, W. P. Essays on medieval literature. London, 1905.

On Dante, Boccaccio, Chaucer, Gower, Froissart, and an estimate of the late Gaston Paris.

794. LAWRENCE, W. W. Mediaeval story. New York, 1912.

795. MCLAUGHLIN, E. T. Studies in mediaeval life and literature. New York, 1894.

796. BULFINCH, T. Mythology: the age of fable, the age of chivalry, and legends of Charlemagne. Complete in one volume, revised and enlarged. New York, 1913.

797. DELISLE, L. Littérature latine et histoire du moyen âge. Paris, 1890.

798. FALKE, J. v. Geschichte des Geschmacks im Mittelalter und andere Studien auf dem Gebiete der Kunst und Literatur. 2nd edition. Berlin, 1892.

799. [MARTÈNE, E., and DURAND, U.] Voyage littéraire de deux religieux Benedictines de la Congregation de St. Maur. Paris, 1717. Second voyage littéraire de deux religieux Benedictines de la Congregation de St. Maur. Paris, 1724.

(4) *Byzantine Literature*

800. KRUMBACHER, K. Geschichte der byzantinischen Literatur von Justinian bis zum Ende des oströmischen Reiches (527–1453 A.D.). Munich, 1890. 2nd edition, 1897. (In Handbuch der klassichen Altertumswissenschaft.)

Of fundamental importance. See his condensed, but more recent (1907) treatment, "Die griechische Literatur des Mittelalters," in *Die Kultur der Gegenwart*, no. **729** above, I, 8.

801. DIETERICH, K. Geschichte der byzantinischen und neugriechischen Literatur. Leipzig, 1902 (Die Literaturen des Ostens, 4).

802. MONTEI ATICI, G. Storia della letteratura Bizantina, 324–1453. Milan, 1916.

(5) *France*

803. Histoire littéraire de la France. Vols. I–XXXIV. Paris, 1733–1915. Begun by the Religieux Bénédictins de la Congrégation de Saint-Maur and continued by the Académie des inscriptions et belles-lettres.

The first 26 vols. are analyzed in A. FRANKLIN, no. **23** above, pp. 585–97. For a detailed bibliography of medieval French literature, see outline XXIV in part III below.

(6) *Germany and Austria*

804. SCHERER, W. Geschichte der deutschen Literatur. 11th edition. Berlin, 1910. Translated from the 3rd German edition by Mrs. F. C. CONYBEARE, History of German literature. 2 vols. New York, 1901.

805. NAGL, J. W., and ZEIDLER, J. Deutsch-österreichische Literaturgeschichte. Vols. I–II. Vienna, 1899–1909.

806. VOGT, F., and KOCH, M. Geschichte der deutschen Literatur von den ältesten Zeiten bis zur Gegenwart. 2 vols. Leipzig and Vienna, 1897. 3rd edition, 1910.

807. KELLE, J. Geschichte der deutschen Literatur von den ältesten Zeiten bis zum 13 Jahrhundert. 2 vols. Berlin, 1892–96.

(7) *Italy*

808. GASPARY, A. Geschichte der italienischen Literatur. 2 vols. Strassburg, 1885–88. Translated by H. OELSNER, The history of Italian literature to the death of Dante. London, 1901.

809. GARNETT, R. A history of Italian literature. London, 1908.

810. D'ANCONA, A., and BACCI, O. Manuale della letteratura italiana. New, revised, edition, vols. I–VI, Florence, 1907–10.

Vols. I and II cover the middle ages.

811. TIRABOSCHI, G. Storia della letteratura italiana [to 1700]. Modena, 1772ff. 16 vols. Milan, 1822–26.

See especially vols. III–V [476–1400 A.D.] in 2nd edition, Modena, 1787–94.

(8) *England*

812. Cambridge history of English literature. Edited by A. W. WARD and A. R. WALLER. Vols. I–XII. Cambridge, 1907–15.

For additional references see GROSS, no. **36** above.

(9) *Spain and Portugal*

813. FITZMAURICE-KELLY, J. A history of Spanish literature. London, 1898. Reprint, 1915.

The second Spanish edition, *Historia de la literatura Española*, Madrid, 1916, is especially valuable for its full bibliography. See also G. TICKNOR, *History of Spanish literature*, 3rd edition, 3 vols., London, 1863; the Spanish translation by P. DE GAYANGOS, 4 vols., Madrid, 1851–1861, contains additions and corrections. For Portugal, see A. LOISEAU, *Histoire de la littérature portugaise*, Paris, 1885.

(10) *Russia and Scandinavia*

814. BRÜCKNER, A. Geschichte der russischen Literatur. Leipzig, 1905 (Die Literaturen des Ostens, 2).

See also K. WALISZEWSKI, *Histoire de la littérature russe*, Paris, 1900; W. R. MORFILL, *Slavonic literature*, London, 1883; and G. KREK, *Einleitung in die slavische Literaturgeschichte*, Graz, 1874, 2nd edition, 1887. For Scandinavia, See P. SCHWEITZER, *Geschichte der skandinavischen Literatur*, 3 vols., Leipzig, 1885–1889; and E. MOGK, "Nordische Literatur," in PAUL'S *Grundriss*, no. **307** above.

(*h*) HISTORY OF PHILOSOPHY AND "WELTANSCHAUUNG"

(1) *Medieval "Weltanschauung"*

815. POOLE, R. L. Illustrations of the history of mediaeval thought. London, 1884.

Now see also C. C. J. WEBB, *Studies in the history of natural theology*, Oxford, 1915, on St. Anselm, Abelard, St. Thomas Aquinas, etc.

816. EICKEN, H. v. Geschichte und System der mittelalterlichen Weltanschauung. Stuttgart, 1887.

In 1905 it was announced that C. BAEUMKER would prepare a volume on *Die mittelalterliche Weltanschauung*, for the *Handbuch* of BELOW and MEINECKE, no. 330 above, but the work has not appeared. E. TROELTSCH, *Die Soziallehren der christlichen Kirchen und Gruppen*, vol. I of his *Gesammelten Schriften*, Tübingen, 1912, 178–426.

817. REUTER, H. Geschichte der religiösen Aufklärung im Mittelalter. 2 vols. in 1. Berlin, 1875–77.

The period covered is from the 8th to the 14th century.

818. Weltanschauung: Philosophie und Religion in Darstellungen. Edited by W. DILTHEY and about twenty others. Berlin, 1911.

819. EUCKEN, R. Die Lebensanschauungen der grossen Denker. 8th edition. Leipzig, 1909. Translated by W. S. HOUGH and W. R. BOYCE-GIBSON, The problem of human life as viewed by the great thinkers. London, 1909.

820. DILTHEY, W. Einleitung in die Geisteswissenschaften: Versuch einer Grundlegung für das Studium der Gesellschaft und der Geschichte. Vol. I. Leipzig, 1883.

821. TROELS-LUND, T. F. Himmelsbild und Weltanschauung im Wandel der Zeiten. Authorized German translation by L. BLOCH. 3rd edition, Leipzig, 1908.

(2) *General Histories of Philosophy*

822. UEBERWEG, F. Grundriss der Geschichte der Philosophie. 10th edition, 4 vols. Berlin, 1905–09. Translated from the 4th German edition by G. S. MORRIS, A history of philosophy from Thales to the present time. 2 vols. New York, 1872–1874, also 1892.

See also W. TURNER, *History of philosophy*, Boston, 1903.

823. WINDELBAND, W. Lehrbuch der Geschichte der Philosophie. 5th edition. Tübingen, 1910. Translated by J. H. TUFTS, A history of philosophy. 2nd edition. New York, 1901.

824. FABRE, J. Histoire de la philosophie depuis l'antiquité jusqu'à la revolution française. 5 vols. Paris, 1902ff. Vol. II, *La pensée chrétienne*: des Evangiles à l'Imitation de Jésus-Christ.

825. WULF, M. DE. Histoire de la philosophie scholastique dans les Pays-Bas et la principauté de Liège jusqu'à la revolution française. Louvain, 1895. 2nd edition, 1910.

(3) *Medieval Philosophy*

826. Beiträge zur Geschichte der Philosophie des Mittelalters: Texte und Untersuchungen. Edited by C. BAEUMKER and G. v. HERTLING. Münster, 1891ff.

A collection as valuable for the original texts as for the scholarly expositions of the editors.

827. WULF, M. DE. Histoire de la philosophie médiévale. Louvain, 1900. 2nd enlarged edition, 1905. 3rd edition, an English translation by P. COFFEY, History of medieval philosophy. London and New York, 1909. 4th edition in French, enlarged and revised, 1912.

For Jewish philosophy in the middle ages see NEUMARK, no. 866 below.

828. PICAVET, F. Esquisse d'une histoire générale et comparée des philosophies médiévales. Paris, 1905. 2nd edition, 1907.

829. HAURÉAU, B. Histoire de philosophie scolastique. 2nd edition, 3 vols., Paris, 1872–80.

830. GRABMANN, M. Die Geschichte der scholastischen Methode. Nach den gedruckten und ungedruckten Quellen dargestellt. Vols. I and II. Freiburg-i-B., 1909–11.

831. BAEUMKER, C. "Die europäische Philosophie des Mittelalters." Berlin and Leipzig, 1909. In Kultur der Gegenwart, no. 729 above, I, 5.

832. ENDRES, J. A. Geschichte der mittelalterlichen Philosophie im Abendlande. Kempten, 1908.

833. PRANTL, K. VON. Geschichte der Logik im Abendlande. 4 vols. Leipzig, 1855–70. Vol. II in 2nd edition, 1885.

Extends to the Renaissance.

834. STÖCKL, A. Geschichte der Philosophie des Mittelalters. 3 vols. Mainz, 1864–66.

835. RICKABY, J. Scholasticism. London, 1908.

A primer based largely on WULF, no. 827 above.

(*i*) HISTORY OF EDUCATION

(1) *General Histories of Education*

836. Geschichte der Erziehung vom Anfang bis auf unsere Zeit. Edited by K. A. SCHMID. Continued by G. SCHMID. 5 vols in 10 parts. Berlin, 1884–1902.



837. WILLMANN, O. Didaktik als Bildungslehre. 2 vols. Brunswick, 1882. 4th edition, in one vol., 1909.

838. BAUMEISTER, [K.] A. Handbuch der Erziehungs- und Unterrichtslehre für höhere Schulen. 4 vols. Munich, 1895–98.

839. ZIEGLER, T. Geschichte der Pädagogik mit besonderer Rücksicht auf das höhere Unterrichtswesen. 3rd edition. Munich, 1909.

840. SCHERER, H. Die Pädagogik in ihrer Entwickelung im Zusammenhange mit dem Kultur- und Geistesleben. Vols. I and II, 1–2. Leipzig, 1897–1907.

(2) *History of Medieval Education*

841. GRAVES, F. P. A history of education during the middle ages and the transition to modern times. New York, 1910.

842. ECKSTEIN, F. A. Lateinischer Unterricht. Leipzig, 1882. Extract from SCHMID'S *Encyclopädie,* no. 118 above, IV, 1, 204–405.

843. ECKSTEIN, F. A. Lateinischer und griechischer Unterricht im Mittelalter. Edited by H. HEYDEN (part I, Geschichte). Leipzig, 1887.

844. MASIUS, H. "Die Erziehung im Mittelalter." Stuttgart, 1892. In Geschichte der Erziehung, no. 836 above, II, part I, 94–333.

845. DRANE, AUGUSTA T. Christian schools and scholars. London, 1881. Reprint, New York, 1909.

846. SPECHT, F. A. Geschichte des Unterrichtswesens in Deutschland von den ältesten Zeiten bis zur Mitte des 13 Jahrhunderts. Stuttgart, 1885.

847. PAULSEN, F. Das deutsche Bildungswesen in seiner geschichtlichen Entwickelung. Leipzig, 1906 (Aus Natur und Geisteswelt, 100).

848. LEACH, A. F. Some results of research in the history of education in England with suggestions for its continuance and extension. British Academy publications. Oxford University Press, 1915.

849. LEACH, A. F. Educational charters and documents, 598–1909. Cambridge, 1911.

§17. Jews

For a general bibliography see no. 62 above. For Jews in England see GROSS, no. 36 above, 69*d;* in Germany, DAHLMANN-*WAITZ,* no. 28 above, pp. 150ff.

(*a*) GENERAL HISTORY OF THE JEWS

850. GRÄTZ, H. Geschichte der Juden von den ältesten Zeiten bis auf die Gegenwart. 13 vols. Partly in 2nd–4th editions. Leipzig, 1894–1908. Translated into English, History of the Jews from the earliest times to the present day. 6 vols. Philadelphia, 1891–98.

Popular edition of the above, entitled *Volkstümliche Geschichte der Juden*, 2nd edition, 3 vols., 1908.

S. M. DUBNOW, *History of the Jews in Russia and Poland from the earliest times until the present day*, translated from the Russian by I. FRIEDLÄNDER, vol. 1, Philadelphia, 1916.

851. HOSMER, J. K. The Jews, ancient, mediaeval, and modern. New York, 1891. Often reprinted (Story of the nations series).

852. ABBOTT, G. F. Israel in Europe. London, 1907.

853. HERRMANN, F. Geschichte des jüdischen Volkes seit der Zerstörung Jerusalems. Calw and Stuttgart, 1908.

854. HENNE-AM-RHYN, O. Kulturgeschichte des jüdischen Volkes, von den ältesten Zeiten bis zur Gegenwart. 2nd edition. Jena, 1892.

855. LIEBE, G. H. T. Das Judentum in der deutschen Vergangenheit. Leipzig, 1903.

Part of no. **775** above.

856. BÉDARRIDE, I. Les juifs en France, en Italie, et en Espagne: recherches sur leur état depuis leur dispersion jusqu'à nos jours sous le rapport de la législation, de la littérature et du commerce. Paris, 1859. 3rd edition, revised, 1867.

(*b*) JEWS IN THE MIDDLE AGES

(1) *Social and Economic History*

857. ABRAHAMS, I. Jewish life in the middle ages. London and Philadelphia, 1896.

See also D. S. SCHAFF, "The treatment of the Jews in the middle ages," *Bibliotheca Sacra* (1903), 547–69; J. H. BRIDGES, "The Jews of Europe in the middle ages," *Living age*, LV, 769–788; and J. v. DÖLLINGER, "The Jews in Europe," in his *Studies*, no. **913** below.

858. CARO, G. Sozial- und Wirtschaftsgeschichte der Juden im Mittelalter und der Neuzeit. Vol. I, Das frühere und das hohe Mittelalter. Leipzig, 1908.

859. HAHN, B. Die wirtschaftliche Tätigkeit der Juden im fränkischen und deutschen Reich bis zum 2 Kreuzzug. Freiburg, 1911.

860. HOFFMANN, M. Der Geldhandel der deutschen Juden während des Mittelalters bis zum Jahre 1350. Leipzig, 1910.

861. SCHIPPER, I. Anfänge des Kapitalismus bei den abendländischen Juden im früheren Mittelalter bis zum Ausgang des 12 Jahrhunderts. Vienna, 1907. 66 pp. (Reprint from Zeitschrift für Volkswirtschaft, XV.)

(2) *Intellectual Life of Medieval Jews*

862. SCHLEIDEN, M. J. Die Bedeutung der Juden für Erhaltung und Wiederbelebung der Wissenschaften im Mittelalter. 4th edition. Leipzig, 1879. 32 pp. Translated by M. KLEIMENHAGEN from the 4th, revised, German edition, The importance of the Jews for the preservation and revival of learning during the middle ages. London, 1911. 63 pp.

863. STEINSCHNEIDER, M. Die arabische Literatur der Juden. Frankfurt, 1902.

See also D. NEUMARK, *Geschichte der jüdischen Literatur des Mittelalters*, 2 vols., Berlin, 1898.

864. STEINSCHNEIDER, M. Die hebräischen Übersetzungen des Mittelalters, und die Juden als Dolmetscher: ein Beitrag zur Literaturgeschichte des Mittelalters. 2 vols. Berlin, 1893.

865. STEINSCHNEIDER, M. Die Geschichtsliteratur der Juden in Druckwerken und Handschriften. Frankfurt, 1905.

866. NEUMARK, D. Geschichte der jüdischen Philosophie des Mittelalters. 2 vols. Berlin, 1907-1910.

Now see also I. HUSIK, *A history of mediaeval Jewish philosophy*, New York, 1916; and A. BONILLA Y SAN MARTÍN, *Historia de la filosofía Española*, 2 vols., Madrid, 1908–1911, the second volume of which is on Jewish philosophy to the twelfth century.

867. YELLIN, D., and ABRAHAMS, I. Maimonides. Philadelphia, 1903.

868. GÜDEMANN, M. Geschichte des Erziehungswesens und der Cultur der abendländischen Juden während des Mittelalters und der neueren Zeit. 3 vols. Vienna, 1880–1888.

See also his *Quellenschriften zur Geschichte des Unterrichts und der Erziehung bei den deutschen Juden von den ältesten Zeiten bis auf Mendelssohn*, Berlin, 1891.

(3) *Medieval Jewries*

869. PHILIPSON, D. Old European jewries. Philadelphia, 1894.

870. RODOCANACHI, E. Le saint-siège et les juifs: le ghetto à Rome. Paris, 1891.

871. BERLINER, A. Geschichte der Juden in Rom von der ältesten Zeit bis zur Gegenwart. 2 vols., in one. Frankfurt, 1893.

872. ROBERT, U. Les signes d'infamie au moyen âge: Juifs, Sarasins, héretiques, lépreux, cagots, et filles publiques. Paris, 1891.

(4) *General Accounts and Miscellanea*

873. HARRIS, M. H. History of the mediaeval Jews: from the Moslem conquest of Spain to the discovery of America. New York, 1907. Second edition, revised and enlarged, 1916.

874. CHWOLSON, D. Beiträge zur Entwicklungsgeschichte des Judentums von c. 400 v. Chr. bis c. 1000 n. Chr. Leipzig, 1910.

875. DEPPING, G. B. Les juifs dans le moyen âge: essai historique sur leur état civil, commercial et littéraire. Paris, 1845.

876. BAER, F. Studien zur Geschichte der Juden im Königreich Aragonien während des 13 und 14 Jahrhunderts. Berlin, 1913.

877. STRAUSS, R. Die Juden im Königreich Sizilien unter Normannen und Staufern. Heidelberg, 1910 (Heidelberger Abhandlungen).

878. RÉGNÉ, J. Etude sur la condition des juifs de Narbonne du V^e^ au XIV^e^ siècle. Narbonne, 1912.

879. STEINBERG, AUGUSTA. Studien zur Geschichte der Juden in der Schweiz während des Mittelalters. Zürich, 1902.

880. STOBBE, O. Die Juden in Deutschland während des Mittelalters. Brunswick, 1866. Reprint, Leipzig, 1902.

881. STERN, M. Urkundliche Beiträge über die Stellung der Päpste zu den Juden. Kiel, 1893.

882. MAULDE LA CLAVIÈRE, A. R. DE. Les juifs dans les états français de saint-siège au moyen âge: documents pour servir à l'histoire des Israélites et de la papauté. Paris, 1886.

883. ADLER, E. N. Auto de fé and Jew. London, 1908.

884. The itinerary of Benjamin of Tudela: critical text, translation and commentary by E. N. ADLER. London, 1907.

See also BEAZLEY, *Dawn of modern geography*, II. ch. IV, "Benjamin of Tudela and other Jewish travellers" to ca. 1250.

§18. Collections

See more extended lists for France in MONOD, no. 22 above, pp. 120–127; for Germany, DAHLMANN-WAITZ, no. 28 above, pp. 19ff. STEIN, no. 1 above, on pp. 642–649, gives a list of indexes of the publications of academies and miscellaneous learned societies, and on pp. 697–708 a similar list of indexes of serial publications of historical societies. Fortunately we have in English the following

interesting articles by foreign scholars in the Annual report of the American historical association, 1909, 229–277: "Historical societies in Great Britain, by G. W. PROTHERO; "The work of Dutch historical societies," by H. T. COLENBRANDER; "The historical societies of France," by C. ENLART; "The work of historical societies in Spain," by R. ALTAMIRA.

(*a*) IMPORTANT ACADEMIES AND LEARNED SOCIETIES

(1) *France and Belgium*

885. Académie des inscriptions et belles-lettres [of Paris]. Histoire et mémoires. 50 vols. Paris, 1717–1809. Mémoires, 1803ff. Mémoires présentés à l'Académie par divers savants étrangers; first series, Sujets divers, Paris, 1844ff.; second series, Antiquités de la France, 1843ff. Notices et extraits des manuscripts de la Bibliothèque nationale et autres bibliothèques, Paris, 1787ff. Monuments et mémoires (Fondation EUGÈNE PIOT), Paris, 1894ff.

See also nos **460**, **803** above and **975** below, and the *Recueil des historiens des croisades*, under outline XXI in part II below.

886. Société de l'histoire de France. Paris.

Issues an *Annuaire-Bulletin*, 1837ff., in addition to the publications for which see no. **966** below. Also see **974** below.

887. Bibliothèque des écoles françaises d'Athènes et de Rome. Paris, 1876ff.

One hundred and ten volumes had appeared in 1913. For series II and III see no. **959** below. See also the *Mélanges d'archéologie et d'histoire*, edited by the Ecole français de Rome.

888. Bibliothéque de l'Ecole pratique des hautes études [of Paris]. Section des sciences philologiques et historiques. Paris, 1869ff.

889. Bibliothéque de la Faculté des lettres, Université de Paris. Paris, 1896ff.

890. Ecole des chartes. Paris.

See nos **164** and **231** above.

891. Académie des sciences morales et politiques. Comptes rendus. Paris, 1840ff.

892. Académie royale des sciences, des lettres et des beaux-arts de Belgique. Bulletins. Brussels, 1836ff.

893. Recueil de travaux publiés par les membres de la conference d'histoire, . . . of the University of Louvain. Louvain, 1890ff.

(2) *Germany and Austria*

For collections edited by individuals see DAHLMANN-WAITZ, Quellenkunde, nos. 1364–1389.

894. Abhandlungen der königlichen Akademie der Wissenshaften in Berlin, 1815ff. Philosophisch-historische Klasse, 1908ff. Sitzungsberichte, 1882ff.

895. Abhandlungen der königlichen bayerischen Akademie der Wissenschaften zu München. Historische Klasse. Munich, 1833ff. Sitzungsberichte. Philosophisch-philologisch-historische Klasse. Munich, 1871ff.

896. Abhandlungen der königlichen sächsischen Gesellschaft der Wissenschaften zu Leipzig. Philologisch-historische Klasse. Leipzig, 1846ff.

897. Abhandlungen der königlichen Gesellschaft der Wissenschaften zu Göttingen, 1843ff. Historisch-philologische Klasse, 1893ff. Nachrichten, 1894ff.

898. Studien und Darstellungen aus dem Gebiete der Geschichte, im Auftrage der Görres-Gesellschaft und in Verbindung mit der Redaktion des historischen Jahrbuches herausgegeben von H. Grauert. Freiburg, 1900ff.

See no. 152 above.

899. Bibliothek des kgl. preussischen historischen Instituts in Rom. Rome, 1905ff.

See also no. 41 above and 993 below.

900. Publikation des österreichischen historischen Instituts in Rom. Vienna and Leipzig, 1910ff.

Both of these publications contain studies as well as texts.

901. Sitzungsberichte der kaiserlichen Akademie der Wissenschaften zu Wien. Philosophish-historische Klasse. Vienna, 1848ff.

See also no. 986 below.

902. Sitzungsberichte der königlichen böhmischen Gesellschaft der Wissenschaften zu Prag. Prague, 1859ff. Philosophisch-historisch-philologische Klasse, 1885ff.

(3) *England*

903. Royal historical society. Transactions. London, 1872ff.

904. The British academy for the promotion of historical, philosophical and philological studies. London, 1903ff.

(4) *Italy*

905. Istituto storico italiano. Bulletino, no. 162 above, and Fonti, no. 990 *below.*

906. Reale accademia dei Lincei. Founded 1603.

Since 1875 divided into two classes, one of which is devoted to "scienze morali, storiche e filologiche."

(5) *Spain*

907. Real academia de la historia. Madrid, 1738ff. Boletin, 1877ff.

For a list of its publications see *Annual report of the American historical association*, 1909, p. 271.

(*b*) COLLECTIONS OF HISTORICAL ESSAYS

For similar collections, mostly German, see DAHLMANN-WAITZ, Quellenkunde, nos. 1304–1338.

908. FUSTEL DE COULANGES, N. D. Recherches sur quelques problèmes d'histoire. Paris, 1894.

909. COULTON, G. G. Mediaeval studies. London, 1905ff. First series, 2nd revised edition, with three appendices. London, 1915.

910. CREIGHTON, M. Historical lectures and addresses. London, 1903.

911. CREIGHTON, LOUISE (VON GLEHN) "Mrs. MANDELL CREIGHTON." Heroes of European history. London and New York, 1906.

912. CUTTS, E. L. Scenes and characters of the middle ages. London, 1872. Reprinted 1902. 3rd edition, 1911.

913. DÖLLINGER, J. v. Akademische Vorträge. 3 vols. Nordlingen and Munich, 1888–1891. Translated by MARGARET WARRE, Studies in European history. London, 1890.

914. EDÉLSTAND DU MÉRIL, M. Etudes sur quelques points d'archéologie et d'histoire littéraire. Paris, 1862.

Among the eight studies are the following: Les formes du marriage . . . pendant le moyen âge; De l'usage non interrompu jusqu'à nos jours des tablettes en cire; De la tapisserie de Bayeux et de son importance historique.

915. EDÉLSTAND DU MÉRIL, M. Mélanges archéologiques et littéraires. Paris, 1850.

Especially pp. 243–89, "Des origines de la basse latinité et la nécessité de glossaires spéciaux."

916. FREEMAN, E. A. Historical essays. 4 series in 4 vols. London, 1871ff.

917. FROUDE, J. A. Short studies in great subjects. Vols. I and II. London, 1894.

918. GASQUET, F. A. The last abbot of Glastonbury and other essays. London, 1908.

919. GASQUET, F. A. Old English bible and other essays. London, 1897.

920. GRAEVENITZ, G. v. Deutsche in Rom: Studien und Skizzen aus elf Jahrhunderten. Leipzig, 1902.

Ch. 1, Charlemagne; ch. 2, Otto III.

921. HARRISON, F. The meaning of history. New York, 1908.

922. JESSOPP, A. The coming of the friars and other historical essays. 5th edition. London, 1889.

923. JESSOPP, A. Studies by a recluse. London, 1893. 3rd edition, 1895.

924. JOURDAIN, C. Excursions historiques et philosophiques à travers le moyen âge. Paris, 1888.

925. LANGLOIS, C. V. Questions d'histoire et d'enseignement. Paris, 1902.

926. LUCHAIRE, A. Mélanges d'histoire du moyen âge. Paris, 1908.

927. PATTISON, R. P. DUNN. Leading figures in European history. New York, 1912.

928. SALZMANN, L. F. Mediaeval byways. Boston, 1913.

929. SHAHAN, T. J. The middle ages: sketches and fragments. New York, 1904.

930. STILLÉ, C. J. Studies in mediaeval history. Philadelphia, 1882. 2nd edition, 1883.

931. STUBBS, W. Lectures on European history. Edited by A. HASSALL. London, 1904.

932. STUBBS, W. Seventeen lectures on the study of mediaeval and modern history and kindred subjects. Oxford, 1886. 3rd edition, 1900.

933. WRIGHT, T., and HALLIWELL, J. O. Reliquae antiquae. 2 vols. London, 1845.

(*c*) COMMEMORATIVE ESSAYS

For other similar essays, mostly German, see DAHLMANN-WAITZ, Quellenkunde, nos. 1339–1353.

934. Mélanges d'histoire offerts à M. CHARLES BÉMONT, par ses élèves à l'occasion de la vingt-cinquième année de son enseignement à l'école pratique des hautes études. Paris, 1913.

935. Mélanges offerts à M. EMILE CHATELAIN. Paris, 1909.

936. Mélanges PAUL FABRE: étude d'histoire du moyen âge. Paris, 1902.

937. Mélanges FITTING (Soixante-quinzième anniversaire de M. le professeur HERMANN FITTING). 2 vols. Paris, 1908.

938. Recueil de travaux d'erudition dédiés à la mémoire de JULIEN HAVET. Paris, 1895.

939. Mélanges d'études d'histoire du moyen âge dédiées à GABRIEL MONOD. Paris, 1896.

(*d*) MISCELLANEOUS COLLECTIONS

940. Cambridge historical series. Edited by G. W. PROTHERO.

941. Cambridge historical essays.

942. Cambridge manuals of science and literature. Cambridge University Press.

943. Continental legal history. Published under the auspices of the Association of American Law Schools. Boston, Little, Brown and Company.

In 1915, vols. I, II, III, V, XI had appeared.

944. Everyman's library. London and New York.

See also the *Temple classics*, and the *King's classics*.

945. Göschen Sammlung: geschichtliche Bibliothek aus der "Sammlung Göschen." Berlin and Leipzig.

946. Home university library. New York, 1911ff.

947. Aus Natur und Geisteswelt. Teubner, Leipzig.

948. Wissenschaft und Bildung. Quelle and Meyer, Leipzig.

Chapter V

LARGE COLLECTIONS OF ORIGINAL SOURCES

§1. General Collections

See also nos. 383–393 above.

949. Records of civilization: sources and studies. Edited by J. T. Shotwell. New York, Columbia University Press, 1915ff.

A collection of translations from the sources, with introductions and bibliographies. The volumes thus far published which pertain to the middle ages are: *History of the Franks by Gregory, bishop of Tours*, selections, translated with notes by E. Brehaut, New York, 1916; and *The book of the popes (Liber pontificalis)*, I, to the pontificate of Gregory I, translated, with an introduction by Louise R. Loomis, New York, 1916. See below, no. **959** note.

A similar collection of translations into German, but on a humbler scale, is the *Quellensammlung für den geschichtlichen Unterricht an höheren Schulen*, Leipzig, also still in process of publication.

950. Bibliotheca scriptorum medii aevi Teubneriana. Leipzig, ca. 14 vols. in 1911.

Prints Latin texts. Although merely a publisher's venture, the collection is valuable enough to be ranged with academic sets of texts.

951. Thesaurus novus anecdotorum seu collectio monumentorum, complectens regum ac principum aliorumque virorum illustrium epistolas et diplomata bene multa. 5 vols. Edited by E. Martène and U. Durand. Paris, 1717ff.

952. Veterum scriptorum et monumentorum amplissima collectio. Edited by E. Martène and U. Durand. 2nd edition. 9 vols. Paris, 1724–1733.

The above two are typical older collections of miscellaneous material, most of which can now be found in critical newer editions.

§2. Medieval Church

(*a*) General Collections of Ecclesiastical Writings

953. Patrologiae cursus completus. Series latina, 221 vols. Paris, 1844–1864. Vols. 218–221 are index vols., Paris, 1862–1864.

Series graeca, 161 vols., in 166 [no index], Paris, 1857–1866. Edited by J. P. MIGNE.

Although this vast collection is a mere publisher's venture and consists largely of reprints of old and often very imperfect editions, it is now universally recognized by scholars as an indispensable tool for the study of the medieval church. The complete works of some authors are included. Some of the selections are profane works which have little or no connection with the church. The Latin series extends to the time of pope Innocent III (1198–1216); a table of authors in both series, arranged alphabetically, is printed in POTTHAST, *Wegweiser*, no. 18 above, I, pp. xciv ff. The Greek series extends to 863 A.D. It contains Latin translations of the Greek texts. These Latin translations have been published separately under the title, *Patrologiae graecae latine tantum editae*, 81 vols., in 85, Paris, 1856–1867.

In 1914 the Kgl. Gesellschaft der Wissenschaften zu Göttingen appointed a Religionsgeschichtliche Kommission to edit the most important sources of church history in German translations, under the title, *Quellen der Religionsgeschichte*, chief editor, OLDENBERG. For programme write to Prof. TITIUS in Göttingen.

A well-selected collection of source material for school use is *Quellen zur Geschichte des Papsttums und des römischen Katholizismus*, edited by C. MIRBT, Freiburg, 1895, 3rd edition, Tübingen, 1911.

954. Corpus scriptorum ecclesiasticorum latinorum. 62 vols in 1913. Vienna, 1866ff.

This is to comprise all the writings of church fathers to the seventh century. An attempt is made to establish the very best texts from the most important manuscripts. The contents of vols. I–XXXI are given in POTTHAST, *Wegweiser*, no. 18 above, I, p. lviii.

The principal set of English translations of the writings of the church fathers since about 324 is *A select library of Nicene and post-Nicene fathers of the Christian church*, edited by P. SCHAFF and H. WACE, in two series: series I, 14 vols., New York, 1886–1890; series II, 14 vols., New York, 1890–1900.

955. Collection de textes et documents pour l'étude historique du christianisme. Edited by H. HEMMER and P. LEJAY. Paris.

Ten volumes had appeared in 1910. Original texts, with translations into French. It promises to be a very valuable aid in the study of the original sources of church history. See also *Sammlung ausgewählter kirchen- und dogmengeschichtlicher Quellenschriften*, edited by G. KRÜGER, Freiburg.

(*b*) THE PAPACY

956. Regesta pontificum Romanorum ad annum 1198. Edited by P. JAFFÉ. 2 vols. Berlin, 1851, 2nd edition, Leipzig, 1885–1888.

957. Regesta pontificum Romanorum, inde ab anno post Christum natum 1198 ad annum 1304. Edited by A. POTTHAST. 2 vols. Berlin, 1874–1875.

958. Regesta pontificum Romanorum (to 1198). Edited by P. F. KEHR under the auspices of the Academy of sciences in Göttingen. Berlin, 1906ff.

Liber diurnus, ou Recueil des formules usitées par la chancellerie pontificale du V^e^ au XI^e^ siècle, edited by E. DE ROZIÈRE, Paris, 1869. This edition is not superseded by that of T. v. Sickel which appeared in 1889.

959. Bibliothèque des écoles françaises d'Athènes et de Rome. 2nd and 3rd series. Paris, 1884ff.

Contains the registers of popes of the 13th century, most of which are still incomplete in 1916, and also the best complete edition of the *Liber pontificalis*, edited by L. DUCHESNE, 2 vols., Paris, 1886, 1892, now translated in part in no. **949** above. (A new edition of the *Liber pontificalis* in the *Monumenta Germaniae historica, Gesta pontificum*, I, was begun by T. MOMMSEN in 1898, but it is still incomplete.) In the 3rd series the publication of letters of the popes of the 14th century has been begun. For the 1st series, see no. **887** above. See also BERNHEIM, *Lehrbuch*, no. **64** above, p. 561, and BRESSLAU, *Handbuch*, no. **240** above, I, 72–85, 104–124, for references to papal documents.

960. Acta pontificum Romanorum inedita (97–1198). Edited by J. VON PFLUGK-HARTTUNG. 3 vols. Tübingen and Stuttgart, 1881–1888.

For documents concerning the papal states see the *Codex diplomaticus dominii temporalis S. Sedis*, edited by A. THEINER, 3 vols., Rome, 1861–1862; and the old collection, *Monumenta dominationis pontificae*, edited by CENNI, Rome, 1760–1761.

961. Epistolae pontificum Romanorum ineditae. Edited by S. LOEWENFELD. Leipzig, 1885.

Pontificum Romanorum qui fuerunt inde ab ex. saecula IX usque ad finem saeculi XIII vitae, edited by J. M. WATTERICH, 2 vols., Leipzig, 1862.

(*c*) CHURCH COUNCILS

962. Sacrorum conciliorum nova et amplissima collectio. Edited by J. D. MANSI and others. 31 vols. Florence and Venice, 1759–1798 [to 1590 A.D.]. New edition and continuation, vols. 0–47, Paris, 1900ff.

There is a conspectus for vols. I–XLVI and an alphabetical index in vol. XXXVI*a*. See HEFELE, *Conciliengeschichte*, no. **469** above.

(*d*) LIVES OF SAINTS

963. Acta sanctorum. Begun by J. BOLLANDUS. Still incomplete. Vols. I–66. Antwerp, 1643–1770; Brussels, 1845ff.; Paris and Rome, 1866 and 1887. Brussels, 1894ff. New edition, vols. 1–66, Paris, 1863ff.

This vast collection of biographies of saints is arranged according to saints' days, and now extends well into November.

The more recent volumes have been edited under the able supervision of the late C. DE SMEDT. See the description of the set in POTTHAST, *Wegweiser*, no. 18 above, I, p. xxxii. There is an index to the volumes for January to October in vol. 62. For guides to the various biographies contained in the collection, see also POTTHAST, *Wegweiser*, section "Vita"; and the *Bibliotheca hagiographica*, no. 53 above. The *Analecta Bollandiana*, no. 177 above, form a periodical supplement to the *Acta sanctorum*. See also C. NARBEY, *Supplément aux Acta sanctorum pour les vies de saints de l'époque Mérovingienne*. vols. I and II, Paris, 1899, 1912; and S. BARING-GOULD, *Lives of the saints*, 16 vols., Edinburgh, 1914.

(*e*) MONASTIC RULES

964. Codex regularum monasticarum. Edited by L. HOLSTEN. 3 parts. Rome, 1661. 2nd edition, 6 vols., Vienna, 1759.

Still the largest collection of monastic rules.

§3. France and Belgium

965. Collection de documents inédits sur l'histoire de France. Publié par les soins du ministre de l'instruction publique. Paris, 1835ff.

Three hundred and thirty-one volumes had appeared in 1915. I: Chroniques, mémoires, journaux, récits et compositions historiques; II: Cartulaires et recueils de chartes; III: Correspondances et documents politiques et administratives; IV: Documents de la période révolutionnaire; V: Documents philologiques, philosophiques, juridiques, etc.; VI, Publications archéologiques.

The first 177 vols. are analyzed in A. FRANKLIN, *Les sources de l'histoire de France*, no. 23 above, 107–183. POTTHAST, *Wegweiser*, no. 18 above, I, p. liv, gives an alphabetical list of the contents of the first 212 vols.

966. Publications de la Société de l'histoire de France. Paris, 1835ff.

Number 376 appeared in 1917. Contents of the first 130 vols. are anaylzed in A. FRANKLIN, *Les sources de l'histoire de France*, no. 23 above, 207–251; and the contents of the first 203 vols in POTTHAST, *Wegweiser*, no. 18 above, I, p. cxl. See also no. 886 above. The *Publications de la Société de l'histoire de Normandie*, Rouen, 1870ff., contain valuable additional material.

967. Rerum Gallicarum et Francicarum scriptores. (Recueil des historiens des Gaules et de la France). Edited by M. BOUQUET and others. 24 vols. Paris, 1738–1904. Extends to 1328. New impression of first 19 vols. by L. DELISLE. Paris, 1868–1880; vols. XX–XXIII, 1893–1894. Vol. XXIV, Paris, 1904. Nouvelle série in quarto, 7 vols., Paris, 1899–1906 (Documents financièrs, obituaires, pouillés).

There is an index in vol. XXIII. The contents of the first 22 vols. is analyzed in A. FRANKLIN, *Les sources*, no. **23** above, 82–94. POTTHAST, *Wegweiser*, no. **18** above, I, p. xlii, has a short analysis. This collection is commonly referred to as "Bouquet."

968. Collection de textes pour servir à l'étude et à l'enseignement de l'histoire. 1^er^ série. Des origines au XVIII^e^ siècle. 49 vols. in 1913. Paris, 1886ff.

Similar to the German *Scriptores rerum Germanicarum in usum scholarum*, no. **979** below, but more comprehensive. Includes sources for modern history. The texts are accompanied by notes and introductions. Although designed primarily for instructional purposes, the set maintains a high standard of scholarship.

Beginners will find much help in the following guides to the study of medieval chronicles of France: G. MASON, *Early chroniclers of Europe: France*, London, 1879; L. CONSTANS, *Les grands historiens du moyen âge*, Paris, 1891; and A. DEBIDOUR and E. ETIENNE, *Les chroniqueurs français au moyen âge*, Paris, 1895.

969. Collection complète des mémoires relatifs à l'histoire de France depuis le règne de Philippe-Auguste jusqu'en 1763. Edited by C. B. PETITOT [and M. MONMERQUÉ]. Series I, 52 vols; series II, 79 vols. Paris, 1819–1829.

Dissertations are interspersed here and there. The first 15 vols. of series I extend to almost 1500. Their contents are analyzed in A. FRANKLIN, *Les sources de l'histoire de France*, no. **23** above, 288–302.

970. Nouvelle collection des mémoires sur l'histoire de France depuis le 13^e^ siècle jusqu'à la fin du 18^e^ siècle. Edited by J. MICHAUD and P. POUJOULAT. 32 vols. Paris, 1836–1839.

A new edition of the previous set, with additions. A publishers' venture rather than a serious historical work. Vols. I–IV treat the period up to 1500. The contents are analyzed in A. FRANKLIN, *Les sources de l'histoire de France*, no. **23** above, 303–315. In this edition there are no dissertations.

971. Collection des mémoires relatifs à l'histoire de France, depuis la fondation de la monarchie française jusqu'à XIII^e^ siècle. Edited by M. F. GUIZOT. 31 vols. Paris, 1824–1835.

French translations without the original texts. Not a scholarly piece of work. Contents are analyzed in A. FRANKLIN, *Les sources de l'histoire de France*, no. 23 above, 270–78; also in POTTHAST, *Wegweiser*, no. 18 above, I, p. lxxx.

972. Collection des chroniques nationales françaises écrites en langue vulgaire, du XIII^e^ au XVI^e^ siècle. Edited by J. A. BUCHON. 47 vols. Paris, 1824–1829.

Contents analyzed in A. FRANKLIN, *Les sources de l'histoire de France*, no. 23 above, 279–287.

973. Choix de chroniques et mémoires sur l'histoire de France. Edited by J. A. BUCHON. 17 vols. Paris, 1836–1838.

This and the above collection are analyzed in POTTHAST, *Wegweiser*, no. 18 above, I, pp. xliv–xlvi.

974. Les grandes chroniques de France. Paris, 1910ff.

A new edition begun by the Société de l'histoire de France.

975. Chartes et diplômes relatifs à l'histoire de France publiés par les soins de l'Académie des inscriptions et belles-lettres. Paris, 1908ff.

For contents up to 1917, see *Revue historique*, CXXI, 321, note 2, and *American historical review*, XXII (1917), 463. See also *Table chronologique des diplômes, chartes, titres et actes imprimés concernant l'histoire de France*, edited by L. G. O. DE BRÉQUIGNY; vols. I–III, Paris, 1736–1776; continued, vols. IV–VIII (to 1314), Paris, 1836–1876. Likewise *Recueil général des anciennes lois françaises de 420 à 1789*, edited by ISAMBERT and others, 29 vols., Paris, 1822–1833. For the later middle ages we have a better collection, *Ordonnances des rois de France de la III^e^ race jusqu'en 1514*, 22 vols., Paris, 1723–1849 (often called Ordonnances du Louvre).

976. L'histoire de France racontée par les contemporains. Extraits des chroniques et des mémoires. Edited by B. ZELLER. 65 vols. Paris, 1881–1890.

An older, similar venture is DUSSIEUX, *L'histoire de France racontée par les contemporains*.

977. Collection de chroniques Belges inédites. 111 vols. Brussels, 1836ff.

The first 44 vols. are analyzed in A. FRANKLIN, *Les sources de l'histoire de France*, no. 23 above, 184–206; and the contents of the first 86 vols. are indicated in POTTHAST, *Wegweiser*, no. 18 above, I, p. liii. See also the *Collection des chroniquers et trouvères Belges*, Brussels, 1863ff.; the *Recueil de chroniques, chartes et autres documents concernant l'histoire et les antiquités de la Flandre occidentale*, publié par la Société d'émulation de Bruges, 56 vols., Bruges, 1839–1864. For Holland we have *Werken uitgegeven door het Historisch Genootschap te Utrecht*, 1863ff., which is devoted largely to the his-

tory of the seventeenth century; the contents of the few volumes relating to the middle ages is indicated in POTTHAST, *Wegweiser*, I, p. cxlvi. The same society also published a *Codex diplomaticus neerlandicus*, 8 vols., Utrecht, 1848–1863.

§4. Germany, Austria and Switzerland

978. Monumenta Germaniae historica (500–1500). Edited by G. H. PERTZ, T. MOMMSEN, etc. Folio series, Berlin, 1826–1874; quarto series, 1876ff.

This is the most famous nineteenth century collection of medieval sources. Brief analyses of its contents will be found in DAHLMANN-WAITZ, no. **28** above, no. 892; HERRE, no. **14** above, no. 1020; POTTHAST, *Wegweiser*, no. **18** above, I, p. cxii; *Cambridge medieval history*, no. **340** above, II, p. 714. FRANKLIN, no. **23** above, 95–106, analyzes the folio series published before 1874. A great deal has been written about this remarkable achievement of German scholarship; POTTHAST listed all that had appeared before 1895. The *Neues Archiv*, no. **167** above, keeps the world of scholars informed regarding the progress of work on the *Monumenta*. WATTENBACH, no. **29** above, is the best introduction to the main contents of the set. The limits of the work are 500–1500 A.D., but thus far it has gone little beyond the middle of the 13th century.

979. Scriptores rerum Germanicarum in usum scholarum, ex Monumentis Germaniae historicis recusi. 46 vols. in 1905. Hanover, 1840ff.

This octavo collection for pedagogical use is a selection from the chronicles which appear in the *Monumenta Germaniae historica*. In some cases, however, the octavo edition contains the more recent and more trustworthy text of a medieval author. The contents of the set are analyzed briefly in DAHLMANN-WAITZ, no. **28** above, no. 1001.

980. Quellensammlung zur deutschen Geschichte. Edited by E. BRANDENBURG and G. SEELIGER. Leipzig, 1907ff.

Intended primarily for seminar use in German universities, but also makes a wider appeal to scholars. The works which appeared before 1912 are listed in DAHLMANN-WAITZ, no. **28** above, no. 895.

981. Die Geschichtschreiber der deutschen Vorzeit. Edited by G. H. PERTZ, etc. Berlin and Leipzig, 1849ff. 2nd edition, 90 vols., by W. WATTENBACH, ibid., 1884ff. 3rd edition and continuation by O. HOLDER-EGGER and M. TANGL, 1909ff.

The contents are given in POTTHAST, *Wegweiser*, no. **18** above, I, p. lxxiv. This very convenient set contains good German translations of the most interesting parts of the section "Scriptores" in the *Monumenta Germaniae historica*.

no. 26 above, no. 1003.

983. Bibliotheca rerum Germanicarum 6 vols. Berlin, 1864–1873.

Contents in POTTHAST, *Wegweiser*. See also *Monumenta Germaniae sele annum 1250,* edited by M. DOEBERL,

984. Fontes rerum Germanicarum. Edi vols. Stuttgart, 1843–68.

This collection contains sources, the later middle ages, whereas J devoted to the early middle ages. T tain important sources which had *Monumenta Germaniae historica.* E useful.

985. Regesta imperii. Edited by J. F 1831ff. New edition in several parts by vari 1877ff.

For titles of the various parts HERRE, no. 14 above, no. 1024, or B p. 560. Detailed information about t material for Germany is in BRESSLAU For pedagogical purposes J. F. BÖHM Innsbruck, 1870; and E. WINKELMAN *saeculi XIII et XIV,* 2 vols., Innsbru able; but the best book for that *sammlung zur Geschichte der deutsc Mittelalter und Neuzeit,* edited by K. new edition, 1913.

986. Fontes rerum Austriacarum: öste quellen. By the Vienna Academy. Part 1, S

§5. Italy

988. Rerum Italicarum scriptores ab anno aerae christianae 500 ad 1500. Edited by L. A. MURATORI [died 1750]. 25 vols. in 28. Milan, 1723–1751. Indexes, Turin, 1885. New edition by G. CARDUCCI and V. FIORINI. Città di Castello, 1900ff.

This renowned collection was the first great attempt to collect all the medieval sources of one country. Work on the new edition, together with additions, are reported in the *Archivio Muratoriana*, no. **168** above. See also the additions in the *Archivio storico italiano*, no. **160** above.

A very serviceable introduction to the sources of medieval Italy is U. BALZANI, *Le chroniche Italiane nel medio evo*, Milan, 1884, 3rd edition, Milan, 1909; English edition, *Early chroniclers of Italy*, London, 1883.

989. Antiquitates Italicae medii aevi. 6 vols. Edited by L. A. MURATORI. Milan, 1738–1742. Index, Turin, 1885.

990. Fonti per la storia d'Italia. Published by the Istituto storico italiano. Rome, 1887ff. 44 vols. in 1916.

In the following divisions: Scrittori; Epistolari e Regesti; Diplomi; Statuti; Leggi; Antichità (Necrologi). This is supplemented by the *Bollettino dell' Istituto storico italiano*, no. **162** above.

991. Monumenta historiae patriae edita iussu Caroli Alberti regis. First series in folio, vols. I–XX; second series in quarto, vols. XXIff. Turin, 1836ff.

992. Documenti di storia italiana. Publicati a cura della R. Deputazione di Toscana, dell' Umbria e delle Marche. 9 vols. Florence, 1867–1889.

For contents see POTTHAST, *Wegweiser*, no. **18** above, I, p. lxiii. Especially devoted to the middle ages.

993. Regesta chartarum Italiae. Edited by Kgl. Preuss. historisches Institut and the Istituto storico italiano. Rome, 1907ff.

Contents in DAHLMANN-WAITZ, no. **28** above, no. 1274.

994. La storia d'Italia, narrata da scrittori contemporanei agli avvenimenti. Edited by P. ORSI. 3 vols. Turin, 1896–1905. Vol. I (473–1313) in 2nd edition, 1905.

A collection of extracts from the sources, translated into Italian with explanatory remarks and bibliographies.

§6. England

995. Rerum Britannicarum medii aevi scriptores: or Chronicles and memorials of Great Britain and Ireland during the middle ages, published by the authority of her Majesty's treasury under the

direction of the Master of the Rolls. 99 works in 244 vols. London, 1858–1896.

This collection is commonly called the "Rolls Series." For the contents in alphabetical arrangement according to titles of works, see GROSS, no. 36 above, pp. 704–711. POTTHAST, *Wegweiser*, no. 18 above, I, pp. cxxvii ff., lists the separate works according to their order in the set.

996. Foedera, conventiones, litterae, et cujuscunque generis acta publica inter reges Angliae et alios quosvis imperatores, reges, pontifices, principes, vel communitates [1101–1654]. Edited by T. RYMER.

For various editions and aids see GROSS, no. 36 above, no. 2097. Also see GROSS in general for source material relating to English history.

§7. Spain and Portugal

997. Colección de documentos ineditos para la historia de España. 112 vols. Madrid, 1842–1895. Index to vols. I–CII, Madrid, 1891. Nueva colección de documentos ineditos para la historia de España y de sus Indias. Vols. I–VI. Madrid, 1892–1896.

These important collections are supplemented by a great mass of source material in the *España sagrada*, no. 467 above. For a guide to the narrative sources of medieval Spain see R. BALLESTER Y CASTELL, *Las fuentes narrativas de la historia de España durante la edad media (117–1474)*, Palma de Mallorca, 1908. On pp. 203–207 he prints an analysis of the contents of the old collection, *Hispaniae illustratae*, edited by A. SCHOTT, 4 vols., Frankfurt, 1603–1608. See also C. CIROT, *Etudes sur l'historiographie espagnole: les histoires générales d'Espagne entre Alphonse X et Philippe II (1284–1556)*, Bordeaux, 1904 (Bibliothèque des universités du Midi, 9).

998. Colección de las crónicas y memorias de los reyes de Castilla. 7 vols. Madrid, 1779–1787.

An important special collection, the contents of which are given in POTTHAST, *Wegweiser*, no. 18 above, I, p. lii.

999. Colección de documentos ineditos del Archivo general de la Corona de Aragón. 40 vols. Barcelona, 1847–1876.

See also *Colección de documentos para el estudio de la historia de Aragón*, edited by E. IBARRA Y RODRIGUEZ, etc., vols. I–V, Taragossa, 1904–1908; and *Colección de documentos ineditos para la historia de Navarre*, vol. I, Pamplona, 1900.

1000. Cortes de los antiguos reinos de León y de Castilla. Vols. I–V (to 1559). Madrid, 1861–1906. With an introduction by M. COLMEIRO. 2 vols. Madrid, 1883–84.

See also *Cortes de los antiguos reinos de Aragón y de Valencia y Principado de Cataluña*, vols. I–XIII [1064–1423], Barcelona, 1896–1909.

1001. Portugaliae monumenta historica a saeculo VIII post Christum usque ad XV. Edited by A. HERCULANO. Lisbon, 1856ff.

Other collections consisting chiefly of chronicles are: *Collecção de livros ineditos da historia Portugueza*, edited by J. CORREA DA SERRA, 5 vols., Lisbon, 1790–1793; *Collecção dos principaes auctores da historia Portugueza*, 8 vols., Lisbon, 1806–1809; and *Collecção dos documentos e memorias da Academia real da historia Portugueza*, 15 vols., Lisbon, 1722–1736. Archive material is collected in *Quadro elementar das relacões politicas e diplomaticas de Portugal*, edited by the Viscount of SANTAREM, 18 vols., Paris, 1842–1860, continued as *Corpo diplomatico Portuguez* [to 1640], edited by REBELLO DA SILVA, 36 vols., 1856–1878.

§8. Byzantine Empire

1002. Byzantinae historiae scriptores. 39 (or 47, or 23, or 27, according to arrangement) vols. Paris, 1645–1711.

Contains excellent translations from Greek into Latin along with the Greek texts. Begun under the auspices of Louis XIV. Contents listed in POTTHAST, *Wegweiser*, no. **18** above, I, p. xlvi. Extracts in French translation by L. COUSIN, *Histoire de Constantinople depuis le règne de Justin jusqu'à la fin de l'empire*, 8 vols., Paris, 1672–1674. Another edition (more valuable) printed in Holland, 11 vols., 1685. In large part reprinted in *Patrologiae graecae*, edited by MIGNE, no. **953** above. See also *Fragmenta historicorum Graecorum*, edited by C. MÜLLER, 5 vols., Paris, 1841–1883.

1003. Corpus scriptorum historiae Byzantinae. 50 vols. Bonn, 1828–1897.

Very poorly edited. Contents in POTTHAST, *Wegweiser*, no. **18** above, I, p. lix. See also *Fontes rerum Byzantinarum*, St. Petersburg, 1892; and *Analecta Byzantino-russica*, *ibid*, 1891, both edited by W. REGEL.

§9. Eastern Europe

1004. Monumenta medii aevi historica res gestas Poloniae illustrantia. Vols. I–XVIII. Cracow, 1874–1908.

See also *Scriptores rerum polonicarum*, vols. I–XX, Cracow, 1872–1907; and *Monumenta Poloniae historica*, edited by A. BIELOWSKI and others, 6 vols., Lemberg and Cracow, 1864–1893.

1005. Codex diplomaticus Poloniae (to 1506). 4 vols. Warsaw, 1847–1887.

See also *Codex diplomaticus maioris Poloniae* (to 1444), vols. I–V, Posen, 1877–1908; and *Codex diplomaticus Poloniae minoris*, vols. I–IV, Cracow, 1876–1905.

1006. Monumenta Hungariae historica. Part 1, Diplomataria. Part 2, Scriptores. Part 3, Monumenta comitialia. Part 4, Acta extera. Budapest, 1857ff.

See also *Codex diplomaticus Hungariae*, edited by G. FEJER, 43 vols., Budapest, 1829–1844, with a chronological table, 1862, and an index, 1866; and *Codex diplomaticus regni Croatiae, Dalmatiae, et Slavoniae*, edited by T. SMICIKLAS, vols. I–V (1101–1272), Agram, 1904–1907. Vol. I is vol. VII of the older collection, *Monumenta spectantia historiam Slavorum meridionalium*, 11 vols., Agram, 1868–1893. Now see also the new collection, *Acta et diplomata res Albaniae mediae aetatis illustrantia*, edited by L. DE THALLÓCZY and others, vol. I (344–1343), Vienna, 1913.

§10. Northern Europe

1007. Scriptores rerum Danicarum medii aevi. Edited by J. LANGEBEK, etc. 8 vols. Kopenhagen, 1772–1834. Index, 1878.

1008. Repertorium diplomaticum regni Danici mediaevalis. Edited by K. ERSLEV and others. Copenhagen, 1894ff. 4 vols. had appeared in 1906.

Regesta diplomatica historiae Danicae [to 1660], series I, vols. I–II, Copenhagen, 1847–1870, series II, vols. I–II, 1889–1907. *Acta pontificum Danica*, Copenhagen, 1904ff.

1009. Diplomatarium Norvegicum. Edited by C. C. A. LANGE and others. Christiania, 1847ff.

1010. Scriptores rerum Suecicarum medii aevi. 3 vols. Upsala and Lund, 1818–1876.

1011. Diplomatarium Suecanum (Svenskt diplomatarium), 817–1350. 6 vols. Stockholm, 1829–1878. Continuations, 1351–1414, Stockholm, 1866–1887.

§11. Education and Learning

1012. Monumenta Germaniae paedagogica. Schulordnungen, Schulbücher und paedagogische Miscellaneen aus den Landen deutscher Zunge. Edited by K. KEHRBACH. Berlin, 1886ff.

Complete list of contents in DAHLMANN–WAITZ, no. 28 above, no. 2932. Includes many secondary accounts. See also the *Beiträge* edited by BAEUMKER, no. 826 above, which contain many original texts.

§12. Jews

1013. Regesten zur Geschichte der Juden im fränkischen und deutschen Reiche bis zum Jahre 1273. Edited by J. ARONIUS and others. Berlin, 1887–1902.

See also nos. 863, 864, 865, 868 note, 881, 884, above.



PART II

GENERAL HISTORY OF THE MIDDLE AGES



PERIOD I. 500–1100

I. INTRODUCTION

A. Outline

1. The period of time usually designated as the "middle ages." Various limits:—1 A.D., 313, 325, 378, 395, 410, 476, pontificate of Gregory the Great 590–604, 800, as the beginning; and as the close, "the revival of learning" (ca. 1350), 1453, 1492, 1517 or 1520, 1648, 1789. Attempts to eliminate the period altogether.

2. History of the rise and spread of the term "middle ages." The conceptions of the humanists. The part played by the idea of a "revival of learning" and of a "renaissance." Importance of the history of the Latin language in developing the idea of a middle period. Du Cange, *Glossarium mediae et infimae latinitatis.* The great influence of the hand-books of Christopher Keller (Cellarius, 1634–1707), who divided history thus : (1) *Historia antiqua,* to Constantine the Great; (2) *Historia medii acvi,* to the fall of Constantinople in 1453; and (3) *Historia nova.*

3. Ideas which medieval scholars had about the time in which they lived.

4. Futility of basing divisions of history upon any other ground except that of convenience. Convenience and simplicity of calling the thousand years from about 500 to about 1500 the middle ages, now that the peculiar phrase is so deeply rooted in the modern languages and in books on history. Reasons for the following division which has been adopted in this *Guide:* period I, 500–1100; period II, 1100–1500. The continuity of history.

5. Danger of investing the "middle ages" with attributes which make the period appear to have an individuality all its own. Curious modern connotations of "medieval" and "middle ages." "The dark ages." "The thousand years of gloom."

6. The geographical area concerned in medieval history. Its main physical features. Importance of the two great basins, the Mediterranean and the North and Baltic seas, and the routes which connected them.

7. Broad classification of the people who lived in this area in 500 A.D.

8. The main tools available for studying the political geography of the middle ages.

9. The relationship of geography and history.

10. Geographical knowledge in the middle ages. Dante's conception of the world in which he lived.

B. Special Recommendations for Reading

Meaning of middle ages. The most suggestive survey is J. T. SHOTWELL'S article "Middle Ages" in the eleventh edition of the *Encyclopaedia Britannica.* The most recent contribution to our knowledge of the origin of the conception of "middle ages" is P. LEHMANN, "Vom Mittelalter und von der lateinischen Philologie des Mittelalters," in *Quellen und Untersuchungen zur lateinischen Philologie des Mittelalters.* V (1914), 1–25; also printed separately, Munich, 1914. This article is summarized briefly by G. L. BURR, "How the middle ages got their name," in *American historical review,* XX (1915), 813–4. See also Professor BURR'S article "Anent the middle ages," in *American historical review,* XVIII (1913), 710–726; and F. KEUTGEN, "On the necessity in America of the study of the early history of modern European nations," in *Annual report of the American historical association,* 1904, 91–106. A summary and criticism of most of the literature mentioned below may be found in E. BERNHEIM, *Lehrbuch der historischen Methode,* 70–84. There are some good suggestions in G. B. ADAMS, *Civilization during the middle ages,* ch. I; H. O. TAYLOR, *Mediaeval mind,* I, ch. I; J. H. ROBINSON, *History of western Europe,* ch. I; in his *Readings,* I, ch. I; and D. C. MUNRO, *History of the middle ages,* ch. I.

Geography. As an introduction to the study of geography for medieval history, study SHEPHERD, *Atlas,* 2–3, 42–43. Learn the use of E. A. FREEMAN, *The historical geography of Europe,* and make yourself familiar with the standard historical atlases, nos. **121–129** above. For Dante's geography, see E. MOORE, *Studies in Dante,* 3rd series, Oxford, 1903, 109–143.

C. Bibliography

The middle ages as a period of history. M. BÜDINGER, "Ueber Darstellungen der allgemeinen Geschichte, insbesonders des Mittelalters," in *Historische Zeitschrift,* VII (1862), 108–132. O. LORENZ, *Die Geschichtswissenschaft,* Berlin, 1886, 228–260. W. STUBBS, *Seventeen lectures,* chs. IX–X, "Characteristic differences between mediaeval and modern history." On the date 476 A.D. see J. H. ROBINSON, *The new history,* New York, 1912, 155–194. F. X. v. WEGELE, *Geschichte der deutschen Historiographie,* Munich and Leipzig, 1885, 473–489.

R. M. MEYER, "Mittelalter," in *Feuilleton der Nationalzeitung*, 1907, no. 277. H. GÜNTER, "Das Mittelalter in der späteren Geschichtsbetrachtung," in *Historisches Jahrbuch*, XXIV (1903), 1–14. E. A. FREEMAN, *The methods of historical study*, 20–40, 191–225. See DAHLMANN-WAITZ, *Quellenkunde*, no. 27, for a bibliography on the division of history into periods.

Characteristics of the middle ages. G. KURTH, *Qu'est-ce que le moyen âge?*, 5th edition, Paris, 1907. A. EHRHARD, *Das Mittelalter und seine kirchliche Entwickelung*, Munich and Mainz, 1908, combats the idea of "dark ages." H. GRISAR, *Das Mittelalter einst und jetzt: zwei Beiträge über Erhard's "Der Katholicismus und das 20 Jahrhundert,"* 2nd edition, Munich, 1902. F. PICAVET, "Le moyen âge, caracteristique théologique et philosophico-scientifique, limites chronologiques," in *Académie des sciences morales et politiques*, Paris, 1901. N. JORGA, *Les bases nécessaires d'une nouvelle histoire du moyen âge*, Paris, 1913. S. R. MAITLAND, *The dark ages*. F. GUIZOT, *History of civilization in Europe*, lecture I.

Geography and history. E. C. SEMPLE, *The influences of geographical environment*, New York, 1911. This is based on F. RATZEL, *Anthropogeographie*, 2 vols., Stuttgart, 1882–1891, 2nd edition, 1891–1899, I, *Grundzüge der Anwendung der Erdkunde auf die Geschichte*. H. B. GEORGE, *The relation of geography and history*, Oxford, 1901, 3rd edition, 1907. E. HUNTINGTON, *Civilization and climate*, Yale University Press, 1915. Sir R. L. PLAYFAIR, "The Mediterranean, physical and historical," in *Smithsonian report* (1890), 259–276 (see also nos. 360–361 above). W. Z. RIPLEY, *The races of Europe*, London and New York, 1899.

Historical atlases. See nos. 121–129 above.

Dictionaries of geographical names. See nos. 130–138 above.

Historical geographies. See nos. 139–146 above.

II. THE LATIN WEST IN THE SIXTH CENTURY

A. OUTLINE

1. Fundamental differences in civilization between the Roman (Latin) West and the Hellenic (Greek) East, destined to become more and more pronounced, in spite of the essential unity of the Mediterranean World, even at the end of the fifth century, illustrated especially by the universality of the Christian religion and the Roman law.

2. The constant weakening of Roman government and the steady decline of Graeco-Roman culture in the Latin West. The events of the year 476 in Italy. Romulus (Augustulus), nominal boy em-

peror, son of Orestes, deposed by Odovacar (Odoacer), who now ruled in Italy.

3. The infiltration of Germanic peoples into the Roman Empire. Location of the more important Germans about 475 A.D. Visigoths in Spain and southern Gaul, with the capital at Toulouse (battle of Adrianople, 378; sack of Rome by Alaric, 410). Vandals in Africa (sack of Rome by Gaiseric, or Genseric, 455). Burgundians in the Rhone valley (*Nibelungenlied*). Angles, Saxons and Jutes in England since about 449. Franks in northern Gaul. Ostrogoths in the Danube valley.

4. The Visigothic kingdom in Spain, 415–711. King Euric, 466–484. Alaric II and the Franks under Clovis. Battle of Vouglé, 507. The *Breviarium Alarici*, 506. Conversion of the Arian Visigoths to orthodox Christianity. Isidore of Seville (ca. 570–636). Arab conquest, 711.

5. The nomad Huns (not Germans), dispersed before 475 A.D. Attila, their king, (died 453). "Battle of Châlons," 451. Huns in Italy, 452. Pope Leo the Great and Attila.

6. Italy was still the center of the western world about 475. Its attractiveness to German barbarians.

7. The rise of Theodoric the Ostrogoth. Born about 455, son of King Theodemir. At the age of seven he was sent to Constantinople as a hostage. Befriended by Aspar. When about eighteen he returned to his people living in old Pannonia (modern Hungary). King of Ostrogoths, 471. In 488 he set out for Italy with the consent of Zeno, the eastern emperor.

8. Conquest of Italy by Theodoric. Siege of Ravenna. Murder of Odovacar in 493. Theodoric proclaimed king in Italy by his troops. Thus established the kingdom of the Ostrogoths in Italy which lasted from 493 to 555, with the capital at Ravenna.

9. Theodoric's attempt to establish an Ostrogothic hegemony in the west. Marriage alliances. Diplomatic relations with the Vandals, Visigoths and the Franks under Clovis.

10. Theodoric's attempt to establish a dualism in Italy. The *Edictum Theodorici*, about 500.

11. The "golden age" of Italy, about 511–522. The glory of Ravenna, and the great public works in Rome (for the last time "felix Roma") and Verona. Famous men of letters: Boethius, Symmachus, Cassiodorus.

12. The Arianism of the Ostrogoths. Theodoric's relations with the orthodox bishops of Italy and with the pope in Rome. Comparative weakness of the papacy during Theodoric's reign as

shown by the mission of Pope John I in Constantinople, and his imprisonment and death in 526.

13. Theodoric's relations with the Byzantine empire. He never thought of setting up a rule in Italy independent of the Byzantine emperor. His growing suspicions that intrigues against him were hatching in Constantinople. Execution of Boethius and Symmachus, 525.

14. Last bitter years of Theodoric. He had no son. Death of his son-in-law Eutharic, whom he had chosen as his successor, about 522. Death of Theodoric in 526. Succeeded by his grandson Athalaric. Rapid decline of the Ostrogothic kingdom (see next outline).

15. The failure of Theodoric's attempt to unite the Latin West under German leadership—a task not attempted again until the time of Charlemagne.

16. The legends of Theodoric (Dietrich von Bern).

17. Ostrogothic kings of Italy, 493–553.

Theodoric, 493–526
Athalaric, 526–534
Theodohad, 534–536
Witigis, 536–540
Hildibad, 540–541
Eraric, 541
Totila (Baduila), 541–552
Teias, 552–553.

18. Visigothic kings in Spain.

Atawulf, 415
Sigeric, 415
Wallia, 415–420
Theodoric (Theodored), 420–451
Thorismund, 451–452
Theodoric, 452–466
Euric, 466–483
Alaric II, 483–506
Theodoric and Amalric, 506–522
Amalric, sole ruler, 522–531
Theudis, 531–548
Theudigisel, 548–549
Agila, 549–554
Athanagild, 554–567
Leova I, 567–572
Leovigild, 570–586
Reccared I, 586–601
Leova II, 601–603
Witeric, 603–610
Gundimar, 610–612
Sisibut, 612–620
Reccared II, 620–621 ...
Roderic, 710–711

B. Special Recommendations for Reading

Brief general accounts which establish a connection with Roman history. Emerton, *Introduction to the study of the middle ages*, 1–59. Adams, *Civilization during the middle ages*, chs. I–V. Bryce, *Holy Roman empire*, chs. I–III. W. S. Davis, *An outline history of the Roman empire* (44 B.C. to 378 A.D.), New York, 1909.

Longer accounts with special emphasis on the Ostrogoths. LAVISSE and RAMBAUD, *Histoire générale*, I, chs. I and II. *Cambridge medieval history*, I, especially chs. XIV and XV. VILLARI, *The barbarian invasions of Italy*, book II. OMAN, *The dark ages*, chs. I–II. BURY, *History of the later Roman empire*, I, books II–III. H. BRADLEY, *The story of the Goths to the end of the Gothic dominion in Spain*, New York, 1888. E. A. FREEMAN, *Historical essays*, 3rd series, 121–172, has an interesting account of "The Goths at Ravenna."

Biographies of Theodoric. T. HODGKIN, *Theodoric the Goth*, New York, 1891. G. PFEILSCHIFTER, *Die Germanen im römischen Reich: Theodorich der Grosse*, Mainz, 1911 (note the pictures in the latter and in C. DIEHL, *Ravenne*, Paris, 1907).

Visigothic Spain. *Cambridge medieval history*, II, ch. VI. OMAN, *The dark ages*, 128–144. T. HODGKIN, "Visigothic Spain," in *English historical review*, II (1887), 209–234. HUME, *The Spanish people*, 41–70. Longer and more authoritative accounts are in U. R. BURKE, *History of Spain*, I, chs. IV–XI; and R. ALTAMIRA, *Historia de España* (1913 edition), I, 165–223.

Detailed general accounts. HODGKIN, *Italy and her invaders*, III. GIBBON, *Decline and fall of the Roman empire*, chs. XXVIff. GREGOROVIUS, *Rome in the middle ages*, I. J. v. PFLUGK-HARTTUNG, *The great migrations*, translated from *Allgemeine Weltgeschichte* as vol. VI of no. **314** above.

Original sources. Read the *Germania* of Tacitus (translated in *Translations and reprints* of the University of Pennsylvania, VI, no. 3) if you have never studied it before. The *Letters of Cassiodorus* are translated in part by T. HODGKIN, London, 1886. JORDANES, *Origin and deeds of the Goths*, is translated by C. C. MIEROW, Princeton, 1908, new edition, 1915.

Maps. SHEPHERD, *Atlas*, 42, 43, 45, 50.

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General books. Most of the subjects in this outline are touched upon in many of the general histories of Germany, nos. **560–587** above, and Italy, **599–621** above, see especially **614**. In addition see also E. A. FREEMAN, *Western Europe in the fifth century: an aftermath*, London, 1904; C. KINGSLEY, *The Roman and the Teuton*, London, 1875; and A. THIERRY, *Récits de l'histoire romaine au Ve siècle*, Paris, 1860.

General accounts of the German invasions. L. SCHMIDT, *Geschichte der deutschen Stämme bis zum Ausgang der Völkerwanderung*, vols. I–II, Berlin, 1904–1911; a shorter account is his *Allge-*

meine Geschichte der germanischen Völker bis zur Mitte des sechsten Jahrhunderts, Munich, 1909, part of no. 330 above; and he has summarized it recently in very brief and popular form in his *Die germanischen Reiche der Völkerwanderung*. Leipzig, 1913 (Wissenschaft und Bildung). F. DAHN, *Urgeschichte der germanischen und romanischen Völker*, 3 vols., Berlin, 1880–89, part of no. 313 above; and his *Die Könige der Germanen*, 6 vols., Munich, 1861–71. R. VON ERKERT, *Wanderungen und Siedelungen der germanischen Stämme in Mittel-Europa von der ältesten Zeit bis auf Karl den Grossen*, Berlin, 1900. W. M. F. PETRIE, *Migrations*, London, the Anthropological institute of Great Britain and Ireland (the Huxley lecture for 1906), has an interesting series of maps. See also the slight sketch by A. C. HADDON, *The wanderings of peoples*, Cambridge, 1911, ch. III. F. MARTROYE, *L'occident à l'époque byzantine: Goths et Vandales*, Paris, 1904. L. WILSER, *Die Germanen*, neue, den Fortschritten der Wissenschaft angepasste und mehrfach erweiterte Auflage, vol. I, Leipzig, 1913. G. KAUFMANN, *Deutsche Geschichte bis auf Karl den Grossen*, 2 vols., Leipzig, 1880–1881. O. GUTSCHE and W. SCHULTZE, *Deutsche Geschichte von der Urzeit bis zu den Karolingern*, 2 vols., Stuttgart, 1894–1896. E. v. WIETERSHEIM, *Geschichte der Völkerwanderung*, 4 vols., Leipzig, 1859–1864, 2nd edition, by F. DAHN, 2 vols., 1880–81. F. LOT, "Les migrations saxonnes en Gaule et en Grande-Bretagne du III^e^ au V^e^ siècle," in *Revue historique*, CXIX (1915), 1–40. G. WAITZ, *Deutsche Verfassungsgeschichte*, vol. I, is our main source of information for early German institutions, but see also F. B. GUMMERE, *Germanic origins*, New York, 1892.

Ostrogoths. L. M. HARTMANN, *Geschichte Italiens im Mittelalter*, vol. I, is now the best general survey of the Ostrogoths in Italy. E. LONCAO, *Fondazione del regno di Odoacre e suoi rapporti con l'Oriente*, Scansano, 1908. M. DUMOULIN, "Le gouvernement de Théodoric et la domination des Ostrogoths en Italie d'après les oeuvres d'Ennodius," in *Revue historique*, LXXVIII (1902), 1–7, 241–265, LXXIX (1902), 1–22. T. MOMMSEN, "Ostgotische Studien," in *Neues Archiv*, XIV (1889), 223–249, 451–544, XV (1890), 181–186 (also in his *Gesammelte Schriften*, VI), are fundamental studies on Ostrogothic law and institutions; but now see also, P. DEL GIUDICE, *Sulla questione dell' unità o dualità del diritto in Italia sotto la dominazione Ostrogota*, Milan, 1913. G. SALVIOLI, *Sullo stato e la popolazione d'Italia primo e dopo le invasioni barbariche*, Palermo, 1900.

Visigoths. A. FERNÁNDEZ GUERRA, *Historia de España desde la invasión de los pueblos germánicos hasta la ruina de la monar-*

quía visigoda, 2 vols., Madrid, 1890, part of no. **622** above. H. LECLERCQ, *L'Espagne chrétienne* [to 711], Paris, 1905, 2nd edition, 1906 (Bibliothèque de l'enseignement de l'histoire ecclésiastique). DON JUAN ORTEGA Y RUBIO, *Los visigodos en España*, Madrid, 1903. E. PÉREZ PUJOL, *Historia de las instituciones sociales de la España goda*, 4 vols., Valencia, 1896. F. DAHN, *Die Verfassung der Westgothen*, 2nd edition, Leipzig, 1885; and his, *Die äussere Geschichte der Westgothen*, Würgburg, 1870. J. ASCHBACH, *Geschichte der Westgoten*, Frankfurt, 1827.

Burgundians. C. BINDING, *Das Burgundish-Romanische Königreich von 443 bis 532*, Leipzig, 1868. A. JAHN, *Geschichte der Burgundionen und Burgundiens bis zum Ende der I Dynastie*, 2 vols., Halle, 1874. H. DE CLAPARÈDE, *Les Burgondes jusqu'en 443: contribution à l'histoire externe du droit germanique*, Geneva, 1909, (Mémoire publié à l'ocassion du Jubilé de l'Université, 1559–1909).

Vandals. F. MARTROYE, *Genséric: la conquête Vandale en Afrique et la destruction de l'empire d'occident*, Paris, 1907. L. SCHMIDT, *Geschichte der Wandalen*, Leipzig, 1901.

Huns. E. HUTTON, *Attila and his Huns*, New York, 1915. *Cambridge medieval history*, I, ch. XII. HELMOLT, *History of the world*, V, 319–326.

Original Sources. An examination of the general nature and trustworthiness of the sources was made recently in a doctoral dissertation by C. J. H. HAYES, *An introduction to the sources relating to the Germanic invasions*, New York, 1909. Most of the important sources are well edited in *Monumenta Germaniae historica*, no. **978** above, *auctores antiquissimi*, vols. I–XIV, Berlin, 1877–1904. Some of these are translated into German in *Die Geschichtschreiber der deutschen Vorzeit*, no. **981** above, such as vol. X, *Isidors Geschichte der Goten, Vandalen, Sueven, nebst Auszügen aus der Kirchengeschichte des Beda Venerabilis*, revised edition by D. COSTE, Leipzig, 1910.

Bibliographies. The best systematic bibliography is in DAHLMANN-WAITZ, *Quellenkunde*, nos. 3506–4090. The sources are best described by W. WATTENBACH, no. **29** above. See also the elaborate lists of books in the *Cambridge medieval history*, I, especially those for chapters VII–XV, and II, ch. VI for the Visigoths; also the other general bibliographies for the history of Germany, nos. **31–34** above, and Italy, nos. **37–41** above.

III. THE GREEK EAST IN THE SIXTH CENTURY

A. OUTLINE

1. Recent change of attitude towards the eastern or Byzantine empire on the part of historians. GIBBON'S misconceptions. The *Byzantinische Zeitschrift*, no. 174 above, edited by K. KRUMBACHER, and its Russian counterpart, no. 175 above. The foreshadowing of the "Eastern Question" in Europe.

2. The stability of the Byzantine empire and its services to western civilization. No enemy ever entered Constantinople until 1204 and the empire did not fall before the Mohammedan Turks until 1453.

3. Description of the city of Constantinople in the time of Justinian. St. Sophia.

4. The reigns of Justin I (518–527) and Justinian I (527–565). Both born in Macedonia. The empress Theodora. The Hippodrome. Greens and Blues. The Nika riot (532).

5. The codification of the Roman law. Previous codifications, especially the Theodosian code, 438. The *Corpus iuris civilis*, 529ff. (Code, Pandects or Digest, Institutes, Novels.) Tribonian was editor-in-chief. Significance of the fact that it was written and promulgated in Latin, although it was compiled in the Greek East.

6. Justinian's administration of the empire. The Byzantine army. The Persian wars against Chosroes. Disastrous financial policy. Relations with the church. The great plague of 542. Justinian's interest in building and in theology. The controversy about "The Three Chapters." Imprisonment of Pope Vigilius. Humiliation of the papacy.

7. The plan of Justinian to reconquer the west and to re-establish the empire as it was in the time of Constantine.

8. The fall of the Vandal kingdom in Africa, 533–534. Belisarius versus Gelimer. Rise of the Berber tribes, 534–539; 546–548. Imperial Africa after the fall of the Vandal kingdom.

9. The reconquest of Italy and the fall of the Ostrogothic kingdom. Two stages, 535–540; and 540–555. Murder of Amalasuntha, 535. Belisarius and Narses against Theodahad, Witigis, Totila, and Teias. The desolation of Rome and of all Italy. The reconstruction of Italy under imperial administration. The Pragmatic Sanction of 554.

10. Justinian's foothold in Spain, 554. The rivalry between king Agila and Athanagild gave the Greeks the opportunity to intervene. Capture of Carthagena, Malaga, and Corduba. Visigothic resistance under king Athanagild, 554–567.

11. The Lombard invasion of Italy, 568, under Alboin.

12. The fate of Italy: divided between the Byzantine empire (Exarchate of Ravenna), the Lombards, and the rising papacy.

13. Failure of Justinian's attempt to reunite the Mediterranean world. His feeble old age and death in 565 at the age of 83 years. Rapid decline of the Greek East in the generation after Justinian. Persistance of the idea of a united Roman empire.

14. The eastern emperors, 395–565.

Arcadius, 395–408
Theodosius II, 408–450
Marcian, 450–457
Leo I, the Thracian, 457–474
Zeno, the Isaurian, 475–491
Anastasius I, 491–518
Justin I, 518–527
Justinian I, 527–565

15. Lombard kings in Italy, 568–774.

Alboin, 568–572
Clepho, 572–573
Authari, 583–590
Agilulf, 590–615
Adaloald, 615–625
Arioald, 625–636
Rothari, 636–652
Rodoald, 652–653
Aribert, 653–662
Godebert, 662
Grimoald, 662–671
Berthari, 672–688
Cunibert, 688–700
Liutbert, 700–701
Aribert II, 701–711
Ansprand, 712
Liutprand, 712–743
Hildebrand, 743–744
Ratchis, 744–749
Aistulf, 749–756
Desiderius, 756–774

B. SPECIAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR READING

General surveys. A brief sketch may be found in BÉMONT and MONOD, *Medieval Europe*, ch. VIII. Longer general accounts are: *Cambridge medieval history*, II, 1–52 and 222–235 (see also I, ch. I); BURY, *Later Roman empire*, book IV, part I; LAVISSE and RAMBAUD, *Histoire générale*, I, ch. IV; OMAN, *Dark ages*, chs. III, V, VI, XI; OMAN, *Byzantine empire*, chs. I–VIII, XI.

Justinian. The most authoritative work is C. DIEHL, *Justinien, et la civilisation byzantine au VI^e siècle*, Paris, 1901. W. G. HOLMES, *The age of Justinian and Theodora*, 2 vols., London, 1905–1907. The article "Justinian" in the *Encyclopaedia Britannica* is by J. BRYCE.

Constantinople. *Cambridge medieval history*, I, ch. I, has a brief description of the city as founded by Constantine. For Justinian's city see BURY, *Later Roman empire*, book I, ch. V, and HOLMES, *The age of Justinian*, I, ch. I. MUNRO and SELLERY, *Medieval civilization*, 87–113, "The Hippodrome at Constantinople," is a translation of a very interesting extract from DIEHL, *Justinien*. F. HARRISON.

The meaning of history, 309–367, "Constantinople." See also the general works on Constantinople, nos. **661–669** above.

Roman law. The article "Roman law" in the *Encyclopaedia Britannica* will serve as a brief introduction to the codification of the Roman law. BURY, *Later Roman empire*, book IV, ch. III. *Cambridge medieval history*, II, ch. III. GIBBON, Decline and fall, ch. XLIV. MILMAN, *History of Latin Christianity*, book III, ch. V. 1–33.

Modern attitude towards Byzantine history. F. HARRISON, *Byzantine history in the early middle ages*, London, 1900; the same author's "Constantinople as an historic city," in *Fortnightly review*, LXI (1894), 438–458; and E. A. FREEMAN, "The Byzantine empire," in his *Historical essays*, 3rd series, 231–237.

Lombards. OMAN, *Dark ages*, ch. XI; and a more detailed account in *Cambridge medieval history*, II, ch. VII.

Detailed general accounts. HODGKIN, *Italy and her invaders*, vols. IV and VI. GIBBON, *Decline and fall*, chs. XXX–XLIII.

Original sources. Extracts illustrating the church in the Eastern Empire in J. C. AYER, *A source book for ancient church history*, 538–564.

Maps. SHEPHERD, *Atlas*, 50, 52. *Cambridge medieval history*, I, maps 1, 6, 14; II, maps 15, 18.

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General books. For general works on the Byzantine empire see nos. **643–679; 800–802** above. Many of the general works under "Eastern Europe," nos. **680–716** above, touch upon the subject of this outline.

Byzantine administration in Italy. C. DIEHL, *Etudes sur l'administration byzantine dans l'Exarchat de Ravenne (568–751)*, Paris, 1888. L. M. HARTMANN, *Untersuchungen zur Geschichte der byzantinischen Verwaltung in Italien (540–750)*, Leipzig, 1889. A. GAUDENZI, *Sui rapporti tra l'Italia e l'impero d'Oriente (476–554)*, Bologna, 1888.

Byzantine Africa. C. DIEHL, *L'Afrique byzantine, histoire de la domination byzantine en Afrique (533–709)*, Paris, 1896.

Byzantine warfare. H. DELBRÜCK, *Geschichte der Kriegskunst*, II, Berlin, 1902, sometimes corrects and supplements C. W. C. OMAN, *A history of the art of war*, London, 1898. J. PRESLAND, *Belisarius: general of the east*, London, 1913.

The Empress Theodora. C. DIEHL, *Théodora: impératrice de Byzance*, Paris, 1904. C. E. MALLET, "The empress Theodora," in *English historical review*, II (1887), 1–20.

Greek Church under Justinian. H. S. ALIVISATOS, *Die kirchliche Gesetzgebung des Kaisers Justinian,* I, Berlin, 1913. J. PARGOIRE, *L'Église byzantine de 527 à 847,* Paris, 1905 (Bibliothèque de l'enseignement de l'histoire ecclésiastique). E. L. WOODWARD, *Christianity and nationalism in the later Roman empire,* London, 1916, has a chapter on Justinian; another on Egpyt and Syria; and another on Africa.

Roman law. P. COLLINET, *Études historique sur le droit de Justinien,* Paris, 1912. For other works on Roman law see outline XX, part III below.

Byzantine studies in Germany. K. DIETRICH, "Die Byzantinische Zeitschrift und die byzantinischen Studien in Deutschland," in *Internationale Monatsschrift,* VI, no. 3 (Dec., 1912), 345–376.

Lombards. K. BLASEL, *Die Wanderzüge der Langobarden,* Breslau, 1909.

Original sources. For large collections of sources for Byzantine history see nos. 1002–1003 above. For the time of Justinian the works of PROCOPIUS have attracted most attention, especially the *De Bellis,* 2 vols., Leipzig, 1905; and the *Historia arcana,* Leipzig, 1906, both edited by J. HAURY who has written an authoritative estimate of PROCOPIUS, *Zur Beurteilung des Geschichtschreibers Procopius von Cäsarea,* Munich, 1896. The *De Bellis* is translated in *Die Geschichtschreiber,* no. 981 above; the *Historia arcana* by the Athenian Society, Athens, 1906. The *De aedificiis* of PROCOPIUS is translated by A. STEWART and others, *Of the buildings of Justinian,* Palestine pilgrims text society, London, 1886.

The standard edition of the Roman law of Justinian is the *Corpus iuris civilis,* 3 vols., Berlin, 1884ff.: vol. I, *Institutiones,* edited by P. KRÜGER, *Digesta,* edited by T. MOMMSEN, 11th edition, 1908; vol. II, *Codex,* edited by T. KRÜGER, 8th edition, 1906; vol. III, *Novellae,* edited by R. SCHOELL and W. KROLL, 1895. For other editions of the Roman law see *Cambridge medieval history,* II, 726, and confer also outline XX, part III below.

PAULUS DIACONUS, *Historia Langobardorum,* is translated by W. D. FOULKE, *History of the Langobards, by Paul the Deacon: with explanatory and critical notes, a biography of the author, and an account of the sources of the history,* University of Pennsylvania, Philadelphia, 1907.

Bibliographies. A good bibliography is in C. DIEHL, *Justinien,* 667–670, but see also the classified lists of books in the *Cambridge medieval history,* II, for chs. I, II, III, VII, VIII (A), pp. 720–727, 739–742.

IV. MONASTICISM IN THE SIXTH CENTURY

A. OUTLINE

1. Since the church, as organized by the papacy, was still in its infancy in the first half of the sixth century, the nature and importance of universal Christianity in that period can be appreciated best by a study of monasticism. Hagiography. The *Acta sanctorum*, no. 963 above.

2. Monasticism originated in asceticism and mysticism. It is by no means peculiar to Christianity.

3. Evolution of monasticism in northern Egypt. Hermits or anchorites and coenobites. St. Anthony (born about 250 A.D. in middle Egypt). Semi-eremitical life in the deserts of Nitria and Scete. The *Life of St. Anthony* by Athanasius. The reports of Palladius, Cassian, St. Jerome, and Rufinus on monastic life in Egypt in the fourth century. The legend of Paul of Thebes.

4. Evolution of monastic life in southern Egypt. Pachomius (born about 290, died 346), the founder of the coenobitical monastic life.

5. The anchorites of Syria and Mesopotamia. "The Sons of the Covenant" early in the fourth century. The stylites or pillar saints, especially St. Simeon Stylites near Antioch about the middle of the fifth century. Excessive austerities practiced by these eastern saints. The monastery of Jerome and the convent of Paula in Bethlehem towards the end of the fourth century.

6. Monasticism in the Greek world. St. Basil, near Neocaesarea in the Pontus region during the second half of the fourth century. Well organized community life. Moderate asceticism. His two rules, the longer and the shorter, taught moderation in the ascetic life. Basilian monasticism in Constantinople. Its spread into the Slavonic world. Mount Athos.

7. Introduction of monasticism into the west. St. Athanasius brought two Egyptian monks to Rome in 339. Spread of the monastic ideal in Rome, especially among the women of the higher classes, such as Paula and Melania. St. Jerome (died 420). Rufinus. Ambrose in Milan (died 397). Eusebius, bishop of Vercelli (died 371). St. Augustine, bishop of Hippo (died 430). Paulinus of Nola near Rome (died 431). Holy islands in the Tyrhenian sea such as Capraria.

8. Monasticism in Gaul. St. Martin, bishop of Tours in 372. Founded a monastery near Poitiers about 362. Marmoutier. John Cassian in Marseilles. Honoratus on the island of Lerins. The

monastery of Condat in the Jura mountains. Decline of monasticism in Gaul in the late fifth and early sixth century.

9. Irish monasticism (see outline VI below).

10. St. Benedict of Nursia (ca. 480–ca.550). His cave at Subiaco. Founded Monte Cassino about the third decade of the sixth century. Here he wrote his *Rule*. Visit of Totila in 543.

11. The famous *Rule* of St. Benedict. Its moderation. Lack of stress on learning. Although little known in the sixth century its influence became vast after 600.

12. Cassiodorus (died between 575–585) founded the monastery called Vivarium at Squillace in Calabria. His great services in encouraging monastic learning.

13. Contrast between eastern and western monasticism. The importance of monasticism in early medieval civilization.

14. The evolution of a difference between regular and secular clergy.

15. Women under monasticism.

B. Special Recommendations for Reading

Short general surveys. *Cambridge medieval history*, I, 521–542, written by E. C. BUTLER, an authority on monasticism, who has also written the articles "Monasticism, Benedictines, Benedict" in the *Encyclopaedia Britannica*. A. W. WISHART, *Short history of monks and monasteries*, chs. I–III. FLICK, *Medieval church*, ch. XI.

Various estimates of monasticism. A. HARNACK, *Das Mönchtum: seine Ideale und seine Geschichte*, Giessen, 1895, translated by E. E. KELLETT and F. H. MARSEILLE, *Monasticism: its ideals and history, and the Confessions of St. Augustine*, London, 1901. H. O. TAYLOR, *The classical heritage of the middle ages*, New York, 1903, 3rd edition, 1911, 136–197. J. O. HANNAY, *The spirit and origin of Christian monasticism*, London, 1903. WORKMAN, *The evolution of the monastic ideal*. MONTALEMBERT, *Monks of the west*, introduction. GIBBON, *Decline and fall*, ch. XXXVII. Read TENNYSON'S poem, *St. Simeon Stylites*.

St. Benedict. An excellent short sketch of his life and work is in F. H. DUDDEN, *Gregory the Great: his place in history and thought*, 2 vols., London, 1905, I, 109–115; II, 161–169. There is a short chapter in J. B. CARTER, *The religious life of ancient Rome*, Boston, 1911, ch. VII. Longer account in MONTALEMBERT, *Monks of the west*, I, book IV; and in MILMAN, *History of Latin Christianity*, book III, ch. VI.

The legends about St. Benedict as told by pope GREGORY THE GREAT can be read in English, in E. G. GARDNER, *The Dialogues of St. Gregory*, London, 1911; E. J. LUCK, *The life and miracles of St.*

Benedict by St. Gregory the Great (from an old version), London, 1880; *The little flowers of St. Benedict, gathered from the Dialogues of St. Gregory the Great*, London, 1901.

Monte Cassino. LOEW, *The Beneventan script*, 1–21, gives a short sketch of the rôle of Monte Cassino in the history of medieval culture.

Women under monasticism. LINA ECKENSTEIN, *Women under monasticism.*

Original sources. The famous *Life of St. Anthony* by ATHANASIUS is translated in *Nicene and post-Nicene fathers*, 2nd series, IV, 195–221; also in E. A. T. W. BUDGE, *The paradise or garden of the fathers*, 2 vols., London, 1907, 1, 3–76. For the works of St. Basil see *Nicene and post-Nicene fathers*, 2nd series, VII.

The all-important *Rule* of ST. BENEDICT is translated in large part in Henderson, *Select documents*, 274–313, and in THATCHER and MCNEAL, *Source book*, 432–484. A good recent translation has been made by F. A. GASQUET, *Rule of St. Benedict*, London, 1908.

Maps. SHEPHERD, *Atlas*, 46–47, 94–95.

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General books. For general works on monasticism see nos. **479–487** above, especially **483**. Naturally all general books on the church, nos. **394–498** above, treat of monasticism more or less. See also the encyclopaedias and dictionaries of church history, nos. **104–114**, e.g., the article, "Cénobitisme" by H. LECLERCQ in **111**. For Greek monasticism see also **800**.

General surveys. L. S. DE LE NAIN DE TILLEMONT, *Mémoires pour servir à l'histoire ecclésiastique des six premiers siècles*, 15 vols., Brussels, 1693–1707, 2nd edition, 16 vols., Paris, 1701–1712. T. W. ALLIES, *The monastic life: from the fathers of the desert to Charlemagne*, London, 1896. 1. G. SMITH, *Christian monasticism from the fourth to the ninth centuries*, London, 1892. J. MABILLON, *Annales ordinis sancti Benedicti*, 6 vols., Paris, 1703–1739.

Egyptian monasticism. A good short general sketch of Egyptian monasticism is in L. DUCHESNE, *Histoire ancienne de l'église*, 3 vols., Paris, 1905ff., (various later editions), translated into English, *Early history of the Christian church*, New York, 1909ff., II, ch. XIV. E. C. BUTLER, *The Lausiac history of Palladius*, in *Texts and studies*, vol. VI, 2 vols., Cambridge, 1898–1904. P. VAN CAUWENBERGH, *Etude sur les moines d'Egypte, depuis le concile de Chalcédoine (451) jusqu'à l'invasion arabe (640)*, Paris, 1914, is a recent special study on the later period. C. KINGSLEY, *The hermits: their lives and works*, London, 1885. G. K. GRÜTZMACHER, *Pachomius und das älteste Klosterleben*, Freiburg, 1896.

Eastern monasticism. The best general book is J. M. BESSE, *Les moines d'Orient anterieure au Concile de Chalcédoine (451)*, Paris, 1900. S. SCHIWIETZ, *Das morgenländische Mönchtum*, Mainz, 1904, is a series of collected articles. R. S. HARDY, *Eastern monasticism*, London, 1864, is now rather antiquated. H. DELEHAYE, "Les Stylites, Saint Symeon et ses imitateurs," in *Revue des questions historiques*, LVII (1895), 52–103 (also printed separately, Brussels, 1895), is full of curious details about this most striking example of excessive asceticism in the East. *Oriens christianus: Halbjahrheft für die Kunde des christlichen Orients*, edited by A. BAUMSTARK, new series, Leipzig, 1912ff.

St. Basil. W. K. L. CLARKE, *St. Basil the Great: a study in monasticism*, Cambridge University Press, 1913. E. F. MORISON, *Basil and his rule: a study in early monasticism*, London, 1912.

Mount Athos. K. LAKE, *The early days of monasticism on Mount Athos*, Oxford, 1909. A. RILEY, *Athos: or, The mountain of the monks*, London, 1887.

African monasticism. J. M. BESSE, *Le monachisme Africain*, Ligugé, 1900; and H. LECLERCQ, *L'Afrique chrétienne*, Paris, 1904.

Early monasticism in Gaul. J. M. BESSE, *Les moines de l'ancienne France: periode gallo-romaine et mérovingienne*, Paris, 1906. E. C. BABUT, *Saint Martin de Tours*, Paris [1912]. A. LECOY DE LA MARCHE, *Vie de saint Martin évêque de Tours*, Tours, 1895. H. BAS, *Saint Martin*, Tours, 1898. J. C. CAZENOVE, *St. Hilary of Poitiers and St. Martin of Tours*, London, 1883. L. LAUNOY, *Histoire de l'église Gaulois depuis les origines jusqu'à la conquète franque (511)*, vols. I–II, Paris, 1906. A. C. COOPER-MARSDEN, *The history of the Island of Lerins: monastery, saints and theologians of St. Honorat*, Cambridge, University Press, 1913. ABBÉ F. BONNARD, *Saint Honorat de Lérins*, Tours, 1914.

St. Benedict of Nursia. P. P. LECHNER, *St. Benedict and his times*, London, 1900. D. B. MARÉCHAUX, *Saint Benoît: sa vie, sa règle, sa doctrine spirituelle*, Paris, 1911. L. TOSTI, *San Benedetto*, Monte Cassino, 1892, translated into English by W. R. WOODS, London, 1896. G. GRÜTZMACHER, *Die Bedeutung Benedikts von Nursia und seine Regel in der Geschichte des Mönchtums*, Berlin, 1892. A. l'HUILLIER, *Explication de la règle de S. Benoît*, 2 vols., Paris, 1901; and his *Le patriarche S. Benoît*, Paris, 1905.

Serial publications. *Studien und Mitteilungen zur Geschichte des Benediktinerordens und seiner Zweige* (since 1911, vol. XXXII, this is a new title for *Studien und Mitteilungen aus dem Benediktiner und Cisterciensерorden*, vols. I–XXXI, Brünn, Würzburg and *Vienna*, 1880ff). *Beiträge zur Geschichte des alten Mönchtums und*

des Benediktinerordens, (edited by Father Herwegen of the abbey of Maria-Laach) was begun 1912. *Archives de la France monastique. Revue Mabillon,* Paris, 1899ff.

Original sources. Much of the original material for early monasticism may be found in nos. **953–955, 963, 978,** above. The most complete collection of monastic rules is no. **964** above. See also the *Patrologia orientalis,* edited by R. GRAFFIN and F. NAU, Paris, 1903ff.; and the *Corpus scriptorum christianorum orientalium,* edited by J. B. CHABOT and others, Paris, 1903ff.

The original *Rule* of ST. BENEDICT can best be studied in the edition of E. C. BUTLER, *Sancti Benedicti regula monachorum: editio critico-practica,* Freiburg-i-B., 1911. Documents for the history of early Benedictine monks have been edited by B. ALBERS, *Consuetudines monasticae,* vols., I–V, Monte Cassino, 1900–1912. For lives of Benedictine saints we have the old collection, *Acta sanctorum ordinis sancti Benedicti in saeculorum classes distributa* [to 1100 A.D], edited by J. MABILLON, 9 vols., Paris, 1668–1702.

Bibliographies. See the bibliography for ch. XVIII, on monasticism, in the *Cambridge medieval history,* I, 683–687, and the bibliographies there referred to. Also consult the general bibliographies of church history, nos. **49–55** above.

V. THE RISE OF THE PAPACY IN THE SIXTH CENTURY

A. OUTLINE

1. Retrospect: the rise of Rome and the papacy to headship in western Christendom. The Petrine theory.

2. The position of the bishops of Rome in the time of Theodoric and the Ostrogothic wars. Relations with other prelates, with Arian and heathen barbarians, and with Justinian and Theodora in Constantinople.

3. Emergence of the papacy from the chaos in Italy produced by the fall of the Ostrogoths, 555, and the invasion of the Lombards, 568.

4. Pope Gregory I, the Great (590–604). The real founder of the papacy. *Servus servorum dei.*

5. Early career of Gregory. Born about 540 in Rome. Desolation of the city in his youth. Received a good education. Prefect of the city in 573.

6. Gregory as a monk. Established six monasteries in Sicily and turned his father's house in Rome into the monastery of St. Andrew. Interest in missionary work in the island of Britain.

7. His active church work. He became one of the seven deacons of Rome ca. 578. In 579 Pope Pelagius II sent him to Constantinople as *apocrisiarius*, where he stayed about six years. Met Leander of Seville there. Gregory did not learn Greek. About 585 he returned to his monastery in Rome and was abbot there until 590.

8. Election of Gregory to the papacy. Pope Pelagius died of a plague which swept Rome in 590. With remarkable unanimity the clergy and people of Rome chose Gregory as their new pope. The septiform litany to stay the plague. The legend of the Archangel Michael on the Mausoleum of Hadrian. Maurice, the eastern emperor, sanctioned the election, and Gregory, although reluctant, was consecrated September 3, 590. "Monasticism ascended the papal throne in the person of Gregory the Great."—Milman.

9. The politics of Gregory the Great. He was lord of the city of Rome. Transformation of imperial Rome into the capital of western Christendom (see outline III, part III). He was likewise the lord of Italy and took the neglected place of the eastern emperor in protecting Rome and Italy against the "unspeakable" Lombards. His careful administration of papal lands. More and more he became arbiter of all western Christendom.

10. Relations with Constantinople. His disputes with the emperor on account of the Lombards. His quarrel with the patriarch, John the Faster, over the phrase, *sacerdos universalis*. Gregory supported the emperor Phocas, the murderer of his predecessor Maurice, in 602.

11. Gregory's attempts to stamp out Arianism, especially among the Visigoths and the Lombards. Conversion of the Visigothic king Reccared to orthodox Christianity, 587 (see next outline).

12. Missionary work under Gregory (see next outline).

13. Enhancement of the Christian cult by Gregory. Gregorian music.

14. His interesting *Letters* and influential books: *Pastoral care*, *Dialogues*, and *Moralia*.

15. Gregory's real greatness contrasted with his inability to foresee the glorious future of the remarkable papal monarchy which he had founded.

16. Popes, 440–604.

Leo I, 440–461	Anastasius II, 496–498
Hilary, 461–467	Symmachus, 498–514
Simplicius, 467–483	Hormisdas, 514–523
Felix III, 483–492	John I, 523–526
Gelasius, 492–496	Felix IV, 526–530

Boniface II, 530–532	Pelagius I, 555–560
John II, 532–535	John III, 560–573
Agapetus I, 535–536	Benedict I, 574–578
Silverius, 536–537	Pelagius II, 578–590
Vigilius, 537–555	Gregory I, 590–604

B. SPECIAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR READING

Sketch of the rise of the church and the papacy. No attempt is made in this *Guide* to include the vast literature on the history of the early church and the rise of the papacy to about 500. ADAMS, *Civilization during the middle ages*, 39–64, 107–136 will serve as a brief review.

The papacy in the sixth century up to 590. For the papacy in the time of Theodoric see the literature under outline II above. The conditions after 555 are described briefly in DUDDEN, *Gregory the Great*, I, 58–68, 80–98, 158–186.

Short general accounts of the pontificate of Gregory. LAVISSE and RAMBAUD, *Histoire générale*, I, 237–264; or *Cambridge medieval history*, II, 235–262. For summaries and tabulations of most of the subjects mentioned in the outline read FLICK, *The rise of the medieval church*, chs. V, IX, X; or BARRY, *Papal monarchy*, ch. III. See also CARTER, *The religious life of ancient Rome*, ch. VIII, and O. BARDENHEWER, *Patrologie*, Freiburg, 1894, 3rd edition, 1910, translated by T. J. SHAHAN, St. Louis, 1908, §123. A spirited article on the importance of this pontificate is E. LAVISSE, "L'éntrée en scène de la papauté," in *Revue des deux mondes*, December 15, 1886, 3rd period, LXXVIII, 842.

Longer accounts. MANN, *Lives of the popes*, I, part I, 1–250; MILMAN, *History of Latin Christianity*, II, ch. VII; HODGKIN, *Italy and her invaders*, V, chs. VII–X; MONTALEMBERT, *Monks of the west*, book V; GREGOROVIUS, *Rome in the middle ages*, II, 16–103.

Biographies of Gregory the Great. The standard biography of Gregory is the well-written book by F. H. DUDDEN, *Gregory the Great: his place in history and in thought*, 2 vols., London, 1905. J. BARMBY, *Gregory the Great*, London, 1892 (The fathers for English readers); and H. H. HOWORTH, *St. Gregory the Great*, London, 1912, are shorter biographies which can be recommended.

Original sources. GREGORY'S *Pastoral rule* and select *Letters* are translated in the *Select library of Nicene and post-Nicene fathers*, 2nd series, XII and XIII. His *Dialogues* can now be read in English in the attractive edition by E. G. GARDNER, *The Dialogues of St. Gregory*, London, 1911. The biographies of the popes in the *Liber pontificalis* to the pontificate of Gregory, are now translated

into English by L. R. LOOMIS, *The book of the popes*, see no. **949**, note, above. See also POOLE, *Papal chancery*, 166–170. Short extracts from Gregory's works are translated in ROBINSON, *Readings*, I, 73–82. See also AYER, *Source book*, 590–602.

Maps. SHEPHERD, *Atlas*, 46–47, 94–95.

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General books. For general works on the church see nos. **439–454** above in particular and nos. **394–498** in general. Many books on Italy deal with the papacy in some detail, see nos. **599–621** above, especially **611**. See also the encyclopaedias for the history of the church and religion, nos. **104–114** above, e.g., the article "Gregory the Great," by G. R. HUDLESTON, in **104**, and the periodicals for church history, nos. **176–180** above.

Biographies of Gregory the Great. Probably the oldest life of Gregory was written by an anonymous monk of Whitby, about 713, and edited by F. A. GASQUET, *A life of Pope St. Gregory, the Great*, 1904. G. CAPPELLO, *Gregorio I e il suo pontificato*, Saluzzo, 1905. J. CARDUCCI, *Storia di San Gregorio Magno e del suo tempo*, Rome, 1909. E. CLAUSIER, *St. Grégoire le Grand: pape et docteur de l'église*, Paris, 1886–1891. H. GRISAR, *San Gregorio Magno*, Rome, 1904. T. TARDUCCI, *Storia di Gregorio Magno e del suo tempo*, Rome, 1909. W. WISBAUM, *Die wichtichsten Richtungen und Ziele der Thätigkeit des Papstes Gregors des Grossen*, Cologne, 1884. C. WOLFSGRUBER, *Gregor der Grosse*, Saulgau, 1890, 2nd edition, Ratisbon, 1897. F. and P. BÖHRINGER, *Die Väter des Papsttums: Leo I und Gregor I*, Stuttgart, 1879. T. BONSMANN, *Gregor der Grosse: ein Lebensbild*, Paderborn, 1890.

Gregory before his elevation to the papacy. W. STUHLFATH, *Gregor I, der Grosse: sein Leben bis zu seiner Wahl zum Papste nebst einer Untersuchung der ältesten Viten*, Heidelberg, 1914. C. WOLFSGRUBER, *Die vorpäpstliche Lebensperiode Gregors des Grossen nach seinen Briefen dargestellt*, Vienna, 1886.

Politics of Pope Gregory. J. DOIZE, *Deux études sur l'administration temporelle du pape Grégoire le Grand*, Paris, 1904. F. NOBILI-VITELLESCHI (POMPONIO LETO), *Della storia civile e politica del papato dall' imperatore Teodosio a Carlomagno*, Bologna, 1902. F. W. KELLETT, *Pope Gregory the Great and his relations with Gaul*, Cambridge, 1888 (Prince Consort dissertation). L. PINGAUD, *La politique de Saint Grégoire le Grand*, Paris, 1872. T. WOLLSCHACK, *Die Verhältnisse Italiens, insbesondere des Langobardenreichs, nach dem Briefwechsel Gregors I*, Horn, 1888. R. BAXMANN, *Die Politik der Päpste von Gregor I bis auf Gregor VII*, 2 vols., Elberfeld,

1868–69. Gregory's relations with the eastern empire are described by J. B. BURY, *The later Roman Empire*, II, 145–158. D. E. BENEDETTI, *S. Gregorio Magno e la schiavitù*, Rome, 1904.

Gregorian music. *The Oxford history of music*, edited by W. H. HADOW, 6 vols., Oxford, 1901ff., vol. I. G. MORIN, *Les véritables origines du chant grégorien*, Rome and Tournai, 1904 (à propos du livre de F. A. GEVAERT, *Les origines du chant liturgique de l'église latine*, Ghent, 1890). A. GATARD, *La musique Grégorienne: étude descriptive et historique, illustrée de douze planches*, Paris, [1913], (Les musiciens célèbres). C. VIVELL, *Der Gregorianische Gesang*, Graz, 1904.

Original sources. For general collections of source material on the papacy see nos. **956–961** above; for the church in general, nos. **953–964** above. See also H. DELEHAYE, "S. Grégoire le Grand dans l'hagiographie grecque" in *Analecta Bollandiana*, XXIII (1904), 440–454.

The most convenient collection of the works of Gregory is in MIGNE, no. **953** above, *Series latina*, vols. LXXV–LXXIX, which includes in vol. LXXV the *Vita Gregorii* of JOHN THE DEACON and PAUL THE DEACON. His letters are edited in a more critical edition by P. EWALD and L. M. HARTMANN, *Gregorii I papae registrum epistolarum*, 2 vols., Berlin, 1891–1899, in the *Monumenta Germaniae historica, Epistolae*, I–II.

Bibliographies. In addition to the general bibliographies of the church, nos. **49–55** above, it is sufficient to refer to the classified list of books in the *Cambridge medieval history*, II, 743–746.

VI. EXPANSION OF ORTHODOX LATIN CHRISTENDOM FROM ABOUT 590 TO ABOUT 755

A. OUTLINE

1. The importance of the spread of Mohammedanism as a factor determining the direction of expansion.

2. Importance of the missionary work of the Christian church. The two problems: (1) conversion of the Arians to orthodoxy, (2) conversion of the heathen; the two main factors: (1) the monks, (2) the papacy; the two main centers from which the work was carried on: (1) British Isles, especially Ireland, (2) Rome.

3. Conversion of western Arians to the orthodox faith. Burgundians had been converted about 517. Before 570, the Sueves in Spain had been converted by St. Martin of Braga. Strength

of Arianism among the Visigoths in Spain. Conversion of Leovigild's rebel son Hermenegild by his Frankish wife Ingundis in Seville about 580. Conversion of king Reccared in 587 at the beginning of his reign. Orthodox Latin culture represented by Leander, archbishop of Seville, who died in 601, and by Isidore of Seville, bishop of Seville, who died in 636. The Arian Lombards in Italy were converted before the end of the seventh century.

4. Conversion of the Franks from heathendom to orthodox Christianity. Baptism of Clovis and 3000 warriors in 496 (see the next outline).

5. Christianity in Ireland. Pre-Patrician Christianity in Ireland. St. Patrick, the "Apostle of the Irish," labored in Ireland 432–461. St. Bridget, the "Mary of Ireland," died 525. Ireland became the "Isle of Saints."

6. Irish missionaries in Scotland. [Legend of St. Ninian (ca. 353-ca. 432), a Briton.] St. Columba occupied the island of Iona in 563. Soon after he went among the northern Picts. Died 597. St. Kentigern (died 612) in Strathclyde. The Culdees.

7. Irish missionaries on the continent. Columban, a monk of Bangor, with twelve companions, went to France about 585. Near the Vosges mountains he founded the monasteries of Luxeuil ("the monastic capital of France"—Montalembert), Anegray, and Fontaines. Banished from the Burgundian kingdom by Brunhild. Went to Switzerland and then to Italy where he was granted land by the Lombard king Agilulf for the foundation of a monastery at Bobbio, and where he died in 615. The rule of Columban contrasted with that of Benedict. St. Gall (died 645) the most famous disciple of Columban, founded the monastery of St. Gall in Switzerland. St. Wandrille and Eustasius, abbot of Luxeuil, were other disciples. Other Irish monks in Germany were Fridolin, Trudbert in the Black Forest, and Kylian, the "Apostle of Franconia."

8. Conversion of the English by monks from Rome. In 596 Pope Gregory sent Augustine with forty monks to England where they landed in 597. Conversion of King Ethelbert of Kent who had married Bertha, a Christian princess from Paris. St. Augustine was consecrated first archbishop of Canterbury. Augustine's methods of spreading the faith among the heathen.

9. Celtic and Roman Christianity in England. Conflict between St. Augustine (died 604) and the British bishops. Aidan (died 651), at the call of king Oswald of Northumbria, came from Iona in 635 and established himself on Lindisfarne (called "Holy Isle"

since the eleventh century). St. Cuthbert. Differences between the two churches (date of Easter, tonsure, celibacy, Vulgate, etc.); not settled until the Council of Whitby in Northumbria in 664. Theodore of Tarsus in Cilicia, archbishop of Canterbury in 668; he died in 690. Benedict Biscop founded a monastery at Wearmouth in 674, dedicated to St. Peter, and another at Jarrow in 680, dedicated to St. Paul. Although seven miles apart, these two monasteries were practically one, called the monastery of the Apostles Peter and Paul. Bede (or Baeda), the Venerable, 673–735, entered Jarrow when seven years of age and spent his whole life there.

10. Early English missionaries on the continent. Wilfrith I (St. Wilfrid), bishop of York from 665–709 among the heathen Frisians. In 690 he was followed by Willibrord (658–ca. 739), a Northumbrian, who was made archbishop of the Frisians (with his seat at Utrecht) at the request of Pepin. The two Hewalds, or Ewalds (Black and White Hewald) among the Saxons.

11. St. Boniface (ca. 680–755), the "Apostle of Germany," was the most important English missionary. His name was Winfrith and he was born of noble parents near Crediton about 680. Entered a monastery at Exeter when he was seven years old. About 716 he sailed to Frisia. In 719 pope Gregory II formally made him missionary to German tribes. Later worked among the Thuringians and Hessians. In 723 he went to Rome and was consecrated "regionary" bishop by pope Gregory II. Destruction of the sacred oak of Thor at Geismar. In 732 pope Gregory III made him missionary archbishop and papal legate (in 743 he fixed his see in Mainz). The alliance of Boniface with the see in Rome was of far-reaching importance. Boniface was the friend of Charles Martel and of Pepin, whom he crowned king of the Franks at Soissons in 751. Monastery of Fulda founded 744, its first abbot being Sturm. Boniface resigned his see at Mainz to Lul and met a martyr's death among the wild Frisians in 755. Buried in Fulda. The work of Boniface in Frisia was continued by St. Willehad who went there in 770.

12. Means and methods of spreading the Christian faith.

13. Popes, 604–816.

Sabinianus, 604–606	John IV, 640–642
Boniface III, 607	Theodorus I, 642–649
Boniface IV, 608–615	Martin I, 649–654
Deusdedit, 615–618	Eugenius I, 654–657
Boniface V, 619–625	Vitalianus, 657–672
Honorius I, 625–638	Adeodatus, 672–676
Severinus, 638–640	Donus I, 676–678

Agatho, 678–681
Leo II, 682–683
Benedict II, 684–685
John V, 685–686
Conon, 686–687
Sergius I, 687–701
John VI, 701–705
JohnVII, 705–707
Sisinnius, 708
Constantine, 708–715
Gregory II, 715–731
Gregory III, 731–741
Zachary, 741–752
Stephen II, 752–757
Paul I, 757–767
Stephen III, 768–772
Hadrian I, 772–795
Leo III, 795-816

B. SPECIAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR READING

General accounts. *Cambridge medieval history,* II, ch. XVI. LAVISSE and RAMBAUD, *Histoire générale,* I, 255–264, 285–296 (portions of this are translated in MUNRO and SELLERY, *Medieval civilization,* 114–128, see also 60–86, 129–136). TAYLOR, *The mediaeval mind,* I, 169–204. MILMAN, *History of Latin Christianity,* book IV, chs. III–V. MONTALEMBERT, *Monks of the west,* especially book VII. FLICK, *Rise of the mediaeval church,* ch. XII.

Pope Gregory's missionary labors. DUDDEN, *Gregory the Great,* II, 99–159, is in large part an account of the English mission, but it also contains other information not readily found elsewhere.

St. Patrick and the Irish element. The standard biographies are J. B. BURY; *The life of St. Patrick,* London, 1905; and J. HEALY, *The life and writings of St. Patrick,* Dublin, 1905. Now see also F. R. M. HITCHCOCK, *St. Patrick and his Gallic friends,* London, 1916; and L'ABBÉ RIGUET, *Saint Patrice (vers 389–461),* Paris, 1911 (Les Saints). If you heed the hint that H. ZIMMER, "Über die Bedeutung des irischen Elements für die mittelalterliche Kultur," in *Preussische Jahrbücher,* LIX (1887), 26ff., translated by J. L. EDMONDS, *The Irish element in mediaeval culture,* New York, 1891, reprint, London, 1913, tends to paint too bright a picture, the sketch is safe and agreeable reading.

The Christian church in the British Isles. W. HUNT, *The English church* (597–1066), London, 1901, chs. I–XII *passim.* W. BRIGHT, *Chapters on early English church history* [to 709], Oxford, 1878, 3rd edition, 1897. A. PLUMMER, *The churches in Britain before* A.D. 1000, vols. I and II, London, 1911–1912 (Library of historical theology, edited by W. C. PIERCY).

Biographies of Boniface. The best biography in English is G. F. BROWNE, *Boniface of Crediton,* London, 1910; in French, G. KURTH, *Saint Boniface,* Paris, 1902, 4th edition, 1913 (Les saints).

English monastic life. F. A. GASQUET, *English monastic life,* London, 1904, 3rd edition, 1905, draws an ideal but trustworthy

picture of life in a monastery, which applies to all periods of the middle ages; see especially ch. VI.

Original sources. The *Life of St. Columban* by the monk JONAS is translated in the *Translations and reprints* of the University of Pennsylvania, II, no. 7. The most important primary source is BEDE, *Historia ecclesiasticae gentis Anglorum*, edited by C. PLUMMER, 2 vols., Oxford, 1896, and translated, with notes, by A. M. SELLAR, *Bede's ecclesiastical history of England*, London, 1912 (also translated in Everyman's library). For the conversion of the English, the salient portions of it are extracted in *The mission of St. Augustine to England according to original documents*, edited by A. J. MASON, Cambridge, 1897. See also *Documents illustrative of English church history*, edited by H. GEE and W. J. HARDY, London, 1896.

The *English letters of St. Boniface* are edited by E. KYLIE, London, 1911 (King's Classics). There is a German translation of all his letters by M. TANGL, *Die Briefe des hl. Bonifatius*, in *Die Geschichtschreiber der deutschen Vorzeit*, XCII, Leipzig, 1912. *The life of Saint Boniface by Willibald* has just appeared in a translation by G. W. ROBINSON, Harvard University Press, 1916 (Harvard translations).

Maps. SHEPHERD, *Atlas*, 46–47, contains a very important map on the "Development of Christianity to 1300"; see also 94–95, 97 and 101 (ground plan of St. Gall in Switzerland).

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General books. General histories of the church are listed above, nos. **394–498**, of which no. **461** is especially valuable; periodicals on church history, nos. **176–180** above; and encyclopaedias for the history of the church and religion, nos. **104–114** above.

Visigothic church. M. E. MAGNIN, *L'Église wisigothique au VII^e siècle*, vol. I, Paris, 1912.

Celtic Christianity. L. GOUGAUD, *Les chrétientés celtiques*, Paris, 1911. H. WILLIAMS, *Christianity in early Britain*, Oxford, 1912. H. ZIMMER, *The Celtic church in Britain and Ireland*, London, 1912, translated by MISS A. MEYER from the *Realencyklopädie für protestantische Theologie*, X (1901), 204–43. MRS. J. R. GREEN, *The old Irish world*, Dublin, 1912. G. F. BROWNE, *The Christian Church in these islands before Augustine*, 2nd edition, London, 1895. G. T. STOKES, *Ireland and the Celtic church*, 2nd edition, London, 1888.

St. Columba. E. A. COOKE, *The life and work of St. Columba*, London, 1888. V. BRANFORD, *St. Columba: a study of social inheritance and spiritual development*, Edinburgh, 1913.

Irish missionaries on the continent. MARGARET STOKES, *Three months in the forests of France: a pilgrimage in search of vestiges of the Irish saints in France*, London, 1895; see also her *Six months in the Apennines*, London, 1892, an account of her visit to the region where St. Columban died. W. LEVISON, "Die Iren und die fränkische Kirche," in *Historische Zeitschrift*, CIX (1912), 1–22. L. GOUGAUD, "L'oeuvre des Scotti dans l'Europe continentale (fin VI^e^–fin XI^e^ siécles)," in *Revue d'histoire écclésiastique*, IX (1908), 21–46; 255–277. J. VON PFLUGK-HARTTUNG, "The old Irish on the continent," in *Royal historical society*, new series, V (1891), 75–102 (translated from the German). T. S. HOLMES, *The origin and development of the Christian church in Gaul during the first six centuries of the Christian era*, London, 1911, ch. XVII. HODGKIN, *Italy and her invaders*, VI, book VII, ch. III (Saint Columbanus) J. H. A. EBRARD, *Die iroschottische Missionskirche des 6, 7 und 8 Jahrhunderts*, Gütersloh, 1873; and his *Bonifatius, der Zerstörer des Columbanischen Kirchenthums auf dem Festlande: ein Nachtrag zu dem Werke "Die iroschottische Missionskirche,"* Gütersloh, 1882. E. MARTIN, *Saint Columban*, Paris, 1905. L. DEDIEU, *Colomban, législateur de la vie monastique*, Cahors, 1901 (dissertation). O. SEEBASS, *Über Columba von Luxeuils Klosterregel*, Dresden, 1883 (dissertation).

St. Augustine and the conversion of the English. H. H. HOWORTH, *Saint Augustine of Canterbury*, London, 1913 (Birth of the English church, vol. II). E. L. CUTTS, *St. Augustine of Canterbury*, London, 1895. G. F. BROWNE, *Augustine and his companions*, London, 1895, 2nd edition, 1897, continued by his, *The conversion of the Heptarchy*, London, 1906. F. E. BASSENGE, *Die Sendung Augustins zur Bekehrung der Angelsachen*, Leipzig, 1890. H. H. HOWORTH, *The golden days of the early English church*, 3 vols., London, 1916. J. T. MILLS, *The great days of Northumbria*, New York, 1911. ELIZABETH W. GRIERSON, *The story of the Northumbrian saints: S. Oswald, S. Aidan, S. Cuthbert*, London, 1913. F. CABROL, *L'Angleterre chrétienne avant les Normands*, Paris, 1908, 2nd edition, 1909 (bibliography, pp. ix–xxxiii). W. H. HUTTON, *The influence of Christianity upon national character illustrated by the lives and legends of the English saints*, London, 1903 (Bampton lectures).

Boniface and the conversion of Germany. G. SCHNÜRER, *Bonifatius: die Bekehrung der Deutschen zum Christentum*, Mainz, 1909. F. ZEHETBAUER, *Das Kirchenrecht bei Bonifatius dem Apostel der Deutschen*, Wien, 1910. *Festgabe zum Bonifatius-Jubiläum*, Fulda, 1905, is a collection of studies. B. KUHLMANN, *Der heilige Boni-*

fatius, Apostel der Deutschen, Paderborn, 1895. O. FISCHER, *Bonifatius, der Apostel der Deutschen,* Leipzig, 1881. F. J. VON BUSS, *Winifrid-Bonifacius,* Graz, 1880. A. WERNER, *Bonifacius der Apostel der Deutschen und die romanisirung von Mitteleuropa,* Leipzig, 1875. P. PFAHLER, *S. Bonifacius und seine Zeit,* Ratisbon, 1880. J. M. WILLIAMSON, *Life and times of St. Boniface,* London, 1904, is quite worthless. On the friends of Boniface see H. HAHN, *Bonifaz und Lul: ihre angelsächsischen Korrespondenten,* Leipzig, 1883. E. LAVISSE, "La conquête de la Germanie par l'église romaine," *Revue des deux mondes,* April 15, 1887, 3e periode, LXXX, 878. The following two books are devoted to the early history of the German church, F. W. RETTBERG, *Kirchengeschichte Deutschlands,* vols. I and II, Göttingen, 1846–48; and J. FRIEDRICH, *Kirchengeschichte Deutschlands,* vols. I–II, Bamberg, 1867–1869.

Methods of early missionaries. H. LAU, *Die angelsächsische Missionsweise im Zeitalter des Bonifaz,* Kiel, 1909 (dissertation). W. KONEN, *Die Heidenpredigt in der Germanenbekehrung,* Düsseldorf, 1910 (dissertation). E. KYLIE, "The conditions of the German provinces as illustrating the methods of Boniface," in *Journal of theological studies,* London, VII (1905–06), 29ff. See also VACANDARD, "L'idolatrie en Gaule," etc., p. 359 below.

Original sources. The main sources are found in such general collections as nos. **953, 963,** and **978** above, but for classified lists of them see the bibliographies noted below. *The life of Saint Columba by Adamnan* is edited with a translation by W. Reeves, Edinburgh, 1874, new edition by J. T. Fowler, Oxford, 1894, and a translation has appeared also in the New universal library published by Dutton. *The life of Ceolfrid, abbot of the monastery of Wearmouth and Jarrow by an unknown author of the eighth century,* is edited and translated by D. S. BOUTFLOWER, London, 1912. A little German source book on the subject of this outline is edited by T. HÄNLEIN, *Die Bekehrung der Germanen zum Christentum,* I, *Die Bekehrung der Franken und Angelsachsen,* Leipzig, 1914 (Voigländers Quellenbücher, 78).

Bibliographies. For additional books on this subject, both original sources and secondary works, it is sufficient to consult GROSS, no. **36** above, especially nos. 1423–1471, 1591–1663; DAHLMANN-WAITZ, no. **28** above, nos. 4151–4219; and the *Cambridge medieval history,* II, 793–797.

VII. THE RISE OF THE FRANKS TO THE TIME OF CHARLEMAGNE

A. OUTLINE

1. The Franks were destined to succeed in founding a strong, well-nigh universal, state in western Europe. The Teutonic versus the Romanic elements in European civilization.

2. The origin of the Franks and their coming into Roman Gaul. The *Pranci* of Peutinger's chart. Salian and Ripuarian Franks. Salian Franks were in Toxandria about 400. Tournai became the capital. Clodion, the first recorded Frankish king. Merovech (= sea-born; the word "Merovingians" is derived from his name). His son Childeric died 481. The Salian Franks aided Aëtius against the Huns at the so-called battle of Châlons in 451. Ripuarian Franks in the region of Aix-la-Chapelle, Cologne and Bonn. The *Lex Salica*, written down about 510, reflects the primitive civilization of the Franks.

3. Various peoples on the soil which is now France about 500 A.D., Gallo-Romans, Visigoths, Burgundians, Alemans, Salian and Ripuarian Franks, Thuringians, etc.

4. Clovis, king of the Salian Franks from 481 to 511. Defeated Syagrius, the Roman official, at his capital Soissons in 486. In 491 he overcame the Thuringians. In 496 he attacked the Alemans in a battle near Strasburg. Clovis married Clotilda, daughter of Chilperic, the king of the Burgundians. Theodoric, king of the Ostrogoths, married Albofleda, the sister of Clovis. Conversion of Clovis to orthodox Christianity, baptized in Rheims on Christmas day, 496. War with the Burgundians under their king Gundobad, 500ff. Renewed wars with the Alemans (505–507), who were rescued by Theodoric the Ostrogoth. Visigoths defeated at Vouglé, near Poitiers, in 507; Alaric II, their king, was slain. Burning of Toulouse. Theodoric again intervened, took Provence for himself and gave Septimania to the Visigoths, thus shutting the Franks off from the Mediterranean. Clovis made Paris his capital where he died in 511 and was buried in the church which afterward became Sainte-Geneviève.

5. The sons of Clovis.

(1) Theodoric (Capital, Rheims) died 534. His son was Theudibert, the best king of the period, who died 548, leaving Theodebald, who died of debauchery in 555.

(2) Clodimir (Capital, Orleans) died 524. His children were murdered by (3) and (4).

(3) Childebert (Capital, Paris) died 558.

(4) Chlotar I (Capital, Soissons). Sole ruler in 558. Burned his rebellious son Chramnus, together with his wife and children, in a hut, and died of remorse in 561.

6. Frankland in the time of the sons of Clovis. Burgundy taken in 534, Provence in 536. Thuringians were crushed. In 542 Childebert marched against Saragossa in Spain (foundation of the monastery of St. Vincent, later St. Germain-des-Près, to house the tunic of St. Vincent which he brought from Spain). But Armorica (= Brittany) and the Basques remained independent, and Septimania remained in the hands of the Visigoths, from whom it passed to the Arabs and was not won by the Franks until the time of king Pepin.

7. Grandsons of Clovis. His son Chlotar I (died 561) left four sons:

(1) Charibert (Capital, Paris) died 567.

(2) Sigebert (Capital, Metz), was the husband of Brunhild (Brunehaut), the daughter of Athanagild, king of the Visigoths. Sigebert assasinated 575, by henchmen of Fredegund.

(3) Chilperic (Capital, Soissons), married Galswintha, sister of Brunhild. When Galswintha was strangled, he married Fredegund, a serving-woman. Chilperic murdered in 584. His son was Chlotar II, sole king, 613–629, and his son Dagobert, sole king, 629-639.

(4) Guntram (Capital, Orleans), tried to hold balance of power between (2) and (3), died 593.

8. Frankland in the time of the grandsons of Clovis. Chilperic (died 584) was a good type of the Merovingian despot. Fierce rivalry between Brunhild (in Austrasia) and Fredegund (in Neustria). Brunhild became regent for her son Childebert (575–596), and later for her grandsons, Theodoric (died 613) and Theodebert. Fredegund died 597. Brutal execution of Brunhild at Lake Neuchâtel in 613. Gregory, bishop of Tours, (ca. 538–594) the historian of this period. His *Historiae Francorum libri X.*

9. Reigns of Chlotar II (613–629) and Dagobert (629–639), sole rulers of Frankland, but even they were obliged to recognize the essential division of Gaul into Neustria, Austrasia and Burgundy.

10. *Rois fainéants* (Do-nothing kings), 639–751. In this period the Merovingian kings were a race of children, mere puppets in the hands of the mayors of the palace in the three kingdoms.

11. The mayors of the palace in Austrasia were most important. Arnulf, bishop of Metz, and Pepin, "of Landen," were founders of the office in Austrasia. When Pepin died 640, he was soon succeeded by his son Grimoald (643–656) who tried to oust the Merovingian puppet king and to put his own son Childebert on the throne but did not succeed. About 680 Pepin of Heristal, grandson of Arnulf and Pepin of Landen, became mayor of the palace in Austrasia. In 687 he defeated Berthar, the mayor of Neustria, at Testry, near St. Quentin. This event marked the real beginning of the Carolingian line.

12. Charles Martel, illegitimate son of Pepin, mayor of the palace, 714–741. Defeated the Arabs in the battle of Tours, in 732. In 739 Pope Gregory III appealed to Charles against Liutprand, king of the Lombards, but Charles refused to march against Liutprand who had been his ally against the Arabs.

13. Pepin, first king of the Franks. Charles, who died in 741, divided the kingdom between his two sons Carloman and Pepin. In 747 Carloman entered a monastery on Mount Soracte in Italy. In 751 Pope Zachary sanctioned the crowning of Pepin as king of the Franks. In all probability Boniface consecrated him. The last Merovingian puppet, Childeric III, was sent to a monastery. In 752 Pepin got control of Septimania (except Narbonne which fell in 758). In 753 he invaded Saxony and exacted tribute.

14. The alliance of the Franks with the papacy. Lombards were threatening the pope in Rome. The Mohammedan menace in the south. The Eastern emperor failed to protect Italy and the papacy. In 753 pope Stephen II visited Pepin in Frankland. The "Donation of Constantine." The "Donation of Pepin." The "Roman Question." In 754 or 755 and again in 756 Pepin marched armies against Aistulf, the Lombard. In 756 Desiderius became king of the Lombards and continued to threaten the pope who appealed to Pepin in vain.

15. Last deeds and death of Pepin. Subdued Aquitaine in 768 when Waifar died. Aquitainians were given right to live under their own laws. Pepin himself died in Paris in 768 and was buried in St. Denis.

16. Frankish institutions in the time of the Merovingians.

B. SPECIAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR READING

Brief general accounts. EMERTON, *Introduction to the middle ages*, chs. VII, X, XII. BÉMONT and MONOD, *Medieval Europe*, chs. V, VI, XII. ADAMS, *The growth of the French nation*, chs. II–IV. It is profitable to follow these short surveys up by either BRYCE, *Holy*

Roman empire, ch. IV; or ADAMS, *Civilization*, 137–154; and especially MUNRO and SELLERY, *Medieval civilization*, 60–86.

Longer general accounts. The most satisfactory recent account in English is in the *Cambridge medieval history*, I, 292–303, II, 109–158, 575–594; but KITCHIN, *History of France*, I, 48–117, can still be recommended. The standard survey in French is in LAVISSE, *Histoire de France*, II, part I, 67–279; a similar but shorter account is in LAVISSE and RAMBAUD, *Histoire générale*, I, 114–158, 274–308.

Detailed accounts in English. HODGKIN, *Italy and her invaders*, VII. SERGEANT, *The Franks*, chs. VI–XV. OMAN, *The dark ages*, chs. IV, VII, X, XV, XVII, XIX.

Original sources. Fortunately the essential portions of the famous book of GREGORY OF TOURS, *Historiae Francorum libri X* have now been translated into English by E. BREHAUT, *History of the Franks by Gregory, bishop of Tours*, New York, 1916, in *Records of Civilization*, no. **949** above. Short extracts are translated in OGG, *Source book*, 47–59; ROBINSON, *Readings*, I, 51–55; and THATCHER and MCNEAL, *Source book*, 26–37. The "Donation of Constantine" is translated in HENDERSON, *Select documents*, 319–329; and the Salic law, *ibid.*, 176–189.

Maps. SHEPHERD, *Atlas*, 53, and especially LONGNON, *Atlas historique de la France*, plates II–IV. Peutinger's chart is edited by K. MILLER, *Tabula Peutingeriana: die Weltkarte des Castorius, genannt die Peutingerische Tafel*, Ravensburg, 1888.

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General books. General histories of France, Belgium, and the Netherlands, nos. **508–559** above, and of Germany, nos. **560–598** above, are almost equally valuable for this early history of the soil of modern France. Many books listed under outline II above are valuable for this subject.

General accounts. M. PROU, *La Gaule mérovingienne*, Paris, 1897. G. RICHTER, *Annalen des fränkischen Reiches im Zeitalter der Merovinger*, Halle, 1873. O. GUTSCHE and W. SCHULTZE, *Deutsche Geschichte von der Urzeit bis zu den Karolingern*, 2 vols., Stuttgart, 1894–96. G. KAUFMANN, *Deutsche Geschichte bis auf Karl den Grossen*, 2 vols., Leipzig, 1880–1881. J. SCHMAUS, *Geschichte und Herkunft der alten Franken*, Bamberg, 1912.

Clovis. The best biography is G. KURTH, *Clovis*, Tours, 1896, 2nd edition, 2 vols., Paris, 1901. H. VON SCHUBERT, *Staat und Kirche in den arianischen Königreichen und im Reiche Chlodwigs*, Munich and Berlin, 1912 (Historische Bibliotek, 26). A. LECOY DE

LA MARCHE, *La fondation de la France du 4e au 6e siècle*, Lille, 1893. C. PFISTER, "Le baptême de Clovis," in *Revue hebdomadaire*, October 21, 1916.

Dagobert. J. H. ALBERS, *König Dagobert in Geschichte, Legende und Sage*, Worms, 1884.

Mayors of the Palace. G. EITEN, *Das Unterkönigtum im Reiche der Merovinger und Karolinger*, Heidelberg, 1907 (in Heidelberger Abhandlungen zur mittleren und neueren Geschichte, 18). E. HERRMANN, *Das Hausmeieramt, ein echt germanisches Amt*, Breslau, 1880. H. VON SYBEL, *Die Entstehung des deutschen Königthums*, 3rd edition, Frankfurt, 1884. H. E. BONNEL, *De Anfänge des karolingischen Hauses*, Berlin, 1866. P. A. F. GÉRARD, *Histoire des Francs d'Austrasie*, 2 vols., Brussels, 1864. G. H. PERTZ, *Geschichte der Merovingischen Hausmeier*, Hanover, 1819.

Charles Martel. J. VAN DEN GHEYN, *Histoire de Charles Martel*, Paris, 1910. T. BREYSIG, *Jahrbücher des fränkischen Reichs, 714–41*, Leipzig, 1869, part of 570 above.

Pepin. H. HAHN, *Jahrbücher des fränkischen Reichs, 741–52*, Berlin, 1863, part of no. 570 above. L. OELSNER, *Jahrbücher des fränkischen Reichs unter König Pippin*, Leipzig, 1871, part of no. 570 above.

Church and state to the time of Charlemagne. A recent and very authoritative study on the relations between church and state in the time of Pepin is E. CASPAR, *Pippin und die römische Kirche: kritische Untersuchungen zum fränkish-päpstlichen Bunde im 8 Jahrhundert*, Berlin, 1914. A. CRIVELLUCCI, *Storia delle relazioni tra lo stato e la chiesa*, vols. I–III (to Hadrian I, 772–795) and Appendix to vol. I, Bologna, 1886, Livorno, 1888, Pisa, 1909. F. NOBILI-VITELLESCHI (POMPONIO LETO), *Della storia civile e politica del papato*, 3 vols., Bologna, 1900–1906, extends to the renaissance; vol. II on Charlemagne. L. ARMBRUST, *Die Territorialpolitik der Päpste, 500–800*, Göttingen, 1885. J. FEHR, *Staat und Kirche im fränkischen Reiche bis auf Karl den Grossen*, Vienna, 1869. H. VON SCHUBERT, *Staat und Kirche von Constantin bis Karl den Grossen*, eine Rede, Kiel, 1906.

Donation of Constantine. The easiest introduction to the study of this famous forgery is C. B. COLEMAN, *Constantine the Great and Christianity: three phases: the historical, the legendary, and the spurious*, New York, 1914 (Columbia University Studies), 175–242, also 99–172 for the legend of Constantine, 217–242 contain the texts which are essential, and 243–254 a comprehensive bibliography. See also the bibliography of the most important critical studies in *Cambridge medieval history*, II, 805.

Constitutional history. By far the most important books are those by N. D. FUSTEL DE COULANGES, *Histoire des institutions politiques de l'ancienne France*, 6 vols., Paris, 1888–1891; re-edited, revised, and completed from the author's notes by C. JULLIAN: I, *La Gaule romaine*, 4th edition, 1914; II, *L'invasion germanique et la fin de l'empire*, 3rd edition, 1911; III, *La monarchie franque*, 3rd edition, 1905; IV, *L'alleu et le domaine rural pendant l'époque mérovingienne*, 1914; V, *Les origines du système féodal: le bénéfice et le patronat pendant l'époque mérovingienne*, 4th edition, 1914; VI, *Les transformations de la royauté pendant l'époque carolingienne*, 3rd edition, 1914. See also his *Recherches sur quelques problèmes d'histoire*, Paris, 1885, 2nd edition, 1894, and *Nouvelles recherches*, published by C. JULLIAN, Paris, 1891. E. LESNE, *La propriété ecclésiastique en France aux époques romaine et mérovingienne*, Paris, 1910. J. TARDIF, *Etudes sur les institutions politiques et administratives de la France: époque mérovingienne*, Paris, 1881. See also the general books on German, nos. **578–587** above, and French constitutional history, nos. **528–536** above.

Faith, morals, and learning of the Franks. See outline VI in part III below.

Miscellaneous. A. THIERRY, *Récits des temps mérovingiens*, 2 vols., Paris, 1840, revised edition, 1887. J. HAVET, *Questions mérovingiennes*, in his *Oeuvres complètes*, vol. I, Paris, 1896. J. DEPOIN, "Questions mérovingiennes et carolingiennes" in *Revue des études historiques*, (1904); also his "Etudes mérovingiénnes," *ibid.*, (1909). E. A. FREEMAN, *Western Europe in the eighth century and onward: an aftermath*, London, 1904. G. LAFONT, *Les origines de la nationalité francaise: essais sur les Celtes, les Kymris, les Gaulois, les Francs, et les Ibères*, Tours, 1901. G. REVERDY, *Les relations de Childebert II et de Byzance*, Paris, 1913 (extract from *Revue historique*, CXIV). K. PLATH, *Die Königspfalzen der Merovinger und Karolinger*, Leipzig, 1892. G. ROLOFF, "Die Umwandlung des fränkischen Heeres von Chlodwig bis Karl den Grossen," in *Neue Jahrbücher für das klassische Altertum* IX, (1902). C. PFISTER, *Le duché mérovingien d'Alsace et la légende de sainte Odile*, Paris, 1892.

Original sources. Most of the sources for this period are well edited in the *Monumenta Germaniae historica*, no. **978** above, and in BOUQUET, no. **967** above. The best edition of the *Historiae Francorum libri X* of GREGORY OF TOURS is in vols. II and XVI of the *Collection de textes*, no. **968** above, Paris, 1886–93, new edition by R. POUPARDIN, 1 vol., Paris, 1913. The chroniclers are described by G. MASSON, *Early chroniclers of Europe: France*, and by W. WATTENBACH, *Deutschlands Geschichtsquellen*. The interesting Merovingian

charters are edited and described by P. LAUER and C. SAMARAN, *Les diplômes originaux des Mérovingiens, fac-similes phototypiques, avec notices et transcriptions* with a preface by M. PROU, 2 fasc. Paris, 1908; and *Les diplômes mérovingiens des Archives nationales*, Paris, 1915.

Bibliographies. DAHLMANN-WAITZ, *Quellenkunde*, B, book II, *passim;* and *Cambridge medieval history*, I, 657, II, 728–732, 801–808, especially the very exhaustive and excellent portions on pp. 801–808 drawn up by Professor G. L. BURR. See also the important bibliographies in the footnotes of LAVISSE, *Histoire de France*, II, part I. Besides, all the bibliographies for France and Germany, nos. **21–34** above, especially MOLINIER, no. **21**, for Belgium, no. **45** above, and for the church, nos. **49–55** above, are serviceable.

VIII. CHARLEMAGNE

A. OUTLINE

1. The importance of the idea of universal empire in medieval thought.

2. Charlemagne's personality. Einhard's *Vita Caroli magni.*

3. Fairly abundant sources of information for the reign of Charlemagne. Famous annals. Capitularies. *Monumenta Germaniae historica*, no. **978** above.

4. Charlemagne's accession. Pepin divided his kingdom between his two sons, Charles (the elder, born ca. 742) and Carloman. Bertrada, their mother, tried to keep them at peace. She married Charles to a daughter of Desiderius in spite of the violent protests of pope Stephen III, but the union was broken within a year. Carloman died in 771 and Charles made himself sole ruler.

5. Completion of the military work of his predecessors; the farthest extension of Frankland. (1) Major conquests: (*a*) The overthrow of the Lombard kingdom in Italy. Desiderius threatened pope Hadrian I who appealed to Charles. Desiderius was captured by Charles in Pavia in 774. Charles made his second son, Pepin, king of Italy. (*b*) Saxon wars lasted over thirty years. The Saxon hero Widukind. Execution of about 4500 Saxons in one day at Verden on the Aller in 782. The Capitulary concerning Saxony. (2) Frontier wars: (*a*) In Spain, 778–811. Roncesvalles. Roland. The Spanish March. Balearic Islands a Frankish protectorate in 799. (*b*) In Bavaria against Duke Tassilo. (*c*) With the Danish king Godfred who sent a fleet in 810 down Frisia hoping to attack Aix-la-Chapelle. (*d*) With the Slavs to the east, especially the Wiltzi and Sorbs. (*e*) With the Avars. The "rings"

of the Avars. They were defeated and dispersed in 795 and 796 by Charles and his son Pepin.

6. Relations of Charles with the papacy before 800. His visit to Rome in 774 to see pope Hadrian I. The famous scene in St. Peters when Charles confirmed the "Donation of Pepin." The "Roman Question." The beginnings of the Papal States. Precarious position of the pope in Rome, especially of Leo III (795–816).

7. Relations of Charles with the Byzantine empire. Intrigues of the Byzantine empire in Benevento with the dispossessed Lombards in Italy, against Charles. Echoes of the iconoclastic controversy. In 780 the empress Irene had her young son Constantine VI betrothed to Rotrud, a daughter of Charlemagne, but the engagement was broken. In 797 Constantine was blinded by Irene and died. Irene declared herself empress.

8. Revival of the empire in the west in 800. World politics in the year 800: Irene in Constantinople, pope Leo III in Rome, Haroun-al-Raschid in Bagdad. Charles was crowned emperor of the Romans by pope Leo III in St. Peters, Rome, on Christmas day, 800. Foundations of, and theories about, the revival of the empire. The nature of the empire in the time of Charlemagne.

9. Imperial government of Charlemagne. The general assemblies. The capitularies. Charlemagne's court (*palatium*) whose members were called palatines (*ministri* and *ministeriales*). Local government—dukes, counts, *missi dominici*. Central and local courts (*scabini*). His army (the group system of military service). Primitive financial system.

10. Carolingian learning and art. The palace school. Charlemagne's interest in learning. His edict concerning monastic and cathedral schools. Charlemagne imported scholars, Alcuin, Paul the Deacon, Paul of Pisa. The reform in writing, the "Caroline minuscule." New interest in architecture and literature, especially history writing.

11. The succession of Charlemagne. The partition of 806 between his three sons, Charles, Louis, and Pepin. Pepin died in 810 and Charles in 811, leaving Louis the sole successor of Charlemagne. Charlemagne died in Aix-la-Chapelle, in 814, at the age of about 72 years. He was buried there in an ancient sarcophagus which may still be seen.

12. The legend of Charlemagne.

B. Special Recommendations for Reading

Brief general accounts. EMERTON, *Introduction to the middle ages*, chs. XIII–XIV; or KITCHEN, *History of France*, I, 118–153; will

do about as well as other similar sketches. A comparatively brief account of great excellence is in *Handbuch der deutschen Geschichte,* edited by GEBHARDT, I, chs. VI–VII.

Longer general accounts. The latest scholarly summary of the period in English is in the *Cambridge medieval history,* II, chs. XVIII, XIX, XXI, XXII; which is better than OMAN, *The dark ages,* chs. XX, XXI, XXII; or SERGEANT, *The Franks,* chs. XVI–XX. The standard general accounts in French are LAVISSE, *Histoire de France,* II, part I, 280–357; and a shorter survey in LAVISSE and RAMBAUD, *Histoire générale,* I, ch. VII. A very satisfactory survey of the times of Charlemagne from the standpoint of Italy and the Byzantine empire is in HODGKIN, *Italy and her invaders,* VIII (see also VII, chs. XIII–XIV); a similar account, but shorter, is VILLARI, *The barbarian invasions of Italy,* II, book IV. GREGOROVIUS, *Rome in the middle ages,* II, 462–512, III, 1–21, is devoted to this period. GIBBON, *Decline and fall,* describes the reign of Charlemagne in ch. XLIX. A book which views the period from the standpoint of the church is C. L. WELLS, *The age of Charlemagne,* New York, 1898 (Ten epochs of church history).

Revival of the empire. BRYCE, *Holy Roman empire,* chs. IV, V. FISHER, *Mediaeval empire,* I, ch. I, "The survival of the imperial idea."

Biographies of Charlemagne. T. HODGKIN, *Charles the Great,* London, 1897 (Foreign statesmen); and H. W. C. DAVIS, *Charlemagne (Charles the Great): the hero of two nations,* London and New York, 1899 (Heroes of the nations) are both good. J. I. MOMBERT, *A history of Charles the Great,* New York, 1888, can still be recommended. F. KAMPERS, *Karl der Grosse,* Mainz, 1910, is a popular sketch in German with excellent pictures.

Original sources. The very best introduction to the study of Charlemagne is the interesting biography written by his friend EINHARD (sometimes spelled EGINHARD), and conveniently translated by S. E. TURNER, *Life of Charlemagne by Eginhard,* New York, 1880; and also by A. J. GRANT, *Early lives of Charlemagne,* London, 1907. DUNCALF and KREY, *Parallel source problems,* 3–26, translated many contemporary accounts of the coronation of Charlemagne in 800. See also *Translations and reprints,* VI, no 5, "Laws of Charles the Great," and III, no. 2, for the capitulary "De villis." All the source books listed above, nos. **385–392,** give considerable space to the time of Charlemagne.

Maps. SHEPHERD, *Atlas,* 54, 55; and especially, LONGNON, *Atlas historique de la France,* plates V, and VII–X.

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General books. A very large number of general books touch upon the history of Charlemagne more or less, chief among them are those on France, Belgium, the Netherlands, Germany and Italy, nos. **508–621** above. See also those on the church, nos. **394–498** above, and especially those on the medieval empire in the west, nos. **499–507** above.

General surveys. E. MÜHLBACHER, *Deutsche Geschichte unter den Karolingern*, Stuttgart, 1896. S. ABEL and B. v. SIMSON, *Jahrbücher* des *fränkischen Reichs unter Karl dem Grossen*, vol. I, 2nd edition, Leipzig, 1888, vol. II, Leipzig, 1883, part of no. **570** above. G. RICHTER and H. KOHL, *Annalen des fränkischen Reichs im Zeitalter der Karolinger*, 2 vols., Halle, 1885–1887, part of no. **571** above. F. DAHN, *Die Könige der Germanen*, vol. VIII. W. STUBBS, *Germany in the early middle ages* 476–1250, chs. II–III.

The Empire of Charlemagne. A. KLEINCLAUSZ, *L'empire carolingien: ses origines et ses transformations*, Paris, 1902. W. OHR, *Der Karolingische Gottesstaat in Theorie und Praxis*, Leipzig, 1902. W. OHR, *Die Kaiserkrönung Karls des Grossen*, Tübingen, 1904. E. LAVISSE, "La fondation du Saint-Empire," in *Revue de deux mondes*, series 3, LXXXVII (1888), 357–392.

Charlemagne's relations with the church and the papacy. H. LILIENFEIN, *Die Anschauungen von Staat und Kirche im Reich der Karolinger*, Heidelberg, 1902 (Heidelberger Abhandlungen, 1). J. DE LA SERVIÈRE, *Charlemagne et l'église*, Paris, 1904. J. A. KETTERER, *Karl der Grosse und die Kirche*, Munich and Berlin, 1898. B. MALFATTI, *Imperatori e papi ai tempi della signoria dei Franchi in Italia*, vols. I and II, Milan, 1876. L. HALPHEN, *Etude sur l'administration de Rome au moyen âge (757–1252)*, Paris, 1907. L. M. HARTMANN, *Geschichte Italiens im Mittelalter*, vols. II–III. R. BAXMANN, *Die Politik der Päpste von Gregor I bis auf Gregor VII.* See also the bibliography of the previous outline under "Relations between the church and state to the time of Charlemagne."

Donations to the papacy. The "Roman Question." Beginnings of the Papal States. Much has been written on this subject. For comprehensive bibliographies see *Cambridge medieval history*, II, 805–806, and DAHLMANN-WAITZ, *Quellenkunde*, no. 4372. The following will serve as an introduction: L. DUCHESNE, *Les premiers temps de l'état pontifical*, Paris, 1898, 2nd edition, 1904, translated, *The beginnings of the temporal sovereignty of the popes, 754–1073*, London, 1908. A. CRIVELLUCCI, *Le origini dello stato della chiesa: storia documentata*, Pisa, 1909. G. SCHNÜRER, *Die Entstehung des*

Kirchenstaates, Cologne, 1894. W. GUNDLACH, *Die Entstehung des Kirchenstaates und der kuriale Begriff der "respublica Romanorum,"* Breslau, 1899 (Heft 59 of Gierke's Untersuchungen). P. PINTON, *Le donazioni barbariche ai papi*, Rome, 1890. H. C. LEA, "Rise of the temporal power," in his *Studies in church history*. J. HALLER, "Die Karolinger und das Papsttum," in *Historische Zeitschrift*, CVIII (1911), 38–76.

Relations with the Eastern Empire. J. B. BURY, *Later Roman empire*, 395–800, especially II, book VI, ch. XI, "The popes, the Lombards, and the Franks"; and in his, *A history of the eastern Roman empire* (802–867), ch. X, "Relations with the western empire." L. BRÉHIER, *La querelle des images*, Paris, 1904 (Science et religion). A. GASQUET, *Etudes byzantines: l'empire byzantin et la monarchie franque*, Paris, 1888. O. HARNACK, *Das karolingische und das byzantinische Reich in ihren politischen Beziehungen*, Göttingen, 1880.

Charlemagne. B. HAURÉAU, *Charlemagne et sa cour, 742–814*, Paris, 1888. H. MARTIN, *Charlemagne et l'empire carlovingien*, Paris, 1893. H. BROSIEN, *Karl der Grosse*, Leipzig, 1885. A. VÉTAULT, *Charlemagne*, with an introduction by LÉON GAUTIER, 3rd edition, Tours, 1888, 4th edition, 1908. P. MACHERL, *Karl der Grosse: ein Lebensbild*, Graz, 1912. P. CLEMEN, *Die Portraitdarstellungen Karls des Grossen*, part I, Aachen, 1889. C. PFISTER, *Le personage et l'oeuvre de Charlemagne*, Metz, 1914. A. HUYSKENS, *Karl der Grosse und seine Lieblingspfalz Aachen*, Aachen, 1914.

Administration. N. D. FUSTEL DE COULANGES, *Les transformations de la royauté pendant l'époque carolingienne*, Paris, 1892, 3rd edition, 1914 (this is vol. II of his "*Histoire*"). G. WAITZ, *Deutsche Verfassungsgeschichte*, vols. III–IV. E. SEYFARTH, *Fränkische Reichsversammlungen unter Karl d. Grossen und Ludwig d. Frommen*, Leipzig, 1910. G. SEELIGER, *Die Kapitularien der Karolinger*, Munich, 1893. H. BRUNNER, *Die Entstehung der Schwurgerichte*, Berlin, 1872, proves the Frankish origin of the jury. T. QUOIDBACH, *Esquisse du régime politique de la nation Franque sous Charlemagne*, Louvain, 1914 (extract from l'Annuaire de l'Université catholique de Louvain, 1914). G. BAIST, "Zur Interpretation der Brevium exempla und des Capitulare de villis," in *Vierteljahrschrift für Sozial- und Wirtschaftsgeschichte*, XII (1914). See also the general constitutional histories of France, nos. 528–536 above, and of Germany, nos. 578–586 above.

Economic conditions. A. DOPSCH, *Die Wirtschaftsentwickelung der Karolingerzeit, vornehmlich in Deutschland*, vols. I and II, Weimar, 1912–1913. This is supplemented by P. SANDER, *Über die Wirt-*

schaftsentwicklung der Karolingerzeit, in SCHMOLLERS *Jahrbuch für Gesetzgebung*, XXXVII (1913), 1. S. LOISEL, *Essai sur la législation économique des Carolingiens d'après les capitulaires*, Caen, 1904 (dissertation). K. T. v. INAMA-STERNEGG, *Deutsche Wirtschaftsgeschichte*, I, *Bis zum Schluss der Karolingerperiode*, 2nd edition, Leipzig, 1909. C. BARRIÈRE-FLAVY, *Les arts industriels des peuples barbares de la Gaule du VI^e^ au VIII^e^ siècle*, 3 vols., Paris, 1901.

Legend of Charlemagne. A. KLEINCLAUSZ, *L'empire carolingien*, 491ff. T. BULFINCH, *Mythology . . legends of Charlemagne*, revised and enlarged edition, New York, 1913. A. J. CHURCH, *Stories of Charlemagne and the twelve peers of France, from the old romances*, New York, 1902. The *Song of Roland* is translated by O'HAGEN, 2nd edition, London, 1883; also by ISABEL BUTLER, Boston, 1904. G. RAUSCHEN, *Die Legende Karls des Grossen im 11 und 12 Jahrhundert*, Leipzig, 1890. E. MÜNTZ, *La légende de Charlemagne dans l'art du moyen-âge*, Paris, 1885 (reprint from *Romania*, XIV (1885), 321–342). JESSE WESTON, *The romance cycle of Charlemagne and his peers*, 2nd edition, London, 1905.

Carolingian learning and art. See outline VIII of part III below.

Original sources. Almost everything of prime importance is now edited in the *Monumenta Germaniae historica*, no. **978** above; see also BOUQUET, no. **967** above. The archive material for the whole Carolingian period is now available in the perfected edition of *Die Regesten des Kaiserreichs unter den Karolingern, 751–918*, edited by E. MÜHLBACHER, 2nd edition, completed by J. LECHNER, Innsbruck, 1908, which is a recast of part I of BÖHMER, *Regesta imperii*, no. **985** above. A convenient source book for the origin of the papal states is, *Die Quellen zur Geschichte der Entstehung des Kirchenstaates*, edited by J. HALLER, Leipzig and Berlin, 1907. The Latin text of the *Life of Charlemagne* by EINHARD has been edited recently by H. W. GARROD and R. B. MOWAT, with introduction and notes, Oxford University Press, 1915; but the 6th edition of the *Vita Karoli magni* of EINHARD in the *Monumenta Germaniae historica*, edited by O. HOLDER-EGGER, and published separately, Hanover and Leipzig, 1911, part of no. **979** above, is still the standard text. See G. MONOD, *Etudes critiques sur les sources de l'histoire carolingienne*, Paris, 1898, vol. CXIX of no. **888** above; G. MASSON, *Early chronicles of Europe: France;* L. HALPHEN, "Etudes critiques sur l'histoire de Charlemagne: I, La composition des Annales royales," in *Revue historique*, CXXIV (1917), 52–64; and F. KURZE, *Die karolingischen Annalen bis zum Tode Einhards*, Berlin, 1913 (Programm).

Bibliographies. The best general bibliography is DAHLMANN-WAITZ, *Quellenkunde*, 289–324. For the relations with the church see especially the *Cambridge medieval history*, II, 814–817 (see also 801–809, 813, for general bibliographies). The bibliographies in the footnotes of LAVISSE, *Histoire de France*, II, part I are of great value. The sources are best described in MOLINIER, *Les sources de l'histoire de France*, I, 181–227. Almost all the general bibliographies for France, Germany, and Italy, nos. 21–41 above, and those for the church, nos. 49–55 above, are useful.

IX. FOES OF WESTERN CHRISTENDOM, FROM THE EIGHTH TO THE ELEVENTH CENTURY. FROM THE SOUTH. MOHAMMEDANS

A. OUTLINE

1. Recent progress made in the historical study of Mohammedanism. Contrast with the interesting chapters on the subject in GIBBON, *Decline and fall of the Roman empire*. In this outline no attempt is made to treat in detail the rise and spread of Mohammedanism in the east. The subject is treated from the standpoint of the Latin west.

2. The rise and spread of Mohammedanism in Arabia. The physical and political geography of the peninsula before 600 A.D. The civilization, and especially the religion, of the Arabs before that date. The Kaaba in Mecca. Mohammed (often also spelled Mahomet or Muhammad), 570–632. The Emigration (Hegira) in 622 from Mecca to Medina, which is the beginning of the Mohammedan era. Military exploits of Mohammed. The fall of Mecca in 630. The *Koran*.

3. Meaning of the terms: Moslems (or Muslims), Sabians, Islam, Moors, Saracens.

4. The spread of Mohammedanism in the east after the death of the prophet in 632. The successors of Mohammed, soon called Caliphs (representatives of the prophet), Abu Bekr, 632–634; Omar, 634–644; Othman, 644–655; Ali, 655–661. Conquest of Arabia, the Ridda war. Conquest of Syria, fall of Damascus in 634, the terrible defeat of the Byzantines on the Yarmuk in 636, fall of Jersalem in 638. Conquest of Persia by 652. Conquest of Egypt, evacuation of Alexandria, 642.

5. Attacks upon Constantinople. Mohammedans took Chalcedon in 668 and from thence threatened the capital. Sea-fights, ca. 674–680. Great seige of Constantinople, 716–717.

6. Later history of Mohammedanism in the east. Divisions between Sunnites and Shiites. Ommiads with capital at Damascus in 661–750. Abbassides with capital at Bagdad, 750–1258. Ultimate division into three caliphates, with capitals at Bagdad, Cairo, and Cordova.

7. Conquest of northern Africa west of Egypt. Occupation of Barka, in the Pentapolis, in 642. The importance of the conversion of the Berbers to Mohammedanism. Weak hold of the Byzantine government in northern Africa. Foundation of Kairawan in 670. Conquest of Carthage in 697. Supremacy of the Arabian fleet in the Mediterranean. Disappearance of Latin civilization in northern Africa about 700.

8. Conquest of Spain. Weakness of the Visigothic state in Spain. Legend of the overtures made to the Mohammedans by count Julian (Urban) to avenge himself on the last Visigothic king, Roderic. Landing of Tarik near Gibraltar (= Gebel Tarik, the Mount Tarik), in 711. Easy conquest of Spain. Fall of Cordova and Toledo. Jealousy of his superior, Musa, who came over and subdued Seville.

9. Invasion of Gaul. Hurr crossed the Pyrenees in 717 or 718. Narbonne occupied in 720. Defense of Toulouse by Duke Eudo of Aquitaine. Internal dissensions among the Mohammedans due largely to quarrels between Arabs and Berbers. Their defeat by Charles Martel in the battle of Tours or Poitiers in 732. In 759 they gave up Narbonne to Pepin and disappeared behind the Pyrenees. Charlemagne's invasion of northern Spain and the establishment of the Spanish march.

10. Occupation of Sicily. Sporadic attacks on the Byzantines in Sicily as early as 664. Derivation of the word corsair from *κούρσον*, a summer campaign. Renewed raids upon many islands of the Mediterranean towards the end of the reign of Charlemagne. Crete occupied in 826. Conquest of Sicily by the Aghlabids from Kairawan, 827–902. (For the reconquest of Sicily by the Normans in 1061, see outline XX below.)

11. Invasion of Italy. Appeal of duke Andrea of Naples to the Saracens in Sicily against Duke Sikard of Benevento in 837. Saracens conquered Bari about 841. Attack on Rome in 846. Naval battle off Ostia in 849. Ineffective assistance given by the Carolingians. Co-operation with the Byzantines. Pillage and destruction of Monte Cassino. Final expulsion of the Saracens from Italy about 915. The "Saracen towers" near Naples.

12. Peaceful relations between Moslems and Christians in the west. Mohammedan civilization in the ninth and tenth centuries

especially in Spain and Sicily. Lasting effects on the culture of western Christendom. (See outline X of part III below.)

13. In the eleventh century Latin Christians took the offensive against the Moslems from Spain to Palestine.

B. SPECIAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR READING

General surveys. The best general survey is now in the *Cambridge medieval history*, II, chs. X–XII. Another good account is in LAVISSE and RAMBAUD, *Histoire générale*, I, chs. IX, XV. BÉMONT and MONOD, *Medieval Europe*, chs. X–XI, is a more elementary sketch. GIBBON, *Decline and fall*, chs. L–LI, although out of date in many respects, will always remain interesting reading. A collection of very stimulating lectures has just come from the press, C. S. HURGRONJE, *Mohammedanism: lectures on its origin, its religious and political growth, and its present state*, New York and London, 1916. See also the articles "Mahomet" (by Margoliouth), "Mahommedan Institutions," "Mahommedan Law," "Mahommedan Religion," "Caliphate," and "Berbers," in the *Encyclopaedia Britannica*.

Mohammed. The best biography is W. MUIR, *The Life of Mohammed from original sources*, London, 1861, 3rd edition, 1894, a new and revised edition by T. H. WEIR, Edinburgh, 1912. D. S. MARGOLIOUTH, *Mohammed and the rise of Islam*, New York and London, 1905 (Heroes of the nations series) is very good. G. M. DRAYCOTT, *Mahomet: founder of Islam*, New York, 1916. H. GRIMME, *Mohammed: die weltgeschichtliche Bedeutung Arabiens*, Mainz, 1904 (Weltgeschichte in Charakterbildern), is particularly valuable for its pictures.

Moors in Spain. U. R. BURKE, *History of Spain*, I, chs. XII, XIV, XVI. R. ALTAMIRA, *Historia de España* (1913 edition), I, 224–300. L. POOLE, *Moors in Spain*, New York, 1903 (Story of the nations). See the few pages from DOZY on "Moslem civilization in Spain," in MUNRO and SELLERY, *Medieval civilization*, 224–239. HELMOLT, *History of the world*, IV, 494–510. HUME, *The Spanish people*, 71–111.

Saracens and the Byzantine empire. J. B. BURY, *Later Roman empire*, II, 258–273, 401–407; and his, *A history of the eastern Roman empire (802–867)*, ch. VIII, "The Saracen wars."

Saracens in Sicily, Italy, and Crete. J. B. BURY, *A history of eastern Roman empire (802–867)*, ch. IX, "The Saracen conquests of Crete and Sicily." R. LANCIANI, *Destruction of ancient Rome*, New York, 1899, ch. XI. GREGOROVIUS, *History of the city of Rome*, III, 65–68, 87–100, 178–187, 259–270. E. W. BROOKS, "The Arab occupation of Crete," *English historical review*, XXVIII (1913), 431–443.

Original sources. The best translations of the *Koran* are by E. H. PALMER, *Koran*, 2 vols., Oxford, 1880 (Müller's Sacred books of the east, vols. VI, IX); *El-kor'ân: or Korân, translated from the Arabic, the suras arranged in chronological order*, with notes and index, by J. M. RODWELL, 2nd edition, London, 1876 (also reprinted in Everyman's library, New York, 1909); *Koran, commonly called the Alcoran of Mohammed*, translated by G. SALE, 2 vols., London, 1825, latest edition by E. M. WHERRY, *A comprehensive commentary on the Qurân: comprising Sale's translation and preliminary discourse*, with additional notes and emendations, 4 vols., London, 1896 (Trübner's oriental series). Extracts from the *Koran* have been edited with a very good introduction by S. L. POOLE, under the title, *The speeches and table-talk of Mohammed*, New York, 1905, which is the best introduction to the study of the *Koran*. See also *Selections from the Kúran*, edited by E. W. LANE, London, 1879.

Maps. SHEPHERD, *Atlas*, 53, 54–55, 58–59, 64, 66–67. *Cambridge medieval history*, II, maps 23, 24.

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General books. For an encyclopaedia and a dictionary of Islam see no. **120** above. Many of the general books on Spain and Portugal, nos. **622–642** above, Italy, nos. **599–621** above, and the Byzantine empire, nos. **643–679** above, give much space to the Mohammedans. See also the general histories of the Mediterranean, nos. **360–361** above.

General accounts. L. C. CAETANI, *Annali dell' Islam*, vols. I–VII, Milan, 1905–1914 (extends thus far through 32 A.H., or to August, 653 A.D.); C. HUART, *Histoire des Arabes*, 2 vols., Paris, 1912–1913; and A. MÜLLER, *Der Islam im Morgen- und Abendland*, 2 vols., Berlin, 1885–87 (part of no. **313** above), are standard and fundamental works. W. MUIR, *The Caliphate: its rise, decline and fall, from original sources*, London, 1883, a new and revised edition by T. H. WEIR, Edinburgh, 1915 (first edition bore the title, *Annals of the early Caliphate*). T. W. ARNOLD, *The preaching of Islam: a history of the propagation of the Muslim faith*, Westminister, 1896, 2nd edition, revised and enlarged, London, 1913. J. WELLHAUSEN, *Das arabische Reich und sein Sturz*, Berlin, 1902. I. GOLDZIHER, *Muhammedanische Studien*, 2 vols., Halle, 1889–90, translated from the German by KATE E. CHAMBERS, *Aspects of Islam*, Yale University Press, 1915. I. GOLDZIHER, *Vorlesungen über den Islam*, Heidelberg, 1910, translated by K. C. SEELYE, with an introduction by M. JASTROW, *Mohammed and Islam*, Yale University Press, 1916. C. H. BECKER, *Christentum und Islam*, Tübingen, 1907, translated by H. J. CHAYTOR,

Christianity and Islam, New York, 1909 (Harper's library of living thought). M. HARTMANN, *Fünf Vorträge über den Islam*, Leipzig, 1912. AMEER ALI SYED, *A short history of the Saracens*, London, 1899, reprinted with corrections, 1900. A. GILMAN, *The Saracens from the earliest times to the fall of Bagdad*, New York, 1886 (The story of the nations). D. S. MARGOLIOUTH, *Mohammedanism*, London, [1911] (Home university library). R. DOZY, *Essai sur l'histoire de l'Islamisme*, translated from the Dutch by V. CHAUVIN, Leyden and Paris, 1879. S. L. POOLE, *The Mohammedan dynasties*, Westminister, 1894. G. WEIL, *Geschichte der Chalifen*, 5 vols., Mannheim, 1846–1862. E. A. FREEMAN, *The history and conquests of the Saracens: six lectures*, London, 1856, 3rd edition, 1876. C. GÜTERBOCK, *Der Islam im Lichte der byzantinischen Polemik*, Berlin, 1912. E. MEYER, *Ursprung und Geschichte der Mormonen, mit Exkursen über die Anfänge des Islams und des Christentums*, Halle, 1912.

Mohammed. L. CAETANI, *Studi di storia orientale*, vol. III, *La biografia di Maometto profeta ed uomo di stato, Il principio del Califfato, La conquista d'Arabia*, Milan, 1914. R. BOSWORTH SMITH, *Mohammed and Mohammedanism*, 3rd edition, London, 1889. P. DE LACY JOHNSTONE, *Muhammad and his power*, Edinburgh, 1901, (The world's epoch-makers, 7). AMEER ALI SYED, *The spirit of Islam: or the life and teachings of Mohammed*, Calcutta, 1902. H. RECKENDORF, *Mohammed und die Seinen*, Leipzig, 1907 (Wissenschaft und Bildung). H. GRIMME, *Mohammed*, 2 vols., Münster, 1892–1895. A. SPRENGER, *Das Leben und die Lehre des Mohammad: nach bisher grösstentheils unbenutzten Quellen*, 2nd edition, 3 vols., Berlin, 1869. T. NÖLDEKE, *Das Leben Muhammed's: nach den Quellen populär dargestellt*, Hannover, 1863. A. GEIGER, *Was hat Mohammed aus dem Judentum aufgenommen?* 2nd edition, Leipzig, 1902.

Koran. D. S. MARGOLIOUTH, *The early development of Mohammedanism*, London, 1914 (Hibbert lectures). T. NÖLDEKE, *Geschichte der Qorâns*, Göttingen, 1860, new edition, revised by F. SCHWALLY, vol. I, Leipzig, 1909. E. SELL, *The historical development of the Qurán*, London, 1905. W. MUIR, *The Coran: its composition and teaching*, London, 1878. I. SCHAPIRO, *Die haggadischen Elemente im erzählenden Teil des Korans*, Leipzig, 1907.

Conquest of north Africa. M. CAUDEL, *Les premiers invasions arabes dans l'Afrique du Nord*, Paris, 1900. E. MERCIER, *Histoire de l'Afrique septentrionale (Berbérie) depuis les temps les plus reculés jusqu'à la conquête française*, 3 vols., Paris, 1888–1890. S. L. POOLE, *The history of Egypt in the middle ages*, London, 1901. E. AMÉLINEAU, "La conquête de l'Egypte par les Arabes, I," in *Revue historique*, CXIX (1915), 273–310. H. FOURNEL, *Les Berbers: étude*

sur la conquête de l'Afrique par les Arabes, 2 vols., Paris, 1875–1881. C. H. BECKER, *Beiträge zur Geschichte Ägyptens unter dem Islam*, 2 parts, Strasburg, 1902–1903.

Moors in Spain and the Balearic islands. R. P. A. DOZY, *Histoire des Musulmans d'Espagne*, 4 vols., Leyden, 1861, translated by F. G. STOKES, with a biographical introduction and additional notes, *Spanish Islam: a history of the Moslems in Spain*, London, 1913. S. P. SCOTT, *History of the Moorish empire in Europe*, 3 vols., Philadelphia, 1904. F. CODERA, *Estudios críticos de historia árabe española*, Saragossa, 1903. J. A. CONDÉ, *History of the dominion of the Arabs in Spain*, translated from the Spanish, 3 vols., London, 1854. H. COPPÉE, *History of the conquest of Spain by the Arab Moors*, 2 vols., Boston, 1881. L. SCHWENKOW, *Die lateinisch geschriebenen Quellen zur Geschichte der Eroberung Spaniens durch die Araber*, Göttingen, 1894. A. FERNÁNDEZ GUERRA, *Caida y ruina del imperio visigótico-español*, Madrid, 1883. E. SAAVEDRA, *Estudio sobre la invasión de los árabes en España*, Madrid, 1892. CAMPANER, *Reseña histórico-crítica de la dominación de los Arabes y de los Moros en las islas Baleares* [to 1286], Madrid, 1888.

Mohammedan invasion of Gaul. G. LOKYS, *Die Kämpfe der Araber mit den Karolingern bis zum Tode Ludwigs II*, Heidelberg, 1906 (Heidelberger Abhandlungen zur mittleren und neueren Geschichte). M. H. ZOTENBERG, *Invasions des Visigoths et des Arabes en France*, Toulouse, 1876, is an extract from no. 540 above. M. REINAUD, *Invasions des Sarrazins en France*, Paris, 1836.

Saracens in Italy and Sicily. M. AMARI, *Storia dei Musulmani di Sicilia*, 4 vols., Florence, 1854–68. J. GAY, *L'Italie méridionale et l'empire byzantin depuis l'avénement de Basile I jusqu'à la prise de Bari par les Normands*, Paris, 1904. G. B. MOSCATO, *Cronaca dei musulmani in Calabria*, San Lucido, 1902. C. WAERN, *Mediaeval Sicily*, New York, 1911, chs. I–II.

Arabian commerce in the north of Europe. G. JACOB, *Der nordisch-baltische Handel der Araber im Mittelalter*, Leipzig, 1887; and his *Welche Handelsartikel bezogen die Araber des Mittelalters aus den nordisch-baltischen Ländern?* 2nd edition, Berlin, 1891. E. BABELON, *Du commerce des Arabes dans le nord de l'Europe avant les croisades*, Paris, 1882.

Periodical on Islam. *Der Islam: Zeitschrift für Geschichte und Kultur des islamischen Orients*, edited by C. H. BECKER, Strasburg, 1910ff.

Original sources. EL-BOKHÂRI, (died 870 A.D.), *Les traditions islamiques*, translated from the Arabic with notes and an index by O. HOUDAS and W. MARCAIS, vols. I–III, Paris, 1903–1908. *The*

origins of the Islamic state: being a translation from the Arabic accompanied with annotations, geographic and historical notes of the *Kitâb Futûh al-Buldân* of AL-IMÂM ABU-L 'ABBÂS AHMÂD IBN JÂBIR AL-BALÂDHURI, vol. I, by P. K. HITTI, New York, 1916 (Studies in history, economics, and public law, Columbia University, vol. LXVIII, no. 163). *Traités de paix et de commerce et documents divers contenant les relations des chrétiens avec les Arabs d'Afrique septentrionale au moyen âge,* edited by DE MAS-LATRIE, Paris, 1866, supplement, 1872. *Biblioteca Arabo-Sicula, versione italiana,* 2 vols. and a supplement, edited by M. AMARI, Turin and Rome, 1880–1889. J. WELLHAUSEN, *Muhammed in Medina:* das ist Vakidī's Kitāb al Maghāzī in verkürzter Wiedergabe, Berlin, 1882. *Bibliotheca arabico-hispana,* edited by F. CODERA Y ZAIDIN, 10 vols., Madrid, 1882–1895.

Bibliographies. *Cambridge medieval history,* II, 758–765, and the special bibliographies indicated there. See also no. 42 above.

X. FOES OF WESTERN CHRISTENDOM, FROM THE EIGHTH TO THE ELEVENTH CENTURY. FROM THE NORTH. NORTHMEN

A. OUTLINE

1. The fury of the Northmen. "From the fury of the Northmen, good Lord, deliver us" *(a furore Normannorum libera nos).* This phrase, so common in litanies of the middle ages, was not in use in Carolingian times, but the following prayer, dating ca. 900, is an interesting prototype: "*Summa pia gratia nostra conservando corpora et custodita, de gente fera Normannica nos libera, quae nostra vastat, deus, regna,* etc." (See L. DELISLE, *Littérature latine et histoire du moyen âge,* p. 17).

2. The civilization of the Teutonic people of the north, Danes, Norsegians, and Swedes. The *scalds.* The *sagas.* The Gokstad and Oseberg ships. The *vikings* (= warriors).

3. Causes and character of their migrations. Often women and children accompanied the men on their ships. The chief raids of the Northmen occurred between 800 and 1000.

4. The Northmen in the British and northern islands. Mentioned in the *Anglo-Saxon chronicle* under the year 787. Monastery of Lindisfarne raided in 793. In 795 they were in Ireland. Iona was raided about 800. Faroe Islands, Orkneys, Shetland Islands and Hebrides were occupied in the time of Charlemagne. Towards the middle of the ninth century the Northmen were numerous in England. King Alfred (871–901) and the Danes. The Danelaw.

Iceland occupied about 875. Greenland touched upon about 900 and North America about 1000.

5. Raids on the continent in the west and in the Mediterranean. In 810, in Charlemagne's time, king Godfred of Denmark plundered the coast of Frisia. About the time of the death of Charlemagne (814) Vikings visited the mouth of the Loire and in 843 made a settlement on the island of Noirmoutier and also occupied the Ile de Rhé near the mouth of the Charente. Antwerp was destroyed about 836, and the island of Walcheren was occupied in 837. In 841 they appeared on the Seine and destroyed Rouen. Nantes was plundered in 843. They were on the Garonne in 844, when Toulouse was attacked. In 845 they appeared before Paris and in the same year destroyed Hamburg. In 856 Paris was plundered. The next year they sailed down to Spain, appeared before Lisbon, sacked Cadiz and ascended the Guadalquivir to Seville. Under Hasting a band sailed into the Mediterranean to sack Rome in 859 but they got no further than Luna. Some sailed up the Rhone river and they occupied the island of Camargue. Charles the Bold treated with Hasting and his followers, some of whom became Christians and accepted feudal holdings. Orleans was reached in 865. Northmen were defeated at Saulcourt in 881 but they plundered Aachen, Cologne, etc. Paris was beseiged 885. Charles the Fat paid tribute and allowed the raiders to plunder Burgundy. Decisive defeat of the Northmen by the German king Arnulf near Louvain in 891.

6. Expeditions to the East. Rurik and his followers, the Varangians, came from Sweden and settled at Novgorod about 862. Varangians in the service of the emperor in Constantinople.

7. The important settlement of Northmen in northern France, in and about Rouen, about 911. Charles III, the Simple, offered Normandy as a fief to Rollo or Rolf and gave him his daughter Gisela in marriage. Rolf was baptized soon after.

8. Conversion of Northmen to Christianity in the tenth century and the political reorganization of the North. The beginnings of modern Norway and Sweden.

9. The sudden and short-lived burst of Danish imperialism under Canute the Great, 1014–1035.

10. The important part the Normans were destined to play in medieval history (see outline XX below).

B. Special Recommendations for Reading

Introductory surveys. C. H. Haskins, *The Normans in European history*, Boston and New York, 1915, ch. II, "The coming of the

Northmen." LAVISSE and RAMBAUD, *Histoire générale*, II, ch. XIII. OMAN, *The dark ages* (see "vikings" in the index).

Longer general accounts. The best general survey is now in GJERSET, *History of the Norwegian people*, I, especially pp. 45–280. C. F. KEARY, *The Vikings in western Christendom* A.D. *789 to* A.D. *888*, London, 1891. A. MAWER, *The Vikings*, Cambridge university Press, 1913 (Cambridge manuals), is a recent popular sketch. BEAZLEY, *Dawn of modern geography*, II, 17–111.

Danes in England. C. OMAN, *England before the Norman conquest*, London, 1910, 382–491. C. PLUMMER, *The life and times of Alfred the Great*, Oxford, 1902, lecture IV. For Canute and Danish imperialism the best book is L. M. LARSON, *Canute the Great, 995(circ.)—1035, and the rise of Danish imperialism during the Viking age*, New York, 1912 (Heroes of the nations).

Northmen in Russia. RAMBAUD, *History of Russia*, ch. IV. KLUCHEVSKY, *A history of Russia*, I, ch. V.

Original sources. The *sagas* are the best introduction to a study of life in the Viking age. The following are especially interesting and easily accessible in English: *Heimskringla of Snorro Sturleson*, translated by S. LAING, London, Norroena Society, 1906; *The story of Burnt Njal*, translated by G. W. DASENT, 2 vols., Edinburgh, 1861, and London and New York, Norroena Society, 1906 (now also in Everyman's library, New York, 1900); *Volsunga Saga*, translated by E. MAGNUSSON and W. M. MORRIS, London, Norroena Society, 1906. For interesting extracts concerning the raids of Northmen see OGG, *Source book*, 157–173. See A. BUGGE, "The origin and credibility of the Icelandic saga," in *American historical review*, XIV (1908–1909), 249–261.

Maps. The best map for the raids and settlements of the Northmen is in MEYERS *Historischer Handatlas*, 25. See also SHEPHERD, *Atlas*, 46–47, 57, 58–59, 64. VOGEL, *Die Normannen*, below, has an excellent map showing the territory overrun by Northmen in France, Germany, the Netherlands, and northern Spain.

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General books. For general works on the Scandinavian countries see nos. **717–728** above. Due to the wide range of the viking raids, many of the general works of all the countries of Europe, nos. **508–716** above, touch upon their history.

General accounts. J. STEENSTRUP, *Normannerne*, 4 vols., Copenhagen, 1876–82, vol. I, translated by E. de BEAUREPAIRE, *Etudes préliminaires pour servir à l'histoire de Normands et de leur invasions, Caen*, 1880. SARAH O. JEWETT, *The story of the Normans told*

chiefly in relation to their conquest of England, London and New York, 1886 (Story of the nations), chs. I and II. A. H. JOHNSON, *The Normans in Europe*, London, 1877, chs. I–III (part of no. 335 above). W. ROOS, "The Swedish part in the viking expeditions," *English historical review*, VII (1892), 209–223. G. B. DEPPING, *Histoire des expéditions maritimes des Normands*, Paris, 1843. ELEANOR HULL, *The Northmen in Britain*, London, 1913. T. CARLYLE, *Early kings of Norway*, New York, 1875.

Civilization of the Northmen. P. B. DU CHAILLU, *Viking age: the early history, manners, and customs of the ancestors of the English-speaking nations*, 2 vols., New York, 1889. A. BUGGE, *Vikingerne*, 2 series, Copenhagen, 1904–06, translated from the Norwegian by H. HUNGERLAND, *Die Wikinger: Bilder aus der nordischen Vergangenheit*, Halle, 1906. O. MONTELIUS, *Kulturgeschichte Schwedens von den ältesten Zeiten bis zum elften Jahrhundert nach Christi*, Leipzig, 1906. S. MÜLLER, *Nordische Altertumskunde*, German edition by O. L. JIRICZEK, 2 vols., Strasburg, 1879–98. C. MÜLLER, *Altgermanische Meeresherrschaft*, Gotha, 1914, treats the period up to 1200. A. OLRIK, *Nordisches Geistesleben in heidnischer und frühchristlicher Zeit*, translated by W. RANISCH, Heidelberg, 1908. J. J. A. WORSAAE, *The pre-history of the north, based on contemporary memorials*, translated by M. F. MORLAND SIMPSON, London, 1886. F. NIEDNER, *Islands Kultur zur Wikingerzeit*, Jena, 1913, in *Thule: altnordische Dichtung und Prosa*, I, 1.

Northmen in France. W. VOGEL, *Die Normannen und das fränkische Reich bis zur Gründung der Normandie 799–911*, with a very important map, Heidelberg, 1906 (in Heidelberger Abhandlungen zur mittleren und neueren Geschichte, 14). This work of fundamental importance is supplemented by F. LOT, "La grande invasion normande, 856–862," in *Bibliothèque de l'école des chartes*, LXIX (1908), 5–62; and by the same author's *Études critiques sur l'abbaye de Saint-Wandrille*, Paris, 1913, ch. III. E. FREEMAN, "The early sieges of Paris," in his *Historical essays*, series I, 207–251. H. H. HOWORTH, "The early intercourse of the Danes and Franks," in *Royal historical society*, VI (1877), 147–182; VII (1878), 1–29. E. THUBERT, "Les Northmen en France," in *Revue d'histoire diplomatique*, XX (1906), 511–536. VAN DER LINDEN, "Les Normands à Louvain (884–892)," in *Revue historique*, CXXIV (1917), 64–81.

Vikings in Spain. A. K. FABRICIUS, *La première invasion des Normands dans l'Espagne musulmane en 814*, Lisbon, 1892; and his, *La connaissance de la peninsule espagnole par les hommes du Nord*, Lisbon, 1892. R. DOZY, *Recherches sur l'histoire et la littérature*

de l'Espagne pendant le moyen âge, 3rd edition, 2 vols., Paris, 1881, II, 252–332.

Eastward expeditions of Northmen. T. J. ARNE, *La Suède et l'orient: études archéologiques sur les relations de la Suède et l'orient pendent l'âge des Vikings,* Upsala, 1914ff. (in Lundell's Archives d'études orientales). V. THOMPSON, *The relations between ancient Russia and Scandinavia, and the origin of the Russian state,* Oxford, 1878.

Northmen in America. W. HOVGAARD, *The voyages of the Norsemen to America,* the American-Scandinavian Foundation, New York, 1914. F. NANSEN, *In northern mists: arctic explorations in early times,* translated by G. CHATER, 2 vols., London and New York, 1911 (bibliography, II, 384–396). W. H. BABCOCK, *Early Norse visits to North America,* Smithsonian Institution (no. 2138), 1913 (bibliography, pp. 179–189). A. SCHALCK DE LA FAVERIE, *Les Normands et la découverte de l'Amerique au X^e siècle,* Paris, 1912. J. FISCHER, *Die Entdeckungen der Normannen in America,* Freiburg, 1902, translated into English by H. SOULSBY, London, 1903. G. B. DE LAGRÈZE, *Les Normands dans les deux mondes,* Paris, 1890.

Original sources. The following collections contain translations of most of the important early literature relating to the Northmen: *Norroena, the history and romance of northern Europe: a library of supreme classics printed in complete form,* 15 vols., London Norroena Society, 1906; *Corpus poeticum boreale: the poetry of the old northern tongue from the earliest times to the thirteenth century,* classified and translated by G. VIGFUSSON and F. YORK POWELL, 2 vols., Oxford, 1883; *Origines Islandicae: a collection of the more important sagas and other native writings relating to the settlement and early history of Iceland,* edited and translated by G. VIGFUSSON and F. YORK POWELL, 2 vols., Oxford, 1905; *Saga book of the Viking society,* London, 1895ff. A convenient short introduction to the sagas is W. A. CRAIGIE, *The Icelandic sagas,* Cambridge University Press, 1913 (Cambridge manuals).

A very sumptuous work on the Oseberg burial ship, to consist of five volumes, is being published by the Norwegian government, *Osebergfundet,* edited by A. W. BROGGER and others, 1916ff. The ship, which was found in 1904 and dates from the ninth century, is now exhibited in a special building in Christiania; the objects found in it are on exhibition in the Historical Museum. The well-known Gokstad ship is described briefly by I. UNDSET, *A short guide for the use of visitors to the viking ship from Gokstad,* Christiania, 1889, 3rd edition, 1898.

The sources for the Norsemen in America may be found tran-

slated in the *Flateyjarbók: the Flatey book and recently discovered Vatican manuscripts concerning America as early as the tenth century, documents now published for the first time, which establish beyond controversy the claim that North America was settled by Norsemen five hundred years before the time of Columbus*, London, Norroena Society, 1906; and in the *Original narratives of early American history: the Northmen, Columbus and Cabot, 985–1503*, New York, 1906 (the voyages of the Northmen are edited by J. E. OLSON); as well as in vol. V of *Norroena* mentioned above.

Bibliographies. For the old Norse *Sagas*, see GROSS, no. 36 above, §35, and for modern books on the Northmen, especially in their relation to England, *ibid.*, §42. The notes in GJERSET, *History of the Norwegian people*, contain many bibliographical references. For the sources on the Northmen in France, see A. MOLINIER, *Les sources*, I, 264–271. J. STEFÁNSSON, *List of books belonging to the Viking club, society for northern research*, London [1907]. H. HERMANNSON, *Catalogue of the Icelandic collection bequeathed by Willard Fiske to the Cornell University library*, Ithaca, New York, 1914; and his *The Northmen in America (982–c.1500): a contribution to the bibliography of the subject*, Ithaca, 1909, in *Islandica: an annual relating to Iceland and the Fiske Icelandic collection in Cornell University library*, edited by G. W. HARRIS, 1908ff., vol. II, are vast mines of references to books on the North. See also the first part of P. RIANT'S library, 2641 items on Scandinavia, acquired by Yale University.

XI. FOES OF WESTERN CHRISTENDOM FROM THE EIGHTH TO THE ELEVENTH CENTURY. FROM THE EAST. SLAVS AND ASIATIC NOMADS

A. OUTLINE

1. The grand divisions of European peoples in the middle ages; Romanic, Teutonic, Slavic, and the eastern background formed by the Asiatic nomads.

2. The rôle of the Slavs in medieval history. They serve as a buffer between the Teutonic west and the Asiatic nomads. Lack of organization among the Slavs. Enslavement of the Slavs by Teutons and Asiatic nomads.

3. The civilization and extent of the Slavs about 700 A.D. Wends, Serbs, Slavs. Western Slavs: Polabians (Sorbs, Abodrites, Wilzians, Pommeranians), Czechs, Moravians, Slovaks; eastern and northern Slavs: Russians (White, Little, and Great Russians),

Slovenes (Bulgarians, Croats and Serbians). The Lithuanians (Letts and Prussians).

4. Relations of Merovingians and Carolingians with the Slavs. Samo, a Frank adventurer, became king of the Czechs of Bohemia, 623–668.

5. The evanescent empire of Moravia. Struggles of the Moravians with the Franks after Charlemagne. Svatopluk II acknowledged by Charles III, the Fat (881–887). The conversion of these Slavs. The eastern emperor Michel III (842–867) sent as apostles of the Slavs two brothers, born in Salonica, Constantine (later Cyrillus, died 869) and Methodius (died 885). Their relations with the pope in Rome.

6. Decline of the Slavs in the region between the Elbe and the Oder where the Polabians were practically wiped out by the Germans in the tenth and eleventh centuries.

7. Rise and decline of Poland. Boleslav the Valiant (992–1025) conquered far and wide but did not gain a permanent hold on the Baltic. Poland declined after his death. Close relations with the Latin church. The archbishopric of Gnesen founded about 1000A.D. Quasi-parliamentary government under Boleslav.

8. Bohemia. Amalgamation of the Czechs. Latin Christianity prevailed. Vratislav II was the first king (1086). Practically a vassal of the Emperor Henry IV.

9. The glorious era of Bulgarian history. The Bulgares, a Finnish tribe, organized the Slavs of old Moesia in the seventh century. Converted to Byzantine Christianity in the ninth century. Simeon (829–927), the first Czar of the Bulgarians. Preslav the capital. Golden era of literature. The Bogomiles (Manichaean heretics). Subjugation of Bulgarians by the eastern emperors, especially by Basil II, the "Slayer of the Bulgarians."

10. The beginnings of Russia. Rurik and his Swedes, the Varangians, settled around Novgorod about 962. Oleg, Rurik's successor, made Kiev his capital. Attacked Constantinople in 907. Sviotoslav (964–972) seriously threatened Constantinople, but was checked in 971 by John Zimisces. Vladimir (972–1015), the Clovis of Russia, was baptized about 990. A flood of Byzantine civilization came into Russia with eastern Christianity. Yaroslav the Great (1015–1054), the Charlemagne of Russia. Close relations of Russia with the west during this early period.

11. The Asiatic nomads. The peculiar geographic influences which shaped their destinies. Finns, Huns, Avars, (Bulgars), Khazars, Petchenegs, Cumans, Magyars, etc.

12. Avars occupied old Pannonia and Dacia when the Lombards

forsook that region. Their "rings." Charlemagne's campaigns against them 795–796. Shortly after his death they were dispersed as the Huns had been in the fifth century.

13. Hungarians or Magyars. About 900 they dispossessed the Moravians in modern Hungary. Their low state of civilization. Their dread invasions of Europe in the tenth centry, penetrating even into Provence and Lorraine. Crushed by Otto I in 955 in the battle of the Lechfeld. Stephen I (955–1038) was the founder of modern Hungary. Accepted Latin Christianity. The great archbishopric of Gran was established about 1000 A.D.

14. The state of eastern Europe just before the crusades.

B. Special Recommendations for Reading

General accounts. The best short survey is in LAVISSE and RAMBAUD, *Histoire générale*, I, ch. XIV. *Cambridge medieval history*, II, ch. XIV, is authoritative and important, but rather confusing. A fairly comprehensive account may be pieced together from J. B. BURY'S books, *History of the later Roman empire*, II, 11–24, 274–280, 331–338, 470–476; *A history of the eastern Roman empire*, chs. XI–XIII. The same is true of HELMOLT, *History of the world*, vol. V, 222–223, 227–242, 271–288, 326–338, 347–348, 353–355, 374–379, 425–461, 469–476. See also GIBBON, *Decline and fall*, ch. LV.

Nomads. The general character of nomadic life is well described in *Cambridge medieval history*, I, ch. XII; and by ELLEN C. SEMPLE, *Influences of geographic environment*, ch. XIV.

Histories of various countries of eastern Europe. Make a selection from the general books on eastern Europe, nos. **680–716** above.

Maps. *Cambridge medieval history*, I, map 3; II, maps 25, 26a, 26b. SHEPHERD, *Atlas*, 2–3, 46–47, 52–59. Use FREEMAN, *The historical geography of Europe*, especially pp. 113–117, 155–158, as a guide to these maps; and see also RIPLEY, *The races of Europe*, chs. XIII, XV.

C. Bibliography

General books. For books on eastern Europe see nos. **680–716, 588–596, 311–312** above; but for the contact of Slavs and nomads with western civilization a large number of general books on other European countries are also of value; see e.g., nos. **313–361, 499–598, 643–679, 717–727** above. For histories of Slavic literature see no. **814** above.

Early Slavic history in general. L. LEGER, *Le monde slave: études politiques et littéraires*, series 1 and 2, 2 vols., Paris, 1897–1902; and his *Etudes slaves;* his *Nouvelle études slaves: histoire et littérature*, Paris, 1880; and his *La mythologie slave*, Paris, 1901.

H. MERBACH, *Die Slawenkriege des deutschen Volkes*, Leipzig, 1914. W. OHNESORGE, *Ausbreitung und Ende der Slawen zwischen Nieder-Elbe und Oder*, Lübeck, 1911. A. MEITZEN, *Siedelung und Agrarwesen der West- und Ostgermanen, der Kelten, Römer, Finnen und Slaven*, 3 vols. and an atlas, Berlin, 1895. M. MURKO, *Geschichte der älteren südslawischen Literaturen*, Leipzig, 1908. A. LÉFÈVRE, *Germains et Slaves: origines et croyances*, Paris, 1903. W. R. S. RALSTON, *Early Russian history*, London, 1874. R. W. SETON-WATSON, *Racial problems in Hungary: a history of the Slovaks*, London, 1909. E. MISSALEK, "Die Forschung auf dem Gebiete der ältesten polnischen Geschichte," in *Historische Zeitschrift*, CXIII (1914), 62–69. E. ZHARSKI, *Die Slavenkriege zur Zeit Ottos III und dessen Pilgerfahrt nach Gnesen*, Lemberg, 1882 (Programm).

Samo. O. NEMECEK, *Das Reich des Slawenfürsten Samo*, Mährisch-Ostrau, 1906 (Programm).

Rumania. N. JORGA, *Les éléments originaux de l'ancienne civilisation Roumaine*, Jassy, 1911. E. FISCHER, *Die Herkunft der Rumänen*, Bamberg, 1904.

Conversion of Slavs to Christianity. Chief interest centers in the work of Constantine and Methodius. The following are special works on the subject: A. BRÜCKNER, *Die Wahrheit über die Slavenapostel*, Tübingen, 1913; F. SNOPEK, *Konstantinus-Cyrillus und Methodius: die Slavenapostel* (Operum academiae Valehradensis, II), Kremsier, 1911; L. K. GOETZ, *Geschichte der Slavenapostel Konstantinus (Kyrillus) und Methodius*, Gotha, 1897; and L. LEGER, *Cyrille et Méthode: étude historique sur la conversion des Slaves au chritianisme*, Paris, 1868 (see also A. NAEGLE, *Kirchengeschichte Böhmens*, under no. **461** above). L. K. GOETZ, *Staat und Kirche in Altrussland: Kiever Periode, 998–1240*, Berlin, 1908. L. K. GOETZ, *Das Kiever Höhlenkloster als Kulturzentrum des vormongolischen Russlands*, Passau, 1904. M. USPENSKI, *La Russie et Byzance au 10 siècle*, Odessa, 1888.

The home of the Asiatic nomads. E. HUNTINGTON, *The pulse of Asia: a journey in central Asia illustrating the geographical basis of history*, New York, 1907. F. H. SKRINE and E. D. ROSS, *The heart of Asia*, London, 1899. SVEN HEDIN, *Central Asia and Tibet*, 2 vols., New York, 1903. G. F. WRIGHT, *Asiatic Russia*, 2 vols., New York, 1902. A. VÁMBÉRY, *Travels in central Asia*, New York, 1865.

Asiatic nomads. F. RATZEL, *The history of mankind*, translated from the 2nd German edition by A. J. BUTLER, 3 vols., London, 1896–1898, III, 313–533. H. v. KUTSCHERA, *Die Chasaren: historische Studie*, Vienna, 1909. E. H. PARKER, *Thousand years of the*

Tartars, London, 1895. A. THIERRY, *Histoire d'Attila et de ses successeurs jusqu'à l'établissement des Hongrois en Europe, suivis des légendes et traditions*, 2 vols., Paris, 1856.

Avars. K. GROH, *Kämpfe der Avaren und Langobarden*, Halle, 1889 (dissertation).

Hungarians in Europe. R. LÜTTICH, *Ungarnzüge in Europa im 10 Jahrhundert*, Berlin, 1910 (Historische Studien, edited by E. Ebering, 84). For literature on the battle of the Lechfeld in 955 see DAHLMANN-WAITZ, *Quellenkunde*, no. 4816. J. B. BURY, "The coming of the Hungarians: their origin and early homes," *Scottish review*, XX (1892), 29–52. A. VÁMBÉRY, *Der Ursprung der Magyaren*, Leipzig, 1882. L. DUSSIEUX, *Essai sur les invasions des Hongrois en Europe et en France*, Paris, 1839.

Original sources. See the large collections, nos. 1002–1006 above, and *Enchiridion fontium historiae Hungarorum*, edited by H. MARCZALI and others, Budapest, 1901.

Bibliographies. *Cambridge medieval history*, I, 660–665; II, 770–784. LAVISSE and RAMBAUD, *Histoire générale*, I, 741–742. See also nos. 46–47 above.

XII. EARLY MEDIEVAL INSTITUTIONS

A. OUTLINE

1. The danger of massing together almost all medieval institutions, and studying them under the caption "Feudalism." Meaning and application of this term in the history of medieval Europe and in other times and places. In this outline chief attention is given to the institutions of the area which is now France.

2. The intermingling of ancient institutions, Graeco-Roman, Jewish, Celtic, Teutonic, and Slavic. Impossibility of disentangling the various elements.

3. Germanic ideas of law and their application. Personality of law. Peculiar ideas about legal evidence. Compurgation. Ordeals. Wager of battle. Wergeld. The *Leges barbarorum*, especially the *Lex Salica*, the *Lex Ripuariorum*, the *Leges Visigothorum*, *Leges Burgundionum*, *Lex Saxonum*, *Lex Frisionum*, *Lex Alamannorum*, and the *Leges Langobardorum*. The *Leges Romanae*, epitomes of Roman law.

4. The survival of a very narrow stream of Roman law *(Lex Romana)* in the early middle ages. Its chief hold was in the church which also fostered Jewish ideas of law. Until about 1100 A.D. the Justinian code was little known in the west. The *Edictum Theodorici* about 500, the *Breviarium Alarici*, 506 (also known as the

Breviarium Alaricianum or *Lex Romana Visigothorum*), and the *Lex romana Burgundionum* promulgated by king Gundobad.

5. The dreams of a universal empire and a universal Christian brotherhood contrasted with the actual political and social state of Europe after Charlemagne.

6. Political disorganization caused by the inroads of the foes of western Christendom and by internal disorder. Consequent lack of improvement of economic conditions. Failure of the empire to guard life and property and the consequent rise of other agents who performed this service. Unusual importance of the strongly armed and mounted man and the fortified house and walled town. Petty feudal warfare.

7. Older institutions which may have had some influence in shaping feudal institutions. The Germanic *comitatus*. The Roman *patrocinium* and *precarium*.

8. Fundamental elements in feudalism: (1) the personal element; (2) the economic element; and (3) the governmental element. The very gradual fusion of all these elements. Endless confusion resulting from this commingling which made feudalism anything but a system.

9. The personal element. Need of the weaker and poorer man to bind himself to a stronger and richer man in times of disorder when the state did not give adequate protection. Commendation. Homage and fealty. Lord and vassal. Capitulary of Kiersey, 877 A.D. Duties of lord to his vassal: protection and justice. Duties of vassal to his lord: aid and counsel. Aid consisted largely of military service, which was honorable, noble service (castle-ward); but in time the vassal was bound to aid his lord in many other ways, e.g., relief, fines on alienation, the technical "aids," three ordinary and two extraordinary, entertainment (droit de gîte, cosherings). The lord had many special rights, escheat, forfeiture, coinage. Counsel consisted largely of service in the lord's court, but might also be merely advice and helpfulness when the lord was in difficulties.

10. The economic element. The infeudation of land and other sources of income. The benefice. The fief *(feudum)*. Rarity of allodial holdings. Peculiar ideas about tenure (ridiculous tenures). Development of primogeniture.

11. The governmental element. The localization of governmental functions by usurpation, long undisputed exercise, and the granting of immunities. Special importance of the legal rights of land holders. Feudal courts and feudal law. Justice as a source of income.

12. Sharp division of classes of people. Drastic distinction between nobles and non-nobles. Slavery in the early middle ages. Feudal relations existed only among the nobles. The non-nobles were not concerned in feudalism except that they formed the economic basis upon which it was reared. A serf was not the vassal of his lord. Lay nobles and ecclesiastical nobles. For the life of nobles in the middle ages, see outline XXVII below; for the life of non-nobles, see outline XXVI below.

13. Monarchy in the midst of feudalism. Theoretically the king was the apex of an imaginary feudal pyramid, but actually monarchy was fundamentally at variance with feudal conditions.

14. The church in the midst of feudalism. Especially by bequests the church acquired much land and wealth which became infeudated as did almost all property in the middle ages. Mortmain. Lay investiture. Efforts of the church to serve as peacemaker in the endless feudal warfare. The "Truce of God" and the "Peace of God."

B. SPECIAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR READING

Short general accounts. Most of the subjects of this outline are treated briefly in EMERTON, *Introduction to the middle ages*, chs. VIII and XV; and in his *Mediaeval Europe*, ch. XIV. ADAMS, *Civilization during the middle ages*, ch. IX (see also the same author's article "Feudalism" in the eleventh edition of the *Encyclopaedia Britannica*). ROBINSON, *History of western Europe*, ch. IX, or his, *Medieval and modern times*, ch. VI. MUNRO and SELLERY, *Medieval civilization*, 159–211. The beginnings of these conditions are now briefly described by VINOGRADOFF in the *Cambridge medieval history*, II, ch. XX (see also pp. 151–155).

More extended accounts. The best survey of moderate compass is by SEIGNOBOS, in LAVISSE and RAMBAUD, *Histoire générale*, II, ch. I, which has been translated by E. W. DOW, *The feudal régime*, New York, 1902. A similar treatment with more particular reference to France is in LAVISSE, *Histoire de France*, II, part I, 194–215, 414–439; part II, 1–38. The article "Féodalité" by MORTET in *La grande encyclopédie*, XVII, 191–229, is authoritative.

Germanic ideas of law. In addition to ch. VIII of EMERTON, *Introduction*, read H. C. LEA, *Superstition and force*, Philadelphia, 1878; J. B. THAYER, *A preliminary treatise on evidence at the common law*, Boston, 1898, chs. I and II; and G. NEILSON, *Trial by combat*, London, 1890, 1–74.

Roman law in the early middle ages. P. VINOGRADOFF, *Roman law in mediaeval Europe*, New York, 1900, is an excellent book.

The church and feudalism. H. C. LEA, *Studies in church history*, has a good chapter on "The church and feudalism," 342–391 (see also pp. 524–574 on slavery).

Peace of God and Truce of God. LAVISSE, *Histoire de France*, II, part II, 133–138. The article "Truce of God" in the *Encyclopaedia Britannica*.

Original sources. For illustrative documents in English translation see *Translations and reprints*, IV, no. 3, "Documents illustrative of feudalism," and no. 4, "Ordeals, compurgation, etc."; OGG, *Source book*, 196–232; THATCHER and MCNEAL, *Source book*, 341–387; and ROBINSON, *Readings*, I, 171–191.

Maps. SHEPHERD, *Atlas*, 69. LONGNON, *Atlas historique de la France*, plates VII–XI.

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General books. Feudal conditions are touched upon in a large number of general books on the middle ages, but see especially the manuals on the history of institutions of France, Germany and Italy, nos. **528–536, 552, 578–587, 605–609**, above. See also the important books of FUSTEL DE COULANGES, p. 137 above.

Feudalism in general. V. MENZEL, *Die Entstehung des Lehnswesens*, Berlin, 1890. F. LOT, *Fidèles ou vassaux: étude sur la nature juridique du lien qui unissait les grands vassaux à la royauté depuis le milieu du IX^e siècle jusqu'à la fin du XII^e siècle*, Paris, 1904 (dissertation). J. T. ABDY, *Feudalism: its rise, progress, and consequences*, London, 1890 (lectures delivered at Gresham College). S. E. TURNER, *A sketch of the Germanic constitution from early times to the dissolution of the empire*, New York and London, 1888. R. WIART, *Essai sur la precaria*, Paris, 1894. A. PROST, *L'immunité: études sur l'histoire et la développement de cette institution*, Paris, 1882, extract from the *Nouvelle revue historique du droit français*. E. BOUTARIC, "Le régime féodal, son origine et son établissement, et particulièrement de l'immunité," in *Revue de questions historiques*, XVIII (1875), 325–380. P. ROTH, *Feudalität und Unterthanenverband*, Weimar, 1863 (see the important review of this book by G. WAITZ, "Die Anfänge des Lehnwesens," in *Historische Zeitschrift*, XIII (1865), 90–111). P. ROTH, *Geschichte des Benefizialwesens von den ältesten Zeiten bis ins zehnte Jahrhundert*, Erlangen, 1850. E. BEAUDOIN, *Etudes sur les origines du régime féodal: la recommandation et le justice seigneuriale* (Annales de l'enseignement supérieur de Grenoble, 1889). G. L. v. MAURER, *Geschichte der Frohnhöfe, Bauernhöfe und Hofverfassung in Deutschland*, 4 vols., Erlangen, 1862. G. WAITZ, *Über die Anfänge der*

Vassalität, Göttingen, 1856 (from vol. VII of no. **897** above). H. P. FANGERON, *Les bénéfices et la vassalité au IX^e siècle*, Rennes, 1868. DU CANGE, *Glossarium*, no. **309** note above, contains much valuable information about feudal terms.

Feudalism in France. P. GUILHIERMOZ, *Essai sur l'origine de la noblesse en France au moyen âge*, Paris, 1902. H. SÉE, *Les classes rurales et la régime domanial en France au moyen âge*, Paris, 1901, has an excellent bibliography, pp. vi–xxxvii. A. GENGEL, *Die Geschichte des fränkischen Reichs im besonderen Hinblick auf die Entstehung des Feudalismus*, Frauenfeld, 1908. M. KRÖLL, *L'immunité franque*, Paris, 1911. E. BOURGEOIS, *Le capitulaire de Kiersy-sur-Oise (877)*, Paris, 1885 (dissertation). C. SEIGNOBOS, *Le régime féodal en Bourgogne jusqu'en 1360*, Paris, 1882. A. MOLINIER, "Géographie féodale du Languedoc," in *Histoire générale de Languedoc*, XII, 225–312; and his "Etude sur l'administration féodale dans le Languedoc, 900–1250," *ibid.*, VII, 132–213.

Slavery and serfdom. P. ALLARD, *Les esclaves chrétiens*, Paris, 1914; and his, *Les origines du servage en France*, Paris, 1913. AGNES M. WERGELAND, *Slavery in Germanic society during the middle ages*, Chicago, 1916. F. SCHAUB, *Studien zur Geschichte der Sklaverei im Frühmittelalter*, Berlin, 1913 (Abhandlungen zur mittleren und neueren Geschichte, 44). F. PIJPER, "The Christian church and slavery in the middle ages," in *American historical review*, XIV (1909), 675–695.

Church and feudalism. E. LESNE, *Histoire de la propriété ecclésiastique en France aux époques romaine et mérovingienne*, Paris, 1910. G. A. PRÉVOST, *L'église et les campagnes au moyen âge*, Paris, 1892. U. STUTZ, *Geschichte des kirchlichen Benefizialwesens von seinen Anfängen bis auf die Zeit Alexanders III*, Berlin, 1896.

Peace of God and Truce of God. L. HUBERTI, *Studien zur Rechtsgeschichte der Gottesfrieden und Landfrieden*, vol. I, *Die Friedens-Ordnungen in Frankreich*, Ansbach, 1892. K. W. NITZSCH, *Heinrich IV und der Gottes- und Landfrieden* (in Forschungen zur deutschen Geschichte, 21). S. HERZBERG-FRÄNKEL, *Die ältesten Land- und Gottesfrieden in Deutschland*, (*ibid.*, 3). E. SÉMICHON, *La paix et la trève de dieu*, Paris, 1857, 2nd edition, 1869. F. KÜCH, *Die Landfriedensbestrebungen Kaiser Friedrichs I*, Marburg, 1887 (dissertation). J. FEHR, *Der Gottesfriede und die katholische Kirche des Mittelalters*, Augsburg, 1861. A. KLUCKHOLM, *Geschichte des Gottesfriedens*, Leipzig, 1857.

Germanic law. K. VON AMIRA, *Grundriss des germanischen Rechts*, 3rd edition, Strasburg, 1913 (vol. V of the 3rd edition of no. **307** above). E. H. MACNEAL, *The minores and mediocres in the Germanic*

tribal laws, Chicago, 1905 (dissertation). E. JENKS, *Law and politics in the middle ages with a synoptic table of sources*, London, 1913 (see especially ch. I). F. POLLOCK and F. W. MAITLAND, *The history of English law before the time of Edward I*, 2 vols., Cambridge, 1895; 2nd edition, 1898. O. DECLAREUIL, *Les épreuves judiciaires dans le droit franc du V^e^ au VIII siècle*, Paris, 1899. F. PATETTA, *Le ordalie*, Turin, 1890. S. BIDAULT DES CHAUMES, *Etude sur le Mallum*, Paris, 1906. J. J. H. DAGASSAN, *Du relèvement de l'autorité publique sous Charlemagne, étude sur le droit public aux VIII^e^ et IX^e^ siécles d'après les capitulaires*, Bordeaux, 1895. H. BRUNNER, *Die Entstehung der Schwurgerichte*, Berlin, 1872; to be supplemented by C. H. HASKINS, "The early Norman jury," in *American historical review*, VIII (1902–03), 613–640.

Roman law in the early middle ages. A. v. HALBAN-BLUMENSTOCK, *Das römische Recht in den germanischen Volksstaaten*, Breslau, 1899–1907 (parts 56, 65, and 89 of Untersuchungen zur deutschen Staats und Rechtsgeschichte, edited by O. GIERKE, Breslau, 1878ff.).

Original sources. Much miscellaneous matter may be found in such general collections as nos. **967, 978,** and **988** above. The important *Formulae Merovingici et Karolini aevi*, edited by K. ZEUMER in no. **978** above, *Leges*, vol. V, Hannover, 1882–1886, had been edited by E. DE ROZIÉRE entitled, *Recueil général des formules usités dans' l'empire des Francs du V^e^ au X^e^ siècle*, 3 vols., Paris, 1859–1871. *Textes relatifs aux institutions privées et publiques aux époques mérovingienne et carolingienne*, edited by M. THÉVENIN, Paris, 1887, is a part of no. **968** above. *Layettes du trésor des chartes*, edited by A. TEULET and DE LABORDE, 3 vols., Paris, 1863–1875. *Livre des vassaux du Comte de Champaigne et de Brie, 1172–1222*, edited by A. LONGNON, 2 vols., Paris, 1901–1904. A very interesting picture of the way in which the most famous abbey of Paris was involved in feudalism is furnished by the *Polyptique de l'abbé Irmion ou dénombrement des manses, des serfs et des revenus de l'abbaye de St. Germain de Prés sous le régne de Charlemagne*, edited with prolegomena by B. GUÉRARD, 2 vols., Paris, 1844, new edition by A. LONGNON, 2 vols., Paris, 1886–1895 (Documents de la Société de l'histoire de Paris).

Bibliographies. The best bibliography is in DAHLMANN-WAITZ, *Quellenkunde*, nos. 4383–4614. See also *Cambridge medieval history*, II, 810–812.

XIII. THE BEGINNINGS OF THE GREATER MEDIEVAL MONARCHIES

A. OUTLINE

1. The inevitable conflict between the various political factors in the middle ages: (1) papacy, (2) empire, (3) kingdoms, (4) local feudal principalities, (5) cities. The ultimate victory of the kingdoms. The nature and importance of kingship in the middle ages.

2. Louis the Pious, the successor of Charlemagne, 814–840. His relations with the church and the papacy. Various divisions of his empire during his reign. The birth of Charles (the Bald), in 822. Wars with his sons. The "Field of Lies," 833.

3. The breakup of the empire of Charlemagne. The fatal principle of division, the attacks of foes from all sides, and other causes. Civil strife between the sons of Louis the Pious: Lothair, Louis the German, and Charles (Pepin had died in 838). The battle of Fontenay, 841. The Strasburg oaths, 842. The important Treaty of Verdun, 843. The shoe-string portion of Lothair, *Lotharii regnum* (later Lotharingia), a permanent source of trouble. Well-defined East-Frankish and West-Frankish regions. Partition of Mersen, 870. Charles II, the Bald, 875–881. Charles the Fat (881–888), sole ruler of the Franks in 885. His weakness was illustrated by the siege of Paris by the Northmen in 885, and he was deposed in 887.

4. The grand divisions of the Carolingian empire: (1) West-Frankish kingdom, (2) East-Frankish kingdom, (3) Italy, (4) Burgundy, (5) Provence, (6) Lorraine.

5. Germany, the East-Frankish kingdom. The great stem-duchies: (1) Saxony, (2) Franconia, (3) Bavaria, (4) Swabia. The intermediate position of Lotharingia or Lorraine. The early kings of Germany: Arnulf of Carinthia (887–899), Louis the Child, (899–911), Conrad I of Franconia (911–918), Henry I, the Fowler (919–936). The importance of the last reign. Battle near Merseburg on the Unstrut against the Hungarians in 933.

6. France, the West-Frankish kingdom. Odo, count of Paris, the hero of the siege of Paris, king of West Frankland 888–898, but soon after became the vassal of Arnulf, king of Germany. For a whole century it was doubtful whether France would be independent or subject to Germany. The successors of Odo: Charles the Simple, 898–923; Robert I, 923; Rudolf of Burgundy, 923–936. Reinstatement of the Carolingian line in the person of Louis IV, d'Outre-mer, 936–954, (who was the son of Charles the Simple).

His successors, Lothaire, 954–986, and Louis V, le Débonnair, 986–987, were the last of the Carolingians in the West. The change of dynasty in 987 when Hugh Capet (987–996, founder of the Capetian line of French kings) was chosen king. Paris became the capital. Painfully slow growth of kingly power under his successors, Robert II, the Pious, 996–1031; Henry I, 1031–1060; Philip I, 1060–1108. During this last reign, William of Normandy won England, 1066, and the crusades began in 1095.

7. Italy. Rivalry between Berengar of Friuli and Guy of Spoleto. Invasions of the Saracens (see outline IX above) and Hungarians (see outline XI above). Alberic's domination in Rome, 928–941. The degradation of the papacy (Marozia, pope John XI, 931–936).

8. England, from Alfred the Great (871–901) to William the Conqueror (1066–1087).

9. The importance of the middle region, Lorraine and Burgundy.

10. The rising kingdoms of Spain (see outline XXXIV below).

B. SPECIAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR READING

Short general sketches. EMERTON, *Mediaeval Europe*, chs. I and III. DAVIS, *Medieval Europe*, chs. III–IV.

Longer general accounts. OMAN, *The dark ages*, chs. XXIII–XXIX, together with TOUT, *Empire and papacy*, chs. II (in part) and IV. A similar account in French is in LAVISSE and RAMBAUD, *Histoire générale*, I, chs. VIII, X, XI.

France. Short sketches in English may be found in ADAMS, *Growth of the French nation*, chs. V–VI; KITCHIN, *History of France*, 4th edition, I, 153–215; MACDONALD, *A history of France*, I, chs. VI–VII. The best account is in LAVISSE, *Histoire de France*, II, part I, 358–413; part II, 39–77, 144–178.

Germany. E. F. HENDERSON, *A history of Germany in the middle ages*, chs. VI–VIII. W. STUBBS, *Germany in the early middle ages*, chs. III–V. *Handbuch der deutschen Geschichte*, edited by GEBHARDT, I, portions of chs. VI and VIII.

Italy. P. VILLARI, *Mediaeval Italy from Charlemagne to Henry VII*, 1–75. H. B. COTTERILL, *Mediaeval Italy*, 385–398. H. D. SEDGWICK, *Short history of Italy*, chs. VII–VIII.

Maps. SHEPHERD, *Atlas*, 56, 58–65. Read FREEMAN, *Historical geography of Europe*, in connection with it. For France, see LONGNON, *Atlas historique de la France*, plates VI–XI, and read the explanatory text which goes with it.

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General books. The general books on France, Belgium and the Netherlands, Germany, and Italy, nos. 508–621 above, are especially useful. Some of the books mentioned in the outline on "Charlemagne," above, such as MÜHLBACHER and KLEINCLAUSZ, pertain to this period. The same is true of many books in the previous outline on "Early medieval institutions," such as GENGEL and BOURGEOIS, *Le capitulaire de Kiersy-sur-Oise.*

Decline of the Carolingians. J. CALMETTE, *La diplomatie carolingienne du traité de Verdun à la morte de Charles le Chauve, 843–77*, Paris, 1901, part 135 of no. 888 above. J. W. THOMPSON, *The decline of the missi dominici in Frankish Gaul*, Chicago University Press, 1903, is a short paper of 23 pages. G. MONOD, *Du rôle de l'opposition des races et des nationalités dans la dissolution de l'empire carolingien* (in Annuaire de l'Ecole pratique des hautes études, 1896). T. POUZET, *La succession de Charlemagne et le traité de Verdun*, Paris, 1890. F. LOT and L. HALPHEN, *Annales de l'histoire de France à l'époque carolingienne: le règne de Charles le Chauve (840–877)*, part I, 840–851, Paris, 1909, part 175 of no. 888 above.

Oaths of Strasburg. A. GASTÉ, *Les serments de Strasbourg: étude historique, critique et philologique*, 2nd edition, Paris, 1888. A. KRAFFT, *Les serments carolingiens de 842 à Strasbourg en roman et tudesque: avec nouvelles interprétations linguistiques et considérations ethnographiques*, Paris, 1901.

Beginnings of France. J. FLACH, *Les origines de l'ancienne France: X^e et XI^e siècles*, 3 vols., Paris, 1886–1904. F. FUNCK-BRENTANO, *L'ancienne France: le roi.* H. SCHREUER, *Die rechtlichen Grundgedanken der französischen Königskrönung.* A. LONGNON, *Origines et formation de la nationalité française, éléments ethniques, unité territoriale*, Paris, 1912. R. LATOUCHE, *Histoire du comté du Maine pendant le X^e et le XI^e siècle*, Paris, 1910. L. HALPHEN, *Le comté d'Anjou au XI^e siècle*, Paris, 1906. F. LOT, *Mélanges d'histoire bretonne* [6–11 century], Paris, 1907. J. FLACH, "Le comté de Flandre et ses rapports avec la couronne de France du IX^e au XII^e siècle," in *Revue historique*, CXV (1914), 1–33, 241–271.

Early kings of France, 888–987. E. FAVRE, *Eudes, comte de Paris et roi de France, 882–898*, Paris, 1893, part 99 of no. 888 above. A. ECKEL, *Charles le Simple*, Paris, 1899, part 124 of no. 888 above. P. LAUER, *Robert I^er et Raoul de Bourgogne, rois de France, 923–936*, Paris, 1910, part 188 of no. 888 above. W. LIPPERT, *König Rudolf von Frankreich*, Leipzig, 1886 (dissertation). P. LAUER, *Le règne de Louis IV, d'Outre-mer*, Paris, 1900, part 127 of no. 888 above. A. HEIL, *Die politischen Beziehungen zwischen Otto*

dem Grossen und Ludwig IV von Frankreich (936–954), Berlin, 1904 (Historische Studien, 46). F. LOT, *Les derniers Carolingiens: Lothaire, Louis V, Charles de Lorraine (954–991)*, Paris, 1891, part 87 of no 888 above. A. HIMLY, *Wala et Louis le Débonnaire*, Paris, 1849.

Hugh Capet and the first Capetian kings of France, 987–1108. A. LUCHAIRE, *Histoire des institutions monarchiques de la France (987–1180)*, 2 vols., 2nd edition, Paris, 1891ff. F. LOT, *Etudes sur le règne de Hugues Capet et la fin du X^e siècle*, Paris, 1903, part 147 of no. 888 above. C. PFISTER, *Etudes sur le règne de Robert le Pieux, 996–1031*, Paris, 1885, part 64 of no. 888 above. A. FLICHE, *Le règne de Philippe I^er, roi de France (1060–1108)*, Paris, 1912.

Germany. B. SIMSON, *Jahrbücher des fränkischen Reiches unter Ludwig dem Frommen*, 2 vols., Leipzig, 1874–1876, part of no. 570 above. E. DÜMMLER, *Geschichte des ostfränkischen Reiches* [to 918], 2nd edition, 3 vols., Leipzig, 1887–1888, part of no. 570 above. G. WAITZ, *Jahrbücher des deutschen Reiches unter Heinrich I*, 3rd edition, Leipzig, 1885, part of no. 570 above.

Italy. G. ROMANO, *Le dominazioni barbariche in Italia, 395–1024*, Milan, 1909ff., part of no. 599 above. C. W. PREVITÉ ORTON, *The early history of the House of Savoy, 1000–1233*, Cambridge University Press, 1912. G. MENGOZZI, *La città italiana nell' alto medio evo: il periodo Longobardo-Franco*, Rome, 1914. S. HELLMANN, *Die Grafen von Savoyen und das Reich bis zum Ende der staufischen Periode*, Innsbruck, 1900.

Lorraine. R. PARISOT, *Le royaume de Lorraine sous les Carolingiens, 843–923*, Paris, 1899 (dissertation); and his, *Les origines de la Haute-Lorraine et sa premiere maison ducale, 959–1033*, Paris, 1909. H. WELSCHINGER, *Strasbourg*, Paris, 1908 (Les villes d'art célèbres). See also nos. 597–598 above.

Burgundy. A. HOFMEISTER, *Deutschland und Burgund im früheren Mittelalter: eine Studie über die Entstehung des Arelatischen Reiches und seine politische Bedeutung*, Leipzig, 1914. E. PETIT, *Histoire des ducs de Bourgogne de la race capétienne* [to 1363], 9 vols., Paris, 1885–1905. R. POUPARDIN, *La royaume de Bourgogne (888–1038)*, Paris, 1907. L. JACOB, *Le royaume de Bourgogne sous les empereurs Franconiens, 1038–1125*, Paris, 1906. A. J. KLEINCLAUSZ, *Dijon et Beaune*, Paris, 1907 (Les villes d'art célèbres). A. HALLAYS, *Nancy*, Paris, 1908 (Les villes d'art célèbres).

Provence. G. DE MANTEYER, *La Provence du premier au douzième siècle*, Paris, 1908, in Mémoires et documents of the Société de l'école des chartes, vol. VIII. R. POUPARDIN, *Le royaume de Provence sous les Carolingiens (855–933)*, Paris, 1901, part 131 of

no. **888** above. F. KIENER, *Verfassungsgeschichte der Provence seit der Ostgothenherrschaft bis zur Errichtung der Konsulate (510–1200)*, Leipzig, 1900.

Original sources. Practically all the important sources have been published in nos. **965–994** above. *Die Regesten des Kaiserreichs unter den Karolingern, 751–918*, 2nd edition, completed by J. LECHNER, Innsbruck, 1908, are continued by *Die Regesten des Kaiserreichs under den Herrschern aus dem sächsischen Hause, 919–1024*, new edition by E. v. OTTENTHAL, part I (to 973), Innsbruck, 1893, parts of no. **985** above. For documentary material on early France, see especially no. **975** above.

Bibliographies. DAHLMANN-WAITZ, *Quellenkunde*, pp. 289–295 *passim*, 298–301, 324–333. The sources, especially for France, are best described in A. MOLINIER, *Les sources*, I, pp. 227–286, II, 1–18. See also the general bibliographies, nos. **21–41** above.

XIV. REVIVAL OF THE MEDIEVAL EMPIRE IN THE WEST IN GERMANY

A. OUTLINE

1. The manifold transformations of the medieval empire make it a difficult and elusive subject to study. Glaring contrasts between theory and actuality.

2. The early years of the reign of Otto I, 936–962. Splendid coronation at Aachen. Local German affairs with feudal nobles and the church. Wars with Slavs and Hungarians (Lechfeld, 955). Relations with Italy. The political state of Italy and the papacy in the tenth century. Alberic II. Saracens and Byzantines in the south. Adelaide of Burgundy, widow of Lothair, was imprisoned by Berengar of Ivrea. Otto intervened in Italy in 951, married Adelaide, and became king of Italy.

3. The creation of the German-Roman empire. Fearful degradation of the papacy and the church in Italy. In 961 Otto crossed the Alps to restore order. In 962 he was crowned emperor by pope John XII. Otto's empire compared with that of Charlemagne. Results of the revival of the imperial dignity for Germany and Italy, especially the papacy. Otto I relations with the Byzantine empire. His son (later Otto II), who had been crowned king of the Germans in 961 and emperor on Christmas day 967, was married in 972 to Theophano, daughter of the eastern emperor Romanus II.

4. Otto II, 973–983. He ascended the throne at the age of eighteen. Laid more stress on his position as emperor than on his position as German king. Crescentius, duke of the Romans, ca. 980. Wars with the Greeks in south Italy. Diet of Verona in 983 to plan a campaign against the Saracens. Otto II died at the age of twenty-eight and was buried in St. Peter's church in Rome.

5. Otto III, 983–1002, the "Wonder of the world." Only three years old at his accession. His Greek mother Theophano (died 991) became regent. Coronation of Otto in 996. Revolt of the second Crescentius. Influence of the clergy on Otto III. His dream of a real Roman empire with Rome as its capital. Gerbert of Aurillac (pope Sylvester II, 999–1003). Learning at the Ottonian court. Otto's loss of hold in Germany and failure in Italy. He died in 1002 at the age of twenty-two, and was buried in Aachen.

6. The legend of the year 1000.

7. Henry II, (the Saint) 1002–1024, son of Henry the Quarrelsome of Bavaria. Wars with the king of Poland, Boleslav, and extension of German influence and the Roman church eastward. Crowned emperor in Rome in 1014 by pope Benedict VIII. Close relations of Henry with the Cluniac reforming monks in Germany.

8. The empire at its height; Conrad II (1024–1039), and Henry III (1039–1056). With Conrad the Saxon line of kings and emperors (911–1024) ended, and the Franconian or Salian line (1024–1125) began. Conrad's wars with the Poles. Union of Burgundy with the empire in 1032. Henry III successful foreign policy. Comparative order within his empire. His control of the German church and his ardor for church reform. The synod at Sutri, 1046, and the deposition of three rival popes (Sylvester III, Benedict IX, Gregory VI). Henry appointed as pope the German Clement II, who crowned him emperor December 25, 1046.

9. The impending irrepressible conflict between the empire and the papacy.

10. The origin of the name "Holy Roman Empire of the German People."

11. Kings of Germany, 887–1056.

Arnulf, 887–896
Louis, the Child, 899–911
Conrad I, 911–918
Henry I, the Fowler, 918–936
Otto I, the Great, 936–973
Otto, II, 973–983
Otto III, 983–1002
Henry II, the Saint, 1002–1024
Conrad II, 1024–1039
Henry III, the Black, 1039–1056

B. SPECIAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR READING

General accounts. Best of all is J. BRYCE, *Holy Roman Empire*, chs. VII–IX. EMERTON, *Mediaeval Europe*, *chs.* III–VI. TOUT, *The empire and the papacy*, chs. I–III. LAVISSE and RAMBAUD, *Histoire générale*, I, 542–569. HENDERSON, *A history of Germany in the middle ages*, chs. VIII–XII (or a shorter sketch in his, *A short history of Germany*, ch. III). FISHER, *The medieval empire*, I, chs. I–II, *passim*. *Handbuch der deutschen Geschichte*, edited by B. GEBHARDT, I, ch. VIII.

Italy in this period. VILLARI, *Mediaeval Italy from Charlemagne to Henry VII*, part I, chs. V–VI. GREGOROVIUS, *Rome in the middle ages*, II, book VI.

Nature of the German empire. A. KLEINCLAUSZ, *L'empire carolingien*, pp. 541–585, "Les origines carolingiennes du Saint-Empire romaine germanique." J. JANSSEN, "International conception of the Holy Roman empire," in his *History of the German people*, translated from the German by M. A. MITCHELL, St. Louis, 1896ff., II, 105–17.

Origin of name, "Holy Roman Empire of the German People." K. ZEUMER, *Heiliges römisches Reich deutscher Nation*.

Legend of the year 1000. G. L. BURR, "The year 1000," in *American historical review*, VI (1901), 429–439.

Original sources. Among the interesting sources of the period is, *Der Hrotsuitha Gedicht über Gandersheims Gründung und die Thaten Kaiser Oddo I*, translated into German by T. G. PFUND, 2nd edition, Leipzig, 1891, part of no. 981 above. For short extracts from the sources see ROBINSON, *Readings*, I, 245–265; and THATCHER and MCNEAL, *Source book*, 72–81.

Maps. SHEPHERD, *Atlas*, 58–59, 62–63.

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General books. See especially the works on the medieval empire in the west, nos. 499–507 above, but the general books on Germany and Italy, nos. 560–621 above, are equally important. See also no. 538 above.

General accounts. M. MANITIUS, *Deutsche Geschichte unter den sächsischen und salischen Kaisern, 911–1125*, Stuttgart, 1889, part of no. 560 above. K. HAMPE, *Deutsche Kaisergeschichte in der Zeit der Salier und Staufer*, Leipzig, 1909, 2nd edition, 1912, part of no. 320 above. J. ZELLER, *Fondation de l'empire germanique: Otton le Grand et les Ottonides*, Paris, 1873. E. ROSENSTOCK, *Könighaus und Stämme in Deutschland zwischen 911 und 1250*, Leipzig, 1914.

A. KROENER, *Wahl und Krönung der deutschen Kaiser und Könige in Italien (Lombardei)*, Freiburg, 1901. T. LINDNER, *Die deutschen Königswahlen, und die Entstehung des Kurfürstenthums*, Leipzig, 1893.

Otto I. R. KÖPKE and E. DÜMMLER, *Jahrbücher Kaiser Otto der Grosse*, Leipzig, 1876, part of no. 570 above. The life of the empress Adelaide is told in the following two doctoral dissertations: E. P. WIMMER, *Kaiserin Adelheid, Gemahlin Ottos I der Grosse, in ihrem Leben und Wirken von 931–973*, Erlangen, 1897; and J. BENTZINGER, *Das Leben der Kaiserin Adelheid, Gemahlin Ottos I, während der Regierung Ottos III*, Breslau, 1883. For wars with Slavs and especially Hungarians, see outline XI above.

Otto II. K. UHLIRZ, *Jahrbücher des deutschen Reiches unter Otto II und Otto III*, vol. 1, *Otto II*, Leipzig, 1902, part of no. 570 above. G. MÜLLER-MANN, *Die auswärtige Politik Kaiser Ottos II*, Lörrach, 1898 (dissertation, Göttingen). For the Greek Theophano, wife of Otto II, see J. MOLTMANN, *Theophano, die Gemahlin Ottos II, in ihrer Bedeutung für die Politik Ottos I und Ottos II*, Göttingen, 1878 (dissertation).

Otto III. R. WILMANS, *Jahrbücher des deutschen Reiches unter Otto III*, Berlin, 1840. P. KEHR, "Zur Geschichte Ottos III," in *Historische Zeitschrift*, LXVI (1891), 385–443. L. HALPHEN, "La cour d'Otto III à Rome (998–1001)," in *Mélanges d'archéologie et d'histoire*, XXV. C. LUX, *Papst Silvester II Einfluss auf die Politik Kaiser Ottos III*, Breslau, 1898. W. NORDEN, *Erzbishof Friedrich von Mainz und Otto der Grosse*, Berlin, 1912.

Henry II. S. HIRSCH, *Jahrbücher des deutschen Reiches unter Heinrich II*, 3 vols., Leipzig, 1862–1874, part of no. 570 above.

Conrad II. H. BRESSLAU, *Jahrbücher des deutschen Reichs unter Konrad II*, 2 vols., Leipzig, 1879–1884, part of no. 570 above. J. v. PFLUGK-HARTTUNG, *Untersuchungen zur Geschichte Kaiser Konrads II*, Stuttgart, 1890.

Henry III. E. STEINDORF, *Jahrbücher des deutschen Reichs unter Heinrich III*, 2 vols., Leipzig, 1874–1881, is part of no. 570 above.

Original sources. All the essential sources are printed in nos. 978–987 above.

Bibliographies. DAHLMANN-WAITZ, *Quellenkunde*, pp. 324–337, 344–345. See also nos. 29–35 above.

XV. THE CHURCH FROM THE EIGHTH TO THE ELEVENTH CENTURY

A. OUTLINE

1. Relation of the church and state in Carolingian times. Contrast between the reigns of Charlemagne and Louis the Pious. Beginnings of the struggle between empire and papacy for preeminence. The question of the crowning of emperors by popes and the recognition of popes by emperors.

2. The papacy in the ninth century. The donations to the papacy. The states of the church ("Patrimony of St. Peter"). Attacks of Saracens on Rome before and during the pontificate of Leo IV, 847–855. The "Leonine City." The pseudo-Isidorian Decretals ("False Decretals"). The very real power of pope Nicholas I (858–867), illustrated by his action in the Photian schism in Constantinople, in the divorce of King Lothair II of Lorraine, and by his victory over Hincmar, the defiant archbishop of Rheims.

3. The widening gulf between the Latin and Greek churches. The iconoclastic controversy began early in the eighth century, when the emperor Leo III, the Isaurian (717–740), declared against images. In 754 the Synod of Constantinople condemned images. The position of Charlemagne and the empress Irene on this question. Other differences between the eastern and western churches. In 863, pope Nicholas I deposed the patriarch Photius in Constantinople, who in turn deposed the pope in a synod at Constantinople in 867. In 1054, pope Leo IX had a bull of excommunication against the patriarch Michael Cerularius and his church laid upon the high altar of St. Sophia. This marks the practical separation of the two churches.

4. Period of utter degradation of the papacy: last quarter of the ninth and first half of the tenth century. Practical disappearance of the empire in the west during this same period. The trial of the corpse of pope Formosus, by pope Stephen VI (896–897). Local factions in Rome in control of the papacy. Theodora and her two daughters, Marozia and Theodora. Alberic and the papacy, 932–954. The interference of Otto I in Rome.

5. The monastic (Cluniac) reform movement in the church in the ninth and tenth centuries. Foundation of the monastery of Cluny in 910. The great abbot Odo of Cluny, 927–941. "The Congregation of Cluny."

6. The papacy and the new German empire. Otto I and pope John XII, 955–964, who crowned him emperor in 962. In his

time the empire was supreme over the papacy. Bruno, cousin of Otto III, was the first German pope, with the title Gregory V, 996–999. Dependence of Otto III upon the great French scholar Gerbert, whom he made pope Sylvester II, 999–1003. Absolute control of Henry II over appointment to bishoprics in Germany and Italy. Independence of the German clergy and their zeal for reform. Pope Benedict VIII, 1012–1024, and his sympathy with the Cluniac reform movement. Degradation of the papacy in the reign of Conrad II. The boy pope, Benedict IX, 1033–1045. Reforming zeal of Henry III. Three popes deposed in the synod at Sutri, 1046. Henry's German popes. Gradual rise of power and dignity of the papacy. The strength of pope Leo IX, 1048–1054. Creation of the college of cardinals by the Lateran council held in 1059. Impending struggle between the papacy and empire. Peter Damian, 1006–1072. Romuald.

7. The expansion of the Latin church, 800–1100. Ansgar, the "Apostle of the North," archbishop of Hamburg in 846, effectually introduced Christianity in Denmark and Sweden, 827ff. Sweden was not completely Christianized until the middle of the twelfth century. Christianity found entrance in Norway in the tenth century. Olaf (died 1000) established it firmly, and the famous Olaf the Saint (1014–1030) completed the work. Christianity in Greenland about 1000. As a missionary center in the Slav region of the Elbe, the archbishopric of Magdeburg was established in 968. Adalbert was the first archbishop. For the conversion of Moravia by Cyrillus and Methodius see outline XI above. In Bohemia the archbishopric of Prague was established in 973. In Poland, Posen became an important ecclesiastical center. King Stephen of Hungary made Latin Christianity the legal religion about 1000, and the great archbishopric of Gran was established.

8. The church and society. Increasing wealth of the church and the machinery created to take care of it. Mortmain. Tithes. The church and feudal conditions. The "Truce of God" and the "Peace of God." The life and morals of the clergy. The extensive social and educational work of the church. The church and slavery. The church as a civilizing force in an age of disorganization.

9. The growth of church institutions and practices. The church service; preaching, hymns, the mass, the sacraments. Saints and relics.

10. The growth of ecclesiastical jurisdiction and church discipline. The beginnings of canon law. Conflicts with secular law.

Attitude of the church towards ordeals. Ecclesiastical courts. "Benefit of clergy." Means of enforcing church discipline; spiritual suasion and threat, penance, excommunication and interdict. Co-operation on the part of the state.

11. The development of the ecclesiastical hierarchy among the secular clergy; pope, archbishop (primate, or metropolitan), bishop, priest. The cardinals. Ranks and grades among the regular clergy or monks. The election of the clergy. Investiture. Simony.

12. Popes, 816–1054.

Stephen IV, 816–817
Paschal I, 817–824
Eugenius II, 824–827
Valentinus, 827
Gregory IV, 827–844
Sergius II, 844–847
Leo IV, 847–855
Benedict III, 855–858
Nicholas I, 858–867
Hadrian II, 867–872
John VIII, 872–882
Martin II, 882–884
Hadrian III, 884–885
Stephen V, 885–891
Formosus, 891–896
Boniface VI, 896
Stephen VI, 896–897
Romanus, 897
Theodore II, 897
John IX, 898–900
Benedict IV, 900–903
Leo V, 903
Christopher, 903–904
Sergius III, 904–911
Anastasius III, 911–913
Lando, 913–914
John X, 914–928
Leo VI, 928
Stephen VII, 929–931
John XI, 931–936
Leo VII, 936–939
Stephen VIII, 939–942
Martin III, or Marinus II, 942–946
Agapitus II, 946–955
John XII, 955–964
Benedict V, 964–965
John XIII, 965–972
Benedict VI, 972–974
Benedict VII, 974–983
John XIV, 983–984
Boniface VII (antipope, 974–984), 984–985
John XV, 985–996
Gregory V, 996–999
Sylvester II, 999–1003
John XVII, 1003
John XVIII, 1003–1009
Sergius IV, 1009–1012
Benedict VIII, 1012–1024
John XIX, 1024–1033
*Benedict IX, 1033–1045
*[Sylvester III, 1044–1045 antipope]
*Gregory VI, 1045–1046
Clement II, 1046–1047
Damasus II, 1048
Leo IX, 1048–1054

B. SPECIAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR READING

Brief general accounts. FLICK, *The rise of the mediaeval church*, chs. XV–XVIII. EMERTON, *Mediaeval Europe*, 41–88, 115–209. W. H.

*Deposed in 1046.

HUTTON, *The church and the barbarians*, London, 1906, chs. XI, XIV–XVII. BARRY, *The papal monarchy*, chs. VIII–XII. WELLS, *The age of Charlemagne*, chs. XXIII–XXIV, XXXII–XXXIV.

Longer account. A large portion of this outline is treated authoritatively in H. C. LEA, *Studies in church history.*

Cluny. LAVISSE, *Histoire de France*, II, part II, 123–132 (translated in MUNRO and SELLERY, *Medieval civilization*, 137–152). TOUT, *The empire and the papacy*, ch. V. See also the introduction to the the book by DUCKETT, under "Original sources" below.

Pope Nicholas I. J. ROY, *St. Nicholas Ier*, Paris, 1899 (Les Saints), translated by MARGARET MAITLAND, London, 1901.

Gerbert (Pope Sylvester II). MUNRO and SELLERY, *Medieval civilization*, enlarged edition, 376–405. R. ALLEN, "Pope Sylvester II," in *English historical review*, VII (1892), 625–668. The best biography of Gerbert is F. J. PICAVET, *Gerbert, un pape philosophe*, Paris, 1897.

Interdict. E. B. KREHBIEL, *The interdict, its history and its operation, with especial attention to the time of pope Innocent III*, Washington, 1909, pp. 1–85.

Original sources. The foundation charter of the order of Cluny is translated in OGG, *Source book*, 245–249, and also in HENDERSON, *Select documents*, 329–333. HENDERSON, 361–365, has a translation of the Decree of 1059 concerning papal elections, which may also be found in THATCHER and MCNEAL, *Source book*, 126–131 (see also pp. 109–126 for other interesting documents). There are examples of excommunication and interdict in *Translations and reprints*, vol. IV, no. 4, "Ordeals, compurgation, excommunication and interdict," pp. 22–32.

Maps. SHEPHERD, *Atlas*, 94–95, 97.

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General books. The general histories of the medieval church are listed above, nos. **394–498.** See also the encyclopaedias for the history of the church and religion, nos. **104–114**, and the periodicals for church history, nos. **176–180** above.

General accounts. MILMAN, *Latin Christianity*, vol. III, book V. R. H. WRIGHT, *The "Sancta Respublica Romana." A.D. 395–888*, 2nd edition, London, 1891.

The papacy in this period. MANN, *Lives of the popes*, vols. II–VI, gives a systematic account of the numerous popes of this period. L. DUCHESNE, *Les premiers temps de l'état pontifical.* R. BAXMANN, *Die Politik der Päpste von Gregor I bis auf Gregor VII.* H. DOPFFEL, *Kaisertum und Papstwechsel unter den Karolingern*, Freiburg, 1889.

M. HEIMBUCHER, *Die Papstwahlen unter den Karolingern*, Augsburg, 1889. A. LAPÔTRE, *L'Europe et la Saint-Siège à l'époque carolingienne*, vol. I, *Le pape Jean VIII (872–882)*, Paris, 1895.

Pope Nicholas I. A. GREINACHER, *Die Anschauungen des Papstes Nikolaus I über das Verhältnis von Staat und Kirche*, Berlin, 1909. J. RICHTERICH, *Papst Nikolaus I*, Bern, 1903 (dissertation). F. ROCQUAIN, *La papauté au moyen âge: Nicolas Ier, Grégoire VII, Innocent III, Boniface VIII*, Paris, 1881.

Pseudo-Isidorian Decretals. DÖLLINGER, *Fables respecting the popes in the middle ages;* and his *The pope and the council.* E. H. DAVENPORT, *The False Decretals*, Oxford, 1916.

The schism between the Greek and Latin churches. The iconoclastic controversy. A very convenient summary of the split between the churches is in W. NORDEN, *Das Papsttum und Byzanz*, 1–31. L. DUCHESNE, *The churches separated from Rome*, translated by A. H. MATHEW, London, 1907. G. B. HOWARD, *The schism between the oriental and western churches*, London, 1892. L. BRÉHIER, *Le schisme oriental du XIe siècle*, Paris, 1899. A. PICHLER, *Geschichte der kirchlichen Trennung zwischen Orient und Okzident*, vols. I and II, Munich, 1864–1865.

L. BRÉHIER, *La querelle des images*, Paris, 1904. K. SCHWARZLOSE, *Der Bilderstreit*, Gotha, 1890. J. HERGENRÖTHER, *Photius: Patriarch von Constantinople*, 3 vols., Regensburg, 1867–69. For the interesting monks of the *Studium* in Constantinople, who braved persecution in their resistance to the iconoclasts, see L'ABBÉ E. MARIN, *De Studio Coenobio Constantinopolitano*, Paris, 1897; and his *Les moines de Constantinople depuis la fondation de la ville jusqu'à la mort de Photius (300–898)*, Paris, 1897. Their leader in the eighth century was Theodore, whose biography has been written by A. GARDNER, *Theodore of Studium: his life and times*, London, 1905, and G. A. SCHNEIDER, *Der hl. Theodor von Studion: sein Leben und Wirken*, Münster, 1900, part V of no. 492 above.

Hincmar. G. C. LEE, *Hincmar: an introduction to the study of the revolution in the organization of the church in the ninth century*, Baltimore, 1897 is a doctoral dissertation printed in *American society of church history*, VIII. H. SCHRÖRS, *Hincmar Erzbischof von Reims: sein Leben und seine Schriften*, Freiburg, 1884. C. VON NOORDEN, *Hincmar, Erzbischof von Rheims*, Bonn, 1863.

Cluniac reform. The standard work on this subject is E. SACKUR, *Die Cluniacenser in ihrer kirchlichen und allgemeingeschichtliche Wirksamkeit bis zur Mitte des elften Jahrhunderts*, 2 vols., Halle, 1892–1894. LUCY M. SMITH, "Cluny and Gregory VII," in *English historical review*, XXVI (1911), 20–33. L. CHAUMONT, *Histoire de*

Cluny depuis les origines jusqu'à la ruine de l'abbaye, 2nd edition, enlarged, Paris, 1911. For Saint Odo, the famous abbot of Cluny (927–948), see A. DU BOURG, *Saint Odon (879–942)*, Paris, 1905 (Les Saints). Of Saint Odilo, who soon followed Odo, we have two biographies: P. JARDET, *Saint Odilon, abbé de Cluny: sa vie, son temps, ses oeuvres, 962–1049*, Lyons, 1898; and O. RINGHOLZ, *Der heilige Abt Odilo von Cluny*, Brünn, 1885.

The spread of Christianity. G. F. MACLEAR, *A history of Christian missions during the middle ages*, Cambridge, 1863, chs. XI–XIV; *Apostles of mediaeval Europe*, London, 1869; *Conversion of the Slavs*, London, 1879; *Conversion of the northern nations*, London, 1865. C. MERIVALE, *The conversion of the northern nations*, London, 1865. T. SMITH, *Mediaeval missions*, Edinburgh, 1880. K. MAURER, *Bekehrung des norwegischen Stammes zum Christentum*, 2 vols., Munich, 1855–1856.

Ecclesiastical elections. Simony. G. WEISE, *Königtum und Bischofswahl im fränkischen und deutschen Reich vor dem Investiturstreit*, Berlin, 1912. J. DREHMANN, *Papst Leo IX und die Simonie*, Leipzig, 1908 (Beiträge zur Kulturgeschichte, II). A. FLICHE, "Le cardinal Humbert de Moyenmoutier: étude sur les origines de la réforme grégorienne," in *Revue historique*, CXIX (1915), 41–76. H. LÉVY-BRUHL, *Etudes sur les élections abbatiales en France jusqu'à la fin du règne de Charles le Chauve*, Paris, 1913 (dissertation). P. IMBART DE LA TOUR, *Les elections épiscopales dans l'église de France, du IX^e^ au XII^e^ siècles (814–1150)*, Paris, 1890. H. PAHNCKE, *Geschichte der Bischöfe Italiens deutscher Nation von 951–1264*, I: einleitender Teil; *Geschichte der Bischöfe Italiens deutscher Nation von 951–1004, nebst eine Beilage zur Kritik von P. B. Gams Series episcoporum*, Berlin, 1913.

College of Cardinals. G. SCHOBER, *Das Wahldekret vom Jahre 1059*, Breslau, 1914 (dissertation). For additional special literature on this subject see DAHLMANN-WAITZ, *Quellenkunde*, no. 4954; and see no. 453 above.

The church and feudalism. A. BERR, *Die Kirche gegenüber Gewalttaten von Laien (Merovinger- Karolinger- und Ottonenzeit)*, Berlin, 1913 (Historische Studien, 111). P. IMBART DE LA TOUR, "Des immunités commerciales accordées aux églises du VII^e^ au IX^e^ siècle," in no. 939 above. T. SOMMERLAD, *Die wirthschaftliche Thätigkeit der Kirche in Deutschland*, vols. I–II, Leipzig, 1900–1905.

Evolution of church institutions. H. C. LEA, *A history of auricular confession and indulgences in the Latin church*, 3 vols., Philadelphia, 1896. E. HATCH, *The growth of church institutions*, 4th

edition, London, 1895. L. DUCHESNE, *Les origines du culte chrétien*, Paris, 1890, 4th edition, 1910, translated from the 4th edition, *Christian worship: its origin and evolution*, London, 1910. P. IMBART DE LA TOUR, *Les origines religieuses de la France, les paroisses rurales du 4e au 11e siècle*, Paris, 1900. W. SCHMITZ, *S. Chrodegangi Metensis episcopi (742–766) Regula canonicorum*, Hannover, 1889.

The church and society. G. KURTH, *Notger de Liège et la civilisation au Xe siècle*, 2 vols., Paris, 1905. M. DMITREWSKI, *Die christliche freiwillige Armut vom Ursprung bis zum 12 Jahrhundert*, Berlin, 1913 (Abhandlungen zur mittleren und neueren Geschichte, 53). S. R. MAITLAND, *The dark ages*.

Life of the clergy. H. C. LEA, *An historical sketch of sacerdotal celibacy in the Christian church*, 2 vols., 3rd and enlarged edition, New York, 1907, chs. I–XII. A. DRESDNER, *Kultur- und Sittengeschichte der italienischen Geistlichkeit*, Breslau, 1890. W. E. H. LECKY, *History of European morals*. L. ZÖPF, *Das Heiligenleben im 10 Jahrhundert*, Leipzig, 1908 (Beiträge zur Kulturgeschichte, I).

Romuald. W. FRANKE, *Romuald v. Camaldoli und seine Reformtätigkeit zur Zeit Ottos III*, Berlin, 1913.

Peter Damian. R. BIRON, *Saint Pierre Damien (1007–1042)*, Paris, 1908.

Original sources. The great collections of material are listed above, nos. **953–964**. See especially the *Liber pontificalis*, no. **959** note. The best edition of the famous False Decretals is that by P. HINSCHIUS, *Decretales pseudo-Isidorianae et capitula Angilramni*, Leipzig, 1863. *Charters and records of the ancient Abbey of Cluni, 1077–1534*, edited by G. DUCKETT, 2 vols., London, 1888, has a good historical introduction. *Bibliotheca symbolica ecclesiae universalis: the creeds of Christendom*, with a history and critical notes, edited by P. SCHAFF, 3 vols., 4th edition, revised and enlarged, New York, 1905, contains the original texts with translations into English. *Bibliothek der Symbole und Glaubensregeln der alten Kirche*, edited by A. HAHN, 3rd edition, Breslau, 1897.

Bibliographies. The general bibliographies for church history are listed above, nos. **49–55**.

XVI. THE INVESTITURE STRIFE, 1056–1122

A. OUTLINE

1. This first phase of the irrepressible conflict between the empire and papacy grew out of a sincere and well-nigh universal movement to reform the papacy and the church. As soon as the papacy became powerful and dignified, its high claims to power

clashed with those of the emperor as well as of all other temporal rulers. The importance of this dramatic duel between an emperor and a pope has been unduly exaggerated in modern books due to the painstaking research and the voluminous writings of recent German historians.

2. The grand period of the papal monarchy lay between 1073, the accession of Gregory VII, and 1303, the death of Boniface VIII.

3. The minority of the emperor Henry IV, 1056–1072. Weakness of the regent, the empress Agnes, 1056–1062. Strength of the nobles, especially the ecclesiastical lords, Anno, archbishop of Cologne, and Adalbert, archbishop of Bremen.

4. The youth of Hildebrand. Born between 1020 and 1025 in the village of Rovaco near Soana in Tuscany. He was of humble origin, probably the son of a peasant, and had a very unprepossessing personality. Educated in Rome at the time when the papacy was utterly degraded. Became the chaplain of pope Gregory VI, who was deposed in 1046. Hildebrand never was a monk in Cluny.

5. Hildebrand the power behind the papal chair. He was a cardinal-subdeacon in Rome under pope Leo IX, 1048–1054. In 1054 he was in France as a papal legate. Victor II, 1054–1057, Stephen IX, 1057–1058, and Nicholas II, 1059–1061, were practically nominated by him. The alliance with the Normans, by the treaty of Melfi, 1059, and the decree of 1059 which placed the election of the popes in the hands of a college of cardinals, were largely his work. In 1059 Hildebrand was made archdeacon of the Roman church, and Alexander II, 1061–1073, made him chancellor of the apostolic see. The *Patarini* in Lombardy, and Matilda, countess of Tuscany, strengthened the papacy in the north of Italy as did the Normans in the south.

6. The chief evils in the church which confronted Hildebrand: simony, marriage of the clergy, lay investiture.

7. Hildebrand became pope Gregory VII in 1073. His uncanonical election. His character and his ideal of papal power. The *Dictatus papae*. Troubles at the beginning of his pontificate.

8. The duel between Gregory VII and Henry IV. The general decree against simony and lay investiture in the synod of Rome, 1075. Henry IV and his German bishops deposed the pope at the council at Worms in 1076. Thereupon the pope excommunicated and deposed the emperor at the Vatican synod of 1076. The famous scene at Canossa, 1077, where Henry IV was absolved by Gregory VII. Duke Rudolf of Swabia was elected anti-king. Henry's excommunication and deposition renewed in 1080. Clement III was elected anti-pope in 1080 and crowned Henry IV emperor

in Rome in 1084. Upon the death of Rudolf of Swabia, Herman of Luxenburg succeeded him as anti-king. Henry IV beseiged Gregory VII in Rome. The pope was rescued by Robert Guiscard and his Normans, who sacked Rome in 1084. Gregory left Rome with the Normans and died in exile at Salerno in 1085.

9. The relations of Gregory VII with other princes of western Europe. His relations with the eastern emperor who feared the Turks and addressed Gregory VII for help in 1074.

10. The continuance of the struggle between Henry IV and popes Victor III, 1086–1087, and Urban II, 1088–1099. The preaching of the first crusade by Urban II at Clermont, in 1095, diverted interest from the investiture contest. Paschal II, 1099–1118, renewed Henry's excommunication. Revolt of the Saxons led by his rebel son, also named Henry. Sad end of the excommunicated Henry IV, who died in Liège, 1106.

11. Echoes of the investiture strife outside of Germany and Italy. Anselm of Canterbury.

12. Henry V, 1106–1125, and his contests with the papacy. The compromise of 1111. Pope Paschal II renounced the temporalities of the church and crowned Henry V emperor in St. Peter's, but soon after repudiated these rash concessions. Finally when Calixtus II, 1119–1124, was pope, the great difficulty was compromised by the concordat of Worms in 1122.

13. The inevitable sequel of strife between the empire and the papacy.

14. Popes, 1054–1124.

Victor II, 1054–1057	Victor III, 1086–1087
Stephen IX, 1057–1058	Urban II, 1088–1099
Benedict X, 1058–1059	Paschal II, 1099–1118
Nicholas II, 1059–1061	Gelasius II, 1118–1119
Alexander II, 1061–1073	Calixtus II, 1119–1124
Gregory VII, 1073–1085 (Hildebrand)	

B. Special Recommendations for Reading

Brief general accounts. EMERTON, *Mediaeval Europe*, ch. VIII. TOUT, *Empire and papacy*, ch. VI. BRYCE, *Holy Roman empire*, ch. X. BARRY, *Papal monarchy*, chs. XIII–XIV. VILLARI, *Mediaeval Italy*, 169–203. FLICK, *Rise of the mediaeval church*, chs. XVIII–XIX. W. MILLER, *Mediaeval Rome*, ch. I. LEA, *History of sacerdotal celibacy*, I, ch. XIV, treats the subject of celibacy in the time of Hildebrand.

Longer general accounts. D. J. MEDLEY, *The church and the empire 1003–1304*, New York, 1910, chs. I–III. LAVISSE and RAM-

BAUD, *Histoire générale*, II, ch. II. MILMAN, *Latin Christianity*, IV, chs. I–III. GREGOROVIUS, *History of Rome in the middle ages*, IV, part I, chs. III–VI. HENDERSON, *A history of Germany in the middle ages*, chs. XII–XIV. STUBBS, *Germany in the early middle ages*, chs. IX–X.

Biographies of Hildebrand. A. H. MATHEW, *The life and times of Hildebrand, pope Gregory VII*, London, 1910. W. STEPHENS, *Hildebrand and his times*, New York, 1888. M. R. VINCENT, *Age of Hildebrand*, New York, 1896. MANN, *Lives of the popes*, VII.

Original sources. All the "source books" contain a good deal of illustrative material. DUNCALF and KREY, *Parallel source problems in medieval history*, 29–91, have translated many contemporary accounts of the famous scene at Canossa. The violent letters which passed between pope Gregory VII and the emperor Henry IV, along with much additional material, may be found in HENDERSON, *Select documents*, 351–409; ROBINSON, *Readings*, I, 266–295; THATCHER and MCNEAL, *Source book*, 121–166; and OGG, *Source book*, 261–281.

Maps. SHEPHERD, *Atlas*, 62–63, 64, 66–67.

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General books. The general histories of the church are listed above, nos. **395–498.** The books on the medieval empire, nos. **499–507,** especially **501,** and those on Germany, nos. **560–598,** and Italy, nos. **599–621** above, are especially useful.

General accounts. M. MANITIUS, *Deutsche Geschichte*, 911–1125. A. HAUCK, *Kirchengeschichte Deutschlands*, III. BAXMANN, *Die Politik der Päpste*, II. Z. N. BROOK, *The so-called investiture struggle of the eleventh century*, Rome, 1913. T. GREENWOOD, *Cathedra Petri*, IV, 139–678. J. HERGENRÖTHER, *Katholische Kirche und christlicher Staat in ihrer geschichtlichen Entwickelung und in Beziehung auf die Fragen der Gegenwart*, 2nd edition, Freiburg, 1876, translated into English, *Catholic church and Christian state*, I, 380ff. J. v. PFLUGK-HARTTUNG, *Die Papstwahlen und Kaisertum, 1046–1328*, Gotha, 1908.

Gregory VII. W. MARTENS, *Gregor VII: sein Leben und Wirken*, 2 vols., Leipzig, 1894. O. L'abbé DELARC, *Saint Grégoire VII et la réforme de l'église au XIe siècle*, 3 vols., and an index, Paris, 1889–1890. A. F. GFRÖRER, *Papst Gregorius VII und sein Zeitalter*, 7 vols., and index, Schaffhausen, 1859–64, is distinctly Roman catholic in tone and very polemical. J. BRUGERETTE, *Grégoire VII et la réforme du XIe siècle*, Paris, 1906. A. F. VILLEMAIN, *Histoire de Gregoire VII*, 2 vols., Paris, 1873; translated into English, *The*

life of Gregory VII, 2 vols., London, 1874. E. LANGERON, *Léglise au moyen âge: Grégoire VII et les origines de la doctrine ultramontaine*, 2nd edition, Paris, 1874. The first seriously critical work on Gregory VII was J. VOIGT, *Hildebrand als Papst Gregorius VII und sein Zeitalter*, Weimar, 1815, 2nd edition, 1846, translated into French with additions by l'abbé JAGER, *Histoire du pape Grégoire VII et de son siècle*, 4th edition, 2 vols., Paris, 1854. C. MIRBT, *Die Wahl Gregors VII*, Marburg, 1892.

Dictatus papae. The latest word about the register of Gregory VII, including the famous *Dictatus papae*, is in R. L. POOLE, *Lectures on the papal chancery*, ch. VI. See the literature quoted in his footnotes and in DAHLMANN-WAITZ, *Quellenkunde*, no. 4928.

Canossa. W. SACHSE, *Canossa: historische Untersuchung*, Leipzig, 1896. R. FRIEDRICH, *Studien zur Vorgeschichte von Canossa*, 2 parts, Hamburg, 1905–1908. For other special works on the famous scene at Canossa see DAHLMANN-WAITZ, *Quellenkunde*, no. 5007.

Gregory VII and the Byzantine empire. W. NORDEN, *Das Papsttum und Byzanz*, 38–46.

Henry IV. G. MEYER V. KNONAU, *Jahrbücher des deutschen Reichs unter Heinrich IV und Heinrich V*, 7 vols., Leipzig, 1890–1909, part of no. 570 above. E. HÖHNE, *Kaiser Heinrich IV: sein Leben und seine Kämpfe 1050–1106, nach dem Urteile seiner deutschen Zeitgenossen*, Gütersloh, 1906. T. LINDNER, *Kaiser Heinrich IV*, Berlin, 1881. H. FLOTO, *Kaiser Heinrich der Vierte und sein Zeitalter*, 2 vols., Stuttgart, 1855–56, defends Henry IV against the accusations of pope Gregory VII. O. SCHUMANN, *Die päpstlichen Legaten in Deutschland zur Zeit Heinrichs IV und Heinrichs V (1056–1125)*, Marburg, 1912 (dissertation).

Henry V. G. PEISER, *Der deutsche Investiturstreit unter Kaiser Heinrich V bis zu dem päpstlichen Privileg vom 13 April, 1111*, Berlin, 1883.

Investiture. F. X. BARTH, *Hildebert von Lavardin (1056–1133) und das Recht der kirchlichen Stellenbesetzung*, Stuttgart, 1906, parts 34–36 of no. 491 above. H. FEIERABEND, *Die politische Stellung der deutschen Reichsabteien während des Investiturstreites*, Breslau, 1913 (Historische Untersuchungen, III).

Investiture strife in France. B. MONOD, *Essai sur les rapports de Pascal II avec Philippe I, 1099–1108*, Paris, 1907, part 164 of no. 888 above.

Polemical literature concerning investiture. J. DE GHELLINCK, "La littérature polémique durant la querelle des investitures," in *Revue des questions historiques*, XCIII (1913), 71–89. The fundamental work on the subject is C. MIRBT, *Die Publizistik im Zeit-*

alter Gregors VII, Leipzig, 1894. It should be supplemented by L. SALTET, *Les réordinations: étude sur le sacrement de l'ordre*, Paris, 1907. A. FLICHE, *Etudes sur la polémique religieuse à l'époque de Grégoire VII: les prégrégoriens*, Paris, 1916. For the vast mass of controversial pamphlet literature which has come down to us see DAHLMANN-WAITZ, *Quellenkunde*, no. 4925. See also M. T. STEAD, "Manegold of Lautenbach," in *English historical review*, XXIX (1914), 1–15, and A. SCHARNAGL, *Der Begriff der Investitur in den Quellen nach der Literatur des Investiturstreits*, part 56 of no. 490 above.

Concordat of Worms, 1122. E. BERNHEIM, *Das Wormser Konkordat und seine Vorurkunden*, Breslau, 1906 (part 81 of Untersuchungen zur deutschen Staats- und Rechtsgeschichte, edited by O. GIERKE). For special literature on the Concordat of Worms of 1122 see DAHLMANN-WAITZ, *Quellenkunde*, no. 5039.

Matilda of Tuscany. NORA DUFF, *Matilda of Tuscany: la Gran Donna d'Italia*, London, 1909. E. HUDDY, *Matilda, countess of Tuscany*, London, 1906. A. OVERMANN, *Gräfin Mathilde von Tuscien, ihre Besitzungen, Geschichte ihres Guts, 1115–1230, und ihre Regesten*, Innsbruck, 1895.

Original sources. A very convenient collection of extracts has been edited by E. BERNHEIM, *Quellen zur Geschichte des Investiturstreites*, vol. I, 2nd edition, Leipzig, 1913, vol. II, 1907, part of no. 980 above. *A selection of the letters of Hildebrand*, edited by G. FINCH, London, 1853.

Bibliographies. By far the best bibliography for both original sources and secondary works is in DAHLMANN-WAITZ, *Quellenkunde*, nos. 4872–5039, but the general bibliographies for Germany, nos. 29–34, Italy, nos. 37–41, and the church, nos. 49–55 above, are all useful.

XVII. THE BYZANTINE EMPIRE FROM THE DEATH OF JUSTINIAN, 565, TO THE FIRST CRUSADE, 1095

A. OUTLINE

1. The place of Constantinople and the Byzantine empire in European history has been indicated in outline III above.

2. The work of Justinian was ruined by his immediate successors. The Avars established themselves in Pannonia. The Lombards invaded Italy in 568. The Slavs crossed the Danube and moved into the Balkan peninsula. The Persian wars dragged on until 591, and were resumed again in 603. The rebellion of the

uncultured cut-throat Phocas in 602 illustrated the utter degradation of the empire. He was recognized, however, by Pope Gregory the Great.

3. Heraclius, 610–641, and the Persians. Under Chosroes they captured Jerusalem in 614 and in 616 overran Egypt. In 617 Chalcedon fell. The church and the emperor now declared a crusade against the Persian fire-worshippers. Persians, Avars, and Slavs made a combined but unsuccessful attack on Constantinople in 626. By the peace of 628 with Persia the boundaries of the empire were restored.

4. The Heraclian dynasty and the Mohammedans, 610–717. In this period the Persian menace gave way to a still greater one, namely, Islam. In 637 Jerusalem was taken by the Moslems. Not only Syria but Egypt and all northern Africa soon fell into the hands of the Mohammedans. Relations of Constans II and Constantine IV with Italy and Sicily. The two great sieges of Constantinople in 673–677, and in 717–718, which formed a turning point in the relations between Christians and Mohammedans.

5. Byzantine civilization and administration under the Heraclian dynasty. Latin practically disappeared in the east and the empire became virtually Greek. Decline of Greek learning co-eval with the decline of Latin learning in the west in Merovingian times. The new provinces called "themes" of military origin. Greek diplomacy. Poor fiscal administration. Reorganization of the army. Main stress now laid on the cavalry. Remarkable advance of military tactics and theory. Development of a strong fleet under Constans II, 642–668. Liquid or marine fire, which we call "Greek fire."

6. The iconoclastic period, 717–867. Image worship among Greek Christians was made the mark of taunts of the Mohammedans. In 726, the emperor Leo III issued his first edict against images. Opposition in both the Latin and Greek churches. Iconoclasm sactioned by the council of Constantinople in 753. Reaction in favor of images under Constantine and Irene, 780–802. Leo V, 813–820, again denounced image worship, but those who favored images won a final victory in 843 under Theodora and Michael III, 842–867. Echoes of the iconoclastic controversy in the west.

7. Political history in the iconoclastic period, 717–867. The internal reforms of Leo III, 717–740. Increasing oriental influence. Desultory warfare with the Saracens. The Lombards ended the exarchate of Ravenna in 750. Shortly after, the eastern emperors definitely lost Rome at the hands of the Franks. Relations of Charlemagne with the Byzantine empire in the time of Constantine

and Irene. Early in the ninth century the rising power of the Bulgarians became a menace. In 826 a band of Moslem adventurers from Spain took Crete.

8. The Byzantine empire at its height under the Macedonian dynasty, 867–1057. Basil I and his successor reconquered southern Italy, 875–894, but in 878 Syracuse fell into the hands of the Moors. A revival of learning began in the ninth century and Cyrillus and Methodius converted the Slavs (outline XI above). In the east, Crete was won back in 961, Antioch in 968, and Cyprus about the same time. The reign of Basil II, 963–1025, marks the culmination of the power and glory of the Byzantine empire. He subdued the Bulgarians, hence he is usually called Bulgaroctonus, "Slayer of Bulgarians." The Russians, who under Sviotoslav had seriously threatened Constantinople, were checked in 971 by John Zimisces and when Vladimir, the Clovis of Russia, was baptized about 990, Russia was opened to a flood of Byzantine influence. In 1054 came the practical separation between the Greek and Latin churches.

9. The rise of the Seljuk Turks. With the end of the Macedonian dynasty in 1057 there came a period of decline and turmoil such as that after the death of Justinian. This gave an opportunity for conquest to the nomad Seljuk Turks who had become Mohammedans and in 1055 occupied Bagdad and in 1076 entered Jerusalem. In 1071 the Turks under Alp Arslan defeated and took prisoner the emperor Romanus at the famous battle of Manzikert. In the same year the Normans took Bari from the Byzantines. In 1074 Michael VII appealed to pope Gregory VII for help against the Turks. The Turks captured Nicaea in 1080. Constantinople seemed to be doomed.

10. Alexius Comnenus, 1081–1118, saved the empire by his statesmanship. He kept at bay the Seljuk Turks, the Petchenegs, and the Normans, who, under Robert Guiscard, attacked him, 1081–1085, but were beaten back with the help of Venice. Venice was granted exceptional commercial privileges in the Levant. In 1095 Alexius appealed to pope Urban II for aid and that ushered in the crusades which completely transformed the Byzantine empire.

11. Byzantine emperors, 565–1118.

Justinianean dynasty

(1) Justin II, 565–578
(2) Tiberius II, 578–582
(3) Maurice, 582–602
Phocas, 602–610

Heraclian dynasty, 610–711

(1) Heraclius, 610–641
(2) Constantine III, 641
(3) Heracleonas, 641–642
(4) Constans II, 642–668
(5) Constantine IV, 668–685
(6) Justinian II, 685–695
[Leontius, 695–698
Tiberius II, 698–705]
(6) Justinian II (restored), 705–711
Philip Bardanes, 711–713
Anastasius II, 713–716
Theodosius III, 716–717

Isaurian (Syrian) dynasty, 717–802

(1) Leo III, 717–740
(2) Constantine V, 740–775
(3) Leo IV, 775–780
(4) Constantine VI, 780–797
(5) Irene, 797–802
Nicephorus I, 802–811
Stauracius, 811
Michel I, 811–813
Leo V (Armenian), 813–820

Phrygian or Armorian dynasty, 820–867

(1) Michael II, 820–829
(2) Theophilus, 829–842
(3) Michael III, 842–867

Macedonian dynasty, 867–1057

(1) Basil I, 867–886
(2) Leo VI and Alexander, 886–912
(3) Constantine VII (Porphyrogennetos), 912–959
(4) Romanus I, 920–944
(5) Romanus II, 959–963
(6) Basil II (Bulgaroctonus) and Constantine VIII, 963–1025
Nicephorus II (Phocas), 963–969
John Zimisces, 969–976
(7) Constantine VIII (sole ruler), 1025–1028
(8) Romanus III, 1028–1034
(9) Michael IV, 1034–1041
(10) Michael V, 1041–1042
(11) Constantine IX, 1042–1054

(12) Theodora, 1054–1056
(13) Michael VI, 1056–1057
Isaac I (Comnenus), 1057–1059
Constantine X, 1059–1067
Michael VII, Andronicus, and Constantine XI, 1067
Romanus IV, 1067–1071
Michael VII (sole ruler), 1071–1078
Nicephorus III, 1078–1081

Comnenian dynasty, 1081–1204

(1) Alexius I (nephew of Isaac I), 1081–1118

B. SPECIAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR READING

General surveys. OMAN, *Dark ages*, chs. IX, XII, XIV, XVIII, XXVIII, together with TOUT, *Empire and papacy*, ch. VII. LAVISSE and RAMBAUD, *Histoire générale*, I, 193–203, 625–687 (pp. 672–682 of this selection have been translated by MUNRO and SELLERY, *Medieval civilization*, 212–223, under the title "Byzantine civilization" [9th to 11th centuries]). BRYCE, *Holy Roman empire*, 4th edition, ch. XVII, "The east Roman empire." A somewhat longer account is in OMAN, *The Byzantine empire*, chs. IX–XX. The period to 717 is now treated in the *Cambridge medieval history*, II, ch. IX, "The successors of Justinian," and ch. XIII, "The successors of Heraclius to 717." The article "Roman empire, later" in the *Encyclopaedia Britannica* is written by J. B. BURY, the greatest English authority in this field.

Standard accounts in English. The best and most authoritative account of the period to 867 is J. B. BURY, *A history of the later Roman empire*, vol. II, together with his *A history of the eastern Roman empire, 802–867*. The first comprehensive history in English which met the requirement of modern historical scholarship was written by G. FINLAY, *History of Greece*, vol. II (see nos. **645** and **656** above). Until the time of FINLAY the English-speaking world drew its information about this period of Byzantine history largely from GIBBON, *Decline and fall*, chs. XLV, XLVI, XLVIII, LII, LIII, who was chiefly responsibly for a general misunderstanding of the true nature of the history of the eastern empire during these centuries when it did much service for western civilization.

Italy and the Byzantine empire after Justinian. P. VILLARI, *The barbarian invasions of Italy*, II, 274–374. DUDDEN, *Gregory the Great*, I, ch. VI, "Gregory at Constantinople," contains a good description of Constantinople at the end of the sixth century; see also, II, ch. X, for Gregory's relations with the churches of the east.

Byzantine warfare. OMAN, *Art of war*, 169–226, and H. DELBRÜCK, *Geschichte der Kriegskunst*, III, 194–209, should be read side by side if possible because DELBRÜCK differs from OMAN in some important points. The great siege of Constantinople in 717 is told in a popular way by E. A. FOORD, "The repulse of the Saracens from Europe," in *Contemporary review*, XCVI (1909), 327–341.

The Byzantine empire at its height. The glorious period about the year 1000 is described in a spirited way by J. B. BURY, "Roman emperors from Basil II to Isaac Komnênos," in *English historical review*, IV (1889), 41–64, 251–285.

Constitutional history. J. B. BURY, *The constitution of the later Roman empire*, Cambridge, 1910 (Creighton memorial lecture).

Byzantine scholarship. SANDYS, *History of classical scholarship*, I, chs. XXII, XXIII.

Original sources. HENDERSON, *Select documents*, 441–477, "Liutprand's report of his mission to Constantinople, 968A.D.". C. H. HASKINS, "A Canterbury Monk at Constantinople, c. 1090," in *English historical review*, XXV (1910), 292–295. E. W. BROOKS, "Byzantines and Arabs in the time of the early Abbasids," in *English historical review*, XV (1900), 728–747.

Maps. SHEPHERD, *Atlas*, 54–55, 58–59, 66–67. *Cambridge medieval history*, II, maps 18 and 25.

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General books. See nos. **643–679** above, and also the periodicals for Byzantine history, nos. **174–175** above, as well as the books on Byzantine literature, nos. **800–802** above.

General survey. The best handbook on things Byzantine is K. KRUMBACHER, *Geschichte der byzantinischen Literatur*, second edition, 1897. On pp. 911ff. there is a general survey of Byzantine history by H. GELZER, "Abriss der byzantinischen Kaisergeschichte."

Sicily and southern Italy and the Byzantine empire. B. PACE, *I barbari e i bizantini in Sicilia: studi sulla storia dell' isola dal sec. V al IX*, Palermo, 1911. J. GAY, *L'Italie méridionale et l'empire byzantin*, 867–1071, Paris, 1904, part 90 of no. **887** above.

Relations between the Greek East and the Latin West. N. JORGA, "Der lateinische Westen und der byzantinische Osten in ihrem Wechselbeziehungen während des Mittelalters: einige Gesichtspunkte," p. 89–99 in *Lipsiense: Ehrengabe Karl Lamprecht dargebracht*, Berlin, 1909. G. REVERDY, *Les relations de Childebert II et de Byzance*, Paris, 1913, is an extract from the *Revue historique*, CXIV (1913), 61–86. L. HARTMANN, *Ein Kapitel vom*

spätantiken und frühmittelalterlichen Staate, Stuttgart, 1913, is a short sketch of 24 pages which contrasts the Byzantine empire with the Lombard and Frankish kingdoms. C. TIEDE, *Quellenmässige Darstellung der Beziehungen Carls des Grossen zu Ost-Rom*, Rostock, 1892. A. GASQUET, *Études byzantines: l'empire byzantin et la monarchie franque*, Paris, 1888. O. HARNACK, *Die Beziehungen des fränkisch-italischen zum byzantinischen Reiche unter der Regierung Karls des Grossen und der späteren Kaiser karolingischen Stammes*, Göttingen, 1880. B. MYSTAKIDIS, *Byzantinisch-deutsche Beziehungen zur Zeit der Ottonen*, Stuttgart, 1891.

The Greek church. For books on the schism between the Greek and Latin churches and the iconoclastic controversy, see above, p. 177. A. FORTESCUE, *The orthodox eastern church*, London, 1907, third edition, 1911. A. H. HORE, *Eighteen centuries of the orthodox Greek church*, New York, 1899. J. PARGOIRE, *L'église byzantine de 527–847*, Paris, 1905. H. F. TOZER, *The church and the eastern empire*, new impression, London, New York, 1904. L. BRÉHIER, "L'hagiographie Byzantine des VIII^e^ et IX^e^ siècles à Constantinople et dans les provinces," in *Journal des savants*, August, October, 1916. A. P. STANLEY, *History of the eastern church*, 5th edition, London, 1883.

Administration. J. B. BURY, *The imperial administrative system in the ninth century, with a revised text of the Kletorologion of Philotheos*, London, 1911, II, part of no. 904 above, *Supplementary papers*, 1.

Byzantine warfare. J. B. BURY, *The naval policy of the Roman empire in relation to the western provinces from the seventh to the ninth centuries*, Palermo, 1910 (Centenario della nascità di M. Amari, 2). F. AUSSARESSES, *L'armée byzantine à la fin du VI siècle, d'après le Strategicon de l'Empereur Maurice*, Bordeaux, 1909 (Bibliothèque des Universités du Midi, fasc., 14).

Byzantine scholarship. L. LABORDE, *Les écoles de droit dans l'empire d'Orient*, Bordeaux, 1912. F. SCHEMMEL, *Die Hochschule von Konstantinopel vom 5 bis 11 Jahrhundert*, Berlin, ca. 1912.

Histories of various emperors arranged chronologically. K. GROH, *Geschichte des oströmischen Kaisers Justin II, nebst den Quellen*, Leipzig, 1889. A. PERNICE, *L'imperatore Eraclio: saggio di storia bizantina*, Florence, 1905. K. SCHENK, *Kaiser Leo III*, Halle, 1880. A. LOMBARD, *Etudes d'histoire byzantine: Constantin V, empereur des Romains (740–775)*, with a preface by C. DIEHL, Paris, 1902, part XVI of no. 889 above. A. VOGT, *Basile I^er^ empereur de Byzance et la civilisation byzantine à la fin du IX^e^ siècle*, Paris, 1908. A. RAMBAUD, *L'empire grec au X^e^ siècle: Constantin Porphyrogénète*, Paris,

1870. G. SCHLUMBERGER, *Un empereur Byzantin au 10e siècle: Nicéphore Phocas*, Paris, 1890. F. CHALANDON, *Alexis Comnène (1081–1118)*, Paris, 1900.

The Byzantine empire at its height. G. SCHLUMBERGER, *L'épopée byzantine à la fin du dixième siècle*, 3 vols., Paris, 1890–1905, covers the period 960–1057 and has excellent illustrations.

Byzantine history just before the crusades. C. NEUMANN, *Die Weltstellung des byzantinischen Reiches vor den Kreuzzügen*, Leipzig, 1894 (dissertation). W. FISCHER, *Studien zur byzantinischen Geschichte des elften Jahrhunderts*, Plauen, 1883.

Seljuk Turks. M. T. HOUTSMA, *Histoire des Seljoukides d'Asie Mineure d'après Ibn Bibi*, Leyden, 1903.

Original sources. The large collections of sources for Byzantine history are listed above, nos. **1002–1003.** The important collection of Byzantine coins in the British Museum is described and illustrated in W. WROTH, *Catalogue of the imperial Byzantine coins in the British Museum*, 2 vols., London, 1908.

Bibliographies. *Cambridge medieval history*, II, 747–757, 766–769. BURY, *History of the eastern Roman empire*, 493–510. KRUMBACHER, *Geschichte der byzantinischen Literatur*, 2nd edition, 1068ff.

XVIII. THE CULTURE OF THE EARLY MIDDLE AGES

A. OUTLINE

1. The gradual change from ancient to medieval modes of thought and learning. Christianity and the barbarian invaders as factors in this change.

2. The universality of the Latin language in western Europe. The decadence of Greek.

3. "The classical heritage" of the early middle ages.

4. The Christian ideal of life.

5. Books that were studied and written during this period.

6. Medieval schools before the rise of universities.

7. The illustrious part played by the British Isles in the history of learning from the fifth to the eighth centuries.

8. The age of Charlemagne.

9. Slow advancement of culture in Christian Europe from the ninth to the eleventh century. Contrast with the Mohammedan world.

10. The beginning of a new era towards the end of the eleventh century.

B. SPECIAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR READING

The best book on the transition from ancient to medieval conditions is S. DILL, *Roman society in the last century of the western empire*, London, 1898, 2nd edition, revised, 1910. After that, the best general guides in English are the two books by H. O. TAYLOR, *The Mediaeval mind*, and *The classical heritage of the middle ages*, New York, 1901, 3rd edition, 1911. MUNRO and SELLERY, *Medieval civilization*, is a collection of valuable miscellaneous extracts. For the period before Charlemagne, M. ROGER, *L'enseignement des lettres classiques d'Ausone à Alcuin*, Paris, 1905, is extremely useful. Much can be gleaned from LAVISSE, *Histoire de France* (see table of contents of each volume). Essential books for reference are SANDYS, *A history of classical scholarship;* and MANITIUS, *Geschichte der lateinischen Literatur des Mittelalters.*

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

For detailed outlines and bibliographies see part III, period I, below.

PERIOD II, 1100–1500

XIX. THE BEGINNING OF A NEW ERA IN THE HISTORY OF WESTERN EUROPE ABOUT 1100

A. Outline

Introduction. Current misconceptions concerning the middle ages.

"The twelfth century renaissance." The following were the main features of the new era:

1. Political: (1) The struggle for empire. (2) Losing struggle of the great feudal nobles with the rising kingdoms. Parliamentary machinery.

2. Religious: (1) Conflict between church and state. (2) New monastic movement, especially the mendicants. (3) Heresies. (4) Crusades. (5) The conciliar movement.

3. Social and economic: (1) Emancipation of the lower rural classes. (2) Growth of cities and commerce. (3) Geographical explorations and discoveries. (4) Crusades.

4. Intellectual and artistic: (1) Spirit of inquiry. (2) Better Latin literature. (3) New interest in classical Latin. (4) Some interest in Greek and other languages. (5) Revival of Roman law. (6) Revival of medicine. (7) Some interest in natural sciences. (8) Systematization of theology and philosophy. (9) Growth of universities. (10) Development of vernacular languages and literatures. (11) Gothic architecture.

B. Special Recommendations for Reading

Re-read the article "Middle ages" by Professor Shotwell, in the last edition of the *Encyclopaedia Britannica*. Read Lavisse, *Histoire de France*, II, part II, 203, and observe the scheme of this division called "La renaissance française." See also F. Harrison, *The meaning of history*, New York, 1908, chs. v, "A survey of the 13th century," first printed in the *Fortnightly review*, LVI (1891), 325–345.

XX. THE NORMANS

A. OUTLINE

1. The transformation of the Northmen in northern France into Normans in the tenth and eleventh centuries. The nature of the land which Rollo won as a dukedom about 911. Its history under the first six dukes. The influence of Frankish customs and institutions. The work of the Roman church and schools in Normandy. Mont St. Michel. The monastic school of Bec established in 1042 by Lanfranc who was followed by Anselm. Striking Norman characteristics.

2. The expansion of the duchy of Normandy into a Norman empire. Marriage of duke William with Matilda, daughter of the count of Flanders. Conquest of Maine, 1063. The famous conquest of England by William the Conqueror in 1066. Battle of Hastings. The Bayeux tapestry. Separation of England and Normandy at the death of William in 1087. They were reunited in 1106 under Henry I. His daughter, Matilda, married count Geoffrey of Anjou, who wrested Normandy from Stephen of Blois. Origin of the name "Angevin empire." Plantagenets. Geoffrey's son Henry became duke of Normandy in 1150, count of Anjou in 1151. In 1152 he married Eleanor, duchess of Aquitaine, divorced wife of king Louis VII of France, and thus became lord of Poitou, Aquitaine and Gascony. In 1154 he became king of England and was thus ruler of a large empire which straddled the English channel. "Occupying this international position, Henry must not be viewed, as he generally is, merely as an English king."—Haskins.

3. Norman administration in England and the continent, especially the fiscal and judicial system. *The Dialogue on the Exchequer,* written by Richard, the treasurer of Henry II, in 1178–1179. The Norman jury.

4. Break-up of the Norman empire. Wars of Henry II with king Philip of France and with his faithless sons. His tragic death at Chinon in 1189. He was succeeded by his son Richard the Lion-Hearted, 1189–1199. In spite of the fact that he and king Philip of France went on the third crusade together, they soon came to blows on account of Richard's possessions on the continent which Philip coveted. Château Gaillard, Richard's strong castle on the Seine. King John's quarrel with his suzereign, king Philip of France. The murder of Arthur, 1203. Capture of Château Gaillard in 1204. In 1204 John lost Normandy and all his lands north of the Loire, which now were attached directly to the French crown. That marked the end of the Norman empire.

5. The Normans in southern Italy. The roaming spirit of the Normans. Norman pilgrims to the Holy Land and other famous shrines. The shrine of St. Michael on Monte Gargano in Italy. There is a record of Normans at this spot as early as 1016. Their dealings with Greeks and Saracens and Latins in southern Italy. Aversa founded in 1030. The sons of Tancred of Hauteville in Italy, especially Roger and Robert Guiscard (died 1085). Their relations with the papacy. The defeat of the papal army at Civitate, in 1053. The treaty of Melfi between Robert Guiscard and pope Nicholas II in 1059. Robert was acknowledged as a duke by the papacy. Monte Cassino and the Normans. Gregory VII and the Normans. The sack of Rome by the Normans in 1084. Death of Gregory VII among the Normans in Salerno in 1085, in which year Robert Guiscard also died.

6. Conquest of Sicily by the Normans, 1061–1091. The island under the rule of the Saracens. Count Roger captured Messina in 1061, Palermo in 1072. In 1091 Noto, the last Saracen fastness fell to Roger (died 1101). Relations of Roger with the papacy.

7. The Normans as a Mediterranean power. The development of a strong fleet. Robert Guiscard and the Byzantine empire. His conquests in the Balkan peninsula. The opposition of Venice. The Normans on the first crusade, Bohemond (lord of Antioch), and Tancred. Normans in Spain and in northern Africa.

8. The Norman Kingdom of the Two Sicilies. In 1130 Roger II had united all the Norman possessions in Italy and Sicily and was crowned king by the pope. Palermo became the capital of the new kingdom. The Norman power and civilization was at its height in the reign of Roger, who died in 1154. Decline under his successors, William I, 1154–1166, and William II, 1166–1189. Wars of the latter with Frederick Barbarossa. Marriage of the heiress of the Norman kingdom, Constance, daughter of Roger II, with Henry VI. For the history of the kingdom under the Hohenstaufen, see outline XXII below.

9. Norman administration and culture in Sicily and southern Italy. Mingling of Byzantine, Mohammedan, Jewish, and Latin civilization in Sicily. The study of Greek, and translations from the Greek into Latin. The adaptability of the Norman conquerors. Their tolerance. The splendor of Palermo. Relations of the Norman kingdom in the Mediterranean with the Norman empire in the north. Consequent close touch of England with Mediterranean civilization. Similarity of institutions in Sicily and England.

10. The ultimate absorption of the Normans by the native population in all the lands where they ruled in the middle ages.

11. Dukes of Normandy.
Rolf (Rollo), 911–927
William (Longsword), 927–943
Richard (The Fearless), 943–996
Richard (The Good), 996–1026
Richard III, 1026–1028
Robert (The Magnificent), 1029–1035
William the Conqueror, 1035–1087
Robert II, 1087–1106
William (Rufus), regent, 1096–1100
Henry I, 1106–1135
Stephen of Blois, 1135–1144
Geoffrey, Count of Anjou and Maine, 1144–1150
Henry II, 1150–1189
Richard (The Lion-Hearted), 1189–1199
John, 1199–1204, when Normandy was conquered by the king of France.

12. Sons of Tancred of Hauteville of Normandy.
(1) William of the Iron Arm, lord of Apulia, died 1046.
(2) Drogo, Count of Apulia, died 1051.
(3) Humphrey, Count of Apulia, died 1057.
(4) Robert Guiscard, Duke of Apulia, died 1085.
(5) Roger I, Count of Sicily, died 1101.

13. Norman kings of the Kingdom of the Two Sicilies.
Roger II, son of Roger I, first king of Sicily, 1130, died 1154.
William I, 1154–1166.
William II, 1166–1189.
Henry VI, the Hohenstaufen, married Constance, daughter of Roger II, 1189–1197.
Frederick II, 1197–1250.

B. SPECIAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR READING

General surveys. By far the best account in any language is C. H. HASKINS, *The Normans in European history*, Boston and New York, 1915. The best brief sketch is in LAVISSE, *Histoire de France*, II, part II, 53–57, 87–106. In TOUT, *Empire and papacy*, information about the Normans is scattered in the following pages, 83–86, 103–109, 114–119, 135, 174–175. In the *Encyclopaedia Britannica* the article on "Normandy" is by R. LATOUCHE; that on the "Normans" by E. A. FREEMAN. The history of the Normans in England is not treated in detail in this *Guide*, but attention may be called to two general books which treat the subject chiefly from that aspect: A. H. JOHNSON, *The Normans in Europe*, chs. VI–XVII;

and SARAH O. JEWETT, *The Normans: told chiefly in relation to their conquest of England.* A short popular account in German is H. DONDORFF, "Die Normannen und ihre Bedeutung für das europäische Kulturleben im Mittelalter," in *Sammlung gemeinverständlicher wissenschaftlicher Vorträge,* edited by R. VIRCHOW and F. v. HOLTZENDORFF, Berlin, 1866–1901, X (1875), 259–298.

Normans in Sicily and southern Italy. In an English translation the best short account is P. VILLARI, *Mediaeval Italy,* 126–133, 150–161, 179–203, 241–252. C. H. HASKINS, "England and Sicily in the twelfth century," in *English historical review,* XXVI (1911), 433–447. E. A. FREEMAN, "The Normans at Palermo," in his *Historical essays,* third series, 437–476. E. CURTIS, *Roger of Sicily and the Normans in lower Italy, 1016–1154,* New York, 1912. F. M. CRAWFORD, *The rulers of the south, Sicily, Calabria, Malta,* 2 vols., New York, 1901, II, 124–333. COTTERILL, *Medieval Italy,* 399–412. GIBBON, *Decline and fall,* ch. LVI.

Mont St. Michel. H. ADAMS, *Mont-Saint-Michel and Chartres,* Boston, 1913. The shrine of Saint Michel on Monte Gargano in Italy is described by E. GOTHEIN, *Die Culturentwickelung Süd-Italiens,* Breslau, 1886, pp. 41–111.

Normans in Spain. R. DOZY, *Recherches sur l'histoire et la littérature de l'Espagne,* II, 332–371.

Original sources. For reproductions of the famous Bayeux tapestry see no. 202 above. The well-known *Dialogue of the Exchequer* is translated in HENDERSON, *Select documents,* 20–134. CECILIA WAERN, *Mediaeval Sicily,* New York, 1911, is largely devoted to Norman Sicily. It is included under this heading because ch. IV contains translations from contemporary sources.

Maps. The only satisfactory map is in MEYERS *Historischer Handatlas,* 25. See also SHEPHERD, *Atlas,* 61, 65, 66–67, 69; and DOW, *Atlas,* 13 (inset).

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General books. Information concerning the Normans is almost hopelessly scattered in the general books on medieval history. The general histories of France, nos. **508–548** above, and Italy, nos. **599–621** above are especially useful. See also nos. **360–361** above.

Normandy. H. PRENTOUT, *Essai sur les origines et la fondation du duché de Normandie,* Paris, 1911; and his, *La Normandie,* Paris, 1910 (Les régions de la France, VII, Publications de la Revue de synthèse historique); and his recent *Etude critique sur Dudon de Saint-Quentin et son Histoire des premiers ducs Normands,* Paris, 1916. A. ALBERT-PETIT, *Histoire de Normandie,* 6th edition, Paris,

1912. G. MONOD, *Le rôle de la Normandie dans l'histoire de France*, Paris, 1911. F. M. POWICKE, *The loss of Normandy*, Manchester, 1913. J. Abbé TOUFLET, *Le Millénaire de la Normandie: souvenirs, études*, Rouen, 1913, is an illustrated collection of popular commemorative essays. There is an important introduction in L. DELISLE, *Recueil des actes de Henri II, roi d'Angleterre et duc de Normandie, concernant les provinces françaises et les affaires de France*, Paris, 1909. DELISLE'S *Etude sur la condition des classes agricoles en Normandie*, Évreux, 1851, reprinted 1906, is still our most thorough study of life in Normandy. A. LABUTTE, *Histoire des ducs de Normandie jusqu'à la mort de Guillaume le Conquérant*, 2nd edition, Paris, 1866. F. PALGRAVE, *The history of Normandy and of England*, 2 vols., London, 1851–1857, for a long time was the standard work in English on Normandy. It was superseded by the works of Freeman and others whose books are not listed in this *Guide* and should be sought for in GROSS' *Sources and literature of English history*. H. BÖHMER, *Kirche und Staat in England und in der Normandie im 11 und 12 Jahrhundert*, Leipzig, 1899, extends to 1154. Professor HASKINS called attention to R. N. SAUVAGE, *L'abbaye de Saint-Martin de Troarn au diocèse Bayeux des origines au seizième siècle*, Caen, 1911, as the best study of a Norman monastery. T. A. COOK, *The story of Rouen*, London, 1905. C. ENLART, *Rouen*, Paris, 1910 (Les villes d'art célèbres). H. PRENTOUT, *Caen et Bayeux*, Paris, 1909.

Norman institutions. C. H. HASKINS, *Studies in Norman institutions*, Harvard University Press, 1917, incorporates studies on Norman matters which appeared in the *English historical review* and the *American historical review*. On Norman law see especially chs. VII–IX of H. BRUNNER, *Die Entstehung der Schwurgerichte*, Berlin, 1872; also book I, ch. III of F. POLLOCK and F. W. MAITLAND, *The history of English law*, 2 vols., Cambridge, 1895, 2nd edition, 1899; and L. VALIN, *Le duc de Normandie et sa cour (912–1204): étude d'histoire juridique*, Paris, 1910, to be supplemented by R. DE FRÉVILLE, "Étude sur l'organisation judiciaire en Normandie au XII^e^ et XIII^e^ siècles," in *Nouvelle revue historique de droit*, 1912, pp. 681–736. The following are recent studies on Norman institutions in Sicily and Italy: H. NIESE, *Die Gesetzgebung der normanischen Dynastie im Regnum Siciliae*, Halle, 1910. EVELYN JAMISON, *The Norman administration of Apulia and Capua, more especially under Roger I and William I, 1127–1166* (Papers of the British school at Rome, 1913, VI, no. 6). M. HOFMANN, *Die Stellung des Königs von Sizilien nach den Assisen von Ariano (1140)*, Münster, 1915. C. A. GARUFI, "Sull' ordinamento amministrativo Normanno in Sicilia:

exhiquier o diwan?'' in *Archivio storico italiano*, 5th series, XXVII (1901), 225–263.

Bayeux tapestry. For literature on the Bayeux tapestry see C. GROSS, *Sources and literature*, no. 2139, and, in addition, P. LAUER, ''Le poème de Baudri de Bourgueil adressé à Adèle, fille de Guillaume le Conquérant, et la date de la tapisserie de Bayeux,'' in *Mélanges d'histoire offerts à Charles Bémont*, 43–58; J. B. BERTRAND, *Notice historique sur la tapisserie brodée de la reine Mathilde, épouse de Guillaume le Conquérant, exposée dans la galerie de la bibliothèque de Bayeux*, Bayeux, 1914; and C. GARNIER, *La tapisserie de la reine Mathilde: notice historique et descriptive, textes français et anglais*, Bayeux, 1914.

Normans in Sicily and southern Italy. On this phase of the history of the Normans there is a good deal of literature. The following are the most important general surveys of large portions of the field: F. CHALANDON, *Histoire de la domination normande en Italie et en Sicile, 1009–1194*, 2 vols., Paris, 1907; L. VON HEINEMANN, *Geschichte der Normannen in Unteritalien und Sicilien bis zum Aussterben des normannischen Königshauses*, vol. I, to 1085, Leipzig, 1894; O. DELARC, *Les Normands en Italie, depuis les premières invasions jusqu'à l'avènement de S. Grégoire VII (859–862, 1016–1073)*, Paris, 1883; J. W. BARLOW, *Short history of the Normans in southern Europe*, London, 1886; A. F. VON SCHACK, *Geschichte der Normannen in Sicilien*, 2 vols., Stuttgart, 1889; A. PALOMES, *La storia di li Nurmanni 'n Sicilia*, 4 vols., Palermo, 1883–1887; H. OTTENDORFF, *Die Regierung der beiden letzten Normannenkönige, Tancreds und Wilhelms III von Sizilien und ihre Kämpfe gegen Kaiser Heinrich VI*, Bonn, 1899; G. B. SIRAGUSA, *Il regno di Guglielmo I in Sicilia*, 2 vols., Palermo, 1885–1886.

The standard work on the first Norman king in the south is E. CASPAR, *Roger II (1101–1154) und die Gründung der normannisch-sicilianischen Monarchie*, Innsbruck, 1904. R. STRAUS, *Die Juden im Königreich Sizilien unter Normannen und Staufern*, Heidelberg, 1910. On Norman art see E. BERTAUX, *L'art dans l'Italie méridionale*, vol. I, Paris, 1904. C. DIEHL, *L'art byzantin dans l'Italie méridionale*, Paris, 1894; and his *Palerme et Syracuse*, Paris, 1907. DI GIOVANNI, *La topografia antica di Palermo dal secolo 10 al 15*, 2 vols., Palermo, 1889–1890. N. MACCARRONE, *La vita del latino in Sicilia fino all' età normanna*, Florence, 1915. Popular books which attempt to revive interest in Norman Sicily and Italy are numerous; the following are examples: M. S. BRIGGS, *In the heel of Italy: a study of an unknown city* [Lecce], London, 1910; and N. DOUGLAS, *Old Calabria*, London, 1915.

Monte Cassino and the Normans. R. PALMAROCCHI, *L'abbazia di Montecassino et la conquista normanna*, Rome, 1913. See also the short but valuable introduction to E. A. LOEW, *The Beneventan script.*

The Normans and the papacy. A. WINCKLER, "Gregor VII und die Normannen," in vol X (1875), 605–643, of *Sammlung gemeinverständlicher wissenschaftlicher Vorträge.* A. WAGNER, *Die unteritalischen Normannen und das Papstthum, von Victor III bis Hadrian IV (1086–1156)*, Breslau, 1887.

The Normans and the Byzantine empire. J. GAY, *L'Italie méridionale et l'empire byzantin*, Paris, 1904. G. L. F. TAFEL, *Komnenen und Normannen: Beiträge zur Erforschung ihrer Geschichte im verdeutschten und erläuterten Urkunden des zwölften und dreizehnten Jahrhunderts aus dem Griechischen*, Ulm, 1852, 2nd edition, part II, Stuttgart, 1870. C. SCHWARTZ, *Die Feldzüge Robert Guiscard's gegen das byzantinische Reich*, Fulda, 1854 (Programm). W. COHN, *Die Geschichte der normannisch-sicilischen Flotte*, Breslau, 1910. G. SCHLUMBERGER, "Deux chefs normands des armées byzantines," in *Revue historique*, XVI (1881), 289–303. See also outline XVIII above.

Normans in Syria. B. KUGLER, *Boemund und Tankred*, Tübingen, 1862. G. REY, in *Revue de l'Orient latin*, IV (1896), 321–407; VIII (1900), 116–157. E. KÜHNE, *Geschichte des Fürstentums Antiochia unter normannischen Heerschaft (1098–1130)*, Berlin, 1897 (Programm). O. VON SYDOW, *Tancred: ein Lebensbild aus den Zeiten der Kreuzzüge*, Leipzig, 1880.

Original sources. The general collections for France and Belgium, nos. **965–977** above, and for Italy, nos. **988–994** above, especially no. **988**, contain much material valuable for a study of the Normans. *Historiae Normannorum scriptores antiqui . . . 838–1220*, edited by A. DUCHESNE, Paris, 1619. The publications of the Société de l'histoire de Normandie, Rouen, 1870ff., contain source materials; recent publications in this set are: L. MARX, *Gesta normannorum ducum* of WILLIAM of JUMIÈGES, Paris, 1914; and L. HALPHEN and R. POUPARDIN, *Chroniques des comtes d'Anjou et des seigneurs d'Amboise*, Paris, 1914. A rather important source for the Normans in the south is AMATUS (AIMÉ) OF MONTE CASSINO, *L'ystoire de li Normant* [to 1078], edited by O. DELARC, Rouen, 1892. K. A. KEHR, *Die Urkunden der normannisch-sicilischen Könige: eine diplomatische Untersuchung*, Innsbruck, 1902, is a very careful diplomatic study of the archive material for the Normans in Sicily.

Bibliographies. The most serviceable bibliography is that at the end of chapters in HASKINS, *The Normans in European history.*

GROSS, *Sources and literature*, part IV. *Catalogue des ouvrages normands de la Bibliothèque municipale de Caen*, Caen, 1910–1912. A. MOLINIER, *Les sources d l'histoire de France*, II, chs. XXV, XXXIII. U. CHEVALIER, *Répertoire: Topo-bibliographie*, II, 2140.

XXI. THE CRUSADES

A. OUTLINE

1. After having been more or less on the defensive against its foes from the eighth to the eleventh centuries, western Christendom was ready to take the offensive towards the end of the eleventh century. Compare the ousting of the Mohammedans from Sicily by the Normans, 1061–1091.

2. Nature and causes of the crusades. Contact between Europe and Asia in the early middle ages. The "Syrians" in the west. Pilgrimages to Jerusalem and other holy places.

3. Syria and Asia Minor in the eleventh century. The Christian state of Armenia. Treatment of Christian pilgrims in Jerusalem before and after the capture of the holy city by the Seljuk Turks in 1076.

4. The preaching of the first crusade by pope Urban II at the council of Clermont, 1095. The legend of Peter the Hermit. Persecutions of the Jews. In the spring of 1096 several unorganized bands, mostly peasants, set out under Peter the Hermit, Walter the Penniless, and others. Most of them perished miserably in Asia Minor.

5. The first crusading army set out in the fall of 1096. The following were some of the prominent leaders: Godfrey of Lorraine (of Bouillon) and his brother Baldwin; Raymond of Saint-Gilles, count of Toulouse; Robert, duke of Normandy; Hugh, count of Vermandois; Stephen, count of Blois; Bohemund, son of Robert Guiscard, and his nephew Tancred; Adhemar, bishop of Puy, the legate of the pope.

6. The crusading hosts in Constantinople. Their relations with the emperor Alexius Comnenus. The anomalous position of the Norman leaders. The *Alexiad* of Anna Comnena, the daughter of Alexius.

7. The march through Asia Minor and the conquest of the Holy Land. Siege of Nicaea. Battle of Dorylaeum. Capture of Edessa and Antioch in 1098. The legend of the holy lance. Fall of Jerusalem in 1099.

8. The organization of the crusaders' conquests in the east. The Latin kingdom of Jerusalem. The *Assizes of Jerusalem*. Feud-

alism in Palestine. The county of Tripoli, the principality of Antioch, and the county of Edessa.

9. The religious military orders; Hospitallers, Templars, Teutonic knights. The Teutonic knights in Prussia in the first half of the thirteenth century under their Grand Master, Hermann of Salza.

10. The management of the constant flow of population and goods to and from the Holy Land. *Passagia.* Importance of the sea routes. The rapid rise of Italian towns and merchants.

11. Results of the fall of Edessa in 1144. The preaching of St. Bernard of Clairvaux. Conrad III of Germany and Louis VII of France led armies to Palestine.

12. The capture of Jerusalem in 1187 by Saladin led to the crusade of the three kings, Frederick I (Barbarossa) of Germany, Richard the Lion-Hearted of England, and Philip II of France. The death of Frederick Barbarossa by drowning in the river Saleph, 1190, and the consequent destruction of the German army. Capture of Acre by the Christians in 1191. Truce with Saladin, 1192. The failure of this crusade, which was planned on a very large scale, marked the end of the heroic crusading era.

13. The crusading plans of the emperor Henry VI, 1190–1197.

14. The ambitions of pope Innocent III to launch an overwhelming crusade. The capture of Constantinople by so-called crusaders in 1204 and the establishment of the Latin empire of Constantinople, 1204–1261. The children's crusade, 1212. Innocent preached a "crusade" against the Albigensian heretics in southern France, and aided the Christians against the Mohammedans in Spain (Battle of Tolosa, 1212).

15. The capture of Damietta by the Christians in 1219 under John of Brienne. Ultimate loss of the city and failure of this expedition into Egypt. St. Francis of Assisi in Egypt.

16. The emperor Frederick II in the Holy Land. His treaty with El-Kamil, the Sultan of Egypt, in 1229, by which he got possession of Jerusalem, Bethlehem and Nazareth. Frederick assumed the crown of Jerusalem. Capture of Jerusalem by the fierce Charismian Turks in 1244.

17. The crusading fervor of king Louis IX of France. The *Life of St. Louis* by his friend Joinville. Capture of Damietta in Egypt in 1249. Louis did not follow up his first successes and finally was taken prisoner. When released he went as a pilgrim to Palestine. Fall of Jaffa and Antioch, 1268, into the hands of the Sultan Bibars. The second crusade of St. Louis to Tunis where he died in 1270.

18. The fall of Acre in 1291 and the end of the Latin kingdom of Jerusalem.

19. Crusading movements after 1291. The *De recuperatione Terrae Sanctae* of Pierre Dubois (1309). Missionary activities set in motion largely by the crusades. Raymund Lull.

20. Changes in Europe in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries which can in a measure be attributed to the crusades.

21. Latin emperors in Constantinople.

Baldwin I, 1204–1205
Henry of Flanders, 1205–1216
Peter of Courtenay, 1216–1219
Robert, 1219–1228
Baldwin II, 1228–1261

22. Kings of Jerusalem.

Godfrey of Bouillon, 1099–1100 (without the title of king)
Baldwin I, 1100–1118
Baldwin II, 1118–1130
Fulk of Anjou, 1130–1143
Baldwin III, 1143–1163
Amalric I, 1163–1174
Baldwin IV, 1173–1185
Baldwin V, 1185–1186
Guy of Lusignan, 1186–1194
[Conrad of Montferrat, 1191–1192]
[Henry of Champagne, 1192–1197]
Amalric II of Lusignan, 1197–1205
Amalric III, 1205–1206
John of Brienne, 1210–1225
Iolande of Brienne, 1225–1228
Frederick II, 1228–1250
Hugh of Lusignan (King of Cyprus), 1268–1284

B. SPECIAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR READING

Brief surveys. The following are reviews of the subject in a more or less elementary fashion. BÉMONT and MONOD, *Medieval Europe*, 336–374. EMERTON, *Mediaeval Europe*, 357–397. ADAMS, *Civilization*, 258–278. MUNRO, *A history of the middle ages*, 106–121. FLICK, *Mediaeval church*, ch. XX. The article "Crusades" in the *Encyclopaedia Britannica* was written by E. BARKER, that in the *Catholic encyclopedia* by L. BRÉHIER; both are excellent and contain good bibliographical notes. LANGLOIS, *Lectures historiques*, ch. IX, reprints several famous passages from modern authors on the crusades.

Longer accounts. TOUT, *The empire and the papacy*, chs. VIII, XIII, XV, XIX. LAVISSE and RAMBAUD, *Histoire générale*, II, ch. VI (translated in part by MUNRO and SELLERY, *Medieval civilization*, 248–256). LAVISSE, *Histoire de France*, II, part II, 227–250. GIBBON, *Decline and fall*, treats of the crusades in chs. LVII–LX.

Short books on the crusades in English. The best account is by T. A. ARCHER and C. L. KINGSFORD, *The crusades: the story of the Latin Kingdom of Jerusalem*, New York, 1895 (Stories of the nations). W. B. STEVENSON, *The crusaders in the east: a brief history of the wars of Islam with the Latins in Syria during the twelfth and thirteenth centuries*, Cambridge, 1907, presents the subject from the eastern point of view. J. M. LUDLOW, *The age of the crusades*, Edinburgh, 1897. J. I. MOMBERT, *A short history of the crusades*, New York, 1894. M. M. C. CALTHROP, *The crusades*, London, [1913], (The peoples books), is a very slight manual for the general reader. G. W. COX, *The crusades*, New York, 1875 (Epochs of history) is very antiquated.

Speech of Pope Urban II. This speech has been analyzed carefully by D. C. MUNRO, "The speech of pope Urban II at Clermont, 1095," *American historical review*, XI (1905–1906), 231–242.

Pilgrimages. BEAZLEY, *Dawn of modern geography*, I, 125–175, II, 112–217. LACROIX, *Military and religious life in the middle ages*, 262–393.

Original sources. *Translations and reprints*, vol. I, no. 2, "Urban and the crusaders" (contains translations of the speech of Urban II); vol. I, no. 4, "Letters of the crusaders"; vol. III, no. 1, "The fourth crusade." For translations of several accounts of the capture of Jerusalem in 1099 see DUNCALF and KREY, *Parallel source problems*, 95–133. MUNRO and SELLERY, *Medieval civilization*, 257–268, "Ibn Jubair's account of his journey through Syria (1184)." ROBINSON, *Readings*, I, 312–345. THATCHER and MCNEAL, *Source book*, 510–544. OGG, *Source book*, 282–296. HENDERSON, *Documents*, 337–344.

The following are the most available longer accounts in English: *Chronicles of the crusades: being contemporary narratives of the crusade of Richard Coeur de Lion by Richard of Devizes and Geoffrey de Vinsauf and of the crusade of St. Louis, by Lord John de Joinville*, London, 1848. T. A. ARCHER, *The crusade of Richard I, 1189–1192*, New York, 1889 (English history by contemporary writers). VILLEHARDOUIN'S *Chronicle of the fourth crusade and the conquest of Constantinople*, and JOINVILLE'S *Chronicle of the crusade of St. Lewis*, are translated by Sir F. MARZIALS, *Memoirs of the crusades*, London [1908] (Everyman's library). The second of these is also translated conveniently in *The memoirs of the Lord of Joinville: a new English version*, by ETHEL WEDGEWOOD, London, 1906.

Maps. SHEPHERD, *Atlas*, 66–67, 68, 70–71, 73.

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General books. Information on the crusades is widely scattered in the general books on medieval history. Those on the church, nos. **394–498** above, France, Germany, and Italy, nos. **508–621** above, and the Byzantine empire, nos. **643–679** above, are especially useful.

General accounts. B. KUGLER, *Geschichte der Kreuzzüge*, Berlin, 1880, 2nd edition, 1891, part of no. **313** above. L. BRÉHIER, *L'église et l'Orient au moyen âge: les croisades*, 2nd edition, Paris, 1907. E. HEYCK, *Die Kreuzzüge und das heilige Land*, Bielefeld and Leipzig, 1900 (Monographien zur Weltgeschichte). R. RÖHRICHT, *Geschichte der Kreuzzüge im Umriss*, Innsbruck, 1899.

The two most comprehensive histories of the crusades unfortunately are antiquated, having been written near the beginning of the nineteenth century under the influence of the romantic movement. J. F. MICHAUD, *Histoire des croisades*, 3 vols., Paris, 1812–1817, in 7 vols., 1824–1829, translated into English by W. ROBSON, *History of the crusades*, 3 vols., [1852] (often reprinted). F. WILKEN, *Geschichte der Kreuzzüge nach morgenländischen und abendländischen Berichten*, 7 vols., Leipzig, 1807–1832.

Pilgrimages to the Holy Land. A. BAUMSTARK, *Abendländische Palästinerpilger des ersten Jahrtausends und ihre Berichte*, Köln, 1906. P. RIANT, *Expéditions et pélerinages des Scandinaves en Terre Sainte au temps des croisades*, Paris, 1865.

First crusade. R. RÖHRICHT, *Geschichte des ersten Kreuzzuges* Innsbruck, 1901. H. HAGENMEYER, *Chronologie de la première croisade, 1094–1100*, Paris, 1902, is taken from *Revue de l'Orient Latin*, VI–VIII.

Historiography of the first crusades. H. VON SYBEL, *Geschichte des ersten Kreuzzuges*, Leipzig, 1841, 3rd edition, 1881, partly translated by Lady DUFF GORDEN, *The history and literature of the crusades*, London, 1861. O. J. THATCHER, "Latin sources of the first crusade," *Annual report of the American historical association*, I (1900), 499–509. T. A. ARCHER, "The Council of Clermont and the first crusade," *Scottish review*, XXVI (1895), 274–295. L. DU SOMMERARD, *Deux princesses d'Orient au 12 siècle: Anne Comnène, témoin des croisades; Agnès de France*, Paris, 1907. C. NEUMANN, *Griechische Geschichtschreiber und Geschichtsquellen im 12 Jahrhundert: Studien zu Anna Comnena, Theod. Prodromus, Joh. Cinnamus*, Leipzig, 1888. See also MOLINIER, *Les sources d l'histoire de France*, V, pp. xcvff.

The Latin Kingdom of Jerusalem and other Latin states in Syria. C. R. CONDER, *The Latin kingdom of Jerusalem, 1099–1291*,

London, 1897. R. RÖHRICHT, *Geschichte des Königreichs Jerusalem (1100–1291)*, 2 vols., Innsbruck, 1898. G. DODU, *Histoire des institutions monarchiques dans le royaume latin de Jerusalem (1099–1291)*, Paris, 1894; and his *Le royaume latin de Jérusalem* (Conférence donnée à l'Université Nouvelle de Bruxelles). HELEN G. PRESTON, *Rural conditions in the kingdom of Jerusalem during the twelfth and thirteenth centuries*, Philadelphia, 1903 (dissertation). G. REY, *Les colonies franques de Syrie aux XII^e et XIII^e siècles*, Paris, 1884. G. SCHLUMBERGER, *Les principautés franques dans le Levant*, Paris, 1879. G. SCHLUMBERGER, *Fin de la domination franque en Syrie après les dernières croisades: prise de Saint-Jean d'Acre en l'an 1291 par l'armée du Soudan d'Egypte*, Paris, 1914, is an extract from the *Revue des deux mondes*, July 15, 1913.

Second crusade. B. KUGLER, *Analekten zur Geschichte des zweiten Kreuzzuges*, Tübingen, 1878, 1885; *Neue Analekten*, 1885. C. NEUMANN, *Bernard von Clairvaux und die Anfänge des zweiten Kreuzzuges*, Heidelberg, 1882. H. COSACK, "Konrads III Entschluss zum Kreuzzug," in *Mitteilungen des Instituts für österreichische Geschichtsforschung*, XXXV (1914), 278–296.

Third crusade. S. L. POOLE, *Saladin and the fall of the kingdom of Jerusalem*, New York, 1898. A. CARTELLIERI, "Richard Löwenherz im heiligen Lande," in *Historische Zeitschrift*, CI (1908), 1–25. G. SCHLUMBERGER, *Renaud de Châtillon, prince d'Antioche*, Paris, 1898; and his, *Campagnes du roi Amaury I de Jerusalem en Egypte, au XII^e siècle*, Paris, 1906. A. GRUHN, *Der Kreuzzug Richards I*, Berlin, [1892]. K. FISCHER, *Geschichte des Kreuzzuges Kaiser Friedrichs I*, Leipzig, 1870.

Henry VI plan for a crusade. W. LEONHARDT, *Der Kreuzzugsplan Kaiser Heinrichs VI* (dissertation, Giessen, ca. 1914). E. TRAUB, *Der Kreuzzugsplan Kaiser Heinrichs VI im Zusammenhang mit der Politik der Jahre 1195–1197*, Jena, 1910.

Capture of Constantinople in 1204 and the Latin Kingdom established there 1204–1261. A. LUCHAIRE, *Innocent III*, 6 vols., Paris, 1905–1908, vol. IV, *La question d'Orient*. E. PEARS, *The fall of Constantinople: being the story of the fourth crusade*, New York, 1886. E. GERLAND, *Geschichte des lateinischen Kaiserreiches von Konstantinopel*, part I, *Geschichte der Kaiser Balduin I und Heinrich, 1204–1216*, Homburg, 1905. W. NORDEN, *Der vierte Kreuzzug im Rahmen der Beziehungen des Abendlandes zu Byzanz*, Berlin, 1898. H. MOESER, *Gottfried von Villehardouin und der Lateinerzug gegen Byzanz*, 1899. J. TESSIER, *La quatrième croisade: la diversion sur Zara et Constantinople*, Paris, 1884. L. STREIT, *Beiträge zur Geschichte des vierten Kreuzzuges*, Anklam, 1877. Count RIANT, *Le*

changement de direction de la quatrième croisade, Paris, 1878. C. D. DU CANGE, *Histoire de l'empire de Constantinople sous les empereurs François*, Paris, 1657, new edition by J. A. BUCHON, 2 vols., Paris, 1826. OMAN, *Story of the Byzantine empire*, 274–306, is a brief summary.

The Byzantine empire and the crusades. W. NORDEN, *Das Papsttum und Byzanz*, Berlin, 1903. F. CHALANDON, *Essai sur le règne d'Alexis Comnène (1081–1118)*; and his *Jean II Comnène (1118–1143)*, Paris, 1912. ALICE GARDNER, *The Lascarids of Nicaea: the story of an empire in exile*, London, 1912. W. MILLER, *The Latins in the Levant*. FINLAY, *History of Greece*, II–IV. Sir R. RODD, *The princes of Achaia and the chronicles of Morea*, a study of Greece in the middle ages, London, 1907. J. K. FOTHERINGHAM, *Marco Sanudo, conqueror of the Archipelago*, Oxford, 1915. G. SCHLUMBERGER, *Récits de Byzance et des croisades*, Paris, 1916. A. GRUHN, *Die byzantinische Politik zur Zeit der Kreuzzüge*, Berlin, 1904. J. DRÄSEKE, "Bischof Anselm von Havelberg und seine Gesandtschaftsreisen nach Byzanz," *Zeitschrift für Kirchengeschichte*, XXI (1901), 160–185. For a summary see LAVISSE and RAMBAUD, *Histoire générale*, II, ch. XV.

The children's crusade. D. C. MUNRO, "The children's crusade," *American historical review*, XIX (1914), 516–524. G. E. GRAY, *The crusade of the children in the thirteenth century*, New York, 1870. R. RÖHRICHT, "Der Kinder Kreuzzug, 1212," in *Historische Zeitschrift*, XXXVI (1876), 1–8. DE JANSSENS, *Etienne de Cloyes et les croisades d'enfants au XIIIe siècle*, Paris, 1890. A. DES ESSARTS, *La croisade des enfants*, Paris, 1852.

Fifth crusade. R. RÖHRICHT, *Studien zur Geschichte des fünften Kreuzzuges*, Innsbruck, 1891.

Frederick II and the crusades. W. JACOBS, *Patriarch Gerold von Jerusalem: ein Beitrag zur Kreuzzugsgeschichte Friedrichs II*, Aachen, 1905 (dissertation, Bonn). R. RÖHRICHT, *Die Kreuzfahrt Friedrich II*, Berlin, 1874.

Crusades of King Louis IX. E. J. DAVIS, *The invasion of Egypt in A.D. 1249 by Louis 9th of France*, London, 1898. R. STERNFELD, *Ludwigs des Heiligen Kreuzzug nach Tunis 1270 und die Politik Karls I von Sizilien*, Berlin, 1896. H. F. DELABORDE, *Jean de Joinville et les seigneurs de Joinville*, Paris, 1894.

Religious military orders. H. PRUTZ, *Die geistlichen Ritterorden: ihre Stellung zur kirchlichen, politischen, gesellschaftlichen und wirtschaftlichen Entwicklung des Mittelalters*, Berlin, 1908; and his, *Der Anteil der geistlichen Ritterorden an dem geistigen Leben*

ihrer Zeit, München, 1908. F. C. WOODHOUSE, *The military religious orders*, London, 1879.

A. RASTOUL, *Les Templiers 1118–1312*, 2nd edition, Paris, 1905. H. PRUTZ, *Entwicklung und Untergang des Templerherrenordens*, Berlin, 1888. J. GMELIN, *Schuld oder Unschuld des Templerordens: kritischer Versuch zur Lösung der Frage*, Stuttgart, 1893. K. SCHOTTMÜLLER, *Der Untergang des Templer-Ordens*, 2 vols., Berlin, 1887. L. DELISLE, "Operations financières des Templiers," in *Mémoires de l'Académie des Inscriptions*, XXXIII (1889). C. G. ADDISON, *The history of the Knights Templars*, London, 1842; 3rd edition, 1852. G. LIZERAND, "Les depositions du Grand Maître Jacques de Molay au procès des Templiers, 1307–1314," in *Le moyen âge*, XXVI (1913), 81–106. M. SCHÜPFERLING, *Der Templerherren Orden in Deutschland*, Bamberg, 1915. F. LUNDGREEN, *Wilhelm von Tyrus und der Templerorden*, part I, Berlin, 1911 (dissertation). V. CARRIÈRE, "Les débuts de l'Ordre du Temple en France," in *Le moyen âge*, XVIII (1914), 308–335.

Baron DE DELABRE, *Rhodes of the Knights*, Oxford, 1909. J. DELAVILLE LE ROULX, *Les Hospitaliers en Terre Sainte et à Chypre, 1100–1310*, Paris, 1904; *Les Hospitaliers à Rhodes jusqu'à la morte de Philibert de Nailhac, 1310–1421*, Paris, 1914; *Mélanges sur l'Ordre de S. Jean de Jerusalem*, Paris, 1910. W. K. R. BEDFORD and R. HOLBECHE, *The order of the hospital of St. John of Jerusalem*, London, 1902. W. PORTER, *Knights of Malta or the Order of St. John of Jerusalem*, 2 vols., London, 1858; 3rd edition of vol. I, 1884. R. PÉTIET, *Contribution à l'histoire de l'Ordre de Saint-Lazare de Jérusalem en France*, Paris, 1914.

Crusading movements after 1291. F. HEIDELBERGER, *Kreuzzugsversuche um die Wende des 13 Jahrhunderts*, Berlin and Leipzig, 1911 (Abhandlungen zur mittleren und neueren Geschichte, 31). A. GOTTRON, *Ramon Lulls Kreuzzugsideen*, Berlin, 1912. J. DELAVILLE LE ROULX, *La France en Orient au XIV^e siècle: expeditions du maréchal Boucicaut*, 2 vols., Paris, 1886, parts 44–45 of no. **887** above. N. IORGA, *Notes et extraits pour servir à l'histoire des croisades au XV^e siècle*, 5 vols., Paris, 1899–1915.

Preaching of crusades. A. LECOY DE LA MARCHE, "La prédication de la croisade au XIII^e siècle," in *Revue des questions historiques*, XLVIII (1890), 5–28. R. RÖHRICHT, "Die Kreuzpredigten gegen den Islam," in *Zeitschrift für Kirchengeschichte*, VI (1884), 550–572.

Privileges of the crusaders. E. BRIDREY, *La condition juridique des croisés et le privilège de la croix*, Paris, 1901. EDITH BRAMHALL,

"The privileges of the crusaders," *American journal of theology*, V (1902), 279ff.

Archaeological evidences of the crusades. G. REY, *Etudes sur les monuments de l'architecture militaire des croisades en Syrie et dans l'île de Chypre*, Paris, 1871. C. ENLART, *L'art gothique et la renaissance en Chypre*, 2 vols., Paris, 1899. G. SCHLUMBERGER, *Numismatique de l'Orient Latin*, Paris, 1878.

Cyprus. B. STEWART, *Cyprus: the people, mediaeval cities, castles, antiquities, and history of the island*, London, 1908. W. STUBBS, "The mediaeval kingdoms of Cyprus and Armenia," in his *Seventeen lectures*, ch. VIII.

Culture and the crusades. H. PRUTZ, *Kulturgeschichte der Kreuzzüge*, Berlin, 1883. O. HENNE AM RHYN, *Kulturgeschichte der Kreuzzüge*, Leipzig, 1894. O. HENNE AM RHYN, *Die Kreuzzüge und die Kultur ihrer Zeit*, Leipzig, 1886. A. v. KREMER, *Culturgeschichtliche Beziehungen zwischen Europa und dem Oriente*, Vienna, 1876, is a short lecture.

Legends of the crusades. The classic refutation of the legend of Peter the Hermit is H. HAGENMEYER, *Peter der Eremite*, Leipzig, 1879. The famous legend of the finding of the holy lance in Antioch is treated in full by J. STRAUBINGER, *Die Kreuzauffindungslegende*, Paderborn, 1912 (vol. IX, part 3, of no. 489 above). B. KUGLER, *Albert von Aachen*, Stuttgart, 1885; and his *Analekten zur Kritik Alberts von Aachen*, Tübingen, 1888 (Albert was the author of a "saga" of the first crusade c. 1120). G. PARIS, in the introduction of his edition of *L'estoire de la guerre sainte*, Paris, 1897, discussed the legend of the third crusade. H. PIGONNEAU, *Le cycle de la croisade et de la famille de Bouillon*, Paris, 1877.

Art of war of the crusaders. O. HEERMANN, *Die Gefechtsführung abendländischer Heere im Orient in der Epoche des ersten Kreuzzugs*, Marburg, 1888. See also OMAN, *The art of war*, 229–350; and H. DELBRÜCK, *Geschichte der Kriegskunst*, III, 226–231.

Miscellaneous books. D. C. MUNRO, H. PRUTZ, and C. DIEHL, *Essays on the crusades*, Burlington, Vermont, 1903. R. RÖHRICHT, *Beiträge zur Geschichte der Kreuzzüge*, 2 vols., Berlin, 1874–1878. G. DESDEVISES DU DÉZERT, *Bibliographie du centenaire des croisades*, Clermont, 1895, and his *Les croisades*, Clermont, 1895, are publications called forth by the octocentenary of the crusades celebrated at Clermont-Ferrand in 1895. O. VOLK, *Die abendländischhierarchische Kreuzzugsidee*, Halle, 1911. G. MARCAIS, *Les Arabes en Berberie du XI^e au XIV^e siècle*, Paris, 1914. *Oriens christianus, römische Halbjahrhefte für Kunde des christlichen Orients*, Leipzig, 1901ff. C. M. WATSON, *The story of Jerusalem*, London, 1912

(Mediaeval towns). ESTELLE BLYTHE, *Jerusalem and the crusades*, New York, 1914. G. LE STRANGE, *Palestine under the Moslems: a description of Syria and the Holy Land from A. D. 650 to 1500*, London, 1890.

Original sources. The most comprehensive collection of sources for the crusades is the *Recueil des historiens des croisades*, publié par les soins de l'Academie des inscriptions et belles-lettres, in 14 huge folio vols., Paris, 1841–1898. This almost entirely supersedes the old collection by J. BONGARS, *Gesta dei per Francos sive orientalium expeditionum et regni Francorum hierosolimitani historia*, vols. I and II, Hannover, 1612. The Société de l'Orient Latin, founded in 1875 by Count Riant, published much source material for a history of the crusades in its *Publications*, 1879ff., in a série géographique, and a série historique, the contents of which are listed in POTTHAST, *Wegweiser*, I, p. cxxiii; its *Archives*, 2 vols., 1881 and 1884; and its *Revue*, 1893–1902, which, besides articles, book-reviews, and bibliographies, contains many texts.

English translations of pilgrimages to the Holy Land are collected in great numbers in *Palestine pilgrims text society*, 13 vols., London, 1897 (the contents of which is analyzed in J. W. THOMPSON, *Reference studies in medieval history*, second edition, Chicago, 1914, pp. 102–104); and in *Early travels in Palestine, comprising the narratives of Arculf*, etc., edited by T. WRIGHT, London, 1848. See also *Deutsche Pilgerreisen nach dem Heiligen Lande*, edited by R. RÖHRICHT and H. MEISNER, Berlin, 1880, new abridged edited by R. RÖHRICHT, Innsbruck, 1900.

French translations of extracts from the sources of the crusades were issued long ago by J. MICHAUD, *Bibliothèque de croisades*, 2nd edition, 4 vols., Paris, 1829–1830. GUIZOT'S *Collection des mémoires*, no. 971 above, also contains translations of accounts of the crusades.

It would carry us too far afield to try to enumerate separate editions of original sources of the crusades. It will be serviceable, however, to mention the following works edited by H. HAGENMEYER, *Historia Hierosolymitana, 1095–1127*, of FOULCHER OF CHARTRES, Heidelberg, 1913; *Anonymi gesta Francorum et aliorum Hierosolymitanorum*, Heidelberg, 1890; *Ekkehardi uraugiensis abbatis Hierosolymita nach der Waitzschen Recension*, Tübingen, 1877; *Die Kreuzzugsbriefe aus dem Jahren 1098–1100, mit Erläuterungen*, Innsbruck, 1901 (RIANT has an *Inventaire critique* of these letters in the *Archives de l'Orient latin*, I). See also the documentary material for the Kingdom of Jerusalem, edited by R. RÖHRICHT, *Regesta regni Hierosolymitani (1098–1291)*, Innsbruck, 1893, with an *Addi-*

tamentum, 1904. Important material has been edited by P. RIANT, *Excuviae sacrae constantinopolitanae,* 2 vols., Geneva, 1877–1878; and an additional volume by F. DE MELY, Paris, 1904. PIERRE DUBOIS, *De recuperatione Terrae Sanctae,* edited by C. V. LANGLOIS, Paris, 1891 (part 9 of no. **968** above), written in 1309, is the best source of information concerning crusading ideas in the fourteenth century. *Cartulaire général de l'ordre du Temple, 1119–1150,* edited by MARQUIS D'ALBON, Paris, 1913; and *Cartulaire générale de l'ordre des Hospitaliers de S. Jean de Jerusalem, 1100–1310,* edited by J. DELAVILLE LE ROULX, 4 vols., Paris, 1894ff., are two important collections of source material for the study of the military religious orders. *Chronicle of Morea,* edited by J. SCHMITT, London, 1904. Naturally much material on the crusades is also found scattered in many of the great national collections, such as nos. **965–971, 978, 986, 988, 995** above.

Bibliographies. The best bibliography of the sources of the crusades, especially the first, is in MOLINIER, *Les sources de l'histoire de France,* II, 266–304, III, 25–54, 104–113, 237–244. A great amount of bibliographical information may be found in the various publications of the Société de l'Orient Latin (see above). The large library of Count RIANT was acquired by Harvard University in 1899. The catalogue is printed under the title *Catalogue de la bibliothèque de feu M. le Comte Riant:* redigé par L. DE GERMON et L. POLAIN, 2nd part, 2 vols., Paris, 1899 (for crusades see especially nos. 2958–3433); and the collection is described by A. C. POTTER, *The library of Harvard University,* 3rd edition, Harvard University Press, 1915.

XXII. THE POPES AND THE HOHENSTAUFEN

A. OUTLINE

1. A new phase of the irrepressible conflict between the empire and the papacy. The struggle was now almost a purely political one, and the immediate bone of contention was the possession of Italy.

2. The truce, 1123–1157. Origin of the quarrel between the Hohenstaufen (Waiblingen, Ghibellines) and the Welfs (Guelfs). The schism of popes Innocent II and Anaclete in 1130. Harmony between Lothair II, 1125–1138, and pope Innocent II. Conrad III (1138–1152), the first Hohenstaufen emperor, on the second crusade in 1147. The political influence of St. Bernard of Clairvaux. Arnold of Brescia in Rome in 1147.

3. The emperor Frederick I (Barbarossa), of Hohenstaufen, 1152–1190. His remarkable personality. His exalted position as

a German king. Striking advance in German civilization during his reign. His reliance on the Roman law. Henry the Lion and the Slavs.

4. Frederick's imperial policy in Italy renewed the strife between empire and papacy. His Roncaglian diets in Italy. The astounding rise of Italian cities in Lombardy and Tuscany and their resistance to the encroachment of the emperor. Execution of Arnold of Brescia and the end of the commune in Rome in 1155. In that year Frederick was crowned emperor in St. Peter's by pope Hadrian IV (an Englishman). Strength of the papacy; its alliance with the Normans and its sympathy with the Italian cities. The Besançon episode in 1158. Destruction of Milan in 1158. Accession of pope Alexander III (Roland Bandinelli) in 1159. The founding of Alessandria. The Lombard League, 1167. Battle of Legnano, 1176. Peace of Venice, 1177. Peace of Constance, 1183. The treachery of Henry the Lion.

5. The last years of Frederick Barbarossa. The fateful marriage of his son Henry (Henry VI) to Constance, heiress of the Kingdom of the Two Sicilies in 1186. Frederick went on the third crusade and was drowned in the river Saleph in Asia Minor in 1190. The legend of Frederick Barbarossa (Kyffhaüser).

6. The reign of Henry VI, 1190–1197. His difficulty in maintaining a hold on his kingdom of the Two Sicilies. His plans to conquer the whole orient. Capture and ransom of king Richard the Lion-Hearted.

7. The renewed Guelf-Ghibelline struggle in Germany, 1198–1215. Disputed election between Philip of Swabia (a Hohenstaufen) and Otto IV of Brunswick (a Guelf), the son of Henry the Lion. The rôle of pope Innocent III as king-maker. In 1212 he put forth his ward, Frederick II, son of Henry VI, as emperor. Battle of Bouvines in 1214.

8. The political power of pope Innocent III, 1198–1216. He became pope at the age of 38 years. Educated at the universities of Bologna and Paris. The *Liber censuum ecclesiae romanae*, 1192. Innocent's political supremacy in Rome and in Italy. His power in Germany has been indicated above. The kings of the Two Sicilies, of Sweden, Denmark, Portugal, Aragon, and Poland became his vassals. He humbled king Philip Augustus of France. England was laid under an interdict in 1208 and in 1213 king John became the vassal of the pope. Innocent III condemned the Great Charter of 1215. His plans for a vast crusade. The Albigensian crusade. The great Christian victory of the Christians in Spain at Tolosa, 1212. The Fourth Lateran Council in 1215.

9. The death-struggle between the emperor Frederick II *(Stupor mundi)*, the last great Hohenstaufen, and the papacy. His peculiar character and his education in the Norman kingdom of Sicily. His colony of Saracen soldiers at Lucera in Italy. Excommunication of Frederick II by pope Gregory IX (Cardinal Ugolino) in 1227. Frederick's crusade, 1228–1229. Acquisition of Jerusalem by treaty with El-Kamil, the sultan of Egypt in 1229. Frederick's trouble with the Lombard towns, supported by the papacy. Renewed excommunication of the emperor in 1239. Capture of a general council, 1241. Deposition of Frederick II at the council of Lyons in 1245, in the pontificate of Innocent IV. Henry Raspe, landgrave of Thuringia, and after his death, William, count of Holland, were set up as anti-kings. Death of Frederick II in 1250 near Lucera.

10. The last of the Hohenstaufen. Conrad IV, 1250–1254, son of Frederick II. In 1254 Conrad died leaving an infant son, Conradin. Manfred, illegitimate son of Frederick II, became king of the Two Sicilies in 1258. In 1266 pope Clement IV made Charles of Anjou, brother of king Louis IX, king of Sicily. Manfred was killed in the battle of Grandella in 1267 and the boy Conradin, the last Hohenstaufen, was beheaded in Naples in 1268.

11. The Great Interregnum in Germany, 1254–1273. The period of "fist-law" *(Faustrecht)*.

12. Eastward expansion of Germany, especially in the times of the Hohenstaufen. Recent emphasis on the importance of this expansion of the German people, which had been obscured by the undue prominence given to the struggle between empire and papacy. (Compare with the recent appreciation of the importance of the "Westward Movement" in American history.) Possible avenues of German expansion. The pioneers: missionaries (especially Cistercians), adventurous knights, traders, cultivators of the soil. The zone of the Elbe: margraves of Brandenburg, ruthless extermination of the Slavs, Czechs of Bohemia. The zone of the Oder: Pomerania, Poland, and Silesia. The zone of the Vistula and Niemen: Lithuanians, Letts, and Prussians; Knights of the Sword (1200) and the Teutonic Knights, 1220. Herman of Salza, grand master of the order. The beginnings of the Hanseatic League. The nomad Tartars in Russia ca. 1240. Beginnings of Prussia and Austria.

13. Emperors, 1125–1272.

Lothair II, 1125–1138	Frederick I (Barbarossa),
Conrad III, 1138–1152	1152–1190

Henry VI, 1190–1197
Otto IV, 1197–1212 } rivals
Philip II, 1197–1208 }
Frederick II, 1212–1250
[Henry Raspe, 1246–1247; and William of Holland, 1247–1256] anti-kings.
Conrad IV, 1250–1254
The Great Interregnum, 1254–1273, during which Richard, Earl of Cornwall, and Alfonso X, King of Castile, were non-resident rivals.

14. Popes, 1124–1276.

Honorius II, 1124–1130
Innocent II, 1130–1143
[Anacletus, 1130–1138, and Victor, 1138, anti-popes]
Celestine II, 1143–1144
Lucius II, 1144–1145
Eugenius III, 1145–1153
Anastasius IV, 1153–1154
Hadrian IV, 1154–1159
Alexander III, 1159–1181
[Victor, 1159–1164; Paschal III, 1164–1168; Calixtus III, 1168–1178; and Lando, 1178–1180, anti-popes]
Lucius III, 1181–1185
Urban III, 1185–1187
Gregory VIII, 1187
Clement III, 1187–1191
Celestine III, 1191–1198
Innocent III, 1198–1216
Honorius III, 1216–1227
Gregory IX, 1227–1241
Celestine IV, 1241
Innocent IV, 1243–1254
Alexander IV, 1254–1261
Urban IV, 1261–1264
Clement IV, 1265–1268
Gregory X, 1271–1276

B. SPECIAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR READING

Short general accounts. EMERTON, *Mediaeval Europe*, chs. IX–X. BRYCE, *Holy Roman empire*, chs. XI–XIII. HENDERSON, *A short history of Germany*, ch. IV. ADAMS, *Civilization*, ch. X.

Longer surveys. TOUT, *Empire and papacy*, chs. X–XIV, XVI, XXI. LAVISSE and RAMBAUD, *Histoire générale*, II, chs. III–IV. VILLARI, *Mediaeval Italy*, 197–286. HENDERSON, *A history of Germany in the middle ages*, chs. XV–XXVIII. H. D. SEDGWICK, *Italy in the thirteenth century*, 2 vols., Boston, 1912, I, chs. VI, IX, X, XIII, XXII–XXIII. E. A. FREEMAN has two interesting essays on Frederick I and Frederick II in his *Historical essays*, first series, 257–322. The best summary in German is in *Handbuch der deutschen Geschichte*, edited by B. GEBHARDT, I, chs. IX–X.

Short books in English on the subject. The best is U. BALZANI, *The popes and the Hohenstaufen*, London, 1888. The subject is approached from the standpoint of the papacy in D. J. MEDLEY, *The church and the empire, 1003–1304*, chs. VI–X, XV; and in BARRY, *The papal monarchy*, chs. XVI–XVIII, XXI–XXII.

Lombard communes. W. F. BUTLER, *The Lombard communes*, New York, 1906, chs. V–X, is an important study of the relations between the Hohenstaufen and the Italian cities. See also the short sketch in H. FISHER, *The medieval empire*, II, ch. XIII.

Henry the Lion. A. L. POOLE, *Henry the Lion*, London, 1912.

Innocent III. The great standard work on the pontificate of Innocent is A. LUCHAIRE, *Innocent III*, 6 vols., Paris, 1905–1908 (vol. I, *Rome et l'Italie*, 1904, 2nd edition, 1905; II, *La croisade des Albigeois*, 1905, 2nd edition, 1906; III, *La papauté et l'empire*, 1906; IV, *La question d'Orient*, 1907; V, *Les royautés vassales du Saint-Siège*, 1908; VI, *Le concile de Latran et la réforme de l'église*, with an index of the six vols., 1908). C. PIERIE GORDON, *Innocent the Great*, New York, 1907, is a hastily written popular book. For a short sketch of the pontificate of Innocent III, see FLICK, *Rise of the mediaeval church*, ch. XXII.

Frederick II. L. ALLSHORN, *Stupor mundi: the life and times of Frederick II*, London, 1912, is a recent biography for the general reader. T. L. KINGTON, *History of Frederick II*, 2 vols., London, 1862, is still the most complete biography in English. The most thorough examination of the life and times of Frederick II is in the introduction of J. L. A. HUILLARD-BRÉHOLLES, *Historia diplomatica Friderici Secundi*, 12 vols., Paris, 1852–1861 (the introduction is in the last volume). The capture of the council which was to meet in Rome in 1241 is told by G. C. MACAULAY, "The capture of a general council, 1241," in *English historical review*, VI (1891), 1–17.

Eastward expansion of Germany. A remarkably pithy survey was written by the Nestor of French historians, E. LAVISSE, *Political history of Europe*, 45–57. Other short accounts in English are H. FISHER, *The medieval empire*, II, 1–54; HENDERSON, *A history of Germany in the middle ages*, ch. XXVII; LODGE, *The close of the middle ages*, chs. V and XIX, *passim*. A short sketch in German with a good bibliography is J. LOSERTH, *Geschichte des späteren Mittelalters*, 130–136. For more authoritative accounts in German see K. LAMPRECHT, *Deutsche Geschichte*, III, 330–420; E. MICHAEL, *Geschichte des deutschen Volkes*, I, 3rd edition, Freiburg, 1897, 86–128; H. GERDES, *Geschichte des deutschen Volkes*, III, 413–440.

Original sources. A large amount of miscellaneous matter relating to this period is translated in THATCHER and MCNEAL, *Source book*, 166–259. See also ROBINSON, *Readings*, I, 296–311; OGG, *Source book*, 398–409; and HENDERSON, *Select documents*, 211–218, 410–432.

The most engaging historian of the twelfth century was OTTO

OF FREISING, whose *Gesta Friderici I* were edited by G. WAITZ in 1884, and are translated into German, *Die Taten Friedrichs*, 2nd edition, Leipzig, 1894, in *Die Geschichtschreiber*, no. **981** above, vols., LIX–LX. For the time of the last Hohenstaufen, the most entertaining work is the *Cronica* of SALIMBENE DE ADAM (1221–1288), edited by O. HOLDER-EGGER in no. **978** above (*Scriptores*, vol. XXXII, parts 1 and 2, Hannover, 1905–1908), and recently also translated into German in *Die Geschichtschreiber*, no. **981** above, vols. XCIII–XCIV. This famous chronicle has also been translated in part into English by G. G. COULTON, *From Francis to Dante: translations from the chronicle of the Franciscan Salimbene (1221–1288)*, 2nd edition, London, 1907. Another important and interesting source of information for the time of Frederick is MATTHEW PARIS, *Chronica majora*, translated by J. A. GILES, 4 vols., London, 1852.

Sources on the eastward expansion of Germany have been collected recently by R. KÖTZSCHKE, *Quellen zur Geschichte der ostdeutschen Kolonisation im 12 bis 14 Jahrhundert*, Leipzig, 1912 (Quellensammlung zur deutschen Geschichte).

Maps. SHEPHERD, *Atlas*, 70–73. For the eastward expansion of Germany see also 46–47, 57, 62–63, 94–95.

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General books. The general histories of Germany and Italy, nos. **560–621** above, and of the church, nos. **394–498** above, are most useful.

General accounts. K. HAMPE, *Deutsche Kaisergeschichte in der Zeit der Salier und Staufer*, Leipzig, 1909, 2nd edition, 1912. I. JASTROW, and G. WINTER, *Deutsche Geschichte im Zeitalter der Hohenstaufen, 1125–1273*, vols. I and II, Berlin, 1893–1901, part of no. **560** above. F. v. RAUMER, *Geschichte der Hohenstaufen und ihrer Zeit*, 6 vols., Leipzig, 1823–1825, 5th edition, 1878. J. LOSERTH, *Geschichte des späteren Mittelalters, 1197–1492*, pp. 1–148 (contains excellent bibliographies). MILMAN, *History of Latin Christianity*, books VIII–X (vols. IV–V). J. LANGEN, *Geschichte der römischen Kirche von Gregor VII bis Innocenz III*, Bonn, 1893. GREGOROVIUS, *History of the city of Rome in the middle ages*, books VIII, IX. MRS. W. BUSK, *Mediaeval popes, emperors, kings, and crusades, from 1125–1268*, 4 vols., London, 1854–1856. E. ROSENSTOCK, *Könighaus und Stämme in Deutschland zwischen 911 und 1250*, Leipzig, 1914. H. BLOCH, *Die staufischen Kaiserwahlen und die Entstehung des Kurfürstentums*, Leipzig, 1911. J. VON PFLUGK-HARTTUNG, *Die Papstwahlen und das Kaisertum, 1046–1328*, Gotha, 1908. J. ZELLER,

L'empire germanique sous les Hohenstaufen, Paris, 1881. P. SCHEFFER-BOICHORST, *Zur Geschichte des 12 und 13 Jahrhunderts: diplomatische Studien*, Berlin, 1877 (Historische Studien, edited by E. EBERING, 8).

Conrad III. W. BERNHARDI, *Konrad III*, 2 vols., Leipzig, 1883, part of no. 570 above.

Frederick I (Barbarossa). H. SIMONSFELD, *Jahrbücher des deutschen Reichs unter Friedrich I*, vol. I (1152–1158), Leipzig, 1908, part of no. 570 above. W. v. GIESEBRECHT, *Geschichte der deutschen Kaiserzeit*, V and VI. A. KÜHNE, *Das Herrscherideal des Mittelalters und Kaiser Friedrich I*, Leipzig, 1898, part 5:2 of Leipziger Studien. H. PRUTZ, *Kaiser Friedrich I*, 3 vols., Danzig, 1871–1874.

Frederick Barbarossa's relations with the papacy can be studied in detail in the following books: H. K. MANN, *Nicholas Breakspear (Hadrian IV), the only English pope (1154–1159)*, London, 1914. J. D. MACKIE, *Pope Adrian IV*, Oxford, 1907 (the Lothian essay). O. J. THATCHER, *Studies concerning Adrian IV*, Chicago, 1903 (in the decennial publications of the University of Chicago, first series, vol. IV). H. SCHRÖRS, *Untersuchungen zu dem Streite Kaiser Friedrichs I mit Papst Hadrian IV, 1157–1158*, Berlin, 1916. H. REUTER, *Geschichte Alexanders des Dritten und der Kirche seiner Zeit*, 3 vols., vols. I and II in 2nd edition, Leipzig, 1860–1864. F. DE LAFORGE, *Alexander III ou rapports de ce pape avec la France aux débuts de la lutte du Sacerdoce et de l'Empire*, 2nd edition, Sens, 1905. G. KLEEMANN, *Papst Gregor VIII, 1187*, Bonn, 1912. The legends concerning Frederick Barbarossa are collected in J. GRIMM, *Gedichte des Mittelalters auf König Friedrich I, den Staufer*, Berlin, 1843; and in W. GUNDLACH, *Barbarossalieder*, Innsbruck, 1899.

Lombard communes. G. B. TESTA, *History of the war of Frederick I against the communes of Lombardy*, translated from the Italian, revised by author, London, 1877. G. VOLPE, *Questioni fondamentali sull' origine e svolgimento dei comuni italiani (sec. 10–14)*, Pisa, 1905. L. v. HEINEMANN, *Zur Entstehung der Stadtverfassung in Italien*, Leipzig, 1896. F. LANZANI, *Storia dei comuni italiani dalle origini al 1313*, Milan, 1882. C. VIGNATI, *Storia diplomatica della lega Lombarda*, Milan, 1866. F. GÜTERBOCK, *Der Friede von Montebello und die Weiterentwicklung des Lombardenbundes*, Berlin, 1895 (dissertation). M. A. v. BETHMANN-HOLLWEG, *Ursprung der lombardischen Städtefreiheit*, Bonn, 1846. F. GRÄF, *Die Gründung von Alessandria: ein Beitrag zur Geschichte des Lombardenbundes*, Berlin, 1887 (dissertation). Although largely devoted to description and travel the two following books have historical

notices: E. HUTTON, *The cities of Lombardy*, New York and London, 1912. E. R. WILLIAM, *Lombard towns of Italy: or the cities of ancient Lombardy*, New York and London, 1914.

Arnold of Brescia. A. HAUSRATH, *Arnold von Brescia*, Leipzig, 1891 (also in his *Weltverbesserer*, vol. II, Leipzig, 1895). E. VACANDARD, "Arnauld de Brescia," in *Revue des questions historiques*, XXXV (1884), 52–114. R. BREYER, "Arnold von Brescia," in MAURENBRECHER, *Historisches Taschenbuch*, 1889, pp. 123ff. G. GAGGIA, *Arnaldo da Brescia*, Brescia, 1881. G. GUERZONI, *Arnaldo da Brescia*, Milan, 1882. W. GIESEBRECHT, "Über Arnold von Brescia," Munich, 1873, part of no. 895 above. G. DE CASTRO, *Arnaldo da Brescia e la rivoluzione romana del XII secolo*, Livorno, 1875. G. GUIBAL, *Arnauld de Brescia et les Hohenstauffen*, Paris, 1868. V. CLAVEL, *Arnauld de Brescia et les Romains du XII^e siècle* (avec une carte de Rome), Paris, 1868 is of little value, but the map will be found useful.

Henry the Lion. J. HALLER, *Der Sturz Heinrichs des Löwen*, Leipzig, 1911 (see the review of it by H. NIESE in the form of a Miszelle in *Historische Zeitschrift*, CXII (1914), 548–561). F. GÜTERBOCK, *Der Prozess Heinrichs des Löwen: kritische Untersuchungen*, Berlin, 1909. M. PHILIPPSON, *Geschichte Heinrichs des Löwen*, 2 vols., Leipzig, 1867. H. PRUTZ, *Heinrich der Löwe, Herzog von Baiern und Sachsen*, Leipzig, 1865.

Henry VI. A. CARTELLIERI, *Heinrich VI und der Höhepunkt der staufischen Kaiserpolitik*, Leipzig, 1914, is a lecture of 20 pages. J. HALLER, "Kaiser Heinrich VI," in *Historische Zeitschrift*, CXIII (1914), 473–504. H. BLOCH, *Forschungen zur Politik Kaiser Heinrichs VI in den Jahren 1191–1194*, Berlin, 1892. T. TOECHE, *Kaiser Heinrich VI*, Leipzig, 1867, part of no. 570 above.

Philipp and Otto IV. E. WINKELMANN, *Philipp von Schwaben und Otto IV von Braunschweig*, 2 vols., Leipzig, 1873–1878, part of no. 570 above.

Innocent III. F. HURTER, *Geschichte Papst Innocenz III und seiner Zeitgenossen*, 4 vols., Hamburg, 1834–1842 (vol. I in 3rd edition, 1841; II–IV in 2nd edition, 1842–1844), translated by A. DE SAINT-CHÉRON and J. B. HAIBER, *Histoire du Pape Innocent III*, 3 vols., Paris, 1838, 2nd edition, 1855. F. BAETHGEN, *Die Regentschaft Papst Innocenz III im Königreich Sizilien*, Heidelberg, 1914 (Heidelberger Abhandlungen 44). J. N. BRISCHAR, *Papst Innocenz III und seine Zeit*, Freiburg, 1883. E. ENGELMANN, *Philipp von Schwaben und Papst Innocenz III während des deutschen Thronstreites*, 1198–1208, Berlin, 1896 (Programm). R. SCHWEMER, *Innocenz III und die deutsche Kirche während des Thronstreites von 1198–1208*, Strasburg, 1882.

Frederick II. E. WINKELMANN, *Kaiser Friedrich II,* vols. I and II (to 1233), Leipzig, 1889–1897, part of no. 570 above. F. J. BIEHRINGER, *Kaiser Friedrich II,* Berlin, 1912 (*Historische Studien,* 102). F. SCHNEIDER, *Beiträge zur Geschichte Friedrichs II und Manfreds,* Rome, 1912. K. HAMPE, "Kaiser Friedrich II," in *Historische Zeitschrift,* LXXXIII (1899), 1–42. F. SCHIRMER, *Beiträge zur Geschichte Kaiser Friedrichs II,* Friedland, 1904 (dissertation, Rostock). G. BLONDEL, *Etude sur la politique de l'empereur Frédéric II en Allemagne,* Paris, 1892. J. ZELLER, *L'empereur Frédéric II, et la chute de l'empire germanique au moyen âge,* Paris, 1885. F. W. SCHIRRMACHER, *Kaiser Friedrich der Zweite,* 4 vols., Göttingen, 1859–1865. J. L. A. HUILLARD-BRÉHOLLES, *Vie et correspondence de Pierre de la Vigne, ministre de l'empereur Frédéric II,* Paris, 1865. F. STIEVE, *Ezzelino von Romano,* Leipzig, 1909. C. CANTÙ, *Ezelino da Romano,* Milan, 1901. P. REINHOLD, *Die Empörung König Heinrichs (VII) gegen seinen Vater,* Leipzig, 1911 (part 25 of Leipziger historische Abhandlungen). R. MALSCH, *Heinrich Raspe, Landgraf von Thüringen und deutscher König* (†*1247*), Halle, 1911. F. GRAEFE, *Die Publizistik in der letzten Epoche Kaiser Friedrichs II, 1239–1250,* Heidelberg, 1909 (part 24 of Heidelberger Abhandlungen). For Frederick's interesting colony of Saracen soldiers at Lucera in Italy, see P. EGIDI, *La colonia Saracena di Lucera e la sua distruzione,* Naples, 1915. H. CHONE, *Die Handelsbeziehungen Kaiser Friedrichs II zu den Seestädten Venedig, Pisa, Genua,* Berlin, 1902.

Frederick's relations with the papacy can be studied in detail in the following books: C. KÖHLER, *Das Verhältnis Kaiser Friedrichs II zu den Päpsten seiner Zeit,* Breslau, 1888 (part 24 of Gierke's Untersuchungen). M. HALBE, *Friedrich II und der päpstliche Stuhl* Berlin, 1888. F. FEHLING, *Kaiser Friedrich II und die römischen Cardinäle in den Jahren 1227 bis 1239,* Berlin, 1901 (part 21 of Historische Studien, edited by E. EBERING). J. CLAUSEN, *Papst Honorius III,* Bonn, 1895. E. BREM, *Papst Gregor IX bis zum Beginn seines Pontifikats,* Heidelberg, 1911 (part 32 of Heidelberger Abhandlungen). J. FELTEN, *Papst Gregor IX,* Freiburg, 1886. P. DESLANDRES, *Innocent IV et la chute des Hohenstaufen,* Paris, 1907 (Science et religion, 429). A. FOLZ, *Kaiser Friedrich II und Papst Innocenz IV: ihr Kampf in den Jahren 1244 und 1245,* Strasburg, 1905. C. RODENBERG, *Innocenz IV und das Königreich Sizilien 1245–1254,* Halle, 1892.

The last Hohenstaufen. F. W. SCHIRRMACHER, *Die letzten Hohenstaufen,* Göttingen, 1871 (on Conrad IV). A. KARST, *Geschichte Manfreds vom Tode Friedrichs II bis zu seiner Krönung (1250–1258),*

Berlin, 1897 (part 6 of Historische Studien, edited by E. EBERING). K. HAMPE, *Urban IV und Manfred (1261–1264)*, Heidelberg, 1905 (part 11 of Heidelberger Abhandlungen). A. BERGMANN, *König Manfred von Sizilien, 1264–1266*, Heidelberg, 1909 (part 23 of Heidelberger Abhandlungen). K. HAMPE, *Geschichte Konradins von Hohenstaufen*, Innsbruck, 1894. E. JORDAN, *Les origines de la domination angevine en Italie*, Paris, 1909.

The Great Interregnum. J. KEMPF, *Geschichte des deutschen Reiches während des grossen Interregnums*, 1254–1273, Würzburg, 1893. E. MÜLLER, *Peter von Prezza: ein Publizist der Zeit des Interregnums*, Heidelberg, 1914. J. J. BAPPERT, *Richard von Cornwallis 1257–1272*, Bonn, 1905. G. LEMCKE, *Beiträge zur Geschichte Königs Richard von Cornwall*, Berlin, 1909.

Eastward expansion of Germany. R. KÖTZSCHKE, *Staat und Kultur im Zeitalter der ostdeutschen Kolonisation*, Leipzig, 1910. R. SEBICHT, *Unsere mittelalterliche Ostmarkenpolitik: eine Geschichte der Besiedelung und Wiedereindeutschung Ostdeutschlands*, Bresslau, 1910. R. KÖTZSCHKE, "Neuere Forschungen zur Geschichte der ostdeutschen Kolonisation," in *Deutsche Geschichtsblätter*, 11. H. WITTE, "Zur Erforschung der Germanisation unseres Ostens," in *Hansische Geschichtsblätter*, 1908. H. ERNST, *Die Kolonisation von Ostdeutschland: Übersicht und Literatur*, erste Hälfte, 1888 (Programm). G. WENDT, *Die Germanisierung der Länder östlich der Elbe*, Liegnitz, 1884–1889 (Programm in two parts). E. O. SCHULZE, *Die Kolonisierung der Gebiete zwischen Saale und Elbe*, Leipzig, 1896. A. PÜSCHEL, *Das Anwachsen der deutschen Städte in der Zeit der mittelalterlichen Kolonialbewegung*, Berlin, 1910. F. SCHMIDT, *Kolonisation und Besiedelung Mährens im 12 und 13 Jahrhunderts*, Nentitschein, 1905 (Programm). G. BLUMSCHEIN, *Über die Germanisierung der Länder zwischen Elbe und Oder*, Köln, 1895 (Programm). B. HEIL, *Gründung der norddeutschen Kolonialstädte und ihre Entwicklung bis zum Ende des 13 Jahrhunderts*, Wiesbaden, 1896 (Programm). V. HASENÖHRL, *Deutschlands südöstliche Marken im 10, 11, und 12 Jahrhundert*, Vienna, 1895 (also in *Archiv für österreichische Geschichte*, 82). G. v. ROPP, *Deutsche Kolonien im 12 und 13 Jahrhundert*, Giessen, 1886. A. MEITZEN, *Die Ausbreitung der Deutschen in Deutschland und ihre Besiedelung der Slawengebiete*, Jena, 1879. W. WATTENBACH, "Die Germanisierung der östlichen Grenzmarken des deutschen Reichs," in *Historische Zeitschrift*, IX (1863), 386-417.

Missionaries in eastern Germany. J. W. THOMPSON, "The German church and the conversion of the Baltic Slavs, I," *American*

journal of theology, April (1916). H. GRÖSSLER, *Die Begründung der christlichen Kirche in dem Lande zwischen Saale und Elbe*, Eisleben, 1907. L. NOTTROTT, *Aus der Wendenmission*, Halle, 1897. W. WIESENER, *Die Geschichte der christlichen Kirche in Pommern zur Wendenzeit*, Berlin, 1889. SIENIAWSKI, *Die Missionsreisen des Bischofs Otto v. Bamberg nach dem Lande der heidnischen Pommern 1125–1127 (1128)*, Glatz, 1908. G. JURITSCH, *Geschichte des Bischofs Otto I von Bamberg, des Pommern-apostels (1102–1139)*, Gotha, 1889. C. MASKUS, *Bischof Otto I von Bamberg als Bischof, Reichsfürst und Missionär*, Breslau, 1889 (dissertation). H. C. VOIGT, *Brun von Querfurt: Mönch, Eremit, Erzbischof, Märtyrer*, Stuttgart, 1907. H. C. VOIGT, *Adalbert von Prag*, Berlin, 1898.

The Teutonic Knights in Prussia. M. ÖHLER, *Geschichte des deutschen Ritterordens*, vol. I, Elbing, 1908. A. WERMINGHOFF, *Der deutsche Orden und die Stände in Preussen bis zum 2 Thorner Frieden im Jahre 1466*, Munich, 1912. W. v. KETRZYNSKI, *Die deutschen Orden und Konrad v. Masovien (1225–1235)*, enlarged German edition, Lemberg, 1904. A. KOCH, *Hermann von Salza, Meister des deutschen Ordens*, Leipzig, 1885. K. LOHMEYER, *Geschichte von Ost- und Westpreussen*, vol. I (to 1411), Gotha, 1880, 3rd edition, 1908. A. L. EWALT, *Die Eroberung Preussens durch die Deutschen*, 4 vols., [to 1283], Halle, 1872–1886. M. PERTBECH, *Die Statuten des deutschen Ordens*, Halle, 1890.

Original sources. *Regesta imperii V: Die Regesten des Kaiserreichs unter Philipp, Otto IV, Friedrich II, Heinrich (VII), Konrad IV, Heinrich Raspe, Wilhelm und Richard, 1198–1272*, edited by J. F. BOEHMER, new edition by J. FICKER and E. WINKELMANN, 5 parts, with an index, Innsbruck, 1881–1901. *Historia diplomatica Friderici Secundi*, 12 vols., edited by J. L. A. HUILLARD-BRÉHOLLES. *Le liber censuum de l'église romaine publié avec une introduction et un commentaire*, edited by P. FABRE and L. DUCHESNE, vol. I, Paris, 1889–1910 (2nd series 6, of no. 959 above, see also 62). Almost all the important sources are printed in nos. 978 and 988 above. For the registers of the popes of the thirteenth century see no. 959 above.

Bibliographies. The most useful bibliography is in DAHLMANN-WAITZ, *Quellenkunde*, pp. 351–413. See also the general bibliographies for Germany, nos. 29–35 above, Italy, nos. 37–41 above, and the church, nos. 49–55 above.

XXIII. THE NEW MONASTIC MOVEMENT

A. OUTLINE

1. The constant succession of revival and decline in monastic history. The decline of the Cluniacs in the eleventh century. A marked religious revival in the eleventh century was one of the manifestations of the new era which ushered in the crusades. Much religious ferment preceded and was augmented by the investiture strife.

2. The new monastic orders founded in the eleventh century. Renewal of the extreme ascetic ideal of the early church. Camaldolites, founded by St. Romuald at Camaldoli in the Apennines, about 1018. Vallombrosians founded by St. John Gualbert, a Tuscan lord, about 1038. The monastery of Hirschau in the Black Forest under the reform régime of its abbot William of Bavaria about 1070. Order of Grammont founded by St. Stephen of Tigerno about 1075 near Limoges (removed later to a place nearby called Grandmont). Carthusians founded by Bruno of Cologne about 1085 at Grande Chartreuse, in a desolate valley near Grenoble. Charterhouses. Order of Fontevrault founded by the Breton Robert of Abrissel about 1095 between Anjou and Poitou.

3. The Cistercians, the first great "order" of monks. Founded by Robert of Molême, in northern Burgundy, about 1100. He soon removed to a place called Citeaux (=pools of standing water). The great Bernard of Fontaines established a daughter house at Clairvaux in 1115. The *Carta Caritatis*, "Charter of Charity." The asceticism of the Cistercians. The abbey of La Trappe (Trappists). Relations of the military orders of Spain, Calatrava, 1158, Alcantara, 1152, with the Cistercians.

4. The Canons Regular or Austin Canons. The Victorines of Paris, 1113. The Premonstratensians founded near Laon in 1120 by Norbert of Xanten, who had been a secular canon at Cologne and Xanten. The relations of the crusading religious military orders with the Austin Canons.

5. Forerunners of the mendicant orders. Arnoldists. The Humiliati. "Brotherhoods and sisterhoods of penance."

6. The attempted check by the fourth Lateran council, 1215, upon the formation of new orders.

7. The mendicant orders of the thirteenth century. Franciscans (*Fratres Minores*, Grey Friars); Dominicans (*Fratres Praedicatores*, Black Friars, also called Jacobins in France); Carmelites (White Friars); and Augustinians (Austin Friars or Hermits of St. Augus-

tine). The mendicant ideal. The great needs which called the mendicants into being and their great services. The distinction between a monk and a friar.

8. St. Francis, the founder of the Franciscans. He was the son of a merchant and was born in 1182 in Assisi. His conversion about 1209. Santa Maria della Portiuncola—Saint Mary of the Little Portion. In 1210 Francis went to Rome to interview pope Innocent III. In 1217 was held the first general chapter of Franciscans. Cardinal Ugolino (afterwards pope Gregory IX). St. Francis in Egypt in 1219. The *Rules* of St. Francis, 1221 and 1223. The stress laid upon poverty. The "stigmata" of St. Francis. His death in 1226. He was canonized in 1228. His body was buried in 1230 in the great basilica of San Francesco in Assisi. The wonderful character and personal influence of St. Francis. Sources of information concerning St. Francis. His own writings. The *Vita prima* (before 1229) and *Vita secunda* (1244–1247) of Thomas of Celano. The *Legenda major*, "New legend," of St. Bonaventura, written about 1263. *Legenda trium sociorum* (Legend of the three companions, Angelus, Leo, and Rufinus). *Speculum perfectionis* (Mirror of perfection). *Sacrum commercium*. The *Fioretti*, or in Latin, *Floretum S. Francisci Assisiensis* (The Little Flowers of St. Francis).

9. The Franciscans in the thirteenth century. St. Clare and the Poor Clares. The Tertiaries of St. Francis. Brother Elias of Cortona. St. Bonaventura. The bitter conflict between the Spiritual Franciscans and the Conventual Franciscans. Fraticelli. The great influence of the life and legend of St. Francis on Italian literature and art.

10. The Dominicans. Dominic, the founder of the order, was born in 1170 in Calahorra in Spain. He was trained for the priesthood in the university of Valencia. Combated Albigensian heresy in Toulouse. He went to Rome in 1215. In 1216 Honorius III recognized the "Preaching Brothers of Toulouse." Dominic's interview with Francis. Dominic died in Bologna 1221 and was sainted in 1234.

11. The important part played by the mendicants in the history of the thirteenth century. Their rapid spread, especially in the cities of all Europe. Their great influence in the rising universities. Alexander of Hales, Bonaventura, Roger Bacon and Duns Scotus were Franciscans. Albert the Great and Thomas Aquinas were Dominicans. The mendicants and the inquisition. Their revival of popular preaching. The missionary activity of the mendicants in the thirteenth century. Their decline in the fourteenth century.

B. SPECIAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR READING

Brief general surveys. EMERTON, *Mediaeval Europe*, 555–581. TOUT, *Empire and papacy*, 198–210; 434–449. FLICK, *Rise of the mediaeval church*, ch. XXI. WISHART, *Monks and monasteries*, chs. IV–V. LAVISSE and RAMBAUD, *Histoire générale*, II, 243–251. Many of the topics in this outline are treated authoritatively in the *Catholic encyclopedia;* e.g., the article "Francis of Assisi" was written by P. ROBINSON, that on "Preachers, Order of," by P. MANDONNET.

Longer accounts. TAYLOR, *Mediaeval mind*, I, book III. LAVISSE, *Histoire de France*, II, part II, 251–282; III, part I, 346–363.

St. Bernard and the Cistercians. The best account in English of the Cistercians is by J. S. BREWER in the preface to vol. IV of the *Opera* of Giraldus Cambrensis (no. 21 of Rolls Series). See also W. A. P. MASON, "Beginnings of the Cistercian order," in *Transactions of the Royal historical society*, XIX (1905), 169–207. The best short sketch of Bernard of Clairvaux is in MUNRO and SELLERY, *Medieval civilization*, new edition, 406–431, which is a translation from LAVISSE, *Histoire de France*, II, part II, 266–282. For other literature on St. Bernard see outline XIV of part III below.

The mendicants in general. A. JESSOPP, *The coming of the friars*, ch. I. H. C. LEA, *A history of the inquisition*, I, ch. VI. The preface by J. S. BREWER in vol. I of *Monumenta Franciscana* (no. 4 of Rolls Series). MILMAN, *Latin Christianity*, book IX, chs. IX–X. P. SABATIER and others, *Franciscan essays*, Aberdeen, 1912 (British society of Franciscan studies, extra series, 1).

St. Francis of Assisi. The most famous biography is by P. SABATIER, *Vie de S. François d'Assise*, Paris, 1894, translated by LOUISE S. HOUGHTON, *Life of St. Francis of Assisi*, London, 1894. Both the original and the English translation have been reprinted again and again. The book has been translated into almost all the European languages. Among the many recent biographies, the following are the most noteworthy: Father CUTHBERT, *Life of St. Francis of Assisi*, London and New York, 1912; J. JÖRGENSEN, *Den hellige Frans af Assisi*, Copenhagen, 1907, authorized translation from the Danish by T. O'CONNOR SLOANE, New York, 1912; and N. TAMASSIA, *Saint Francis of Assisi and his legend*, translated from the Italian by L. RAGG, London, 1910. There are very good pictures in G. SCHNÜRER, *Franz von Assisi*, Munich, 1905.

St. Dominic. J. GUIRAUD, *Saint Dominique (1170–1221)*, Paris, 1901 (Les saints), translated by KATHERINE DE MATTOS, *Saint Dominic*, London, 1901.

Original sources. Due to the recent remarkable outburst of interest in St. Francis, practically all the salient contemporary

material concerning the saint and the early history of his order can now be read in English translation. For translations of his own works, well edited by P. ROBINSON, *The writings of St. Francis of Assisi*, Philadelphia, 1906, see *The writings of St. Francis of Assisi*, newly translated into English by CONSTANCE DE LA WARR, London, [1907]; and, *The words of Saint Francis: from his works and the early legends*, translated by ANNE MACDONELL, London, 1904.

The biographies by CELANO may be read in, *The lives of St. Francis of Assisi by Brother Thomas of Celano*, translated into English by A. G. FERRERS HOWELL from the new edition of the original by D'ALENÇON, Rome, 1906, London, 1908. For BONAVENTURA'S official biography, see *The life of St. Francis by St. Bonaventure*, translated by E. G. SALTER, London, 1904.

The *Legenda trium sociorum* can now be read in English under the title, *The legend of Saint Francis by the three companions*, now first translated into English by E. G. SALTER, London, 1905 (The temple classics). For the hotly debated *Speculum perfectionis*, see, *The mirror of perfection*, translated from the Cottonian manuscript by R. STEELE, London, 1903 (The temple classics). *Sacrum commercium: the converse of Francis and his sons with holy poverty*, translated by Canon RAWNSLEY, London, 1904 (The temple classics). An earlier translation of the *Sacrum commercium* was made by M. CARMICHAEL, *The Lady Poverty*, London, 1901.

Naturally the *Fioretti*, so very popular in Italy in the fourteenth century, have attracted most attention. The best Italian text is that of CESARE, Verona, 1822 (often reprinted). The Latin text was edited by P. SABATIER, *Floretum S. Francisci*, Paris, 1902. The following are some of the most available translations: *The Little Flowers, and the Life of St. Francis, with The Mirror of Perfection*, London, 1910 (Everyman's library); *The Little Flowers of the glorious Messer St. Francis and of his friars*, done into English with notes by W. HEYWOOD, with an introduction by A. G. FERRERS HOWELL, London [1906]; *The Little Flowers of St. Francis*, translated by T. W. ARNOLD, London, 1898 (The temple classics).

A very unique anthology is *Franciscan days: being selections for every day in the year from ancient Franciscan writings*, translated and arranged by A. G. FERRERS HOWELL, London [1906].

The earliest biography of St. Clare may now be read in two English versions: *The life of Saint Clare ascribed to Fr. Thomas of Celano of the order of Friars minor* [1225–1261], translated and edited from the earliest MSS. by P. ROBINSON . . . with an appendix containing the *Rule* of Saint Clare, Philadelphia, 1910; and, *The life and legend of Lady Saint Clare*, translated from the

French version (1563) of Brother Francis DU PUIS, by CHARLOTTE BALFOUR, with an introduction by Father CUTHBERT, London, 1910.

The famous chronicle of THOMAS OF ECCLESTON is translated under the title, *The friars and how they came to England: being a translation of Thomas of Eccleston's "De adventu F.F. Minorum in Angliam,"* with an introduction by Father CUTHBERT, St. Louis, 1903. The translator revised his work for the critical student under the title, *The chronicle of Thomas of Eccleston "De adventu Fratrum minorum in Angliam"* newly done into English with preface and notes by Father CUTHBERT, St. Louis, 1909.

For translations from the interesting chronicle of the gossipy thirteenth century Franciscan, SALIMBENE, see G. G. COULTON, *From St. Francis to Dante.* Read in connection with it, E. EMERTON, "Fra Salimbene and the Franciscan ideal," *Harvard theological review,* (1915).

The rule and the will of Francis may also be found in HENDERSON, *Select documents,* 344–349; OGG, *Source book,* 362–379; ROBINSON, *Readings,* 387–395; and THATCHER and MCNEAL, *Source book,* 497–507.

Monastic conditions in England in the twelfth century are well depicted in *The Chronicle of Jocelin of Brakelonde,* translated by L. C. JANE, London, 1907 (Kings classics).

Maps. SHEPHERD, *Atlas,* 94–95, 97.

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General books. See the general histories of the church, nos. **394–498** above, especially those on monasticism, nos. **479–487** above. The encyclopaedias of the history of the church and religion, nos. **104–114** above, will be found particularly useful.

Monastic orders in general. By far the best general survey of monastic orders is HEIMBUCHER, *Die Orden und Congregationen der katholischen Kirche.* The history of the orders in England is enshrined in the following old, but famous, works: *Monasticon Anglicanum: sive, Pandectae Coenobiorum, Benedictinorum, Cluniacensium, Cisterciensium, Carthusianorum a primordiis ad eorum usque dissolutionem,* edited by R. DODSWORTH and Sir W. DUGDALE, 3 vols., London, 1655–1677, new edition by J. CALEY, etc., 6 vols. in 8, London, 1817–1830; and T. TANNER, *Notitia monastica: or, An account of all the abbies, priories, and houses of friers, formerly in England and Wales, and also of all the colleges and hospitals founded before* A.D. *1560,* London, 1744, reprinted by J. NASMITH, Cambridge, 1787. The former contains many original sources. The following two popular books will serve as an introduction to the *Monasticon* and

TANNER: F. A. GASQUET, *English monastic life*, 3rd edition, London, 1905 (The antiquary's books); and A. H. THOMPSON, *English monasteries*, Cambridge University Press, 1913 (The Cambridge manuals). M. DEMIMUID, *Pierre le Vénérable: ou la vie et l'influence monastique au XII^e siècle*, Paris, 1876. P. OPLADEN, *Die Stellung der deutschen Könige zu den Orden im dreizehnten Jahrhundert*, Bonn, 1908 (dissertation). G. SCHREIBER, *Kurie und Kloster im 12 Jahrhundert*, vol. 1, Stuttgart, 1910 (Kirchenrechtliche Abhandlungen, 65–66).

Hirschau. E. TOMEK, *Studien zur Reform der deutschen Klöster im XI Jahrhundert: I, Die Frühreformation*, Vienna, 1910. P. GISEKE, *Die Hirschauer während des Investiturstreites*, Gotha, 1883.

Carthusians. H. LÖBBEL, *Der Stifter des Carthäuser-Ordens: der heilige Bruno aus Köln*, Münster, 1899 (Kirchengeschichtliche Studien, V, I). F. A. LEFEBVRE, *Saint Bruno et l'ordre des Chartreux*, 2 vols., Paris, 1884.

Order of Fontevrault. *Histoire de l'Ordre de Fontevrault, 1100–1908*, by the Religieuses de Sainte-Marie de Fontevrault de Boulaur, now located in Vera in Navarre, vols. I–III, Auch, 1911–1915. J. v. WALTER, *Die ersten Wanderprediger Frankreichs: Studien zur Geschichte des Mönchtums;* part I, *Robert von Abrissel*, Leipzig, 1903 (Studien zur Geschichte der Theologie und der Kirche, IX, part 3).

Cistercians. H. D'ARBOIS DE JUBAINVILLE, *Etat intérieur des abbayes cisterciennes et en particulier de Clairvaux au XII^e et XIII^e siècles*, Paris, 1868. L. JANAUSCHEK, *Origines Cistercienses*, vol. I, Vienna, 1877. F. WINTER, *Die Cistercienser des nordöstlichen Deutschlands*, 3 vols., Gotha, 1868–1871. G. HODGES, *Fountains abbey: the story of a mediaeval monastery*, London, 1904. F. SCHEVILL, "San Galgano: a Cistercian abbey of the middle ages," *American historical review*, XIV (1908), 22–37. La Trappe, the cradle of the modern Trappists, is described at length by H. C. CHARENCEY (Comte de), *Histoire de l'abbaye de la Grande-Trappe*, 2 vols., Mortagne, 1896–1911. The author also edited the *Cartulaire de l'Abbaye de Notre-dame de La Trappe*, Alençon, 1889.

Canons regular. B. WOZASEK, *Der hl. Norbert: Stifter des Prämonstratenser-Ordens und Erzbischof von Magdeburg*, Vienna, 1914. MADELAINE, *Histoire de saint Norbert*, 1887. R. ROSENMUND, *Die ältesten Biographien des heiligen Norbert*, Berlin, 1874. F. WINTER, *Die Prämonstratenser des 12 Jahrhunderts und ihre Bedeutung für das nordöstliche Deutschland*, Berlin, 1865.

Forerunners of the mendicants. ELLEN SCOTT DAVISON, *Some forerunners of St. Francis of Assisi*, Columbia university, 1907 (dissertation), discusses Apostolic sects allied to the Cathari; Arnold of Brescia; and The Humiliati. A. HAUSRATH, *Die Arnoldisten*,

Leipzig, 1895 (*Weltverbesserer im Mittelalter*, III). ROSE GRAHAM, *S. Gilbert of Sempringham and the Gilbertines: a history of the order*, London, 1901, reprinted, 1904.

The mendicants in general. J. HERKLESS, *Francis and Dominic and the mendicant orders*, New York, 1901 (The world's epoch-makers, IX). H. HEFELE, *Die Bettelorden und das religiöse Volksleben Ober- und Mittelitaliens im 13 Jahrhundert*, Leipzig and Berlin, 1910 (part 9 of Beiträge zur Kulturgeschichte des Mittelalters und der Renaissance, edited by W. GOETZ). A series of biographies of famous friars has been published under the general title, *Lives of the friar saints*, New York, 1911ff. The following are some volumes in this series: V. FITZGERALD, *Saint John Capistran*, New York and London, 1911; CATHERINE WOODCOCK, *Saint Antony of Padua, the miracle-worker, 1195–1231*, London, 1911; and L. COSTELLOE, *Saint Bonaventure, the Seraphic doctor: Minister-general of the Franciscan order, cardinal bishop of Albano* [1221–1274], New York, 1911. A. OTT, *Thomas von Aquin und das Mendikantentum*, Freiburg, 1908. J. WIESCHOFF, *Stellung der Bettelorden in den deutschen freien Reichsstädten im Mittelalter*, Münster, 1905 (dissertation).

Franciscans in general. L. WADDING, *Annales Minorum seu trium ordinum a. S. Francisco institutorum* [1208–1540], 8 vols., Lyons, 1625–1654, 2nd edition, with a syllabus, 17 vols., Rome, 1731–1741, vols. XVIII–XXV by J. DE LUCCA and others, Rome, 1740–1886. K. MÜLLER, *Die Anfänge des Minoriten-ordens und der Bussbruderschaften*, Freiburg, 1885. H. HOLZAPFEL, *Handbuch der Geschichte des Franziskanerordens*, Freiburg, 1909. E. GEBHART, *L'Italie mystique: histoire de la renaissance religieuse au moyen âge*, Paris, 1890. A. G. LITTLE, *The Grey Friars in Oxford*, Oxford, 1892 (Oxford historical society, Publications, XX). W. M. BRYCE, *The Scottish Grey friars*, 2 vols., Edinburgh and London, 1909. Father CUTHBERT, *The romanticism of St. Francis and other studies in the genius of the Franciscans*, London, 1915. L. RAURE, *Figures franciscaines: Saint François d'Assise, Sainte Claire d'Assise, Saint Antoine le Padouan*, Paris, 1912. A. FRANZ, *Drei deutsche Minoriten prediger aus dem XIII und XIV Jahrhundert* [Konrad von Sachsen, Frater Ludovicus, Greculus], Freiburg, 1907. ANNE MACDONELL, *The sons of St. Francis*, London and New York, 1902. V. KYBAL, *Die Ordensregeln des heiligen Franz von Assisi und die ursprüngliche Verfassung des Minoritenordens*, Leipzig, 1915 (Beiträge zur Kulturgeschichte des Mittelalters und der Renaissance).

St. Francis. It is entirely beyond the scope of this *Guide* to indicate and evaluate all the biographies of St. Francis. Only

a few of the most recent or more important attempts in English, French, German, Italian, and Spanish are listed below.

In English. W. J. KNOX LITTLE, *St. Francis of Assisi: his times, life, and work*, lectures delivered in 1896, London, 1897, new edition, 1904. O. KUHNS, *Saint Francis of Assisi*, New York, 1906, is a short but interesting essay. E. W. GRIERSON, *The story of St. Francis of Assisi*, London, 1912. ANNA M. STODDARD, *Francis of Assisi*, London, 1903. SOPHIE JEWETT, *God's troubadour: the story of Saint Francis of Assisi*, London and New York, 1910. Mrs. M. OLIPHANT (WILSON), *Francis of Assisi*, London and New York, 1871.

In French. L. LE MONNIER, *Histoire de St. François d'Assise*, 2 vols., Paris, 1889, 6th edition, 1907, English translation by a Tertiary, London, 1894. GRATIEN, "S. François d'Assise," in *Etudes Franciscaines*, (1907), 359–482. P. HENRY, *S. François d'Assise et son école, d'après les documents originaux*, Paris, 1903. A. BARINE, *St. François d'Assise et la legende des trois compagnons*, 6th edition, Paris, 1910. L. DE CHÉRANCÉ, *Saint François d'Assise*, 7th edition, Paris, 1900, translated into English by R. F. O'CONNOR, 3rd edition, London, 1901. F. MORIN, *Saint François et les Franciscains*, Paris, 1858.

In German. J. VON WALTER, *Franz von Assisi und die Nachahmung Christi*, Gross-Lichterfelde, 1910. B. CHRISTEN, *Leben des heiligen Franciscus von Assisi*, Innsbruck, 1899. K. WENCK, *Franz von Assisi*, Leipzig, 1908. H. TILEMANN, *Studien zur Individualität des Franziskus von Assisi*, Leipzig, 1914 (Beiträge zur Kulturgeschichte des Mittelalters und der Renaissance). W. GÖTZ, *Quellen zur Geschichte des hl. Franz von Assisi*, Gotha, 1904.

In Italian. F. TARDUCCI, *Vita di S. Francesco d'Assisi*, Mantua, 1904. PANFILO DA MAGLIANO, *Storia compendiosa di S. Francesco e dei Francescani*, 2 vols., Rome, 1874–1876, was left incomplete due to the death of the author. L. PALOMES, *Storia di S. Francesco*, 2 vols., Palermo, 1873–1874. S. MINOCCHI, *La leggenda antica: nuova fonte biografica di San Francesco d'Assisi*, Florence, 1905.

In Spanish. PARDO BAZÁN, *San Francisco de Assis*, new edition, Madrid, 1903.

The social work of St. Francis. L. L. DUBOIS, *St. Francis of Assisi: social reformer*, Washington, D. C., 1904 (dissertation). F. GLASER, *Die franziskanische Bewegung: ein Beitrag zur Geschichte sozialer Reformideen im Mittelalter*, Stuttgart and Berlin, 1903 (in Münchener Volkswirtschaftliche Studien, 59, pp. 11–45). J. GAPP, *Der heilige Franciscus von Assisi und die soziale Frage*, 2nd edition, Trier, 1898, is a short study of 16 pages. G. RATZINGER, "Die

soziale Bedeutung des heiligen Franziskus,'' in his *Forschungen zur bayrischen Geschichte,* Kempten, 1898.

Stigmata of St. Francis. K. HAMPE, ''Altes und Neues über die Stigmatisation des hl. Franz von Assisi,'' in *Archiv für Kulturgeschichte,* VIII (1910), 257–290. F. X. SEPPELT, ''Die Wundmale des hl. Franz von Assisi,'' Vortrag vor der *Generalversammlung der Görresgesellschaft zu Metz,* Köln, 1910, pp. 110–120. J. MERKT, *Die Wundmale des heiligen Franziskus von Assisi,* Leipzig, 1910, part V of no. 749 above; see the review by M. BIHL, in *Archivum Franciscanum historicum,* III (1910), 393–432. K. HASE, *Franz von Assisi: ein Heiligenbild,* Leipzig, 1856, new edition, 1892, devotes a large part of his book to the stigmata.

Tertiaries of St. Francis. E. DESCLOUX, *Le tiers ordre de Saint-François,* Fribourg, 1913. P. MANDONNET, *Origines de l'Ordo de Poenitentia,* Freiburg, 1898.

Saint Clare. E. GILLIAT-SMITH, *Saint Clare of Assisi: her life and legislation,* London, 1914. U. BEAUFRETON, *Sainte Claire d'Assise, 1194–1253,* Paris, 1916 (Les Saints). L. MOISSON, *Une fille de Saint François: Sainte Claire d'Assise, sa vie et son oeuvre,* Paris, 1912. P. ROBINSON, *The Rule of St. Clare and its observance in the light of early documents,* Philadelphia, 1912. L. DE CHÉRANCÉ, *Saint Clare of Assisi,* New York, 1910.

Assisi and the home of the early Franciscans. LINA DUFF GORDON, *The story of Assisi,* London, 1900. BERYL D. DE SELINCOURT, *Homes of the first Franciscans in Umbria, the borders of Tuscany, and the northern marches,* London and New York, 1905. E. HUTTON, *The cities of Umbria,* London, 1906. J. JÖRGENSEN, *Pilgrim walks in Franciscan Italy,* London, 1908. N. CAVANNA, *L'Umbria sérafica illustrata parallele alla vita di S. Francesco,* Perugia, 1910.

Spiritual Franciscans. D. S. MUZZEY, *The spiritual Franciscans,* New York, 1907. F. EHRLE, ''Die Spiritualen, ihr Verhältniss zum Franziskanerorden und zu den Fraticellen,'' in *Archiv für Literatur- und Kirchengeschichte,* I, 509–569; II, 106–164; III, 553–623; IV, 1–190. This fundamental study contains many original sources. K. BALTHASER, *Geschichte des Armutsstreites im Franziskanerorden bis zum Konzil von Vienne,* Münster, 1911 (Vorreformationsgeschichtliche Forschungen, 6).

Franciscan influence on Italian art and literature. H. THODE, *Franz von Assisi und die Anfänge der Kunst der Renaissance in Italien,* Berlin, 1885, 2nd edition, 1904, is a work of fundamental importance. EMMA G. SALTER, *Franciscan legends in Italian art: pictures in Italian churches and galleries,* London and New York,

1905. CLARISSA C. GOFF [MRS. ROBERT], *Assisi of Saint Francis: together with the influence of the Franciscan legend on Italian art*, London, 1908. B. BERENSON, *A Sienese painter of the Franciscan legend* [Sassetta], New York, 1909. N. H. J. WESTLAKE, *On the authentic portraiture of St. Francis of Assisi*, London, 1897.

A. F. OZANAM, *Les poètes Franciscains en Italie*, 6th edition, Paris, 1882, translated and annotated by A. E. NELLEN and W. C. CRAIG, *The Franciscan poets in Italy of the thirteenth century*, London, 1914. C. MARIOTTI, *S. Francesco, i Francescani e Dante Alighieri*, Quaracchi, 1912. H. HESSE, *Franz von Assisi*, Berlin [1904] (Die Dichtung, 13).

Periodicals devoted to Franciscan studies. *Archivium Franciscanum historicum: periodica publicatio trimestris*, begun in 1908 by the Franciscans of Quaracchi near Florence. *Etudes Franciscaines*, Paris, 1894ff. *Collection d'études et de documents sur l'histoire religieuse et littéraire du moyen âge*, edited by P. SABATIER, vols. I–V, Paris, 1898–1904, is devoted almost entirely to Franciscan studies and texts. *Société internationale d'études Franciscaines à Assise*, 1902ff. *La Francè Franciscaine: mélanges d'archéologie, d'histoire et de littérature relatifs aux ordres de Saint François en France, du XIIIe siècle*, Paris, 1912ff. *Franziskanische Studien: Quartalschrift*, Münster, 1914ff. *Bollettino critico di cose Francescane*, Florence, 1905ff. *Miscellanea Francescana di storia, di lettere, di arte*, Foligno, 1886ff.

Dominicans in general. M. C. GANAY, *Les bienheureuses Dominicaines, 1190–1577, d'après des documents inédits*, Paris, 1913. R. P. MORTIER, *Histoire des maîtres généraux de l'ordre des Frères Prêcheurs*, vols. I–VI, Paris 1903–1913. A. DANZAS, *Etudes sur les temps primitifs de l'ordre de Saint-Dominique: le bienheureaux Jourdain de Saxe*, 4 vols., 1874–1876. AUGUSTA T. DRANE, *The spirit of the Dominican order*, London, 1896. W. D. G. FLETCHER, *The Black Friars of Oxford*, Oxford, 1882. E. BARKER, *The Dominican order and convocation: a study of the growth of representation in the church during the thirteenth century*, Oxford, 1913. M. D. CHAPOTIN, *Histoire des Dominicaines de la provinces de France: le siècle des fondations*, Paris, 1898. M. D. SCHOMBURG, *Die Dominikaner im Erzbistum Bremen während des dreizehnten Jahrhunderts, mit einer einleitenden Übersicht über die Ausbreitung des Ordens in Deutschland bis 1250*, 1910 (dissertation, Jena). *Quellen und Forschungen zur Geschichte des Dominikanerordens in Deutschland*, Leipzig, 1907ff. R. MARTÍNEZ VIGIL, *La orden de Predicadores: sus glorias en santidad, apostolado, ciencias, artes y gobierno de los pueblos, seguidos de una biblioteca de Dominicos españoles*, Madrid, 1884.

St. Dominic. AUGUSTA T. DRANE, *History of St. Dominic, founder of the Friars Preachers*, London, 1891. H. D. DE LACORDAIRE, *Vie de saint Dominique*, Paris, 1840, new edition, Paris [1912], translated into English by HAZELAND, London, 1883. J. S. ALEMANY, *The life of St. Dominic and a sketch of the Dominican order*, New York, 1867. E. CARO, *Saint Dominique et les Dominicains*, Paris, 1853. C. M. ANTONY, *In St. Dominic's country*, New York, 1912.

Original sources. Only the most important large collections of sources on the mendicants are listed below. See the bibliographical guides below for details. Much material can also be found scattered in the large collections for church history, nos. **953–964** above. *Scriptores ordinis minorum*, edited by L. WADDING, Rome, 1650, a new edition, with supplement by J. H. SBARALEA, 2 vols., Rome, 1806, supplements, 1906–1908. *Bullarium Franciscanum*, edited by J. H. SBARALEA, 4 vols., Rome, 1759–1768, supplement, 1780, vols. V–VII by C. EUBEL, Rome, 1898–1904, epitome and supplement to vols. I–IV by C. EUBEL, Rome, 1908. *Analecta Franciscana*, vols. I–V, Quaracchi, 1885–1912. *Documenta antiqua Franciscana*, edited by LEMMENS, Quaracchi, 1901–1902. *Opuscules de critique historique*, edited by P. SABATIER. *British society of Franciscan studies*, Aberdeen, 1909ff. *Monumenta Franciscana*, edited by J. S. BREWER, 2 vols., London, 1858 (Rolls Series, no. 4), for the Franciscans in England.

The chief collections for the Dominicans are the following: *Monumenta ordinis Fratrum Praedicatorum historica*, edited by B. M. REICHERT, vols., I–XIV, Rome, 1896–1904. *Scriptores ordinis praedicatorum recensiti*, edited by J. QUETIF and J. ECHARD, 2 vols., Paris, 1719–1721, new edition, enlarged, by R. COULON, parts I–VI, Paris, 1910–1913.

Bibliographies. In general consult the bibliographies for the history of the church, nos. **49–55** above. Many excellent bibliographies are appended to articles in the encyclopaedias listed above, nos. **104–144**. On the mendicants in general there is a valuable bibliography in J. LOSERTH, *Geschichte des späteren Mittelalters*, 15–17.

For Saint Francis we have an admirable bibliography by P. ROBINSON, *A short introduction to Franciscan literature*, New York, 1907. The author is preparing a life of St. Francis which will probably contain a complete guide to the literature on St. Francis and the Franciscans. CUTHBERT, *Life of St. Francis*, in four appendixes, 393–446, has a full discussion and bibliography of the original sources on St. Francis. ROBINSON, in his bibliography just mentioned, pp. 28–29, calls attention to recent summaries of the

scholarly work on the history of St. Francis. Add to his references, R. SEEBERG, "Zur Charakteristik des hl. Franz von Assisi," in *Deutsche Literaturzeitung*, XXXII (1911), 1989–1994; 2053–2058.

XXIV. THE ORGANIZATION AND WORK OF THE CHRISTIAN CHURCH IN THE TWELFTH AND THIRTEENTH CENTURIES

A. OUTLINE

1. The character of the church as a state, and the most important state of Europe in these two centuries. It was a splendidly organized absolute monarchy. Its executive, legislative, and judicial powers. Its territorial extent. Conflicts with temporal princes. Spiritual and temporal powers. Regular and secular clergy. This outline deals with the secular clergy.

2. The ecclesiastical hierarchy. Influence of the old Roman officialism in the development of grades among churchmen. Distinctions among the secular clergy, emphasized by titles, dress, residence, ceremonial of investment into office, and order of precedence as well as by differences of duties and incomes. The higher ranks of the clergy were classed with the nobles in medieval society; its lower ranks, such as the parish priests, were classed with the common people. Difficulty of fitting the clergy of all ranks into feudal society. Differences between laymen and the clergy. The morals of the clergy. The nature of the evidence concerning the morals of the clergy. Records of episcopal visitations.

3. The pope in Rome. The growth of the theory of papal absolutism and infallibility. The Lateran. Disputes about his election even after the erection of the College of Cardinals in 1059. Institution of the two-thirds vote in 1179. The Conclave (*cum clave*) of the council of Lyons in 1274. Growth of the dignity of cardinals (the red hat bestowed in 1245, and the purple robe in 1297). Their political influence. The Roman curia. The papal chancery. Papal bulls. The decretals of the popes. Legates of the popes. Papal legations and papal visitations.

4. Archbishops and bishops. Provinces and dioceses. Unsuccessful efforts to make the rank of an archbishop a very distinct grade above that of a bishop. The pallium. Primates or metropolitans. The exalted power of a bishop in his diocese. Episcopal elections. The Lateran council of 1215 placed the election in the hands of the cathedral chapters. Spiritual and temporal duties of a bishop. Episcopal visitations.

5. The intermediate clergy. Archdeacons. Canons of the cathedral chapter. Officers of the cathedral chapter, such as the dean (or provost), chancellor, and chanter. Prebends. Conflict between the chapters and archdeacons on the one hand, and the bishops on the other. Vicars general and "officials."

6. The parish priests. The right of presentation or advowson. Patrons. *Cura animarum* (French *curé*). Elaborate parish churches. Social duties of the parish priests. Their work as teachers. Rectors. Vicars. Arch-priests.

7. The legislative bodies of the church. The great universal or oecumenical councils, especially the Lateran council of 1215. Provincial and diocesan councils. The tendency to hold "national" councils, and to limit the absolute power of the pope by conciliar action. Mansi, *Concilia.*

8. The financial system of the church. The papal exchequer (*camera*) in Rome. Some of the sources of papal income were: the revenues from the Papal States, feudal dues from vassal states, pious gifts and bequests, fees of all kinds, benefice taxes especially annates, Peter's pence, special levies on the clergy all over Christendom, crusading taxes. The income of a bishop. The wealth of some cathedral chapters. The income of a parish. Tithes. The endless complexity of the expenditures of the church. Abuses due to the wealth of the church. Misappropriations by greedy priests.

9. The law and the jurisdiction of the church. The growth of canon law. Gratian's *Decretum* (1140–1150). The *Corpus iuris canonici.* (For details on canon law see outline XX, part III.) The legal status of the clergy. Legal status of university students. Ecclesiastical jurisdiction over non-clerical persons. Multiplicity of cases judicable in church courts. Ceaseless conflicts with secular courts and jurisdiction. The papal curia. The papal penitentiary. Apellate jurisdiction of the pope's courts. Delay of justice and other abuses in the papal judiciary system. The judicial functions of bishops. The judicial work of archdeacons, archpriests, and cathedral chapters. The episcopal courts. The episcopal "officials," and their assistants. Lawyers and notaries.

10. Church discipline and control. Confession and penances, especially pilgrimages. Excommunication and interdict.

11. Heresies. Conditions which gave rise to heresies. Waldensians and Albigensians. The inquisition. (For details see outline XVI, part III, below.)

12. The Christian cult. The evolution of doctrines and practices. In the thirteenth century most of the doctrines and practices of the medieval church were crystallized. Use of Latin

in the church service. The sacramental system. The eucharist. The revival of preaching. The great hymns. Organs and church music. The ecclesiastical calendar. Saints' days. Patron saints. Canonization of saints. Festivals. Feast of Fools (*Festum stultorum*). Miracle plays. Relics.

13. Ecclesiastical buildings, furnishings, vestment and plate. Romanesque and Gothic cathedrals. Chapter houses. Baptisteries. The papal palaces. Episcopal residences. Cemeteries. Dedication of sacred buildings and places.

14. The social and educational work of the secular church. Charitable work of the clergy, especially of the parish priests. The alms of the church. The care of the sick by the secular clergy. The Beguines and Beguins (Beghards). Elementary education in the parishes. Cathedral schools.

15. The missionary work of the church in the East. "Prester John." Influence of the crusades, and of the rise of universities. The College of Constantinople (or Oriental College), established in the time of Innocent III, in Paris. The missionary activity of the Franciscans and Dominicans. John of Plano Carpini. William Rubruck (Rubruquis). Raymund Lull.

16. Sources of weakness and decay within the church.

B. SPECIAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR READING

Short general surveys. EMERTON, *Mediaeval Europe*, 541–555, 582–592. FLICK, *The rise of the mediaeval church*, ch. XXIII. BÉMONT and MONOD, *Mediæval Europe*, 488–514.

Longer general accounts. LAVISSE and RAMBAUD, *Histoire générale*, II, 253–291. MEDLEY, *The church and the empire*, chs. IV, X–XII, XIV. MILMAN, *Latin Christianity*, vol. IX, book XIV, chs. I–II. A. LUCHAIRE, *Manuel des institutions françaises*, 1–144. E. MICHAEL, *Culturzustände des deutschen Volkes während des dreizehnten Jahrhunderts*, II, 1–265. E. L. CUTTS, *Scenes and characters of the middle ages*, 157–265.

Financial system of the papacy. W. E. LUNT, "The financial system of the mediaeval papacy," in *Quarterly journal of economics*, XXIII (1909), 251–295.

Interdict. E. B. KREHBIEL, *The interdict: its history and its operation, with special attention to the time of pope Innocent III.* See also A. C. HOWLAND, "The origin of the local interdict," in *Annual report of the American historical association*, 1899, vol. I, 431–448.

Parish life. F. A. GASQUET, *Parish life in mediaeval England*, London and New York, 1906, 2nd edition, 1907. E. L. CUTTS, *Parish priests and their people in the middle ages in England*, London, 1891.

A. H. THOMPSON, *The historical growth of the English parish church*, Cambridge, 1911.

The Christian cult. Y. HIRN, *The sacred shrine: a study of the poetry and art of the Christian church*, London, 1912 (see the important bibliography, pp. 555–570). On the Feast of Fools see G. V. HEMMING, "Festum stultorum," in *Nineteenth century*, LVII (1905), 1000–1008.

Eastern missions. C. R. BEAZLEY, *The dawn of modern geography*, 3 vols., London, 1897–1906, especially II, ch. v, III, chs. II–III. L. BRÉHIER, *L'église et l'orient au moyen âge*, 211–214, 268–286, is a short introductory sketch.

Inquisition. The standard work on the medieval inquisition is by H. C. LEA, *History of the inquisition of the middle ages*, 3 vols., Philadelphia, 1888. E. VACANDARD, *The inquisition*, translated from the 2nd French edition, by B. L. CONWAY, New York, 1908, is a recent short sketch by a Roman catholic.

Original sources. ROBINSON, *Readings*, I, 346–387. *Translations and reprints*, II, no. 4, "Medieval sermon stories"; III, no. 6, "Pre-reformation period." G. G. COULTON, *A medieval garner*, *passim*.

Maps. SHEPHERD, *Atlas*, 46–47, 94–95, 97.

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General books. The general works on the medieval church are listed above, nos. **394–498**. See also the periodicals for church history, nos. **176–180** above, and especially the encyclopaedias, nos. **104–144** above, which are indispensable in studying this outline.

The pope and the papal curia. R. L. POOLE, *Lectures on the history of the papal chancery down to the time of Innocent III*, Cambridge University Press, 1915. P. M. BAUMGARTEN, *Aus Kanzlei und Kammer: Erörterungen zur kurialen Hof- und Verwaltungsgeschichte im XII, XIV, und XV Jahrhundert*, Freiberg, 1907. R. ZOEPFFEL, *Die Papstwahlen und die mit ihnen im nächsten Zusammenhange stehenden Ceremonien in ihrer Entwickelung vom 11 bis 14 Jahrhundert; nebst einer Beilage: die Doppelwahl des Jahres 1130*, Göttingen, 1871. E. JUNGFER, *Die Unterschiede zwischen der Papstwahl und den Bischofswahlen nach dem gemeinen Kirchenrecht*, Borna, 1909 (dissertation, Breslau). F. ROCQUAIN, *La cour de Rome et l'esprit de réforme avant Luther*, vol. I, *La théocratie*, Paris, 1893.

Cardinals. J. MAUBACH, *Die Kardinäle und ihre Politik um die Mitte des XIII Jahrhunderts*, Bonn, 1902 (dissertation). D. SÄMÜLLER, *Thätigkeit und Stellung der Cardinäle bis Papst Bonifaz VIII*, *Freiburg*, 1896.

Papal legates. H. ZIMMERMANN, *Die päpstliche Legation in der ersten Hälfte des 13 Jahrhunderts*, 1198–1241, Paderborn, 1913. K. RUESS, *Die rechtliche Stellung der päpstlichen Legaten bis Bonifaz VIII*, Paderborn, 1912 (Görresgesellschaft; Sektion für Rechts- und Sozialwissenschaft, 13). J. BACHMANN, *Die päpstlichen Legaten in Deutschland und Skandinavien (1125–1159)*, Berlin, 1913 (Historische Studien, 115).

Papal Provisions. The situation in Germany may be studied in the following books: H. BAIER, *Päpstliche Provisionen für niedere Pfründen bis zum Jahre 1304*, Münster, 1911; H. KRABBO, *Die Besetzung der deutschen Bistümer unter der Regierung Friedrichs II*, part I (to 1227), Berlin, 1901 (Historische Studien, 25); W. FUCHS, *Die Besetzung der deutschen Bistümer unter Papst Gregor IX (1227–1241) und bis zum Regierungsantritt Papst Innocenz IV (1243)*, Berlin, 1911; P. ALDINGER, *Die Neubesetzung der deutschen Bistümer unter Papst Innocenz IV, 1243–1254*, Leipzig, 1901. For England the same conditions are described by A. L. SMITH, *Church and state in the middle ages*, Oxford, 1913 (Ford lectures, 1905); and F. A. GASQUET, *Henry the Third and the church: a study of his ecclesiastical policy and of the relations between England and Rome*, London, 1905. U. STUTZ, *Geschichte des kirchlichen Benefizialwesens bis auf Alexander III*, part I, Berlin, 1895.

The bishop and his diocese. EDITH K. LYLE, *The office of an English bishop in the first half of the fourteenth century*, Philadelphia, 1903 (dissertation). J. KRIEG, *Der Kampf der Bischöfe gegen die Archidiakone im Bistum Würzburg unter Benutzung ungedruckter Urkunden und Akten dargestellt*, Stuttgart, 1914 (Kirchengeschichtliche Abhandlungen, 82). J. MÜLLER, *Die bischöflichen Diözesanbehörden*, Stuttgart, 1905. A. PÖSCHL, *Bischofsgut und Mensa episcopalis*, 2 vols., Bonn, 1908–1909. J. B. SÄGMÜLLER, *Die Bischofswahl bei Gratien*, Cologne, 1908. P. IMBART DE LA TOUR, *Les élections épiscopales dans l'église de France du IX^e au XII^e siècle (814–1150)*, Paris, 1891. NIORTET, *Maurice de Sully (1160–1196): étude sur l'administration épiscopale pendant la deuxième moitié du XII^e siècle*, Paris, 1890. A. GRÉA, "Essai historique sur les archidiacres," in *Bibliothèque de l'Ecole des chartes*, XII (1851), 39–67, 215–247.

Parish life. OLGA DOBIACHE-ROJDESTVENSKY, *La vie paroissiale en France au XIII^e siècle d'après les actes épiscopaux*, Paris, 1911. G. A. PRÉVOST, *L'église et les campagnes au moyen âge*, Paris, 1892. A. JESSOPP, *Before the great pillage*, London, 1901.

Church councils. The great authority on the councils is HEFELE, *Konziliengeschichte*, no. 469 above. A. N. BLATCHFORD, *Church councils and their decrees*, London, 1909. J. VON DÖLLINGER, *The popes and the council.*

Financial system of the church. M. TANGL, "Das Taxenwesen der päpstlichen Kanzlei vom 13ten bis zur Mitte des 15ten Jahrhunderts," in *Mittheilungen des Instituts für österreichische Geschichtsforschung*, XIII, 1–106. W. E. LUNT, "Papal taxation in England in the reign of Edward I," in *English historical review*, XXX (1915), 398–417; and "The first levy of papal annates," *American historical review*, XVIII (1912), 48–64. P. VIARD, *Histoire de la dime ecclésiastique dans le royaume de France aux XII^e et XIII^e siècles*, Paris, 1912. W. EASTERBY, *The history of the law of tithes in England*, Cambridge, 1888. A. GOTTLOB, *Die päpstlichen Kreuzzugssteuern des 13ten Jahrhunderts: ihre rechtliche Grundlage, politische Geschichte und technische Verwaltung*, Heiligenstadt, 1892. G. SCHNEIDER, *Die finanziellen Beziehungen des Florentiner Bankiers zur Kirche von 1285–1304*, Leipzig, 1899 (Staats- und sozialwissenschaftliche Forschungen, 17).

Ecclesiastical jurisdiction. E. GÖLLER, *Die päpstliche Pönitentiarie von ihrem Ursprung bis zu ihrer Umgestaltung unter Pius V*, vols. I and II, Rome, 1907–11. H. C. LEA, *Formulary of the Papal Penitentiary in the thirteenth century*, Philadelphia, 1892. See also his article, "The taxes of the Papal Penitentiary," in *English historical review*, VIII (1893), 424–438. L. BEAUCHET, "Origine de la jurisdiction ecclésiastique et son développement en France jusqu'au XII^e siècle," in *Nouvelle revue historique de droit française et étrangère*, VII (1883), 387–477, 503–536. P. FOURNIER, *Les officialités au moyen âge*, Paris, 1880.

Preaching. L'abbé BOURGAIN, *La chaire française au XII^e siècle, d'après le manuscrits*, Paris, 1879. A. LECOY DE LA MARCHE, *La chaire française au moyen âge, spécialement au XIII^e siècle: d'après les manuscrits contemporains*, Paris, 1868, 2nd edition, 1886. F. R. ALBERT, *Die Geschichte der Predigt in Deutschland bis Luther*, 3 parts, Gütersloh, 1892–96. A. LINSENMAYER, *Geschichte der Predigt in Deutschland von Karl dem Grossen bis zum Ausgang des 14 Jahrhunderts*, Munich, 1886. R. CRUEL, *Geschichte der deutschen Predigt im Mittelalter*, Detmold, 1879.

Pilgrim life. S. HEATH, *Pilgrim life in the middle ages*, Boston, 1912. J. J. JUSSERAND, *Les Anglais au moyen âge: la vie nomade et les routes d'Angleterre au XIV^e siècle*, Paris, 1884, translated by L. T. Smith, *English wayfaring life in the middle ages*, 8th edition, London, 1905, part III, "Religious wayfarers." J. JÖRGENSEN, *Pèlerinages franciscains*, translated from the Danish by T. DE WYZEWA, Paris, 1910. A. MÜLLER, *Das heilige Deutschland: Geschichte und Beschreibung sämtlicher im deutschen Reiche bestehender Wallfahrtsorte*, 2nd edition, 2 vols., Cologne, 1897.

Life and morals of the secular clergy. H. C. LEA, *An historical sketch of sacerdotal celibacy.* E. E. SPERRY, *An outline of the history of clerical celibacy in western Europe to the council of Trent,* New York, 1905 (dissertation). S. SCHELER, *Sitten und Bildung der französischen Geistlichkeit nach den Briefen Stephans von Tournai* [died 1203], Berlin, 1915 (Historische Studien, 130).

Christian cult. A. J. DORNER, *Die Entstehung der christlichen Glaubenslehren,* Munich, 1906. M. HÉBERT, *L'évolution de la foi catholique,* Paris, 1905. F. E. VON HURTER, *Tableau des institutions et des moeurs de l'église au moyen âge,* translated from the German by J. COHEN, 3 vols., Paris, 1843.

On confession the standard work in English is H. C. LEA, *A history of auricular confession.* G. GROMER, *Die Laienbeichte im Mittelalter,* Munich, 1909. A. M. KOENIGER, *Die Beicht nach Cäsarius von Heisterbach,* Munich, 1906. F. GANDERT, *Das Buss- und Beichtwesen gegen Mitte des 13 Jahrhunderts,* Leipzig, 1894. H. J. SCHMITZ, *Die Bussbücher und das kanonische Bussverfahren (nach Quellen),* 2 vols., Düsseldorf, 1898.

T. F. MACKEN, *The canonisation of saints,* London, 1910. H. P. BREWSTER, *Saints and festivals of the Christian church,* New York [1904]. See also KELLNER, *Heortologie,* no. 258 above. C. J. COX, *The sanctuaries and sanctuary seekers in mediaeval England,* London, 1911. F. BOND, *Dedications and patron saints of English churches,* Oxford University Press, 1915. D. H. KERLER, *Die Patronate der Heiligen,* Ulm, 1905. M. BENZERATH, *Die Kirchenpatrone der alten Diözese Lausanne im Mittelalter,* Freiburg, 1914. S. BEISSEL, *Geschichte der Verehrung Marias in Deutschland während des Mittelalters,* Freiburg, 1909. G. HERZOG, *La sainte Vierge dans l'histoire,* Paris, 1908.

A. FRANZ, *Die Messe im deutschen Mittelalter,* Freiburg, 1902. P. J. WAGNER, *Geschichte der Messe* [to 1600], Leipzig, 1913 (Kleine Handbücher der Musikgeschichte, XI, 1). A. FRANZ, *Die kirchlichen Benediktionen im Mittelalter,* 2 vols., Freiburg, 1909. A. MEYER, *Das Weihnachtsfest: seine Entstehung und Entwicklung,* Tübingen, 1913.

Social work of the church. F. SCHAUB, *Die katholische Caritas und deren Gegner,* Freiburg, 1909. L. LALLEMAND, *Histoire de la charité,* 3 vols., Paris, 1902–1906. G. UHLHORN, *Die christliche Liebestätigkeit,* 3 vols., Stuttgart, 1882–1890, 2nd edition, 1895. E. v. MOELLER, *Die Elendenbrüderschaften: ein Beitrag zur Geschichte der Fremdenfürsorge im Mittelalter,* Leipzig, 1906. J. GREVEN, *Die Anfänge der Beginen,* Münster, 1912 (Vorreformatische Forschungen, 8).

Missions. *Bibliotheca bio-bibliografia della Terra Santa e dell' Oriente Francescano*, compiled by G. GOLUBOVICH, Quaracchi, 1906–1913. P. SCHLAGER, *Mongolenfahrten der Franziskaner*, Trier, 1911. R. P. MARCELLIN DE CIVEZZA, *Histoire universelle des missions franciscaines*, translated from the Italian by R. P. BERNARDIN, Paris, 1898. BROU, "L'évangélisation de l'Inde au moyen âge," in *Etudes des P. P. de la Compagnie de Jésus*, LXXXVII (1901). EUBEL, "Die während des XIV Jahrhunderts im Missionsgebiet der Dominikaner und Franziskaner errichteten Bisthümer," in *Festschrift zum Jubiläum des deutschen Campo Santo in Rom*, Freiburg, 1897. P. H. KÜLB, *Geschichte der Missionsreisen nach der Mongolei während des 13 und 14 Jahrhunderts*, Regensburg, 1860. H. MATROD, *Le voyage de Fr. Guillaume de Rubrouck*, Louvin, 1909; and his *Notes sur le voyage de Fr. Jean de Plan-Carpin (1245–1247)*, Paris, 1912. F. M. SCHMIDT, "Über Rubrucks Reise von 1253 bis 1255," in *Zeitschrift der Gesellschaft für Erdkunde zu Berlin*, XX (1885), 161–253. L. TINTI, *Vita ... del beato Odorico*, Rome, 1901. F. ZARNKE, "Der Priester Johannes," in *Abhandlungen der philologischen-historischen Klasse der königlichen sächsichen Gesellschaft der Wissenschaften*, Leipzig, VII (1879), 627–1030; VIII (1883), 1–186.

W. T. A. BARBER, *Raymond Lull, the illuminated doctor: a study in mediaeval missions*, London, 1903. S. M. ZWEMER, *Raymund Lull, first missionary to the Moslems*, New York, 1902. J. H. PROBST, *Caractère et origines des idées du bienheureux Raymond Lulle*, Toulouse, 1912. M. ANDRÉ, *Le bienheureux Raymond Lulle*, 3rd edition, Paris, 1900.

J. A. GINDRAUX, *Histoire du Christianisme dans le monde paien: les missions en Asie*, Geneva, 1909. M. R. A. HENRION, *Histoire générale des missions catholiques depuis le XIII^e siècle*, 2 vols., Paris, 1844–47. H. HAHN, *Geschichte der katholischen Missionen*, 5 vols., Cologne, 1857–73. T. SMITH, *Mediaeval missions*. G. F. MACLEAR, *A history of Christian missions during the middle ages. The encyclopedia of missions: descriptive, historical, biographical, statistical*, 2nd edition, New York and London, 1904.

Original sources. The best pictures of the life of the church in the thirteenth century are furnished by bishops who recorded their experiences gained in visitations in their dioceses. The most complete account is by the archbishop of Rouen, EUDE RIGAUD, *Registrum visitationum archiepiscopi Rothomagensis* [1248–1269], edited by T. BONNIN, Rouen, 1852, analyzed by L. DELISLE, in *Bibliothèque de l'école des chartes*, VIII (1846), 479–499. Next in importance is *Le livre de Guillaume le Maire, évêque d'Angers, 1291* (part of no. 965 above, *Mélanges historiques*, II), analyzed in

Lavisse, *Histoire de France*, III, part II, 355–361. Similar information from England may be gleaned from the letters of ROBERT GROSSETESTE, bishop of Lincoln, 1235–1254, *Roberti Grosseteste episcopi Lincolniensis Epistolae*, edited by H. R. LUARD, London, 1861 (Rolls series, no. 25).

For sources on the missionary work in Asia see *Cathay and the way thither: being a collection of medieval notices of China*, edited by H. YULE, 2 vols., London, 1866, new edition, revised by H. CORDIER, 3 vols., London, 1913–15 (Hakluyt society, series 2, vols. XXX, XXXVII–XXXVIII); *Texts and versions of John de Plano Carpini and William de Rubruquis* [Latin and English texts], edited by C. R. BEAZLEY, London, 1903 (Hakluyt society, extra series); and *The journey of William Rubruk to eastern parts of the world, 1253–1255, as narrated by himself, with two accounts of the earlier journey of John of Pian de Carpine*, translated and edited, with introductory notices, by W. W. ROCKHILL, London, 1900 (Hakluyt society). The accounts of Rubruquis and Pordenone are also translated in an appendix to the *Travels* of Sir JOHN MANDEVILLE, edited by POLLARD, New York, 1900, which in itself is worthless.

Enchiridion symbolorum et definitionum et declarationum de rebus fidei et morum, edited by H. DENZINGER, Freiburg, 1908. *Liturgische Bibliothek: Sammlung gottesdienstlicher Bücher aus dem deutschen Mittelalter*, edited by A. SCHÖNFELDER, vols. I and II, *Ritualbücher*, Paderborn, 1904–1906.

For large collections of the sources of church history see nos. 953–954 above.

Bibliographies. See the general bibliographies for church history, nos. 49–55 above.

XXV. THE POLITICAL HISTORY OF FRANCE, 1108–1328

A. OUTLINE

1. The undisputed leadership of France in western Europe during this period. The Île de France. The importance of Paris. Contrast between French and German political history. The strength and importance of the Capetian line of kings. Their difficulties: feudalism, lack of geographical unity, diversity of peoples, languages, and laws.

2. The real beginning of the French monarchy is the reign of Louis VI (*le Gros*, the Fat), 1108–1137. He had been made king designate in 1100. His feudal wars. His popularity due largely to his liberal economic policy. A protector of the church. His relations with England. Etienne de Garlande. Suger, abbot of Saint-Denis, the famous minister of Louis VI.

3. Retrogression under Louis VII (1137–1180). Weak character of the king. The disastrous second crusade. Louis and St. Bernard of Clairvaux. The divorce of Louis VII from Eleanor of Aquitaine in 1152, and the extension of the Angevin (Norman) empire due to the marriage of Eleanor with Henry (later Henry II) of England.

4. Rapid advance under Philip II, Augustus, 1180–1223. His supremacy over the great feudal lords. Dismemberment of the Norman empire; wars with Henry II, Richard I, and John; fall of Château-Gaillard and the loss of Normandy by John in 1204. The coalition of 1214 and the battle of Bouvines. Philip and pope Innocent III. Beginnings of the Albigensian crusade. Creation of central machinery of government; *baillis* and *sénéchaux*, improvement of finances, justice, and the army. The communes, industry and commerce. The great wall of Philip Augustus around Paris. The real beginnings of a university of Paris in this reign. The short reign of Louis VIII, 1223–1226, witnessed no great changes. Continuance of the Albigensian wars. Appanages.

5. The minority of Louis IX, 1226–1234. Regency of his mother, Blanche of Castille. Failure of a serious feudal reaction. The migration of the university of Paris in 1229.

6. France at the height of her medieval glory under Saint Louis (Louis IX), 1226–1270. His character and popularity. His foreign policy. Development of central machinery of government. *Enquêteurs.* Beginnings of the differentiation of the *curia regis* into a *grand conseil*, a *parlement*, and a *chambre des comptes.* The king's interest in justice. His relations with the mendicants. His charitable institutions in Paris. His friends, Joinville and Robert de Sorbonne. The Sainte Chapelle. The disastrous crusades of Louis in Egypt, 1248–1254, and Tunis, 1270. Death of St. Louis in Carthage, 1270.

7. Philip III (*le Hardi*, the Bold), 1270–1285. The county of Toulouse was annexed to the French crown. His relations with the Spanish kingdoms, especially after the Sicilian Vespers in 1282.

8. Consolidation of the French absolute monarchy under Philip IV (*le Bel*, the Fair), 1285–1314. Foreign relations with Flanders, England, and the empire. Reliance on the Roman law. Relations with pope Boniface VIII. The papal bulls *Clericis laicos* and *Unam sanctam.* The burning question of taxation. Financial and other administrative reforms. Meeting of the Estates General in 1302 and other internal reforms. The beginning of the "Babylon-

ish Captivity'' of the papacy. Anagni. The suppression of the Templars, 1309–1314.

9. Louis X, 1314–1316, Philip V, 1316–1322, Charles IV, 1316–1328. Charles was the last male descendant of Philip IV and with his death the direct line of Capetians came to an end. The antecedents of the Hundred Years' War with England.

B. Special Recommendations for Reading

Short general accounts. G. B. Adams, *The growth of the French nation*, 73–107, together with the same author's *Civilization during the middle ages*, ch. XIII. Mackinnon, *Growth of the French monarchy*, ch. I. See also the first pages in C. V. Langlois, *The historic rôle of France among the nations.*

Longer general accounts. Lavisse and Rambaud, *Histoire générale* II, ch. VII, III, ch. I. Masson, *The story of mediaeval France*, chs. III-VIII. Tout, *Empire and papacy*, chs. XII, XVII, together with Lodge, *The close of the middle ages*, ch. III. Kitchin, *History of France*, 4th edition, I, 255–413. Macdonald, *A history of France*, I, 112–218. J. Loserth, *Geschichte des späteren Mittelalters*, 44–52, 149–159, 217–246.

Standard work. Lavisse, *Histoire de France*, II, part II, 311–331, and both parts of vol. III.

The Ile de France. M. Bloch, *L'Ile-de-France (les pays autour de Paris)*, Paris, 1913 (vol. IX of Les régions de la France), assembles articles which appeared in the *Revue de synthèse historique.*

Philip Augustus. W. H. Hutton, *Philip Augustus*, London, 1896 (Foreign statesmen). A. Luchaire, *La société française au temps de Philippe-Auguste*, 2nd edition, Paris, 1909, authorized translation by E. B. Krehbiel, *Social France at the time of Philip Augustus*, New York, 1912.

Saint Louis. F. Perry, *Saint Louis* (*Louis IX of France*), *the most Christian king*, New York, 1901 (Heroes of the nations), is a very satisfactory biography. See also Munro and Sellery, *Medieval civilization*, new edition, 366–375; 491–523 (the latter pages being a translation from Lavisse, *Histoire de France*, III, part II, 18–40).

Templars. The best general account on the suppression of the Templars in 1309 is H. C. Lea, *History of the inquisition*, III, 238–334. For other literature see under the outline ''Crusades'' above.

Original sources. Translations of Joinville's famous *Life of St. Louis* have been indicated above in the outline on the crusades. Extracts from it may be read in Robinson, *Readings*, I, 198–221; and Ogg, *Source book*, 311–324.

Maps. SHEPHERD, *Atlas*, 69, 70–71, 76. For excellent detailed maps see A. LONGNON, *Atlas historique de la France*.

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General books. The general histories of France are listed above, nos. 508–548.

Louis VI. A. LUCHAIRE, *Louis VI le Gros: annales de sa vie et de son règne, 1081–1137, avec une introduction historique*, Paris, 1890. J. W. THOMPSON, *The development of the French monarchy under Louis VI le Gros*, Chicago, 1895.

Louis VII. A. LUCHAIRE, *Etudes sur les actes de Louis VII*, Paris, 1885. R. HIRSCH, *Studien zur Geschichte König Ludwigs VII von Frankreich (1119–1160)*, Leipzig, 1892. O. CARTELLIERI, *Abt Suger von Saint-Denis, 1081–1115*, Berlin, 1898 (Historische Studien, 11). A. HUGUENIN, *Suger et la monarchie française au XII^e siècle (1108–1152)*, Paris, 1857. A. LUCHAIRE, *Histoire des institutions monarchiques de la France sous les premiers Capétiens, 987–1180*. E. VACANDARD, "Le divorce de Louis le Jeune [Louis VII]," in *Revue des questions historiques*, XLVII (1890), 408–432. E. VACANDARD, "Saint Bernard et la royauté française," in *Revue des questions historiques*, XLIX (1891), 353–409. E. DUVERNOY, *Le Duc de Lorraine, Mathieu I^er, 1139–1176*, Paris, 1904. In his *Catalogue des actes des ducs de Lorraine de 1048 à 1139 et de 1176 à 1220*, Nancy, 1915, the author has supplemented and completed the work begun in the Appendix of the earlier work.

Louis VIII. C. PETIT-DUTAILLIS, *Etude sur la vie et le règne de Louis VIII (1187–1226)*, Paris, 1894, no. 101 of no. 888 above.

Philip Augustus. A. CARTELLIERI, *Philipp II Augustus, König von Frankreich*, vols. I–III, Leipzig, 1899–1910, is the standard work on this monarch; his, *Philipp II August und der Zusammenbruch des angevinischen Reiches*, Leipzig, 1913, is a short sketch of sixteen pages. F. M. POWICKE, *The loss of Normandy (1180–1204)*. W. WALKER, *On the increase of royal power in France under Philip Augustus*, Leipzig, 1888 (dissertation). L. DELISLE, *Catalogue des actes de Philippe Auguste, avec une introduction sur les sources, les caractères et l'importance historique de ces documents*, Paris, 1856. L. L. BORRELLI DE SERRES, *La reunion des provinces septentrionales à la couronne par Philippe Auguste: Amiénois, Artois, Vermandois, Valois*, Paris, 1899. R. DAVIDSOHN, *Philipp II August von Frankreich und Ingeborg*, Stuttgart, 1888 (dissertation). P. SCHEFFER-BOICHORST, *Deutschland und Philipp II August von Frankreich 1180–1214*, 1868 (Forschungen zur deutschen Geschichte, 8). C. BÉMONT, *De la condemnation de Jean-Sans-Terre par la cour des pairs de France en 1202*, Paris, 1886.

For the battle of Bouvines see E. ANDOUIN, *Essai sur l'armée royale au temps de Philippe-Auguste*, Paris, 1913; C. BALLHAUSEN, *Die Schlacht bei Bouvines 27 VII 1214*, Jena, 1907; A. HORTZSCHANSKY, *Die Schlacht an der Brücke von Bouvines*, 1883 (dissertation, Halle); and H. MALO, *Un grand feudataire, Renaud de Dammartin, et la coalition de Bouvines: contribution à l'étude du règne de Philippe-Auguste*, Paris, 1898.

Saint Louis. C. V. LANGLOIS, *Saint Louis*, Paris, 1886. A. LECOY DE LA MARCHE, *France sous St. Louis et sous Philippe le Hardi*, Paris, 1894. L. S. LE NAIN DE TILLEMONT, *Vie de Saint Louis*, 6 vols., Paris, 1847–1851. H. WALLON, *Saint Louis et son temps*, 2 vols., 4th edition, Paris, 1895. M. SEPET, *Saint Louis*, 7th edition, Paris, 1905 (Les saints), translated by G. TYRRELL, London, 1899. WINIFRED F. KNOX, *The court of a saint*, London [1909]. E. BERGER, *Les dernières années de Saint Louis*, Paris, 1902. See also his *Saint Louis et Innocent IV*, Paris, 1893; and his *Histoire de Blanche de Castille, reine de France*, Paris, 1895. J. S. DENIEL, *Histoire de Blanche de Castille*, Tours, 1908. M. GAVRILOVITCH, *Etude sur le traité de Paris de 1259, entre Louis IX, roi de France, et Henri III, roi d'Angleterre*, Paris, 1899. E. BOUTARIC, *Saint Louis et Alphonse de Poitiers*, Paris, 1870. A. MOLINIER, "Etude sur l'administration de Louis IX et d'Alphonse de Poitiers (1226–71)" in *Histoire générale de Languedoc*, VII, 462 ff. C. E. NORTON, *St. Louis and Joinville*, Boston, 1864.

Philip III. C. V. LANGLOIS, *Le règne de Philippe III le Hardi*, Paris, 1887. L. LECLÈRE, *Les rapports de la papauté et de la France sous Philippe III, 1270–1285*, Paris, 1889.

Philip the Fair. E. BOUTARIC, *La France sous Philippe le Bel*, Paris, 1861. F. KERN, *Die Anfänge der französischen Ausdehnungspolitik bis zum Jahr 1308*, Tübingen, 1910; and his *Grundlagen der französischen Ausdehnungspolitik*, Leipzig, 1910. JOLLY, *Philippe le Bel: ses dessins, ses actes, son influence*, Paris, 1889. E. RENAN, *Politique religieuse du règne de Philippe le Bel*, Paris, 1899. F. FUNK-BRENTANO, *Les origines de la guerre de cent ans: Philippe le Bel en Flandre*, Paris, 1897. P. FOURNIER, *Le royaume d'Arles*, Paris, 1892. R. HOLTZMANN, *Wilhelm von Nogaret: Rat und Grosssiegelbewahrer Philipps des Schönen von Frankreich*, Freiburg, 1898 (dissertation).

Finances in the time of Philip the Fair. L. L. BORRELLI DE SERRES, *Recherches sur divers services publics du XIII^e^ au XVII^e^ siècles*, 7 vols., Paris, 1895–1909. See also his *Les variations monétaires sous Philippe le Bel et les sources de leur histoire*, Paris, 1902. A. VUITRY, *Etudes sur le régime financier de la France avant la*

révolution de 1789, 2 vols., Paris, 1877–1883. L. LAZARD, *Essai sur la condition des Juifs dans le domaine royal au XIII^e siècle*, Paris, 1887. For the preceding centuries see M. PROU, *Esquisse de la politique monétaire des rois de France du X^e au XII^e siècle*, Paris, 1901.

Estates General. G. PICOT, *Histoire des états généraux*, 6 vols., 2nd edition, Paris, 1889. M. ARTONNE, *Le mouvement de 1314, et les chartes provinciales de 1315*, Paris, 1913. G. PICOT, *documents relatifs aux états généraux et assemblées réunis sous Philippe le Bel*, Paris, 1901. H. HERVIEU, *Recherches sur les premiers états généraux et les assemblées représentatives pendant la première moitié du XIV^e siècle*, Paris, 1879.

The Parlement of Paris. F. AUBERT, *Histoire du Parlement de Paris de l'origine à François 1^er, 1250–1515*, 2 vols., Paris, 1894. E. MAUGIS, *Histoire du Parlement de Paris, de l'avènement des rois Valois à la mort d'Henri IV*, vols. I and II, Paris, 1913–1914. C. V. LANGLOIS, "Les origines du Parlement de Paris," in *Revue historique*, XLII (1890), 74–114. F. AUBERT, *Le Parlement de Paris de Philippe le Bel à Charles VII, 1314–1422*, Paris, 1890. E. PERROT, *Les cas royaux: origine et développement de la théorie aux XIII^e et XIV^e siècles*, Paris, 1910.

Philip V. P. LEHUGEUR, *Histoire de Philippe le Long*, Paris, 1896.

Original sources. The large collections of sources for the history of France are listed above, nos. **965–977**. Much material of value is in the Rolls Series, no. **995** above. MOLINIER, no. **21** above, is the best guide for original sources on French history.

Special mention may be made of the *Oeuvres complètes de Suger*, edited by LECOY DE LA MARCHE, Paris, 1867; and the separate edition of his book on Louis the Fat, *Gesta Ludovici regis cognomento Grossi, ou Vie de Louis le Gros*, edited by A. MOLINIER, Paris, 1887. *Acta imperii Angliae et Franciae ab. a. 1267 ad a. 1313*, edited by F. KERN, Tübingen, 1910. *Etablissements de Saint Louis*, edited by P. VIOLLET, 4 vols., Paris, 1881–1886, part of no. **966** above. H. F. DELABORDE, "La texte primitif des *Enseignements de Saint-Louis à son fils*," in *Bibliothèque de l'Ecole des chartes*, LXXIII (1912), 73–100, 237–262.

Bibliographies. See the general bibliographies for the history of France, nos. **21–27** above. There are excellent bibliographical notes for this period in the footnotes of LAVISSE, *Histoire de France*, vol. III. For the Angevin (Norman) Empire, see GROSS, no. **36** above.

XXVI. MEDIEVAL ECONOMIC CONDITIONS

A. OUTLINE

1. Importance of economic history. Until recently, economic history was unduly neglected; now it has gained such prominence that there is some danger of giving it too much emphasis.

2. Prominent features of medieval economic life. Predominance of rural life. Importance of corporations. Comparatively stable conditions. The barter system.

3. Rural life. The manor. The lord of the manor and his free and servile tenants. The duties which tenants owed their lord. Gradual emancipation of the servile population. Chief features of the agricultural system: the demesne land, open fields, the strip system, the three-field system. Crude methods of agriculture. Difficulty of keeping animals during the winter. Housing and labor conditions, and the amusements of the masses. Peasants' revolts; the Jacquerie in France, 1358, and the Peasants' Revolt in England in 1381.

4. Urban life. Origin of medieval towns; their relations with feudal lords. Enfranchisement of towns. Town charters. Communes, boroughs. Differences of town life in different countries. The inhabitants of towns and their occupations. Aliens, especially Jews. Regulation of manufacture and trade. Merchant gilds and craft gilds. Social and religious gilds. Mystery plays. City walls, streets, churches, town halls, and markets. Remarkable growth and improvement of cities in the thirteenth century. The wealthy class in cities. Towns which have preserved their medieval character, such as Bruges and Nürnberg.

5. Sufferings from cold, famine, and pestilences. The Black Death of 1348–1349.

6. Money and banking in the middle ages. Disadvantages of the barter system. Relatively poor system of coinage. Widespread privileges of coinage and prevalence of debasement of coin. Italian standard coins, banks, and bills of exchange. Money-lending Jews and Lombards. Medieval ideas about interest.

7. Commerce. Hindrances to commerce in the middle ages. Just price. Forestalling. Sudden increase of business in the twelfth century. The chief Asiatic and European routes. The importance of the Mediterranean and the Baltic and North Seas. Luxuries from the east and raw materials from the north. Markets and fairs. Commercial associations and leagues, especially the Hanseatic League. Importance of the Italian cities. Inter-

municipal trade. Captains of industry and trade. Jews. Influence of the rise of the Ottoman Turks on commerce.

8. The extension of geographical knowledge, due to commerce and other causes, such as missionary endeavor. Marco Polo. The compass. Medieval geographical knowledge and cartography (the *portolani*).

B. SPECIAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR READING

Brief general accounts. EMERTON, *Mediaeval Europe*, ch. XV. ADAMS, *Civilization*, ch. XII. LUCHAIRE, *Social France*, translated by KREHBIEL, ch. XIII. See the pictures in nos. **187, 188,** and **207** above. For particular terms, PALGRAVE'S *Dictionary*, no. **115** above, is helpful.

Longer general accounts. LAVISSE and RAMBAUD, *Histoire générale*, II, chs. I, VIII, and IX. These three chapters can also be read in English. The first, written by C. SEIGNOBOS, was translated by E. W. DOW, *The feudal régime*, New York, Holt, 1906. Chapters VIII and IX, written by A. GIRY and A. RÉVILLE, were translated by F. G. BATES and P. E. TITSWORTH, under the titles, *Emancipation of mediaeval towns;* and, *Medieval commerce and industry*, both published by Holt in 1908.

W. CUNNINGHAM, *Western civilization in its economic aspects: medieval and modern*, Cambridge, 1900, book IV. H. F. HELMOLT, *History of the world*, VII, 1–62. LAVISSE, *Histoire de France*, II, part II, 332–357, III, part I, 390–414. LUCHAIRE, *Manuel des institutions françaises*, part III, "Les institutions populaires." E. MICHAEL, *Culturzustände des deutschen Volkes während des dreizehnten Jahrhunderts*, I, 1–85, 129–204.

Medieval commerce. E. P. CHEYNEY, *European background to American history*, New York, 1904 (The American nation series), chs. I–III. C. DAY, *A history of commerce*, New York, 1907, part II. A still more elementary account than DAY is H. DE B. GIBBINS, *The history of commerce in Europe*, London, 1891, 2nd edition, 1896, 27–92.

The following are interesting special studies. L. HUTCHINSON, "Oriental trade and the rise of the Lombard communes," *Quarterly Journal of economics*, XVI (1901–1902), 413–432. H. C. LEA, "Ecclesiastical treatment of usury," in *Yale review*, II (1893–1894), 356–385. ALICE LAW, "The English nouveaux-riches in the fourteenth century," in *Royal historical society, Transactions*, new series, IX (1895), 49–73; and her "Notes on English medieval shipping," in *Economic review*, VIII (1898), 349–385. On medieval ships and shipping see also LA RONCIÈRE, *Histoire de la marine*

française, I, 244–298; and ENLART, *Manuel d'archéologie*, II, 568–620.

Hanseatic League. Short accounts are LODGE, *Close of the middle ages*, ch. XVIII; HENDERSON, *Short history of Germany*, 181–202; HELMOLT, *History of the world*, VII, 10–62; and the article by E. F. GAY in the *Encyclopaedia Britannica*. The following are two short books on the subject: HELEN ZIMMER, *The Hansa towns*, New York, 1889; and D. SCHÄFER, *Die deutsche Hanse*, Leipzig, 1903, 2nd edition, revised, 1915, part 19 of no. 326 above.

The Black Death. F. A. GASQUET, *The Black Death of 1348 and 1349*, London, 1908, is a 2nd edition of his *Great Pestilence of 1348–49*, London, 1893. J. F. PALMER, "Pestilences: their influence in the destiny of nations, as shown in the history of the plague," *Royal historical society*, new series, I (1884), 242–259.

Geographical discovery. C. R. BEAZLEY, "Marco Polo and the European expansion of the middle ages," in *Atlantic monthly*, CIV (1909), 493–501, will serve as an introduction to his *The dawn of modern geography*, II, ch. VI, III, chs. IV–V. S. RUGE, *Geschichte des Zeitalters der Entdeckungen*, 35–81. J. B. BROWN, "The last great dreamer of the crusades," in *Nineteenth century*, X (1881), 701–722.

Original sources. Short selections may be found in ROBINSON, *Readings*, I, ch. XVIII; THATCHER and MCNEAL, *Source book*, 545–612; OGG, *Source book*, ch. XX; and *Translations and reprints*, III, no. 2, "Statistical documents of the middle ages," and III, no. 5, "English manorial documents."

On geographic discovery the most important source is *The book of Ser Marco Polo, the Venetian, concerning the kingdoms and marvels of the east*, translated and edited by Sir H. YULE, 2 vols., London, 1871, 3rd edition, revised by H. CORDIER, London, 1903. There is a translation of MARCO POLO'S book in *Everyman's library*. A recent German edition of the work is *Die Reisen des Venezianers* MARCO POLO *im 13 Jahrhundert*, bearbeitet von H. LEMCKE, Grossborstel, 1907. Next in importance is a book which has been mentioned before, *Cathay and the way thither*, also edited by H. YULE. *Book of the knowledge of all the kingdoms, lands, and lordships that are in the world, and the arms and devices of each land and lordship*, edited by Sir C. MARKHAM, London, 1912 (Hakluyt society, 2nd series, XXIX) is an account by a fourteenth century Spanish Franciscan. CHAN JU-KUA, *his work on the Chinese and Arab trade in the 12th and 13th centuries, entitled Chufanchi*, translated from the Chinese and annotated by F. HIRTH and W. W. ROCKHILL, Leipzig, 1912.

For a contemporary account of the Black Death read BOCCACCIO's introduction to his *Decameron*, the essentials of which are printed in *Source book of the renaissance*, edited by M. WHITCOMB, revised edition, 21–24.

Maps. SHEPHERD, *Atlas*, 76, 98–99, 102–103, 104, 107–110.

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General Books. The general histories of civilization, nos. **729–738, 751,** and **762–781,** are especially valuable. Almost all the books on the Jews, nos. **850–884** above, lay stress on their place in economic history, but see especially nos. **857–861.** In addition, read H. C. LEA, *Inquisition in Spain*, I, 81–144.

General economic history. M. KOVALEWSKY, *Die ökonomische Entwicklung Europas bis zum Beginn der kapitalistischen Wirtschaftsform*, translated into German from the Russian by L. MOTZKIN and others, vols. I–VII, Berlin, 1901–14. G. D'AVENEL, *Histoire économique de la propriété, des salaires, des denrées, et de tous les prix en général, depuis l'an 1200 jusqu'en l'an 1800*, 6 vols., Paris, 1894–1912, abridged and altered under the titles, *Paysans et ouvriers depuis sept cents ans*, Paris, 1899; *Les riches depuis sept cents ans: revenus et bénéfices, appointments et honoraires*, Paris, 1909; and *La fortune privée à travers sept siècles*, 3rd edition, Paris, 1895. J. STRIEDER, *Studien zur Geschichte kapitalistischer Organisationsformen: Monopole, Kartelle und Aktiengesellschaften im Mittelalter und zu Beginn der Neuzeit*, Munich, 1914. H. BIKEL, *Die Wirtschaftsverhältnisse des Klosters St. Gallen von der Gründung bis zum Ende des dreizehnten Jahrhunderts*, Freiburg-i-B., 1914. W. T. ASHLEY, *Surveys, historic and economic*, London and New York, 1900, deals with the middle ages in the first chapters.

Economic history of France. E. LEVASSEUR, *Histoire des classes ouvrières et de l'industrie en France avant 1789*, 2 vols., Paris, 1859, 2nd edition, 1900. AGNES M. WERGELAND, *History of the working classes in France: a review of Levasseur's "Histoire des classes ouvrières et de l'industrie en France avant 1789."* Chicago, 1916.

Economic history of Germany. K. T. v. INAMA-STERNEGG, *Deutsche Wirthschaftsgeschichte*, 3 vols. in 4, Leipzig, 1879–1901, vol. 1 in 2nd edition, 1909. K. LAMPRECHT, *Deutsches Wirtschaftsleben im Mittelalter*, 3 vols. in 4, Leipzig, 1885–1886. R. KÖTZSCHKE, *Deutsche Wirtschaftsgeschichte bis zum 17 Jahrhundert*, Leipzig, 1908, part 2, 1, of no. **331** above.

Economic History of England. W. J. ASHLEY, *An introduction to English economic history and theory*, 2 vols., London, 1888–1893, 3rd edition of vol. I, 1894. J. E. T. ROGERS, *A history of agriculture*

and prices in England, 1259–1793, 7 vols., Oxford, 1866–1902; his *Six centuries of work and wages: the history of English labour*, 2 vols., London, 1884, 11th edition in 1 vol., 1912, is based on the above. See also his *The economic interpretation of history*, London, 1888, 7th edition, 1909. F. SEEBOHM, *The English village community: an essay on economic history*, London, 1883, 4th edition, 1890. E. LIPSON, *The economic history of England*, I, *The middle ages*, New York, 1915. E. P. CHEYNEY, *An introduction to the industrial and social history of England*, New York, 1901. L. F. SALZMANN, *English industries of the middle ages*, London, 1913. See also no. 735 above.

Agricultural conditions and life of the peasants. L. DELISLE, *Etudes sur la condition de la classe agricole et sur l'état de l'agriculture en Normandie pendant le moyen âge*, Paris, 1851. H. SÉE, *Les classes rurales et le régime domanial en France au moyen âge*, Paris, 1901. J. M. RICHARD, "Thierri d'Hireçon, agriculteur artésian," in *Bibliothèque de l'Ecole des chartes*, LIII (1892), 383–416, 571–604. A. THIERRY, *Histoire du tiers état*, Paris, 1850, translated by F. B. WELLS, *The formation and progress of the tiers état, or third estate in France*, London, 1859. M. FOURNIER, "Les affranchissements du V^e^ au XIII^e^ siècle," in *Revue historique*, XXI (1883), 1–58. J. BRAND, *Observations on popular antiquities, chiefly illustrating the origin of our vulgar customs*, etc., revised by H. ELLIS, 2 vols., London, 1813, reprinted in 1841–42 and again in 1849, in 3 vols., with additions, new editions by W. C. HAZLITT, 3 vols., London, 1870; 2 vols., 1905.

Popular insurrections. G. DES MAREZ, *Les luttes sociales en Flandre au moyen âge*, Brussells, 1900. L. MIROT, *Les insurrections urbaines au début du règne de Charles VI (1380–83)*, Paris, 1905. G. v. D. ROPP, *Sozialpolitische Bewegungen im Bauernstande vor dem Bauernkriege*, Marburg, 1899.

Medieval towns. See the following three series: *Mediaeval towns*, London, Dent, 1898 ff; *Historic towns*, edited by E. A. FREEMAN and W. HUNT, 9 vols., London, 1887–1893; and *Ancient cities*, edited by B. C. A. WINDLE, 8 vols., London, 1903–1908. For London see also the profusely illustrated books by Sir W. BESANT, *Early London, prehistoric, Roman, Saxon, and Norman*, London, 1908; and *Mediaeval London*, 2 vols., vol. I, *Historical and social*, vol. II, *Ecclesiastical*, London, 1906. J. M. VINCENT, *Municipal problems in mediaeval Switzerland*, Baltimore, 1905 (Johns Hopkins University studies, series XXIII, nos. 11–12). H. PIRENNE, "L'origine des constitutions urbaines au moyen âge," in *Revue historique*, LIII (1893), 52–83, LVII (1895), 57–98, 293–327.

French cities. A. LUCHAIRE, *Les communes françaises à l'époque des Capétiens directs*, Paris, 1890, new edition by L. HALPHEN, 1911. G. ESPINAS, *La vie urbaine de Douai au moyen-âge*, 4 vols., Paris, 1913 (vols. III–IV contain "pièces justificatives"). GENEVIÈVE ACLOQUE, *Les corporations, l'industrie, et le commerce à Chartres du XI^e siècle à la Revolution*, Paris, 1917. G. BOURGIN, *La commune de Soissons, et le groupe communal soissonnais*, Paris, 1908, part 167 of no. **888** above. A. GIRY, *Les établissements de Rouen*, 2 vols., Paris, 1883–1885, parts 55 and 59 of no. **888** above. F. B. MARSH, *English rule in Gascony, 1199–1259, with special reference to the towns*, Ann Arbor, 1912 (University of Michigan studies). MARY BATESON, "The laws of Breteuil," in *English historical review*, XV (1900), 73–78, 302–18, 496–523, 754–7; XVI (1901), 92–110, 332–45.

For a detailed bibliography on medieval Paris see outline XIII in part III below.

German cities. K. HEGEL, *Städte und Gilden der germanischen Völker im Mittelalter*, 2 vols., Leipzig, 1891; and his, *Die Entstehung des deutschen Städtewesens*, Leipzig, 1898. G. VON BELOW, *Das älteste deutsche Städtewesen und Bürgertum*, Bielefeld and Leipzig, 1898, part of no. **326** above; and his *Der Ursprung der deutschen Stadtverfassung*, Düsseldorf, 1892. R. SOHM, *Die Entstehung des deutschen Städtewesens*, Leipzig, 1890. G. L. v. MAURER, *Geschichte der Städteverfassung in Deutschland*, 4 vols., Erlangen, 1869–1871. F. W. BARTHOLD, *Geschichte der deutschen Städte und des deutschen Bürgertums*, 4 vols., Leipzig, 1850–1854. B. HEIL, *Die deutschen Städte und Bürger im Mittelalter*, Leipzig, 1903 (Aus Natur und Geisteswelt, 43).

The following are some interesting special studies on individual cities: W. KING, *Chronicles of three free cities, Hamburg, Bremen, Lübeck*, London, 1914. W. REISNER, *Die Einwohnerzahl deutscher Städte in früheren Jahrhunderten, mit besonderer Berücksichtigung Lübecks*, Jena, 1903. H. KEUSSEN, *Topographie der Stadt Köln im Mittelalter, nebst Karten und Beigaben*, 2 vols., Bonn, 1910. W. BEHAGHEL, *Die gewerbliche Stellung der Frau im mittelalterlichen Köln*, Berlin and Leipzig, 1910. K. BÜCHER, *Die Berufe der Stadt Frankfurt am Main im Mittelalter*, Leipzig, 1914. I. KRACAUER, *Geschichte der Frankfurter Juden im Mittelalter, aus der inneren Geschichte der Juden Frankfurts im 14 Jahrhundert (Judengasse, Handel und sonstige Berufe)*, Frankfurt, 1913. See also his important source book, *Urkundenbuch zur Geschichte der Juden in Frankfurt-am-Main von 1150–1400*, vol. I, Frankfurt, 1914. G. SCHMOLLER, *Strasburgs Blüte*, Strasburg, 1875, eulogizes the remarkable growth of this city in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries. P. SANDER, *Die*

Reichsstädtische Haushaltung Nürnbergs, auf Grund ihres Zustandes von 1431–1440 dargestellt, Leipzig, 1902.

See also the literature on the "Eastward expansion of Germany," under outline XXII above.

Italian cities. F. SCHEVILL, *Siena: the story of a mediaeval commune*, New York, 1909. For other literature on Italian cities see outline XXII above and outline XXXII below.

Gilds. C. GROSS, *The gild merchant: a contribution to British municipal history*, 2 vols., Oxford, 1890. E. R. A. SELIGMAN, *Two chapters on the mediaeval guilds of England*, Baltimore, 1887 (American economic association monographs, vol. II, no. 5). A. H. JOHNSON, *The history of the worshipful company of drapers of London: preceded by an introduction on London and her gilds up to the close of the XVth century*, 2 vols., Oxford, 1914. G. UNWIN, *The gilds and companies of London*, London, 1908. A. F. JACK, *An introduction to the history of life insurance*, London and New York, 1912, "The gild-system," 15–149. R. EBERSTADT, *Der Ursprung des Zunftwesens und die älteren Handwerkerverbände des Mittelalters*, Leipzig, 1900; see also his *Das französische Gewerberecht in Frankreich vom XIIIten Jahrhundert bis 1581*, Leipzig, 1899 (in Staats- und Sozialwissenschaftliche Forschungen, XVII, 2). A. DOREN, *Untersuchungen zur Geschichte der Kaufmannsgilden im Mittelalter*, Leipzig, 1893 (Forschungen, edited by Schmoller, 12). M. SAINT-LÉON, *Histoire des corporations des métiers*, Paris, 1897, 2nd edition, 1909.

Mystery plays. E. K. CHAMBERS, *The mediaeval stage*, 2 vols., Oxford, 1903. S. TUNISON, *Dramatic traditions of the dark ages*, Chicago, 1907. D. C. STUART, *Stage decoration in France in the middle ages*, Columbia University Press, 1910. G. COHEN, *Histoire de la mise en scène dans le théâtre religieux français du moyen âge*, Paris, 1906, translated into German in an enlarged and improved edition by C. BAUER, *Geschichte der Inszenierung im geistlichen Schauspiele des Mittelalters in Frankreich*, Leipzig, 1907; see also his "Le théâtre à Paris et aux environs à la fin du XIV^e^ siècle," in *Romania*, XXXVIII (1909), 587–595. M. HERMANN, *Forschungen zur deutschen Theatergeschichte des Mittelalters und der Renaissance*, Berlin, 1914. K. YOUNG, "Observations on the medieval passion play," in *Publications of the modern language association*, Baltimore, XXV (1910), 309–354. F. J. MONE, *Schauspiele des Mittelalters*, Carlsruhe, 1846.

Epidemics and famines. J. F. K. HECKER, *Der schwarze Tod im vierzehnten Jahrhundert*, Berlin, 1832, new edition by A. HIRSCH, with the title, *Die grossen Volkskrankheiten des Mittelalters*, 1865, translated by B. C. BABINGTON, *The epidemics of the middle ages*,

London, 1844, 3rd edition, 1859. See also his, *The Black Death and the dancing mania*, translated by B. G. BABINGTON, New York [1888] (Cassell's national library). R. CRAWFURD, *Plague and pestilence in literature and art*, Oxford University Press, 1914, has interesting illustrations. G. STICKER, *Abhandlungen aus der Seuchengeschichte und Seuchenlehre*, vol. I, *Die Pest*, erster Theil: *Die Geschichte der Pest*, Giesen, 1908; zweiter Theil: *Die Pest als Seuche und als Plage*, 1910. C. CREIGHTON, *A history of epidemics in Britain* [A.D. 664–1866], 2 vols., Cambridge, 1891–94. E. BASCOME, *A history of epidemic pestilences from the earliest ages, 1495 years before the birth of Our Savior to 1848*, London, 1851. K. LECHNER, *Das grosse Sterben in Deutschland in der Jahren 1348 bis 1351 und die folgenden Pestepidemien bis zum Schlusse des 14 Jahrhunderts*, Innsbruck, 1884; see also his "Die grosse Geisselfahrt des Jahres 1349," in *Historisches Jahrbuch*, V (1884), 437–462. R. HOENIGER, *Der schwarze Tod in Deutschland*, Berlin, 1882. W. SEELMANN, *Die Totentänze des Mittelalters*, Norden, 1893 (extract from *Jahrbuch des Vereins für niederdeutsche Sprachforschung*). F. CURSCHMANN, *Hungersnöte des Mittelalters (8–13 Jahrhundert)*, Leipzig, 1900 (Leipziger Studien, 6, 1).

Money and banking. W. W. CARLILE, *Evolution of modern money*, London, 1901. W. A. SHAW, *The history of currency, 1252 to 1894*, New York, 1896. J. SCHOENHOF, *History of money and prices: an inquiry into their relations from the 13th century to the present time*, 2nd edition, New York, 1897. A. DEL MAR, *History of monetary systems*, London, 1895; see also his, *Money and civilization*, London, 1886. J. LUBBOCK (Lord Avebury), *Short history of coins and currency*, New York, 1902. A. DIEUDONNÉ, "Histoire monétaire du denier parisis jusqu'à Saint Louis," in *Mémoires de la Société nationale des antiquaires de France*, 1911, pp. 111–147; see also his, "La monnaie royale depuis la réforme de Charles V," in *Bibliothèque de l'école des chartes*, LXXII (1911), 473–499, LXXIII (1912), 263–282. F. SCHAUB, *Der Kampf gegen den Zinswucher, ungerechten Preis und unlauteren Handel im Mittelalter*, Freiburg, 1905. R. J. WHITWELL, "Italian bankers and the English crown," in *Royal historical society, Transactions*, new series, XVII (1903), 173–233. O. MELTZING, *Das Bankhaus der Medici und seine Vorläufer*, Jena, 1907. S. L. PERUZZI, *Storia del commercio e dei banchieri di Firenze, 1200–1345*, Florence, 1868. A. v. KOSTANECKI, *Das öffentliche Kreditwesen im Mittelalter*, Leipzig, 1889 (Schmollers Staats- und Sozialwissenschaftliche Forschungen, 9, i). See also nos. 292–298 above.

General history of commerce. O. NÖEL, *Histoire du commerce du monde depuis les temps les plus reculés*, 3 vols., Paris, 1891–1906. G. LUZZATTO, *Storia del commercio*, vol. I, *Dall' antichità al rinascimento*, Florence, 1914. A. SEGRE, *Manuale di storia del commercio*, vol. I, *Dalle origini alla rivoluzione francese*, Turin, 1913. A. SCHAUBE, *Handelsgeschichte der romanischen Völker des Mittelmerrgebiets bis zum Ende der Kreuzzüge*, Munich, 1906. M. WEBER, *Zur Geschichte der Handelsgesellschaften im Mittelalter nach südeuropäischen Quellen*, Stuttgart, 1889. H. PIRENNE, "Villes marchés et marchands au moyen âge," in *Revue historique*, LXVII (1898), 59–70. K. JIRECEK, "Die Bedeutung von Ragusa in die Handelsgeschichte des Mittelalters," in *Sitzungsberichte der kgl. Akademie der Wissenschaften zu Wien*, 1899. F. LUDWIG, *Untersuchungen über die Reise- und Marschgeschwindigkeit im XII und XIII Jahrhundert*, Berlin, 1897 (dissertation). B. HAGENDORN, *Die Entwicklung der wichtigsten Schiffstypen bis ins 19 Jahrhundert*, Berlin, 1914.

Levant trade. W. HEYD, *Geschichte des Levantehandels im Mittelalter*, 2 vols., Stuttgart, 1879, translated into French, with additions by the author, by F. RAYNAUD, *Histoire du commerce du Levant au moyen âge*, 2 vols., Leipzig, 1885–1886. See the review of HEYD's important book by F. HIRSCH, "Die Eröffnung des inneren Asiens für den europäischen Handelsverkehr im 13 und 14 Jahrhundert," in *Historische Zeitschrift*, XLIV (1880), 385–408; and A. H. LYBYER, "The Ottoman Turks and the routes of oriental trade," in *English historical review*, XXX (1915), 577–588, who argues that the success of the Turks was not the cause of the discovery of new trade-routes in the fifteenth century.

Commerce in France. E. LEVASSEUR, *Histoire du commerce de la France*, 2 vols., Paris, 1911–1912. H. PIGEONNEAU, *Histoire du commerce de la France*, 2 vols., Paris, 1887–1889. *Mémoires et documents pour servir à l'histoire du commerce et de l'industrie en France*, edited by J. HAYEM, vols. I–IV, Paris, 1911–1916. C. PITON, *Les Lombards en France et à Paris*, 2 vols., Paris, 1891–92. H. D. IMBART DE LA TOUR, *La liberté commerciale en France aux XII^e^ et XIII^e^ siècles*, Paris, 1890. C. D. DE FREVILLE DE LORME, *Mémoire sur le commerce maritime de Rouen*, Rouen, 1857. P. MANTELLIER, *Histoire de la communeauté des marchands fréquentant la rivière de Loire*, vols. I–III, Orleans, 1867–1869. C. ALENGRY, *Les foires de Champagne*, Paris, 1915. F. BOURQUELOT, *Etudes sur les foires de Champagne et de Brie, sur la nature, l'étendue et les règles du commerce qui s'y faisait aux XII^e^–XIV^e^ siècles*, 2 vols., Paris, 1865–1866 (Mémoires, Académie des Inscriptions). J. W. THOMPSON, "The commerce of France in the ninth century," in *Journal of politi-*

cal economy, XXIII (1915), 857–887. A. P. USHER, *The history of the grain trade in France, 1400–1710*, Cambridge, 1913.

Commerce in the Netherlands. R. HÄPKE, *Brügges Entwickelung zum mittelalterlichen Weltmarkt*, Berlin, 1908. See also his, *Der deutsche Kaufmann in den Niederlanden*, Leipzig, 1911. W. STEIN, *Die Genossenschaft der deutschen Kaufleute zu Brügge in Flandern*, Berlin, 1890. M. ROOSEBOOM, *The Scottish staple in the Netherlands*, The Hague, 1910. J. FINOT, *Etude historique sur les relations commerciales entre la Flandre et la république de Gênes au moyen âge*, Paris, 1906; see also his, *Etude historique sur les relations commerciales entre la Flandre et la France au moyen âge*, Paris, 1894; and his, *Etude historique sur les relations commerciales entre la Flandre et l'Espagne au moyen âge*, Paris, 1899. T. WILKINS, "Zur Geschichte des niederländischen Handels im Mittelalter," in *Hansische Geschichtsblätter*, 1908, 1909.

Commerce in Italy. G. YVER, *Le commerce et les marchands dans l'Italie méridionale au 13e et au 14e siècle*, Paris, 1903, part II of no. 887 above. See the Introduction, by R. BROWN, to the *Calendar of State Papers, Venetian*, I (1864), for a sketch of Venetian commerce. W. STIEDA, *Hansisch-Venezianische Handelsbeziehungen im 15 Jahrhundert*, Halle, 1894. A. SCHAUBE, "Die Anfänge der venezianischen Galeerenfahrten nach der Nordsee (seit 1314)," in *Historische Zeitschrift*, CI (1908), 28–89. P. H. SCHEFFEL, *Verkehrsgeschichte der Alpen*, vol. II, Berlin, 1914. O. MELTZING, *Das Bankhaus der Medici und seine Vorläufer*, Jena, 1907. E. FRIEDMANN, *Der mittelalterliche Welthandel von Florenz in seiner geographischen Ausdehnung*, Vienna, 1912. G. TONIOLO, *Dei remoti fattori della potenza economica di Firenze nel medio evo*, Milan, 1882. E. DIXON, "The Florentine wool trades in the middle ages," in *Royal historical society, Transactions*, new series, XII (1898), 151–79. A. DOREN, *Studien aus der Florentiner Wirthschaftsgeschichte*, vols. I–II, Stuttgart and Berlin, 1901–1908.

Commerce in Germany. W. VOGEL, *Geschichte der deutschen Seeschiffahrt*, I, *Von der Urzeit bis zum Ende des XV Jahrhunderts*, Berlin, 1915. R. HENNIG, "Zur Verkehrgeschichte Ost- und Nordeuropas im 8 bis 12 Jahrhundert," in *Historische Zeitschrift*, CXV (1915), 1–30. H. BÄCHTOLD, *Der norddeutsche Handel im 12 und beginnenden 13 Jahrhundert*, Berlin and Leipzig, 1910 (Abhandlungen zur mittleren und neueren Geschichte 21). A. SCHULTE, *Geschichte des mittelalterlichen Handels und Verkehrs zwischen Westdeutschland und Italien mit Ausschluss von Venedig*, 2 vols., Leipzig, 1900. H. SIMONSFELD, *Der Fondaco dei Tedeschi in Venedig und die deutsch-venetianischen Handelsbeziehungen*, 2 vols., Stuttgart, 1887. E.

NÜBLING, *Ulm's Handel im Mittelalter*, Ulm, 1900. F. RAUERS, *Zur Geschichte der alten Handelsstrassen in Deutschland*, Gotha, 1906. G. STEINHAUSEN, *Der Kaufmann in der deutschen Vergangenheit*, Leipzig, 1899 (Monographien zur deutschen Kulturgeschichte, 2). T. HAMPE, *Die fahrenden Leute in der deutschen Vergangenheit*, Leipzig, 1902. H. ECKERT, *Die Krämer in süddeutschen Städten bis zum Ausgang des Mittelalters*, Berlin, 1910 (Abhandlungen zur mittleren und neueren Geschichte, 4). M. SCHELLER, *Zoll und Markt im 12 und 13 Jahrhundert*, Blankenheim, 1903 (dissertation). J. FALKE, *Die Geschichte des deutschen Handels*, Leipzig, 1859.

Hanseatic League. E. DAENELL, *Die Blütezeit der deutschen Hanse: hansische Geschichte von der zweiten Hälfte des 14 bis zum letzten Viertel des 15 Jahrhunderts*, 2 vols., Berlin, 1905–06; see also his, *Geschichte der deutschen Hanse in der zweiten Hälfte des 14 Jahrhunderts*, Leipzig, 1896. T. LINDNER, *Die deutsche Hanse: ihre Geschichte und Bedeutung*, Leipzig, 1898, 4th edition, 1911. W. STEIN, *Beiträge zur Geschichte der deutschen Hanse bis um die Mitte des 15 Jahrhunderts*, Giessen, 1900. A. KIESSELBACH, *Die wirtschaftlichen Grundlagen der deutschen Hanse und die Handelstellung Hamburgs bis in die 2 Hälfte des 14 Jahrhunderts*, Berlin, 1907. A. HOLM, *Lübeck, die freie und Hansestadt*, Bielefeld und Leipzig, 1900. F. SCHULZ, *Die Hanse und England von Edwards III bis auf Heinrichs VIII Zeit*, Berlin, 1911 (Abhandlungen zur Verkehrs- und Seegeschichte, vol. V). F. KEUTGEN, *Die Beziehungen der Hanse zu England im letzten Drittel des 14 Jahrhunderts*, Giessen, 1890. K. BAHR, *Handel und Verkehr der deutschen Hanse in Flandern während des 14 Jahrhunderts*, Leipzig, 1911. W. BUCK, *Der deutsche Kaufmann in Novgorod bis zur Mitte des 14 Jahrhunderts*, Berlin, 1891. A. WINKLER, *Die deutsche Hanse in Russland*, Berlin, 1886. A. AGATS, *Der Hansische Baienhandel*, Heidelberg, 1904, describes the activities of the League in Spain and Portugal. H. HARTMEYER, *Der Weinhandel im Gebiete der Hanse im Mittelalter*, Jena, 1905.

Geographical discoveries in the middle ages. J. LELEWEL, *Géographie du moyen âge*, 4 vols., Brussels, 1850–1852, with an *Epilogue*, 1857. J. BENSAUDE, *L'astronomie nautique en Portugal à l'époque des grandes découvertes*, Bern, 1912, in an appendix gives a chronological list of geographical discoveries from 1290 to 1529. A. BLÁZQUEZ, *Estudio acerca de la cartografía española en la edad media*, Madrid, 1906. C. J. BÜNDGENS, *Was verdankt die Länder- und Völkerkunde den mittelalterlichen Mönchen und Missionären*, Frankfurt, 1889. T. FISCHER, *Über italienische Seekarten und Kartographen des Mittelalters*, Berlin, 1882. O. PESCHEL, *Geschichte des*

Zeitlaters der Entdeckungen, Stuttgart, 1858. C. ERRERA, *L'epoca delle grandi scoperte geografiche*, 1910. S. GÜNTHER, *Geschichte der Erdkunde*, Leipzig, 1904 (vol. I of *Die Erdkunde*, edited by M. KLAR), see chs. III–IV. F. VICOMTE DE SANTAREM, *Essai sur l'histoire de la cosmographie pendant le moyen âge*, 3 vols., 1849–1852. L. SALEMBIER, "Pierre d'Ailly and the discovery of America," in *Historical records and studies of the United States catholic historical society*, VII (1914). S. P. THOMPSON, "The rose of the winds: the origin and development of the compass-card," in *Proceedings of the British academy*, vol. VI (also printed separately by Oxford University Press, 1916). MARGARET B. SYNGE, *A book of discovery: the history of the world's exploration from the earliest times to the finding of the south pole*, London, 1912. S. RUGE, "Die Literatur zur Geschichte der Erdkunde vom Mittelalter an 1900–03," in *Geographisches Jahrbuch*, XXVI (1903).

Medieval industries. R. BENNETT and J. ELTON, *History of corn-milling*, 4 vols., London, 1898–1904. L. BECK, *Die Geschichte des Eisens*, 5 vols., Brunswick, 1884–1903, 2nd edition of vol. I [to 1500], 1891.

Original sources. *Documents relatifs à l'histoire de l'industrie et du commerce en France*, edited by G. FAGNIEZ, 2 vols., Paris, 1898–1900, parts 22 and 31 of no. **968** above. *Réglemens sur les arts et métiers de Paris, rédigés au 13 siècle et connus sous le nom du livre des métiers d'*ETIENNE BOILEAU, edited by G. B. DEPPING, Paris, 1837, part 31 of no. **965** above (see also part 34), also edited by R. DE LESPINASSE and F. BONNARDOT, Paris, 1879, in *Histoire générale de Paris* (Portions of this interesting document are translated in *Studies in European history*, edited by F. M. FLING, II, no. 8). A. GIRY, *Choix de documents sur les relations de la royauté avec les villes en France, 1180–1314*, Paris, 1895. *Cartulaire de l'ancienne estaple de Bruges [862–1492]*, edited by L. GILLIODTS VAN SEVEREN, for the *Société d'emulation de Bruges, Recueil de chroniques*, etc., 4 vols., Bruges, 1904–06. WALTER OF HENLEY'S *Husbandry*, together with an anonymous *Husbandry*, *Seneschaucie*, and ROBERT GROSSETESTE'S *Rules* [with a translation], edited by ELIZABETH LAMOND, with an introduction by W. CUNNINGHAM, London, 1890 (Royal historical society). *Recueil des monuments inédits de l'histoire du tiers état*, edited by A. THIERRY, 4 vols., Paris, 1850–1870, part 24 of no. **965** above. For a large collection of medieval chronicles of German cities see no. **982** above.

The chief sources for the Hanseatic League are the following. *Die Recesse und andere Akten der Hansetage von 1256–1430*, 8 vols., Leipzig, 1870–1897; *Hanserecesse, 1431–1524*, 15 vols., Leipzig, 1876–1910.

Hansisches Urkundenbuch, vols. I–X [to 1485], Halle, 1876–1907. *Hansische Geschichtsquellen*, 7 vols., Halle, 1875–94, neue Folge, Berlin, 1899 ff. *Hansische Geschichtsblätter*, 16 vols., Leipzig, 1871–1900.

The following materials will serve as an introduction to the history of geographical discovery in the middle ages. *Recueil de voyages et mémoires publié par la Société de géographie*, Paris, 1824–1866. *Recueil de voyages et de documents pour servir à la géographie*, Paris, 1890 ff. G. FERRAND, *Relations de voyages et textes géographiques arabes, persans et turc relatifs à l'extrême orient, du VII au XVIII siècles, traduits, revus et annotés*, vol. I, Paris, 1913. A. E. NORDENSKIOLD, *Facsimile atlas to the early history of cartography*, translated from the Swedish by J. A. EKELÖF and C. R. MARKHAM, Stockholm, 1889; his *Periplus: an essay on the early history of charts and sailing directions*, with an atlas, translated from the Swedish, by F. A. BATHER, Stockholm, 1897, is practically a second volume of the *Facsimile atlas*. K. MILLER, *Mappae mundi: die ältesten Weltkarten herausgegeben und erläutert*, 6 parts, Stuttgart, 1895–98. T. FISCHER, *Genoese world map, 1457*, with facsimile and critical text, freely translated by E. L. STEVENSON, New York, 1912. E. L. STEVENSON, *Marine world chart of Nicolo de Conerio Januensis 1502 (circa)*, New York, 1908. *Sammlung mittelalterlichen Welt- und Seekarten italienischen Ursprungs*, edited and elucidated by T. FISCHER, Venice, 1886 (in his Beiträge zur Geschichte der Erdkunde und der Kartographie im Mittelalter). *Eine Geographie aus dem dreizehnten Jahrhundert*, edited by J. V. ZINGERLE [aus RUDOLF VON EMS Weltkronik], 1865. *Die Ebstorfkarte: eine Weltkarte aus dem dreizehnten Jahrhundert*, edited by K. MILLER, 3rd edition, Stuttgart, 1900.

Bibliographies. G. ESPINAS, *Une bibliographie de l'histoire économique de France au moyen âge*, Paris, 1907. C. GROSS, *Bibliography of British municipal history, including gilds and parliamentary representation*, New York, 1897 (Harvard historical studies, vol. V). H. HALL, *A select bibliography for the study, sources, and literature of English economic history*, London, 1914. W. STIEDA, *Ueber die Quellen der Handelsstatistik im Mittelalter*, Berlin, 1903 (Königlich- preussische Akademie der Wissenschaften, Berlin, Abhandlungen, 1902). *Bibliographie der Volkswirtschaftslehre und Rechtswissenschaft* appears since 1906 as a Supplement to *Blätter für vergleichende Rechtswissenschaft und Volkswirtschaftslehre. Jahrbücher für Nationalökonomie und Statistik*, Jena, 1863 ff.

XXVII. THE LIFE OF THE NOBLES IN THE MIDDLE AGES

A. OUTLINE

1. Essential characteristics of nobility and aristocracy. Chief classes in the middle ages: (1) clergy (some noble, others not), (2) lay nobles, (3) common people (rise of the rich burghers within this class).

2. Origin of a distinct class of nobles in the middle ages. Importance of cavalry service or knight's service (*caballarius—chevalerio—chivalry—Ritter*).

3. Priviliges and insignia of nobility. Degrees of nobility. The study of genealogy. *Almanach de Gotha.* The crusades and the origin of heraldry. Orders of knighthood.

4. Sanctification by the church of many of the customs and practices of the nobles. Peace movements in the middle ages. For the "Peace of God" and "Truce of God" see pp. 161–163.

5. The education of the nobles. Stress on athletics, the use of arms, the practice of courtesy, and the "gay sciences." Pages and squires. The lettered nobility.

6. Position of women in feudal society. Their free, athletic, and often warlike life. Women and chivalry.

7. Life of the nobles in times of peace. Their luxuries and amusements. Importation of spices, rugs, hangings, silks, and other luxuries from the east. Furniture and dress. Their amusements. Jousts and tournaments, feasting, hunting (falconry), minstrelsy and games, especially chess, jongleurs and jesters. Knight-errantry. Attitude of nobles toward business and learning.

8. Homes of the nobles. Manor houses and fortified houses in the towns. Strong wooden towers and palisades in the open country. The gradual evolution of the stone castle, the stone wall and the moat in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries. Donjons. Keeps. Wonderful castles such as Château Gaillard.

9. Feudal warfare. Importance of defence; the armored man and the fortified house. Arms, armor, and siegecraft. Influence of the crusades on medieval warfare. Changes brought about by the rise of the common foot-soldier and the use of gunpowder.

10. The decline of chivalry. The influence of the rise of centralized monarchies, the gradual disappearance of serfdom, the rise of a rich merchant and comfortable artisan class in the cities, and of a distinct intellectual class in the universities. Ridicule and satire directed against the nobles, especially in the rising vernacular languages.

B. SPECIAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR READING

Brief general accounts. SEIGNOBOS, *The feudal régime*, 27–38, 64–65. D. C. MUNRO, *A history of the middle ages*, ch. XIII. BÉMONT and MONOD, *Medieval Europe*, 257–267. HENDERSON, *A short history of Germany*, I, ch. V. See also the articles "Knighthood and chivalry," "Castle," and "Fortification and siegecraft," in the *Encyclopaedia Britannica*.

Longer general accounts. A. LUCHAIRE, *Social France*, translated by E. B. KREHBIEL, chs. VIII–XII. E. L. CUTTS, *Scenes and characters of the middle ages*, 311–460. LAVISSE, *Histoire de France*, II, part II, 14–22, IV, part II, 152–176.

Chivalry. The standard works on chivalry are: L. GAUTIER, *La chevalerie*, 3rd edition, Paris, 1895, translated by H. FRITH, *Chivalry*, London, 1891; F. W. CORNISH, *Chivalry*, New York, 1901; and A. SCHULTZ, *Das höfische Leben zur Zeit der Minnesinger*, 2 vols., 2nd edition, Leipzig, 1889. TAYLOR, *The mediaeval mind*, 2nd edition, I, 537–603, attempts to describe the spirit of chivalry. See also MUNRO and SELLERY, *Medieval civilization*, 240–247.

Feudal warfare. C. W. C. OMAN, *A history of the art of war*, especially book VI. H. DELBRÜCK, *Geschichte der Kriegskunst*, vol. III, especially 235 ff. E. VIOLLET-LE-DUC, *Annals of a fortress*, translated from the French by B. BUCKWALL, Boston, 1875. Several books listed in this bibliography contain illustrations; see in addition, nos. **187, 188, 200, 202**, below. Also see "Development of the castle in England and Wales," in *History teachers' magazine*, III (1912), 191–200.

Original sources. *Studies in European history*, edited by F. M. FLING, II, no. 4, "Chivalry and the mode of warfare." The best picture of chivalry during the Hundred Years' War is in FROISSART'S *Chronicles*. JOINVILLE, *Chronicle of the crusade of St. Lewis*, reveals the spirit of crusading knights. See in general the literature under "Crusades," outline XXI above, and under "Medieval French literature," outline XXIV in part III below, for the life of nobles in the middle ages.

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General books. Histories of civilization, nos. **729–738, 749–755, 762–781** above, are useful. See also the books on genealogy and heraldry, nos. **268–291** above.

Origin and nature of medieval nobility. P. GUILHIERMOZ, *L'origine de la noblesse en France au moyen âge*, Paris, 1902. O. HENNE-AM-RHYN, *Geschichte des Rittertums*, Leipzig, 1893. K. H. ROTH VON SCHRECKENSTEIN, *Die Ritterwürde und der Ritterstand*,

Freiburg, 1886. W. VEDEL, *Mittelalterliche Kulturideale, I, Heldenleben,* Leipzig, 1910 (Aus Natur und Geisteswelt, 292). A. SCHULTE, *Der Adel und die deutsche Kirche im Mittelalter: Studien zur Social-, Rechts- und Kirchengeschichte,* Stuttgart, 1910 (Kirchenrechtliche Abhandlungen, edited by U. STUTZ, 63–64). N. PAULUS, "Die Wertung der weltlichen Berufe im Mittelalter," in *Historiches Jahrbuch,* XXXII (1911), 725–755.

Medieval warfare. G. T. DENISON, *A history of cavalry from the earliest times: with lessons for the future,* London, 1877, 2nd edition, 1913, pp. 97–184. G. KÖHLER, *Die Entwicklung des Kriegswesens und der Kriegführung in der Ritterzeit von der Mitte des 11 Jahrhunderts bis zu den Hussitenkriegen,* 3 vols., Breslau, 1886–90. M. JÄHNS, *Geschichte der Kriegswissenschaften vornehmlich in Deutschland,* 3 vols., Munich, 1889–91; and his *Handbuch einer Geschichte des Kriegswesens von der Urzeit zur Renaissance,* 2 vols., Leipzig, 1880. In *L'armée à travers les âges: conferences faites en 1898 à l'Ecole spéciale militaire de Saint-Cyr,* 2nd edition, Paris, 1899, see the articles by C. V. LANGLOIS, "Le service militaire en vertu de l'obligation féodale"; and "Le service militaire soldé"; and E. GEBHART, "Les armées mercenaires de l'Italie, du 14e siècle à 1527." O. v. DUNGERN, *Der Heerenstand im Mittelalter,* Papiermühle, 1908. H. DELPECH, *Le tactique au XIIIe siècle,* 2 vols., Paris, 1886, gives particular attention to the battles of Bouvines and Muret. E. BOUTARIC, *Les institutions militaires de la France avant les armées permanentes,* Paris, 1863. H. BELLOC, *Warfare in England,* London, 1912 (Home university library). C. FOULKES, *Armour and weapons,* Oxford, 1909. R. PAYNE-GALLWEY, *The crossbow,* London, 1903, appendix, 1907. J. SCHWIETERING, *Zur Geschichte von Speer und Schwert im 12 Jahrhundert,* Hamburg, 1912.

Medieval castles. The following are some works pertaining especially to France. C. ENLART, *Manuel d'archéologie française,* vol. II, "Architecture civile et militaire." E. E. VIOLLET-LE-DUC, *L'architecture militaire au moyen âge,* Paris, 1854, translated by M. MACDERMOTT, *Military architecture,* 2nd edition, Oxford, 1879. See also his *Cité de Carcassonne (Aude),* Paris, 1888. A. DEVILLE, *Histoire du Château-Gaillard,* Rouen, 1829; see also his *Histoire du château d'Arques,* Rouen, 1839. M. F. MANSFIELD, *Castles and chateaux of old Burgundy,* Boston, 1909.

For England there are several good books with excellent illustrations. A. H. THOMPSON, *Military architecture in England during the middle ages,* London, 1912. A. HARVEY, *The castles and walled towns of England,* London, 1911 (The antiquary's books). ELLA S. ARMITAGE, *The early Norman castles of the British Isles,* New York, 1912.

H. A. EVANS, *Castles of England and Wales*, London, 1912. G. T. CLARK, *Mediaeval military architecture in England*, 2 vols., London, 1884. E. B. D'AUVERGNE, *The castles of England*, London [1907]. J. D. MACKENZIE, *The castles of England*, London, 1897.

For Germany the following works of O. PIPER are authoritative, *Burgenkunde: Forschungen über gesammtes Bauwesen und Geschichte der Burgen innerhalb des deutschen Sprachgebietes*, Munich, 1895, 3rd edition, revised, 1914; *Österreichische Burgen*, 1902; and *Abriss der Burgenkunde*, 2nd edition, Munich and Leipzig, 1904 (Sammlung Göschen). P. SALVISBERG, *Die deutsche Kriegsarchitektur von der Urzeit bis auf die Renaissance*, Stuttgart, 1887. H. ZELLER-WERDMÜLLER, *Mittelalterliche Burganlagen der Ostschweiz*, Leipzig, 1893 (extract from Mittheilungen der antiquarischen Gesellschaft in Zürich).

Origin of firearms. Lieutenant-Colonel H. W. L. HIME, *The origin of artillery*, New York, 1915, is a revised edition of a book published in 1904 under the title, *Gunpowder and amunition*. Here as in his essay, "Roger Bacon and gunpowder," pp. 321–335 in *Roger Bacon essays*, Oxford, 1914, he gives Bacon credit for the invention of gunpowder; but see L. THORNDIKE, "Roger Bacon and gunpowder," in *Science*, XLII (1915), 799–800. T. F. TOUT, "Firearms in England in the fourteenth century," in *English historical review*, XXVI (1911), 666–702. F. R. SCHNEIDER, *Die Artillerie des Mittelalters*, Berlin, 1910. E. O. v. LIPPMANN, *Zur Geschichte des Schiesspulvers und der älteren Feuerwaffen*, Stuttgart, 1899. J. F. v. REITZENSTEIN, "Die Sage von der Erfindung des Schiesspulvers und der deutsche Ursprung des abendländischen Geschützwesens," *Allgemeine Militärzeitung*, 1896, no. 36. L. LACABANE, "De la poudre à canon et de son introduction en France," in *Bibliothèque de l'école de chartes*, 2nd series, I (1844), 28–57.

Chivalry. LA CURNE DE SAINTE-PALAYE, *Mémoires sur l'ancienne chevalerie: avec une introduction et des notes historiques* par C. NODIER, new edition, 2 vols., Paris, 1826. P. LACROIX, *L'ancienne France: chevalerie et les croisades, féodalité, blason, ordres militaires*, Paris, 1886. S. LUCE, *Histoire de Du Guesclin et de son époque*, 2nd edition, Paris, 1882. HURD'S *Letters on chivalry and romance*, edited by EDITH J. MORLEY, London, 1911 (the text of the letters reprinted from the first edition, 1762).

Women of chivalry. T. KRABBES, *Die Frau im altfranzösischen Karls-epos*, Marburg, 1884. K. WEINHOLD, *Die deutschen Frauen in dem Mittelalter*, 2 vols., Vienna, 1851, 3rd edition, 1897. E. L. LINTON, "The women of chivalry," *Fortnightly review*, XLVIII (1887), 559–579. E. WECHSSLER, "Frauendienst und Vassalität,"

in *Zeitschrift für französische Sprache und Literatur*, XXIV (1902), 159–190.

Romances of chivalry. J. ASHTON, *Romances of chivalry*, New York, 1887. J. B. BURY, *Romances of chivalry on Greek soil*, Oxford, 1911 (Romanes lecture for 1911).

Sports and pastimes of the nobles. J. J. JUSSERAND, *Les sports et jeux d'exercise dans l'ancienne France*, Paris, 1901. J. STRUTT, *Glig-gamena Angel-ðeod: the sports and pastimes of the people of England*, London, 1801, another edition, 1810, often reprinted, new edition, enlarged by J. C. COX [1903]. H. J. R. MURRAY, *A history of chess*, Oxford University Press, 1914, is a most excellent book. F. NIEDNER, *Das deutsche Turnier im 12 und 13 Jahrhundert*, Berlin, 1881.

Life of nobles in the middle ages. C. V. LANGLOIS, *La société française au XIII^e siècle d'après dix romans d'aventure*, Paris, 1904; and his *La vie en France au moyen âge, d'après quelques moralistes du temps*, Paris, 1908. E. M. TAPPAN, *In feudal times: social life in the middle ages*, London, 1913. H. OSCHINSKY, *Der Ritter unterwegs und die Pflege der Gastfreundschaft im alten Frankreich*, Halle, 1900 (dissertation). G. RAYNAUD, "La société et la vie en France au moyen âge," in *Journal des savants*, new series, 7th year, 1909, pp. 214–223. N. DE PAUW, *La vie intime en Flandre au moyen âge, d'après des documents inédits*, Brussels, 1913 (extract from Bulletin de la Commission royale d'histoire de Belgique, LXXXII, 1913). L. GARREAU, *L'état social de la France au temps des croisades*, Paris, 1899. J. FALKE, *Die ritterliche Gesellschaft im Zeitalter des Frauencultus*, new edition, Berlin [186–?]. L. DELISLE, *De l'instruction littéraire de la noblesse française au moyen âge*, Paris, 1855 (extract of 8 pp. from Journal de l'instruction publique, XXIV, no. 46, June, 1855, p. 322). T. WRIGHT, *A history of domestic manners and sentiments in England*, London, 1862, new edition, *The homes of other days, a history of domestic manners, etc.*, London, 1871. E. E. VIOLLET-LE-DUC, *Dictionnaire du mobilier*, 2nd edition, Paris, 1868–1875. C. R. M. LANGLOIS, *La vie en France au moyen âge*, 1^er^ série: *la vie seigneuriale au XIII^e siècle*, Paris, 1912 (Enseignement par les projections lumineuses). W. MÜNCH, *Gedanken über Fürstenerziehung aus alter und neuer Zeit*, Munich, 1909.

Bibliography. C. V. LANGLOIS, "Les travaux sur l'histoire de la société française au moyen âge, d'après les sources littéraires," in *Revue historique*, LXIII (1897), 241–265.

XXVIII. CULTURE IN THE TWELFTH AND THIRTEENTH CENTURIES

A. OUTLINE

1. France was the center of culture during these two centuries. The great importance of this era in the history of the culture of western Europe has been overshadowed by the subsequent intense interest in ancient Greek and Roman literature and art.

2. Sudden increase in learning and education towards the beginning of the twelfth century.

3. Rise of a spirit of inquiry, based on logic (dialectic). Abelard and Bernard of Clairvaux.

4. The "New Aristotle." Systematization of scholastic theology and philosophy. Albertus Magnus and Thomas Aquinas.

5. Rise and decline of interest in the ancient classics. The schools of Chartres. John of Salisbury. The schools of Orleans. John Garland of Paris. The *Battle of the seven arts.*

6. The *ars dictaminis*, the "business course" in medieval universities. Boncompagno.

7. Revival of Roman law. Irnerius at Bologna. The systematic study of canon law. The *Decretum* of Gratian, ca. 1140–1150. The *Corpus iuris canonici.*

8. Rise and decline of interest in the natural sciences, including medicine. Robert Grosseteste and Roger Bacon.

9. Rise of medieval universities, especially Bologna, Paris, and Oxford. Studies and life of medieval students.

10. The literature of this period: (1) Latin (Goliardic literature, sermon stories, etc.); (2) Vernacular literature.

11. The [illegible] the period, especially Gothic architecture.

B. SPECIAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR READING

General accounts. EMERTON, *Mediaeval Europe*, ch. XIII, is a short survey in English. Much more satisfactory are: LAVISSE and RAMBAUD, *Histoire générale*, II, ch. X; and LAVISSE, *Histoire de France*, II, part II, 384–411; III, part I, 323–345; part II, 380–429. Portions of the latter, along with other material translated into English, will be found in MUNRO and SELLERY, *Medieval civilization*, enlarged edition, 277–357, 458–490, 524–546. TAYLOR, *Mediaeval mind*, is devoted in large part to the period covered by this outline. SANDYS, *A history of classical scholarship*, I, is valuable as a work for reference.

Medieval universities. For medieval universities, H. RASHDALL, *The universities of Europe in the middle ages*, 2 vols., in 3, Oxford, 1895, is the standard work; read especially I, chs. I and II, and II, ch. XIV. A. S. RAIT, *Life in the mediaeval university*, Cambridge, 1912, is drawn very largely from this last chapter of RASHDALL. For student life, see also C. H. HASKINS, "Life of medieval students as seen in their letters," *American historical review*, III (1897–98), 203–229, and "The University of Paris in the sermons of the thirteenth century," *ibid*, X (1904), 1–27; likewise *Translations and reprints*, II, no. 3, "The medieval student." Many additional translations from documents are printed with introductions in A. O. NORTON, *Readings in the history of education: mediaeval universities*, Harvard University Press, 1909. A readable chapter on the life in the university of Paris in the thirteenth century is in A. LUCHAIRE, *La société française au temps de Philippe-Auguste*, translated by E. B. KREIBIEL, ch. III. J. MCCABE, *Peter Abelard*, New York, 1901, is an interesting biography.

Medieval art. For a very brief sketch of the art of the period, read S. REINACH, *Apollo: an illustrated manual of the history of art*, New York, 1907, chs. XII–XIII. W. R. LETHABY, *Medieval art*, London, 1904, new and revised edition, 1912, is a general popular book. C. ENLART, *Manuel d'archéologie française*, is a standard book on the medieval art of France.

Original sources. Short extracts, in English translation, of the literature of the period are gathered in G. G. COULTON, *A medieval garner*, London, 1910. Excellent translations of some medieval students' songs are in J. A. SYMONDS, *Wine, women, and song*, London, 1907. Probably the most interesting old French tale of the twelfth century is *Aucassin and Nicolette*, of which the best translation is by A. LANG, London and New York, 1887 (often reprinted).

It is announced that L. THORNDIKE will edit and translate selections from Gerbert, Abelard, Roger Bacon, and the Scholastics, under the title, *Medieval thought and culture*, in no. 249 above.

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

For detailed bibliographies on all the subjects touched upon in the above outline, see part III, Medieval Culture, period II, 1100–1300, below.

XXIX. THE CHURCH FROM ABOUT 1300 TO ABOUT 1450

A. Outline

1. Importance of this period in the constitutional history of the church and in the history of medieval political thought.

2. The relations of pope Boniface VIII, 1294–1303, with the rising monarchical states, especially England under Edward I and France under Philip IV, the Fair. Importance of the question of finances. The Papal Jubilee, 1300. The papal bulls, *Clericis laicos*, issued in 1296, *Ausculta fili*, 1301, and *Unam sanctam*, 1302. Action of the Estates General of France in 1302. The scene at Anagni, where Boniface VIII, 86 years of age, was insulted by Nogaret and Sciarra Colonna, 1303.

3. The "Babylonish Captivity" of the papacy, 1305–1377. Election of pope Clement V, archbishop of Bordeaux, 1305–1314, a creature of king Philip IV of France. Removal of the papacy to Avignon. The suppression of the Templars, 1312. Evils of the "Babylonish Captivity." The Flagellants. Conflict of the Avignon popes with the empire and their peculiar position at the outbreak of the Hundred Years' War (see the next two outlines). The Statutes of Provisors and Praemunire in England, 1351, 1353.

4. Return of the papacy to Rome. Temporary stay of pope Urban V in Rome, 1367–1370. St. Catherine of Sienna, 1347–1380. The return of pope Gregory XI to Rome in 1377 where he died in 1378.

5. The great western schism, 1378–1418. Double election in 1378: pope Urban VI at Rome, in April, and pope Clement VII at Fondi in September, elected by cardinals with French sympathies. Political as well as religious division of Europe during the schism.

6. The conciliar movement. Proposals to heal the schism and reform the church. The part played by the university of Paris. Jean Gerson, Pierre d'Ailly, and Conrad of Gelnhausen. The constitutional crisis in the history of the church.

7. The council of Pisa, 1409. Attempted deposition of the two rival popes and the election of a new pope, Alexander V (succeeded by John XXIII in 1410). Now there were three rival popes.

8. The council of Constance, 1414–1418, was summoned by the emperor Sigismund and pope John XXIII. Division of the council into "nations." Its chief work: (1) it healed the schism by disposing of the three rival popes, John XXIII, Gregory XII, and Benedict XIII, and by electing Martin V; (2) it tried to stem the tide of heresy, which had set in strong since the time of Wiclif,

especially in Bohemia, by burning John Huss and Jerome of Prague, which resulted in the Hussite wars, 1419 ff (John Ziska, Utraquists, Taborites); (3) it made futile efforts to reform the church in "head and members." The decree *Sacrosancta,* 1415. The decree *Frequens,* 1417.

9. The council of Basle, 1431–1449. Conflict between the council and pope Eugenius IV (1431–1447), who summoned a rival council at Ferrara (later Florence), 1438–1439, which brought about an ineffective union between the Greek and Latin churches. Deposition of Eugenius IV by the council of Basle in 1439 and the election of an anti-pope, Felix V. Cardinal Cesarini, Nicholas Cusa, and Aeneas Sylvius at the council of Basle. Its dissolution, 1449.

10. Failure of the conciliar movement. Sporadic efforts to emphasize the idea of national churches by the Pragmatic Sanction of Bourges, 1438, and the Pragmatic Sanction of Mainz, 1439. The Concordat of Vienna, 1448. The bull *Execrabilis,* issued by pope Pius II, in 1460. The reaction in favor of the papacy during the second half of the fifteenth century.

11. Popes, 1276–1503.

Innocent V, 1276
Hadrian V, 1276
John XX or XXI, 1276–1277
Nicholas III, 1277–1280
Martin IV, 1281–1285
Honorius IV, 1285–1287
Nicholas IV, 1288–1292
(vacancy, 1292–1294)
Celestine V, 1294
Boniface VIII, 1294–1303
Benedict XI, 1303–1304
Clement V, 1305–1314
(vacancy, 1314–1316)
John XXII, 1316–1334
(Nicholas V, anti-pope, 1328–1330)
Benedict XII, 1334–1342
Clement VI, 1342–1352
Innocent VI, 1352–1362
Urban V, 1362–1370
Gregory XI, 1370–1378
Urban VI, 1378–1389
(Clement VII, anti-pope, 1378–1394)
Boniface IX, 1389–1404
(Benedict XIII, anti-pope, 1394–1415)
Innocent VII, 1404–1406
Gregory XII, 1406–1409
Alexander V, 1409–1410
John XXIII, 1410–1415
(Gregory XII, rival pope to 1415)
(vacancy, 1415–1417)
Martin V, 1417–1431
Eugenius IV, 1431–1447
(Felix V, anti-pope, 1439–1449)
Nicholas V, 1447–1455
Calixtus III, 1455–1458
Pius II, 1458–1464
Paul II, 1464–1471
Sixtus IV, 1471–1484
Innocent VIII, 1484–1492
Alexander VI, 1492–1503

B. SPECIAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR READING

Short general accounts. ADAMS, *Civilization*, 392–415. HENDERSON, *Short history of Germany*, I, ch. IX, 203–227. W. BARRY, *The papacy and modern times: a political sketch, 1303–1870*, New York, 1911 (Home university library), 1–78. R. L. POOLE, *Wycliffe and movements for reform*, London, 1889, chs. VII–XII.

Longer general accounts. H. BRUCE, *The age of schism: being an outline of the history of the church from* A D. *1304 to* A D. *1503*, London, 1907 (The church universal), chs. I–VIII. LODGE, *Close of the middle ages*, chs. II, IX, X, XI. LAVISSE and RAMBAUD, *Histoire générale*, III, ch. VI, and ch. XIII for the Hussite wars. P. VAN DYKE, *The age of the renascence: an outline sketch of the history of the papacy from the return from Avignon to the sack of Rome (1377–1527)*, New York, 1897 (Ten epochs of church history), chs. I–XI. LAVISSE, *Histoire de France*, III, part II, 127–200, IV, part II, 260–274. J. LOSERTH, *Geschichte des späteren Mittelalters*, 206–243, 309–312, 385–529 (contains excellent bibliographies).

Standard surveys of the period. M. CREIGHTON, *A history of the papacy during the period of the reformation*, 5 vols., London, 1882–1894, new edition, *A history of the papacy from the great schism to the sack of Rome*, 6 vols., London, 1897, vols. I–II. L. PASTOR, *Geschichte der Päpste seit dem Ausgang des Mittelalters*, vols. I–V (to 1549), Leipzig, 1884–1910, translated by F. I. ANTROBUS and R. F. KERR, *The history of the popes from the close of the middle ages*, vols. I–XII, St. Louis, 1898–1912, vols. I–II (1305–1458), is the work of a Roman catholic. The standard work on the councils of this period is HEFELE, *Conciliengeschichte*, VI, 266–1042, and all of vol. VII. GREGOROVIUS, *Rome in the middle ages*, VI, and VII, part I, 1–185.

Council of Constance. J. H. WYLIE, *The council of Constance to the death of John Hus*, London, 1900, is an interesting popular book. E. J. KITTS, *Pope John XXII and Master John Hus of Bohemia*, London, 1910, is another general history of the council to the death of John Huss. A very stimulating short study of the conciliar idea is by J. N. FIGGIS, *Studies of political thought from Gerson to Grotius, 1414–1625*, Cambridge University Press, 1907 (The Birkbeck lectures, 1900), essay II, "The conciliar movement and the papalist reaction." See also W. A. DUNNING, *A history of political theories: ancient and medieval*, New York, 1902, ch. X.

John Huss. LEA, *History of the inquisition*, II, 427–567, is a well-known and an interesting account of this martyr. The following biographies have appeared recently. D. S. SCHAFF, *John Huss:*

his life, teachings, and death, after five hundred years, New York, 1915. Count LÜTZOW, *The life and times of Master John Hus*, London, 1909. W. N. SCHWARZE, *John Hus, the martyr of Bohemia: a study of the dawn of protéstantism*, New York, 1915.

Original sources. The papal bulls, *Clericis laicos* and *Unam sanctam*, and various other materials, are translated in THATCHER and MCNEAL, *Source book*, 309–332; ROBINSON, *Readings*, I, 488–515 (contains the decree *Sacrosancta* and the decree *Frequens*); HENDERSON, *Historical documents*, 432–439, 349–350 (Jubilee of 1300); OGG, *Source book*, 383–397 (includes the Pragmatic Sanction of Bourges); *Translations and reprints*, III, no. 6, "The pre-reformation period," 19–33; II, no. 5, "England in the time of Wycliffe," 5–9 (Statutes of Provisors and Praemunire).

The important work of JAN HUS, *De ecclesia: the church*, has been translated, with introduction and notes, by D. S. SCHAFF, New York, 1915. The account of POGGIO, who witnessed the trial and death of Jerome, is translated in *A literary source-book of the renaissance*, by M. WHITCOMB, 2nd edition, Philadelphia, 1903, 44–51.

Maps. SHEPHERD, *Atlas*, 81, has a map showing the division of Europe during the great schism, 1378–1417.

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General books. The general histories of the church, nos. **394–498** above, are most useful, although many histories of the Empire, of France, Germany, and Italy, nos. **499–621** above, are of almost equal value. See also the encyclopaedias for the history of the church, nos. **104–114** above. For the Hussite movement the general histories of Bohemia, nos. **699–703** above, should be consulted.

Church reform in the later middle ages. J. GUIRAUD, *L'église romaine et les origines de la renaissance*, 3rd edition, Paris, 1904, begins with the pontificate of Boniface VIII. F. THUDICHUM, *Papsttum und Reformation im Mittelalter, 1143–1517*, Leipzig, 1903. G. FICKER, *Das ausgehende Mittelalter und sein Verhältniss zur Reformation*, Leipzig, 1903. F. ROCQUAIN, *La cour de Rome et l'esprit de réforme avant Luther*, vols. I–III, Paris, 1893–97. J. HALLER, *Papsttum und Kirchenreform: vier Kapitel zur Geschichte des ausgehenden Mittelalters*, vol. I, Berlin, 1903. L. CELIER, "L'idée de réforme à la cour pontificale du concile de Bâle au concile de Latran," in *Revue des questions historiques*, LXXXVI (1909), 418–435. *Vorreformationsgeschichtliche Forschungen*, edited by H. FINKE, Münster, 1900 ff.

Boniface VIII and Europe. H. FINKE, *Aus den Tagen Bonifaz VIII: Funde und Forschungen*, Münster, 1902 (Vorreformationsge-

schichtliche Forschungen, 2). J. DEL LUNGO, *Da Bonifazio VIII ad Arrigo VII*, Milan, 1899. L. TOSTI, *Storia di Bonifazio VIII*, 2nd edition, Cassino, 1886. K. WENCK, "War Bonifaz VIII ein Ketzer?" in *Historische Zeitschrift*, XCIV (1905), 1–66. R. SCHOLZ, "Zur Beurteilung Bonifaz' VIII und seines sittlich-religiösen Charakters," *Historische Vierteljahrschrift*, IX (1906), 470–515. W. DRUMANN, *Geschichte Bonifacius* VIII, 2 vols., Königsberg, 1852. P. DUPUY, *Histoire du differend d'entre le pape Boniface VIII et Philippe le Bel roy de France*, Paris, 1655, contains the most important documents from French archives. L. MOHLER, *Die Kardinäle Jacob und Peter Colonna: ein Beitrag zur Geschichte des Zeitalters Bonifaz VIII*, Paderborn, 1914 (Quellen und Forschungen aus dem Gebiete der Geschichte, XVII). R. SCHOLZ, *Die Publizistik zur Zeit Philipps des Schönen und Bonifaz' VIII*, Stuttgart, 1903 (Kirchenrechtliche Abhandlungen, 6–8). F. EHRMANN, *Die Bulle "Unam sanctam" des Papstes Bonifacius VIII nach ihrem authentischen Wortlaut erklärt*, Munich, 1896. J. BERCHTOLD, *Die Bulle Unam sanctam: ihre wahre Bedeutung und Tragweite für Staat und Kirche*, Munich, 1887.

For a short contemporary account of the scene at Anagni see KERVYN DE LETTENHOVE, "Une relation inédite de l'attentat d'Anagni," in *Revue des questions historiques*, XI (1872), 511–520. The subject is treated in detail by R. HOLTZMANN, *Wilhelm von Nogaret, Rat und Grosssiegelbewahrer Philipps des Schönen von Frankreich*, Freiburg, 1898 (dissertation). See also C. V. LANGLOIS, *Les papiers de Guillaume de Nogaret et de Guillaume de Plaisians au Trésor des Chartes*, Paris, 1908.

"Babylonish Captivity" of the papacy. G. MOLLAT, *Les papes d'Avignon (1305–78)*, Paris, 1912. T. OKEY, *The story of Avignon*, New York, 1911 (Mediaeval towns). M. SOUCHON, *Die Papstwahlen von Bonifaz VIII bis auf Urban VI und die Entstehung des Schismas 1378*, Braunschweig, 1888. H. FINKE, *Papsttum und Untergang des Templerordens*, 2 vols. in one, Münster, 1907 (Vorreformationsgeschichtliche Forschungen, edited by H. FINKE, IV–V). A. EITEL, *Der Kirchenstaat unter Klemens V* [1305–1314], Berlin, 1906 (part 1 of Abhandlungen zur mittleren und neueren Geschichte). K. JACOB, *Studien über Papst Benedikt XII (1334–42)*, Berlin, 1910. C. BOUVIER, *Vienne au temps du concile, 1311–1312*, Paris, 1912. E. MÜNTZ, "L'argent et le luxe à la cour pontificale d'Avignon," in *Revue des questions historiques*, LXVI (1899), 5–44, 378–406.

Saint Catherine of Siena and pope Gregory IX. E. G. GARDNER, *Saint Catherine of Siena: a study in the religion, literature, and history of the fourteenth century in Italy*, London, 1907. JERUSHA

D. RICHARDSON, *The mystic bride: a study of the life-story of Catherine of Siena,* London [1911]. [MARGARET ROBERTS], *Saint Catherine of Siena and her times,* London, 1906. P. GAUTHIEZ, *Sainte Catherine de Sienne, 1347–1380,* Paris, 1916. K. WENCK, *Die Heilige Elizabeth und Pabst Gregor IX,* Munich, 1908 (extract from the review Hochland, November, 1907). F. BLIEMETZRIEDER, "Raimund von Capua und Caterina von Siena zu Beginn des grossen abendländischen Schismas," in *Historiches Jahrbuch,* XXX(1909), 231–273.

The great western schism, 1378–1417. N. VALOIS, *La France et le grand schisme d'Occident,* 4 vols., Paris, 1896–1902. L. SALEMBIER, *Le grand schisme d'Occident,* Paris, 1900, 4th edition, 1902 (Bibliothèque de l'enseignement de l'histoire ecclésiastique), translated, *The great western schism,* London, 1907. L. GAYET, *Le grand schisme d'Occident,* vols. I and II, Paris, 1889–1890 (see the long review by E. ALLAIN, in *Revue des questions historiques,* XLVII (1890), 582–596). A. RASTOUL, *L'unité religieuse pendant le grand schisme d'Occident (1378–1417),* Paris, 1904. C. LOCKE, *The age of the great western schism,* Edinburgh, 1897 (Eras of the Christian church).

L. SALEMBIER, *Deux conciles inconnus au temps du grand schisme,* Lille, 1902. M. SOUCHON, *Die Papstwahlen in der Zeit des grossen Schismas (1378–1417),* 2 vols., Braunschweig, 1898–1900. F. J. SCHEUFFGEN, *Beiträge zur Geschichte des grossen Schismas,* Freiburg, 1887. L. MIROT, *La politique pontificale et le retour du Saint-Siège à Rome en 1376,* Paris, 1899. J. P. KIRSCH, *Die Rückkehr der Päpste Urban V und Gregor XI von Avignon nach Rom,* Paderborn, 1898. O. HÜTTEBRÄUKER, *Der Minoritenorden zur Zeit des grossen Schismas,* Berlin, 1893 (dissertation). R. P. FAGES, *Histoire de Saint Vincent Ferrier,* Paris, 1894, 2nd edition, revised, 2 vols., 1901. J. GUIRAUD, *L'état pontifical après le grand schisme: étude de géographie politique,* Paris, 1896, part 73 of no. 887 above. A. BAYOT, "Un traité inconnu sur le grand schisme dans la bibliothèque des Ducs de Bourgogne," in *Revue d'histoire ecclésiastique,* Oct. 1908.

The conciliar movement. N. VALOIS, *La crise religieuse du XV^e^ siècle: le pape et le concile (1418–50),* 2 vols., Paris, 1909. F. BLIEMETZRIEDER, *Das Generalkonzil im grossen abendländischen Schisma,* Paderborn, 1904. A. KNEER, *Die Entstehung der konzilaren Theorie,* Rome, 1893 (Römische Quartalschrift, supplement 1). W. THÉREMIN, *Beiträge zur öffentlichen Meinung über Kirche und Staat in der städtischen Geschichtsschreibung Deutschlands von 1399–1415,* Berlin, 1909 (part 68 of Historische Studien, edited by E. Ebering). J. H. VON WESSENBERG, *Die grossen Kirchenversammlungen des 15 und 16 Jahrhunderts,* 4 vols., Constance, 1840.

Following is some biographical material on men who took a prominent part in the movement. A. LAFONTAINE, *Jehan Gerson (1363–1429)*, Paris, 1906. A. J. MASSON, Jean Gerson, Lyons, 1894. J. B. SCHWAB, *Johannes Gerson*, Würzberg, 1858. L. SALEMBIER, *Petrus de Alliaco*, Lille, 1886. P. TSCHACKERT, *Peter von Ailli*, Gotha, 1877. C. SCHMIDT, *Kard. Nikolaus Cusanus*, Coblenz, 1907 (for additional literature see DAHLMANN–WAITZ, *Quellenkunde*, no. 7024). E. KÖNIG, *Kardinal Giordano Orsini: ein Lebensbild aus der Zeit der grossen Konzilien und des Humanismus*, Freiburg, 1906. A. RÖSLER, *Kardinal Johannes Dominici 1357–1419: ein Reformatorenbild aus der Zeit des grossen Schismas*, Freiburg, 1893. H. V. SAUERLAND, "Cardinal Johannes Dominici und sein Verhalten zu den kirchlichen Unionsbestrebungen während der Jahre 1406–1415," in *Zeitschift für Kirchengeschichte*, IX (1888), 240–292, X (1889), 345–398. P. MANDONNET, "Beiträge zur Geschichte des Kardinals Dominici," in *Historisches Jahrbuch*, XXI (1900), 388–402. K. WENCK, "Konrad von Gelnhausen und die Quellen der konziliaren Theorie," in *Historische Zeitschrift*, LXXVII (1896), 6–61.

Council of Pisa. J. LENFANT, *Histoire du concile de Pise*, 2 vols., Amsterdam, 1724–1727.

Council of Constance. E. J. KITTS, *In the days of the councils: a sketch of the life and time of Baldassare Cossa, afterwards pope John XXIII*, London, 1908. H. FINKE, *Forschungen und Quellen zur Geschichte des Konstanzer Konzils*, Paderborn, 1889; and his *Bilder vom Konstanzer Konzil*, Heidelberg, 1903 (Neujahrblatt der badischen historischen Kommission). H. BLUMENTHAL, *Die Vorgeschichte des Konstanzer Konzils bis zur Berufung*, Halle, 1897 (dissertation). J. KEPPLER, *Die Politik des Kardinalkollegiums in Konstanz, Jan.–März 1418*, Münster, 1899. H. DENIFLE, "Les délégués des universités françaises au concile de Constance," in *Revue des bibliothèques* (1892). B. HÜBLER, *Die Konstanzer Reformation und die Konkordate von 1418*, Leipzig, 1867. L. TOSTI, *Storia del concilio di Constanza . . . con documenti*, 2 vols., Naples, 1853, translated into German by B. ARNOLD, *Geschichte des Konzilium's von Konstanz*, Schaffhausen, 1860. J. LENFANT, *Histoire du concile de Constance*, 2 vols., Amsterdam, 1714.

Wyclif. G. M. TREVELYAN, *England in the age of Wycliffe*, London, 1899, 4th edition, 1909. For other literature on Wyclif and his movement see GROSS, no. 36 above.

John Huss. H. B. WORKMAN, *The dawn of the reformation*, vol. II, *The age of Hus*, London, 1902. G. VON LECHLER, *Johannes Hus*, Halle, 1889. J. LOSERTH, *Huss und Wiclif: zur Genesis der husitischen Lehre*, Prague and Leipzig, 1884, translated by M. J.

EVANS, *Wiclif and Hus*, London, 1884. E. H. GILLETT, *The life and time of John Huss: or the Bohemian reformation of the fifteenth century*, 2 vols., Boston, 1863. W. BERGER, *Johannes Hus und König Sigmund*, Augsburg, 1871. C. HÖFLER, *Magister Johannes Hus und der Ausgang der deutschen Professoren und Studenten aus Prag 1409*, Prague, 1864. J. MARTINU, *Die Waldesier und die husitische Reformation in Böhmen*, Wien, 1910.

Hussite wars. Count LÜTZOW, *The Hussite wars*, London and New York, 1914. E. DENIS, *Huss et la guerre des Hussites*, Paris, 1878, and his *Fin de l'indépendance de la Bohême*, 2 vols., Paris, 1890, which has a full bibliography. J. LENFANT, *Histoire de la guerre des Hussites et du concile de Bâsle*, Amsterdam, 1731, supplements by J. DE BEAUSOBRE, 1745. F. v. BEZOLD, *Zur Geschichte des Husitentums*, Munich, 1874. F. PALACKY, *Urkundliche Beiträge zur Geschichte des Husitenkrieges*, Prague, 1872. W. W. TOMEK, *Johann Zizka*, translated into German by V. PROCHASKA, Prague, 1882.

Council of Basle. P. LAZARUS, *Das Basler Konzil*, Berlin, 1912. G. PÉROUSE, *Le cardinal Louis Aleman, président du concile de Bâle, et la fin du grand schisme*, Paris, 1905. E. PREISWERK, *Der Einfluss Aragons auf den Prozess des Basler Konzils gegen Papst Eugen IV*, Basle, 1902 (dissertation). O. RICHTER, *Die Organisation und Geschäftsordnung des Basler Konzils*, Leipzig, 1877.

Council of Ferrara–Florence. E. CECCONI, *Studi storici sul concilio di Firenze*, part I, Florence, 1869.

Pragmatic Sanction of Bourges. N. VALOIS, *Histoire de la Pragmatique Sanction de Bourges sous Charles VII*, Paris, 1906. See the long review of this book by J. HALLER, "Die Pragmatische Sanktion von Bourges," in *Historische Zeitschrift*, CIII (1909), 1–51. J. SALVINI, *L'application de la Pragmatique Sanction sous Charles VII et sous Louis XI au chapitre cathédral de Paris*, Paris, 1912. A. WERMINGHOFF, *Nationalkirchliche Bestrebungen im deutschen Mittelalter*, Stuttgart, 1910, part 61 of no. **491** above.

The bull Execrabilis. G. B. PICOTTI, *La pubblicazione e i primi effetti della Execrabilis di Pio II*, Perugia, 1914 (extract from Archivio della r. Società romana di storia patria).

Papal finances in the 14th and 15th centuries. G. MOLLAT and C. SAMARAN, *La fiscalité pontificale en France au XIV^e siècle*, Paris, 1905, part 96 of no. **887** above. E. HENNIG, *Die päpstlichen Zehnten aus Deutschland im Zeitalter des Avignonesischen Papsttums und während des grossen Schismas*, Halle, 1909. J. P. KIRSCH, *Die päpstlichen Annaten in Deutschland während des 14 Jahrhunderts*, vol. I, Paderborn, 1903 (part 9 of Quellen und Forschungen, Görresgesell-

schaft). *Die Einnahmen der apostolischen Kammer unter Johann XXII [1316–1334]*, edited by E. GÖLLER, 2 vols., Paderborn, 1910. A. ECKSTEIN, *Zur Finanzlage Felix V und des Basler Konzils*, Berlin, 1912. A. GOTTLOB, *Aus der camera apostolica des 15 Jahrhunderts*, Innsbruck, 1889. See also under outline XXIV above.

Original sources. The great collection of sources for the council of Constance is *Magnum oecumenicum Constantiense concilium*, edited by H. VAN DER HARDT, 6 vols., Frankfort, 1700, with an index vol. by G. C. BOHNSTEDT, Berlin, 1742 (now also reprinted in MANSI, no. **962** above, vols. XXVII–XXVIII). This must be supplemented by *Acta concilii Constantiensis*, edited by H. FINKE, vol. I, *Akten zur Vorgeschichte des Konstanzer Konzils, 1410–1414*, Münster, 1896; and ULRICH VON RICHENTAL, *Das Conciliumbuch zu Constanz*, edited by N. A. and M. R. BUCK, in *Bibliothek des literarischen Vereins*, vol. CLVIII, Stuttgart, 1882.

For the Council of Basle we have *Concilium Basiliense: Studien und Quellen zur Geschichte des Konzils von Basel*, vols. I–V, and VII, edited by J. HALLER, and others, Basle, 1896–1910. *Monumenta conciliorum generalium seculi XV: Scriptorum I, II, III*, edited by O. RICHTER, Vienna, 1857–1895; and AENEAS SYLVIUS PICCOLOMINI, *De rebus Basileae gestis*, edited by M. CATALANI, Firmi, 1803, by C. FEA, Rome, 1823.

JOANNIS HUS, *Opera omnia*, edited by W. FLOJSHAUS, vols. I and II, Prague, 1904ff. *Beiträge zur Geschichte der husitischen Bewegung*, edited by J. LOSERTH, 5 parts, Vienna, 1877–95 (Archiv für östereichische Geschichte, 55, 57, 60, 75, 82).

Literarische Polemik zu Beginn des grossen abendländischen Schismas (Kard. Petrus Flandrin, Kard. Petrus Amelii, Konrad von Gelnhausen): ungedrukte Texte und Untersuchungen, edited by F. P. BLIEMETZRIEDER, Vienna, 1910, vol. 1 of no. **900** above. THEODORICUS DE NIEM, *De schismate libri tres*, edited by G. ERLER, Leipzig, 1890. For the works of such men as PIERRE D'AILLY and JEAN GERSON, see POTTHAST, *Wegweiser*, no. **18** above, and MOLINIER, *Les sources*, no. 21 above. See also the great collections of source material for the history of the church, nos. **953–964** above, and for the history of Bohemia, no. **986** note, above.

Bibliographies. DAHLMANN–WAITZ, *Quellenkunde*, is the most serviceable bibliography because of its recent date; see pp. 420–423, 429–432, 450–452, 456–460, and especially 503–524. The elaborate bibliographies at the head of chapters in LOSERTH, *Geschichte des späteren Mittelalters*, are valuable. See also the bibliographies for church history, nos. **49–55** above.

XXX. FRANCE DURING THE HUNDRED YEARS' WAR.

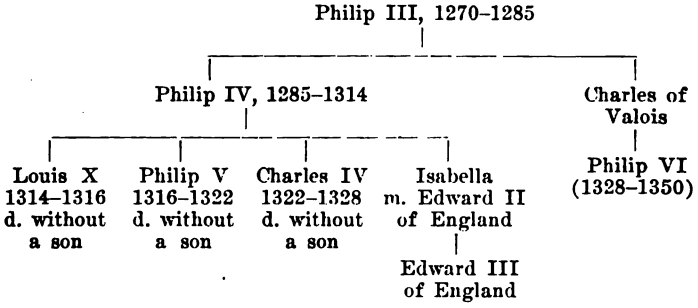
A. OUTLINE

1. France at the end of the direct line of Capetian kings, 1328. The strength of the monarchy. Weakness of the feudal nobility. Large extent of the kingdom of France, and the brilliancy of its capital, Paris. Effective monarchial institutions. Dominance of the French kings over the papacy at Avignon. Loyalty and self-effacement of the people. The question of nationality in the middle ages.

2. France under the Valois kings, 1328–1498. A period of retrogression from the glorious position of France under the Capetians. Weakness of the royal line. Trials and mistakes of the period of the Hundred Years' War. Awakening of the bourgeoisie. Renewed strength of the feudal nobility leading to civil war and almost wrecking the monarchy. The decline and desolation of the city of Paris an index of the times.

3. The causes of the war: (1) territorial: the standing menace to France of the remnants of the old Norman empire on the continent; (2) dynastic: the claim of king Edward III of France to the French crown; (3) economic: the English wool-trade with Flanders, Jacob van Artevelde of Ghent. Relations of France with Scotland.

4. The succession to the French throne in 1328:



5. The periods of the war: (1) 1338–1380, first forty-year period of active war ending favorably for France; (2) 1380–1415, thirty-five year period of disastrous comparative peace; (3) 1415–1453, second forty-year period of active war, ending with the expulsion of the English from France.

6. The war to 1360. English naval victory at Sluys, 1340. The war in Brittany. Defeat of the French at Crécy, April, 1346. Calais captured by the English in 1347. Overwhelming defeat of the French at Poitiers, 1356, where the French king, John II, was captured. For the Black Death and the *Jacquerie* see outline XXVI above. The treaty of Brétigny, 1360.

7. Constitutional upheaval in France 1355–1358. The question of taxation and mismanagement of funds before the Estates General. Etienne Marcel, provost of the merchants of Paris, and Robert le Coq, bishop of Laon. The "Great Ordinance" of 1357. Complications caused by the *Jacquerie*. Failure of the constitutional movement and the execution of Etienne Marcel in 1358.

8. French successes, 1360–1378. The "Great Company" of freebooters in France. Bertrand du Guesclin and the Black Prince. Renewal of the war in 1369. Gradual recovery of territory by the French until in 1378 the English held only Bayonne, Bordeaux, Brest, Cherbourg, and Calais.

9. France during the great western schism, 1378–1417. Weakness of Charles VI, 1380–1422, who became insane in 1392. The defeat of the Flemish under Philip van Arteveld at the battle of Roosebek, 1382, was an index of the rise of the feudal nobility to old-time power. Riots in Paris. The *Marmousets*. The *Tuchins*. The struggle for the regency led to civil war between the Burgundians and Orleanists (Armagnacs). Reign of terror in Paris (*Cabochiens*).

10. The English invasion of France under king Henry V, 1415, aided by the Burgundian party. His claim to the French crown. Victory of the English at Agincourt, 1415. Treaty of Troyes, 1420. When Henry V of England and Charles VI of France died in 1422, Henry VI, son of Henry V, was proclaimed at Paris king of France and England, according to the terms of this treaty. Weakness of the French king, Charles VII (1422–1461), who was besieged in Orleans, 1428.

11. Joan of Arc. A peasant girl born in Domrémy in Lorraine. Her "voices." In 1429 she raised the siege of Orleans and had Charles VII crowned at Rheims. Her capture, trial, and death at the stake, in the market place of Rouen, May 30, 1431, at about nineteen years of age. Her rehabilitation. Joan of Arc and French patriotism.

12. The expulsion of the English from France. The *Ecorcheurs*. Philip of Burgundy became reconciled with Charles VII by the treaty of Arras. The English lost Normandy in 1450, Guienne in 1453, and retained only Calais.

13. Results of the Hundred Years' War. Reaction in favor of absolutism. Low state of civilization in France at the end of the war. The projected crusade against the Turks in 1454.

14. Louis XI, 1461–1483, and Charles the Bold of Burgundy. Leagues of the Public Weal. Death of Charles at Nancy in 1477 and the dismemberment of the Burgundian possessions. The House of Austria in the Netherlands. Autocratic rule of Louis XI. Decline of the feudal nobility.

15. The invasion of Italy by Charles VIII in 1494 began a new era in the history of France.

16. Civilization, learning, and art in France during the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries.

17. The Valois kings of France, 1328–1498:

Philip VI, 1328–1350.
John II, 1350–1364.
Charles V, 1364–1380.
Charles VI, 1380–1422.
Charles VII, 1422–1461.
Louis XI, 1461–1483.
Charles VIII, 1483–1498.

18. Kings of England, 1327–1485:

Edward III, 1327–1377.
Richard II, 1377–1399.
Henry IV, 1399–1413.
Henry V, 1413–1422.
Henry VI, 1422–1461.
Edward IV, 1461–1483.
Edward V, 1483.
Richard III, 1483–1485.

B. SPECIAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR READING

Brief general accounts. ADAMS, *Growth of the French nation*, 108–146. A. HASSELL, *The French people*, chs. VIII–IX. C. HEADLAM, *France*, chs. X–XIII.

For military history, see OMAN, *Art of war*, book VIII; and MUNRO and SELLERY, *Medieval civilization*, 547–574, "The French army in the time of Charles VII."

Longer general accounts. KITCHEN, *History of France*, I, book IV, II, book I. MASSON, *Mediaeval France*, chs. IX–XVI. LODGE, *Close of the middle ages*, chs. IV, XV–XVI. LAVISSE and RAMBAUD, *Histoire générale*, III, chs. II–IV. J. LOSERTH, *Geschichte des späteren Mittelalters*, 324–342, 541–562, 670–683. The standard account in French is LAVISSE, *Histoire de France*, IV, both parts.

The Black Prince and Bertrand Du Guesclin. R. P. DUNN-PATTISON, *The Black Prince*, London, 1910. E. V. STODDARD, *Bertrand du Guesclin, constable of France: his life and times*, New York, 1897.

Joan of Arc. There is an immense amount of literature on the Maid of Orleans. Unfortunately, much of it is marred by bitter polemics. A fairly safe course for the English reader is to approach the subject through the pages of two American writers, H. C. LEA, *The inquisition of the middle ages*, III, 338–378; and F. C. LOWELL, *Joan of Arc*, Boston, 1896. Following are some of the more recent biographies. A. FRANCE, *Vie de Jeanne d'Arc*, 2 vols., Paris, 1908, translated by WINIFRED STEPHENS, *Life of Joan of Arc*, London, 1909. A. LANG, *The maid of France: being the story of the life and death of Jeanne d'Arc*, London and New York, 1908, is in large measure a review of the book by A. France. G. HANOTAUX, *Jeanne d'Arc*, Paris, 1911. MARY R. BANGS, *Jeanne d'Arc, the maid of France*, Boston, 1910. GRACE JAMES, *Joan of Arc*, New York, 1910.

Louis XI and Charles the Bold. A. C. S. HAGGARD, *Louis XI and Charles the Bold*, London, 1913. C. HARE (pseudonym), *The life of Louis XI, the rebel dauphin and the statesman king, from his original letters and other documents*, London and New York, 1907. E. A. FREEMAN, "Charles the Bold," in his *Historical essays*, first series, 314–372. RUTH PUTNAM, *Charles the Bold: last duke of Burgundy, 1433–1477*, New York, 1908.

Civilization, learning, and art. The best account is in LAVISSE, *Histoire de France*, IV, part II, 115–227, 436–452, where an abundance of literature is cited, much of which appears in part III below, but cannot be given in detail under this outline.

Original sources. The one inimitable contemporary narrator of the first part of the Hundred Years' War is Sir JOHN FROISSART, *The chronicles of England, France, and the adjoining countries, from the latter part of the reign of Edward II to the coronation of Henry IV*, translated from the French by T. JOHNES, 4 vols., London, 1803–1810 (often reprinted). For a rapid survey, such condensations as the volume in *Everyman's library*, London and New York, 1906; and the Globe edition of *The chronicles of Froissart*, edited by G. C. MACAULAY, London and New York, 1899, do very well. FROISSART'S *Chronicles* were continued by ENGUERRAND DE MONSTRELET, *The chronicles of Monstrelet, containing the cruel wars between the houses of Orleans and Burgundy, 1400 ff.*, translated by T. JOHNES, 2 vols., London, 1867. For the times of Louis XI and Charles VIII, we have *The memoires of* PHILIP DE COMMINES, to which is added the *Scandalous chronicle, or secret history of Louis XI*, by JEAN DE TROYES, 2 vols., London, 1900.

The chief contemporary materials for Joan or Arc are translated in *Jeanne d'Arc, maid of Orleans, deliverer of France: being the story of her life, her achievements, and her death, as attested on oath and set forth in original documents,* edited by T. D. MURRAY, new and revised edition, New York, 1907.

Interesting extracts from these works, together with some other material, will be found in ROBINSON, *Readings,* I, 466–487; OGG, *Source book,* 418–443; E. P. CHEYNEY, *Readings in English history,* New York, 1908, 225–305; and W. J. ASHLEY, *The wars of Edward III,* London, 1887.

The best description of the most important contemporary writings of this period is by G. MASSON, *Early chroniclers of Europe: France,* chs. XI–XVI.

Maps. SHEPHERD, *Atlas,* 76–79, 81, 84.

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General books. The general histories of France, Belgium, and the Netherlands are listed above, nos. **508–559.** See also nos. **338, 89, 92–93** above.

The Hundred Years' War in general. S. LUCE, *La France pendant la guerre de cent ans,* 2 vols., Paris, 1890–94, is the fundamental work. J. LACHAUVELAYE, *Guerres des Français et des Anglais du XI^e au XV^e siècle,* Paris, 1875. A. JOUBERT, *Les invasions anglaises en Anjou au XIV^e et XV^e siècle,* Paris, 1872. The military history of the war is treated in E. HARDY, *La guerre de cent ans,* 1346–1453, Paris, 1879 (extract from "l'Histoire de la tactique"). See also the literature on the art of war, p. 262 above, and for naval battles, RONCIÈRE, no. **546** above. G. GUIBAL, *Histoire du sentiment national en France pendant la guerre de cent ans,* Paris, 1875. E. LEVASSEUR, *La population française,* 3 vols., Paris, 1889–1892, in vol. I touches upon the depopulation in France and especially Paris during the war. S. B. TERRY, *The financing of the Hundred Years' War, 1337–1360,* London, 1914. ELEANOR C. LODGE, *The estates of the archbishop and chapter of Saint-André of Bordeaux under English rule,* Oxford, 1912. P. FOURNIER, *Le royaume d'Arles et de Vienne.*

Great battles of the war. H. BELLOC, *Crécy,* London, 1912 (British battles); and his *Poitiers,* London, 1913 (British battles). G. WROTTLESLEY, *Crécy and Calais,* London, 1898. R. CZEPPAN, *Die Schlacht bei Crécy,* Berlin, 1906 (dissertation). N. H. NICOLAS, *History of the battle of Agincourt and of the expedition of Henry V,* London, 1827, 3rd edition, 1833. F. NIETHE, *Die Schlacht bei Azincourt, 1415,* Berlin, 1906 (58 pp.). A. DE LOISNE, *La bataille d'Azincourt,* Paris, 1898 (15 pp.).

First period, 1338–1380. H. DENIFLE, *La désolation des églises, monastères et hôpitaux en France pendant la guerre de cent ans* [to 1380], 2 vols., Paris, 1897–99, is by far the best history of this period. E. DÉPREZ, *Les préliminaires de la guerre de cent ans: la papauté, la France et l'Angleterre (1328–42)*, Paris, 1902, part 86 of no. 887 above. J. CORDEY, *Les comtes de Savoie et les rois de France pendant la guerre de cent ans (1329–1391)*, Paris, 1911, part 189 of no. 888 above. C. PETIT DUTAILLIS and P. COLLIER, "La diplomatie française et le traité de Brétigny," in *Le moyen âge*, X (1897), 1–35. J. VIARD, "La France sous Philippe de Valois," in *Revue des questions historiques*, LIX (1896), 337–402. A. LÉROUX, *Recherches critiques sur les relations politiques de l'Allemagne et de la France, 1292–1378*, Paris, 1882, part of no. 888 above. F. MICHEL, *Les Ecossais en France, les Français en Ecosse*, 2 vols., London, 1862.

Flanders. W. J. ASHLEY, *James and Philip van Artevelde*, London, 1883. H. PIRENNE, *Le soulèvement de la Flandre maritime de 1323–1328: documents inédits publiés avec une introduction*, Brussels, 1900. F. FUNCK-BRENTANO, *Les origines de la guerre de cent ans: Philippe le Bel en Flandre*, Paris, 1897. L. VANDERKINDERE, *Le siècle des Artevelde*, Brussels, 1879, 2nd edition, 1907. Baron KERVYN DE LETTENHOVE, *Histoire de Flandre*, 7 vols., Brussels, 1846–1850, 2nd edition, 5 vols., 1853–1854; and his *Jacques d'Artevelde*, Ghent, 1863.

Etienne Marcel. F. T. PERRENS, *Etienne Marcel, prévôt des marchands (1354–1358)*, Paris, 1874 (in Histoire générale de Paris); see also his older work, *Etienne Marcel et le gouvernement de la bourgeoisie au quatorzième siècle (1356–58)*, Paris, 1860, and his *La démocratie en France au moyen âge, histoire des tendances démocratiques dans les populations urbaines au XIV^e^ et au XV^e^ siècle*, 2 vols., Paris, 1875. L. LAZARD, *Un bourgeois de Paris: Etienne Marcel*, Paris, 1890. J. TESSIER, *La mort d'Etienne Marcel*, Paris, 1886. S. LUCE, *Histoire de la Jacquerie, d'après des documents inédits*, 2nd edition, Paris, 1894. N. VALOIS, *Le conseil du roi aux XIV^e^, XV^e^ et XVI^e^ siècles*, Paris, 1888. A. DESJARDINS, *Les Etats Généraux, 1350–1614*, Paris, 1873. See also the literature on the Estates General and the Parlement, outline XXV above.

The Black Prince and Bertrand du Guesclin. J. MOISANT, *Le Prince Noir en Aquitaine, 1355–70*, Paris, 1894. A. DEBIDOUR, *Histoire de Du Guesclin*, Paris, 1880. D. F. JAMISON, *The life and times of Bertrand du Guesclin: a history of the fourteenth century*, London, 1864. S. LUCE, *La jeunesse de Bertrand du Guesclin*, Paris, 1876. M. BOUDET, *La Jacquerie des Tuchins (1363–1384)*, Paris, 1895.

Charles V, 1364–1380. R. DELACHENAL, *Histoire de Charles V*, vols. I, II, Paris, 1909. M. PROU, *Etude sur les relations politiques d'Urbain V avec les rois de France Jean II et Charles V*, Paris, 1888, part 76 of no. 888 above. E. LAVISSE, "Etude sur le pouvoir royal au temps de Charles V," in *Revue historique*, XXVI (1884), 233–80.

Intermediate period, 1380–1415. N. VALOIS, *La France et le grand schisme*, is the best general history of France during this period. L. JARRY, *La vie politique de Louis de France, duc d'Orléans (1372–1408)*, Paris, 1889. L. MIROT, "Une tentative d'invasion en Angleterre pendant la guerre de cent ans, 1385–86," in *Revue des études historiques*. 1915. A. COVILLE, *Les Cabochiens et l'ordonnance de 1413*, Paris, 1888.

Charles VII, 1422–1461. G. DU FRESNE DE BEAUCOURT, *Histoire de Charles VII et de son époque*, 6 vols., Paris., 1881–91. A. VALLET DE VIRIVILLE, *Histoire de Charles VII et son époque*, 3 vols., Paris, 1862–65. E. GLASSON, *Le parlement de Paris: son rôle politique depuis le règne de Charles VII jusqu'à la Révolution*, 2 vols., Paris, 1901. A. LEROUX, *Nouvelles recherches critiques sur les relations politiques de la France avec l'Allemagne de 1378 à 1461*, Paris, 1882. A. TUETEY, *Les Ecorcheurs sous Charles VII*, 2 vols., Paris, 1874. H. PRUTZ, *Jacques Coeur von Bourges: Geschichte eines patriotischen Kaufmanns aus dem 15 Jahrhundert*, Berlin, 1911 (Historische Studien, 93). P. CLÉMENT, *Jacques Coeur et Charles VII, ou la France au XV^e siècle*, 2 vols., Paris, 1853, 4th edition, 1874. E. COSNEAU, *Le connétable de Richemont (Arthur de Bretagne, 1393–1458)*, Paris, 1886. J. QUICHERAT, *Rodrique de Villandrano, l'un des combattants pour l'independance française au quinzième siècle*, Paris, 1879. P. CHAMPION, *François Villon, sa vie et son temps*, 2 vols., Paris, 1913, throws interesting sidelights on life in Paris in the fifteenth century.

Joan of Arc. The bibliography by P. LANÉRY D'ARC, *Le livre d'or de Jeanne d'Arc: bibliographie raisonnée et analytique des ouvrages relatifs à Jeanne d'Arc*, Paris, 1894, has 2102 numbers. U. CHEVALIER, *Repertoire: bio-bibliographie*, II, 2513–2546, furnished a long alphabetical list which brought the bibliography up to the year 1907. Only specialists can use such stupendous lists with profit. Helpful criticism of the more recent literature is furnished by M. SEPET, "Jeanne d'Arc et ses plus récents historiens," in *Revue des questions historiques*, LXXXVIII (1910), 107–134, who writes from the Roman catholic point of view.

The following are some of the most important works by Roman catholics. P. H. DUNAND, *Etudes critiques*, 5 vols., Paris, 1903–09; and his *Histoire complète de Jeanne d'Arc*, 3 vols., Paris, 1898–1899.

J. B. J. AYROLES, *La vraie Jeanne d'Arc*, 5 vols, and two supplements, Paris, 1890–1902 (one of the supplements treats *L'université de Paris au temps de Jeanne d'Arc, et la cause de sa haine contre la libératrice*). H. DEBOUT, *La Jeanne d'Arc, grande histoire illustrée*, 2 vols., Paris, 1905–06. H. WALLON, *Jeanne d'Arc*, Paris, 1860, 7th edition, Paris, 1901, is also illustrated beautifully. J. QUICHERAT, *Aperçus nouveaux sur l'histoire de Jeanne d'Arc*, Paris, 1850.

Following is a selection of a few of the more popular or more recent biographies. L. PETIT DE JULLEVILLE, *La vénérable Jeanne d'Arc*, Paris, 1900 (Les Saints), translated into English, London, 1907. M. SEPET, *Jeanne d'Arc*, Tours, 1885, often reprinted; and his *La bienheureuse Jeanne d'Arc: son vrai caractère*, Paris, 1909. A. MARTY, *L'histoire de Jeanne d'Arc d'après les documents originaux et les oeuvres d'art du XV^e^ au XIX^e^ siècle*, Paris, 1907, has an introduction by M. SEPET. F. DE RICHEMONT, *Jeanne d'Arc d'après les documents contemporains*, Paris, 1913. S. LUCE, *Jeanne d'Arc à Domrémy*, Paris, 1886, 2nd edition, 1887. J. FABRE, *Jeanne d'Arc libératrice de la France*, Paris, 1884. A. FABRE, *Etude sur Jeanne d'Arc*, Paris, 1912. Mrs. MARGARET OLIPHANT, *Jeanne d'Arc: her life and death*, London, 1896 (Heroes of the nations). R. GOWER, *Joan of Arc*, London, 1893. J. MICHELET, *Jeanne d'Arc, 1412–32*, Paris, 1890, is practically a reprint from his *Histoire de France*, vol. V. A. M. TONNA-BARTHET, *Los dos procesos de la Venble Juana de Arco*, Barcelona, 1904. Lady CHARLOTTE BLENNERHASSETT, *Die Jungfrau von Orleans*, Bielefeld, 1906 (Frauenleben, vol. IX). R. MAHRENHOLTZ, *Jeanne Darc in Geschichte, Legende, Dichtung, auf Grund neuerer Forschung*, Leipzig, 1890. K. HASE, *Die Jungfrau von Orléans*, Leipzig, 1893.

On the military career of Joan of Arc see the following: P. MARIN, *Jeanne d'Arc: tacticien et stratégiste*, 4 vols., Paris, 1889–90. H. BARANDE, *Orléans et Jeanne d'Arc: étude critique et stratégique du siège d'Orléans*, Paris, 1910. F. CANONGE, *Jeanne d'Arc guerrière*, Paris, 1908. L. JARRY, *Compte de l'armée anglaise au siège d'Orléans*, Paris, 1892. BOUCHER DE MOLANDON and A. DE BEAUCORPS, *L'armée anglaise vaincue par Jeanne d'Arc*, Orleans, 1892. P. CHAMPION, *Guillaume de Flavy, capitaine de Compiègne: contribution à l'histoire de Jeanne d'Arc*, Paris, 1906. A. SOREL, *La prise de Jeanne d'Arc devant Compiègne*, Paris, 1889.

Some special studies on Joan of Arc. C^te^ C. DE MALEYSSIE, *Les lettres de Jehanne d'Arc et la prétendue abjuration de Saint-Ouen*, with a preface by G. HANOTAUX, Paris, 1911. IRENE M. ROPE, "The letters of Jeanne d'Arc: an epitome," in *Dublin review*, CLVI (1915), 57–72. E. PRUTZ, "Die Briefe Jeanne d'Arcs," in *Sitzungs-*

berichte of the Munich Academy, 1914, I; see also his "Die falsche Jungfrau von Orléans (1436–57)," *ibid.*, 1911; and "Studien zur Geschichte der Jungfrau von Orleans," *ibid.*, 1913, 2. H. DENIFLE, and E. CHATELAIN, "Le procès de Jeanne d'Arc et l'université de Paris," in *Mémoires de la Société de l'histoire de Paris*, XXIV (1897), 1–32. G. GOYAU, *Jeanne d'Arc devant l'opinion allemande*, Paris, 1907. M. SEPET, "Observations critiques sur l'histoire de Jeanne d'Arc, la relation officielle du procès de condamnation et la diplomatie de l'Angleterre," in *Revue des questions historiques*, XCVI (1914), 420–439. P. A. PIDOUX, *Un précurseur de la bienheureuse Jehanne d'Arc, le bienheureux Jehan de Gand: sa vie et son culte*, Lille, 1912. A. BOULÉ, *Jeans sans Peur et Jeanne d'Arc: ou, dernière période de la guerre de cent ans*, 2 vols., Paris, 1901. A. SARRAZIN, *Jeanne d'Arc et la Normandie au XIV^e siècle*, Paris, 1896; see also his *Pierre Cauchon*, Paris, 1901. R. BERGOT, *Jeanne d'Arc et l'histoire moderne*, Paris, 1914.

Louis XI, 1461–1483. P. F. WILLERT, *The reign of Louis XI*, London, 1876 (Historical handbooks). A. DESJARDINS, *Louis XI, sa politique extérieure, ses rapports avec l'Italie*, Paris, 1874. M. THIBAULT, *La jeunesse de Louis XI (1423–44)*, Paris, 1906. R. REY, *Louis XI et les états pontificaux de France au XV^e siècle, d'après des documents inédits*, Grenoble, 1899. H. SÉE, *Louis XI et les villes*, Paris, 1891. J. COMBET, *Louis XI et le saint-siège (1461–1483)*, Paris, 1903. A. GANDILHON, *Contribution à l'histoire de la vie privée et la cour de Louis XI (1423–1481)*, Bourges, 1906.

Burgundy and Charles the Bold. E. PETIT, *Ducs de Bourgogne de la maison Valois, d'après des documents inédits*, vol. I, *Philippe le Hardi*, part I, 1363–1380, Paris, 1909, continues his great work, *Histoire des ducs de Bourgogne de la race capétienne*. O. CARTELLIERI, *Geschichte der Herzöge von Burgund, 1363–1477*, vol. I, *Philipp der Kühne*, Leipzig, 1910. A. G. P. B. DE BARANTE, *Histoire des ducs de Bourgogne, 1364–1477*, 13 vols., Paris, 1824 ff., 8th edition, 1858. J. F. KIRK, *History of Charles the Bold*, 3 vols., London, 1863–1868. P. FRÉDÉRICQ, *Le rôle politique et social des ducs de Bourgogne dans les Pays-Bas*, Ghent, 1875. E. TOUTEY, *Charles le Téméraire et la ligue de Constance*, Paris, 1902.

Charles VIII, 1483–1498. H. F. DELABORDE, *L'expédition de Charles VIII*, Paris, 1888. E. HERBST, *Der Zug Karl's VIII nach Italien im Urteil der italienischen Zeitgenossen*, Berlin, 1911 (part 28 of Abhandlungen zur mittleren und neueren Geschichte).

Original sources. Practically all the essential contemporary sources may be found in the large collections on French history, **nos. 965–979** above. Much may also be found in the Rolls Series,

no. 995 above, such as nos. 22 and 32, *Letters and papers illustrative of the wars of the English in France during the reign of Henry VI, king of England,* 2 vols., London, 1861–4; and *Narratives of the expulsion of the English from Normandy, 1449–50,* London, 1863, both edited by J. STEVENSON. The treaties of the war are printed in RYMER, *Foedera,* no 996 above, but we have a better collection by E. COSNEAU, *Les grandes traités de la guerre de cent ans,* Paris, 1889, vol. 7 of no. 968 above.

Almost everything of importance concerning Joan of Arc is in *Procès de condamnation et de réhabilitation de Jeanne d'Arc... suivis de tous les documents historiques qu'on a pu reunir et accompagnés de notes,* edited by J. QUICHERAT, 5 vols., Paris, 1841–1849, part 12 of no. 966 above. The extracts from it, translated into English by MURRAY, have been mentioned above. Similar translations of extracts into French have been made by J. FABRE, *Procès de condemnation de Jeanne d'Arc, d'après les textes authentiques des procès-verbaux officiels,* traduction avec éclaircissements, Paris, 1884, and his *Procès de réhabilitation de Jeanne d'Arc,* raconté et traduit d'après les textes latins officiels, 2 vols., Paris, 1888, new edition, Paris, 1913.

Bibliographies. MOLINIER, *Les sources de l'histoire de France,* IV–V, dissects the original sources for this period in great detail. The best practical guide for both sources and secondary works is LAVISSE, *Histoire de France,* IV (bibliographies in footnotes). For the general bibliographies on France, see nos. 21–27 above, and for Belgium, no. 45 above, which is particularly useful for this period.

XXXI. GERMANY FROM THE GREAT INTERREGNUM TO MAXIMILIAN I, 1273–1493

A. OUTLINE

1. Contrast between decentralization in Germany and centralization in France during this period. Persistence of the bond between Germany and Italy based on the idea of universal empire. Importance of the great feudal princes in Germany. The great houses of Ascania, Welf, Wittelsbach, Wettin, and the rising houses of Luxemburg, Hapsburg, and Hohenzollern. The important ecclesiastical princes, especially the archbishop of Mainz, Cologne, and Trier (Trèves). The independent imperial cities such as Lübeck, Bremen, and Rostock in the north, and Nürnberg and Augsburg in the south.

2. The new empire after the Great Interregnum. Rudolf, count of Hapsburg, elected emperor in 1273 chiefly with the aid of his cousin, Frederick III of Hohenzollern, Burggraf of Nürnberg. The *Habichtsburg* in Switzerland. Rudolf's German policy. War with Ottokar of Bohemia. His failure to have his son succeed him. Adolf of Nassau, 1292–1298, intervened between Rudolf and his son, Albert I, 1298–1308.

3. Henry VII of Luxemburg, 1308–1313, and the sporadic revival of old imperial claims in Italy. John of Luxemburg, king of Bohemia in 1310. Henry VII descent into Italy where he died in Siena, 1313. Dante's *De monarchia.*

4. Origin of the Swiss Confederacy. The league of 1291 between the cantons Uri, Schwyz, and Unterwalden. Recognized by Henry VII in 1309. The legend of William Tell and the imperial bailiff Gessler. Victory of the Swiss confederates at Morgarten in 1315 over Leopold of Austria. Gradual expulsion of Austria from Switzerland. Battle of Sempach, 1386. Practical independence of Switzerland, which was finally recognized in the Peace of Westphalia, 1648.

5. Disputed election in 1314 and civil war between Louis of Bavaria and Frederick of Austria, son of Albert. The trouble with the pope at Avignon, John XXII. Louis was crowned emperor in Rome, by the anti-pope Nicholas V. The war of pamphlets. Marsiglio of Padua's *Defensor pacis* and the writings of other supporters of Louis against the papacy such as William of Ockam, John of Jandun, and Michael Cesena, the general of the Franciscan order. The Declaration of Rense, 1338.

6. The development of the electoral college. Gradual emergence of the seven electors, three ecclesiastical lords: (1) Archbishop of Mainz, (2) Archbishop of Trier, (3) Archbishop of Cologne; and four lay princes: (4) King of Bohemia, (5) Count Palatine of the Rhine, (6) Duke of Saxony, and the (7) Margrave of Brandenburg.

7. Charles IV of Bohemia, 1347–1378, and the Golden Bull of 1356. The establishment of the university of Prague in 1348. The Black Death in Germany. The Flagellants.

8. Decline of imperial power in the period of the great western schism and the conciliar movement. The emperor Sigismund, 1410–1437, at the council of Constance. The Hussite wars, 1419–1436.

9. Private leagues strove to preserve order. The Hanseatic League and the Swiss Confederation have been treated elsewhere. League of Rhenish cities. The Swabian League of cities. Associations of lesser nobles.

10. The Hapsburgs in the fifteenth century, beginning with Albert II in 1438. Frederick III, 1440–1493, and his advisor, Æneas Sylvius Piccolomini (pope Pius II). Marriage of Frederick's son, archduke Maximilian, with Mary, the daughter and heiress of Charles the Bold, duke of Burgundy, who died in 1477. The Turkish menace. Futile efforts at constitutional reform.

11. German civilization in the fifteenth century. Conditions which prepared for the protestant revolt in the sixteenth century.

12. German emperors, 1273–1519.

Rudolf I (of Hapsburg), 1273–1292.
Adolf (of Nassau), 1292–1298.
Albert I (of Hapsburg), 1298–1308.
Henry VII (of Luxemburg), 1308–1314.
Louis IV (of Bavaria), 1314–1347.
(Frederick of Austria, rival.)
Charles IV (of Luxemburg), 1347–1378.
(Günther of Schwarzburg, rival.)
Wenzel (of Luxemburg), 1378–1400.
Rupert (of the Palatinate), 1400–1410.
Sigismund (of Luxemburg), 1410–1438.
(Jobst of Moravia, rival.)
Albert II (of Hapsburg), 1438–1440.
Frederick III (of Hapsburg), 1440–1493.
Maximilian I (of Hapsburg), 1493–1519.

B. Special Recommendations for Reading

Brief general accounts. Bryce, *Holy Roman empire*, chs. xiii–xv, xvii. Henderson, *A short history of Germany*, I, chs. vi–x. There are a few stimulating pages in E. Lavisse, *Political history of Europe*, 45–57.

Longer general accounts. Lodge, *The close of the middle ages*, chs. i, v–vii, xvii. Lavisse and Rambaud, *Histoire générale*, III, ch. xii. Loserth, *Geschichte des späteren Mittelalters*, 177–203, 246–324, 416–452, 643–670. Gebhardt, *Handbuch der deutschen Geschichte*, I, chs. xii–xiv. W. Stubbs, *Germany in the later middle ages, 1200–1500*.

Marsiglio of Padua. R. L. Poole, *Illustrations of the history of medieval thought*, ch. ix, "The opposition to the temporal claims of the papacy." W. A. Dunning, *A history of political theories*, ch. ix, "Theories during the decline of the papal hegemony." J. N. Figgis, *The theory of the divine right of kings*, Cambridge, 1896, 2nd edition, 1914, ch. iii, "The holy Roman empire and the papacy."

Switzerland. W. D. MCCRACKEN, *The rise of the Swiss republic*, Boston, 1892, 2nd edition, revised and enlarged, New York, 1901 (see 92–104 for the legend of William Tell). K. DÄNDLIKER, *A short history of Switzerland*, translated by E. SALISBURY from the 2nd edition of his *Lehrbuch*, revised, New York, 1899, second period, pp. 37–125. LINA HUG and R. STEAD, *Switzerland*, New York, 1890 (Story of the nations), chs. IX–XV. A. SCHULTE, "Über Staatenbildung in der Alpenwelt," in *Historisches Jahrbuch* (1901), 1–22.

Original sources. The Golden Bull is translated in HENDERSON, *Select documents*, 220–261, and also in THATCHER and MCNEAL, *Source book*, 283–305, along with other material pertaining to this outline on pp. 260–308. A portion of the Golden Bull, showing the seal, is reproduced in facsimile in *Weltgeschichte*, edited by J. v. PFLUGK-HARTTUNG, II, 464.

The *De monarchia* of DANTE is translated by AURELIA HENRY, Boston, 1904, and also by R. W. CHURCH, *Dante and other essays*, London, 1901, 175–308. F. W. COKER, *Readings in political philosophy*, New York, 1914, 139–167, contains some extracts from DANTE'S *De monarchia* and MARSIGLIO'S *Defensor pacis*. There are also some brief extracts of the latter in ROBINSON, *Readings*, I, 491–497.

Maps. SHEPHERD, *Atlas*, 77–79, 85–88, 91. Special maps for Switzerland are, *Historisch-geographischer Atlas der Schweiz*, edited by J. C. VÖGELIN and others, Zurich (Schulthess); and OECHSLI-BALDAMUS, *Wandkarte zur Schweizergeschichte*, 2nd edition, Leipzig, 1902.

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General books. The general histories of Germany are listed above, nos. **560–598.** See also those of Bohemia, nos. **699–703** above.

General surveys. T. LINDNER, *Deutsche Geschichte under den Habsburgern und Luxemburgern, 1273–1437*, 2 vols., Stuttgart, 1888–1893, is continued by V. VON KRAUS, *Deutsche Geschichte im Ausgange des Mittelalters, 1438–1517*, vol. I (1438–1493), Stuttgart, 1888–1905, both parts of no. **560** above. W. COXE, *History of the house of Austria, 1278–1792*, 3 vols., London, 1882. O. LORENZ, *Deutsche Geschichte im 13 und 14 Jahrhundert*, 2 vols., Vienna, 1863–1867. A. SCHULTZ, *Deutsches Leben im 14 und 15 Jahrhundert*, Leipzig, 1892. K. ZEUMER, *Heiliges römisches Reich deutscher Nation*, discusses the titles applied to the empire during this and earlier periods. W. SCHEFFLER, *Die Porträts der deutschen Kaiser und Könige im späteren Mittelalter von Adolf von Nassau bis Maximilian I, 1292–1519* (in Repertorium für Kunstwissenschaft, 33).

Rudolf I, 1273–1292. O. REDLICH, *Rudolf von Habsburg: das deutsche Reich nach dem Untergange des alten Kaisertums*, Innsbruck, 1903. H. OTTO, *Die Beziehungen Rudolfs von Habsburg zu Papst Gregor X*, Innsbruck, 1894. J. HELLER, *Deutschland und Frankreich in ihren politischen Beziehungen vom Ende des Interregnums bis zum Tode Rudolfs von Habsburg*, Göttingen, 1874.

Adolf, 1292–1298, and Albert I, 1298–1308. F. W. E. ROTH, *Geschichte des römischen Königs Adolf I von Nassau*, Wiesbaden, 1879. A. BERGENGRÜN, *Die politischen Beziehungen Deutschlands zu Frankreich während der Regierung Adolfs von Nassau*, Strasburg, 1884. H. HENNEBERG, *Die politischen Beziehungen zwischen Deutschland und Frankreich unter König Albrecht I, 1298–1308*, Strasburg, 1891 (dissertation).

Henry VII, 1308–1314. K. GRÄFE, *Die Persönlichkeit Kaiser Heinrichs VII*, Leipzig, 1911. M. KRAUSSOLD, *Die politischen Beziehungen zwischen Deutschland und Frankreich während der Regierung Heinrichs VII*, Munich, 1900 (dissertation). G. SOMMERFELDT, *Die Romfahrt Kaiser Heinrichs VII (1310–1313)*, Königsberg, 1888. K. WENCK, *Clemens V und Heinrich VII*, Halle, 1882.

Louis of Bavaria, 1314–1347. R. MOELLER, *Ludwig der Bayer und die Kurie im Kampf um das Reich: Forschungen*, Berlin, 1914. J. v. DÖLLINGER, "Deutschlands Kampf mit dem Papstthum unter Kaiser Ludwig dem Bayer" (in his *Akademische Vorträge*, I), translated into English, "The struggle of Germany with the papacy under the emperor Ludwig of Bavaria," in his *Studies in European history*, London, 1890. K. MÜLLER, *Der Kampf Ludwigs des Bayern mit der römischen Kurie*, 2 vols., Tübingen, 1879–1880. G. SIEVERS, *Die politischen Beziehungen Kaiser Ludwigs des Bayern zu Frankreich, 1314–1347*, Berlin, 1896 (part 2 of Historische Studien). W. ALTMANN, *Der Römerzug Ludwigs des Baiern*, Berlin, 1886. K. HÖHLBAUM, "Der Kurverein zu Rense, 1338," in *Abhandlungen der Gesellschaft der Wissenschaften zu Göttingen*, VII, 1903.

Marsiglio of Padua and political thought in the fourteenth century. S. RIEZLER, *Die literarischen Wiedersacher der Päpste zur Zeit Ludwig des Bayers*, Leipzig, 1874. J. SULLIVAN, "Marsiglio of Padua and William of Ockam," in *American historical review*, II (1896–1897), 409–426, 593–610. N. VALOIS, "Jean de Jandun et Marsile de Padoue: auteurs du 'Defensor pacis,'" in *Histoire littéraire de la France*, XXXIII (1906), 528–623. R. SCHOLZ, *Studien über die politischen Streitschriften des 14 und 15 Jahrhunderts*, Rome, 1909 (part 12 of Quellen und Forschungen aus italienischen Archiven und Bibliotheken), and his "Marsilius von Padua und die Idee der Demokratie," in *Zeitschrift für Politik*, I. L. STIEGLITZ,

Die Staatstheorie des Marsilius von Padua: ein Beitrag zur Kenntniss der Staatslehre im Mittelalter, Leipzig, 1914 (Beiträge zur Kulturgeschichte des Mittelalters und der Renaissance, edited by GOETZ, 19). M. GUGGENHEIM, "Marsilius von Padua und die Staatslehre des Aristoteles," in *Historische Vierteljahrschrift*, VII (1904), 343–362. H. FINKE, "Zu Dietrich von Niem und Marsilius von Padua," in *Römische Quartal-Schrift*, VII. A. BAUDRILLARD, "Les idées qu'on se faisait au XIV^e^ siècle sur le droit d'intervention du Souverain Pontif dans les affaires politiques," in *Revue d'histoire et de littérature religieuse* (1898). B. LABANCA, *Marsilio da Padova*, Padua, 1882. G. VON LECHLER, *Der Kirchenstaat und die Opposition gegen den päbstlichen Absolutismus im Anfange des 14 Jahrhunderts*, Leipzig, 1870. A. FRANK, *Réformateurs et publicistes de l'Europe: moyen âge—Renaissance*, Paris, 1864, discusses Dante and Marsiglio of Padua on pp. 108–151. J. SILBERNAGL, "Wilhelms von Occam Ansichten über Kirche und Staat," in *Historisches Jahrbuch*, VII (1886), 423–433.

Switzerland. K. DÄNDLIKER, *Geschichte der Schweiz*, 3 vols., Zürich, 1884–1887, vol I, 4th edition, 1901, vols. II and III, 3rd edition, 1902–1903. There is an abridgment of this work under the title, *Auszug aus der Schweizergeschichte*, Zürich, 1910. The same author's *Schweizerische Geschichte*, Leipzig, 1904 (Sammlung Göschen), is an earlier abridgment. J. DIERAUER, *Geschichte der schweizerischen Eidgenossenschaft*, vols. I–IV, Gotha, 1887–1912, part of no. 332 above. H. VULLIÉTY, *La Suisse à travers les âges: histoire de la civilisation depuis les temps préhistoriques jusqu'à la fin du XVIII^e^ siècle*, Paris, 1902, has many illustrations. J. VON MÜLLER, *Geschichte schweizerischer Eidgenossenschaft* mit allen Fortsetzungen, 26 vols., Leipzig, 1806–1855, translated into French by C. MONNARD and L. VULLIEMIN, *Histoire de la confédération suisse*, 18 vols., Paris, 1837–1851. *Archiv für Schweizergeschichte*, 20 vols., extends to 1875; followed by *Jahrbuch für Schweizergeschichte*, 1876ff.

F. G. BAKER, *The model republic: a history of the rise and progress of the Swiss people*, London, 1895, is disappointing. W. ÖCHSLI, *Die Anfänge der schweizerischen Eidgenossenschaft*, Bern, 1891, and his *Bausteine zur Schweizergeschichte*, Zürich, 1891. W. PLATTNER, *Die Entstehung des Freistaats der drei Bünde und sein Verhältnis zur alten Eidgenossenschaft*, Davos, 1895. J. HÜRBIN, *Handbuch der Schweizergeschichte*, 2 vols., Stans, 1901–1909. M. DE LA RIVE, *Histoire abrégée de la confédération suisse*, 2 vols., 2nd edition, Geneva, 1907. B. VAN MUYDEN, *Histoire de la nation suisse*, 3 vols., Lausanne, 1899–1901. A. DAQUET, *Histoire de la confédération suisse*, 7th edition, revised, 2 vols., Geneva and Paris, 1879.

A. HUBER, *Die Waldstätte Uri, Schwyz, Unterwalden bis zur ersten Begründung ihrer Eiagenossenschaft*, Innsbruck, 1861. A. RILLIET, *Les origines de la confédération suisse: histoire et légende*, Geneva, 1868, 2nd edition, 1869. L. VULLIEMIN, *Histoire de la confédération suisse*, 2 vols., revised edition, Lausanne, 1879. O. HENNE-AM-RHYN, *Geschichte des Schweizervolkes und seiner Kultur*, 3 vols., Leipzig, 1865–1866.

Special books on the Tell legend are: A. BERNOULLI, *Die Sagen von Tell und Stauffacher: eine kritische Untersuchung*, Basle, 1899; and E. L. ROCHOLZ, *Tell und Gessler in Sage und Geschichte*, Heilbronn, 1877.

Charles IV, 1347–1378, and the Golden Bull. E. WERUNSKY, — *Geschichte Kaiser Karls IV und seiner Zeit*, vols. I–III (1316–1368), Innsbruck, 1880–1892. K. ZEUMER, *Die Goldene Bulle Kaiser Karls IV*, 2 vols., Weimar, 1908. O. HALM, *Ursprung und Bedeutung der goldenen Bulle Karls IV*, Breslau, 1902 (dissertation). W. SCHEFFLER, *Karl IV und Innocenz VI: Beiträge zur Geschichte ihrer Beziehungen (1355–1360)*, Berlin, 1912 (part 101 of Historische Studien). S. GROTEFEND, *Die Erwerbungspolitik Kaiser Karls IV*, Berlin, 1909.

Wenzel, 1378–1400, and Rupert, 1400–1410. T. LINDNER, *Geschichte des deutschen Reichs unter König Wenzel*, 2 vols., Braunschweig, 1875–1880. C. HOEFLER, *Ruprecht von der Pfalz, genannt Clem, römischer König, 1400–1410*, Freiburg, 1861.

Sigismund. J. ASCHBACH, *Geschichte Kaiser Sigmunds*, 4 vols., Hamburg, 1838–1845. O. SCHIFF, *König Sigmunds italienische Politik bis zur Romfahrt (1410–1431)*, Frankfurt, 1909. E. GÖLLER, *König Sigismunds Kirchenpolitik vom Tode Bonifaz' IX bis zur Berufung des Konstanzer Konzils (1404–1413)*, Freiburg, 1901.

Habsburgs in the fifteenth century. W. WOSTRY, *König Albrecht II (1437–1439)*, 2 parts, Prague, 1906–1907. A. BACHMANN, *Deutsche Reichsgeschichte im Zeitalter Friedrichs III und Maximilian I*, vol. I (1461–1468), vol. II, parts I and II (1467–1486), Leipzig, 1884–1894. K. KASER, *Deutsche Geschichte zur Zeit Maximilians I, 1486–1519*, Berlin, 1912, part of no. 560 above. C. HARE, *Maximilian the dreamer, holy Roman emperor, 1459–1519*, London, 1913.

Constitutional history of Germany. O. EBERBACH, *Die deutsche Reichsritterschaft in ihrer staatsrechtlich-politischen Entwicklung von den Anfängen bis zum Jahre 1495*, Leipzig, 1913 (in Beiträge zur Kulturgeschichte des Mittelalters und der Renaissance). M. KRAMMER, *Das Kurfürstenkolleg von seinen Anfängen bis zum Zusammenschluss im Renser Kurverein des Jahres 1338*, Weimar, 1913 (in Quellen und Studien). T. LINDNER, *Die deutschen Königswahlen und die Entstehung des Kurfürstenthums*, Leipzig, 1893. O. HARNACK, *Das Kurfürstencollegium bis zur Mitte des vierzehnten*

Jahrhunderts, Giessen, 1883. F. SCHÖNHERR, *Die Lehre vom Reichsfürtenstande des Mittelalters*, Leipzig, 1914 (dissertation). H. SPANGENBERG, *Vom Lehnstaat zum Standestaat*, Munich, 1912. G. SEELIGER, *Das deutsche Hofmeisteramt im späteren Mittelalter*, Innsbruck, 1885. T. LINDNER, *Die Veme*, Münster und Paderborn, 1888; and his *Der angebliche Ursprung der Vemgerichte aus der Inquisition*, Paderborn, 1890.

Original sources. The general collections of source materials for this period are listed above, nos. **980–987**. To these should be added, *Deutsche Reichstagsakten*, herausgegeben durch die historische Kommission bei der kgl. Akademie der Wissenschaften, vols. I–XIII, Munich, 1867ff.; and *Acta imperii Angliae et Franciae ab anno 1267 ad annum 1313: Dokumente vornehmlich zur Geschichte der auswärtigen Beziehungen Deutschlands*, edited by F. KERN, Tübingen, 1911.

Extracts from the sources for the study of Switzerland may be found in *Quellenbuch zur Schweizergeschichte*, edited by W. OECHSLI, 2 vols., 1893, vol. I, in 2nd edition, 1902; and E. GAGLIARDI, *Geschichte der schweizerischen Eidgenossenschaft bis zum Abschluss der mailändischen Kriege (1516): Darstellung und Quellenberichte*, Leipzig, 1914 (Voigtländer's Quellenbücher, 67). For large collections see no. **987** above; and *Amtliche Sammlung der älteren eidgenössischen Abschiede 1245 bis 1798*, 8 vols., Luzern, Basle, and Zürich, 1839–1884.

MARSIGLIO OF PADUA, *Defensor pacis*, first printed in Basle, 1522, also in *Monarchia romani imperii*, edited by M. GOLDAST, 3 parts, Hannover and Frankfurt, 1611–1613, part II; in this same publication are the principal works of WILLIAM of OCKAM in which he assails the papacy. Portions of MARSIGLIO'S work have been edited for class use in the following source books: MARSILIUS VON PADUA, *Defensor pacis*, für Übungszwecke, edited by R. SCHOLZ, Leipzig, 1914 (Quellensammlung zur deutschen Geschichte); and MARSILIUS VON PADUA, *"Defensor pacis": erstes Buch nach dem Erstdruck für Seminarübungen*, edited by A. CARTELLIERI, Leipzig, 1913. See also *Unbekannte kirchenpolitische Streitschriften aus der Zeit Ludwigs des Bayern (1327–1354)*, 2 vols., edited by R. SCHOLZ, Rome, 1911–1914, parts of no. **899** above.

Bibliographies. The standard bibliography for this subject is DAHLMANN-WAITZ, *Quellenkunde*, pp. 413–542. The other bibliographies for German history are listed above, nos. **29–35**. For Bohemia see no. **47** above, and for Switzerland, see nos. **43–44** above. For the Tell legend there is a special bibliography by F. HEINEMANN, *Tell-Bibliographie*, Bern, 1907.

XXXII. ITALY IN THE FOURTEENTH AND FIFTEENTH CENTURIES

A. Outline

1. Italy a "geographical expression," not a political entity in this period. Importance of the papacy and the empire in Italian history. Guelphs and Ghibellines. Predominance of Italian cities which developed a culture as marvellous as the world has ever seen. In this period Italy was the center of European civilization, whereas in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries that center was in France. Italy became the preceptress of modern Europe in politics. "Europe would certainly have learned political knavery without a master, but she profited by the lessons which she received from Italy. She fervently meditated the gospel according to Machiavelli."—E. Lavisse, *General view*, 82–83.

2. The great states of Italy were the republics of Venice and Florence, the duchy of Milan, the kingdom of Naples, and the Papal States, but there were also many important minor states such as Genoa, Ferrara, Verona, Mantua, Urbino, and Rimini.

3. The Sicilian Vespers, 1282. The misrule of Charles of Anjou in Sicily. The massacre of over 4000 French men, women and children in Sicily on Easter Monday, 1282. Peter III of Aragon, who had married Constance, a daughter of Manfred, became king of Sicily. Sicily and Naples had separate rulers until 1435, when they were united under the king of Aragon, Alfonso V, who was formally recognized as Alfonso I of Aragon in 1442.

4. Rome during the "Babylonish Captivity" of the papacy. The Roman nobility, especially the Orsini and the Colonna. Cola di Rienzo and his *buona stato*, 1347. His exile and his return and execution in 1354. Cardinal Albornoz saved the Papal States for the papacy, 1353–1360.

5. The age of the despots in Italy. The peculiar political conditions which created the podestà, the captain of the people, and the condottiere, also gave rise to the tyrant. The condottiere Sir John Hawkwood. Characteristics of typical tyrants. Their rôle as patrons of scholars and artists. Ezzelino da Romano (died 1259).

6. Milan. Its struggles with the Hohenstaufen. The rise of the Visconti family. Matteo Visconti, a vicar of the emperor, usurped authority in 1311. Gian Galeazzo, 1378–1402, duke of Milan. Filippo Maria, 1412–1447, the last of the Visconti. Attempt to establish a republic, 1447. In 1450, the successful con-

dottiere, Francesco Sforza, became duke of Milan. War with Venice. His relations with France. Galeazzo Maria Sforza, 1466–1478. Ludovico il Moro called in the French king, Charles VIII, against Naples. This led finally to the expulsion of the Sforzas from Milan by Louis of Orleans.

7. The remarkable growth of Venice in the time of the crusades. Her influence and her possessions in the Levant. The coming of the Ottoman Turks. Wars with Genoa (war of Chioggia, 1378–1381), Padua and Milan. The constitution of Venice. Gradual development of an oligarchy. The doge and the Great Council. The Council of Ten in 1310. Rivalry between Venice and Milan in the fifteenth century (execution of Carmagnola, 1432). Wars with the Turks, 1463–1479, and the subsequent decline of Venice.

8. Florence. Her rise in the time of Matilda of Tuscany (died 1115). Rivalry between the feudal nobles or *grandi* (Ghibellines), and the prosperous burghers (Guelfs). The burghers organized in gilds *(arti)*. Later a distinction between greater and lesser gilds (*arti maggiore* and *arti minore*). The clash of the Buondelmonte and the Amidei families in 1215. The first commonwealth (il primo popolo) in 1251. The Captain of the People. The Parte Guelfa, 1267. The glory of the Trecento (about 1266–1378). Ordinances of Justice, 1293. Rivalry between two Guelf factions, the Whites and the Blacks (Bianchi and Neri). Exile of Dante (a White) in 1302. The tyrant, Walter of Brienne, duke of Athens, 1342–1343. The Black Death in Florence, 1348. Strife between the old Parte Guelfa and the Signory of Priors, 1378. The rising of the Ciompi, 1378. Oligarchial tendency in Florence which prepared for the rise of the rich Medici family (Giovanni de' Medici, which favored the lesser gilds. Cosimo de' Medici, 1434–1464. Piero de' Medici, 1464–1469. Lorenzo de' Medici, "The Magnificent," 1464–1492.

9. Naples. Endless dynastic rivalries in the southern kingdom which did much to retard its development. In the fourteenth century, the rivalry between Angevins and Aragonese finally made Alfonso V of Aragon king of Naples and Sicily in 1442 (he was Alfonso I of Naples). Lorenzo Valla at the court of Alfonso. Naples under the rule of Ferrante, 1458–1494. The claims of the second house of Anjou on the crown of Aragon became a prime factor in the invasion of Italy by Charles VIII in 1494.

10. The papal states in the fifteenth century. In this period the history of the papacy is largely that of a petty Italian principality. Martin V, 1417–1431, the pope elected at Constance, regained control in Rome and over the Papal States. The unsuccessful plot

of Stefano Porcaro in 1453. Nicholas V, 1447–1455, the humanist pope. Pius II, 1458–1464, the famous Aeneas Sylvius Piccolomini, who issued the bull *Execrabilis* in 1460, was another typical humanist pope. Sixtus IV, 1471–1484, was hardly more than a secular prince. His attempt to overthrow the Medici in Florence. The papacy in the hands of the Borgias with the accession of Rodrigo Borgia, pope Alexander VI, 1492.

11. Savonarola (burned 1498) in Florence, and the beginning of foreign domination in Italy, with the invasion of Charles VIII of France in 1494.

B. Special Recommendations for Reading

General introductory accounts. J. A. Symonds, *A short history of the renaissance in Italy*, New York, [1893], ch. II–VI. H. D. Sedgwick, *A short history of Italy*, chs. XVII, XX, XXII–XXIII. For the period up to the second decade of the fourteenth century, see P. Villari, *Mediaeval Italy from Charlemagne to Henry VII*, book III; and H. B. Cotterill, *Medieval Italy*, part V. A good short survey of Italy in the fifteenth century may be found in P. Villari, *Niccolò Machiavelli e i suoi tempi*, 3 vols., Florence, 1877–1882, translated by Linda Villari, *The life and times of Niccolò Machiavelli*, 2 vols., London, 1898, 1–62. H. D. Sedgwick, *Italy in the thirteenth century*, I, chs. XIII, XIV, XV, XVIII, vol. II, chs. II–IV, IX–XI. E. A. Freeman, "Ancient Greece and mediaeval Italy," in his *Historical essays*, series II, 1–52.

More advanced general accounts. Lodge, *The close of the middle ages*, chs. II, VIII, XII–XIV. Lavisse and Rambaud, *Histoire générale*, III, ch. X. J. Burckhardt, *The civilization of the renaissance in Italy*, part I. J. Loserth, *Geschichte des späteren Mittelalters*, 203–206, 250–255, 306–317.

Standard works. J. A. Symonds, *Renaissance in Italy*, vol. I, *The age of the despots*. Simonde de Sismondi, *History of the Italian republics in the middle ages*, entirely recast and supplemented by W. Boulting, London, 1905, see no. 613 above.

Cola di Rienzo. M. E. Cosenza, *Francesco Petrarca and the revolution of Cola di Rienzo: a study in the history of Rome during the middle ages*, Chicago, 1913.

Rome, the Papal States, and the Papacy. W. Miller, *Mediaeval Rome*, chs. V–VIII. P. Van Dyke, *The age of the renascence*, 90–261. Gregorovius, *History of the city of Rome*, VII, part I. H. C. Lea, "The eve of the reformation," in *Cambridge modern history*, I, ch. XIX. Bryce, *Holy Roman empire*, ch. XVI, "Rome in the middle ages."

The standard works on the humanist popes are CREIGHTON, *A history of the papacy*, III–IV; and PASTOR, *History of the popes*, III–V.

Pope Pius II (Aeneas Sylvius). W. BOULTING, *Aeneas Sylvius (Enea Silvio de' Piccolomini—Pius II) orator, man of letters, statesman, and pope*, London, 1908. CECILIA M. ADY, *Pius II (Aeneas Silvius Piccolomini) the humanist pope*, London, 1913. G. VOIGT, *Enea Silvio de' Piccolomini, als Papst Pius II, und sein Zeitalter*, 3 vols., Berlin, 1856–1863. A. WEISS, *Aeneas Sylvius Piccolomini als Papst Pius II*, Graz, 1897.

Florence. For the early history see P. VILLARI, *I primi due secoli della storia di Firenze*, Florence, 1893, translated by LINDA VILLARI, *The two first centuries of Florentine history: the republic and parties at the time of Dante*, 2 vols., London, 1894–1895. A good single volume on Florence is E. G. GARDNER, *The story of Florence*, London, 1901. A satisfactory book on the most brilliant ruler of Florence is E. ARMSTRONG, *Lorenzo de' Medici and Florence in the fifteenth century*, New York, 1896 (Heroes of the nations).

Venice. For a short general survey see the *Cambridge modern history*, I, 253–287. A standard work on Venice is W. C. HAZLITT, *The Venetian republic: its rise, its growth, and its fall, 409–1797*, 2 vols., 4th edition, London, 1915. W. R. THAYER, *A short history of Venice*, London and New York, 1905. H. BROWN, *Venice: an historical sketch of the republic*, London, 1893, 2nd, revised, edition, 1895; and his still briefer *The Venetian republic*, New York, 1902 (Temple primers). ALETHEA J. WIEL, *The navy of Venice*, London, 1910.

Savonarola. For short sketches see the *Cambridge modern history*, I, 144–189; or LEA, *Inquisition of the middle ages*, III, 209–237. The standard work is by P. VILLARI, *La storia di G. Savonarola e de' suoi tempi*, 2 vols., Florence, 1859–1861, 2nd edition, 1887–1888, translated by LINDA VILLARI, *Life and times of Girolamo Savonarola*, 2 vols., London, 1888.

Invasion of Charles VIII. *Cambridge modern history*, I, 104–117, has a good summary of this event so momentous in the history of Italy.

Original sources. For the sources on the coronation of Cola di Rienzo, see DUNCALF and KREY, *Parallel source problems*, 177–237.

For the history of Florence we have the following in English: *Selections from the first nine books of the Chroniche Fiorentine of* GIOVANNI VILLANI, edited by P. H. WICKSTEED and translated by ROSE E. SELFE, London, 1906. *The Chronicle* of DINO COMPAGNI

[about 1260–1324], translated by ELSE C. M. BENECKE and A. G. FERRERS HOWELL, London, 1906 (Temple classics). NICOLO MACHIAVELLI, *History of Florence together with The Prince*, London, Bohn Library (many editions). Another convenient translation of his *Florentine history* is in Everyman's library, London [1909]. *Lives of the early Medici as told in their correspondence*, translated and edited by JANET ROSS, Boston, 1911.

For an insight into the thought of G. SAVONAROLA, see his *Triumph of the cross*, translated from the Italian, with an introduction, by J. PROCTOR, London, 1901. M. WHITCOMB, *A literary source-book of the renaissance*, 66–92, prints various excerpts. AENEAS SYLVIUS (PIUS II), "How I became pope," translated in *Nineteenth century*, XLI (1897), 538–546, is extracted from this pope's autobiographical commentaries.

Maps. SHEPHERD, *Atlas*, 90, 96.

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General books. The general books on Italy are listed above, nos. **599–621.** See also the literature on the Normans in Sicily and southern Italy, outline XX above, on the Lombard communes, outline XXII above, and on Italian cities and commerce in Italy, outline XXVI above.

General surveys. C. CIPOLLA, *Storia delle signorie italiane dal 1313 al 1530*, Milan, 1881, vol. IV of no. **599** above. P. ORSI, *Signorie e principati (1300–1530)*, Milan, 1901. E. SALZER, *Über die Anfänge der Signorie in Oberitalien*, Berlin, 1900. A. FRANCHETTI, *I primordi delle signorie e delle compagnie di ventura: la vita italiana nel Trecento*, Milan, 1892. G. ARIAS, *Il sistema della constituzione economica e sociale italiana nell' età dei comuni*, Turin, 1905. G. B. FANUCCI, *Storia dei tre celebri popoli marittimi dell' Italia, veneziani, genovesi e pisani*, 4 vols., Livorno, 1853–1855. E. MELILLO, *Le poste italiane nel medio evo, alta e media Italia (476–1600)*, Rome, 1904.

Cola di Rienzo and Rome. E. RODOCANACHI, *Cola di Rienzo: histoire de Rome de 1342 à 1354*, Paris, 1888; see also his "L'organisation municipale de Rome au XIV^e^ siècle," in *Le moyen âge*, VIII (1895), 73–82. F. KÜHN, *Die Entwicklung der Bündnispläne Cola di Rienzos im Jahre 1347*, Berlin, 1905 (dissertation). F. HERMANNI, *Die Stadt Rom im 15 und 16 Jahrhundert*, Leipzig, 1911. H. J. WURM, *Kardinal Albornoz, der zweite Begründer des Kirchenstaates*, Paderborn, 1892. A. EITEL, *Der Kirchenstaat unter Klemens V*, Berlin, 1907 (Abhandlungen zur mittleren und neueren Geschichte, 1).

Condottieri. W. BLOCK, *Die Condottieri: Studien über die sogenannten unblutigen Shlachten*, Berlin, 1913. A. SEMERAN, *Die Condottieri*, Jena, 1909. F. H. JACKSON, *True stories of the condottieri*, London, 1904 (for Sir John Hawkwood see ch. IV). G. TEMPLE-LEADER, and G. MARCOTTI, *Giovanni Acuto (Sir John Hawkwood): storia d'un condottiere*, Florence, 1889.

Milan. CECILIA M. ADY, *A history of Milan under the Sforza*, London, 1907. ELLA NOYES, *The story of Milan*, London, 1908 (Mediaeval towns). W. P. URQUHART, *Life and times of Francesco Sforza, duke of Milan*, 2 vols., Edinburgh and London, 1852. JULIA CARTWRIGHT, *Beatrice d'Este, Duchess of Milan, 1475–1497: a study of the renaissance*, London, 1912.

Among the Italian works G. GIULINI, *Memorie spettanti alla storia di Milano*, 12 vols., Milan, 1760–1775, new edition, 7 vols., 1854–1857, is still the most important. F. CUSANI, *Storia di Milano*, 8 vols., Milan, 1862–1884. M. FORMENTINI, *Il ducato di Milano*, Milan, 1877. P. VERRI, *Storia di Milano*, Florence, 1851ff.

Venice. P. G. MOLMENTI, *La storia di Venezia nella vita privata*, 3rd edition, 3 vols., Bergamo, 1903–1908, translated by H. F. BROWN, *Venice: its individual growth from the earliest beginnings to the fall of the republic*, 6 vols., London and Chicago, 1906–1908. C. DIEHL, *Une république patricienne: Venise*, Paris, 1915. F. C. HODGSON, *The early history of Venice from the foundation to the conquest of Constantinople*, London, 1901; and his *Venice in the 13th and 14th centuries (1204–1400)*, London, 1910. F. M. CRAWFORD, *Salve Venetia: gleanings from Venetian history*, 2 vols., New York, 1906. J. K. FOTHERINGHAM, *Marco Sanudo, conqueror of the Archipelago*, Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1915. T. OKEY, *Venice and its story*, revised edition, New York, 1910. H. F. BROWN, *Studies in the history of Venice*, 2 vols., New York, 1907. H. KRETSCHMAYR, *Geschichte von Venedig*, vol. 1 (to 1204), Gotha, 1905, part 35 of no. 332 above. H. v. ZWIEDINECK-SÜDENHORST, *Venedig als Weltmacht und Weltstadt*, Leipzig, 1899. E. MUSATTI, *La storia politica di Venezia secondo le ultimi ricerche*, Padua, 1897. Mrs. MARGARET OLIPHANT, *Makers of Venice: doges, conquerors, painters, and men of letters*, London, 1889. Mrs. AUBREY RICHARDSON, *The doges of Venice*, London [1914]. G. B. MCCLELLAN, *The oligarchy of Venice: an essay*, Boston, 1904. A. BATTISTELLA, *La repubblica di Venezia*, Bologna, 1897.

Of the old monumental works the following still have value. S. ROMANIN, *Storia documentata di Venezia*, 10 vols., Venice, 1853–1861. P. DARU, *Histoire de la république de Venise*, 9 vols., 4th edition, Paris, 1853.

Following is a selection of some special studies: W. LENEL, *Die Entstehung der Vorherrschaft Venedigs an der Adria*, Strasburg, 1897. B. SCHMEIDLER, *Der Dux und die commune Venetiarum von 1141–1229*, Berlin, 1902. P. M. PERRET, *Histoire des relations de France avec Venise du XIIIe siècle à Charles VIII*, 2 vols., Paris, 1896. M. CLAAR, *Die Entwickelung der venetianischen Verfassung von der Einsetzung bis zur Schliessung des grossen Rats (1172–1297)*, Munich, 1895 (Historische Abhandlungen). A. SORESINA, *Il Banco Giro di Venezia*, Venice, 1889. E. LATTES, *La libertà delle banche a Venezia dal secolo XIII a XVII*, Milan, 1869. A. BASCHET, *Les archives de Venise: Histoire de la chancellerie secrète*, Paris, 1870. W. ANDREAS, *Die Venezianischen Relazionen und ihr Verhältnis zu Kultur der Renaissance*, Leipzig, 1908 (dissertation).

Genoa. M. G. CANALE, *Nuova istoria della repubblica di Genova*, vols. I–IV (to 1528), Florence, 1858–1864. C. VARESE, *Storia della repubblica di Genova*, 7 vols., Genua, 1835–1837. F. DONOWER, *Storia di Genova*, Genua, 1890.

J. T. BENT, *Genoa: how the republic rose and fell*, London, 1881. R. W. CARDEN, *The city of Genoa*, London, 1908, has an historical sketch of the city. G. CARO, *Studien zur Geschichte von Genua 1190–1257*, Strasburg, 1891; and his *Genua und die Mächte am Mittelmeer, 1257–1311*, 2 vols., Halle, 1895–1899. E. JARRY, *Les origines de la domination française à Gênes (1392–1402)*, Paris, 1896. E. HEYCK, *Genua und seine Marine im Zeitalter der Kreuzzüge*, Innsbruck, 1886.

Florence. The most important book is by R. DAVIDSOHN, *Geschichte von Florenz*, vol. I–III [to about 1330], Berlin, 1896–1912, translated into Italian, with many fine illustrations, *Storia di Firenze*, vols. I–II, Florence, 1907–1909 (see especially the plan of Florence in the thirteenth century, near the end of vol. II, which is also in vol. I of the original German edition). This great work is supplemented by his *Forschungen zur Geschichte von Florenz*, vols. I–IV, Berlin, 1896–1908; and "Florenz zur Zeit Dantes," in *Deutsche Rundschau*, July, 1912. In French the best work is by F. T. PERRENS, *Histoire de Florence jusqu'à la domination des Médicis*, 6 vols., Paris, 1877–1884; continued by his *Histoire de Florence depuis la domination des Médicis jusqu'à la chute de la république, 1434–1531*, 2 vols., Paris, 1888, translated by HANNAH LYNCH, *The history of Florence under the domination of Cosimo, Piero, Lorenzo di Medicis, 1434–1492*, London, 1892. G. CAPPONI, *Storia della repubblica di Firenze*, 3 vols., Florence, 1875–1888. G. THOMAS, *Les révolutions politiques de Florence 1177–1530*, Paris, 1887. T. A. TROLLOPE, *History of the commonwealth of Florence.*

4 vols., London, 1865. H. E. NAPIER, *Florentine history*, 6 vols., London, 1846–1847.

Shorter books. F. A. HYETT, *Florence: her history and art to the fall of the republic*, London and New York, 1903. J. W. BROWN, *The builders of Florence*, New York, 1907; and his *Florence, past and present*, New York, 1911. C. E. YRIARTE, *Florence*, 3rd edition, Paris, 1881, translated by C. B. PITMAN, *Florence: its history, the Medici, the humanists, letters, arts*, New York, 1882, new edition, Philadelphia, 1897. Mrs. MARGARET OLIPHANT, *Makers of Florence: Dante, Giotto, Savonarola and their city*, 3rd edition, London, 1889. BELLA DUFFY, *The Tuscan republics: (Florence, Siena, Pisa, Lucca) with Genoa*, London, 1892.

Special studies. E. STALEY, *The guilds of Florence*, London, 1906. A. DOREN, *Entwickelung und Organisation der Florentiner Zünfte im 13 und 14 Jahrhundert*, Leipzig, 1897. F. SMITH, *Beiträge zur florentinischen Verfassungs- und Heeresgeschichte*, Leipzig, 1914. R. GAGGESE, *Firenze dalla decadenza di Roma al risorgimento d'Italia*, Florence, 1913, is on the fourteenth century. G. SALVEMINI, *La dignità cavelleresca nel comune di Firenze*, Florence, 1896; and his, *Magnati e popolani in Firenze dal 1280 al 1295*, Florence, 1899. C. FALLETTI-FOSSATI, *Il tumulto dei Ciompi*, Florence, 1882.

The Medici. G. F. YOUNG, *The Medici*, London, 1909. W. H. O. SMEATON, *The Medici and the Italian renaissance*, New York, 1901 (The world's epoch-makers, XII). E. HEYCK, *Florenz und die Mediceer*, Bielefeld and Leipzig, 1897 (Monographien zur Weltgeschichte). A. CASTELNAU, *Les Médicis*, 2 vols., Paris, 1879. K. DOROTHEA EWART, (Mrs. H. M. VERNON), *Cosimo de' Medici*, New York, 1899 (Foreign statesmen). F. KNAPP, *Piero di Cosimo*, Halle, 1899.

Lorenzo the Magnificent. E. L. S. HORSBURGH, *Lorenzo the Magnificent and Florence in her golden age*, London, 1908. W. ROSCOE, *Life of Lorenzo de' Medici*, 2 vols., Liverpool, 1795, 10th edition, London, 1851, new edition by HAZLITT, 2 vols., London, 1890. A. v. REUMONT, *Lorenzo de'Medici und seine Zeit*, 2 vols., 2nd, revised, edition, Leipzig, 1883, translated by R. HARRISON, *Lorenzo the Magnificent*, 1883. B. BUSER, *Lorenzo de Medici als italianischer Staatsmann*, Leipzig, 1879; and his *Die Beziehungen der Mediceer zu Frankreich 1434–1494*, Leipzig, 1879.

Savonarola. E. L. S. HORSBURGH, *Girolamo Savonarola*, London, 1901, 4th edition, revised and enlarged [1911]. H. LUCAS, *Fra Girolamo Savonarola: a biographical study based on contemporary documents*, London, 1899, 2nd edition, 1906. G. MCHARDY, *Savonarola*, New York, 1901 (The world's epoch-makers, XIV). J

SCHNITZER, *Quellen und Forschungen zur Geschichte Savonarolas*, vols. I–IV, Munich and Leipzig, 1902–1910. J. A. GOBINEAU, *The renaissance: Savonarola, Cesare Borgia, Julius II, Leo X, Michael Angelo*, English edition by O. LEVY, London, 1913. F. T. PERRENS, *Jérome Savonarole, sa vie, ses prédications, ses écrits*, 2 vols., Paris, 1856. L. v. RANKE, *Savonarola und die florentinische Republik gegen Ende des 15 Jahrhunderts*, Leipzig, 1877 (Collected works, 40–41).

Sicilian Vespers. M. AMARI, *La guerre del Vespro Siciliano*, 3 vols., 9th edition, Milan, 1886, translated by the Earl of ELLESMERE, *History of the war of the Sicilian Vespers*, 3 vols., London, 1850; see also his *Altre narrazioni del Vespro Siciliano*, Milan, 1887; and his *Racconte popolare del Vespro Siciliano*, Rome, 1882. O. CARTELLIERI, *Peter von Aragon und die Sizilianische Vesper*, Heidelberg, 1904 (in Heidelberger Abhandlungen zur mittleren und neueren Geschichte, 7).

Naples and Sicily. The following old works are still valuable: P. GIANNONE, *Storia civile del regno di Napoli*, Naples, 1723, new edition, 5 vols., Milan, 1844–1847, translated in part by J. OGILVIE, *Civil history of the kingdom of Naples*, 2 vols., London, 1729–1731. A. DI MEO, *Annali critico-diplomatichi del regno di Napoli*, 13 vols., Naples, 1785–1819. E. DI BLASI, *Storia civile del regno di Sicilia*, 16 vols., Palermo, 1811, new edition, 22 vols., 1830; see also his *Storia del regno di Sicilia*, 3 vols., Palermo, 1844–1847. SAN FILIPPO, *Compendio della storia di Sicilia*, 7th edition, Palermo, 1859.

Special works. E. JORDAN, *Les origines de la domination Angevine en Italie*, Paris, 1909. H. E. ROHDE, *Der Kampf um Sizilien in den Jahren 1291–1302*, vol. I, Berlin, 1913 (in Abhandlungen zur mittleren und neueren Geschichte, 42). D. SCARPETTA, *Giovanna I di Napoli*, Naples, 1903. W. ST. CLAIR BADDELEY, *Queen Johana I of Naples, Sicily, and Jerusalem*, London, 1892; and his *Robert the Wise and his heirs 1278–1352*, London, 1897. A. D. MESSER, *Le codice aragonese, étude générale, publication du manuscrit de Paris: contribution à l'histoire des Aragonais de Naples*, Paris, 1912 (in Bibliothèque du XV^e^ siècle, vol. XVII). M. SCHIPA, *Contese sociali napoletane nel medio evo*, Naples, 1908. P. DURRIEU, *Les archives angevines de Naples: étude sur les registres du roi Charles I^er^ (1265–1285)*, 2 vols., Paris, 1886–1887, parts 46, 51 of no. 887 above. L. CADIER, *Essai sur l'administration du royaume de Naples sous Charles I^er^ et Charles II d'Anjou*, Paris, 1891, part 59 of no. 887 above. W. ISRAEL, *König Robert von Neapel und Kaiser Heinrich VII*, Hersfeld, 1903. D. J. AMETLLER Y VINYAS, *Alfonso V de Aragon en Italia y la crisis religiosa del siglo 15*, vol. I, Gerona, 1903. F. SCADUTO, *Stato e chiesa nelle due Sicilie dai Normanni ai tempi nostri*,

Palermo, 1886. S. V. BOZZO, *Note storiche siciliane del secolo XIV*, Palermo, 1882.

Other states of Italy. E. G. GARDNER, *The story of Siena and San Gemignano*, London, 1902. E. HUTTON, *Siena and southern Tuscany*, New York, 1910. ELLA NOYES, *The story of Ferrara*, London, 1904 (Mediaeval towns). M. ALLEN, *A history of Verona*, New York, 1910. ALETHEA WIEL, *The story of Verona*, 2nd edition, London, 1904. C. CIPOLLO, *Compendio di storia politica di Verona*, 1900. Mrs. JANET A. ROSS and NELLY BRICHSEN, *The story of Pisa*, London, 1909 (Mediaeval towns). KATHERINE JAMES, *The city of contrasts: a story of old Perugia*, London, 1915. MARGARET SYMONDS and LINA D. GORDON, *The story of Perugia*, London, 1900 (Mediaeval towns). VICINI, *I podestà di Modena*, part I (1156–1336), Rome, 1914. E. HUTTON, *Sigismundo Pandolfo Malatesta, lord of Rimini: a story of a XV century Italian despot*, New York, 1906. JULIA CARTWRIGHT, *Isabella D'Este, Marchioness of Mantua, 1474–1539*, New York, 1903. H. SPANGENBERG, *Can Grande della Scala*, 2 vols., Berlin, 1892–1895. J. DENNISTOUN, *Memoirs of the dukes of Urbino, illustrating the arms, arts, and literature of Italy, 1440–1630*, 3 vols., London, 1853–1854, new edition, 1909. ALETHEA WIEL, *The romance of the house of Savoy 1003–1519*, 2 vols., New York, 1898.

Corsica. A. AMBROSI, *Histoire des Corses et de leur civilisation*, Bastia, 1914. L. CAIRD, *The history of Corsica*, London, 1899.

Original sources. The large collections of sources for Italian history are listed above, nos. **988–994** above; see also vols. XII–XIV of no. **986** above. For Italy, the special collections for individual states are especially important, but no attempt can be made here to list even the most important ones. For details, see the special bibliographies listed below.

The letters of COLA DI RIENZO have been edited and studied anew by K. and P. PIUR, *Briefwechsel des Cola di Rienzo*, Berlin, 1912 (vol. II of no. **750** above). *Epistolario di Cola di Rienzo*, edited by A. GABRIELLI, Rome, 1890, is an older collection.

For Venice, special mention may be made of *Calendar of State Papers: Venetian*, vol. I, 1202–1607, edited by R. BROWN, London, 1864.

For SAVONAROLA, see *Scelta di prediche e scritta di Fra Girolamo Savonarola con nuovi documenti intorno alla sua vita*, edited by P. VILLARI and E. CASANOVA, Florence, 1898.

Bibliographies. The general bibliographies for Italy are listed above, nos. **37–41**. See also no. **19** above, 447–449 (a very convenient summary of the most essential source material), and 479–503.

Special bibliographies. PEDONE LAURIEL, *Bibliografia del 6 centenario del Vespro Siciliano*, Palermo, 1882; see also C. CIPOLLA, "Les Vêpres Siciliennes: compte-rendu des principales publications historiques parues à propos du septième centenaire célébré à Palerme le 31 mars 1882," in *Revue historique*, XXI (1883), 135–147. G. SCRANZO, *Bibliografia Veneziana*, Venice, 1885 (see also the bibliography for ch. VIII of the *Cambridge modern history*, I). L. S. OLSCHKI, *Bibliotheca Savonaroliana*, Florence and Venice, about 1902 (see also the bibliography for ch. V of the *Cambridge modern history*, I). L. FONTANA, *Bibliografia degli statuti dei comuni dell' Italia superiore*, 3 vols., Turin, 1907.

XXXIII. THE REMARKABLE INTEREST IN ANCIENT CLASSICAL LITERATURE, ART, AND ARCHAEOLOGY IN ITALY DURING THE FOURTEENTH AND FIFTEENTH CENTURIES

A. OUTLINE

1. The meaning of "Renaissance" and "Revival of learning." As general historical terms these expressions are rapidly losing the definiteness and color which was given to them by such writers as Burckhardt, Voigt, and Symonds, however useful they may still be in the history of certain branches of literature and art in western Europe. Humanism. *Litterae humaniores*. The "discovery of man" and the "discovery of the world." Controversies between "ancients and moderns." "Battles of books."

2. Retrospect: interest in these subjects during the twelfth and thirteenth centuries. For details see outline XVIII in part III below.

3. Dante, 1265–1321, and the ancient world. For details concerning the scholarship of Dante see outline XXVIII in part III below.

4. The place of Petrarch, 1304–1376, in the history of culture. The growth of his interest in the Latin classics. Means by which he interested others in them. His slight knowledge of Greek. His search for manuscripts. The retreat at Vaucluse. His popularity as a poet. His famous *Letters* and other writings, especially the *Africa*. The influence of the Latin revival on Italian.

5. The feverish search in medieval libraries for the manuscripts of ancient classical belles lettres. Poggio Bracciolini, 1380–1459, at the council of Constance and his subsequent travels. The col-

lection of Greek books by Aurispa (died 1459) and Filelfo, 1398–1481.

6. Interest in ancient classical epigraphy and archaeology. Ciriaco, about 1391–1450, "the Schliemann of his time." Flavio Biondo, 1388–1463, and his four great works on the antiquities and history of Rome and Italy.

7. Interest in Greek. The share of Petrarch and Boccaccio, 1313–1375, in creating this interest. Greek scholars from Constantinople in Italy. Manuel Chrysoloras (about 1350–1415) in Florence 1396. Gemistos Plethon, about 1356–1450, and Bessarion, 1395 or 1403–1472, at the council of Ferrara-Florence, 1438–1439. Theodorus Gaza, about 1400–1475. Controversies over the merits of Plato and Aristotle. The fall of Constantinople in 1453 did little or nothing to encourage the study of Greek in the west.

8. Florence was the center of humanism. The monastery of Santo Spirito and Luigi de' Marsigli (died 1394). Coluccio Salutati, 1330–1406. The Medici as patrons of literature. Niccolo de' Niccoli, 1363–1437, Leonardo Bruni, 1369–1444, in the time of Cosimo de' Medici. The brilliant circle of Lorenzo de' Medici. The Platonic Academy of Florence. Ficino, 1433–1499. Pico della Mirandola, 1463–1494. Politian, 1454–1494.

9. Humanism in Rome. Its effect upon the papacy and on the Christian religion. Popularity of pagan ideas and rites. The humanist popes Nicolas V, 1447–1455, and Pius II (Eneas Sylvius), 1458–1464. The Academy of Rome and Pomponius Laetus, 1425–1498.

10. The Academy of Naples in the time of Alfonso of Aragon, 1442–1458. Laurentius Valla, 1407–1457, and his criticism of the Donation of Constantine. His famous book *On the elegancies of Latin language*. Beccadelli, 1394–1471. Pontano, 1426–1503. Sannazaro, 1458–1530.

11. Aldus Manutius, 1449–1515, the printer of Greek texts in Venice. In 1500 he founded the New Academy of Hellenists in Venice.

12. Other centers of humanism. The Visconti and Sforza as patrons of letters in Milan. Cangrande della Scala of Verona. Federigo, count of Montefeltro, and his famous library at Urbino. The humanism of the fierce Sigismondo Malatesta of Rimini.

13. In the schools, humanism brought about a revolution the effects of which have lasted down to this day. Vittorino da Feltre, 1378–1446, in Mantua. Guarino da Verona, 1370–1460, in Ferrara. The *De ordine docendi et studendi* (1459) of his son, Battista Guarino. Comparative lack of interest in humanism in universities.

14. Renaissance art contrasted with medieval art. The wonderful development of painting which culminated in the first half of the sixteenth century. Important painters: Cimabue, 1240–about 1302; Giotto, 1276–1336; Masaccio, 1402–1429; Fra Angelico, 1387–1455; Filippo Lippi, 1406–1469; Botticelli, 1447–1510; Ghirlandajo, 1449–1498; Leonardo da Vinci, 1452–1519; Raphael, 1483–1520; Titian, 1477–1576; Correggio, 1494–1534. Important architects: Brunelleschi, 1377–1446; Leo Battista Alberti, 1404–1472; Bramante, about 1444–1514. Important sculptors: Orcagna, 1308–1368, Ghiberti, 1378–1455; Donatello, 1386–1466; Luca della Robbia, 1400–1482. The genius of Michael Angelo Buonarroti, 1475–1564.

15. The invention of printing, about 1450. The Gutenberg controversy.

16. The spread and influence of the Italian culture of this period.

B. SPECIAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR READING

Brief general surveys. ADAMS, *Civilization*, ch. XV. LODGE, *The close of the middle ages*, ch. XXII.

Longer accounts. P. VILLARI, *The life and times of Niccolò Machiavelli*, I, 63–167. *Cambridge modern history*, I, chs. XVI–XVII. LAVISSE and RAMBAUD, *Histoire générale*, III, ch. XI. J. LOSERTH, *Geschichte des späteren Mittelalters*, 613–643.

Short books on the subject. J. A. SYMONDS, *A short history of the renaissance*, abridged by A. PEARSON, New York, 1894. J. E. SANDYS, *Harvard lectures on the revival of learning*, Cambridge, 1905. EDITH SICHEL, *The renaissance*, New York, 1914 (Home university library). W. H. HUDSON, *The story of the renaissance*, New York, 1912. J. B. OLDHAM, *The renaissance*, New York, 1912 (Temple primers). Mrs. LILIAN F. FIELD, *An introduction to the study of the renaissance*, London, 1898. P. SCHAFF, *The renaissance*, New York, 1891 (also in vol. III of the *Papers of the American society of church history*) is scarcely more than a syllabus with copious references. J. E. SANDYS, *A history of classical scholarship*, II, is a handy volume for reference.

Meaning of "Renaissance." The easiest introduction to the present controversy concerning the "Renaissance" may be got by reading in juxtaposition two articles in the *Encyclopaedia Britannica*, "Renaissance" by J. A. SYMONDS, and "Middle ages" by Professor SHOTWELL of Columbia university.

Standard works. The popular conceptions of "Renaissance" and "Revival of Learning" were stereotyped chiefly by the following books. J. BURCKHARDT, *Die Kultur der Renaissance in Italien*,

1860, 10th edition, 2 vols., Leipzig, 1908, translated by S. G. C. MIDDLEMORE, *The civilization of the renaissance in Italy*, 2 vols., London, 1878, 7th edition in one volume, 1914. G. VOIGT, *Die Wiederbelebung des classischen Alterthums*, Berlin, 1859, 3rd edition, edited by M. LEHNERDT, 2 vols., 1893. J. A. SYMONDS, *The renaissance in Italy*, 5 parts in 7 vols., London, 1875–1881, new edition, 1897–1898, vol. I, *The age of the despots;* vol. II, *The revival of learning;* vol. III, *The fine arts;* vols. IV and V, *Italian literature;* vols. VI and VII, *The catholic reaction*. L. GEIGER, *Renaissance und Humanismus in Italien und Deutschland*, Berlin, 1882, part of no. 313 above.

Dante. TAYLOR, *The mediaeval mind*, II, ch. XLIV. For details about the literature on Dante see outline XXVIII of part III below.

Petrarch. The best introduction is J. H. ROBINSON and H. W. ROLFE, *Petrarch: the first modern scholar and man of letters*, New York, 1898, new edition, 1914, which contains many of his letters in good English translation. Following are some other biographies in English: H. C. HOLLWAY-CALTHROP, *Petrarch: his life and times*, New York, 1907. Mrs. MAUD F. JERROLD, *Francesco Petrarca: poet and humanist*, New York, 1909. MAY A. WARD, *Petrarch: a sketch of his life and works*, Boston, 1891. H. REEVE, *Petrarch*, London, 1878.

P. DE NOLHAC, *Petrarch and the ancient world*, Boston, 1908, is a translation of an interesting portion of his French work listed below. G. B. ADAMS, "Petrarch and the beginning of modern science," in *Yale review*, I (1892), 146–161, is a study of Petrarch's historical criticism; the author, indeed, thinks it possible that the renaissance acted as a check on the natural sciences.

Greek. LOUISE R. LOOMIS, "The Greek renaissance in Italy," in *American historical review*, XIII (1908), 246–258.

Humanism and education. For a general survey see F. P. GRAVES, *A history of education during the middle ages and the transition to modern times*, 106–139. W. H. WOODWARD, *Vittorino da Feltre and other humanist educators*, Cambridge, 1897; and his *Studies in education during the age of the renaissance, 1400–1600*, Cambridge, 1907. R. C. JEBB, *Humanism in education*, London and New York, 1899 (Romanes lectures, 1899).

Renaissance art. Readers who have not specialized in the art of this period will find the following guides good introductions to the subject: S. REINACH, *Apollo*, translated from the French, new edition, New York, 1914; and J. BURCKHARDT, *Der Cicerone: eine Einleitung zum Genuss der Kunstwerke Italiens*, 9th edition in two

parts in 4 volumes., Leipzig, 1904, translated by Mrs. A. H. CLOUGH, *The cicerone: or, Art guide to painting in Italy*, London, 1873, new and illustrated impression, New York, 1908.

The following college text-books are useful: J. C. VAN DYKE, *A text-book of the history of painting*, New York, 1899, new, revised, edition, 1915. A. D. F. HAMLIN, *A text-book of the history of architecture*, 8th edition, New York, 1911. A. MARQUAND and A. L. FROTHINGHAM, *A text-book of the history of sculpture*, New York, 1896.

J. A. SYMONDS, *The fine arts* (vol. III of his *Renaissance in Italy*) gives details.

Invention of printing. J. H. HESSELS, *The Gutenberg fiction*, London, 1912; and his article "Typography" in the *Encyclopaedia Britannica*, furnish a good bibliography. Excellent work in this field was done by the American scholar T. L. DE VINNE, *Invention of printing*, 2nd edition, New York, 1878; and his *Notable printers of Italy during the fifteenth century*, New York, 1910.

Original sources. M. WHITCOMB, *A literary source book of the renaissance*, 2nd edition, Philadelphia, 1903, part I, *The Italian renaissance*, translates many extracts. See also ROBINSON, *Readings*, I, ch. XXII; and OGG, *Source book*, ch. XXVI.

Petrarch's letters to classical authors, translated from the Latin by M. E. COSENZA, Chicago, 1910. *Petrarch's secret: or the soul's conflict with passion*, translated from the Latin by W. H. DRAPER, London, 1911. *The Triumph of Francesco Petrarch, Florentine poet laureate*, translated by H. BOYD, London, 1906. *Some love songs of Petrarch*, translated and annotated, with a biographical introduction, by W. D. FOULKE, Oxford University Press, 1915. BOCCACCIO'S *Decameron*.

G. VASARI (1512–1574), *Vite de' più eccellenti pittori, scultori e architettori*, new edition with a summary of the latest researches in the notes, by K. FREY, vol. I, Munich, 1911ff., translated by Mrs. J. FOSTER, *Lives of seventy of the most eminent painters, sculptors and architects*, complete in 5 vols., London, 1850–1864 (Bohn library); another edition of selected lives, by E. W. BLASHFIELD and A. A. HOPKINS, 4 vols., New York, 1902 (Temple classics); the first volume of a new English translation by G. DE VERE, to be complete in 10 vols., was published by the Medici society of London in 1911, in commemoration of Vasari's fourth centenary. VITRUVIUS (first century A.D.), *The ten books on architecture*, translated by the late M. H. MORGAN, Harvard University Press, 1914, had such a profound influence on the artists of the renaissance period that it must be read in order to understand their art. BALDASSARE

CASTIGLIONE, *The book of the courtier*, translated by L. E. OPDYCKE, New York, 1903. *The life of Benvenuto Cellini*, written by himself, translated out of the Italian by J. A. SYMONDS, 5th edition, New York, 1911; a new version by R. H. H. CUST, 2 vols., London, 1910.

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General books. Among the books on the history of civilization listed above, see especially nos. **729–750.** Of the general histories of literature, see especially nos. **782–786, 808–811** above. **Many** of the histories of education, nos. **836–843** above, are useful. **See** also the literature mentioned under the preceding outline on **Italy**, especially that on Florence.

Meaning of renaissance. At least as early as 1885, with the appearance of the first edition of H. THODE, *Franz von Assisi und die Anfänge der Kunst der Renaissance in Italien*, 2nd edition, revised, Berlin, 1904, a reaction set in against the conception of the renaissance which was popularized especially by BURKHARDT. The controversy may be pursued in the following booklets and articles, arranged according to date of publication: C. NEUMANN, "Byzantinische Kultur and Renaissancekultur," in *Historische Zeitschrift*, XCI (1903), 215–232 (translated in part by MUNRO and SELLERY, *Medieval civilization*, enlarged edition, 524–546). W. GOETZ, "Mittelalter und Renaissance," *ibid.*, XCVIII (1907), 30–54. K. BRANDI, *Das Werden des Renaissance*, Göttingen, 1908. K. BURDACH, "Sinn und Ursprung der Worte 'Renaissance' und 'Reformation,'" in *Sitzungsberichte der Berliner Akademie der Wissenschaften*, 1910, I, 595ff. P. WERNLE, *Renaissance und Reformation: sechs Vorträge*, Tübingen, 1912. A. PHILIPPI, *Der Begriff der Renaissance: Daten zu seiner Geschichte*, Leipzig, 1912. E. HEYFELDER, "Die Ausdrücke 'Renaissance' und 'Humanismus,'" in *Deutsche Literaturzeitung*, September 6, 1913. E. TROELTSCH, "Renaissance und Reformation," in *Historische Zeitschrift*, CX (1913), 519–556. K. BURDACH, "Über den Ursprung des Humanismus," in *Deutsche Rundschau*, CLVIII, CLIX, 1914. K. FRANCKE, *Personality in German literature before Luther*, Harvard University Press, 1916. See also the *Literaturbericht* of P. FUNK, "Geschichte der geistigen Kultur: Renaissance," in *Archiv für Kulturgeschichte*, XI, (1913–1914), 377–388.

Renaissance in general. J. D. SYMON and S. L. BENSUSAN, *The renaissance and its makers*, London, 1913, say in their preface, "this book is intended for the general reader." J. P. HERVÁS, *Historia del renacimiento*, 2 vols., Barcelona, 1916. P. VAN DYKE, *Renascence portraits*, New York, 1905. C. HARE, *Courts and camps of the Italian renaissance: being a mirror of the life and times of the ideal gentle-*

man, Count Baldassare Castiglione, London, 1908. R. SAITSCHICK, *Menschen und Kunst der italienischen Renaissance,* 2 vols., Berlin, 1903–1904. E. RODOCANACHI, *La femme italienne à l'époque de la renaissance,* Paris, 1907. G. MAZZONI, *Vita italiana nel rinascimento,* Milan, 1899. H. JANITSCHEK, *Die Gesellschaft der Renaissance in Italien und die Kunst: vier Vorträge,* Stuttgart, 1879. E. GEBHART, *Les origines de la renaissance en Italie,* Paris, 1879; and his *La renaissance italienne et la philosophie de l'histoire,* Paris, 1887. O. SCHÜTZ, *Der grosse Mensch der Renaissance,* Bonn, 1906 (dissertation, Jena). H. HETTNER, *Geschichte der Renaissance: Italienische Studien,* Braunschweig, 1879. W. DILTHEY, "Über die Auffassung und Analyse des Menschen im 15 und 16 Jahrhundert," in *Archiv für Geschichte der Philosophie,* IV (1891), 604–651, V (1892), 337–400 (also reprinted in his *Gesammelte Schriften,* I, Leipzig, 1913). E. GOTHEIN, "Die Weltanschauung der Renaissance," *Jahrbuch des freien deutschen Hochstifts in Frankfurt,* 1904, 95–131.

Renaissance and Reformation. E. M. HULME, *The renaissance, the protestant revolution, and the catholic reformation in continental Europe,* New York, 1914. JEAN M. STONE, *Reformation and renaissance (circa 1377–1610),* London, 1904. MARY A. HOLLINGS, *Europe in renaissance and reformation, 1453–1659,* London, 1909.

Humanism in general. R. SABBADINI, *Le scoperte dei codici latini e greci ne' secoli XIV e XV,* Florence, 1905; and his *Storia del ciceronianismo e di altre questione letterarie nell' eta della rinascenza,* Turin, 1885. G. FIORETTO, *Gli umanisti o lo studio del latino e del greco nel seculo XV in Italia,* Verona, 1881. A. ROERSCH, *L'humanisme belge à l'époque de la renaissance,* Brussels, 1910. T. ZIELINSKI, *Die Antike und wir,* translated into German by E. SCHÖLER, 2nd edition, Leipzig, 1909; and his *Cicero im Wandel der Jahrhunderte,* 3rd edition, Leipzig, 1912.

Renaissance literature in general. J. E. SPINGARN, *A history of literary criticism in the renaissance,* New York, 1899, 2nd edition, revised, 1908. G. KÖRTING, *Die Anfänge der Renaissanceliteratur* (vol. III of his *Geschichte der Literatur Italiens*), Leipzig, 1884. M. MONNIER, *La renaissance de Dante à Luther,* Paris, 1884; and his *Le quattrocento: essai sur l'histoire littéraire du XV^e siècle italien,* new edition, Paris, 1908. W. EVERETT, *Italian poets since Dante,* New York, 1904. O. KUHNS, *The great poets of Italy,* Boston, 1904. FLORENCE TRAIL, *A history of Italian literature,* 2 vols., New York, 1903–1904. F. J. SNELL, *The fourteenth century,* New York, 1899 (Periods of European literature). G. G. SMITH, *The transition period* [15th and 16th centuries], New York, 1900 (Periods of European literature). *The renaissance library,* New York, Dutton.

Petrarch. P. DE NOLHAC, *Pétrarque et l'humanisme*, Paris, 1892, new edition, revised, 2 vols., 1907. G. KÖRTING, *Petrarca's Leben und Werke* (vol. I of *Geschichte der Literatur Italiens im Zeitalter der Renaissance*), Leipzig, 1878. G. BOLOGNA, *Note e studi sul Petrarca*, Berlin, 1913 (Die Religion der Klassiker, 3). G. FINZI, *Petrarca*, Florence, 1900. A. MÉZIÈRES, *Pétrarque: étude d'après de nouveaux documents*, Paris, 1868, new edition, 1895. A. GRAF, "Petrarchismo ed antipetrarchismo," pp. 3–86 in his *Attraverso il cinquecento*, Turin, 1888. B. ZUMBINI, *Studi sul Petrarca*, Naples, 1878, new edition, Florence, 1895.

Following are a few special studies on Petrarch: J. H. ROBINSON, "Petrarch's Confessions," in *Romanic review*, I (1910), 231–246, 347–356. F. LO PORCO, *Francesco Petrarca allo studio di Montpellier*, Rome, 1915 (extract from Rendiconti della r. Accademia dei Lincei: scienze morali). *F. Petrarca e la Lombardia*, by A. ANTON, H. COCHIN, and others, Milan, 1904, is a collection of miscellaneous articles on Petrarch collected and printed by the Società storica Lombarda. E. F. FUZET, *Pétrarque à Vaucluse*, Rouen, 1904. A. FIORVANTI, *F. Petrarca e Roma*, Modena, 1905, is a lecture. H. COCHIN, *La frère de Pétrarque et le livre du repos des religieux*, Paris, 1903; see also his *Un ami de Pétrarque: lettres de Francesco Nelli à Pétrarch*, Paris, 1892. G. O. CORAZZINI, *La madre di Francesco Petrarca*, Florence, 1903. C. SEGRÈ, *Studi Petrarcheschi*, Florence, 1903. F. WULFF, *Préoccupations de Pétrarque, 1359–1369*, Lund, 1907. L. MASCETTA-CARACCI, *Dante e il dedala petrarchesco: con uno studio sulle malattie di Francesco Petrarca*, Lanciano, 1910. H. SCHMELZER, *Petrarcas Verhältnis zur vorausgehenden christlichen Philosophie des Abendlandes*, Bonn, 1912. A. CARLINI, *Studio su "l'Africa" di Francesco Petrarca*, Florence, 1902. G. P. BUTLER, *Echoes of Petrarch*, Chicago, 1911. A. FARINELLI, *Sulla fortune del Petrarca in Spagna nel quattrocénto*, Turin, 1904.

Boccaccio. E. HUTTON, *Giovanni Boccaccio: a biographical study*, London, 1910. E. RODOCANACHI, *Boccace: poéte, conteur, moraliste, homme politique*, Paris, 1908. J. A. SYMONDS, *Giovanni Boccaccio as man and author*, London, 1895. G. KÖRTING, *Boccaccio's Leben und Werke* (vol. II of his *Geschichte der Literatur Italiens im Zeitalter der Renaissance*), Leipzig, 1880. M. LANDAU, *Giovanni Boccaccio: sein Leben und seine Werke*, Stuttgart, 1877. A. HORTIS, *Studi sulle opere Latine del Boccaccio*, Trieste, 1879.

Poggio. W. SHEPHERD, *The life of Poggio Bracciolini*, Liverpool, 1802, 2nd edition, 1837. E. WALSER, *Poggius Florentinus: Leben und Werke*, Leipzig, 1914.

Greek. T. KLETTE, *Beiträge zur Geschichte und Literatur der italienischen Gelehrtenrenaissance*, 3 vols., Greifswald, 1888–1890, is important for its studies on Greek scholars; also contains documentary material. H. VAST, *Le cardinal Bessarion*, Paris, 1878. E. LEGRAND, *Bibliographie Hellénique, XV^e et XVI^e siècles*, 3 vols., Paris, 1884–1885.

Florence. C. HARE (pseudonym), *Life and letters in the Italian renaissance*, London, 1915. G. S. GODKIN, *Monastery of San Marco*, London, 1901. K. BRANDI, *Die Renaissance in Florenz und Rom*, 4th edition, Leipzig, 1913. F. T. PERRENS, *La civilisation florentine du 13 au 16 siècle*, Paris, 1893. W. B. SCAIFE, *Florentine life during the renaissance*, Baltimore, 1893. A. DELLA TORRE, *Storia dell' Accademia platonica di Firenze*, Florence, 1902. G. M. BOCCI., *Syllabus of a course of twelve lectures on Florence during the renaissance: its history, literature, and art*, Berkeley, University of California Press, 1903, gives selected lists of books for each lecture.

Coluccio. A. MARTIN, *Mittelalterliche Welt- und Lebensanschauung im Spiegel der Schriften Coluccio Salutatis*, Munich and Berlin, 1913 (Historische Bibliothek, XXXIII), and his *Coluccio Salutatis Traktat "Vom Tyrannen": eine kulturgeschichtliche Untersuchung nebst Textedition, mit einer Einleitung über Salutatis Leben und Schriften und einem Exkurs über seine philologisch-historische Methode*, Berlin und Leipzig, 1913 (Abhandlungen zur mittleren und neueren Geschichte, 47).

Marsigli of Florence (died 1394). S. BELLANDI, *Luogo Marsili degli Agostiniani apostolo ed anima del rinascimento letterario in Firenze, 1342–1394*, Florence, 1911.

Rome. GREGOROVIUS, *Rome in the middle ages*, book XII, ch. VII, book XIII, *passim*. J. STRZYGOWSKI, *Cimabue und Rom. Kunstgeschichte und zur Topographie der Stadt Rom*, Vienna, 1888. C. v. CHLEDOWSKI, *Rom die Memschen der Renaissance*, translated from the Polish by Rosa Peterino, Munich, 1912. E. STEINMANN, *Rom in der Renaissance von Nicolaus V bis Leo X*, 3rd edition, Leipzig, 1908 (Berühmte Kunststätten). J. KLASZKO, *Rome and the renaissance: The pontificate of Julius II*, translated from the French by J. DENNIE, New York, 1903. R. LANCIANI, *The golden days of the renaissance in Rome: from the pontificate of Julius II to that of Paul III*, Boston and New York, 1906.

Naples. W. GOETZ, *König Robert von Neapel (1309–1343): seine Persönlichkeit und sein Verhältnis zum Humanismus*, Tübingen, 1910.

Laurentius Valla. L. BAROZZI and R. SABBADINI, *Studi sul Panormita e sul Valla*, Florence, 1891 (the portion on Laurentius Valla is by SABBADINI). G. MANCINI, *Vita di Lorenzo Valla*, Florence, 1891. M. v. WOLFF, *Lorenzo Valla: sein Leben und seine Werke*, Leipzig, 1893. W. SCHWAHN, *Lorenzo Valla: ein Beitrag zur Geschichte des Humanismus*, Berlin, 1896 (dissertation, Rostock).

Aldus Manutius. A. F. DIDOT, *Alde Manuce et l'hellénisme à Venise*, Paris, 1875.

Religion and humanism. J. OWEN, *The skeptics of the Italian renaissance*, 2nd edition, London, 1893. E. WALSER, "Christentum und Antike in der Auffassung der italienischen Frührenaissance," in *Archiv für Kulturgeschichte*, XI (1913), 273–288. C. DEJOB, *La foi religieuse en Italie au XIV^e siècle*, Paris, 1905.

Education. R. SABBADINI, *La scuola e gli studi di Guarini*, Catania, 1896; see also his recent edition of the *Letters of Guarino of Verona*, vol. I, Venice, 1915.

Renaissance art in general. E. MÜNTZ, *Histoire de l'art pendant la renaissance*, 3 vols., Paris, 1889–95 (contains good bibliographies); see also his *Les précurseurs de la renaissance*, Paris, 1882; *Les arts à la cour des papes pendant le XV^e et le XVI^e siècle*, 3 vols., Paris, 1878–1882, parts 4 and 9 of no. **887** above; *La renaissance en Italie et en France à l'epoque de Charles VIII*, Paris, 1885. A. VENTURI, *Storia dell' arte italiana*, vols. I–VII, Milan, 1901–1915 (vols. IV–VII treat the art of the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries). A. PHILIPPI, *Die Kunst der Renaissance in Italien*, 2 vols., Leipzig, 1905. H. WÖLFFLIN, *Die klassische Kunst: Einführung in die italienische Renaissance*, Munich, 1901, translated by W. ARMSTRONG, *The art of the Italian renaissance: a handbook for students and travellers*, New York, 1903. Mrs. LUCY E. BAXTER, *The renaissance of art in Italy: an illustrated sketch*, New York, 1883, new edition, 1888. W. H. GOODYEAR, *Renaissance and modern art*, Meadville, Pennsylvania, 1894.

Many books listed under outline XXVII in part III below, on medieval art, also treat renaissance art.

Criticism of renaissance art. W. PATER, *The renaissance: studies in art and poetry*, London, 1873, newest edition, 1910. J. RUSKIN *Mornings in Florence*, New York, 1876; and his *Modern painters*, 4 vols., New York, 1858–1859; and his *Stones of Venice*, 3 vols., New York, 1860. H. TAINE, *Philosophie de l'art en Italie*, Paris, 1866, 3rd edition, 1880. VIOLET PAGET (VERNON LEE, pseudonym), *Euphorion: studies of the antique and the mediaeval in the renaissance*, 2nd edition, revised, London, 1885; and her *Renaissance fancies and studies*, 1895, 2nd edition, London, 1909. M. CARRIERE, *Die Kunst*

im Zusammenhang der Culturentwicklung, 3rd, revised, edition, 5 vols., Leipzig, 1877–86, vol. IV, *Renaissance und Reformation*.

Renaissance painting. B. BERENSON, *The Florentine painters of the renaissance*, New York, 1896, 3rd edition, revised, 1909; and his *The Venetian painters of the renaissance*, New York, 1895, 3rd edition, 1897; *The north Italian painters of the renaissance*, New York [1907]; and *The central Italian painters of the renaissance*, 2nd edition, revised, New York, 1909. J. A. CROWE and G. B. CAVALCASELLE, *A history of painting in north Italy from the fourteenth to the sixteenth century*, edited by T. BORENIUS, 3 vols., London, 1912; and their *A new history of painting in Italy*, 3 vols., London and New York, 1908–1909. A. WOLTMANN and K. WOERMANN, *Geschichte der Malerei*, Leipzig, 1879–1888, translated by CLARA BELL, *History of painting*, vol. II, *The painting of the renaissance*. R. MUTHER, *The history of painting from the fourth to the early nineteenth century*, translated from German by G. KRIEHN, 2 vols., New York, 1907. Sir W. BAYLISS, *Seven angels of the renascence: the story of art from Cimabue to Claude*, London, 1905. JULIA ADY, *The painters of Florence from the 13th to the 16th century*, New York, 1901. M. G. ZIMMERMANN, *Giotto und die Kunst Italiens im Mittelalter*, vol. I, Leipzig, 1899. ALICE V. V. BROWN, *A short history of Italian painting*, London and New York, 1914. C. H. CAFFIN, *How to study pictures by means of a series of comparisons of paintings and painters from Cimabue to Monet*, New York, 1906. L. VENTURI, *Le origini della pittura veneziana*, 1300–1500, Venice, 1907. M. BRYAN, *Dictionary of painters and engravers: biographical and critical*, 5 vols., London, 1903–1908.

Renaissance architecture. W. J. ANDERSON, *The architecture of the renaissance in Italy*, 4th edition, London, 1909. G. SCOTT, *The architecture of humanism*, Boston, 1914. A. SCHUETZ, *Die Renaissance in Italien: eine Sammlung der werthvollsten Monumente*, 4 vols., Hamburg, 1893–96. L. PALUSTRE, *L'architecture de la renaissance*, Paris, 1892. R. REDTENBACHER, *Die Architectur der italienischen Renaissance: Entwickelungsgeschichte und Formenlehre derselben*, Frankfurt, 1886.

Renaissance sculpture. LUCY J. FREEMAN, *Italian sculpture of the renaissance*, New York, 1901. G. S. DAVIES, *Renascence: the sculptured tombs of the fifteenth century in Rome*, London, 1910. D. A. E. L. BALCARRES, *The evolution of Italian sculpture*, London, 1909. W. BODE, *Florentine sculptors of the renaissance*, New York, 1909. W. BODE, *Die italienischen Bildhauer der Renaissance*, Berlin, 1887.

Leonardo da Vinci. O. SIRÉN, *Leonardo da Vinci: the artist and the man*, Yale University Press, 1915. P. DUHEM, *Etudes sur Léonardo de Vinci, ceux qu'il a lus et ceux qui l'ont lu*, 2 vols., Paris, 1906–09. E. MÜNTZ, *Leonardo Da Vinci*, 2 vols., London, 1898.

Michael Angelo. R. ROLLAND, *Michaelangelo*, translated from the French by F. STREET, New York, 1915, another translation by F. LEES, *The life of Michael Angelo*, London, 1912. H. THODE, *Michelangelo und das Ende der Renaissance*, 3 vols., in 4, Berlin, 1902–1912. H. F. GRIMM, *Life of Michael Angelo*, translated by BUNNETT, new edition, 2 vols., Boston, 1896. Individual biographies of other artists may be found in such series as: *Great artists series; Great masters in painting and sculpture*, edited by G. C. WILLIAMSON; *Masters in art*, Boston, Bates, 1900 ff.; and *Künstlermonographien*, edited by H. KNACKFUSS, Bielefeld, 1899 ff., translated as *Monographs on artists.*

Original sources. *Das Zeitalter der Renaissance: ausgewählte Quellen zur Geschichte der italienischen Kultur*, edited by MARIE HERZFELD, Jena, 1911 ff. *Die Renaissance in Briefen von Dichtern, Künstlern, Staatsmänner, Gelehrten und Frauen*, edited by L. SCHMIDT, vol. I, Leipzig, 1908, is an uncritical collection for the general public. VESPASIANO DA BISTICCI [died 1498] *Vite di uomini illustri del secolo XV*, Florence, 1849, new edition in 3 vols., Bologna, 1892.

F. PETRARCH, *Epistolae de rebus familiaribus et variae*, 3 vols., edited by G. FRACASSETTI, 3 vols., Florence, 1859–1863. These famous letters were also translated into Italian by the same editor, with notes, *Lettere di Francesco Petrarca delle cose familiari libri ventiquattro, lettere varie libro unico*, 5 vols., Florence, 1892; and *Lettere senile*, 2 vols., Florence, 1892.

The most serviceable edition of the famous work of LAURENTIUS VALLA on the Donation of Constantine, *De falso credita et ementita Donatione Constantini*, with a French translation, is by A. BONNEAU, *La donation de Constantin*, Paris, 1879. For a general survey of this question of historical criticism, see C. B. COLEMAN, *Constantine the Great and Christianity*, New York, 1914, who will publish an English translation of Valla's work on the Donation in no. 949 above.

Thoughts on art and life by LEONARDO DA VINCI, translated by M. BARING, Boston, 1906. *Epistolario* di COLUCCIO SALUTATI, edited by F. NOVATI, vols. I–III, Rome, 1891–1896, vols. XV–XVII of no. 990 above. *Briefwechsel* des ENEAS SILVIUS PICCOLOMINI, edited by R. WOLKAN, Vienna, 1909. *Ausgewählte Schriften* von GIOVANNI

PICO DELLA MIRANDOLA, edited, with an introduction, by A. LIEBERT, Jena and Leipzig, 1905.

Large collections of sources for the history of Italy in general are listed above, nos. **988–994.**

Bibliographies. There are general bibliographies in VOIGT, *Die Wiederbelebung*, II, 511–525, which is especially valuable for original sources; SANDYS, *A history of classical scholarship*, II, XV–XIX; and *Cambridge modern history*, I, 779–783. E. CALVI, *Bibliografia analitica Petrarchese, 1877–1904*. Rome, 1904, is a very valuable critical bibliography on Petrarch. Now see also the *Catalogue of the Petrarch collection bequeathed by Willard Fiske to the Cornell university library*, compiled by MARY FOWLER, Oxford University Press, 1916.

XXXIV. CHRISTIAN SPAIN IN THE LATER MIDDLE AGES

A. OUTLINE

1. The protracted crusade against the Moors was the chief factor which molded the life of Christian Spain in the middle ages. Its effect upon political and social institutions and upon the character of the people.

2. The nuclei of Christian states in northern Spain: (1) Asturias (capital Oviedo), with Cantabria, developed into Leon and Castile (Alfonso III, the Great, 866–910); (2) Navarre (Basques); (3) Aragon; (4) Barcelona (Spanish mark of Charlemagne) developed into the kingdom Catalonia; (5) Galicia (St. James of Compostella) gave rise to Portugal, but was itself won by Castile.

3. The breakup of the Ommiad Caliphate of Cordova. Death of the great minister and general Almansor in 1002. The division of the Caliphate into several small states between 1002 and 1031.

4. Union of Castile and Aragon under Ferdinand I of Castile, 1033–1065. The reconquest of Spain. In 1085 Alfonso VI, 1065–1109, captured Toledo. His famous condottiere, Ruy Diaz, the Cid Campeador (died 1099). The Moors invited the Almoravides from Africa, who, under Yussuf, defeated Alfonso at the battle of Zallaca, 1086. Rivalry between the Almoravides and the Almohades during the twelfth century.

5. The rise of Aragon. Alfonso I, *el Batallador*, 1104–1134, took Saragossa in 1118. Union of Aragon with Catalonia or Barcelona, thus giving Aragon access to the Mediterranean and wresting Catalonia from French influence. In 1283 Aragon took Valencia and soon developed a Mediterranean policy under James I, 1213–1276, the first step being the conquest of the Balearic Islands.

6. The papacy and the Roman church in Spain. Influence of the crusades in drawing the attention of the papacy to Spain. The Cistercians in Spain. The Cistercian military monastic orders of Calatrava and Alcantara. The order of St. James (Santiago). The great interest of pope Innocent III, 1198–1216, in Spain. In his pontificate was fought the decisive battle of Las Navas de Tolosa, 1212, which finally gave the Christians the upper hand in the peninsula.

7. The constitutional history of Spain. Importance of the burgher class in the struggle against the Moors. The cortes in the twelfth century. The *hermandades*, or brotherhoods of cities, and the nobles. The peculiar office of the *justicia* in Aragon. Strength of royalty in Spain. The *Siete Partidas* of Alfonso X of Castille.

8. The predominance of Castile under Saint Ferdinand III, 1214–1252 (a contemporary of Saint Louis IX of France). Final union between Leon and Castile in 1230. The winning of Andalusia. Capture of Cordova in 1236, of Seville in 1244, and of Xeres and Cadiz in 1250. The Moors were now confined to Granada, but there they were allowed to remain until 1492. The castles of Alhambra and Generalife.

9. After 1250 interest centers in the balance of power between the Christian states in the peninsula and in their relations with the states of Europe.

10. Castile, 1252–1469. Alfonso X, the Wise, 1252–1284, and Richard of Cornwall became rival Holy Roman emperors during the Great Interregnum. Anarchy after his death. Under Alfonso XI, the Moors laid siege to Tarifa in 1340, but they were badly defeated in the battle of Salado. Alfonso took Algeciras in 1344. The rivalry between Peter I, the Cruel, 1350–1369, and his half-brother Henry of Trastamara led to the battle between Du Guesclin and the Black Prince on Spanish soil, at Najara, in 1367. Castile had a very troublous century under the rule of the house of Trastamara, 1369–1468. Marriage of Isabella, with Ferdinand, the heir of Aragon, in 1469.

11. Aragon, 1276–1469. Peter III, 1276–1285, secured Sicily after the Sicilian Vespers, 1282. In the reign of James III, 1327–1336, Sardinia was taken from Genoa and Pisa and annexed to Aragon. Alfonso V, 1416–1458, wrested Naples from the second house of Anjou. The union with Castile, 1469.

12. Union of Aragon and Castile under Ferdinand II, 1479–1516, and Isabella, 1474–1504, "the Catholic kings," and the foundation of the kingdom of Spain. The fall of Granada, the expulsion of the Jews, and the discovery of America in 1492.

13. Spanish culture in the later middle ages, especially in Catalonia. Heresy and the inquisition. The Jews in Spain.

14. Portugal. Early growth of Portugal around Oporto (Porto Calle) and Coimbra, included in 1064. Establishment of the county of Portugal, 1095. In 1140 count Alfonso became king of Portugal and in 1147, with the help of German and Dutch adventurers, took Lisbon from the Moors. Thus by 1250 Portugal had reached its present limits. Development of a navy in the twelfth century. Internal organization of Portugal under king Diniz (Dionysius, 1279–1325), "Denis the Laborer." Prince Henry the Navigator, 1394–1460, and the beginnings of Portugal's heroic age. In 1486 Vasco Da Gama rounded the Cape of Good Hope, and in 1598 he reached Calicut, India. In 1500 the Portuguese discovered Brazil.

15. Kings of Castile, 1214–1504.
Saint Ferdinand III, 1214–1252.
Alfonso X, 1252–1284.
Sancho IV, 1284–1295.
Ferdinand IV, 1295–1312.
Alfonso XI, 1312–1350.
Peter I (the Cruel), 1350–1369.
Henry II, of Trastamara, 1369–1379.
John I, 1379–1390.
Henry III, 1390–1406.
John II, 1406–1454.
Henry IV, 1454–1474.
Isabella, 1474–1504.

16. Kings of Aragon, 1213–1516.
James I, 1213–1276.
Peter III, 1276–1285.
Alfonso III, 1285–1291.
James II, 1291–1327.
Alfonso IV, 1327–1336.
Peter IV, 1336–1387.
John I, 1387–1395.
Martin, 1395–1410.
Ferdinand I, 1412–1416.
Alfonso V, 1416–1458.
John II, 1458–1479.
Ferdinand II, 1479–1516.

B. SPECIAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR READING

Brief general accounts. HELMOLT, *History of the world*, IV, 510–540. TOUT, *Empire and papacy*, 464–477; together with LODGE,

Close of the middle ages, 468–493. *History of all nations,* X, 336–357. CLARA C. PERKINS, *Builders of Spain,* 118–151. LEES, *The central period of the middle ages,* 239–244, together with ELEANOR C. LODGE, *The end of the middle age,* 240–254. LOSERTH, *Geschichte des späteren Mittelalters,* 52–57, 345–359, 693–707.

Longer accounts. M. A. S. HUME, *The Spanish people,* 103–305. LAVISSE and RAMBAUD, *Histoire générale,* II, ch. XII, and III, ch. IX. H. E. WATTS, *The Christian recovery of Spain: being the story of Spain from the Moorish conquest to the fall of Granada (711–1492 A.D.),* New York, 1893 (Story of the nations).

Standard works. U. R. BURKE, *A history of Spain,* I, 133–141, 152–162, 178–388, and all of vol. II. ALTAMIRA, *Historia de España,* I, 351–646, and all of vol. II.

The Cid. H. B. CLARK, *The Cid Campeador and the waning of the crescent in the west,* New York, 1897 (Heroes of the nations). J. ORMSBY, *The poem of the Cid,* London, 1879.

The cortes. R. B. MERRIMAN, "The cortes of the Spanish kingdoms in the later middle ages," in *American historical review,* XVI (1910–1911), 476–495, contains important bibliographical notes.

James the First of Aragon, 1213–1270. F. D. SWIFT, *The life and times of James the First the conqueror, king of Aragon, Valencia, and Majorca,* Oxford, 1894. C. R. BEAZLEY, *James I of Aragon,* Oxford, 1890.

Heresy and inquisition in Spain. H. C. LEA, *A history of the inquisition of Spain,* 4 vols., New York, 1906-1907, I, 1–288; and his *The Moriscos of Spain: their conversion and expulsion,* Philadelphia, 1901, chs. I–II; to which may be added his *History of the inquisition of the middle ages,* II, ch. III.

Portugal and Spain in the age of discovery. E. P. CHEYNEY, *European background,* 60–103. *Cambridge modern history,* I ch. I.

Portugal. H. M. STEPHENS, *Portugal,* New York, 1891 (Story of the nations), chs. I–VIII, is the best account. V. DE BRAGANÇA CUNHA, *Eight centuries of Portuguese monarchy: a political study,* London, 1911, has a very slight sketch on medieval Portugal in ch. I, but he appends a long list of books, pp. 255–265.

Henry the Navigator. E. G. BOURNE, *Essays in historical criticism,* New York, 1901, "Prince Henry the Navigator," 173–189, is a good short sketch. J. P. OLIVEIRA MARTINS, *Os filhos de Dom João I,* Lisbon, 1891, translated from the 1901 edition by J. J. ABRAHAM and W. E. REYNOLDS, *The golden age of Prince Henry the Navigator,* London, 1914. C. R. BEAZLEY, *Prince Henry the Navigator,* London, 1895.

Ferdinand and Isabella. *Cambridge modern history,* I, ch. XI, "The catholic kings," will serve as a short introductory sketch. IRENE L. PLUNKET, *Isabel of Castile and the making of the Spanish nation, 1451–1504,* New York, 1915. Mrs. JULIA (CARTWRIGHT) ADY, *Isabella the Catholic,* New York, 1914 (Heroes of the nations). C. HARE, *A queen of queens and the making of Spain,* London and New York, 1906. W. H. PRESCOTT, *History of the reign of Ferdinand and Isabella the Catholic,* 3 vols., London, 1838 (often reprinted).

Original sources. *The chronicle of James I, king of Aragon* [1213–1276], translated, with an historical introduction, by P. DE GAYANGOS, London, 1883. *The chronicle of the Cid,* translated from the Spanish by R. SOUTHEY, London, 1883 (Morley's universal library), is "based partly upon an Arab contemporary original now lost"—BURKE.

Maps. SHEPHERD, *Atlas,* 82–83.

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General books. The general histories of Spain and Portugal are listed above, nos. **622–642.** See the books on the church in Spain, nos. **467–468** above. See also nos. **813** and **103** above. For the publications of the *Real academia de la historia* of Madrid, see no. **907** above.

General and miscellaneous accounts. M. COLMEIRO, *Reyes cristianos desdè Alfonso VI hasta Alfonso XI en Castilla, Aragón, Navarra y Portugal (1072–1312),* vol. I, Madrid, 1891, part of no. **622** above. J. DE DIOS DE LA RADA Y DELGADO, *La España cristiana (970–1072),* Madrid, 1890, part of no. **622** above, is incomplete. L. DOLLFUS, *Les Espagnes au XI^e siècle,* Paris, 1903. A. SALCEDO Y RUIZ, *Historia de España: resumen crítico,* Madrid [1914], is illustrated profusely. A. PAZ Y MELIA, *España de la edad media,* Madrid, 1898. CONDE DE TORREÁNAZ, *Los consejos del rey durante la edad media,* 2 vols., Madrid, 1884–1892. E. E. HALE and SUSAN HALE, *Spain,* New York, 1886 (Story of the nations), is far below the level of other works in this series. DEL CASTILLO, *Gran diccionario geográfico, estadístico y histórico de España,* Barcelona, 1890 ff. G. CARO, "Aus der spanischen Geschichte im Mittelalter," in *Historische Vierteljahrschrift,* XVI (1913), 161–180. H. FINKE, "Das Aufblühen der Geschichtsforschung in Spanien," in *Historische Zeitschrift,* CXIII (1914), 70–82, sees hopeful signs of improvement in the study and writing of history in Spain.

The Cid. WILLEMAERS, *Le Cid: son histoire, ses légendes, ses poètes,* Brussels, 1873. R. P. A. DOZY, *Le Cid d'après de nouveaux documents,* new edition, Leyden, 1860.

Castile. J. CATALINA Y GARCIA, *Castilla y Léon durante los reinados de Pedro I, Enrique II, Juan I, y Enrique III*, vols. I–II, Madrid, 1891–1901, part of no. 622 above. G. DAUMET, *Etude sur l'alliance de la France et de la Castille au 14–15e siècles*, Paris, 1898, contains important original sources. C. FERNÁNDEZ DURO, *La marina de Castilla*, Madrid, 1894, part of no. 622 above. J. LAURENTIE, *Saint Ferdinand III (1198?–1252)*, Paris, 1910 (Les saints). W. HERRMANN, *Alfons X von Castilien als römischer König*, Berlin [1897] (dissertation).

Peter I, the Cruel, 1350–1369, has attracted considerable attention and some attempts have been made to vindicate him, e.g., J. GUICHOT, *D. Pedro Primero de Castilla: ensayo de vindicación crítico-histórica de su reinado*, Seville, 1878. FERNÁNDEZ GUERRA, *El rey D. Pedro de Castilla*, Madrid, 1868. P. MÉRIMÉE, *Histoire de Don Pèdre Ier roi de Castille*, Paris, 1848, new edition, 1865. A. FERRER DEL RÍO, *Examen histórico-crítico del reinado de Don Pedro de Castilla*, Madrid, 1851.

Aragon and Catalonia. V. BALAGUER, *Historia de Cataluña y de la corona de Aragón*, 2nd edition, 11 vols., Madrid, 1885–1887. J. RIBERA, *Origen del Justicia Mayor de Aragón*, Saragossa, 1897. E. DE HINOJOSA, *El regimen señorial y la cuestión agraria en Cataluña durante la edad media*, Madrid, 1905 (Biblioteca de derecho). J. BALARI Y JOVANY, *Origenes históricos de Cataluña*, Barcelona, 1899. L. KLÜPFEL, *Die äussere Politik Alfonsos III von Aragonien (1285–1291)*, Berlin and Leipzig, 1911–12 (Abhandlungen zur mittleren und neueren Geschichte, 35); and his *Verwaltungsgeschichte des Königreichs Aragon zu Ende des 13 Jahrhunderts*, Stuttgart, 1915 (posthumous work, edited by H. E. ROHDE). K. SCHWARZ, *Aragonische Hofordnungen im 13 und 14 Jahrhundert*, Berlin and Leipzig, 1914. G. DESDEVISES DU DEZERT, *Don Carlos d'Aragón, Prince de Viane: étude sur l'Espagne du nord au XVe siècle*, Paris, 1889. E. L. MIRON, *The queens of Aragon: their lives and times* [1035–1468 A.D.], London [1913].

Navarre. J. DE JAURGAIN, *La Vasconie: étude historique et critique sur les origines du royaume de Navarre*, etc., vols. I–II, Pau, 1898–1902.

Cortes of Spain. M. DÁNVILA, *Estudios e investigaciones histórico-críticos acerca de las cortes y parlamentos del antiguo reino de Valencia*, Madrid, 1906 (ALTAMIRA says it must be used with caution). V. DE LA FUENTE, *Estudios críticos sobre la historia y el derecho de Aragón*, 3 vols., Madrid, 1884–1886, is especially important for the early cortes in Aragon. J. COROLEU and D. J. PELLA Y

FORGAS, *Las Cortes catalanas*, Barcelona, 1876, contains important original sources.

Hermandades. J. PUYOL Y ALONSO, *Las hermandades de Castilla y León*, Madrid, 1913. K. HAEBLER, "Über die älteren Hermandades in Kastilien," in *Historische Zeitschrift*, LIII (1885), 385–401, and his "Die kastilischen Hermandades zur Zeit Heinrich's IV (1454-1474)," *ibid.*, LVI (1886), 40–50. A. SACRISTÁN Y MARTINEZ, *Municipalidades de Castilla y Léon*, Madrid, 1878.

Spanish church. M. MENÉNDEZ PELAYO, *Historia de los heterodoxos españoles*, 3 vols., Madrid, 1880–1881, new edition, 1912ff. M. VAN HENCKELUM, *Spiritualistische Strömungen an den Höfen von Aragon und Anjou während der Höhe des Armutsstreites*, Berlin, 1912; is a study on the spiritual Franciscans. Q. MORALEDA, *El rito mozárabe, su antigüedad, vicisitudes, costumbres mozárabes*, Toledo, 1904. K. J. v. HEFELE, *Der Cardinal Ximenes*, Tübingen, 1851, translated into English, *The life of cardinal Ximenez*, London, 1860, there is also a French translation, *Le cardinal Ximenez*, Paris, 1856.

Jews in Spain. J. AMADOR DE LOS RÍOS, *Historia social, política y religiosa de los judíos de España y Portugal*, 3 vols., Madrid, 1875–1876. M. KAYSERLING, *Gesohichte der Juden in Spanien und Portugal*, 2 vols., Berlin, 1861–1867. See also the general histories of the Jews, nos. **850–884** above, especially **876** and **878**.

Culture in Spain in the later middle ages. R. P. A. DOZY, *Recherches sur l'histoire et la littérature de l'Espagne pendant le moyen âge*, 2 vols., 3rd edition, Leyden, 1881. J. P. OLIVEIRA MARTINS, *Historia de la civilización ibérica*, Madrid, 1894. *Estado de la cultura española y principalmente catalana en el siglo XV*, by various authors, Barcelona, 1893. H. FINKE, "Die Beziehungen der aragonesischen Könige zur Literatur, Wissenschaft, und Kunst im 13 und 14 Jahrhundert," in *Archiv für Kulturgeschichte*, VIII (1910), 20–42. L. COMENGE, *La medicina en el reinado de Alfonso V de Aragón*, Barcelona, 1903. M. MENÉNDEZ Y PELAYO, *Antología de poetas líricos castellanos*, Madrid, 1890, contains introductions which constitute a general history of learning and society in Spain in the later middle ages. See also no. **813** above.

Portugal. C. R. PEPPER, *Le Portugal: ses origines, son histoire*, Paris, 1879. F. KURTH, "Der Anteil Niederdeutscher Kreuzfahrer an den Kämpfen der Portugiesen gegen die Mauren," in *Mitteilungen des Instituts für österreichische Geschichtsforschung*, VIII, Ergänzungsband, I, 1909.

Prince Henry the Navigator. M. BARRADAS, *O Infante Dom Henrique*, Lisdon, 1894. A. ALVES, *Dom Henrique o Infante*, Oporto,

1894. R. H. MAJOR, *Life of Prince Henry of Portugal surnamed the Navigator*, London, 1868, condensed edition, 1874.

Expulsion of the Moors. F. CODERA, *Decadencia y desaparición de los Almoravides en España*, Saragossa, 1899 (Colección de estudios árabes, 3); and his *Estudios críticos de historia árabe española*, Saragossa, 1903. D. L. EQUILAZ YANGUAS, *Reseña histórica de la conquista del reino de Granada*, 2nd edition, Granada, 1894. M. GASPAR, *Granada en poder de los Reyes Católicos*, Granada, 1912. V. BALAGUER, *Las guerras de Granada*, Madrid, 1898.

Ferdinand and Isabella. V. BALAGUER, *Los reyes católicos*, vols. I and II, Madrid, 1891–1898, part of no. 622 above. P. BOISSONADE, *Histoire de la réunion de la Navarre à la Castille, 1479–1521*, Paris, 1893. D. F. RUANO-PRIETO, *Anexión del reino de Navarra en tiempo del Rey Católico*, Madrid, 1899. J. H. MARIÉJOL, *L'Espagne sous Ferdinand et Isabelle: le gouvernement, les institutions, les moeurs*, Paris [1892]. G. SELA, *Política internacional de los Reyes Católicos*, Madrid, 1905. K. HÄBLER, *Geschichte Spaniens unter den Habsburgern*, vol. I, Hamburg, 1907, part of no. 332 above.

Original sources. General collections of sources for the history of Spain and Portugal are listed above, nos. 997–1001. *Acta Aragonensia: Quellen zur deutschen, italienischen, französischen, spanischen, zur Kirchen- und Kulturgeschichte, aus der diplomatischen Korrespondenz Jaymes II, 1291–1327*, edited by H. FINKE, Berlin, 1908, is a well-edited collection of documents from the time of Dante which bear some resemblances to the famous *Venetian Relations*. *Documents per l'historia de la cultura catalana mig-eval*, edited by A. RUBIÓ Y LLUCH for the Institut d'Estudis Catalans, vol. I, Barcelona, 1908, throws much new light on the important Catalan culture of the middle ages. See H. FINKE, "Die katalanische Renaissance," in *Internationale Wochenschrift* (1910), 209 ff. See also the article on Catalan language and literature in the *Encyclopaedia Britannica*.

Primera crónica general: Estoria de España que mandó componer Alfonso el Sabio y se continuaba bajo Sancho IV en 1289, edited by R. MENÉNDEZ PIDAL, vol. I, text, Madrid, 1906. *Códigos de España: colección completa desde el Fuero Juzgo hasta la novísima recopilación*, edited by M. MARTINEZ ALCUBILLA, 2 vols., Madrid, 1885–1886, is especially valuable for the study of Roman law in Spain since Visigothic days. *Fuentes para la historia de Castilla*, edited by L. SERRANO, vol. I, Valladolid, 1906, contains archive material, 1068–1500. *Histoire de l'Afrique et de l'Espagne intitulée Al Baguano 'l Mogrib* [of IBNAL IDHÂRÎ], translated and annotated by E. FAGNAN, Algiers, 1901. GOMES EANNES DE AZURARA, *Chronicle of the discovery and conquest of Guinea*, 2 vols., 1896–1899 (Hakluyt *society*), is an important source for early Portuguese explorations.

Bibliographies. For general bibliographies see no. 42 above. Owing to the lack of adequate bibliographies for the history of Spain, additional information about books must be sought in the bibliographical notes in BURKE and in lists such as those in the *Cambridge modern history*, I, 749–753; LOSERTH, *Geschichte des späteren Mittelalters*, 52, 345, 693; HUME, *The Spanish people*, 517–524; and LAVISSE and RAMBAUD, *Histoire générale*, II, 719–720, III, 504–506. See also the reports in the *Jahresberichte der Geschichtswissenschaft*, no. 13 above. The bibliographies on Mohammedan Spain, outline IX above and outline X in part III below, contain references to some books which are important for Christian Spain.

XXXV. EASTERN AND NORTHERN EUROPE IN THE LATER MIDDLE AGES

A. OUTLINE

1. The crusades widened the sphere of action of Latin Christendom which began to develop world interests and policies in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries. The chief factors with which it had to deal in the later middle ages were the Slavs belonging to the Greek church, the Asiatic nomads, the Byzantine Greeks, and the Mohammedan Ottoman Turks in the east and the Moors in Spain and northern Africa.

2. The invasion of Russia, Poland, and Hungary by Asiatic nomads in the thirteenth century. A new wave of "Mongols, Tartars or Tatars" from the steppes of Asia. Rise of these nomads in Asia under Temujin, 1162–1227, better known as Jenghiz Khan (Genghis Khan), or great Khan, which title he obtained in 1206. He penetrated beyond the great wall of China. His son turned westward and defeated the Russian princes in 1223. His grandson, Batu, took Kiev in 1240, and devastated Hungary and Poland most frightfully. Some bands of nomads came into the neighborhood of Vienna. Batu's realm was called the realm of the "Golden Horde" (from *ordu*, the camp of the leader, who had a "golden" tent). Most of the nomads returned to Asia, but southern Russia remained in their clutch until 1480, when Ivan III, the Great, overthrew them and united the Russian monarchy. Isolation of Russia from both the Latin West and the Greek East, due to this invasion. Growth of Moscow.

3. The greatness of Poland. Conflict between the Teutonic Order and Poland. Dominance of the order during the grand-

mastership of Winzig of Kniprode, 1351–1382. End of the rule of the Piasts in Poland, 1370. Union of Poland and Lithuania under the house of Jagello, 1386–1572. Now there arose a strong anti-German movement in Poland, similar to that in Bohemia (Hussites). Defeat of the Teutonic Order by Poland at the battle of Tannenberg, 1410. Peace of Thorn, 1411. The treaty of Thorn, 1466, marked the triumph of Poland over the Teutonic Order. Under Casimir IV, Jagello, 1477–1492, Poland reached the height of her glory. His younger son Ladislas was elected king of Bohemia in 1471 and king of Hungary in 1490. Fatal weakness of the Polish constitution, due to the excessive power of the great nobles.

4. The rise and decline of Hungary. The Golden Bull of 1222, the "Magna Carta" of Hungary. Devastation of Hungary by the nomads, 1241–1242. End of the Arpád dynasty, 1301. Dominance of turbulent nobles. Regeneration under the house of Anjou (Charles I, 1310–1342, and Louis I, 1342–1382). The coming of the Ottoman Turks. Sigismund, of the house of Luxemburg, king of Hungary, 1387–1437. His successful warfare with the Turks, after his defeat by Bayezid at Nicopolis in 1396. John Hunyadi (ca. 1387–1456), the hero in the struggle against the Turks. The succession of his house to the throne in the person of his son Mathias I (Corvinus), 1458–1490, in whose reign Hungary reached the pinnacle of her power. Union of Hungary with Bohemia in 1490 under Ladislas II of the house of Jagello. Sudden decline of Hungary.

5. The Greek empire under the Palaeologi, 1261–1453. Restoration of the Byzantine rule with the accession of Michael Palaeologus, 1261, a prince who had ruled Nicaea. Weakness of his empire. Its diminished territories. Inroads made upon them by the Latins of the west in the Balkan peninsula and the Aegean. The "Grand Company of the Catalans." In 1333, Stephen Dushan, king of Serbia, 1331–1355, was on the point of taking Constantinople. Dependence of the empire on the west. Continuous negotiations with the papacy concerning the union of the two churches. Council of Ferrara—Florence, 1438–1439. The Turkish menace. The coming of the gipsies into Europe.

6. The Ottoman Turks in Europe. The rise of the Ottoman Turks or Osmanlis under Othman, 1307–1326. Nicaea was in their hands in 1330. The Janissaries. In 1354 the Turks took Gallipoli, their first foothold on European soil. In 1361 Murad I took Adrianople. Emperor John V went to Rome to appeal to pope Urban V for help in 1369. Bayezid I, 1389–1403, actually besieged Constantinople when he was diverted by the great nomad hero Timur,

or Tamerlane, who defeated him and made him captive in the battle of Angora in 1402.

7. The fall of Constantinople, 1453. Weakness of the Palaeologi and gradual recovery of the Ottoman Turks. They were checked temporarily by the genius of the Hungarian John Hunyadi and by the guerilla warfare of the Albanians under their famous leader, George Castriot, or Scanderbeg (Iskender Bey, Prince Alexander, a complimentary name given him by the Turks in reference to Alexander the Great). Negotiations between the Greek and Latin churches due to the pressure of the Turks. In 1453, Mohammed II captured Constantinople. Importance of this event in the history of Europe. The "Eastern Question." The fall of Constantinople had little or nothing to do with the revival of the study of Greek in Italy. Did the advance of the Turks lead to the discovery of America and of a new route to India? Decline of the importance of the Mediterranean at the close of the fifteenth century.

8. Palaeologian dynasty in Constantinople, 1259–1453.

Michael VIII, 1259–1282 (in Constantinople, 1261ff.)
Andronicus II (Elder), 1282–1328.
Andronicus III (Younger), 1328–1341.
John V, 1341–1391 (non-dynastic).
John (Cantacuzenus), 1347–1355.
Manuel II, 1391–1425.
John VI, 1425–1448.
Constantine XI or XII (Dragases), 1448–1453.

9. Denmark, Norway, and Sweden. Denmark was the leading state during this period. Its expansion and prosperity under Waldemar I, the Great, 1137–1182, Knut VI, 1182–1202, and Waldemar II, the Conqueror, 1202–1241. Importance of Norway under Hakon IV, 1217–1262. The *Speculum regale*, "The king's mirror," written about 1250–1260, gives a splendid picture of civilization in the north. Conquest of Iceland (1260) and the submission of Greenland. Relations of the Teutonic Knights, the Sword Bearers, and the Hanseatic League with the northern states. Waldemar III of Denmark, 1340–1375. Treaty of Stralsund, 1370. The Union of Kalmar, 1397, which united the three Scandinavian kingdoms, and lasted formally till 1524, although actually it was dissolved with the election of Christian I of Oldenburg in 1448. Decline of the importance of the Baltic in the fifteenth century.

B. Special Recommendations for Reading

Brief general surveys. Lodge, *The close of the middle ages*, 430–451, 457–467, 494–514. Eleanor Lodge, *The end of the middle age*, chs. xi, xiii.

Longer general accounts. LAVISSE and RAMBAUD, *Histoire générale*, II, chs. XIV, XVI; III, chs. XIV–XVIII. HELMOLT, *History of the world*, II, *passim*, III, 363–376, V, 106–147, 224–226, 243–268, 288–302, 338–348, 355–359, 363–367, 380–387, 409–412, 415–424, 461–518, VI, 446–452, 466–471, 478–484. LOSERTH, *Geschichte des späteren Mittelalters*, 57–67, 359–365, 563–567, 107–112, 575–581, 199–203, 369–375, 581–612.

Europe and Asia. BEAZLEY, *Dawn of modern geography*, III, ch. II, "The great Asiatic travellers, 1260–1420."

Russia and the nomad Mongols. A. RAMBAUD, *History of Russia*, I, chs. X–XIII; or V. O. KLUCHEVSKY, *History of Russia*, I, chs. XII–XX, furnish a general survey of the history of Russia during this period. J. CURTIN, *The Mongols in Russia*, London, 1908, which is a companion volume to the same author's *The Mongols: a history*, with a foreword by T. ROOSEVELT, Boston, 1908. See also GIBBON, *Decline and fall*, ch. LXIV. L. v. RANKE, *Weltgeschichte*, 9 vols., Leipzig, 1883ff., VIII, 417–454, "Überfluthung der asiatischen und osteuropäischen Welt durch die Mongolen." C. R. BEAZLEY, "Russian expansion toward Asia and the Arctic in the middle ages (to 1500)," in *American historical review*, XIII (1907–1908), 731–741.

Hungary. A. VÁMBÉRY, *The story of Hungary*, chs. VII–XI. C. M. KNATCHBULL-HUGESSEN, *The political evolution of the Hungarian nation*, 2 vols., London, 1908. G. G. ZERFFI, "Hungary under Mathias Hunyady, surnamed Corvinus, 1458–1490," in *Royal historical society*, new series, I (1884), 260–272.

A confirmation of the Golden Bull of 1222, the "magna carta" of Hungary, is reproduced in facsimile in HELMOLT, *History of the world*, V, 380; compare this with the *Articles of the Barons* of England, the original draft of the *Magna Carta*, 1215, reproduced in facsimile in *Weltgeschichte*, edited by J. v. PFLUGK-HARTTUNG, II, 208. E. HANTOS, *The Magna carta of the English and Hungarian constitution*, London, 1914.

Balkans. W. MILLER, *The Balkans*, 35–61, 167–193, 272–298, 353–382. N. FORBES, *The Balkans*, 41–46, 89–101, 175–181, 256–263, 319–332.

Serbia. W. MILLER, "The mediaeval Serbian empire," in *Quarterly review*, CCXXVI (1916), 488–507.

Latins in the Levant. J. B. BURY, "The Lombards and Venetians in Euboia, 1205–1470," in *Journal of Hellenic studies*, VII (1886), 309–352, VIII (1887), 194–213, IX (1888), 91–117. W. MILLER, "The Genoese in Chios, 1346–1566," in *English historical review*, XXX (1915), 418–432. E. A. FREEMAN, "Mediaeval and modern Greece," in his *Historical essays*, third series, 303–378. H. F. TOZER, "The Franks in the Peloponnesus," in *Journal of Hel-*

lenic studies, IV (1883), 165–236. J. T. BENT, "The lords of Chios," in *English historical review*, IV (1889), 467–480. See also the literature under "The Byzantine empire and the crusades," in outline XXI above, especially MILLER, FINLEY, and RODD.

Byzantine Empire, 1261–1453. OMAN, *Story of the Byzantine empire*, 307–350. GIBBON, *Decline and fall*, chs. LXI–LXVIII. W. H. HUTTON, *Constantinople*, 119–153. W. NORDEN, *Das Papsttum und Byzanz: die Trennung der beiden Mächte und das Problem ihrer Wiedervereinigung bis zum Untergange des byzantinischen Reichs (1453)*, books III and IV, is the best authority on the attempts made in this period to unite the Greek and Latin churches. A. WÄCHTER, *Der Verfall des Griechentums in Kleinasien im 11 Jahrhundert*, Leipzig, 1903.

Ottoman Turks. S. POOLE, *The story of Turkey*, London, 1888 (Story of the nations), 1–139.

Gipsies. See the article "Gipsies" in the *Encyclopaedia Britannica;* and HELMOLT, *History of the world*, V, 415–424.

Fall of Constantinople, 1453. J. B. BURY, "The fall of Constantinople," in *Yale review*, new series, III (1913–1914), 56–77, is a good short summary. The standard work is E. PEARS, *The destruction of the Greek empire and the story of the capture of Constantinople by the Turks*, London and New York, 1903. H. VAST, "Le siège et la prise de Constantinople par les Turcs," in *Revue historique*, XIII (1880), 1–40. *Cambridge modern history*, I, ch. III, describes the Ottoman conquests after the fall of Constantinople. See also BURY'S Appendix to his edition of GIBBON, *Decline and fall.*

Ottoman Turks and oriental trade routes. A. H. LYBYER, "The Ottoman Turks and the routes of oriental trade," in *English historical review*, XXX (1915), 577–588. See also W. HEYD, *Geschichte des Levantehandels.*

Scandinavia. GJERSET, *History of the Norwegian people*, I, 410–492, II, 1–103 (in I, 448–451, there is a good description of the *Speculum regale* or *King's mirror*). BOYESON, *The story of Norway*, 400–480. L. M. LARSON, "Household of the Norwegian kings in the thirteenth century," in *American historical review*, XIII (1907–1908), 459–479.

Original sources. *The chronicle of Novgorod, 1016–1471*, translated from the Russian by R. MICHELL and N. FORBES, London, 1914 (Camden third series, XXV). *Mediaeval researches from eastern Asiatic sources (13th to 17th century)*, 2 vols., with a map of middle Asia, edited by E. BRETSCHNEIDER, London, 1910 (the work was completed in 1887, and incorporates the material in three or four of his older works). *A history of the Moghuls of central Asia:*

being the Tarikh-i-Rashidi of MIRZA MUHAMMAD HAIDAR, **Dughlát**, an English version by N. ELIAS, London, 1895. *Life and acts of the great Tamerlane: narrative of the Castilian embassy to the court of Timur at Samarcand,* by ROY GONSALES DE CLAVIJO, 1403–1406, translated, with notes, by C. R. MARKHAM, London, 1859 (Hakluyt Society). *The Mulfuz al Timury: or Autobiographical memoirs of the Moghul emperor Timur,* translated into English by C. STEWART, London, 1830. MATTHEW PARIS' *English history from the year 1235 to 1273,* translated from the Latin by J. A. GILES, 3 vols., London, 1852, vol. I, 467–473, "A shocking letter about the cruelty of the Tartars." "An eastern embassy to Europe, 1287–1288," translated by N. MCLEAN, in *English historical review,* XIV (1899), 299–318. *The fall of Constantinople,* by THEODORA PHRANZA, translated by J. M. NEALE, and reprinted, London, 1913 (Everyman's library). The first nine books of the *Danish history* of SAXO GRAMMATICUS, translated and edited by O. ELTON and F. Y. POWELL, London, 1894 (The history was written about 1208).

Maps. SHEPHERD, *Atlas,* 2-3, 77, 87, 88, 89, 92, 93, 102–103, 107–110.

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General books. The general works on the Byzantine empire and on eastern and northern Europe generally are listed above, nos. **643–728.** See also the periodicals for the history of the Byzantine empire, nos. **174–175** above, and the *Encyclopaedia of Islam,* no. **120** above. For histories of literature see nos. **800–802,** and **814** above.

Mongol nomads from Asia. L. CAHUN, *Introduction à l'histoire de l'Asie: Turcs et Mongols, des origines à 1405,* Paris, 1896. G. STRAKOSCH-GRASSMANN, *Der Einfall der Mongolen in Mitteleuropa in den Jahren 1241 und 1242,* Innsbruck, 1893. H. H. HOWORTH, *History of the Mongols from the 9th to the 19th century,* 2 vols., in 3, London, 1876–1880; and his *The northern frontages of China,* 4 vols., London, 1875–1877 (Journal of the royal Asiatic society of Great Britain, new series, VII–IX). N. ELIAS, *A history of the Moghuls of central Asia,* London, 1898. R. STÜBE, "Tschinghizchan: seine Staatsbildung und seine Persönlichkeit," in *Neue Jahrbücher für das klassische Altertum,* 1908. O. WOLFF, *Geschichte der Mongolen oder Tataren,* Breslau, 1872. G. BACHFELD, *Die Mongolen in Polen,* Innsbruck, 1889. J. v. HAMMER-PURGSTALL, *Geschichte der Goldenen Horde in Kiptschack, das ist: der Mongolen in Russland,* Budapest, 1840. M. DE GUIGNES, *Histoire générale des Huns, des Turcs, des Mongols,* 5 vols., Paris 1766. KOUNIK, *Renseignements sur les sources et recherches relatives à la première invasion des Tatars en Russie,* Petersburg, 1856 (in Mélanges asiatiques). F.

PÉTIS DE LA CROIX, *Histoire du grand Genghizcan*, Paris, 1710, translated into English, *The history of Genghizcan the Great*, London, 1722. See also the literature on the early history of the Asiatic nomads, outline XI above.

Hungary. J. ANDRÁSSY, *The development of Hungarian constitutional liberty*, translated by C. ARTHUR and ILNOA GINEVER, London, 1908, extends to 1619. G. BECHMANN, *Der Kampf König Sigmunds gegen die werdende Weltmacht der Osmanen, 1392–1437*, Gotha, 1902. L. KUPELWIESER, *Die Kämpfe Ungarns mit den Osmanen bis zur Schlacht bei Mohács*, Vienna, 1895. W. FRAKNÓI, *Mathias Corvinus, König von Ungarn, 1458–1490*, a German translation, Freiburg, 1891.

Serbia. Prince and Princess LAZAROVICH-HREBELIANOVICH, *The Servian people: their past glory and their destiny*, 2 vols., New York, 1910. K. JIRECEK, *Staat und Gesellschaft im mittelalterlichen Serbien: Studien zur Kulturgeschichte des 13–15 Jahrhundert*, part I, Vienna, 1912 (Denkschriften der k. Ak. der Wissenschaften in Wien, phil.-hist. Klasse, 56, vols. II–III).

Latins in the Levant. G. SCHLUMBERGER, *Expéditions des Almugavares ou routiers catalans en Orient de l'an 1302–1311*, Paris, 1902. C. BUCHON, *Histoire des conquêtes et de l'établissements des Français dans les provinces de l'ancienne Grèce au moyen âge*, Paris, 1846.

Scanderbeg. J. PISKO, *Scanderbeg*, Vienna, 1894. G. T. PETROVITCH, *Scander-beg (Georges Castriota)*, Paris, 1881. C. PAGANEL, *Histoire de Scanderbeg: ou Turcs et Chrétiens au XV^e siècle*, Paris, 1855 (see review of this and other books on Albania and Scanderbeg, in *Edinburgh review*, CLIV (1881), 325–356).

Ottoman Turks. N. JORGA, *Geschichte des Osmanischen Reiches nach den Quellen dargestellt*, 5 vols., Gotha, 1908–1913, part of no. 332 above, is now the standard work. It supersedes the following two old standard work on the subject: J. v. HAMMER-PURGSTALL, *Geschichte des osmanischen Reiches*, 2nd edition, 4 vols., Pesth, 1834–1836, translated into French by J. J. HELLERT, 18 vols., and an atlas, Paris, 1835–1843; and J. W. ZINKEISEN, *Geschichte des osmanischen Reichs in Europa*, 7 vols., Gotha, 1840–1863, part of no. 332 above.

H. A. GIBBONS, *The foundation of the Ottoman empire: a history of the Osmanlis up to the death of Bayezid I (1300–1403)*, New York, 1916. E. A. FREEMAN, *The Ottoman power in Europe: its nature, its growth, and its decline*, London, 1877. E. S. CREASY, *History of the Ottoman Turks*, new and revised edition, London, 1878. C. ELIOT, *Turkey in Europe*, London, 1907, new edition, 1908. Sir M. SYKES, *The caliphs' last heritage: a short history of the Turkish*

empire, London, 1915. *Journal of the Royal Asiatic society*, London, 1834ff.

A. DE LA JONQUIÈRE, *Histoire de l'empire Ottoman depuis les origines jusqu'à nos jours*, Paris, 1881, new edition, revised, 2 vols., Paris, 1914. H. GANEM, *Les sultans Ottomans*, 2 vols., in one, Paris, 1901–1902. T. G. DJUVARA, *Cent projets de partage de la Turquie (1281–1913)*, Paris, 1914. Y. FEHMI, *Histoire de la Turquie*, with a preface by A. BAUMANN, Paris, 1909. T. LAVALLÉE, *Histoire de la Turquie*, 2nd edition, vols. I and II, Paris, 1859. A. VÁMBÉRY, *Das Türkenvolk in seinen ethnologischen und ethnographischen Beziehungen geschildert*, Leipzig, 1885.

Fall of Constantinople, 1453. C. MIJATOVICH, *Constantine, the last emperor of the Greeks: or the conquest of Constantinople by the Turks (A.D. 1453) after the latest historical researches*, London, 1892. E. A. VLASTO, *Les derniers jours de Constantinople*, Paris, 1883. J. H. KRAUSE, *Die Eroberungen von Konstantinopel im 13 und 15 Jahrhundert*, Halle, 1870. A. D. MORDTMANN, *Belagerung und Eroberung von Konstantinopel durch die Türken im Jahre 1453*, Stuttgart, 1858.

Scandinavia. P. GIRGENSOHN, *Die skandinavische Politik der Hanse 1375–1395*, Upsala, 1899. H. DENICKE, *Die Hansestädte, Dänemark und Norwegen 1369–1376*, Halle, 1880. M. OEHLER, *Die Beziehungen Deutschlands zu Dänemark von der Kölner Konföderation bis zum Tode Karls IV*, Halle, 1892. R. USINGER, *Deutsch-Dänische Geschichte 1189–1227*, Berlin, 1863. D. SCHÄFER, *Dänische Annalen und Chroniken von der Mitte des XIII bis zum XV Jahrhundert*, Hannover, 1872; and his, *Die Hansestädte und König Waldemar von Denmark: Hansische Geschichte bis 1376*, Jena, 1879. P. ZORN, *Staat und Kirche in Norwegen bis zum Schluss des XIII Jahrhunderts*, Munich, 1873.

Original sources. The general collections of sources for the east and north of Europe in the middle ages are listed above, nos. **1002–1011.** See also no. **986** above.

Documents inédits relatifs à l'histoire de la Grèce au moyen âge, edited by C. N. SATHAS, first series, 9 vols., Paris, 1880–1890. *Acta et diplomata graeca medii aevi sacri et profana*, edited by F. MIKLOSICH and J. MÜLLER, 6 vols., Vienna, 1860–1890. *Urkunden zur Geschichte der venedo-byzantinischen Beziehungen*, edited by G. L. TAFEL and G. M. THOMAS, Vienna, 1858, in *Fontes rerum Austriacarum*, 2, XII–XIV. *Monumenta spectanta ad unionum ecclesiarum Graecae et Romanae*, Vienna, 1872, edited by A. THEINER and F. MIKLOSICH, contains documents from 1124–1582. *Chroniques Gréco-Romanes inédites*, edited by K. HOPF, Berlin, 1873. *Recueil de docu-*

ments sur l'Asie centrale d'après les écrivains chinois, Paris, 1881, edited by C. IMBAULT-HUART, *in Bibliothèque de l'école des langues orientales*, XVI. *The tale of the armament of* IGOR, A.D. *1185; a Russian historical epic*, edited and translated by L. A. MAGNUS, London, 1915.

The main manuscript of Konung skuggsjá [*king's mirror*] *in phototype reproduction with diplomatic text*, edited for the university of Illinois by G. T. FLOM, Urbana, Ill., 1915. Professor L. M. LARSON, of the same university, has just finished an English translation of the *King's mirror*, New York, 1917.

Bibliography. The general bibliographies for eastern and northern Europe are listed above, nos. **46–48.** For the Byzantine empire K. KRUMBACHER, *Geschichte der Byzantinischen Literatur*, no. **800** above, is our great store house of learning, including historical bibliography.

Good general bibliographies are also to be found at the end of chapters in LAVISSE and RAMBAUD, *Histoire générale*, and the head of the paragraphs indicated above in LOSERTH, *Geschichte des späteren Mittelalters*. There is a very good bibliography on the early Ottoman empire in H. A. GIBBONS, *The foundation of the Ottoman empire*, 319–368. See also the bibliographies under outlines XI, XVII, XXI, XXII (eastward expansion of Germany), XXIV (missions), XXVI (Levant trade and Hanseatic League) above.





PART III

MEDIEVAL CULTURE



PERIOD I. 500–1100

I. THE TRANSITION FROM ANCIENT TO MEDIEVAL CULTURE

A. Outline

1. Meaning of "history of culture." How it differs from the German conception of *Kulturgeschichte*. Current notions about the culture of the middle ages.

2. The transformation of the ancient Graeco-Roman World into the Greek Christian East and the Latin Christian West. On the difficulty of finding definite lines of division in history see outline I, part II above. Importance of dwelling long on the stability of the Roman empire and on its permanent contributions to civilization. Relative importance of the various factors which produced change from the fourth to the sixth century. Pagan and Christian moralists of the time, especially the pagan Ammianus Marcellinus (ca. 320–ca. 395), and the Christians St. Jerome (331–420) and Salvian (died ca. 484), a presbyter of Marseilles, who wrote the *De gubernatione Dei*. Danger of resorting to sweeping explanations of the decline of the Roman empire.

3. The victory of the Latin language in the west. Its introduction and spread in the provinces by soldiers, colons, slaves, officials, teachers, and priests. Difference between spoken and written Latin. The *Vulgate* of St. Jerome. The relation of Latin to the romanic languages.

4. The decline of the study of Greek in the west and of Latin in the east. Neither one nor the other of these interesting phenomena has been investigated thoroughly. Gradual evolution of two clear-cut spheres of Christian culture, the Greek East and the Latin West. Waning interest in the Greek and the Latin classics and in learning in general about 500 A.D. The closing of the School of Athens in 529.

5. The changing Roman civilization is illustrated best in southern Gaul, in the fourth and fifth centuries. Famous schools in Bordeaux, Toulouse, Narbonne, Poitiers, and Angoulême. (Imperial Trèves). The program of studies. The study of oratory. Influence of the *Institutes* of Quintilian (ca. 35–95 A.D.). Increase

of formalism in education. State support of schools. Ausonius (ca. 310–ca. 393) and his circle. His acquaintance with the Latin classics. His famous poem entitled *Mosella*. The coming of the barbarians into this region.

6. Prominent Roman nobles in this time of change. Q. Aurelius Symmachus (ca. 345–ca. 405); praefect of Rome in 384–385, and consul in 391. His literary learning. Apollinaris Sidonius (ca. 431–ca. 484), a provincial noble of Lyons, bishop of Clermont-Ferrand. His enthusiasm for classical learning in a land overrun by the Visigoths.

7. The conflict of religions. Conflict between Christianity and the worship of Isis, Mithraism *(Taurobolium)*, Manichaeism, and Neo-platonism. Heresies within the church. Arianism and Donatism. The lingering death of paganism. Christian proscription of paganism. The edicts concerning paganism in the Theodosian Code, 438. The emperor Julian, "the Apostate," 361–363. The appeal of Symmachus in 384 for the restoration of the Altar of Victory in Rome. Pagan revivals, especially that after the sack of Rome in 410.

8. Christianity and Graeco-Roman culture. Attitude of the church fathers towards the ancient classics. The fundamental difference of ideals in ancient classical and Christian life and literature. The conversion of Ausonius' pupil Paulinus (353–431), who became bishop of Nola in 409.

9. The barbarians and Graeco-Roman culture. Comparatively small number of invading barbarians. Exaggerated notion of the destruction which they wrought. Their respect for the culture of the Graeco-Roman world. Evidence concerning the sack of Rome in 410 and 455. For the behavior of Theodoric and his Ostrogoths see outline II, part II, above. The *Life of Saint Severinus* (died ca. 482 in Noricum) by Eugippius.

B. SPECIAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR READING

Short general surveys. H. O. TAYLOR, *The classical heritage of the middle ages*, New York, 1901, 3rd edition, 1911, 1–43. J. B. BURY, *Later Roman empire*, I, 1–36. *Cambridge medieval history*, I, 452–597. W. L. WESTERMANN, "The economic basis of the decline of ancient culture," in *American historical review*, XX (1915), 723–743.

Longer general accounts. H. O. TAYLOR, *The mediaeval mind*, I, 1–123. M. GUIZOT, *History of civilization in Europe*, lectures I–III. See also nos. **753** and **763** above.

Standard book. By far the best treatment of the subject of this outline is S. DILL, *Roman society in the last century of the western empire*, London, 1898, second, revised, edition, 1899 (often reprinted).

Latin language and literature. MUNRO and SELLERY, *Medieval civilization*, 3–17, "Victory of the Latin language," which is a translation of a portion of a chapter in LAVISSE, *Histoire de France*, I, part II, 385–423. SANDYS, *A history of classical scholarship*, I, ch. XIII. E. NORDEN, "Die lateinische Literatur im Übergang vom Alterthum zum Mittelalter," in *Kultur der Gegenwart*, 1905, 1:8, 374–411, 2nd edition (1907), 401–438, 3rd edition (1912), 483–522. M. ROGER, *L'enseignement des lettres classiques d'Ausone à Alcuin*, Paris, 1905, 1–88. D. COMPARETTI, *Virgilio nel medio evo*, 2 vols., Leghorn, 1872, 2nd edition, Florence, 1896, translated from the first edition by E. F. M. BENECKE, *Vergil in the middle ages*, London, 1895, chs. IV–V. GRISAR, *History of Rome*, III, 239–249, "Vulgar Latin."

The triumph of Christianity. *Cambridge medieval history*, I, ch. IV. E. EMERTON, "The religious environment of early Christianity," in *Harvard theological review*, III, (1910), 181–208. J. B. CARTER, *The religious life of ancient Rome*, Boston, 1911, 95–158. GIBBON, *Decline and fall*, chs. XX–XXI, XXIII, XXVIII.

Original sources. Short extracts in J. C. AYER, *Source book for ancient church history*, 297–429. *The life of Saint Severinus* by EUGIPPIUS, translated by G. W. ROBINSON, Harvard University Press, 1914. *The letters of Sidonius*, translated by O. M. DALTON, Oxford University Press, 1914. Some of his letters are also translated in HODGKIN, *Italy and her invaders*, II, 314–371. The more interesting writings of St. Jerome are translated in *Nicene and post-Nicene fathers*, 2nd series, vol VI. Extracts from the *Institutes of* QUINTILIAN may be read in English translation in P. MONROE, *Source book of the history of education for the Greek and Roman period*, New York, 1901, 445–509.

Maps. Study SHEPHERD, *Atlas*, 38–39, 42–43.

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General books. See the bibliographies under outlines I and II of part II above. Many histories of the church, nos. **394–478** above, are useful.

Intellectual history. J. H. ROBINSON, "Some reflections on intellectual history," in his *The new history*, 101–131.

General accounts. T. R. GLOVER, *Life and letters in the fourth century*, Cambridge, 1901. A. F. OZANAM, *La civilisation au cin-*

quième siècle, vols. I and II of his *Oeuvres complètes*, Paris, 1855, 5th edition, 1894, translated by A. C. GLYN, *History of civilization in the fifth century*, 2 vols., London, 1868. O. SEECK, *Geschichte des Untergangs der antiken Welt*, vols. I–V, Berlin, 1895–1913 (see especially V, 217–259, "Die letzte Erhebung des Heidentums").

Latin language and literature. W. S. TEUFFEL, *Geschichte der römischen Literatur*, 6th edition, 3 vols., Leipzig and Berlin, 1910–1913, translated from the 5th German edition by G. C. W. WARR, 2 vols., London, 1900. M. SCHANZ, *Geschichte der römischen Literatur bis zum Gesetzgebungswerk des Kaisers Justinian*, 4 vols., Munich, 1890–1904 (in I. MÜLLER, *Handbuch der klassischen Altertumswissenschaft*, VIII), 2nd edition, 1898–1914 (vol. IV extends from Constantine to Justinian, but is not complete in the latest edition). A. BAUMGARTNER, *Geschichte der Weltliteratur*, IV, 84–203, see also 229–241, "Die Erhaltung des Lateins als lebendige Sprache." A. EBERT, *Allgemeine Geschichte der Literatur des Mittelalters*, I, book II. E. NORDEN, *Die antike Kunstprosa*, II, 573–656. F. CUMONT, "Pourquoi le latin fut le seule langue liturgique de l'Occident?" in *Mélanges Paul Frédéricq*, Brussels, 1904, 63ff. L. HAHN, "Zum Gebrauch der lateinischen Sprache in Konstantinopel," in *Festgabe für Martin von Schanz*, Würzburg, 1912, 173–183. F. A. BELIN, *Histoire de la latinité de Constantinople*, 2nd edition, Paris, 1894. L. VALENTIN, *Saint Prosper d'Aquitaine: étude sur la littérature latine au 5e siècle en Gaule*, Paris, 1900. H. GOELZER, *Etude lexicographique et grammaticale de la latinité de Saint Jérôme*, Paris, 1884; and his *Le latin de S. Avit, évêque de Vienne (450–526)*, Paris, 1909. A. DUBOIS, *La latinité d'Ennodius*, Paris, 1903. L. BERGMÜLLER, *Bemerkungen zur Latinität des Jordanes*, Augsburg, 1903 (Programm). C. H. GRANDGENT, *An introduction to vulgar Latin*, Boston, 1907. F. G. MOHL, *Introduction à la chronologie du latin vulgaire*, Paris, 1899.

Greek. K. KRUMBACHER, "Die griechische Literatur des Mittelalters (324–1453A.D.)," in *Kultur der Gegenwart*, 1:8 (1905), 237–285, 2nd edition (1907), 239–290 (see also pp. 200–238). SANDYS, *A history of classical scholarship*, I, chs. XX–XXI. A. and M. CROISET, *Histoire de la littérature grecque*, 5 vols., Paris, 1887–1900, 2nd and 3rd editions, 1899–1914, V, last two chapters. See also ch. XXIX of their, *An abridged history of Greek literature*, translated by G. F. HEFFELBOWER, New York, 1904. H. STEINACKER, "Die römische Kirche und die griechischen Sprachkenntnisse des Frühmittelalters," in *Festschrift für Theodor Gomperz*, Vienna, 1902, 324–341.

Saint Jerome. G. GRÜTZMACHER, *Hieronymus: eine biographische Studie zur alten Kirchengeschichte*, 3 vols., Leipzig, 1901–1908. E. L.

CUTTS, *Saint Jerome*, 4th edition, London, 1897 (The fathers for English readers). Mrs. C. MARTIN, *The life of St. Jerome*, London, 1888. J. DE SIGÜENZA, *The life of Saint Jerome, the great doctor of the church, in six books, from the original Spanish . . . 1595*, by M. MONTEIRO, London, 1907. A. LARGENT, *Saint Jérôme*, 6th edition, Paris, 1907 (Les saints). J. BROCHET, *S. Jérôme et ses ennemis*, Paris, 1906. J. TURMEL, *St. Jérôme*, Paris, 1906. L. SANDERS, *Etudes sur St. Jérôme*, Paris, 1903.

Later Roman education. P. R. COLE, *Later Roman education in Ausonius, Capella and the Theodosian Code*, New York, 1909. G. RAUSCHEN, *Das griechisch-römische Schulwesen zur Zeit des ausgehenden Heidentum*, Bonn, 1901. O. DENK, *Geschichte des Gallo-fränkischen Unterrichts- und Bildungswesens*, Mainz, 1892, chs. I–V. G. KAUFMAN, *Rhetorenschulen und Klosterschulen oder heidnische und Christliche Cultur in Gallien während des 5 und 6 Jahrhunderts*, Leipzig, 1869 (Historisches Taschenbuch).

Ausonius. MARIE J. BYRNE, *Prolegomena to an edition of the works of Decimus Magnus Ausonius*, Columbia University Press, 1917. R. PICHON, *Les derniers écrivains profanes: les Panégyristes; Ausone; le Querolus Rutilius Namatianus*, Paris, 1906 (Etudes sur l'histoire de la littérature latine dans les Gaules); see also book IV of his *Histoire de la littérature latine*, 3rd edition, Paris, 1903. P. DE LABRIOLLE, *Une épisode de la fin du paganisme: la correspondance d'Ausone et de Paulin de Nola*, Paris, 1910, contains translations into French together with studies. C. JULLIAN, *Ausone et Bordeaux: études sur les derniers temps de la Gaule romaine*, Paris, 1893.

Apollinaris Sidonius. P. ALLARD, *Saint Sidoine Apollinaris (413–489)*, Paris, 1909 (Les saints). T. MOMMSEN, "Apollinaris Sidonius und seine Zeit," Rede zum Geburstsag des Kaisers, 1885, in his *Reden und Aufsätze*, Berlin, 1905, 132–143.

Conflict of religions in the Roman empire. The fundamental books are those by F. CUMONT, *Les religions orientales dans le paganism romain*, Paris, 1906, 2nd edition, 1909, translated by G. SHOWERMAN, *Oriental religions in Roman paganism*, Chicago, 1911; and his *Les mystères de Mithra*, Paris, 1900, 3rd edition, 1913, translated from the second edition by J. M. MCCORMACK, *The mysteries of Mithra*, Chicago, 1910. F. LEGGE, *Forerunners and rivals of Christianity: being studies in religious history from 330 B.C. to 330 A. D.*, 2 vols., Cambridge University Press, 1915, II, ch. XII, "The worship of Mithras," ch. XIII, "Manes and the Manichaeans." T. R. GLOVER, *The conflict of religions in the early Roman empire*, London, 1910. C. ELSEE, *Neoplatonism in relation to Christianity: an essay.*

Cambridge University Press, 1908. C. BIGG, *Neoplatonism*, London. 1895.

The end of paganism. G. BOISSIER, *La fin du paganisme*, 2 vols., Paris, 1891, 5th edition, 1907. MAUDE A. HUTTMANN, *The establishment of Christianity and the proscription of paganism*, New York, 1914 (Columbia University studies). W. K. BOYD, *The ecclesiastical edicts of the Theodosian Code*, New York, 1905 (Columbia University studies). G. UHLHORN, *Der Kampf des Christentums mit dem Heidentum*, Stuttgart, 1875, translated from the 3rd German edition by E. C. SMYTH and C. J. ROPES, *The conflict of Christianity with heathenism*, New York, 1879, revised edition, 1908. P. D. SCOTT-MONCRIEFF, *Paganism and Christianity in Egypt*, Cambridge University Press, 1913. V. SCHULTZE, *Geschichte des Untergangs des griechisch-römischen Heidentums*, Jena, 1887. G. E. A. GRINDLE, *The destruction of paganism in the Roman empire*, Oxford, 1892. C. BIGG, *The church's task in the Roman empire*, Oxford, 1905.

Julian the Apostate. P. ALLARD, *Julien l'Apostat*, 2 vols., Paris, 1900–1903. ALICE GARDNER, *Julian, philosopher and emperor, and the last struggle of paganism against Christianity*, London, 1901. G. MAU, *Die religionsphilosophie Kaiser Julians in seinen Reden auf König Helios und die Götter-Mutter*, Leipzig, 1907, contains translations of the two speeches. G. NEGRI, *L'imperatore Giuliano l'Apostata*, Florence, 1902, translated by the Duchess LITTA-VISCONTI-ARESE, 2 vols., London, 1905.

Arianism. H. M. GWATKIN, *Studies of Arianism*, 2nd edition, Cambridge, 1900; see also his *Arian controversy*, London, 1889 (Epochs of church history); and his *The knowledge of God*, 2 vols., Edinburgh, 1906. E. L. WOODWARD, *Christianity and nationalism in the later Roman empire*, London and New York, 1916.

Paulinus of Nola and Paulinus of Pella. J. S. PHILLIMORE, "St. Paulinus of Nola," in *Dublin review*, CXLVII (1910), 288–305. J. BROCHET, *La correspondance de Saint Paulin de Nole et de Sulpice Sévère*, Paris, 1906. P. REINELT, *Studien über die Briefe des hl. Paulinus von Nola*, Breslau, 1903 (dissertation). J. ROCAFORT, *Un type gallo-romain, Paulin de Pella: sa vie, son poème*, Paris, 1896.

The church and ancient culture. E. HATCH, *The influence of Greek ideas and usages upon the Christian church*, edited by A. M. FAIRBAIRN, 4th edition, London, 1892. G. HODGES, *The early church from Ignatius to Augustine*, Boston, 1915. A. H. LEWIS, *Paganism surviving in Christianity*, New York, 1892. H. v. EICKEN, *Geschichte und System der mittelalterlichen Weltanschauung*, 109–147. J. A. LALANNE, *Influence des pères de l'église sur l'éducation publique pendant les cinq premiers siècles de l'ère chrétienne*, Paris, 1850.

A. HARNACK, *History of dogma*, vol. I. G. LOESCHCKE, *Jüdisches und heidnisches im christlichen Kult*, Bonn, 1910. P. WENDLAND, *Die hellenistisch-römische Kultur in ihren Beziehungen zu Judentum und Christentum*, Tübingen, 1907 (Handbuch zum neuen Testament, vol. I, part II). E. RENAN, *Lectures on the influence of the institutions, thought and culture of Rome on Christianity and on the development of the catholic church*, translated by C. BEARD, London, 1880 (Hibbert lectures, 1880). U. BENIGNI, *Storia sociale della chiesa*, Milan, 1912.

The barbarians and ancient culture. F. LAURENT, *Les barbares et le catholicisme*, Ghent, 1857, 2nd edition, Brussels, 1864 (Etudes sur l'histoire de l'humanité, 5). See also FUSTEL DE COULANGES, *Les institutions de l'ancienne France*, vols. I–II.

Saint Severinus. ANDRÉ BAUDRILLART, *Saint Séverin*, Paris, 1908 (Les saints). T. SOMMERLAD, *Die Lebensbeschreibung Severins als kulturgeschichtliche Quelle*, Leipzig, 1903.

Bibliographies. *Cambridge medieval history*, I, 624–641, 691–695. M. ROGER, *L'enseignement*, pp. ix–xviii. Bibliographical notes in DILL, *Roman society;* TAYLOR, *Mediaeval mind*, I, 1–123; SANDYS, *Classical scholarship*, I, ch. XIII; BAUMGARTNER, *Geschichte der Weltliteratur*, IV, 84–203; W. S. TEUFFEL, *Geschichte der römischen Literatur*, III (1913), 210–472; and M. SCHANZ, *Römische Literaturgeschichte*, IV (1914ff.). The vast literature on the early church is beyond the scope of the above outline.

II. TYPES OF THE TRANSITION PERIOD, ABOUT 400–600

A. OUTLINE

1. Necessity of choosing a few guiding threads in a maze of change. The value of biography.

2. St. Augustine (354–430). Born in Tagaste, in Numidia. The Africa of Augustine's youth. His mother Monica. His *Confessions*. His search for the true religion (Neo-platonism, Mithraism, Manichaeism). Influenced by St. Ambrose in Milan. The "conversion," in 386. Bishop of Hippo and religious arbiter of the west. His *City of God (De civitate Dei)*. OROSIUS' *Seven books of history against the pagans (Historiarum adversum paganos libri VII*, sometimes called *Ormista* or *Ormesta*, the meaning of which is unknown). Augustine's attitude toward classical learning, especially Greek. His attitude toward the barbarians and his *Weltanschauung* in his old age. He died in Hippo in 430 when the Vandals were before its gates.

3. Boethius (ca. 475–524). A type of the old Roman nobility, more or less unwillingly in the court of a barbarian king (Theodoric), and scarcely touched by Christianity. His great contribution to the cause of learning. Translations from the Greek. His *Consolation of philosophy (Philosophiae consolatio)*, composed in prison. His execution by Theodoric.

4. Cassiodorus (ca. 480–490—ca. 575–585; about 95 years old). Contrast with Boethius. Also of old Roman noble stock, but a willing servant of Theodoric, and, in old age, a pious monk, in Vivarium at Squillace in Calabria, his birthplace. His *Variae* and *Institutiones*, especially part II, *De artibus ac disciplinis liberalium litterarum*. His great services for monastic learning.

5. Pope Gregory I, the Great (ca. 540–604). Also a Roman noble, born in Rome; the lord of western Europe as pope. He foresaw the future of the barbarians as faithful sons of the church. His discouragement of secular learning. His very popular works. Gregory's *Weltanschauung* indicative of a great change in the world since the birth of Augustine.

B. Special Recommendations for Reading

St. Augustine. The following are good short biographies in English. L. BERTRAND, *Saint Augustin*, Paris, 1913, translated by V. O'SULLIVAN, *The life of St. Augustin*, New York, 1914. J. MCCABE, *St. Augustine and his age*, New York, 1903. E. L. CUTTS, *Saint Augustine*, London, 1909 (The fathers for English readers). HARNACK, *History of dogma*, V, 1–240.

For shorter surveys see FARRAR, *Lives of the Fathers*, II, ch. XVII; CARTER, *The religious life of ancient Rome*, ch. VI; R. EUCKEN, *Die Lebensanschauungen der grossen Denker*, translated by W. S. HOUGH, *The problem of human life as viewed by the great thinkers*, London, 1909, new edition, 1912, 172–248; W. DILTHEY, *Einleitung in die Geisteswissenschaften*, Leipzig, 1883, I, 315–337; and M. GRABMANN, *Die Geschichte der scholastischen Methode*, I, 125–143. For his *City of God* read BOISSIER, "La cité de Dieu de Saint Augustin," in his *Fin du paganisme*, II, 339–390; and A. ROBERTSON, *Regnum Dei*, London, 1901 (Bampton lectures). A short appreciation of his *Confessions* is in F. DRAKE, *Masters of the spiritual life*, London, 1916, ch. I, "S. Augustine and the *Confessions*." C. DOUAIS, *Les Confessions de St. Augustin*, Paris, 1893.

Boethius. HODGKIN, *Italy and her invaders*, III, ch. XII; and his *Theodoric the Goth*, ch. XIII. SANDYS, *A history of classical scholarship*, I, 2nd edition, 251–258. MANITIUS, *Geschichte der lateinischen Literatur des Mittelalters*, I, 22–36. M. GRABMANN, *Geschichte der*

scholastischen Methode, I, 148–177. L. M. HARTMANN, *Geschichte Italiens im Mittelalter*, Leipzig, 1897, vol. I, ch. IV "Römische Kultur im Gotenlande."

Cassiodorus. R. W. CHURCH, "Cassiodorus," in his *Miscellaneous essays*, London, 1888, 155–204. SANDYS, *History of classical scholarship*, I, 2nd edition, 258–270. HODGKIN, *The letters of Cassiodorus*, introduction. ROGER, *L'enseignement des lettres classiques*, 175–187. MANITIUS, *Geschichte der lateinischen Literatur*, I, 36–52. O. BARDENHEWER, *Patrologie*, 3rd edition, §120. T. HODGKIN, *Theodoric the Goth*, ch. IX. G. PFEILSCHIFTER, *Theodorich der Grosse*, ch. VI.

Gregory the Great. DUDDEN, *Gregory the Great*, II, 285–443. ROGER, *L'enseignement*, 187–195. MANITIUS, *Geschichte der lateinischen Literatur*, I, 92–106. For general literature on Gregory the Great see outline V in part II above.

Original sources. All the important works of St. Augustine are translated into English. For our purposes the most essential work is his *Confessions*, of which there is a good translation in the *Nicene and post-Nicene fathers*, first series, vol. I. The original Latin of the *Confessions*, together with the English translation by W. WATTS (1631), is now in the Loeb classical library, 2 vols., London, 1912. The *Confessions* are also translated in Everyman's library, London and New York, 1907.

The famous *City of God (De civitate Dei)* is best read in the English translation of J. HEALEY (1610), 2 vols., Edinburgh, 1909. It may also be found in the *Nicene and post-Nicene fathers*, first series, vol. II; and is also translated by M. DODS, 2 vols., London, 1871.

Other works of St. Augustine are translated in *Nicene and post-Nicene fathers*, first series, vols. I–VIII; and in his *Works*, by M. DODS, 15 vols., Edinburgh, 1872–1882. See also the translation of his *Soliloquies*, by ROSE E. CLEVELAND, Boston, 1910; and AYER, *Source book*, 429–463.

King Alfred's Anglo-Saxon version of OROSIUS' *Seven books of history against the pagans* is translated into English in G. R. PAULI, *The life of Alfred the Great*, 1853, 238–582. The best edition of the Latin original is edited by C. ZANGEMEISTER, 1882, in no. **954** above, vol. V. It is also in Migne, no **953** above, vol. XXX. A translation of OROSIUS, by C. J. OGDEN, will appear in no. **949** above.

The *Consolations of philosophy* of BOETHIUS have been translated into good English by H. R. JAMES, London, 1897; and also by W. V. COOPER, London, 1902 (Temple classics).

For translations of some works of pope GREGORY see *Nicene and post-Nicene fathers*, second series, vols. XII–XIII.

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General books. See the bibliographies under outlines II and V of part II above.

Saint Augustine. The following are a few of the more general works. W. THIMME, *Augustin: ein Lebens- und Charakterbild auf Grund seiner Briefe*, Göttingen, 1910; see also his *Augustins geistige Entwickelung in den ersten Jahren nach seiner "Bekehrung," 386–391*, Berlin, 1908 (Neue Studien edited by N. BONWETSCH, 3). P. GEROSA, *Sant' Agostino e la decadenza dell' impero Romano*, Turin, 1916. G. v. HERTLING, *Der Untergang der antiken Kultur: Augustin*, Mainz, 1902 (Weltgeschichte in Karakterbildern). E. F. HUMPHREY, *Politics and religion in the days of Augustine*, New York, 1912 (dissertation, Columbia University). A. DORNER, *Augustinus*, Leipzig, 1908. A. HATZFELD, *Saint Augustin*, 6th edition, Paris, 1902. J. MARTIN, *Saint Augustin*, Paris, 1901 (Grands philosophes). C. WOLFSGRUBER, *Augustinus*, Paderborn, 1898.

Among the many books which treat of the spiritual development of Augustine are the following: H. BECKER, *Augustin: Studien zu seiner geistigen Entwicklung*, Leipzig, 1908. J. MAUSBACH, *Die Ethik des heiligen Augustinus*, 2 vols., Freiburg, 1909. M. L. BURTON, *The problem of evil: a criticism of the Augustinian point of view*, Chicago, 1909. W. CUNNINGHAM, *S. Austin and his place in the history of Christian thought*, London, 1886 (Hulsean lectures, 1885). W. MONTGOMERY, *St. Augustine: aspects of his life and thought*, London, 1914. L. GRANDGEORGE, *Saint Augustin et le néo-Platonisme*, Paris, 1896, part of no. 888 above. ELLA H. STOKES, *The conception of a kingdom of ends in Augustine, Aquinas, and Leibniz*, Chicago, 1912 (dissertation). H. REUTER, *Augustinische Studien*, Gotha, 1887. W. J. S. SIMPSON, *St. Augustine and African church divisions*, London and New York, 1910.

Augustine's De civitate Dei. E. TROELTSCH, *Augustin: die christliche Antike und das Mittelalter im Anschluss an die Schrift "De civitate Dei,"* Munich and Berlin, 1915 (Historische Bibliothek, 36). H. SCHOLZ, *Glaube und Unglaube in der Weltgeschichte: ein Kommentar zu Augustins De civitate Dei*, Leipzig, 1911. B. SEIDEL, *Die Lehre des heiligen Augustinus vom Staate*, Breslau, 1909 (Kirchengeschichtliche Abhandlungen, 9, 1). O. SCHILLING, *Die Staats- und Soziallehre des hl. Augustinus*, Freiburg, 1910. S. ANGUS, *The sources of the first ten books of Augustine's De civitate Dei*, Princeton, 1906. T. KOLDE, *Das Staatsideal des Mittelalters: I. Seine*

Begründung durch Augustin; wissenschaftliche Beilage zum Jahresbericht der ersten städtischen Realschule zu Berlin, Ostern, 1902. A. NIEMANN, *Augustins Geschichtsphilosophie,* Griefswald, 1895.

Africa in the time of St. Augustine. J. MESNAGE, *Le christianisme en Afrique,* 3 vols., Paris, 1915; see also his *L'Afrique chrétienne,* Paris, 1912. L. R. HOLME, *The extinction of the Christian churches in north Africa,* London, 1898. H. LECLERCQ, *L'Afrique chrétienne,* 2 vols., Paris, 1904. F. FERRÈRE, *La situation religieuse de l'Afrique Romaine, depuis la fin du IV siècle jusqu'à l'invasion des Vandales, 429,* Paris, 1897.

Boethius. H. F. STEWART, *Boethius,* Edinburgh and London, 1891 (Hulsean essay). E. K. RAND, "On the composition of Boethius' Consolatio philosophiae," in *Harvard studies in classical philology,* XV (1904), 1–28. V. DI GIOVANNI, *Boezio filosofo ed i suoi imitatori,* Palermo, 1880. J. G. SUTTERER, *Der letzte Römer,* Eichstädt, 1852. G. A. L. BAUR, *Boetius und Dante,* Leipzig, 1873.

On the question of Boethius' attitude towards Christianity, see GIOVANNI SEMERIA, *Il christianesimo di Severino Boezio rivendicato,* Rome, 1900; G. BOISSIER, "Le Christianisme de Boèce," in *Journal des savants,* (1889), 449–462; and A. HILDEBRAND, *Boethius und seine Stellung zum Christentum,* Regensburg, 1885.

Cassiodorus. H. USENER, *Anecdoton Holderi: ein Beitrag zur Geschichte Roms in ostgothischer Zeit,* Bonn, 1877, is a short but fundamental study on Cassiodorus, Boethius, and Symmachus. V. MORTET, *Notes sur la texte des Institutiones de Cassiodore, d'après divers manuscrits: recherches critiques sur la tradition des arts libéraux de l'antiquité au moyen âge,* Paris, 1904 (in part, a reprint from Revue de philologie, 1900–1904). A. OLLERIS, *Cassiodore: conservateur des livres de l'antiquité latine,* Paris, 1841. G. MINASI, *M. A. Cassiodoro . . . ricerche storico-critiche,* Naples, 1895. A. M. FRANZ, *Aurelius Cassiodorus Senator,* Breslau, 1872. I. CIAMPI, *I Cassiodori nel V e nel VI secolo,* Rome, 1877. A. THORBECKE, *Cassiodorus Senator,* Heidelberg, 1867.

Original sources. Almost all the works of these men may be found in nos. **953, 954** and **978** above. They are too numerous to mention in detail. Ample directions for the works of Augustine may be found in TEUFFEL, *Geschichte der römischen Literatur,* 6th edition, III, 361ff., and for Boethius, Cassiodorus and Gregory in MANITIUS, *Geschichte der lateinischen Literatur,* I, and in SANDYS, *A history of classical scholarship,* I.

See also *Augustin's Enchiridion,* edited by O. SCHEEL, Tübingen and Leipzig, 1903 (Sammlung ausgewählter kirchen- und dogmengeschichtlicher Quellenschriften, 2nd series, vol. IV).

Bibliographies. CHEVALIER, no. 16 above, will be found useful. For classified lists of the best recent literature see TEUFFEL, MANITIUS and SANDYS just mentioned. For Gregory the Great the best bibliographical guide is DUDDEN, *Gregory the Great*.

III. THE TRANSFORMATION OF ANCIENT ROME INTO A MEDIEVAL CITY

A. OUTLINE

1. The enchantment of Rome in the middle ages and in modern times.

> "O Roma nobilis, orbis et domina,
> Cunctarum urbium excellentissima,
> Roseo martyrum sanguine rubea,
> Albis et virginum liliis candida:
> Salutem dicimus tibi per omnia,
> Te benedicimus: salve per secula."

(This is the first stanza of a poem written between the ninth and eleventh centuries, probably in Verona. See under "TRAUBE" below.) The sentiments which Rome aroused in Poggio Bacciolini, Petrarch, and Rienzo. GIBBON, the author of *The decline and fall of the Roman empire*, wrote in his *Autobiography:* "I must not forget the day, the hour, the most interesting in my literary life. It was on the fifteenth of October [1764], in the gloom of evening, as I sat musing on the Capitol, while the barefooted fryers were chanting their litanies in the temple of Jupiter, that I conceived the first thought of my history."

2. The transformation of pagan into Christian Rome. Gradual disuse of pagan temples and other buildings, especially libraries. The rapid decline of the city in the later days of the empire, after it had ceased to be the capital of the world. Causes of the decay of Rome. Lord Byron's line, "The Goth, the Christian, Time, War, Flood, and Fire." The following saying of St. Benedict was reported by Gregory the Great in his *Dialogues*, II, 15: "Rome shall never be destroyed by the gentiles, but it shall be shaken by tempests, lightnings, and earthquakes, and shall decay of itself."

3. Rome and the barbarian invaders. The sack of Rome in 410 by Alaric the Visigoth, in 455 by the Vandal Gaiseric, and in 472 by Ricimer. Comparatively little injury done to buildings and statuary.

4. The rejuvenescence of the city in the "golden days" of Theodoric the Great. Archaeological evidence from the works of Cassiodorus. His plan to make Rome a great seat of Christian learning.

5. Her subsequent desolation in the period of the Gothic wars, 535–555. Rome was taken by force of arms in 536, 546, 547, 549, and 552. Depopulation of the city. The threat of Totila to destroy her utterly. The destruction of aqueducts. In this dread period Gregory the Great spent his childhood in Rome.

6. Consequences of the Byzantine restoration in 553. Although there was close connection between Rome and Constantinople, the study of Greek in the former city declined very rapidly.

7. The terror of the Lombards who came in 568. Rome now began to look for succor across the Alps. Weakness of the Byzantine hold upon the city. Gradual rise of the pope as real lord of Rome.

8. Topography of Rome at the accession of pope Gregory the Great in 590. Pagan buildings, especially the forums, temples, arches, baths, theatres, the Circus Maximus, Colosseum, Pantheon, the tombs of Hadrian and Augustus, the buildings of the Capitol, the aqueducts and bridges. Christian buildings, especially the five patriarchal churches, the basilicas of St. John Lateran, of St. Peter, of St. Paul outside the wall, of S. Maria Maggiore, and of St. Lawrence. These, together with the basilicas of St. Sebastian and S. Croce in Gerusalemme, were the famous "seven churches of Rome." The "regions" of the city. The *Notitia* and *Curiosum urbis regionum XIV* of the fourth century. The *Itinerary* of the Anonymous of Einsiedeln, the *Mirabilia Romae*, and the *Graphia aureae urbis Romae*.

9. Restoration of Rome in the pontificate of Gregory the Great, 590–604. At his death it was "The Rome of the church, of the popes, of the middle ages."—DUDDEN.

B. SPECIAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR READING

The fame of Rome. J. BRYCE, *Holy Roman empire*, ch. XVI, "The city of Rome in the middle ages." GIBBON, *Decline and fall*, the last chapter of the work, LXXI. F. HARRISON, "Rome revisited," in his *The meaning of history*, London, 1894, 252–283.

General short surveys of medieval Rome. N. YOUNG, *The story of Rome*, London, 1905 (Mediaeval towns), especially chs. III–V. See also the article "Rome" in the *Catholic encyclopedia*, and the *Encyclopaedia Britannica*.

Rome in the sixth century. The best brief introductory sketch is in DUDDEN, *Gregory the Great*, I, ch. II, "The world of Gregory's

childhood,'' especially 42–58. R. LANCIANI, *Destruction of ancient Rome: a sketch of the history of the monuments,* New York, 1899, especially chs. I, IV–X; and his *Pagan and Christian Rome,* Boston, 1893; also his *Wanderings in the Roman Campagna,* New York, 1909, ch. IV, ''The land of Gregory the Great.'' On the disappearance of the great libraries see his *Ancient Rome in the light of recent discoveries,* Boston, 1899, ch. VII, ''The public libraries of ancient and mediaeval Rome.'' W. G. HOLMES, *Age of Justinian and Theodora,* II, ch. X, ''Rome in the sixth century: war with the Goths in Italy.''

Standard works on medieval Rome. GREGOROVIUS, *History of the city of Rome in the middle ages,* especially I (entire), II, 1–69. This work is now being superseded by H. GRISAR, *History of Rome and the popes in the middle ages,* see especially I, chs. IV–V.

Original sources. There are practically no contemporary archaeological writings concerning Rome about the time of Gregory the Great. We must content ourselves with written evidence before and after his time, and with the present-day archaeological finds which more or less incidentally have revealed a good deal of indisputable evidence concerning the Rome of the popes.

The *Notitia* and *Curiosum* of the fourth century, the *Itinerary* of the ANONYMOUS OF EINSIEDELN (ninth century), and the *Mirabilia Romae* (twelfth century), are edited by H. JORDAN, *Topographie der Stadt Rom im Alterthum,* 2 vols., Berlin, 1871, II, 539–670. Fortunately we have an English translation of the latter, *Mirabilia urbis Romae, the marvels of Rome: or, A picture of the golden city, an English version of the medieval guide-book,* with a supplement, by F. M. NICHOLS, London, 1889. The *Mirabilia* were drawn from an older guide book, probably of the tenth century. The same book probably furnished material for the *Graphia aureae urbis Romae* (thirteenth century?), which is published by A. OZANAM, *Documents inédits pour servir à l'histoire littéraire de l'Italie,* Paris, 1850, 155ff.

All of these old descriptions are very difficult for the ordinary student of history. For elucidations see GREGOROVIUS, *Rome in the middle ages,* III, 516–562; JORDAN, *Topographie,* II, 313–536 (see also I, 37–104); and R. LANCIANI, *Pagan and Christian Rome,* ch. XIII, ''The Rome of the Einsiedeln Itinerary''; see also his *L'itineraria di Einsiedeln e l'ordine di Benedetto: memoria,* Milan, 1891. On the regions of Rome see R. L. POOLE, *Papal chancery,* 6–12, 170–177.

For the poem of which the first of three stanzas is printed at the head of this outline, see L. TRAUBE, ''O Roma nobilis: philologische Untersuchungen aus dem Mittelalter,'' in *Abhandlungen* der philo-

sophisch-philologischen Classe der Bayrischen Akademie der Wissenschaften, XIX (Munich, 1892), 299–395.

Some evidence concerning pontifical Rome may be found in the *Liber pontificalis*, the first portion of which is now translated into English by L. R. LOOMIS, see no. 949 note, above.

Maps. The best map for our purposes is in H. KIEPERT and C. HUELSEN, *Formae urbis Romae antiquae*, Berlin, 1912, chart III, "Rome from Constantine to Gregory the Great." See also the fine plan of Rome in GRISAR, *History of Rome*, I. For the interpretation of these plans some help will be derived from the following panoramic restoration of Rome in the time of Constantine, by J. BÜHLMANN and A. WAGNER, *Das alte Rom mit dem Triumphzuge Kaiser Constantins im Jahre 312 nach Christo*, Munich, 1903. See also SHEPHERD, *Atlas*, 22–23, 24, and 96. For a detailed study the famous *Forma urbis Romae*, edited by R. LANCIANI in 46 sheets and published by the Academy of the Lincei, Milan, 1893–1902, is essential for all periods of old Rome.

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General books. See especially the books on the history of the papacy, nos. 439–454 above. In the bibliography below no attempt has been made to include either the innumerable travellers' guide-books or the special treatises on the topography of ancient Rome, some of which are valuable for our purposes, especially for their illustrations. It may be well, however, to call attention to the following guide-book: J. W. and A. M. CRUICKSHANK, *Christian Rome*, 2nd edition, revised, New York, 1911.

General works on medieval Rome. O. RÖSSLER, *Grundriss einer Geschichte Roms im Mittelalter*, vol. I, Berlin, 1909. P. ADINOLFI, *Roma nell' età di mezzo*, 2 vols., Rome, 1881–1882. A. VON REUMONT, *Geschichte der Stadt Rom*. F. PAPENCORDT, *Geschichte der Stadt Rom*, Paderborn, 1857. A. PARAVICINI, *Il senato romano dal 6 al 12 secolo*, Rome, 1901. L. POMPILI-OLIVIERI, *Il senato romano. 1143–1870*, Rome, 1886. O. TOMMASINI, "Della storia medievale della città di Roma e dei più recenti raccontatori di essa," in *Archivio della Società Romana di storia patria*, I (1877).

Catacombs and early Christians. M. BESNIER, *Les catacombes de Rome*, Paris, 1909. A. KUHN, *Roma: ancient, subterranean, and modern Rome, in work and picture*, New York, 1916, is especially valuable for its pictures of the catacombs, pp. 203–310. J. S. NORTHCOTE and W. R. B. BROWNLOW, *Roma sotterranea: or, An account of the Roman catacombs*, compiled from the works of Commendatore DE ROSSI, 2nd edition, 2 vols., London, 1879. H. D. M.

SPENCE-JONES, *The early Christians in Rome*, London, 1910. ETHEL R. BARKER, *Rome of the pilgrims and martyrs: a study in the martyrologies, itineraries, syllogae, and other contemporary documents*, London, 1913.

Churches of Rome. M. ARMELLINI, *Le chiese di Roma dal secolo IV al XIX*, 2nd edition, Rome, 1891.

The Lateran. P. LAUER, *Le palais de Lateran: étude historique et archéologique*, Paris, 1911.

Monuments of Christian Rome. E. RODOCANACHI, *Les monuments de Rome après la chute de l'empire*, Paris, 1914; and his *The Roman capitol in ancient and modern times*, translated from the French by F. LAWTON, New York, 1906. A. L. FROTHINGHAM, *The monuments of Christian Rome from Constantine to the renaissance*, New York and London, 1908. E. BERTAUX, *Rome: de l'ère des catacombes à l'avènement de Jules II*, 2nd edition, Paris, 1908 (Les Villes d'art célèbres). H. BERGNER, *Rom im Mittelalter*, Leipzig, 1913 (Berühmte Kunststätten, 39). T. H. DYER, *The city of Rome, its vicissitudes and monuments from its foundation to the end of the middle ages*, London, 1883.

Roman Campagna. G. TOMASSETTI, *La Campagna romana antica, medioevale e moderna*, vols. I–III, Rome, 1910–1913. O. KAEMMEL, *Rom und die Campagna*, Leipzig, 1902 (Land und Leute: Monographien zur Erdkunde, XII).

Periodicals for Christian archaeology of Rome. *Bullettino di archeologia cristiana*, edited by G. B. DE ROSSI, 13 vols., Rome, 1863–1895; followed by the *Nuovo bullettino*, 1895ff. *Bullettino della Commissione archeologica comunale di Roma*, Rome, 1873ff. *Römische Quartalschrift für Christliche Altertumskunde*, Rome, 1887ff.

Original sources. *Inscriptiones Christianae urbis Romae VII° saeculo antiquiores*, edited by G. B. DE ROSSI, vols. I–II, Rome 1857–1888. *Iscrizione delle chiese e di altri edificî di Roma dal secolo XI ai nostri giorni*, edited by V. FORCELLA, 14 vols., Rome, 1869–1880.

Bibliographies. E. CALVI, *Bibliografia di Roma nel medio evo (476–1499)*, Rome, 1906, with an appendix, 1908. F. CERROTI and E. CELANI, *Bibliografia di Roma medievale e moderna*, vol. I, Rome, 1893.

IV. THE CLASSICAL HERITAGE OF THE EARLY MIDDLE AGES

A. OUTLINE

1. The three great waves in the continuous flow of classical influences during the middle ages: (1) early middle ages, chiefly language and political and social institutions; (2) twelfth and

thirteenth centuries, chiefly Roman law and Greek philosophy; (3) fourteenth and fifteenth centuries, chiefly Roman and Greek literature and art.

2. Survival of classical forms and ideas of government and social order in church and state.

3. Graeco-Roman influence in art and the crafts of the early middle ages. The importance of medieval archaeology.

4. The seven liberal arts *(artes liberales): trivium*—grammar, rhetoric, and dialectic; *quadrivium*—arithmetic, geometry, astronomy, and music. The Greek origin and the Roman elaboration of the idea of liberal arts. The *Disciplinarium libri novem* (not extant now) of Varro, 116–27 B.C. The *De nuptiis Philologiae et Mercurii* of Martianus Capella who wrote in Africa before 330 A.D. Cassiodorus, in his *De artibus,* was the first Christian who used the expression "seven liberal arts." Changing conception of liberal arts, and differences of meaning and content of each of the arts from age to age. Variation in the popularity of the various arts, e.g., dialectic or logic.

5. The study and use of classical language and literature. Almost total neglect of Greek in the west. Decline of interest in the Latin classics of pagan times. Popularity of the works of Christian poets and of theologians. The text books of Latin grammar. The *Ars grammatica minor* and *Ars grammatica major* of Donatus who lived about 350 A.D., and was the teacher of St. Jerome. The *Barbarismus.* The *Institutionum grammaticorum libri XVIII* of Priscan who flourished in Constantinople about 500 A.D. The first sixteen of these books were known as the *Priscianus major* and the last two books as the *Priscianus minor.* Elementary Latin readers such as *Cato (Distichia), Aesopus,* and *Avianus.*

6. Transmission of ancient knowledge of natural sciences, medicine, and mathematics. Pliny's *Natural history.* The *Physiologus.* Bestiaries and lapidaries.

7. The tiny stream of Roman law in the early middle ages. Neglect of the *Corpus iuris civilis* in the west. Roman influence in the law of the church.

8. Transmission of ancient philosophy. The services of Boethius as a translator of Aristotle and Plato. Predominance of theological learning, based largely on Jewish thought, but modified decidedly by Greek speculation and Latin practical sense.

9. The encyclopaedia of Isidore of Seville (ca. 570–636), known as the *Etymologiae* or *Origines,* in 20 books which were frequently abridged. Isidore's attitude towards the Latin classics.

10. Monastery and cathedral schools in the early middle ages.

Contrast with the Roman schools in the time of Ausonius. The monastic *scriptorium* and the transmission of classical texts. Elementary instruction by parish priests.

11. Early medieval libraries. The *armarium*.

B. SPECIAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR READING

Short general surveys. H. O. TAYLOR, *The classical heritage of the middle ages*, especially 44–70, and portions of chs. VIII–X; see also his *Mediaeval mind*, I, ch. v. E. NORDEN, "Die lateinische Literatur im Übergang vom Altertum zum Mittelalter," in *Die Kultur der Gegenwart*, I, part 8, (1905), 374–411, 2nd edition (1907), 401–438, 3rd edition (1912), 483–522. M. MANITIUS, *Geschichte der lateinischen Literatur des Mittelalters*, I, 3–21.

For details concerning Donatus, Priscian, Martianus Capella, Cato, etc., see the index of TEUFFEL, *Geschichte der römischen Literatur*, III, M. SCHANZ, *Geschichte der römischen Literatur*, IV; as well as SANDYS, *A history of classical scholarship*, I.

The seven liberal arts. P. ABELSON, *The seven liberal arts*, New York, 1906 (dissertation). H. PARKER, "The seven liberal arts," in *English historical review*, V (1890), 417–461. A. F. WEST, *Alcuin and the rise of the Christian schools*, New York, 1892, ch. I, "The seven liberal arts." The article "Arts, the seven liberal," by O. WILLMANN, in the *Catholic encyclopedia*.

Attitude towards the Latin classics. D. C. MUNRO, "The attitude of the western church towards the study of the Latin classics in the early middle ages," reprinted from vol. VIII of the *American society of church history*, 1897. D. COMPARETTI, *Vergil in the middle ages*, especially chs. V and VI.

Isidore of Seville. An easy introduction is E. BREHAUT, *An encyclopedist of the dark ages: Isidore of Seville*, New York, 1912 (dissertation), who translates freely from the *Etymologiae*. For precise details concerning his life and work consult, MANITIUS, *Geschichte der lateinischen Literatur*, I, 52–70. See also M. ROGER, *L'enseignement des lettres classiques d'Ausone à Alcuin*, 195–201.

Natural sciences and mathematics. F. LAUCHERT, *Geschichte des Physiologus*, Strassburg, 1889, edited this famous book in the Greek version, with a paraphrase in German, but most of his book consists of introduction and elucidations. M. GOLDSTAUB, "Der Physiologus," in *Philologus*, Supplementband VIII, 3, Leipzig, 1901. On mathematics see W. R. BALL, *A short account of the history of mathematics*, 4th edition, London, 1908, ch. VIII; or M. CANTOR, *Vorlesungen über Geschichte der Mathematik*, 4 vols., 3rd edition, Leipzig, 1898–1908, ch. XXXVIII. For details concerning natural

sciences and mathematics see outline XXI below. For law see outline XX below.

Original sources. The *Natural history* of PLINY, 6 vols., London, 1855–1857. SAN ISIDORO DE SEVILLA, *Mapa-Mundi*, translated into Spanish by A. BLÁZQUEZ Y DELGADO AQUILERA, Madrid, 1908.

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General books. See especially the general books on literature, nos. **782–814** above. Much general literature will also be found under outlines XVIII and XXIII below.

General surveys. L. FRIEDLÄNDER, "Das Nachleben der Antike im Mittelalter," in his *Erinnerungen, Reden, und Schriften*, 2 vols., Strasburg, 1905, I, 272–391, is the best systematic account we have at present, but see also G. KÖRTING, *Anfänge der Renaissanceliteratur in Italien* (vol. III of his *Geschichte der Literatur Italiens*), Leipzig, 1884, 1–75, "Die Cultur des späteren Altertums und die Kultur des Mittelalters." A. GRAF, *Roma nella memoria e nelle immaginazioni del medio evo*, 2 vols., Turin, 1882–1883.

Seven liberal arts. A. APPUHN, *Das Trivium und Quadrivium in Theorie und Praxis*, part I, Das Trivium, Erlangen, 1900. G. MEIER, *Die sieben freien Künste im Mittelalter*, Einsiedeln, 1886. FERRÈRE, "De la division des sept arts libéraux," in *Annales de philosophie chrétienne*, June, 1900.

Heritage of classics. K. BORINSKI, *Die Antike in Poetik und Kunsttheorie*, I, *Mittelalter, Renaissance, Barock*, Leipzig, 1914 (Das Erbe der Alten, IX). J. STIGLMAYR, *Kirchenväter und Klassizismus*, Freiburg, 1913. H. J. LEBLANC, *Essai historique et critique sur l'étude et l'enseignement des lettres profanes dans les premiers siècles de l'église*, Paris, 1852. J. W. THOMPSON, "Vergil in mediaeval culture," in *American journal of theology*, X (1906), 648–662. T. ZIELINSKI, *Cicero im Wandel der Jahrhunderte*, 3rd edition, Berlin, 1912, chs. VII–VIII. G. ZAPPERT, *Virgil's Fortleben im Mittelalter*, Vienna, 1851 (reprinted from *Denkschriften* of the Vienna academy.)

Natural science. M. P. E. BERTHELOT, "Essai sur la transmission de la science antique au moyen âge," in vol. I of his *Histoire des sciences: La chimie au moyen âge*, 3 vols., Paris, 1893. F. STRUNZ, *Geschichte der Naturwissenschaften im Mittelalter*, Stuttgart, 1910, ch. II. F. DANNEMANN, *Die Naturwissenschaften*, vol. I, Leipzig, 1910, 213–222. K. RÜCK, "Die Naturalis historia des Plinius im Mittelalter," in *Sitzungsberichte* of the Munich Academy, philos.-philol. Classe, 1898, 203–318.

Isidore of Seville. C. H. BEESON, *Isidor-Studien*, Munich, 1913 (Quellen und Untersuchungen zur lateinischen Philologie des

Mittelalters, IV, 2). C. CAÑAL, *San Isidoro: exposición de sus obras é indicaciones acerca de la influencia que han ejercido en la civilización Española*, Seville, 1897. M. MICHEL, "La livre des *Origines* d'Isidore de Séville," in *Revue internationale de l'enseignement*, 1891, 198. H. PHILIPP, *Die historisch-geographischen Quellen in den Etymologiae des Isidorus von Sevilla*, 2 vols., Berlin, 1912–1913 (Quellen und Forschungen zur alten Geschichte und Geographie, edited by SIEGLIN, 25, 26).

Heritage of classical art. H. SEMPER, *Das Fortleben der Antike in der Kunst des Abendlandes*, Essling, 1908. A. SPRINGER, *Das Nachleben der Antike im Mittelalter: Bilder aus der neueren Kunstgeschichte*, 2nd edition, Bonn, 1886. See also in general nos. 299–302 above.

Original sources. MARTIANUS CAPELLA, *De nuptiis Philologiae et Mercurii*, is edited rather poorly by F. EYSSENHARDT, Leipzig, 1866. The grammatical works of Donatus and Priscian may be found in *Grammatici latini*, edited by H. KEIL, 7 vols., Leipzig, 1855–1880, Donatus in vol. IV, 355–403; and Priscian in vols. II–III. The best edition of the *Etymologiae* is ISIDORI HISPALENSIS EPISCOPI *Etymologiarum sive originum libri XX*, edited by W. M. LINDSAY, 2 vols., Oxford, 1911.

Bibliographies. TAYLOR, *Classical heritage*, 359–392. ROGER, *L'enseignement*, ix–xviii. The bibliographical notes in TEUFFEL, *Geschichte der römischen Literatur*, III; SCHANZ, *Geschichte der römischen Literatur*, IV; and, for Isidore of Seville, MANITIUS, *Geschichte der lateinischen Literatur*, I, 52–70, and BREHAUT, *An encyclopaedist of the dark ages* (bibliography appended).

V. MEDIEVAL "WELTANSCHAUUNG"

A. OUTLINE

1. Contrast between ancient (pagan) and medieval (Christian) views of life and the universe.

2. Medieval "otherworldliness" was the dominant factor in the intellectual and spiritual life of the time. The preoccupation of the medieval mind with eschatology. Man's pilgrimage from the cradle to the grave was conceived of as merely a fateful period of probation, which terminated in eternal bliss or everlasting woe.

3. Medieval assurance of definite and detailed knowledge about essential temporal and eternal things. Reliance upon written evidence which for the most part had been transmitted by the Jews. Reliance upon authority in general.

4. "The Christian epic." Conception of the universe, with the earth, the home of man, God's creature, at the center. The elaboration of lore concerning heaven and its denizens. Ideas of the beginning of all things and the creation of man. His first home. The chronology of man's existence upon earth. The expectation of a not far distant day of doom and of the rolling up of the heavens. Medieval ideas of human progress and of the ends of learning. Dominance of theology.

5. The medieval solution of the problem of evil. Man's state of innocence. His temptation and fall. His redemption and reconciliation with God. The Prince of Darkness, and his Kingdom of Darkness and its denizens. Elaboration of the idea of evil personified in the devil. Antichrist. The "powers of the air." Purgatory.

6. Belief in the speedy triumph of Christianity throughout the whole world. Consequent development of the idea of the brotherhood of all men. The writing of universal histories. Remarkable importance of ancient Hebrew history.

7. Asceticism and mysticism flourished in the midst of such ideas. Their embodiment in monasticism. Religious ecstasy.

8. Love of allegory and symbolism. Allegorical interpretation of the bible and other books. The *Moralia* of Gregory the Great. Symbolism in the sacraments of the church. Miracles. Saints. Relics. Witchcraft.

9. The church and the world. The notions of temporal and spiritual things. The Church Militant and the Church Triumphant. The church versus the state. The organization of the powers of the church and the definition of its sphere of action. The important political and social consequences of a marked distinction between clergy and laymen.

10. The Christian cult and Christian iconography as sources for the study of medieval ideas. Pagan survivals in the Christian cult.

11. The writings of the so-called "Dionysius the Areopagite" (composed about 500 A.D. and spread in western Europe in the ninth century in the Latin translation of John Scotus), as a source of medieval ideas about the celestial realms.

B. Special Recommendations for Reading

General surveys. Milman, *History of Latin Christianity*, IX, 53–97, will serve as a brief introduction. Harnack, *History of dogma*, especially I, 150–221; II, 247–318; III, 241–315; IV, 268–330. (Those who know German should read the corresponding

pages in the 4th German edition.) **The beginnings of all chapters** in A. D. WHITE, *A history of the warfare of science with theology in Christendom.* H. O. TAYLOR, *Classical heritage,* **especially chs.** V–VII. R. EUCKEN, *The problem of human life as viewed by the great thinkers,* 131–252. V. RYDBERG, *The magic of the middle ages,* **translated from the Swedish by A. H. EDGREN, New York, 1879, see especially ch. I, "The cosmic philosophy of the middle ages, and its historical development."** LAVISSE, *Histoire de France,* **II, part I, 237–242. H. v. EICKEN,** *Geschichte und System der mittelalterlichen Weltanschauung,* **is not so good for our purposes as its title would indicate; see especially 63–147, 311–325, 589–671. See the note under no. 816 above. J. WATSON,** *Christianity and idealism,* **new edition, New York, 1897, ch. v, "Medieval Christianity."**

Asceticism. W. JAMES, *The varieties of religious experiences,* New York, 1902 (Gifford lectures), 296ff., on saintliness. For literature on monasticism see outline IV in part II above.

The Christian epic. G. SANTAYANA, *Reason in religion,* New York, 1905, ch. VI. See also his *Interpretations of poetry and religion,* New York, 1905, chs. III–IV.

The legends of the saints. H. DELEHAYE, *Les legendes hagiographiques,* 2nd edition, Brussels, 1906, translated by Mrs. V. M. CRAWFORD, *The legends of the saints: an introduction to hagiography,* London and New York, 1907.

Medieval ideas reflected in art and poetry. Y. HIRN, *The sacred shrine: a study of the poetry and art of the catholic church* (the bibliography on pp. 555–570 is very valuable).

Dionysius the Areopagite. R. F. WESTCOTT, "Dionysius the Areopagite," in *Contemporary review,* V (1867), 1–28. See also the articles on Dionysius in nos. **104, 106, 108** and **112** above, and MANITIUS, *Geschichte der lateinischen Literatur,* I, 325–328.

Original sources. Practically all the writings of the middle ages are of value in this study. The writings of the church fathers which are translated in the *Nicene and post-Nicene fathers,* will be found most useful. Add to these especially BEDE'S famous *Ecclesiastical history of England,* revised translation by A. M. SELLAR, London, 1912 (see especially the account of Drythelm's visit to the underworld with its graphic picture of hell and purgatory).

The celestial and ecclesiastical hierarchy of DIONYSIUS THE AREOPAGITE are translated by J. PARKER, London, 1894, his remaining *Works,* by the same translator, London, 1897.

The revelations to the monk of Evesham Abbey in the year of our Lord eleven hundred ninety-six concerning the places of purgatory and paradise, are rendered into modern English by V. PAGET, New

York, 1909. C. S. BOSWELL, *Irish precursor of Dante: study on the vision of heaven and hell ascribed to the 8th century Irish S. Adamnan,* with translation, London, 1908.

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General books. See especially the books on the "History of freedom of thought," nos. **739–748** above, and those on "Medieval *Weltanschauung,*" nos. **815–821** above; but almost all general books on the church, nos. **394–498** above, and on the history of culture and civilization, nos. **729–849** above, bear upon the subject of this outline more or less directly. The encyclopaedias for the history of the church, nos. **104–114** above, are absolutely indispensable, and even the general encyclopaedias, nos. **96–103** above, will be found very useful. See also the periodicals for church history, philosophy, and education, nos. **176–182** above (also nos. **169–170**).

For additional general books on the church see outlines IV–VI, XV, and XXIV of part II above. For medieval science in general see outline XXI below.

Demonology, devil-lore, hell, and purgatory. G. ROSKOFF, *Geschichte des Teufels,* 2 vols., Leipzig, 1869. A. RÉVILLE, *Histoire du diable,* Strasburg, 1870, translated by A. R., *The devil: his greatness and decadence,* London, 1871. P. CARUS, *The history of the devil and the idea of evil,* Chicago, 1900, is quite inadequate, at least for the middle ages. J. BAISSAC, *Histoire de la diablerie,* I, *Le diable,* Paris, 1882. M. J. RUDWIN, *Der Teufel in den deutschen geistlichen Spielen des Mittelalters und der Reformationszeit: ein Beitrag zur Literatur-, Kultur-, und Kirchengeschichte Deutschlands,* Göttingen and Baltimore, Johns Hopkins Press, 1915 (Hesperia: Schriften zur germanischen Philologie, VI). H. WIECK, *Die Teufel auf der mittelalterlichen Mysterienbühne Frankreichs,* Leipzig, 1887 (dissertation, Marburg). W. MICHEL, *Das Teuflische und Groteske in der Kunst,* Munich, 1911. M. D. CONWAY, *Demonology and devil lore,* 2 vols., 3rd edition, New York, 1889. A. JAULMES, *Essai sur le satanisme et la superstition au moyen âge, précédé d'une introduction sur leurs origines: étude historique,* Paris, 1901. J. BOIS, *Le satanisme et la magie,* 4th edition, Paris, 1895. M. LANDAU, *Hölle und Fegefeuer im Volksglauben, Dichtung und Kirchenlehre,* Heidelberg, 1909. J. BAUTZ, *Die Hölle,* Mainz, 1882; see also his *Das Fegefeuer,* Mainz, 1883.

Antichrist. H. PREUSS, *Die Vorstellungen vom Antichrist im späteren Mittelalter bis Luther,* Leipzig, 1906. W. BOUSSET, *The Antichrist legend: chapter in Christian and Jewish folklore,* translated from the German, London, 1896. Cardinal NEWMAN, "The

patristic idea of Antichrist," in his *Discussions and arguments on various subjects*, London, 1897. W. MEYER, "Ludus de Antichristo," in *Sitzungsberichte* der Münchener Akademie, phil.-hist. Klasse, 1882, no. 1. E. WADSTEIN, *Die eschatologische Ideengruppe: Antichrist, Weltsabbat, Weltende und Weltgericht*, Leipzig, 1896.

Asceticism. H. STRATHMAN, *Geschichte der frühchristlichen Askese bis zur Entstehung des Mönchtums im religionsgeschichtlichen Zusammenhange*, vol. I, Leipzig, 1914. F. MARTINEZ, *L'ascéticisme chrétien pendant les trois premiers siècles de l'église*, Paris, 1913 (Etudes de théologie historique publiées sous la direction des professeurs de théologie á l'Institut catholique, no. 6). H. JOLY, *The psychology of the saints*, translated by G. TYRELL, London, 1898.

Mysteries, miracles, and relics. S. CHEETHAM, *The mysteries, pagan and Christian*, London, 1897 (Hulsean lectures). G. ANRICH, *Das antike Mysterienwesen in seinem Einfluss auf das Christentum*, Göttingen, 1894. A. R. HABERSHON, *The study of the miracles*, London, 1910. P. SAINTYVES, *Le miracle et la critique historique*, Paris, 1907; and his *Les reliques et les images légendaires*, Paris, 1912.

Myths, legends, and superstitions. H. A. GUERBER, *Myths and legends of the middle ages: their origin and influence on literature and art*, London, 1909. L. F. A. MAURY, *Croyances et legendes du moyen âge*, new edition, Paris, 1896. K. MEYER, *Der Aberglaube des Mittelalters und der nächstfolgenden Jahrhunderte*, Basle, 1884. A. GRAF, *Miti, leggende e superstizioni del medio evo*, 2 vols., Turin, 1892. F. W. HACKWOOD, *Christ-lore: legends, traditions, myths, symbols, customs, superstitions of the Christian church*, London, 1902.

Saints. M. and W. DRAKE, *Saints and their emblems*, New York, 1914. H. DELEHAYE, *Les origines du culte des martyrs*, Brussels, 1912. E. LUCIUS, *Die Anfänge des Heiligenkults in der Christlichen Kirche*, Tübingen, 1904. H. QUENTIN, *Les martyrologes historiques du moyen âge: étude sur la formation du martyrologe romain*, Paris, 1906 (Etudes d'histoire des dogmes et d'ancienne littérature ecclésiastique). P. SAINTYVES, *Les saints successeurs des dieux*, Paris, 1907. J. P. KIRSCH, *The doctrine of the communion of saints in the ancient church*, English translation, Edinburgh, 1910. See also no. 258 above.

Christian iconography. A. BELL, *Saints in Christian art*, 3 vols., London, 1901–1904. S. HEATH, *The romance of symbolism and its relation to church ornament and architecture*, London, 1909. J. M. NEALE and B. WEBB, *The symbolism of churches and church ornaments*, 3rd edition, London, 1906. F. E. HULME, *Symbolism in Christian art*, London, 1899. C. E. CLEMENT, *A handbook of Christian symbols and stories of the saints, as illustrated in art*, 5th edi-

tion, Boston, 1895. H. v. d. GABELENTZ, *Die kirchliche Kunst im italienischen Mittelalter: ihre Beziehungen zu Kultur und Glaubenslehre*, Strasburg, 1907. A. MUÑOZ, *Iconografia della Madonna*, Rome, 1905. R. PFLEIDERER, *Die Attribute der Heiligen: ein alphabetisches Nachschlagebuch zum Verständnis kirchlicher Kunstwerke*, Ulm, 1898. J. E. WESSELY, *Ikonographie Gottes und der Heiligen*, Leipzig, 1874. See also the literature under outline XXVII below.

"Dionysius the Areopagite." J. STIGLMAYR, *Das Aufkommen der pseudo-dionysischen Schriften und ihr Eindringen in die christliche Literatur bis zum Laterankonzil*, Feldkirch, 1895; see also his "Die Eschatologie des Pseudo-Dionysius," in *Zeitschrift für katholische Theologie*, Innsbruck (1899), 1–21. H. KOCH, *Pseudo-Dionysius Areopagita in seinen Beziehungen zum Neuplatonismus und Mysterienwesen*, Mainz, 1900, vol. I, 2–3 of no. **489** above.

Original sources. For large general collections of sources for church history see nos. **953–964** above. When no. **949** is completed as planned it will be a most valuable collection for the study of the subjects of this outline.

VI. THE FAITH, MORALS, AND LEARNING OF THE MEROVINGIAN FRANKS AND OF THE VISIGOTHS IN SPAIN

A. OUTLINE

1. The phenomenal decline of learning and civilization especially in southern Gaul. The fate of the famous Roman schools in the fifth and sixth centuries. The problem of weighing the importance of Germanic influences in the civilization of Spain and Gaul. The religious differences: the Visigoths were Arians until about the accession of pope Gregory the Great, 590, whereas the Franks were converted directly to orthodox Christianity in 496.

2. The comparatively advanced civilization of Visigothic Spain. The Byzantine influences due to Justinian's conquest in the south. The legal turn of mind of the inhabitants of Spain. Church and state. The faith and the learning of Isidore of Seville who wrote his *Etymologiae* between 622 and 623. Scant archaeological remains of Visigothic civilization. The transformation wrought in Spain by the Mohammedans.

3. Merovingian Gaul and the Roman church and Italian culture from the time of Clovis to the death of Gregory the Great. The pope's correspondence with Brunhild. The "Syrians" in Gaul.

4. The learning of Gregory of Tours (ca. 538–594), bishop of

Tours, 573–594. The Latin style of his famous *History of the Franks*. His attitude toward classical learning. His attitude toward the barbarians and the church. His poet friend Venantius Fortunatus (ca. 535–ca. 600).

5. Low state of faith, morals and learning among the clergy as well as laymen even in the time of Gregory of Tours. Persistence of pagan practices. The superstition and violence depicted in the pages of the *History of the Franks*.

6. The reforms by Irish missionaries, especially Columban (see next outline).

7. The nadir of culture in Gaul was reached in the seventh century. Almost total lack of communication between the Franks and the papacy in that century. The laments of the so-called Fredegarius Scholasticus about the learning of his time. The ignorance of the grammarian "Virgilius Maro." The deplorable Merovingian script. Very scanty sources of information for the history of the seventh century. The lack of schools. The utter decline of art.

8. The Merovingian saints. Hagiography was the only species of literature which flourished in the sixth and seventh centuries in Gaul.

9. The Mohammedan menace in the eighth century.

10. The renewed relations of Gaul with Italy in the eighth century ushered in a new era. Light from the British Isles. Chrodegang, archbishop of Metz, 742–766.

B. SPECIAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR READING

Brief general surveys. MUNRO and SELLERY, *Medieval civilization*, 60–86, "Faith and morals of the Franks," which is adapted from E. LAVISSE, "Etudes sur l'histoire d'Allemagne: la foi et la morale des Francs," in *Revue des deux mondes*, 3rd series, LXXIV (1886), 366–396; see also his "La décadence mérovingienne," *ibid.*, LXXII (1885), 796–820. There are a few pages in TAYLOR, *Mediaeval mind*, I, 191–204. A. RAMBAUD, *Histoire de la civilisation française*, I, 89–116, includes the Carolingian period in this short survey.

Longer standard accounts. ROGER, *L'enseignement des lettres classiques*, 89–169. LAVISSE, *Histoire de France*, II, part I, 216–255. F. GUIZOT, *Lectures on the history of civilization in France*, first course, lectures XII–XIII, XVI–XVIII.

Culture of Visigothic Spain. U. R. BURKE, *A history of Spain*, I, 85–107. R. ALTAMIRA, *Historia de España*, 3rd edition, I, 213–223. For Isidore of Seville see outline IV above.

Merovingian learning. A. S. WILDE, "The decline of learning in Gaul in the seventh and eighth centuries based on the lives of the saints," in *American journal of theology*, VII (1903). E. VACANDARD, "La scola du palais mérovigien," in *Revue des questions historiques*, LXI (1897), 490–502, LXII (1897), 546–551, LXXVI (1904), 549–553. A. S. WILDE, "Les écoles du palais aux temps merovigiens," *ibid.*, LXXIV (1903), 553–556.

Gregory of Tours as a historian. S. HELLMANN, "Studien zur mittelalterlichen Geschichtschreibung, I, Gregor von Tours," in *Historische Zeitschrift*, CVII (1911), 1–43. Precise facts about Gregory may be found in MANITIUS, *Geschichte der lateinischen Literatur*, I, 216–223; and MOLINIER, *Les sources*, I, 55–63.

"Syrians" in Gaul. L. BRÉHIER, "Les colonies d'orientaux en occident au commencement du moyen âge," in *Byzantinische Zeitschrift*, XII (1903), 1–39.

Idolatry in Gaul. E. VACANDARD, "L'idolatrie en Gaule au VI^e^ et au VII^e^ siècle," in *Revue des questions historiques*, LXV (1899), 424–454.

Original sources. The all important work is GREGORY OF TOURS, *Historiae Francorum libri X*, for an English translation of which see outline VII of part II above.

Maps and geography. A. LONGNON, *Géographie de la Gaule au VI^e^ siècle*, Paris, 1878, is indispensable to a student of Gregory of Tours; see also his *Atlas historique de la France*, plates III–IV.

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General books. See the literature under outlines VII and VI in part II above and the cross-references given there to still more general books. See also especially nos. **29**, **461**, and **788** above.

Visigothic civilization. R. P. A. DOZY, *Recherches sur l'histoire et la littérature de l'Espagne pendant le moyen âge*. A. BONILLA Y SAN MARTÍN, *Historia de la filosofía Española*, I, 207–268. E. BOURET, *L'école chrétienne de Séville sous la monarchie des Visigoths*, Paris, 1855. J. AMADOR DE LOS RIOS, *El arte latino-bizantino y las coronas visigóticas de Guarrazar*, Madrid, 1861. J. TARDIF, *Extraits et abrégés juridiques des Etymologies d'Isidore de Seville*, Paris, 1896. K. ZEUMER, "Geschichte der westgothischen Gesetzgebung," in *Neues Archiv*, XXIII (1898), 419–516; XXIV (1899), 39–122, 571–630. See also the literature on Isidore of Seville in outline IV above, and for Visigothic Spain in general, see outline II in part II above.

Gregory of Tours. J. W. LOEBELL, *Gregor von Tours und seine Zeit*, Leipzig, 1839, 2nd edition, with additions by F. BERNHARDT,

Leipzig, 1869. M. BONNET, *Le latin de Grégoire de Tours*, Paris, 1890. B. KRUSCH, "Zu M. Bonnet's Untersuchungen über Gregor von Tours," in *Neues Archiv*, XVI (1891), 432–434. R. URBAT, *Beiträge zu einer Darstellung der romanischen Elemente im Latein der Historia Francorum des Gregor von Tours*, Königsberg, 1890. G. KURTH, "Saint Grégoire de Tours et les études classiques au VI^e^ siècle," in *Revue des questions historiques*, XXIV (1878), 586–593.

Venantius Fortunatus. R. KOEBNER, *Venantius Fortunatus*, Leipzig, 1915. See also MANITIUS, *Geschichte der lateinischen Literatur*, I, 170–181.

Merovingian Latin. H. D'ARBOIS DE JUBAINVILLE, *Etudes sur la langue des Francs à l'époque mérovingienne*, Paris, 1900; see also his *La déclinaison latine en Gaule à l'époque mérovingienne*, Paris, 1872. E. ERNAULT, *De Virgilio Marone: grammatico tolosano*, Paris, 1886. O. HAAG, "Die Latinität Fredegars," in *Zeitschrift für romanische Forschungen*, X (1899), 835ff. B. KRUSCH, "Die Sprache Fredegars," in *Neues Archiv*, VII (1882), 486–494. J. PIRSON, "Le latin de formules mérovingiennes et carolingiennes," in *Romanische Forschungen*, XXVI (1909), 837–944.

Merovingian civilization. A. MARIGNAN, *Etudes sur la civilisation française*, vol. I, *La société mérovingienne*, vol. II, *Le culte des saints sous les mérovingiens*, Paris, 1899. A. F. OZANAM, *La civilisation chrétienne chez les Francs: recherches sur l'histoire ecclésiastique, politique et littéraire des temps mérovingiens et sur le règne de Charlemagne*, in vol. IV of his *Oeuvres complètes*, 11 vols., Paris, 1872–1881. C. GALY, *La famille à l'époque mérovingienne*, Paris, 1901. K. WEIMANN, *Die sittliche Begriffe in Gregors von Tours "Historica Francorum."* Duisburg, 1900 (dissertation, Leipzig). H. RÜCKERT, *Kulturgeschichte des deutschen Volks in der Zeit des Übergangs aus dem Heidentum in das Christentum*, 2 vols., Leipzig, 1853–1854. L. LINDENSCHMIT, *Die Alterthümer der merovingischen Zeit*, Braunschweig, 1880. For Merovingian archaeology see also nos. **299–301** above.

Learning in Merovingian Gaul. O. DENK, *Geschichte des gallo-fränkischen Unterrichts- und Bildungswesens*, chs. VI–VIII. G. KURTH, *Histoire poètique des mérovingiens*, Paris, 1893. J. J. AMPÈRE, *Histoire littéraire de la France avant Charlemagne*, 3 vols., Paris, 1870. P. LAHARGOU, *De scholis Lerinensi aetate merovingiaca*, Paris, 1892. See also especially vol. III of no. **803** above.

Merovingian saints and churchmen. C. A. BERNOUILLI, *Die Heiligen der Merovinger*, Tübingen, 1900. L. VAN DER ESSEN, *Etude critique et littéraire sur les Vitae des saints mérovingiens de l'ancienne*

Belgique, Louvain, 1907. E. VACANDARD, *Vie de Saint Ouen, évêque de Rouen (641–684): étude d'histoire mérovingienne*, Paris, 1902. G. KURTH, *Sainte Clotilde*, Paris, 1897, 8th edition, 1905 (Les saints), translated by V. M. CRAWFORD, London, 1906. P. PARSY, *Saint Eloi (590–659)*, Paris, 1907. R. P. CAMERLINCK, *Saint Léger, évêque de Autun, 616–678*, Paris, 1910. A. HAUDECOEUR, *Saint Rémi, évêque de Rheims*, Rheims, 1896. A. MALNORY, *St. Césaire, évêque d'Arles, 503–543*, Paris, 1894, vol. CIII of no. 888 above. F. ARNOLD, *Cäsarius von Arelate und die Gallische Kirche seiner Zeit*, Leipzig, 1894. E. R. VAUCELLE, *La collégiale de saint Martin de Tours (397–1328)*, Paris, 1908. H. v. SCHUBERT, *Staat und Kirche in den arianischen Königreichen und im Reiche Chlodwigs mit Exkursen über das älteste Eigenkirchenwesen*, Munich and Berlin, 1912.

Original sources. *Inscriptions chrétiennes de la Gaule antérieures au VIII^e siècle*, edited by E. LE BLANT, 2 vols., Paris, 1856–1865, supplemented by a *Nouveau recueil des inscriptions chrétiennes*, Paris, 1892.

Bibliography. MOLINIER, *Les sources de l'histoire de France*, I, 1–180.

VII. LEARNING IN THE BRITISH ISLES FROM THE FIFTH TO THE EIGHTH CENTURY

A. OUTLINE

1. The peculiar place of the British isles, especially Ireland, in the history of medieval culture. Relations of the islands with the Mediterranean world, especially southern Gaul, before the Anglo-Saxon invasion. The introduction of Christianity. Relations of the western fringe of England with Ireland before and after the Anglo-Saxon conquest. Brittany and the British isles. Celtic versus Roman Christianity.

2. Nature of the remarkable Irish learning after the Anglo-Saxon conquest of England. The knowledge of Greek. Irish handwriting and illumination of manuscripts. The *Hisperica famina*. Foreign scholars in Ireland.

3. The spread of this culture on the continent largely through Irish missionaries like St. Columban. Its effect upon the ignorance in Gaul and Germany during Merovingian times. The libraries of the monasteries of Bobbio and St. Gall.

4. Mingling of the Irish and Roman streams of culture in England. Theodore of Tarsus, archbishop of Canterbury, 668–690, and his friend Hadrian established schools for the study of Latin and

Greek at Canterbury and elsewhere. Benedict Biscop, died ca. 690. The Greek and Latin learning of Aldhelm, abbot of Malmesbury, ca. 650–709.

5. Bede, the Venerable, 672–735, the first English *savant.* "Semper aut discere aut docere aut scribere dulce habui." A product of both Irish and Roman training. All his life spent in the monastery of Jarrow. His voluminous writings of which the most remarkable is the *Historia ecclesiastica.*

6. The early spread of English culture on the continent. Winifred (Boniface), ca. 680–755, the "Apostle of Germany." His classical learning.

7. The school of York. Egbert, archbishop of York, 732–766, a disciple of Bede, was a patron of learning. His successor Aelbert was the master of Alcuin. The famous library of York.

8. Alcuin, ca. 735–804, born in Northumbria about the time when Bede died, was the most distinguished product of the school of York. He became the connecting link between the culture of the British isles and the continent in the time of Charlemagne (see next outline).

B. SPECIAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR READING

Brief general accounts. POOLE, *Illustrations of the history of medieval thought,* 1–26. DRANE, *Christian schools and scholars,* chs. II–IV. *Cambridge history of English literature,* I, ch. V, "Latin writings in England to the time of Alfred." A. BAUMGARTNER, *Geschichte der Weltliteratur,* IV, 268–291. F. A. SPECHT, *Geschichte des Unterrichtswesens in Deutschland,* Stuttgart, 1885, 1–14.

For literary details, see MANITIUS, *Geschichte der lateinischen Literatur,* I, 70–87 (Bede), 134–152 (Aldhelm and Boniface), 156–160 *(Hisperica famina),* 181–187, 236–239 (Adamnan of Hy); and SANDYS, *A history of classical scholarship,* I, 451–470.

Standard account. ROGER, *L'enseignement des lettres classiques,* chs. VI–XII.

Irish learning. For short surveys see P. W. JOYCE, *The story of ancient Irish civilization,* London, 1907, ch. I–XIII; H. ZIMMER, *The Irish element in mediaeval culture;* and K. MEYER, *Learning in Ireland in the fifth century, and the transmission of letters: a lecture,* Dublin, 1912.

Standard works on the subject are: J. HEALY, *Insula sanctorum et doctorum: or Ireland's ancient schools and scholars,* Dublin, 1890, 5th edition, 1908; P. W. JOYCE, *A social history of ancient Ireland,* 2 vols., London, 1903, 2nd edition, 1914, vol. I, part II.

Learning in England. MARGARETE RÖSLER, "Erziehung in England vor der normannischen Eroberung," in *Englische Studien*, XLVIII (1914), 1–114, is a very valuable recent study.

Greek learning in the British isles. G. T. STOKES, "The knowledge of Greek in Ireland between A.D. 500 and 900," in *Proceedings of the royal Irish academy*, third series, II (1891–1893), 187–202. T. E. DOWLING and E. W. FLETCHER, *Hellenism in England*, London, 1915. J. R. LUMBY, *Greek learning in the western church during the seventh and eighth centuries*, Cambridge, 1878.

Original sources. *Complete works of Bede*, with a translation, edited by J. A. GILES, 12 vols., London, 1843–1844 (Patres ecclesiae); the best edition of the *Historia ecclesiastica* is in vol. I of VENERABILIS BAEDAE *Opera historica*, edited by C. PLUMMER, 2 vols., Oxford, 1896; the best translation is by A. M. SELLAR, London, 1912. It is announced that a volume entitled *The sources of Irish history in the middle ages* will appear in no. 949 above.

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General books. See outline VI of part II above. See also nos. 89, 94, 735 and 788 above.

Irish element in medieval culture. H. ZIMMER, "Über direkte Handelsverbindungen Westgalliens mit Irland im Altertum und frühen Mittelalter," in *Sitzungsberichte* der k. Preuss. Adakemie der Wissenschaften (1909), 365ff. (answered by F. HAVERFIELD, "Ancient Rome and Ireland," in *English historical review*, XXVIII (1913), 1–12, who claims that Zimmer is wrong when he says that there was active trade between Ireland and Rome, 50–350 A.D.). H. ZIMMER, *Der kulturgeschichtliche Hintergrund in den Erzählungen der alten irischen Heldensage*, Berlin, 1911; see also his *Keltische Studien*, 2 vols., Berlin, 1881–84; and his "Über die frühesten Berührungen der Iren mit den Nordgermanen," in *Sitzungsberichte* der Akad. der Wiss. zu Berlin (1891), 279–317. W. SCHULTZE, "Die Bedeutung der iroschottischen Mönche für die Erhaltung und Fortpflanzung der mittelalterlichen Wissenschaft," in *Centralblatt für Bibliothekswesen*, VI (1884), 185, 233, 281. L. TRAUBE, "Perrona Scottorum: ein Beitrag zur Ueberlieferungsgeschichte und zur Palaeographie des Mittelalters," in *Sitzungsberichte* der k. k. Akad. zu München, phil.-hist. Classe (1900), 469; see also his "O Roma nobilis." H. D'ARBOIS DE JUBAINVILLE, *Introduction à l'étude de la littérature celtique*, Paris, 1883, book II, ch. IX.

Brittany and the British isles. B. PLAINE, *La colonisation de l'Armorique per les Bretons insulaires*, Paris, 1899. J. LOTH, *L'émigration bretonne en Amorique du Ve au VIIe siècle de notre ère*, Rennes, 1883.

Theodore of Tarus. G. F. BROWNE, *Theodore* [of Tarsus] *and Wilfrith*, London, 1897.

Aldhelm. G. F. BROWNE, *Aldhelm: his life and times*, London, 1903. L. BÖNHOFF, *Aldhelm von Malmesbury: ein Beitrag zur Kirchengeschichte*, Dresden, 1894.

Bede. G. F. BROWNE, *The Venerable Bede*, London, 1887, is a book for the general reader. K. WERNER, *Beda der Ehrwürdige und seine Zeit*, Vienna, 1875, 2nd edition, 1881. M. MANITIUS, "Zu Aldhelm und Beda," in *Sitzungsberichte* der Wiener Akademie, CXII (1886), 535ff.

Boniface and learning. H. KOCH, *Die Stellung des heiligen Bonifatius zur Bildung und Wissenschaft*, Brannsberg, 1905.

Original sources. *Councils and ecclesiastical documents relating to Great Britain and Ireland*, edited by A. W. HADDAN and W. STUBBS, 3 vols., Oxford, 1869–1878. *The Hisperica famina*, edited by F. J. H. JENKINSON, with three facsimile plates, Cambridge University Press, 1908.

Bibliographies. ROGER, *L'enseignement*, ix–xviii. *Cambridge history of English literature*, bibliography for ch. v. MANITIUS, *Geschichte der lateinischen Literatur*, use index. See also no. **36** above.

VIII. THE AGE OF CHARLEMAGNE

A. OUTLINE

1. The medieval tendency to look back with admiration to the glorious period of imperial Rome found striking expression in the reign of Charlemagne. Contrast between the culture of the Merovingian and Carolingian periods.

2. Learning at the court of Charlemagne. His own intellectual accomplishments and limitations. His patronage of learning and art. Importation of scholars to grace his court. Most important of all, Alcuin from York, England. Paul the Deacon (died ca. 800), Peter of Pisa (died before 799) from Italy, and probably Paulinus of Aquileia (died 802). Theodulf (died 821), bishop of Orleans, from Spain. Two famous native scholars were Angilbert (died 814) and Einhard (died 840). Three periods in the intellectual life at the court of Charlemagne: (1) 773–786, when the Italian scholars were most influential; (2) 786–800, the period of Alcuin, the high-water mark of Frankish learning; (3) 800–814, a period of gradual decline when Theodulf, Angilbert, and Einhard were the chief figures.

3. The palace school at Aix-la-Chapelle. In no sense a university, but rather an informal and heterogeneous academy. Puerility of much of the learning in this school. Its importance lies not in its achievements but in the promise which it held forth.

4. Alcuin as head of the palace school and as abbot of St. Martin's of Tours, where he died in 804. The wide scope of his literary efforts. His pedagogical genius. Limitations of his scholarship. His *scriptorium* in Tours. Disciples of Alcuin, especially Rabanus Maurus.

5. Educational reform. The letter to Baugulf, abbot of Fulda, written in 787, probably by Alcuin. Charlemagne's capitularies concerning education. Reorganization of monastery and cathedral schools. The elevation of the clergy to the position of a learned class.

6. Enthusiasm for the ancient Latin classics. Its connection with the revival of the empire. The classical learning of Alcuin. Classicism in Carolingian poetry, especially that of Theodulf, and in history writing, especially in that of Einhard. Interest in classical archaeology. The Einsiedeln *Itinerary*, ca. 900.

7. Revival of historiography. The *Vita Karoli* of Einhard and the *Historia Langobardorum* of Paul the Deacon. The famous Carolingian annals, especially the *Annales royales*.

8. The reform in calligraphy. The evolution of the Caroline minuscule which eventually became the pattern for our modern "Roman" letters. The importance of the *scriptorium* of Tours in this development.

9. The revival in art, especially architecture and the illumination of manuscripts. The royal chapel at Aix-la-Chapelle, and the royal palaces at Nimwegen, Ingelheim, and Aix-la-Chapelle. Byzantine influences.

10. Interest in native Teutonic song and story.

11. The apparent sudden decline of Carolingian culture.

B. Special Recommendations for Reading

Brief general surveys. Lavisse, *Histoire de France*, II, part I, 342–357. Taylor, *Mediaeval mind*, I, ch. x. Drane, *Christian schools and scholars*, ch. v. W. J. Townsend, *The great schoolmen*, ch. ii. W. P. Ker, *The dark ages*, New York, 1904 (Periods of European literature), ch. iii. A. Baumgartner, *Geschichte der Weltliteratur*, IV, 292–306. F. A. Specht, *Geschichte des Unterrichtswesens*, 15–30.

Authoritative general surveys. J. B. Mullinger, *The schools of Charles the Great*, London, 1877, anastatic [redacted] New York,

1904 and 1911. G. MONOD, *Etudes critiques sur les sources de l'histoire carolingienne*, Paris, 1898, part 119 of no. 888 above, 37–67, "La renaissance carolingienne" (his "La renaissance carolingienne," in *Seances et travaux de l'Académie de sciences morales et politiques*, CLII (1899), 137–166, corresponds almost word for word with pp. 37–59 of the publication just mentioned). MANITIUS, *Geschichte der lateinischen Literatur*, I, 243–288, "Der carolingische Humanismus und sein Verfall"; see also 368–370 (Paulinus of Aquileia), 452–456 (Peter of Pisa), 537–547 (Theodolf of Orleans and Angilbert), 639–646 (Einhard). MOLINIER, *Les sources*, I, 181–227, "Renaissance carolingienne."

Alcuin. A. F. WEST, *Alcuin and the rise of the Christian schools*, New York, 1892. C. J. B. GASKOIN, *Alcuin: his life and his work*, London, 1904. G. F. BROWNE, *Alcuin of York*, London, 1908. ROGER, *L'enseignement*, 313–328, 440–448.

Latin classics. L. HAVET, "Que doivent à Charlemagne les classiques latins?" in *Revue bleue*, fifth series, V (1906), 129–133. SANDYS, *A history of classical scholarship*, I, 471–482.

Carolingian calligraphy. PUTNAM, *Books and their makers*, I, 106–117. A. MOLINIER, *Les manuscrits et les miniatures*, Paris, 1892, 107–139 (an extract from these pages may be found in C. V. LANGLOIS, *Lectures historiques*, 5th edition, 171–180). E. M. THOMPSON, *An introduction to Greek and Latin palaeography*, 367–370, 403ff. M. PROU, *Manuel de paléographie*, 3rd edition, 169–191. F. DELISLE, "Mémoire sur l'école calligraphique de Tours au IX^e^ siècle," in *Mémoires de l'Académie des inscriptions*, XXXII (1885), part I, 29–56. See also in general outline XXVI below.

Original sources. *History of the Langobards*, by PAUL, THE DEACON, translated by W. D. FOULKE. For Einhard see outline VIII of part II above.

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General books. See outline VIII of part II above. See also especially nos. 29, 788 and 803 above.

General and miscellaneous accounts. G. KURTH, *Les origines de la civilisation moderne*, 2 vols., 5th edition, Brussels, 1903. A. HAUCK, *Kirchengeschichte Deutschlands*, vol. II, *Die Karolingerzeit*. H. BASTGEN, "Alkuin und Karl der Grosse in ihren wissenschaftlichen und Kirchenpolitischen Anschauungen," in *Historisches Jahrbuch*, XXXII (1911), 809–825. W. TURNER, "Irish teachers in the carolingian revival," in *The Catholic university bulletin*, XIII (1907), 382, 567. G. PARIS, *Histoire poétique de Charlemagne*, Paris, 1865, new edition by P. MEYER, 1905. L. MAÎTRE, *Les écoles épiscopales et monastiques de l'occident depuis Charlemagne jusqu'à Philippe-Auguste*, Paris, 1865. G. BRUHNES, *La foi chrétienne et*

la philosophie au temps de la renaissance carolingienne, Paris, 1903. H. BLOCK, *Geistesleben im Elsass zur Karolingerzeit*, Strassburg, 1901 (Separatabdruck aus der illustrierten Elsässischen Rundschau, III, 4). J. PHILIPPE, *Lucrèce dans la théologie chrétienne du 3e au 13e siècle et speciellement dans les écoles carolingiennes*, I, Paris, 1895.

Alcuin. F. MONNIER, *Alcuin et son influence chez les Franks*, Paris, 1853, 2nd edition, *Alcuin et Charlemagne*, Paris, 1864. K. WERNER, *Alcuin und sein Jahrhundert*, Paderborn, 1876, 2nd edition, Vienna, 1881. F. LORENZ, *Alcuin's Leben*, Halle, 1829, translated by JANE M. SLEE, *The life of Alcuin*, London, 1837. R. B. PAGE, *The letters of Alcuin*, New York, 1909 (dissertation). E. DÜMMLER, "Zur Lebensgeschichte Alchvins," in *Neues Archiv*, XVIII (1893), 51–70. W. SCHMITZ, *Alcuins ars grammatica, die lateinische Schulgrammatik der karolingischen Renaissance*, Ratingen, 1908 (dissertation, Greifswald). J. B. LAFORÊT, *Histoire d'Alcuin*, Paris, 1898. F. HAMELIN, *Essai sur les oeuvres d'Alcuin*, Paris, 1873. A. DUPUY, *Alcuin et l'école de St. Martin de Tours*, Tours, 1876.

Theodulf. C. CUISSARD, *Théodulfe, évêque d'Orléans*, Orleans, 1892.

Einhard. F. KURZE, *Einhard*, Berlin, 1899. A. SCHMIDT, *Die Sprache Einhards*, Greifswald, 1904 (dissertation).

Carolingian art. In general see no. **299** above, I, ch. II. F. v. REBER, *Der karolingische Palastbau*, 2 parts, Munich, 1892, in *Abhandlungen* of the Academy of Munich. G. HUMANN, *Zur Geschichte der karolingischen Baukunst*, Strasburg, 1909 (Studien zur deutschen Kunstgeschichte). C. RHOEN, *Die karolingische Pfalz zu Aachen*, Aachen, 1889. K. PLATH, *Nimwegen: ein Kaiserpalast Karl's des Grossen in den Niederlanden*, Berlin, 1895; see also his *Die Königspfalzen der Merovinger und Karolinger*, Leipzig, 1892. W. EFFMANN, *Centula—St. Riguier—: eine Untersuchung zur Geschichte der kirchlichen Baukunst in der Karolingerzeit*, Münster, 1912 (Forschungen und Funde). F. LEITSCHUH, *Geschichte der karolingischen Malerei*, Berlin, 1894. P. CLEMEN, *Merovingische und karolingische Plastik*, Bonn, 1892. J. R. RAHN, *Das Psalterium aureum von Sanct-Gallen: ein Beitrag zur Geschichte der karolingischen Miniaturmalerei*, St. Gall, 1878, contains reproductions and text.

Original sources. Almost all the writings of Alcuin and his contemporaries are found in nos. **978**, **983**, and **953** above. For detailed references to individual authors and works consult the bibliographies listed below. For a critical discussion of the editions of the works of Alcuin see also A. F. WEST, *Alcuin*, 183–191. *Ausgewählte Schriften von Columban, Alcuin, Hrabanus Maurus* etc. edited by P. G. MEIER, in vol. III of *Bibliothek der katholischen Pädagogik*, Freiburg, 1890. *Historians of the church of York and*

its archbishops, edited by J. RAINE, 3 vols., London, 1879–1894, part 71 of no. 995 above (for Alcuin). *Schriftquellen zur Geschichte der Karolingischen Kunst*, edited by J. v. SCHLOSSER, Vienna, 1896.

Bibliographies. MOLINIER, *Les sources*, I, 181–227; and MANITIUS, *Geschichte der lateinischen Literatur*, I (use table of contents, index, and the chronological table at the end of the volume).

IX. LEARNING IN AND ABOUT THE IMPERIAL COURT DURING THE NINTH AND TENTH CENTURIES

A. OUTLINE

1. A period of disorder and very slow advancement of culture, due largely to foes from without and political disorganization within western Christendom.

2. Perpetuation of learning in the larger monastery and cathedral schools. In France: Tours, Ferrières, Cluny, Bec, Fleury, Auxerre, Paris (St. Germain, Ste. Geneviève, and the cathedral school), Chartres, Laon, Rheims, and Lyons. In Germany: Fulda, St. Gall, and Reichenau. In the Netherlands: Liège and Tournai. In England: York and Canterbury.

3. The generation after Charlemagne and Alcuin. Rabanus Maurus, 784–856, the pupil of Alcuin and abbot of Fulda, and later archbishop of Mainz, called *primus praeceptor Germaniae*. His encyclopaedia *De rerum naturis*, and his popular book *De institutione clericorum*. His position as a thinker. Walafrid Strabo, ca. 809–849. The famous *Letters* of Servatus Lupus of Ferrières, 805–862, and his knowledge of the classics. Gottschalk (Godescalc), ca. 805–ca. 869. Hincmar of Rheims, ca. 806–882. Remi of Auxerre, ca. 841–ca. 908.

4. A Carolingian aftermath at the court of Charles the Bald. About 845 John Scotus Eriugena came to this court, probably from Ireland. He was the *enfant terrible* of his time. His knowledge of Greek. About 858 he completed a Latin translation of the *Caelestis hierarchia* of the so-called Greek Dionysius the Areopagite. His daring *De divisione naturae*, which marked a turning point in the history of medieval thought.

5. Comparatively low state of culture on the continent about 900, when there was a somewhat brighter period in England, under king Alfred the Great (died 901). Translations into Anglo-Saxon connected with the name of Alfred: Bede's *Ecclesiastical history*, Boethius' *Consolations of philosophy*, Pope Gregory the Great's *Dialogues* and *Pastoral care*, Orosius' *Seven books of history against the pagans*, and probably Augustine's *Soliloquies*. Asser's *Life of Alfred*.

6. The court of the Ottos. Bruno, archbishop of Cologne (died 965), a brother of Otto the Great. The plays of the nun Roswitha of Gandersheim (born about 935). Hedwig, daughter of Henry of Bavaria, the brother of Otto I. Ekkehard I and Ekkehard II of St. Gall.

7. Gerbert, pope Silvester II, (999–1003) and Otto III. Gerbert's visit to Barcelona, Spain. Mohammedan influences (see next outline). His interest in mathematics and the natural sciences, and in the Latin classics.

8. Renewed interest in Greek due to the close relations of the Ottonian court with the Byzantine empire.

9. The pursuit of learning in the great monasteries such as St. Gall (Notger the Stammerer, ca. 840–912), Cluny (Odo of Cluny, died 942), St. Germain des Prés of Paris (Abbo, flourished about 900, wrote a poem on *Bella Parisiacae urbis* describing the wars with the Normans), and Monte Cassino before and after the ravages of the Saracens in south Italy.

10. The legend of the year 1000.

B. Special Recommendations for Reading

Short general surveys. Taylor, *Mediaeval mind*, I, 221–243. West, *Alcuin*, chs. vii–viii. Ker, *The dark ages*, 159–227. Sandys, *A history of classical scholarship*, I, 483–514. M. de Wulf, *A history of medieval philosophy*, 149–162, 167–173. M. Grabmann, *Die Geschichte der scholastischen Methode*, I, 192–214.

Longer accounts. A. T. Drane, *Christian schools and scholars*, chs. vi–x. Guizot, *History of civilization in France*, first course, lectures 28–29. For accurate details see Manitius, *Geschichte der lateinischen Literatur*, I, 288–314 (Rabanus Maurus and Walafrid Strabo), 323–367 (John Scotus, Hincmar, and Notger), 483–490 (Lupus), 504–519 (Remi), 568–574 (Gottschalk), 585–588 (Abbo), 609–614 (Ekkehard I), 619–632 (Roswitha). A. Baumgartner, *Geschichte der Weltliteratur*, IV, 306–353. A. Ebert, *Allgemeine Geschichte der Literatur des Mittelalters*, II, 120–169 (Rabanus Maurus, Walafrid Strabo, Gottschalk), 203–209 (Servatus Lupus), III, 314–329 (Roswitha). For historical works see also Wattenbach, *Deutschlands Geschichtsquellen*, I, 256ff. G. Kurth, *Notger de Liège et la civilisation au Xe siècle*, see especially I, ch. xiv.

John Scotus Eriugena. Poole, *Illustrations of the history of medieval thought*, ch. ii (see also the beginning of ch. iii). W. Turner, "John the Scot," in *Catholic University bulletin*, Feb., 1912; or see his article in the *Catholic encyclopedia*. W. J. Townsend, *The great schoolmen of the middle ages*, ch. iii. Alice Gard-

NER, *Studies in John the Scot (Erigena): a philosopher of the dark ages*, London, 1900. PICAVET, *Esquisse d'une histoire générale et comparée des philosophies médiévales*, ch. VI, "La renaissance de la philosophie avec Alcuin et Jean Scot Erigène."

King Alfred the Great. *Cambridge history of English literature*, I, ch. VI. C. PLUMMER, *The life and times of Alfred the Great*, Oxford, 1902. S. A. BROOKS, *King Alfred as educator of his people and man of letters*, London, 1901.

Roswitha. W. H. JUDSON, "Hrosvitha of Gandersheim," in *English historical review*, III (1888), 431–457. ALICE K. WELCH, *Of six mediaeval women*, London, 1913, ch. I, "Roswitha." See also no. 482 above. J. S. TUNISON, *Dramatic traditions of the dark ages*, 137ff.

Gerbert. C. PFISTER, *Etudes sur le règne de Robert le Pieux*, 1–40, on Gerbert's scholarly training. For additional reading on Gerbert see under outline XV, part II above, to which may be added TOWNSEND, *Great schoolmen*, ch. IV.

Legend of the year 1000. G. L. BURR, "The year 1000 and the antecedents of the crusades," in *American historical review*, VI (1900–1901), 429–439, has been mentioned before. It is the best introduction to the following books and articles which Professor BURR mentions in his article. P. ORSI, *L'anno mille: saggio di critica storica*, Turin, 1887 (reprinted from the *Rivista storica italiana*, IV, 1887); his *Le paure del finimondo nell' anno 1000*, Turin, 1891, 31 pp., is the same argument in a popular form. J. ROY, *L'an mille: formation de la légende de l'an mille, état de la France de l'an 950 à l'an 1050*, Paris, 1885, contains a bibliography. H. v. EICKEN, "Die Legende von der Erwartung des Weltunterganges und der Wiederkehr Christi im Jahre 1000," in *Forschungen zur deutschen Geschichte*, XXIII (1883), 303–318. R. ROSIÈRES, "Etudes nouvelles sur l'ancienne France: la légende de l'an mille," in *Revue politique et littéraire*, 2nd series, XIV (1878), 919–924. F. PLAINE, "Les prétendues terreurs de l'an mille," in *Revue des questions historiques*, XIII (1873), 145–164. The famous passage of Ralph Glaber (died ca. 1044) on the year 1000, is translated by G. G. COULTON, *A medieval garner*, 4–11.

Original sources. J. HAVET, *Lettres de Gerbert*, Paris, 1889, part 6 of no. 968 above, contains a very valuable introduction on the life and work of Gerbert. ASSER'S *Life of Alfred* is translated in *Six English chronicles*, new edition by W. H. STEVENSON, Oxford, 1904. *Der Hrotsuitha Gedicht über Gandersheims Gründung und die Thaten Kaiser Oddo I*, translated by T. G. PFUND, 2nd edition, Leipzig, 1891, part of no. 981 above. "The school life of

Walafrid Strabo," translated by J. D. BUTLER, in *Bibliotheca sacra*, XL (1883), 152–172, is a translation of a portion of Strabo's own works.

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

Famous cathedral and monastery schools. L. MAÎTRE, *Les écoles épiscopales et monastiques de l'Occident depuis Charlemagne jusqu'à Philippe Auguste*, Paris, 1866. A. CLERVAL, *Les écoles de Chartres au moyen âge du Ve au XVIe siècle*, Chartres, 1895 (Mémoires de la Société archéologique d'Eure-et-Loir, XI). W. B. ASPINWALL, *Les écoles épiscopales et monastiques de l'ancienne province ecclésiastique de Sens du VIe au XIIe siècle*, Paris, 1904 (dissertation). G. SALVIOLI, *L'istruzione pubblica in Italia nei secoli VIII, IX, X*, Florence, 1898. A. OZANAM, "Des écoles et de l'instruction publique en Italie aux temps barbares," in his *Documents inédits*, 1850. W. GIESEBRECHT, *De litterarum studiis apud Italos*, 1845, translated into Italian by C. PASCAL, *L'istruzioni pubblica in Italia nei primi secoli del medio evo*, Florence, 1895. F. A. SPECHT, *Geschichte des Unterrichtswesens in Deutschland*. R. GRAHAM, "The intellectual influences of English monasteries between the tenth and twelfth centuries," in *Royal historical society, Transactions*, new series, XVII (1903), 23–64. E. A. LOEW, *Beneventan script*, introduction, for learning in Monte Cassino.

Rabanus Maurus. D. TÜRNAU, *Rabanus Maurus, der praeceptor Germaniae: ein Beitrag zur Geschichte der Pädagogik des Mittelalters*, Munich, 1900. J. B. HABLITZEL, "Hrabanus Maurus und Claudius von Turin," in *Historisches Jahrbuch*, XXVII (1906), 74–85. E. DÜMMLER, "Hrabanstudien," in *Sitzungsberichte* of the Berlin Academy, 1898, 24–42. F. KUNSTMANN, *Rhabanus Magnentius Maurus*, Mainz, 1841.

Lupus of Ferrières. A. LEVILLAIN, "Etude sur les lettres de Loup de Ferrières," in *Bibliothèque de l'Ecole des chartes*, LXII (1901), 445–509, LXIII (1902), 69–118, 289–330, 537–586; see also his article "Une nouvelle édition des lettres de Loup de Ferrières," *ibid.*, LXIV (1903), 259–283 (the article refers to the new edition of the letters edited by E. DÜMMLER in 1902 as part of no. 978 above). U. BERLIÈRE, "Un bibliophile du IXe siècle: Loup de Ferrières," Mons, 1912, 14 pp. (extract of the Bulletin des Bibliophiles belges séant à Mons, 1912). E. NORDEN, *Die antike Kunstprosa*, II, 698–705.

John Scotus Eriugena. E. K. RAND, *Johannes Scotus*, Munich, 1906 (Quellen und Untersuchungen zur lateinischen Philologie des Mittelalters, I, 2). C. C. J. WEBB, "Scotus Erigena De divisione

naturae," in *Proceedings of the Aristotelian society*, II (1892–1894), 121–137. J. DRÄSEKE, *Johannes Scotus Erigena*, Leipzig, 1902 (Studien zur Geschichte der Theologie und der Kirche, IX, 2). L. NOACK, *Johannes Scotus Erigena*, Leipzig, 1876. SAINT-RÉNE TAILLANDIER, *Scot Erigène et le philosophie scholastique*, Paris, 1843. N. MÖLLER, *Johannes Scotus Erigena und seine Irrtümer*, Mainz, 1844. F. STAUDENMAIER, *Johannes Scotus Erigena und die Wissenschaft seiner Zeit*, Frankfurt, 1834.

Walafrid Strabo. L. EIGL, *Walahfried Strabo*, Vienna, 1908. A. JUNDT, *Walafrid Strabon: l'homme et le théologien*, Cahors, 1900 (dissertation).

Roswitha. J. SCHNEIDERHAN, *Roswitha von Gandersheim die erste deutsche Dichterin*, Paderborn, 1912. P. v. WINTERFELD, "Hrotsvits literarische Stellung," in *Archiv für das Studium der neueren Sprachen*, CXIV (1905), 25–75.

Gerbert. K. WERNER, *Gerbert von Aurillac: die Kirche und Wissenschaft seiner Zeit*, Vienna, 1878. A. FRANCK, *Gerbert: état de la philosophie et des sciences au X^e siècle*, Paris, 1872 (Moralistes et philosophes). K. T. SCHLOCKWERDER, *Das Konzil zu St. Basle: ein Beitrag zur Lebensgeschichte Gerberts von Aurillac*, Madeburg, 1907 (Programm). K. SCHULTESS, *Papst Silvester II (Gerbert) als Lehrer und Staatsmann*, Hamburg, 1891 (Programm). On Gerbert's place in the history of mathematics see A. NAGL, "Gerbert und die Rechenkunst des 10ten Jahrhundert," in *Sitzungsberichte* der philologisch-historischen Classe der kaiserlichen Akademie der Wissenschaften, Vienna, CXVI (1888), 861–922, with four plates. F. WEISSENBORN, *Gerbert: Beiträge zur Kenntniss der Mathematik des Mittelalters*, Berlin, 1888; and his *Zur Geschichte der Einführung der jetzigen Ziffern in Europa durch Gerbert*, Berlin, 1892. M. CANTOR, *Vorlesungen über Geschichte der Mathematik*, ch. XXXVIII.

Original sources. Most of the works of writers mentioned in this outline are printed in nos. **953** and **978** above, to which the works mentioned under "Bibliographies" below will serve as guides. Special mention may be made of the following: *Oeuvres de Gerbert, pape sous le nom de Sylvestre II*, edited by A. OLLERIS, Paris, 1867. *Gerberti postea Silvestri II papae opera mathematica 972–1003*, edited by N. BUBNOV, Berlin, 1900. *Hrotsvithae opera*, edited by P. v. WINTERFELD, Berlin, 1902, part of no. **979** above; another edition by K. STRECKER, Leipzig, 1906.

Bibliographies. Scattered references will be found in MANITIUS, *Geschichte der lateinischen Literatur*, I; SANDYS, *A history of classical scholarship*, I; and WATTENBACH, *Deutschlands Geschichtschreiber*, I.

X. MOHAMMEDAN CULTURE IN THE WEST

A. OUTLINE

1. The necessity of studying Mediterranean culture as a whole in medieval as well as in ancient times. Mingling of oriental, Byzantine, Mohammedan, and Latin Christian civilization. Relations between Christians and Mohammedans throughout the length of southern Europe.

2. The intellectual and artistic development of the Mohammedans. Influence of Hellenic civilization largely through the Syrian Nestorian Christians and the Persians. Comparatively small part played by Arabs in Mohammedan culture. The influence of Aristotle. Interest in theology, philosophy, philology, history, law, mathematics, medicine, and natural sciences. Predilection for literature, especially poetry. Beginning with the ninth century there was remarkable activity in translating ancient books into Arabic. The height of cultured life in Damascus and Bagdad. The *Thousand and one nights.*

3. The binding force of Mohammedan culture kept Islam united even after the political disruption of the Caliphate. This is evident especially in Sicily and Spain.

4. The Jews as intermediaries between Mohammedans and Christians especially in Spain. Activity of the Jews as translators and commentators. Parallelism of Islamic and Jewish philosophy in the middle ages. Avicebron or Avicebrol (Solomon Ibn Gabirol), 1020–1070, born in Malaga. The great Moses Maimonides, born in Cordova in 1135. He died in Egypt in 1204.

5. Centers of Mohammedan culture in Spain. Cordova was the Bagdad of the west. The ninth and tenth centuries were the periods of its greatest bloom. The famous library of Al Hakam in Cordova in the tenth century. Seville became the center of luxurious life especially after the decline of Cordova. Toledo was a famous seat of learning. Even before its capture by the Christians in 1085 it had been a center of intellectual influence upon Latin Christendom. The higher schools in these centers.

6. The natural sciences and medicine among the Mohammedans. The experimental method. Achievements in astronomy, chemistry, physics (especially optics), geography. Inventions and discoveries. See outline XXI below.

7. Mathematics. The vexed question of the so-called Arabic numerals and their introduction into Latin Christendom. The zero. Algebra and geometry.

8. The great Aristotelians among the Mohammedans. Alfarabi (died 950) of Bagdad. Avicenna, 980–1036, born in the district of Bokhara. Averroës, born in Cordova in 1126. He died in 1198. Mohammedan respect for the teaching of Aristotle. Efforts to reconcile the dogma of Islam with Mohammedan philosophy based on Aristotle.

9. The question of freedom of thought and the warfare between theology and science in Islam. Orthodox theologians and mystics among the Mohammedans. Gazali (Algazel), 1058–1111.

10. Mohammedan literature and art in Sicily and Spain. Princely patrons. Decorative art and architecture. The great Mosque (Mesquita) at Cordova (begun in the eighth century); the Giralda (twelfth century) and Alcazar (thirteenth century) of Seville, and the Alhambra of Granada (fourteenth century). The old palace in Palermo.

11. Influence of Mohammedan culture in Latin Christendom. Early Christian scholars in close touch with Mohammedan learning: Gerbert (pope Sylvester II, 999–1003); Constantinus Africanus (eleventh century), and Adelard of Bath and Daniel Morley from England (twelfth century). Danger of ascribing too much to Mohammedan influence in the Latin west and of minimizing the Byzantine influence. See outline XV below.

12. Rather sudden decline of Mohammedan culture in the eleventh and twelfth centuries when Latin Christendom witnessed a remarkable outburst of intellectual activity which laid the basis of modern civilization.

B. Special Recommendations for Reading

Brief general surveys. There is very little satisfactory literature on this subject. An immense amount of research work must still be done, especially in the Arabic sources, before the true character of Mohammedan culture in the middle ages can be stated in a sure and systematic fashion. R. ALTAMIRA, *Historia de España*, 3rd edition, 1, 261–300. LAVISSE and RAMBAUD, *Histoire générale*, I, 773–793. E. HUNGERFORD, "The rise of Arab learning," in *Atlantic monthly*, LVIII (1886), 539–555, 817–829. J. W. DRAPER, *Intellectual development of Europe*, ch. XIII. HELMOLT, *History of the world*, III, 332–342, 347–349. E. RENAN, *L'Islamisme et la science*, Paris, 1893, is a lecture. S. GUYARD, *La civilisation musulmane*, Paris, 1884 (Leçon d'ouverture au Collège de France).

Longer accounts. C. HUART, *Histoire des Arabs*, II, chs. XXXV–XXXVI. J. HELL, *Die Kultur der Araber*, Leipzig, 1909 (Wissenschaft und Bildung, 64). G. LE BON, *La civilisation des Arabes*,

Paris, 1884, especially 465–632. S. P. SCOTT, *History of the Moorish empire in Europe*, especially vol. III. H. SUTER, *Die Araber als Vermittler der Wissenschaften in ihrem Übergang vom Orient in den Occident*, 2nd édition, Aarau, 1897. H. COPPÉE, *History of the conquest of Spain*, II, 275–449.

The so-called Arabic numerals. D. E. SMITH and L. C. KARPINSKI, *The Hindu-Arabic numerals*, Boston and London, 1911. G. F. HILL, *The development of Arabic numerals in Europe, exhibited in sixty-four tables*, Oxford, 1915. A. CLERVAL, *Les écoles des Chartres*, 236–238, has some important information on the "Boethius question" and the zero, which seems to have escaped the notice of the authors of the above two books. See also the literature under Gerbert in the previous outline.

Geography. C. R. BEAZLEY, *Dawn of modern geography*, I, ch. VII. "The non-Christian geography of the early middle ages," III, ch. VII, "Later Moslem and other non-Christian geography."

Mohammedan philosophy. M. DE WULF, *History of medieval philosophy*, 226–239. I. GOLDZIHER, "Die Islamische und die Jüdische Philosophie," in *Kultur der Gegenwart*, I, ch. v (1909), 45–77.

Medieval Jewish philosophy. I. HUSIK, *A history of medieval Jewish philosophy*, New York, 1916. See also nos. **850, 862–868** above.

Islamic libraries. S. KHUDA BUKHSH, "Islamic libraries," in *Nineteenth century*, LII (1902), 125–139.

Mohammedan art in Spain. A. F. CALVERT, *The Alhambra: being a brief record of the Arabian conquest of the Peninsula with a particular account of the Mohammedan architecture and decoration*, London, 1907; and his *Moorish remains in Spain: being a brief record of the Arabian conquest of the Peninsula with a particular account of the Mohammedan architecture and decoration in Cordova, Seville, and Toledo*, London, 1906, contain remarkable illustrations. C. G. HARTLEY (Mrs. W. GALLICHAN), *Moorish cities in Spain*, London, 1906, is a brief readable sketch with illustrations.

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General books. See outlines IX and XXXIV in part II above. See also the literature on the Normans in Sicily under outline XX in part II above. For all that concerns the natural sciences see outline XXI below.

General surveys. A. v. KREMER, *Culturgeschichtliche Streifzüge auf dem Gebiete des Islams*, Leipzig, 1873, translated by S. KHUDA BUKHSH, *Contributions to the history of Islamic civilization*, Calcutta, 1905; see also his *Kulturgeschichte des Orients unter den*

Chalifen, 2 vols., Vienna, 1875–1877, II, 396–484, "Wissenschaft und Literatur." E. W. LANE, *Arabian society in the middle ages*, edited by S. L. POOLE, London, 1883. F. DIERKS, *Die Araber im Mittelalter und ihr Einfluss auf die Cultur Europas*, 2nd edition, Leipzig, 1882. A. BEBEL, *Die mohamedanisch-arabische Kulturperiode*, 2nd edition, Stuttgart, 1889.

Nestorius. F. LOOFS, *Nestorius and his place in the history of Christian doctrine*, New York, 1914, will serve as an introduction to the history of the Nestorian Christians who did much to introduce western civilization into the Mohammedan world.

Moslem theology. D. B. MACDONALD, *The development of Muslim theology, jurisprudence, and constitutional theory*, New York, 1903. B. CARRA DE VAUX, *Gazali*, Paris, 1902. M. ASÍN PALACIOS, *Algazel: dogmatica moral ascetica*, Saragossa, 1901 (Colección de estudios árabes, VI); see also his *Abenmasarra y su escuela*, Madrid, 1914. L. GAUTHIER, *La théorie d'Ibn Rochd (Averroès) sur les rapports de la religion et de la philosophie*, Paris, 1909. J. B. RÜLING, *Beiträge zur Eschatologie des Islam*, Leipzig, 1895. J. GOLDZIHER has a section on Moslem theology in *Kultur der Gegenwart*, I, III, 1.

Islamic philosophy. T. J. DE BOER, *Geschichte der Philosophie im Islam*, Stuttgart, 1901, translated by E. R. JONES, *The history of philosophy in Islam*, London, 1903. J. POLLAK, "Entwicklung der arabischen und jüdischen Philosophie im Mittelalter," in *Archiv für Geschichte der Philosophie*, XVII (1903–1904), 196–236, 433–459. C. SAUTER, "Die peripatetische Philosophie bei den Syrern und Arabern," *ibid.*, 516–533. A. MÜLLER, *Die griechischen Philosophen in der arabischen Überlieferung*, Halle, 1873. A. v. KREMER, *Geschichte der herrschenden Ideen des Islams*, Leipzig, 1868. S. MUNK, *Mélanges de philosophie juive et arabe*, Paris, 1857–1859. M. WITTMANN, *Die Stellung Avencebrol's (Ibn Gebirol's) im Entwicklungsgang der arabischen Philosophie*, Münster, 1905 (Beiträge zur Geschichte der Philosophie des Mittelalters, vol. V, 1). F. DIETERICI, *Die Philosophie der Araber im X Jahrhundert*, Berlin, 1861.

Averroës. E. RENAN, *Averroès et l'Averroïsme*, Paris, 1852, 4th edition, 1882.

Avicenna. B. CARRA DE VAUX, *Avicenne*, Paris, 1900. C. SAUTER, *Avicennas Bearbeitung der Aristotelischen Metaphysik*, Freiburg, 1912. M. HORTEN, *Die Metaphysik Avicennas*, Halle, 1907.

Moses Maimonides. W. BACHER and others, *Moses ben Maimon: sein Leben, seine Werke und sein Einfluss*, vol. I, Leipzig, 1908. J. MÜNZ, *Moses ben Maimon (Maimonides): sein Leben und seine Werke*, Frankfurt, 1912. See also no. 867 above.

Translations from and into Arabic. M. STEINSCHNEIDER, "Die europäischen Übersetzungen aus dem Arabischen bis Mitte des 17 Jahrhunderts," in *Sitzungsberichte* der k. k. Akademie zu Wien, philos.-hist. Klasse, CXLIX (1905), no. 4; CLI (1906), no. 1 (see also *Anzeiger*, XLI (1904), no. 2, 16–25); also his *Die arabischen Übersetzungen aus dem Griechischen*, Leipzig, 1897. F. WÜSTENFELD, "Die Uebersetzungen arabischer Werke in das Lateinische seit dem XI Jahrhundert," in *Abhandlungen* der königlichen Gesellschaft der Wissenschaften zü Göttingen, XXII (1877), no. 2. C. H. HASKINS, "The translations of Hugo Sanctelliensis," in *Romanic review*, II (1911), 1–15.

Natural sciences among the Mohammedans. F. DANNEMANN, *Die Naturwissenschaften*, 1, 223–257. F. STRUNZ, *Geschichte der Naturwissenschaften*, 48–80; see also his *Die Vergangenheit der Naturforschung*, Jena, 1913, 86–118, which has good bibliographical notes. M. BERTHELOT, *La chimie au moyen âge*, vol. IV, *L'alchimie arabe*, with the collaboration of M. O. HOUDAS, Paris, 1893. E. WIEDEMANN, "Ueber die Naturwissenschaften bei den Arabern," in *Sammlung gemeinverständlicher wissenschaftlichen Vorträge*, series II, vol. V, Hamburg, 1890, was but a promise of the important monographic work which he has since done in this field; see e.g., his "Zur Chemie bei den Arabern," in *Sitzungsberichte* der physikalisch-medizinischen Societät in Erlangen, XLIII (1911); "Die Alchemie bei den Arabern," in *Journal für praktische Chemie* LXXVI (1907), 85–87, 105–123; and "Zur Geschichte des Kompasses bei den Arabern," in *Verhandlungen der deutschen physikalischen Gesellschaft zu Berlin*, IX (1907), 764–773. M. STEINSCHNEIDER, *Al Farabi, des arabischen Philosophen Leben und Schriften*, in *Mémoires* de l'Académie Imperiale des sciences de St. Pétersbourg, series VII, vol. XIII, 4 (1869). L. LECLERC, *Histoire de la médecine arabe*, 2 vols., Paris, 1876. F. WÜSTENFELD, *Geschichte der Arabischen Ärzte und Naturforscher*, Göttingen, 1840. J. J. SÉDILLOT, *Mémoires sur les instruments astronomiques des Arabes*, Paris, 1841–1845.

Mathematics. W. W. R. BALL, *A short account of the history of mathematics*, 4th edition, London, 1908, 144–163; in the French edition, translated by L. FREUND, *Histoire des mathématiques*, 2 vols., Paris, 1906, I, 152–171. M. CANTOR, *Vorlesungen über Geschichte der Mathematik*, 4 vols., 3rd edition, Leipzig, 1898–1908, I, chs. XXXII–XXXVII. S. GÜNTHER, *Geschichte der Mathematik*, I, Leipzig, 1908, chs. XII–XIII. F. CAJORI, *A history of mathematics*, New York, 1895, 100–117. H. SUTER, "Die Mathematiker und Astronomen der Araber und ihre Werke," in *Abhandlungen zur Geschichte der mathe-*

matischen Wissenschaften, Leipzig, X (1900), also XIV (1902), 155–185. L. JORDAN, "Materialien zur Geschichte der arabischen Zahlzeichen in Frankreich," in *Archiv zur Kulturgeschichte,* III (1905), 155–195, contends that the so-called Arabic numerals are of Egyptian origin. A. HUEMER, "Die Einführung des dt.-arab. Zahlensystems in Frankreich und Deutschland," in *Zeitschrift für die österreichischen Gymnasien,* 1904. M. SÉDILLOT, *Matériaux pour servir à l'histoire des sciences mathématiques chez les Grecs et les Orientaux,* 2 vols., Paris, 1845–1849.

Mohammedan education. J. RIBERA, *La enseñanza entre los Musulmanes Españoles,* Saragossa, 1893; see also his *Bibliófilos y bibliotecas en la España musulmana,* 2nd edition, Saragossa, 1896. K. A. SCHMID, in *Geschichte der Erziehung,* II, part I, pp. 549–611. F. WÜSTENFELD, *Die Academien der Araber und ihre Lehrer,* Göttingen, 1837. D. HANEBERG, *Abhandlungen über das Schul- und Lehrwesen der Muhamedaner im Mittelalter,* Munich, 1850.

Mohammedan literature. R. A. NICHOLSON, *A literary history of the Arabs,* London, 1907, especially chs. VII–IX. C. HUART, *Littérature arabe,* Paris, 1902, 2nd edition, 1912, translated by Lady MARY LOYD, *A history of Arab literature,* London, 1903. I. PIZZI, *Letteratura araba,* Milan, 1903 (Manuels Hoepli). C. BROCKELMANN, *Geschichte der arabischen Literatur,* 2 vols., and index, Berlin, 1898–1902; he has condensed his material in a good popular sketch, *Geschichte der arabischen Literatur,* Leipzig, 1901 (Die Literaturen des Ostens, vol. VI, part 2). M. J. DE GOEJE, "Geschichte der arabischen Literatur," in *Kultur der Gegenwart,* I, VII, 5. J. C. L. S. DE SISMONDI, *Literature of the south of Europe,* I, chs. II and III. A. F. v. SCHACK, *Poesie und Kunst der Araber in Spanien und Sizilien,* 2 vols., 2nd edition, Stuttgart, 1877, translated into Spanish by J. VALERA, 3 vols., Madrid, 1893. J. v. HAMMER-PURGSTALL, *Literaturgeschichte der Araber bis zum Ende des 12 Jahrhunderts,* 7 vols., Vienna, 1850–1856. R. DOZY and W. H. ENGELMANN, *Glossaire des mots españols dérivés de l'arabe,* 2nd edition, Leyden, 1869.

Mohammedan historiography. F. WÜSTENFELD, "Die Geschichtschreiber der Araber und ihre Werke," in *Abhandlungen* der k. Gesellschaft zu Göttingen, XXVIII (1881); XXIX (1882). F. PONS BOIGUES, *Ensayo bio-bibliográfico sobre los historiadores y geógrafos arábigo-españoles,* Madrid, 1898.

Mohammedan art. *Monumentos arquitectónicos de España,* Madrid, 1877. H. SALADIN and G. MIGEON, *Manuel d'art musulman,* 2 vols., Paris, 1907. M. JUNGHÄNDEL, *Die Baukunst Spaniens in ihren hervorragenden Werken,* Dresden, 1889–1893. W. and G.

MARÇAIS. *Les monuments Arabes de Tlemçen*. Paris, 1903. B. and ELLEN M. WHISHAW. *Arabic Spain: sidelights on her history and art*. London, 1912. A. GAYET. *L'Art arabe*, Paris, [n. d.]. C. UHDE, *Baudenkmäler in Spanien und Portugal*. Berlin, 1889–1893. J. FRANZ-PASCHA. *Die Baukunst des Islam*. Darmstadt, 1896. R. BORRMANN and J. NEUWIRTH. *Geschichte der Baukunst*. I. 319–375. See also other general histories of art under outline XXVII below.

Original sources. For translations of the *Thousand and one nights* see MACDONALD. *Muslim theology*. 359. *Die Hauptlehren des Averroes nach seiner Schrift: Die Wiederlegung des Gazali*, translated into German from the Arabic original, with commentaries, by M. HORTEN. Bonn, 1913. *Texte zu dem Streite zwischen Glauben und Wissen im Islam: die Lehre vom Propheten und der Offenbarung bei den islamitischen Philosophen Farabi, Avicenna und Averroes*, edited by M. HORTEN. Bonn, 1913 (Kleine Texte für Vorlesungen und Übungen, 119). *Philosophie und Theologie von Averroes*, translated from the Arabic by M. J. MÜLLER. Munich, 1875. *Alfarabi's philosophische Abhandlungen aus Londoner, Leidener und Berliner Handschriften*, edited by F. DIETERICI. Leyden, 1890, German edition, 1892. C. BÄUMKER. *Avencebrolis fons vitae ex arabico in latinum translatus ab Johanne Hispano et Dominico Gundissalino*, Münster, 1895 (Beiträge zur Geschichte der Philosophie im Mittelalter, I, nos. 2–4). *Le guide des egarés: traité de théologie et de philosophie* par MOÏSE BEN MAÏMOUM dit MAËMONIDE, publié pour la première fois dans l'original arabe et accompagné d'une traduction française par S. MUNK, 3 vols., Paris, 1856–1866. *Guide to the perplexed*, by MOSES BEN MAIMON, called MAIMONIDES, translated by M. FRIEDLÄNDER, 3 vols., London, 1885.

Bibliographies. Short serviceable bibliographies will be found in MACDONALD. *Muslim theology*, 358–367; NICHOLSON, *A literary history of the Arabs*, 471–480; G. LE BON, *La civilisation des Arabes*, 679–686. ALTAMIRA, *Historia de España*, IV, 3rd edition, 600–608. For detailed information consult V. CHAUVIN, *Bibliographie des ouvrages arabes ou relatifs aux Arabes, publiés dans l'Europe chrétienne de 1810 à 1885*, vols. I–XI, Liège and Leipzig, 1892–1909; and *Orientalische Bibliographie*, edited by A. MÜLLER and others, Berlin, 1887ff.

XI. THE EVE OF A NEW ERA IN MEDIEVAL CULTURE. THE ELEVENTH CENTURY

A. OUTLINE

1. The very sharp contrast usually drawn between the tenth and the eleventh centuries due largely to the legend of the year 1000.

2. Rapid growth of cathedral and monastery schools, especially in France. The rise of the famous schools of Chartres. Bishop Fulbert of Chartres (died 1028). Bishop Ivo of Chartres, the famous canonist (died 1115). The importance of the monastery of Bec, where both Lanfranc and Anselm lived before they became archbishops of Canterbury. Odo of Tournai (died 1113).

3. The conflict between faith and learning, authority and reason, due to the religious revival in this century on the one hand, and the quickening intellectual life on the other. Lanfranc, born ca. 1005 in Pavia, and died in 1089 as archbishop of Canterbury. Peter Damian (1006–1072), the hermit of Ravenna. Othloh of St. Emmeran, of Regensburg (died about 1073). Manegold of Lautenbach (died after 1103).

4. Anselm of Canterbury, the "Father of scholasticism." Born in 1033 in Aosta in Piedmont, abbot of Bec, 1078–1093, and archbishop of Canterbury, 1093–1109. The meaning of Anselm's motto, "Nequo enim quaero intelligere, ut credam; sed *credo, ut intelligam.* Nam et hoc credo, quia nisi credidero non intelligam."—*Proslogium*, prooemium, c. 1, in MIGNE, CLVIII, 227.

5. Champions of rationalism in the eleventh century. Berengar of Tours (999–1088), a product of the schools of Chartres, and his position on transubstantiation. Roscelin of Compiègne (died 1106). His trial at the council of Soissons in 1093 on a charge of tritheism.

6. Byzantine influences in the west in the eleventh century. Michael Psellos, 1018-1079, the famous savant of Constantinople. Interest in Greek in the west.

7. The end of the eleventh century is the most important turning point in the intellectual history of the middle ages.

B. SPECIAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR READING

General surveys. TAYLOR, *Mediaeval mind*, I, chs. XI–XIII. SANDYS, *A history of classical scholarship*, I, ch. XXVII. LAVISSE, *Histoire de France*, II, part II, 184–198. M. GRABMANN, *Die Geschichte der scholastischen Methode*, I, 215–339. H. REUTER, *Geschichte der religiösen Aufklärung im Mittelalter*, I, 85–136. A.

HARNACK, *Lehrbuch der Dogmengeschichte*, 4th edition, III, 363–367, 379–410 (vol. VI, 32–36, 45–83 in the English translation, *A history of dogma*).

Schools of Chartres. CLERVAL, *Les écoles des Chartres*, 30–142, is the standard account.

Anselm. The best short account is in C. C. J. WEBB, *Studies in the history of natural religion*, part III, no. 2. GRABMANN, *Geschichte des scholastischen Methode*, I, 258–339, is a very authoritative analysis. Following are some biographies in English. R. W. CHURCH, *Life of St. Anselm*, New York, 1905. A. C. WELCH, *Anselm and his work*, New York, 1901. J. M. RIGG, *S. Anselm of Canterbury*, London, 1896. M. RULE, *Life and times of St. Anselm of Canterbury*, London, 1883.

Michael Psellos. KRUMBACHER, *Geschichte der byzantinischen Literatur*, 2nd edition, 433–444 (see also 79–80). SANDYS, *A history of classical scholarship*, I, ch. XXIII.

Original sources. ST. ANSELM, *Proslogium*, etc., translated by S. N. DEANE, Chicago, 1903.

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General books. The general histories of philosophy, nos. **822–835**, above are especially useful. Among the books on the church, the encyclopaedias, nos. **104–114** above, and the histories of dogma, nos. **472–478** above, are the most serviceable. See also outline XV, of part II, above.

General accounts. C. PFISTER, *Etudes sur le règne de Robert le Pieux*, 300–350, "Histoire de l'église sous le règne de Robert"; to be followed by A. FLICHE, *Le règne de Philippe Ier roi de France (1060–1108)*. A. DRESDNER, *Kultur- und Sittengeschichte der italienischen Geistlichkeit*. J. A. ENDRES, "Ueber den Ursprung und die Entwickelung der scholastischen Lehrmethode," in *Philosophisches Jahrbuch*, II, 1. K. A. SCHMID, *Geschichte der Erziehung*, I, part I, 232–258.

Ivo of Chartres. P. FOURNIER, "Les collections canoniques attribuées à Yves de Chartres," in *Bibliothèque de l'école de chartes*, LVII (1896), 645–698; LVIII (1897), 26–77, 293–326, 410–444, 624–676 (also printed separately, Paris, 1897). See also his "Yves de Chartres et le droit canonique," in *Revue des questions historiques*, LXIII (1898), 51–98, 384–405. A. FOUCAULT, *Essai sur Yves de Chartres d'après sa correspondence*, Chartres, 1883. These letters have been translated into French, *Lettres de saint Ives, évêque de Chartres*, traduites et annotées, by L. MERLET, Chartres, 1885. L. SCHMIDT, *Der heilige Ivo, Bischof von Chartres*, Vienna, 1911.

Bec. A. POREE, *L'abbaye du Bec et ses écoles (1045–1790)*, Paris, 1892; see also his article, "L'école du Bec et Saint Anselme," in *Revue de philosophie*, XV (1909), 618–638.

Reason versus faith. J. A. ENDRES, "Die Dialektiker und ihre Gegner in 11 Jahrhundert," in *Philosophisches Jahrbuch*, (1906), 20–33. E. BEURLIER, "Les rapports de la raison et de la foi dans la philosophie de Saint Anselme," in *Revue de philosophie*, XV (1909), 692–723. C. MOLINIER, "L'hérésie et la persécution au XI^e^ siècle," in *Revue des Pyrénées*, IV (1894).

Peter Damian. R. BIRON, *St. Pierre Damien*. J. A. ENDRES, *Petrus Damiani und die weltliche Wissenschaft*, in Beiträge zur Geschichte der Philosophie des Mittelalters, VIII (1910), no. 3. L. KUHN, *Petrus Damiani und seine Anschauungen über Staat und Kirche*, Karlsruhe, 1913 (dissertation).

Othloh of St. Emmeran. J. A. ENDRES, "Otloh's von St. Emmeran Verhältniss zu den freien Künsten, insbesondere zur Dialektik," in *Philosophisches Jahrbuch*, XVII (1904), 44, 72, and XIX (1906).

Manegold of Lautenbach. J. A. ENDRES, "Manegold von Lautenbach *modernorum magister magistrorum*," in *Historisches Jahrbuch*, XXV (1904), 168–176.

Lanfranc. J. DE CROZALS, *Lanfranc archevêque de Cantorbéry: sa vie, son enseignement, sa politique*, Paris, 1877. N. TAMASSIA, "Lanfranc arcivescovo di Canterbury e la scuola Pavese," in *Mélanges Fitting*, vol. II. P. MOIRAGHI, *Lanfranco da Pavia*, Padua, 1889.

Anselm. E. C. E. DOMET DE VORGES, *Saint Anselme*, Paris, 1901 (Les grandes philosophes); see also his article, "Le milieu philosophique à l'époque de Saint Anselme," in *Revue de philosophie*, XV (1909), 605–617. A. DUFOURCQ, "Saint Anselme: son temps, son rôle," *ibid.*, 593–604. L. VIGNA, *San Anselmo filosofo*, Milan, 1899. P. RAGEY, *Histoire de St. Anselme*, 2 vols., Paris, 1890. A. VAN WEDDINGEN, *Essai critique sur la philosophie de St. Anselme de Cantorbéry*, Brussels, 1875. E. DÜMMLER, *Anselm der Peripatetiker*, Halle, 1872. C. DE RÉMUSAT, *Saint Anselme de Cantorbéry*, Paris, 1853. The issue of December, 1909, of the *Revue de Philosophie* was devoted entirely to Anselm on the occasion of the eighth centenary of his death.

Roscelin. F. PICAVET, *Roscelin philosophe et théologien d'après la légende et d'après l'histoire*, Paris, 1896, 2nd edition, 1911. ALDHOCH, "Roscelin und St. Anselme," in *Philosophisches Jahrbuch*, (1907), 422–456.

Berengar. R. HEURTEVENT, *Durand de Troarn et les origines de l'hérésie bérengarienne*, Paris, 1912. J. EBERSOLT, *Essai sur Bérengar de Tours et la controverse sacramentaire au XI^e siècle*, Paris, 1903 (extract from the *Revue de l'histoire des religions*). J. SCHNITZER, *Berengar von Tours*, Munich, 1891. W. BROECKING, Bischof Eusebius Bruno von Angers und Berengar von Tours," in *Deutsche Zeitschrift für Geschichtswissenschaft*, XII (1895), 344.

Original sources. Most of the works of authors mentioned in this outline are to be found in no. 953 above. *Berengarius Turonensis, oder eine Sammlung ihn betreffender Briefe*, edited by H. SUDENDORF, Gotha, 1850.

Bibliographies. The best bibliography will be found in the footnotes of GRABMANN, *Geschichte der scholastischen Methode*, I, 215–339.

PERIOD II. 1100–1300

XII. THE TWELFTH AND THIRTEENTH CENTURIES IN THE HISTORY OF CULTURE

A. Outline

1. The recent appreciation of the sudden advancement of civilization in western Europe beginning with the close of the eleventh century. Unfortunately this movement is now quite generally called "The twelfth century renaissance."

2. Relations of the culture of the twelfth and thirteenth centuries to that of the "renaissance" of the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries. See outline XXXIII in part II above.

3. In the twelfth century the chief movements which mark the beginning of a new era in European history were well under way. See outline XIX of part II above.

4. The importance of the thirteenth century in the history of culture. Recent glorification of that century. Comparison with the nineteenth century.

5. Importance of the medieval university as the embodiment of a new intellectual era.

6. France, especially northern France, was the center of this progressive movement which laid the basis of modern European civilization. In this era Paris was beginning to be the metropolis of Europe.

B. Special Recommendations for Reading

"The twelfth century renaissance." H. Rashdall, *The universities of Europe in the middle ages*, 2 vols., Oxford, 1895, I, ch. II, "Abelard and the renaissance of the twelfth century." D. C. Munro, "The renaissance of the twelfth century," in the *Annual report of the American historical association*, 1906, vol. I, 43–50. H. O. Taylor, "Antecedents of the quattrocento," *ibid.*, 1912, 89–94. Munro and Sellery, *Medieval civilization*, enlarged edition, 474–490. C. V. Langlois, *Questions d'histoire et d'enseignement*, Paris, 1902, 13–17. A. O. Norton, *Readings in the history of education: mediaeval universities*, 4–12. M. Grabmann, *Die Geschichte der scholastischen Methode*, vol. II, Einleitung, "Die Signatur des

12 Jahrhunderts.'' G. ROBERT, *Les écoles et l'enseignement de la théologie pendant la première moitié du XII^e siècle*, Paris, 1909, 1–7. B. GROCHE, *Beiträge zur Geschichte einer Renaissancebewegung bei den deutschen Schriftstellern im 12 Jahrhundert*, Halle, 1910. Similar conditions in the Byzantine empire are described by K. KRUMBACHER, *Geschichte der byzantinischen Literatur*, 2nd edition, 15ff.

The thirteenth century. F. HARRISON, *The meaning of history*, ch. v, ''A survey of the thirteenth century.'' MUNRO and SELLERY, *Medieval civilization*, enlarged edition, 458–473, ''The intellectual movement of the thirteenth century,'' adapted from LAVISSE, *Histoire de France*, III, part II, 387–416. LECOY DE LA MARCHE, *La chaire française au moyen âge, spécialement au XIII^e siècle*, Paris, 1886, 467–492. P. MANDONNET, ''La crise scolaire au début du XIII^e siècle,'' in *Revue d'histoire ecclésiastique*, XV (1914), 34–49. J. J. WALSH, *The thirteenth, greatest of centuries*, New York, 1907, 4th edition, reprinted with additions, 1912, is addressed to Roman Catholics and not to the world of scholarship as a whole.

XIII. THE CITY OF PARIS IN THE MIDDLE AGES

A. OUTLINE

1. *Sacerdotium, Imperium, Studium.* During the twelfth and thirteenth centuries Paris was *par excellence* the seat of the *Studium.* Recent transformations in Paris which have almost entirely obliterated the monuments of the medieval city.

2. The site of Paris. Physical geography of the region. The Seine and its islands. St. Denis.

3. The development of Paris into the capital of France. Ancient Roman Lutetia. Caesar's presence there in 53 B.C. The revolt of the *Parisii.* Julian, ''the Apostate,'' spent the winters 357–358 and 359–360 in Lutetia. Remains of Roman buildings, especially the *Thermae* (Hôtel de Cluny). Clovis made Paris his capital. During Merovingian times Paris remained the chief city in Neustria, and maintained its importance even under Charles Martel and Pepin. Charlemagne made Aix-la-Chapelle his capital. With the Norman siege in 885, and the elevation of Odo as king, Paris again became important. Since the accession of Hugh Capet in 987 Paris has been, without interruption, the capital of France.

4. Topography of medieval Paris. The grand divisions: Ville, Cité, Université. The Petit Pont and the Grand Pont. The wall of Philip Augustus, built about 1210.

5. The Cité. The cathedral Notre Dame de Paris. Parvis Notre Dame. Palais Episcopal. Hôtel-Dieu. Palais Royal. Sainte Chapelle. The Jewry.

6. The right bank of the Seine. Louvre. Grand Châtelet. St. Germain l'Auxerrois. St. Jacques. St. Martin des Champs. The Temple. St. Antoine. Place de Grêve.

7. The left bank. The Latin Quarter. St. Geneviève ("the hill"). Saint-Germain-des Prés. Pré-aux-Clercs. St. Victor. Les Bernardins. Houses of the Jacobins (Dominicans) and the Franciscans. St. Séverin. St. Julian le Pauvre. Petit Châtelet. Rue du Fouarre. The Sorbonne.

8. The business and social life of Paris in the middle ages.

9. Aspect of Paris in the time of Abelard and William of Champeaux, at the beginning of the twelfth century.

B. SPECIAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR READING

Paris as an historic city. F. HARRISON, *The meaning of history*, 368–436, "Paris as an historic city" and "The transformation of Paris." G. MONOD, "Le rôle de Paris dans la France du moyen âge," in *Revue historique*, CXIX (1915), 77–85.

General accounts. M. POËTE, *L'enfance de Paris*, Paris, 1908, chs. IX–XIII; see also his "Les sources de l'histoire de Paris et les historiens de Paris," in *Revue bleue*, 5th series, IV (1905), 657–660, 693–695. T. OKEY, *The story of Paris*, London, 1906 (Mediaeval towns). P. CORNU, *Histoire de Paris*, I, *Paris depuis la periode gallo-romaine jusqu'à la fin du XIVe siècle*, Paris, 1901, is a series of 24 lantern slides with descriptive text. See also the articles on Paris in nos. 96, 98 and 104 above, which is especially good for the churches in Paris.

Pictorial history of Paris. T. J. H. HOFFBAUER, *Paris à travers les ages*, 2 vols., 2nd edition, Paris, 1885.

Paris in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries. L. HALPHEN, *Paris sous les premiers Capétiens (987–1223): étude de topographie historique*, Paris, 1909, with an *Album de planches*, in which see especially plate II, "Plan de Paris sous Philippe Auguste." L. BOUTIÉ, *Paris au temps de saint Louis*, Paris, 1911. L. OLSCHKI, *Paris nach den altfranzösischen nationalen Epen: Topographie, Stadtgeschichte und lokale Sagen*, Heidelberg, 1913, with 4 plans; see also his *Der ideale Mittelpunkt Frankreichs im Mittelalter in Wirklichkeit und Dichtung*, Heidelberg, 1913. A. SPRINGER, *Paris im 13 Jahrhundert*, Leipzig, 1856 (contains a plan), translated freely into French by V. FOUCHER, *Paris au XIIIe siècle*, Paris, 1860. See also the few pages of description in J. MCCABE, *Peter Abelard*, New York, 1901, 20–25.

Guide-books for Paris. K. BAEDEKER, *Paris and environs: handbook for travellers,* 18th revised edition, Leipzig and New York, 1913. MARQUIS DE ROCHEGUDE, *Guide pratique à travers le vieux Paris,* 4th edition, Paris, 1907. A. J. C. HARE, *Paris,* 2 vols., London [n. d.]. MARIA H. LANSDALE, *Paris: its sites, monuments and history, compiled from the principal secondary authorities,* Philadelphia, 1898. MABELL S. C. SMITH, *Twenty centuries of Paris,* New York, 1913.

Paris in fiction. H. DE BALZAC, *Les Proscrits* (written 1831), in his *Oeuvres complètes* XVI, Paris, 1870, 657–687 (a story about Dante in Paris in 1308); and VICTOR HUGO, *Notre Dame de Paris* (written 1830), book III (an attempt to picture Paris as it was in 1482).

Original sources. "Deux éloges de la ville de Paris," composed in 1323 by JEAN DE JANDUN and an anonymous called "DICTATOR," Latin text with a French translation on opposite pages, in *Paris et ses historiens aux XIV^e^ et XV^e^ siècles,* edited by A. J. V. LE ROUX DE LINCY and L. M. TISSERAND, Paris, 1867 (Histoire générale de Paris), pp. 1–79.

Plans. SHEPHERD, *Atlas,* 149. P. VIDAL DE LA BLACHE, *Atlas générale,* new edition, 46*b*. More detailed maps and plans are indicated in the bibliography below.

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General books. See the bibliography under outline XXV in part II above. The special literature on the university of Paris, under outline XXII below, is essential for a knowledge of Paris in the middle ages.

General histories of Paris. *Histoire générale de Paris,* published by authority of the municipality, Paris, 1866ff. (about 40 large vols. in 1917), is the fundamental work on the history of Paris. Next in importance are the publications of the Société de l'histoire de Paris et de l'Ile de France, namely, the *Bulletin,* Paris, 1874ff.; the *Mémoires,* Paris, 1874ff.; and the *Documents,* Paris, 1874ff., which are not numbered (vol. XVI appeared in 1909). Abbé LEBEUF, *Histoire de la ville et de tout le diocèse de Paris,* 15 vols., Paris, 1754–1758, new edition in 3 vols. by H. COCHERIS, Paris, 1865–1867 (incomplete, but valuable for its notes), another edition by A. AUGIER, 6 vols., Paris, 1883; to be supplemented by *Rectifications et additions* by F. BOURNOU, Paris, 1890–1901, and by Dom BEAUNIER, *La France monastique,* vol. I, Paris, 1905. JAILLOT, *Recherches critiques, historiques et topographiques sur la ville de Paris,* 5 vols., Paris, 1772–1774, new edition, 1782. H. SAUVAL,

Histoire et recherches des antiquités de la ville de Paris, 3 vols., Paris, 1724. M. FÉLIBIEN and G. A. LOBINEAU, *Histoire de la ville de Paris,* 5 vols., Paris, 1725. A. CHRISTIAN, *Etudes sur le Paris d'autrefois,* 6 vols., Paris, 1904–1907, are interesting popular volumes. H. RAMIN, *Notre très vieux Paris,* Paris, 1909. E. DE MÉNORVAL, *Paris* [des origines à 1715], 3 vols., Paris, 1889–1897. E. FOURNIER, *Paris-capitale,* Paris, 1881. E. CLOUZOT, "Les inondations à Paris du VI^e^ au XX^e^ siècle," in *La Géographie,* XXIII (1911), 81–100. G. PESSARD, *Nouveau dictionnaire historique de Paris,* Paris, 1904, is not as accurate as it should be.

Topography and archaeology of medieval Paris. A. BERTY, H. LEGRAND, and others, *Topographie historique du vieux Paris,* 6 vols., Paris, 1866–1897, in *Histoire générale de Paris. Statistique monumentale de Paris,* edited by A. LENOIR, 2 folio vols., and 1 quarto volume containing explanation of plates, Paris, 1867, part of no. 965 above. C. NORMAND, *Nouvel itinéraire guide artistique et archéologique de Paris,* published by the Société des amis des monuments Parisiens, vols. I–II, Paris, 1889–1894. F. DE GUILHERMY, *Description archéologique des monuments de Paris,* 2nd edition, Paris, 1856. J. DU BREUL, *Le théâtre des antiquités de Paris,* Paris, 1612. A. BONNARDOT, "Iconographie du vieux Paris," in *Revue universelle des arts,* vols. II–XII and XIX, Paris 1855–1860 and 1864. G. RIAT, *Paris,* Paris, 1907 (Les villes d'art célèbres). G. SCHMIDT and G. RIAT, *Paris: eine Geschichte seiner Kunstdenkmäler, vom Altertum bis auf unsere Tage,* Leipzig, 1912 (Berühmte Kunststätten, 6). E. HESSLING, *Le vieux Paris: recueil de vues de ses monuments,* vol. I, *Moyen âge,* Berlin, [1906]. See also no. 299 above.

Plans of old Paris. The essential publication is the *Atlas des anciens plans de Paris,* Paris, 1880, 3rd edition, 3 vols., 1900, in *Histoire générale de Paris.* A. FRANKLIN, *Les anciennes plans de Paris: notices historiques et topographiques,* 2 vols., Paris, 1878–1880. A. BONNARDOT, *Etudes archéologiques sur les anciens plans de Paris des XVI^e^, XVII^e^ et XVIII^e^ siècles,* Paris, 1851; see also his *Dissertations archéologiques sur les anciennes enceintes de Paris,* 3 vols., Paris, 1852–1877.

Streets of Paris. E. FOURNIER, *Promenade historique dans les rues de Paris,* new edition, Paris, 1894; see also his *Chroniques et légendes des rues de Paris,* new edition, Paris, 1893; his *Enigmes des rues de Paris,* new edition, Paris, 1892; and his *Histoire des enseignes de Paris,* Paris, 1884. E. BEAUREPAIRE, *Paris d'hier et d'aujourd'hui: la chronique des rues de Paris,* Paris, 1900. E. DE MÉNORVAL, *Promenades à travers Paris,* Paris [1897].

Notre Dame. A. MARTY, *L'histoire de Notre-Dame de Paris d'après les estampes*, Paris, 1907, contains 100 plates together with an introduction and bibliographical notes. M. AUBERT, *La cathédrale Notre-Dame-de-Paris*, Paris, 1909. C. HIATT, *Notre Dame de Paris: a short history and description of the cathedral, with some account of the churches which preceded it*, London, 1902. V. MORTET, *Etude historique et archéologique sur la cathédrale et le palais épiscopale de Paris du VI^e^ au XII^e^ siècle*, Paris, 1888; see also his *Notes historiques et archéologiques sur la cathédrale et de palais épiscopal de Paris*, Paris, 1903–1905 (three pamphlets). F. L. CHARTIER, *L'ancien chapitre de Notre-Dame-de-Paris et sa maîtrise, d'après des documents capitulaires (1326–1790)*, Paris, 1897. G. D'AVENEL, *Les évêques et archevêques de Paris, depuis saint Denis jusqu'à nos jours, avec des documents inédits*, 2 vols., Paris, 1876, is untrustworthy.

Other ecclesiastical establishments. W. LOUERGAN, *Historic churches of Paris*, London, 1896. S. SOPHIA BEALE, *The churches of Paris from Clovis to Charles X*, London, 1893. G. DUBOIS, *Historia ecclesiae Parisiensis*, 2 vols., Paris, 1690–1710. H. L. BORDIER (ed.), *Les églises et monastères de Paris: pièces en prose et en vers des IX^e^, XIII^e^ et XIV^e^ siècles*, Paris, 1856. C. DESMAZE, *La Sainte Chapelle du Palais de Justice de Paris*, Paris, 1873. S. J. MORAND, *Histoire de la Sainte Chapelle royale du Palais*, Paris, 1790. A. LE BRUN, *L'église Saint-Julien le Pauvre: d'après les historiens et des documents inédits*, Paris, 1889. P. FERET, *L'abbaye de Sainte-Geneviève et la congrégation de France*, 2 vols., Paris, 1883; see also GIARD, "Etude sur l'histoire de l'abbaye de Sainte-Geneviève de Paris jusqu'à la fin du XIII^e^ siècle," in *Mémoires de la Société de l'histoire de Paris*, XXX (1903), 41–126. J. BOUILLART, *Histoire de l'abbaye royale de Saint-Germain-des-Prés*, Paris, 1724. FOURIER-BONNARD, *Histoire de l'abbaye royale et de l'ordre des chanoines réguliers de Saint-Victor de Paris*, first period (1113–1500), Paris [1904]. See also no. **460** above.

Hospitals. Hôtel Dieu. E. COYECQUE, *L'Hôtel-Dieu de Paris au moyen âge: histoire et documents*, Paris, 1889–1891 (Documents de la Société de l'histoire de Paris). *Archives de l'Hôtel-Dieu de Paris (1157–1300)*, edited by L. BRIÈLE and E. COYECQUE, Paris, 1894, part of no. **965** above. A. CHEVALIER, *L'Hôtel-Dieu de Paris et les soeurs Augustines (650–1810)*, Paris, 1901. L. BRIÈLE, *Notes pour servir à l'histoire de l'Hôtel-Dieu de Paris*, Paris, 1870 (extract from l'Union médicale). L. BRIÈLE, *L'Hôpital de Sainte-Catherine en la rue Saint-Denis (1184–1790)*, Paris, 1890.

Châtelet. L. BATIFFOL, "Le Châtelet de Paris vers 1400," in *Revue historique*, LXI (1896), 225–264; LXII (1896), 225–235,

LXIII (1897), 42–55, 266–283, treats of the period from the eleventh to the fifteenth century. A. DE BOUARD, *Etudes de diplomatique sur les actes des notaires du Châtelet de Paris*, Paris, 1911, part 186 of no. 888 above.

Economic and social life in Paris. A. FRANKLIN, *La vie privée au temps des premiers Capétiens*, 2 vols., 2nd edition., Paris, 1911, in particular; and in general, *La vie privée d'autrefois: arts et métiers, modes, moeurs, usages des Parisiens du XII^e au XVIII^e siècle*, 27 vols., Paris, 1887–1902. A. FRANKLIN, *Dictionnaire historique des arts, métiers et professions exercés dans Paris depuis le treizième siècle*, with a preface by E. LEVASSEUR, Paris, 1906. G. HUISMAN, *La jurisdiction de la municipalité Parisienne de Saint Louis à Charles VII*, Paris, 1912 (Bibliothèque d'histoire de Paris), see the bibliography, pp. vii–xiii. A. FRANKLIN, *Les corporations ouvrières de Paris du XII^e au XVIII^e siècle*, Paris, 1885. W. GALLION, *Der Ursprung der Zünfte in Paris*, Berlin and Leipzig, 1910 (Abhandlungen zur mittleren und neueren Geschichte, 24). E. PICARDA, *Les marchands de l'eau: Hanse Parisienne et compagnie française*, Paris, 1901, part 134 of no. 888 above. G. GUILMOTO, *Etudes sur les droits de navigation de la Seine de Paris à la Roche-Guyon au XI^e au XVIII^e siècle*, Paris, 1889. See also the literature which pertains to France under outline XXVI in part II above, where the editions of the *Livre des métiers* of ETIENNE BOILEAU are indicated under "Original sources."

Jews in Paris. L. KAHN, *Les juifs à Paris depuis le VI^e siècle*, Paris, 1889. For general histories on the Jews see nos. 850–884 above.

Original sources. Most of the printed source material for the history of Paris is to be found in the *Histoire général de Paris*, the *Publications* of the Société de l'histoire de Paris, and in nos. 965 and 966 above. The following collections deserve particular mention. *Cartulaire générale de Paris, 528–1180*, edited by R. DE LASTEYRIE, vol. I (528–1180), Paris, 1887, in *Histoire générale de Paris. Documents inédits sur l'histoire de France—Paris sous Philippe le Bel*, edited by H. GÉRAUD, Paris, 1837, contains a good plan by the architect LENOIR, part 34 of no. 965 above. *Cartulaire de Notre-Dame de Paris*, 4 vols., edited by B. GUÉRARD, Paris, 1850, part of no. 965 above. *Recueil des chartes de l'abbaye de Saint-Germain-des-Prés, des origines au début du XIII^e siècle*, edited by R. POUPARDIN, vol. I, Paris, 1909, vol. XVI part I of *Documents* of the Société de l'histoire de Paris. *Recueil de chartes et documents de Saint-Martin-les-Champs: monastère Parisien*, edited by J. DEPOIN, vol. I–II, Paris, 1912–1913 (Archives de la France monastique,

XIII–XIV). *Recueil des chartes de l'abbaye royale de Montmartre,* edited by E. DE BARTHÉLEMY, Paris, 1883. *Inscriptions de la France du Vᵉ siècle au XVIIIᵉ—ancien diocèse de Paris,* edited by F. DE GUILHERMY and R. DE LASTEYRIE, 5 vols., Paris, 1873–1863. For the important *Chartularium universitatis Parisiensis* see outline XXII below.

Bibliographies. M. BARROUX, *Essai de bibliographie critique des généralités de l'histoire de Paris,* Paris, 1908, is the most essential bibliography, to be supplemented by the "Bibliographie" published since 1898 in the *Bulletin* of the Société de l'histoire de Paris. Bibliothèque historique de la ville de Paris, at no. 29 Rue de Sévigné, is a large public library exclusively for books and materials on the history of Paris. The activity of the municipality of Paris in furthering the study of the history of the city is reported in *Bulletin de la bibliothèque et des travaux historiques,* published by the Ville de Paris under the direction of M. POËTE, Paris, 1906ff. See especially G. HENRIOT and J. DE LA MONNERAYE, *Répertoire des travaux publiés par les sociétés d'histoire de Paris depuis leur fondation jusqu'au 31 décembre 1911,* Paris, 1914, in vols. VIII–IX of this bulletin. E. CLOUZOT, *Dépouillement d'inventaires et de catalogues,* 3 vols., Paris, 1916, prepared for the *Répertoire des sources manuscrits de l'histoire de Paris,* edited by M. POËTE. See also nos. **17, 21** and **26** above, and the *Subject-index* by FORTESCUE under no. **3** above.

XIV. GROWTH OF A SPIRIT OF INQUIRY BASED ON LOGIC. ABELARD AND BERNARD OF CLAIRVAUX

A. OUTLINE

1. Remarkable interest in the twelfth century in logic or dialectic, which had been comparatively unimportant in the schools of the early middle ages. It served as a stimulus to investigation and to independent thinking.

2. Abelard and Bernard are types respectively of radical and conservative thought in the twelfth century.

3. Peter Abelard was born at Pallet in Brittany in 1079. His quest for knowledge led him to the school of Roscelin and then to Paris about 1100.

4. His checkered scholastic career. The encounter with William of Champeaux, 1070–1120, in the cathedral school of Paris. The question of universals. Nominalism and realism. Abelard at Melun and Corbeil. His teaching on the hill of St. Geneviève. He

studied theology under Anselm of Laon. His love affair with Heloise about 1118. He became a monk at St. Denis. Popularity of his teaching in his hermitage near Rheims. His trial for heresy at the council of Soissons, 1121. His hermitage near Troyes (Paraclete). He aroused the antagonism of St. Norbert and St. Bernard of Clairvaux. Abelard as abbot of St. Gildas in Brittany. Back to Paris about 1136. Second trial for heresy at the council of Sens, 1141. Befriended by Peter the Venerable (died 1156), abbot of Cluny. Abelard died at St. Marcel lez Châlons, 1142.

5. Abelard's works. His famous *Sic et non*. The *Scito te ipsum seu Ethica. Dialogus inter philosophum, judaeum et christianum.* Theological and dialectical works. The *Historia calamitatum.*

6. Abelard's method and the degree of his rationalism. The question of the originality and influence of his *sic-et-non* method. "By doubting we are led to inquire; by inquiry we perceive the truth"—*Sic et non*, preface.

7. The life and work of St. Bernard of Clairvaux, ca. 1090–1153, who embodied the ascetic spirit of the new monastic movement, and at the same time was a practical active statesman. His book *On Consideration*, and his *Letters*. His attitude towards secular learning, and his reliance on faith.

8. The clash between Abelard and Bernard of Clairvaux. Bernard combatted heresy in all its forms. His visit to Aquitaine. His denunciation of Gilbert de la Porrée and Arnold of Brescia as well as of Abelard. His diplomacy in connection with the trial of Abelard at Sens in 1141. The greatness of Bernard in his day contrasted with the ultimate failure of his ideals.

9. Mysticism in this age of reason. The school of St. Victor. The mystic strain in Bernard of Clairvaux and his influence upon Hugh (1096–1141) and Richard of St. Victor (prior, 1162–1173).

10. Conflicting opinions concerning the character and influence of Abelard who is popularly renowned as the founder of the university of Paris. The need of a new critical edition of his works.

B. Special Recommendations for Reading

Short general surveys. TAYLOR, *Mediaeval mind*, 2nd edition, I, ch. XVII, II, ch. XXXVII. LAVISSE, *Histoire de France*, II, part II, 366–383. S. SWEETSER, "Church theology and free inquiry in the twelfth century," in *Bibliotheca sacra*, XVII (1860), 43–64.

Standard accounts. G. ROBERT, *Les écoles et l'enseignement de la théologie pendant la première moitié au XII^e siècle*, Paris, 1909 (ch. VII on Abelard). GRABMANN, *Geschichte der scholastischen Methode*, vol. II (168–229 on Abelard).

Abelard. Excellent short sketches of Abelard are in POOLE, *Illustrations*, ch. v; and C. C. J. WEBB, *Studies in the history of natural religion*, part III, no 3, "Abelard." J. MCCABE, *Peter Abelard*, New York, 1901, is the most stimulating biography. See also G. COMPAYRÉ, *Abelard and the origin and early history of universities*, London, 1893 (The great educators, 3). A. HOFMEISTER, "Studien über Otto von Freising," in *Neues Archiv*, XXXVII (1912), 635–640, is a valuable contribution to our knowledge about Abelard.

Is the Abelard-Heloise correspondence genuine? B. SCHMEIDLER, "Der Briefwechsel zwischen Abälard und Heloise eine Fälschung?" in *Archiv für Kulturgeschichte*, XI (1913), 1–30 (see the references to the opinions of ORELLI, COUSIN, LALANNE, and PETRELLA in his notes).

Bernard of Clairvaux. The best short sketch is in LAVISSE, *Histoire de France*, II, part II, 266–282 (translated in MUNRO and SELLERY, *Medieval civilization*, new edition, 406–431). The best authority on Bernard is E. VACANDARD, *Vie de St. Bernard, abbé de Clairvaux*, Paris, 1895, 4th edition, 2 vols., 1910; see also his *Saint Bernard*, Paris, 1904 (La Pensée chrétienne). R. S. STORRS, *Bernard of Clairvaux*, New York, 1892. J. C. MORISON, *The life and times of St. Bernard, abbot of Clairvaux*, London, 1884, 2nd edition, 1901.

Original sources. For brief extracts from Abelard's works see ROBINSON, *Readings*, I, 446–452. The Abelard-Heloise correspondence is analyzed and translated in part by TAYLOR, *Mediaeval mind*, II, ch. XXV; see also *Love letters of Abelard and Heloise* in the Temple classics series. There is a recent German translation of the letters, including the *Historia calamitatum*, by W. FRED, *Die Briefe von Abälard und Heloise*, Leipzig, 1911.

Some letters of St. Bernard, from the translation of Dr. EALES, selected, with a preface, by F. A. GASQUET, London, 1904, furnish a convenient introduction to the thought of Bernard and the reasons for his antagonism to Abelard. *The complete works of S. Bernard, abbot of Clairvaux*, translated into English from the edition of Dom JOANNES MABILLON (Paris, 1690), by S. J. EALES, 5 vols., London, 1889–1896. Saint BERNARD'S work *On Consideration* has been translated by G. LEWIS, Oxford University Press, 1908.

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General books. The general histories of philosophy, nos. **882–835** above, are most useful. See especially nos. **822, 829** and **833.** The encyclopaedias for church history, nos. **104–114** above, are very helpful. See also no. **472** above.

Abelard. The following are well-known biographies. E. KAISER, *Pierre Abélard critique*, Fribourg, 1901. S. M. DEUTSCH, *Peter Abälard: ein kritischer Theologe des 12 Jahrhunderts*, Leipzig, 1883. A. HAUSRATH, *Peter Abälard*, Leipzig, 1895 (Weltverbesserer, vol. I). C. F. M. DE RÉMUSAT, *Abélard*, 2 vols., Paris, 1845 (do not confuse with his drama, *Abélard*, 1877). The article by E. PORTALIÉ, "Abélard," in I, 35–55 of no. 109 above, is noteworthy.

Among the special studies the following deserve mention. R. DAHMEN, *Darstellung der Abälardschen Ethik*, Münster, 1906 (dissertation). F. THANER, *Abälard und das canonische Recht*, Graz, 1900. B. HILLER, *Abälard als Ethiker*, Erlangen, 1900 (dissertation). H. DENIFLE, "Die Sentenzen Abälards und die Bearbeitungen seiner Theologia vor Mitte des 12 Jahrhunderts," in *Archiv für Literatur- und Kirchengeschichte des Mittelalters*, I (1885), 402–469, 484–624. F. PICAVET, *Abélard et Alexandre de Hales: créateurs de la méthode scolastique*, Paris, 1896 (Bibliothèque de l'Ecole des hautes études, sciences religieuses, vol. VII, 1). F. v. BEZOLD, *Über die Anfänge der Selbstbiographie im Mittelalter*, Erlangen, 1893. B. GEYER, "Die Stellung Abaelards in der Universalienfrage," in *Supplementband* (1913), 101–127, of no. 826 above.

Bernard of Clairvaux. S. J. EALES, *St. Bernard, abbot of Clairvaux*, London, 1890 (Fathers for English readers). A. STEIGER, *Der hl. Bernhard von Clairvaux: sein Urteil über die Zeitzustände, seine geschichtsphilosophische und kirchenpolitische Anschauung*, Brünn, 1908. Comte D'HASSONVILLE, *Saint Bernard*, Paris, 1906. A. NEANDER, *Der heilige Bernhard und seine Zeitalter*, new edition, Gotha, 1889, translated by M. WRENCH, *The life and times of St. Bernard*, London, 1843. G. HÜFFER, *Der heilige Bernhard von Clairvaux: eine Darstellung seines Lebens und Wirkens*, vol. I, Münster, 1886. G. SALVAYRE, *Saint Bernard: maître de vie spirituelle*, Avignon, 1910. G. CHEVALIER, *Histoire de Saint Bernard*, 2 vols., Lille, 1888. G. HOFMEISTER, *Bernhard von Clairvaux*, Berlin, 1889–1890 (Programm). J. RIES, *Das geistliche Leben in seinen Entwicklungsstufen nach der Lehre des hl. Bernhard*, Freiburg, 1906. C. NEUMANN, *Bernhard von Clairvaux und die Anfänge des zweiten Kreuzzuges*, Heidelberg, 1882 (dissertation). J. THIEL, *Die politische Thätigkeit des Bernhard von Clairvaux*, Königsberg, 1885 (dissertation).

Abelard and Bernard. E. VACANDARD, *Abélard: sa lutte avec saint Bernard, sa doctrine, sa méthode*, Paris, 1881. RAGNISCO, "P. Abelardo e S. Bernardo di Chiaravalle: la cattedra ed il pulpito, esame di alcuni giudizi su Abelardo, come logico, moralista e teologo," in *Atti di. r. istit. Veneto di scienze*, VIII, Venice, 1905.

W. MEYER, "Die Anklagesätze des heiligen Bernhard gegen Abälard," in *Nachrichten* der kgl. Gesellschaft der Wissenschaften zu Göttingen, philol.-histor. Klasse, 1898, 397–468. S. M. DEUTSCH, *Die Synode von Sens 1141, und die Verurteilung Abälards*, Berlin, 1880.

Faith and reason. T. HEITZ, *Essai historique sur les rapports entre la philosophie et la foi de Berengar de Tours à S. Thomas d'Aquin*, Paris, 1909. REUTER, *Geschichte der religiösen Aufklärung*, 1, 183–259.

William of Champeaux. G. LEFÈVRE, *Les variations de Guillaume de Champeaux et la question des universaux: étude suivie de documents originaux*, Lille, 1898 (Travaux et mémoires de l'Université Lille, VI, mémoire no. 20). E. MICHAUD, *Guillaume de Champeaux et les écoles de Paris, au XII^e siècle*, 2nd edition, Paris, 1867. F. PICAVET, "Note sur l'enseignement de G. de Champeaux d'après l'Historia calamitatum d'Abélard," in *Revue internationale d'enseignement*, October, 1910.

Peter the Venerable. M. DEMIMUID, *Pierre le Vénérable*, Paris, 1876, 2nd edition, 1895.

Hugo of St. Victor. B. HAURÉAU, *Les oeuvres de Hugues de St.-Victor: essai critique*, 2nd edition, Paris, 1886. A. MIGNON, *Les origines de la scolastique et Hugues de Saint-Victor*, 2 vols., Paris, 1895. J. KILGENSTEIN, *Die Gotteslehre des Hugo von Saint-Victor*, Würzburg, 1897 (dissertation). H. OSTLER, *Die Psychologie des Hugo von St. Viktor*, Münster, 1906, part VI, 1, of no. 826 above. O. SCHMIDT, *Hugo von St.-Victor als Pädagog*, Meissen, 1893. Mgr. HUGONIN, *Essai sur la fondation de l'école de St. Victor de Paris*, Paris, 1879; also in MIGNE, *P. L.*, CLXXV. See also TAYLOR, *Mediaeval mind*, 2nd edition, II, ch. XXIX.

Original sources. The works of Abelard are printed in MIGNE, no. 953 above. *P. L.*, CLXXVIII (a reprint of *Petri Abelardi opera*, edited by F. AMBOESIUS, Paris, 1616). *Petri Abelardi Opera*, 2 vols., Paris, 1849–1859; and *Ouvrages inédits d'Abelard*, Paris, 1836, part of no. 965 above, both edited by V. COUSIN, whose introduction to the latter is valuable. *Abaelards 1121 zu Soissons verutheilter Tractatus de unitate et trinitate divina: mit einer Einleitung* edited by R. STÖLZLE, Freiburg, 1891. ABELARD'S *Sic et non* is edited separately by E. L. T. HENKE and G. S. LINDENKOHL, Marburg, 1851. The works of Bernhard are in vols. CLXXXII–CLXXXV of MIGNE, *P. L.*, no. 953 above.

Bibliographies. Sufficient bibliographical guidance will be found in nos. 822, 827, 830 above, and in HEITZ, *Essai historique* 169–174; and ROBERT, *Les écoles*, ix–xvi. L. JANAUSCHEK, *Bibliographia Bernardina*, Vienna, 1891 (in Xenia Bernardina, 4).

XV. THE NEW ARISTOTLE

A. OUTLINE

1. A momentous intellectual revolution was caused by the introduction of all the works of Aristotle into western Europe in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries. Compare with Darwinism in the nineteenth century.

2. The transmission of Aristotle's works to the twelfth century. The life and work of Aristotle (born at Stageirus in 384 B.C., and died at Chalcis in 322). History of the Aristotelian books to the time of Boethius. The translations and commentaries of Boethius. Knowledge of Aristotle in the Latin west during the early middle ages. Works of Aristotle known to Abelard. A good history of Aristotle "à travers les ages" unfortunately is still a *desideratum*.

3. Mohammedans and Jews as transmittors of Greek philosophy to the west (see outline X above). Their famous commentaries. Byzantine influences (Michael Psellos and John Italos).

4. Schools of translators in the west, especially in Sicily and Spain (Toledo). Relative importance of translations from the Greek and Arabic. Value of these Latin translations. Decline of interest in Plato as Aristotle became more popular.

5. The "New Logic." In the thirteenth century the curricula of universities distinguished between the "New" and "Old Logic." The "Old Logic" comprised the texts on logic which were in use in the schools before ca. 1128, namely, the *Categories* and *On interpretation* of Aristotle, the *Isagoge* of Porphyry and sometimes the *Divisions* and *Topics* of Boethius (the *Six principles* of Gilbert de la Porrée are sometimes included). About 1128 the whole *Organon* of Aristotle became known in Latin translations. The "New Logic" comprised his *Prior* and *Posterior analytics*, the *Topics* and the *Sophistical refutations*. Even these new logical books of Aristotle created a great stir in the schools. James of Venice. Henricus Aristippus of Catania (died 1162).

6. The New Aristotle *par excellence* was introduced towards the close of the twelfth and in the beginning of the thirteenth century and consisted of Aristotle's books on moral and natural philosophy and metaphysics, namely, the *Ethics*, *Physics*, *Meteorics*, *On the heavens and the earth*, *On generation and destruction*, *On animals*, the "*Parva naturalia*," and the *Metaphysics*.

7. Famous translators of the New Aristotle. From the Arabic: Gerard of Cremona (died 1187), Michael Scot (died before 1235), Hermann the German (ca. 1250). From the Greek: William of Moerbeke (ca. 1215–1286), archbishop of Corinth, 1278–1286, translated for St. Thomas Aquinas.

8. Reception of the New Aristotle in the universities, especially the university of Paris. The prohibitions of 1210 and 1215. In 1231 pope Gregory IX appointed a committee of three to purge the condemned books of Aristotle. Evidence that the books were read quite openly in Paris, 1230–1255, in spite of the ban. In 1255 the faculty of arts in Paris prescribed the forbidden books.

9. Various ways in which Aristotle was regarded in the thirteenth century. Mental ferment caused by his writings. Tendency toward heresies. Averroism.

10. Unconditional acceptance of Aristotle as presented to the scholastic world by Albert the Great and Thomas Aquinas (see outline XVII above). Aristotle became "The Philosopher" among the Christians as he was among the Mohammedans. Ineffective protests of the "Oxford school" (see outline XXI below).

B. Special Recommendations for Reading

Life and works of Aristotle. For brief sketches see nos. **96, 98, 104** above. Ueberweg, no. **822** above, and Croisset, *Histoire de la littérature grèque*, IV, ch. xi (or the *Abridged history*, 335–349), furnish accurate details.

E. Zeller, *Aristotle and the earlier Peripatetics*, translated from the German, 2 vols., London, 1897. G. Grote, *Aristotle*, 2 vols., London, 1872, new edition, 1880. R. Shute, *On the history of the process by which the Aristotelian writings arrived at their present form: an essay*, Oxford, 1883, is a post-humous work. C. Piat, *Aristotle*, Paris, 1903 (Les grands philosophes). H. Siebeck, *Aristoteles*, Stuttgart, 1899 (Frommanns Klassiker der Philosophie, 8). A. E. Taylor, *Aristotle*, London [n.d.] (The peoples' books).

Short surveys of Aristotle in the middle ages. Rashdall, *The universities of Europe*, I, 351–368. Taylor, *Mediaeval mind*, II, ch. xxxviii. Sandys, *A history of classical scholarship*, I, ch. xxx. De Wulf, *History of medieval philosophy*, 243–253. Norton, *Readings in the history of education: mediaeval universities*, 40–49. G. H. Luquet, *Aristote et l'université de Paris pendant le XIII^e siècle*, Paris, 1904 (also in Bibliothèque de l'Ecole des hautes études, Sciences religieuses, XVI, 2). Brother Azarias, *Aristotle and the Christian church: an essay*, London, 1888. P. Feret, *La faculté de théologie de Paris: moyen âge*, 4 vols., Paris, 1894–1897, II, 107–129. L. Traube, *Einleitung in die lateinische Philologie des Mittelalters*, Munich, 1911, vol. II of his *Einleitung in die lateinische Philologie des Mittelalters*, 85–88. T. Heitz, *Essai historique sur les rapports entre la philosophie et la foi*, especially, 87–91.

Standard accounts on the New Aristotle. The best treatment is in P. MANDONNET, *Siger de Brabant et L'Averroïsme latin au XIII^e siècle*, Fribourg, 1899, second edition, Louvain, vol. I (1911), vol. II (1908), I, chs. I–II. It should be supplemented by C. H. HASKINS, "A list of text-books from the close of the twelfth century," in *Harvard studies in classical philology*, XX (1909), 75–94; C. H. HASKINS and D. P. LOCKWOOD, "The Sicilian translators of the twelfth century and the first Latin versions of Ptolemy's Almagest," *ibid.*, XXI (1910), 75–102; C. H. HASKINS, "Further notes on Sicilian translators of the twelfth century," *ibid.*, XXIII (1913), 155–166; and his "Mediaeval versions of the Posterior analytics," *ibid.*, XXV (1914), 87–105; P. DUHEM, "Du temps ou la scolastique latine a connu la physique d'Aristote," in *Revue de philosophie*, XV (1909), 163–178; and, for the "New Logic," M. GRABMANN, *Die Geschichte der scholastischen Methode*, I, 64–81; A. HOFMEISTER, "Studien über Otto von Freising," in *Neues Archiv*, XXXVII (1912), 654–681; and CLERVAL, *Les écoles des Chartres*, 222, 244ff., and see his index under "Aristote."

Michael Scot. J. W. BROWN, *An inquiry into the life and legend of Michael Scot*, Edinburgh, 1897.

Original sources. *Aristotle's Works*, translated into English under the editorship of J. A. SMITH and W. D. ROSS, London, 1910ff. (in progress), deserve particular mention among the numerous translations of Aristotle.

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General books. See the histories of philosophy, nos. **822–835** above, and the literature under outline XVII below.

Aristotle in scholasticism. CHOLLET'S article on "L'aristotélisme de la scolastique," in no. **109** above, I, 1869–1887, sums up recent research. A. SCHNEIDER, *Die abendländische Spekulation des 12 Jahrhunderts in ihrem Verhältnis zur aristotelischen und jüdisch-arabischen Philosophie*, Münster, 1915, vol. XVII, 4, of no. **826** above. S. TALAMO, *L'aristotelismo della scolastica*, Naples, 1873, 3rd edition, Siena, 1881, translated into French, Paris, 1876. F. EHRLE, "Der Augustinismus und der Aristotelismus in der Scholastik gegen Ende des 13 Jahrhunderts," in *Archiv für Literatur und Kirchengeschichte*, V (1889), 603ff.; see also his "John Peckham über den Kampf des Augustinismus und Aristotelismus in der zweiten Hälfte des 13 Jahrhunderts," in *Zeitschrift für katholische Theologie*, XIII (1889), 172ff. M. SCHNEID, *Aristoteles in der Scholastik*, Eichstädt, 1876. F. NITSCH, "Über die Ursachen des Umschwungs und Aufschwungs der Scholastik im 13 Jahrhundert," in *Jahrbücher für protestantische Theologie*, II (1876), 532ff.

Latin translations of Aristotle. A. JOURDAIN, *Recherches critiques sur l'âge et l'origine des traductions latines d'Aristote, et sur les commentaires grecs ou arabes employés par les docteurs scolastiques*, Paris, 1819, 2nd edition, 1843, was the pioneer work in this interesting but difficult field of research. V. ROSE, "Die Lücke im Diogenes Laertius und der alte Übersetzer," in *Hermes*, I (1866); 367–397; and his "Ptolomäus und die Übersetzer-Schule von Toledo," *ibid.*, VIII (1874), 327–349. O. HARTWIG, "Die Übersetzungsliteratur Unteritaliens in der normannisch-staufischen Epoche," in *Centralblatt für Bibliothekswesen*, III (1886), 161–190, 223–225, 505. E. MOORE, *Studies in Dante*, first series, Oxford, 1896, 305–318, "On the translations of Aristotle used by Dante." G. H. LUQUET, "Hermann l'Allemand," in *Revue de l'histoire des religions*, XLII (1901), 407–422. C. MARCHESI, *L'Etica Nicomachea nella tradizione latina medievale*, Messina, 1904. A. VACANT, *Les versions latines de la morale à Nicomaque*, Paris, 1885. A. MÜLLER, *Die griechischen Philosophen in der arabischen Überlieferung*, Halle, 1873. B. BONCOMPAGNI, *Della vita e delle opere de Gherardo Cremonese*, Rome, 1851. For translations from the Arabic see outline X above.

Aristotle's natural science. T. E. LONES, *Aristotle's researches in natural science*, London, 1912. T. W. THOMPSON, *On Aristotle as a biologist*, Oxford, 1913 (Herbert Spencer lecture). C. HUIT, *La philosophie de la nature chez les anciens*, Paris, 1901. C. B. JOURDAIN, *Influence d'Aristote et de ses interprètes sur la découverte du nouveau-monde*, Paris, 1861.

Bibliographies. The best bibliography is in the notes of MANDONNET, *Siger de Brabant;* but see also the bibliographical notes in the articles by HASKINS, HOFMEISTER, and in GRABMANN, *Geschichte der scholastischen Methode.* M. SCHWAB, *Bibliographie d'Aristote*, Paris, 1896.

XVI. HERESIES AND THE INQUISITION

A. OUTLINE

1. The connection between heresy and the pronounced intellectual activity and religious revival in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries.

2. Purely speculative novelties of the intellectual class. Notions about the Trinity and transubstantiation which disturbed the church. The trials of Abelard in 1121 and 1141. The trials at Paris in 1147 of Gilbert de la Porrée, 1076–1154, *scholasticus* in

Paris in 1141, bishop of Poitiers in 1142, author of the *Liber sex principiorum*. The pantheism of Chartres. Amalric (Amaury) of Bène and David of Dinant whose doctrines were condemned at Paris in 1210. Roger Bacon. The trial of Siger de Brabant in Paris in 1277. Siger de Brabant and Averroism. The censorship of books. The degree of intellectual freedom in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries.

3. Demented innnovators such as Tanchelm in Belgium and Eon de l'Etoile (Eudes de Stella) in Brittany in the first half of the twelfth century.

4. Antisacerdotal heresies in southern France in the twelfth century. Criticism of the practices of the church and of the lives of the clergy. Peter of Bruys (burned 1126) and the Petrobrusians. Henry of Lausanne (died in prison about 1149), and the Henricians. St. Bernard of Clairvaux in southern France to stem the tide of heresy. Peter Waldo of Lyons (died in Bohemia in 1197) and the Poor Men of Lyons or Waldensians, who were excommunicated by the pope in 1184, and driven from Aragon by Alphonse II in 1194.

5. Manichaens (Cathari or Albigensians, from Albi, near Toulouse). Theories about the origin of this sect. Possible connection with Paulicians and the Bogomiles of Bulgaria (*Bougre*). Their dualistic beliefs and ascetic practices. Spread of the heresy in the eleventh, twelfth, and thirteenth centuries. The Albigensian crusades (see outline XXV in part II above).

6. The suppression of heresy. The theory and practice of persecution in the early middle ages. The canon law and heresy. Gradual development of inquisitorial machinery and punishments and the gradual growth of intolerance. Desultory efforts of bishops to stem the tide of heresy. Special papal legates sent into Languedoc by Innocent III. Gregory IX, 1227–1241, organized the inquisition as a definite and permanent piece of machinery for the suppression of heresy (*inquisitio hereticae pravitatis*). The mendicants, especially the Dominicans, and the inquisition.

7. The inquisition. Co-operation of the state with the church. Legislation of Frederick II against heretics. The use of torture and secret and questionable legal procedure. Punishments: public recantation, fines, confiscation, penance, imprisonment, and abandonment of the prisoner to the secular arm. *Auto-da-fé* (act of faith). Attitude of canonists and theologians, especially St. Thomas Aquinas, towards the death penalty. Burning at the stake. Comparison of the medieval inquisition with the Spanish inquisition in the sixteenth century. The Jews and the inquisition.

8. The beginnings of persecutions for witchcraft by the papal inquisition in the second half of the thirteenth century. The great days of witch persecution did not come until the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries.

9. Influence of the inquisition on the intellectual life of the thirteenth century.

B. SPECIAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR READING

Short general surveys. LAVISSE and RAMBAUD, *Histoire générale*, II, 265–279. MILMAN, *History of Latin Christianity*, vol. V, book IX, ch. VIII. C. V. LANGLOIS, *L'inquisition d'après des travaux récents*, Paris, 1901. TRENCH, *Lectures in church history*, ch. XV, "Heresies in the middle ages." HOLLAND, *Rise of intellectual liberty*, chs. V–VII.

Standard works. "The most extensive, the most profound, and the most thorough history of the inquisition which we possess" (FRÉDÉRICQ) was written by a Philadelphian, the late H. C. LEA, *A history of the inquisition of the middle ages*, 3 vols., New York, 1888, translated into French by S. REINACH, *Histoire de l'inquisition au moyen âge*, with a valuable introduction, entitled "Historiographie de l'inquisition," by P. FRÉDÉRICQ, 3 vols., Paris, 1900–1902, also translated into German by J. HANSEN, *Geschichte der Inquisition im Mittelalter*, Bonn, 1905ff. LEA's work is supplemented by C. H. HASKINS, "Robert le Bougre and the beginnings of the inquisition in northern France," in *American historical review*, VII (1901–1902), 437–457, 631–652. In the first six chapters of vol. I, LEA gives a good account of the heresies and the general conditions which gave rise to the inquisition. Much has been written about LEA's books, especially by Roman Catholics; see *e.g.*, P. M. BAUMGARTEN, *Die Werke von Henry Charles Lea und verwandte Bücher*, Münster, 1908, translated into English, *Henry Charles Lea's historical writings*, New York, 1909. The best introduction to the position of modern Roman Catholic scholars on the question of medieval heresies and the inquisition is E. VANCANDARD, *L'inquisition: étude historique et critique sur le pouvoir coercitif de l'église*, Paris, 1906, 5th edition, 1909, translated by P. L. CONWAY, from the 2nd French edition, *The inquisition: a critical and historical study of the coercive power of the church*, New York, 1908. See also the article "Inquisition," in the *Catholic encyclopedia*.

Albigensian crusade. LAVISSE, *Histoire de France*, III, part 1, 259–268. The standard work is by A. LUCHAIRE, *Innocent III*, vol. II, *La croisade des Albigeois*, the first pages of which have been translated in MUNRO and SELLERY, *Medieval civilization*, enlarged edition, 432–457.

Gilbert de la Porrée. POOLE, *Illustrations of the history of medieval thought*, ch. VI, see also ch. IV. For opposition to the doctrines of the church in the beginning of the thirteenth century see LAVISSE, *Histoire de France*, III, part I, 313–318.

Averroism. MANDONNET, *Siger de Brabant et l'Averroïsme.* RENAN, *Averroès et Averroïsme.* C. V. LANGLOIS, *Questions d'histoire et d'enseignement*, 51–103, "Siger de Brabant."

Original sources. *Translations and reprints*, vol. III, no. 6, pp. 8–19. ROBINSON, *Readings*, I, ch. XVII.

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General books. All general histories of the church, nos. **394–498** above, and the encyclopaedias and periodicals for church history, nos. **104–114**, and **176–180** above, are useful; but see especially the general histories of freedom of thought, nos. **739–748** above. See also **540** above.

General surveys. H. REUTER, *Geschichte der religiösen Aufklärung im Mittelalter*, vol. II, books V–VIII. F. THUDICHUM, *Papsttum und Reformation im Mittelalter.*

Heresies. J. v. DÖLLINGER, *Beiträge zur Sectengeschichte des Mittelalters*, Munich, 2 vols., 1890 (vol. II contains source material). J. HAVET, "L'hérésie et le bras séculier au moyen âge jusqu'au XIII[e] siècle," in *Bibliothèque de l'école des chartes*, XLI (1880), 488–517, 570–607, 670 (or *Oeuvres complètes*, Paris, 1896, II, 117–180). F. TOCCO, *L'eresia nel medio evo*, Florence, 1884. P. BEUZART, *Les hérésies pendant le moyen âge et le réforme jusqu'à la mort de Philippe II, 1598, dans la region de Douais, d'Arras, et au pays de l'Alleu*, Le Puy, 1912. P. ALPHANDÉRY, *Les idées morales chez les hétérodoxes latins au début du XIII[e] siècle*, Paris, 1903 (Bibliothèque de l'Ecole des hautes études, sciences religieuses, XVI, 1); see also his *Notes sur le messianisme médiéval latin, XI[e]–XII[e] siècles*, Paris, 1912 (*ibid.*). P. HINSCHIUS, *Kirchenrecht*, V, 449–492. E. CONYBEARE, *Key of truth*, London, 1898. C. U. HAHN, *Geschichte der Ketzer im Mittelalter*, 3 vols., Stuttgart, 1845–1850.

Gilbert de la Porrée. Abbé BERTHAUD, *Gilbert de la Porrée, evêque de Poitiers et sa philosophie*, Poitiers, 1892. CLERVAL, *Les écoles des Chartres*, 163ff. GRABMANN, *Geschichte der scholastischen Methode*, II, 407–438.

Almaric, and David of Dinant. C. JOURDAIN, "Mémoire sur les sources philosophiques des hérésies d'Amaury de Chartres et de David de Dinan," in his *Excursions historiques*, 101–128. B. HAURÉAU, "Mémoire sur le vraie source des erreurs attribuées à David de Dinan," in *Mémoires de l'Academie des inscriptions*, XXIX,

part II (1879), 319–330. C. BAEUMKER, "Ein Tractat gegen die Amalricaner aus dem Anfange des XIII Jahrhundert," in *Jahrbuch für Philosophie und spekulative Theologie*, 1893, 346ff.

Waldensians. T. DE CAUZONS, *Les Vaudois et l'inquisition*, 3rd edition, Paris, 1908. E. COMBA, *Histoire des Vaudois*, new edition, Lausanne, 1901. K. MÜLLER, *Die Waldenser und ihre einzelnen Gruppen bis zum Anfang des 14 Jahrhunderts*, Gotha, 1886. W. PREGER, "Beiträge zur Geschichte der Waldesier im Mittelalter," in *Königliche bay. Ak. der Wiss., phil.-hist. Classe*, XIII (1877), 181–250; see also his "Über die Verfassung der französischen Waldesier in der ältesten Zeit," *ibid.*, XIX (1891), 639–711. H. HAUPT, *Waldensertum und Inquisition im südöstlichen Deutschland*, Freiburg, 1890. HERZOG (II.), *Die romanische Waldenser*, Halle, 1853. A. DIECKHOFF, *Die Waldenser im Mittelalter*, Göttingen, 1851.

Albigensians. T. DE CAUZONS, *Les Albigeois et l'inquisition*, 2nd edition, Paris, 1908. C. SCHMIDT, *Histoire et doctrine de la secte des Cathares ou Albigeois*, 2 vols., Paris, 1849. C. DOUAIS, *L'Albigéisme et les Frères prêcheurs à Narbonne au XIII^e siècle*, Paris, 1894. N. PEYRAT, *Histoire des Albigeois*, 3 vols., Paris, 1870–1872. C. DOUAIS, *Les Albigeois*, Paris, 1879. E. DULAURIER, *Les Albigeois ou les Cathares du Midi de la France*, in *Le Cabinet historique*, XXVI (1880). J. GUIRAUD, *Questions d'histoire et d'archéologie chrétienne*, Paris, 1906. VERNET'S article "Cathares," in no. 109 above, is important.

Inquisition. T. DE CAUZONS, *Histoire de l'inquisition en France*, vols. I–II, Paris, 1909–1912. C. DOUAIS, *L'inquisition: ses origines, sa procédure*, Paris, 1906. L. TANON, *Histoire des tribunaux de l'inquisition en France*, Paris, 1893. C. HENNER, *Beiträge zur Organisation und Kompetenz des päpstlichen Ketzergericht*, Leipzig, 1890. C. MOLINIER, *L'inquisition dans le Midi de la France au XIII^e au XIV^e siècle: étude sur les sources de son histoire*, Paris, 1880. J. M. VIDAL, *Bullaire de l'inquisition française au XIV^e siècle et jusqu'à la fin du Grand Schisme*, Paris, 1913; see also his *Un inquisiteur jugé par ses victimes: Jean Galland et les Carcassonnais*, Paris, 1903. H. THELOE, *Die Ketzerverfolgungen im 11 und 12 Jahrhundert: ein Beitrag zur Geschichte der Entstehung des päpstlichen Ketzerinquisitionsgericht*, Berlin, 1913 (Abhandlungen zur mittleren und neueren Geschichte, 48). H. MAILLET, *L'église et la répression sanglante de l'hérésie*, Liège and Paris, 1909 (Bibliothèque de la Faculté de philosophie et lettres de Liège, XVI). P. FRÉDÉRICQ, *Geschiedenis der inquisitie in de Nederlanden, 1025–1520*, 2 vols., Ghent, 1892–1897. J. MARX, *L'inquisition en Dauphiné: étude sur le développement et la répression de l'hérésie et de la sorcellerie du XIV^e siècle*

au début du règne de François Ier, Paris, 1914. H. KÖHLER, *Die Ketzerpolitik der deutschen Kaiser und Könige in den Jahren 1152–1254*, Bonn, 1913 (Ienaer historische Arbeiten, VI). F. ZECHBAUER, *Über Herkunft und Wesen des sizilischen Inquisitionsverfahrens*, Berlin, 1908 (dissertation). R. SCHMIDT, *Die Herkunft des Inquisitionsprozesses*, Freiburg, 1902. P. FLADE, *Das römische Inquisitionsverfahren in Deutschland bis zu den Hexenprozessen*, Leipzig, 1902 (Studien zur Geschichte der Theologie und der Kirche, vol. IX, 1).

Witch persecutions. J. HANSEN, *Quellen und Untersuchungen zur Geschichte des Hexenwahns und der Hexenverfolgung im Mittelalter: mit einer Untersuchung der Geschichte des Wortes "Hexe,"* von J. FRANCK, Bonn, 1901; and his *Zauberwahn, Inquisition und Hexenprozess im Mittelalter und die Entstehung der grossen Hexenverfolgung*, Munich and Leipzig, 1900 (vol. XII of Historische Bibliothek). J. BAISSAC, *Les grands jours de la sorcellerie*, Paris, 1890. T. DE CAUZONS, *La magie en France*, 4 vols., Paris, 1909. W. G. SOLDAN, *Geschichte der Hexenprozesse*, Stuttgart, 1843, new edition by H. HEPPE, 2 vols., 1880; there is also an illustrated edition by M. BAUER.

Original sources. *Corpus documentorum inquisitionis haereticae pravitatis Neerlandicae (1035–1528)*, edited by P. FRÉDÉRICQ, 5 vols., Ghent, 1889–1902. *Documents pour servir à l'histoire de l'inquisition dans le Languedoc*, Paris, 1900, edited by C. DOUAIS, part of no. 966 above. BERNARD GUIDO (d. 1331), *Practica inquisitionis heretice pravitatis*, edited by C. DOUAIS, Paris, 1886. Professor G. L. BURR of Cornell University has announced that he will edit *Sources for a projected history of witchcraft*, gathered and translated into English by the late H. C. LEA.

Bibliographies. MOLINIER, *Les sources*, III, pp. 54–82. H. HAUPT, "Literaturberichte über Inquisition, Aberglauben, Ketzerei und Sekten im Mittelalter," in *Zeitschrift für Kirchengeschichte*, XVI (1896), 512–536, XVII (1897), 270–287. P. FRÉDÉRICQ, "Les récents histoires catholique de l'inquisition en France," in *Revue historique*, CIX (1912), 307–334. G. L. BURR, "The literature of witchcraft," in *Papers of the American historical association*, IV (1890), 237–266. Professor BURR has announced that a special catalogue of the collection in Cornell University on the inquisition, torture, and witch-persecution is in preparation. The collection in Cornell University of books on witchcraft is the most complete in the world.

XVII. SYSTEMATIZATION OF MEDIEVAL PHILOSOPHY AND THEOLOGY

A. OUTLINE

1. The word "scholasticism" in intellectual history. Strange definitions of this peculiar word. Intimate relations between philosophy and theology in the middle ages. The dependence of both upon logic. The so-called scholastic method.

2. Old and new books which served as a basis for instruction in these subjects. The bible and patristic writings. Graeco-Roman, Hebrew, Arabic, and Byzantine literature. Importance of reputed authoritative texts. Lack of a critical attitude towards these texts, many of which were current only in faulty Latin translations.

3. Peter Lombard, born in Novara in Lombardy, master in Paris from about 1140, died as bishop of Paris in 1160, the "Master of the Sentences." His *Libri quattuor sententiarum*. Their place and influence in the development of the scholastic method.

4. Alexander of Hales, an Englishman who became a Franciscan in Paris about 1231 and died there in 1245. His great fame as a Franciscan master of theology. His voluminous *Summa theologica* which was the first successful attempt to utilize the New Aristotle for theology.

5. Albert the Great, born about 1193 in Swabia, a Dominican in 1223, master of theology in Paris, 1245–1248, died in Cologne in 1280. His paraphrase of the works of Aristotle for the use of the Latins. His acquaintance with Jewish and Arabic books.

6. Thomas Aquinas, born about 1225 near Monte Cassino, in the vicinity of ancient Aquinum, became a Dominican in 1243, the pupil of Albert in Cologne, whom he followed to Paris in 1245, died in 1274. His voluminous works, especially the great *Summa theologica* and his commentary on the literal Latin text of Aristotle, procured directly from the Greek with the help of William of Moerbeke. His skill in welding Aristotelianism with Christian doctrine. The exalted place of Thomas Aquinas in the history of thought.

7. Attacks upon the apparently perfect philosophical and theological system of Thomas by scholars from the British Isles. John Duns Scotus, a Franciscan master of theology in Oxford and Paris, died 1308 at the early age of about thirty-four. William of Ockam, renowned as a master of theology in Paris about 1320, died about 1347.

8. Scholastic mysticism. The influence of the writings of the so-called Dionysius the Areopagite, and of the *Introductorius ad*

evangelium aeternum falsely attributed to Joachim of Flora, died 1202. St. Bonaventura of Tuscany, 1221–1274, and Franciscan mysticism. Mechthild of Magdeburg, died 1277. The phenomenal development of mysticism in the fourteenth century, especially in Germany.

9. The organization of instruction in philosophy and theology in the rising universities (see outline XXII below).

10. Neo-scholasticism. The Encyclical *Aeterni Patris* of pope Leo XIII, 1879. Its influence in drawing attention to the intellectual history of the thirteenth century.

B. SPECIAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR READING

Short general surveys. The article "Scholasticism" in nos. 96 and 104 above. J. RICKABY, *Scholasticism*, London, 1911. W. TURNER, *History of philosophy*, 237–420. R. EUCKEN, *The problem of human life*, 248–269. H. B. WORKMAN, *Christian thought to the reformation*, 188–243. See also M. R. JAMES, "The Christian renaissance," in *Cambridge modern history*, I, 585–593.

Longer accounts. M. DE WULF, *History of medieval philosophy*, second period, "Medieval philosophy in the thirteenth century." TAYLOR, *Medieval mind*, 2nd edition, II, chs. XXXV–XXXVI, XXXIX–XLI, XLIII. W. J. TOWNSEND, *The great schoolmen*, chs. VIII–XVI. E. MICHAEL, *Culturzustände des deutschen Volkes*, III, 63–211. H. REUTER, *Geschichte der religiösen Aufklärung*, vol. II.

Peter Lombard. J. DE GHELLINCK, "The Liber sententiarum," in *Dublin review*, CXLVI (1910), 139–166. M. GRABMANN, *Die Geschichte der scholastischen Methode*, II, 359–407.

Alexander of Hales. H. FELDER, *Geschichte der wissenschaftlichen Studien im Franziskanerorden*, Freiburg, 1904, 177–211. J. A. ENDRES, "Des Alexander von Hales' Leben und psychologische Lehre," in *Philosophisches Jahrbuch*, 1888. See also the biographical article on Alexander of Hales in no. 89 above.

Thomas Aquinas. C. C. J. WEBB, *Studies in the history of natural religion*, part III, no. 4. SEDGWICK, *Italy in the thirteenth century*, II, ch. VI. R. W. B. VAUGHAN, *The life and labours of Saint Thomas of Aquin*, 2 vols., London, 1871–1872, abridged edition with the same title, London, 1872, 2nd edition, 1890. PLACID CONWAY, *Saint Thomas Aquinas, of the Order of Preachers (1225–1274): a biographical study of the angelic doctor*, New York, 1911.

Bonaventura. L. COSTELLOE, *Saint Bonaventure*. SEDGWICK, *Italy in the thirteenth century*, II, ch. VII.

Neo-scholasticism. M. DE WULF, *Introduction à la philosophie néo-scolastique*, Paris, 1904, translated by P. COFFEY, *Scholasticism*

old and new, London, 1907 (see ch. I for definitions of scholasticism). For a short sketch, see his article "Neo-scholasticism," in the *Catholic encyclopedia*. J. L. PERRIER, *The revival of scholastic philosophy in the nineteenth century*, New York, 1909. F. PICAVET, *Esquisse*, ch. IX.

Original sources. THOMAS AQUINAS, *Of God and his creatures*, a translation of the *Summa contra gentiles*, by J. RICKABY, St. Louis, 1905. THOMAS AQUINAS, *The Summa theologica*, literally translated by Fathers of the English Dominican Province, vols. I–XI, London, 1911–1917. A translation of the *Book of Sentences*, part IV, of PETER LOMBARD, by J. T SHOTWELL, is announced to appear in no. **949** above.

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General books. Almost all church histories, nos. **394–498** above, especially nos. **472–478**, touch upon the subjects of this outline. The general histories of philosophy, nos. **822–835** above, are most useful, particularly nos. **827–835**. See also nos. **104–116**, and **176–181** above. The general literature on the church in the twelfth and thirteenth century is listed under outline XXIV in part II above.

Scholasticism in general. J. DE GHELLINCK, *Le mouvement théologique du XII^e siècle*, Paris, 1914. F. PICAVET, *Essais sur l'histoire générale et comparée des théologies et des philosophies médiévales*, Paris, 1913, contains many essays previously published in various places. G. SORTAIS, *Histoire de la philosophie ancienne*, Paris, 1912, 156–252, is a good summary with excellent bibliographies. E. KREBS, *Theologie und Wissenschaft nach der Lehre der Hochscholastik*, Münster, 1913, part XI, 3, 4, of no. **826** above. T. HEITZ, *Essai historique sur les rapports entre la philosophie et la foi*. FERET, *La faculté de théologie de Paris*. G. v. HERTLING, *Wissenschaftliche Richtungen und philosophische Probleme im XIII Jahrhundert*, Munich, 1910 (Festrede). R. v. LILIENCRON, *Über den Inhalt der allgemeinen Bildung in der Zeit der Scholastik*, Munich, 1876 (Festrede). J. MARITAIN, *Le problème de la classification des sciences d'Aristote à Saint Thomas*, Paris, 1901. S. REINSTADLER, *Elementa philosophiae scholasticae*, 2 vols., Freiburg, 1901, 5th and 6th editions, 1911. G. M. MANSER, Ueber Umfang und Charakter der mittelalterlichen Scholastik," in *Historische-politische Blätter*, CXXXIX (1907), also printed separately. H. DELACROIX, "La philosophie médiévale latine jusqu'au XIV^e siècle," in *Revue de synthèse historique*, V (1902), 96–124. C. HOLZHEY, *Die Inspiration der heiligen Schrift in der Anschauung des Mittelalters von Karl dem*

Grossen bis zum Konzil von Trient, Munich, 1895. M. MAYWALD, *Die Lehre von der zweifachen Wahrheit: ein Versuch der Trennung von Theologie und Philosophie im Mittelalter*, Berlin, 1871. J. GUTTMANN, *Die Scholastik des XIII Jahrhunderts in ihren Beziehungen zu Judentum und zur jüdischen Literatur*, Breslau, 1902. M. GRABMANN, *Der Gegenwartswert der geschichtlichen Erforschung der mittelalterlichen Philosophie*, Vienna, 1913. F. X. PFEIFER, *Harmonische Beziehungen zwischen Scholastik und moderner Naturwissenschaft*, Augsburg, 1881.

Peter Lombard. O. BALTZER, *Die Sentenzen des Petrus Lombardus: ihre Quellen und ihre dogmengeschichtliche Bedeutung*, Leipzig, 1902, part VIII, 3, of no. **495** above. J. DE GHELLINCK, *Le traité de Pierre Lombard sur les sept ordres ecclésiastiques*, Louvain, 1910 (extract from the Revue d'histoire ecclésiastique, X–XI). J. N. ESPENBERGER, *Die Philosophie des Petrus Lombardus und ihre Stellung im XII Jahrhundert*, Münster, 1901, part III, 5 of no. **826** above. F. PROTOIS, *Pierre Lombard, évêque de Paris, dit le Maître des sentences: son époque, sa vie, ses écrits, son influence*, Paris, 1881.

Albert the Great. P. MANDONNET, "Albert le Grand," in no. **109** above. F. v. HERTLING, *Albertus Magnus: Beiträge zu seiner Würdigung*, Cologne, 1880. N. THOEMES, *Albertus Magnus in Geschichte und Sage*, Cologne, 1880. J. BACH, *Des Albertus Magnus Verhältniss zu der Erkenntnisslehre der Griechen, Lateiner, Araber, und Juden*, Vienna, 1881. L. GAUL, *Alberts des Grossen Verhältnis zu Plato*, Münster, 1913, part XII, 1, of no. **826** above. A. SCHNEIDER, *Die Psychologie Alberts des Grossen*, Münster, 1903, part of no. **826** above. For literature on Albert's interest in natural science see outline XXI below.

Thomas Aquinas. M. GRABMANN, *Thomas von Aquin: eine Einführung in seine Persönlichkeit und Gedankenwelt*, Munich, 1912. A. D. SERTILLANGES, *Saint Thomas d'Aquin*, 2 vols., Paris, 1910. J. A. ENDRES, *Die Zeit des Hochscholastik: Thomas von Aquin*, Mainz, 1910; see also his article, "Die Bedeutung des hl. Thomas für das wissenschaftliche Leben seiner Zeit," in *Historische-politische Blätter*, CXLVII (1911), 801–824. P. MANDONNET, *Des écrits authentiques de S. Thomas d'Aquin*, 2nd edition, Fribourg, 1910. E. TROELTSCH, *Die Soziallehren der christlichen Kirchen*, Tübingen, 1912, 286–358. P. ROUSSELOT, *L'intellectualisme de Saint-Thomas*, Paris, 1908 (Les grands philosophes). A. ROHNER, *Das Schöpfungsproblem bei Moses Maimonides, Albertus Magnus und Thomas von Aquin*, Münster, 1913. M. WITTMANN, *Die Stellung des hl. Thomas von Aquin zu Avencebrol*, Münster, 1900, part III, 3, of no. **826** above. M. CHOSSAT, "Saint Thomas d'Aquin et Siger de Bra-

bant,'' in *Revue de philosophie*, XXIV (1914), 553–575; XXV (1914), 25–52. M. ASÍN PALACIOS, ''El averroismo de Santo Tomás de Aquino,'' in *Homenaje a D. Francisco Codera*, Saragossa, 1904, 271–331, also printed separately.

Bonaventura. L. LEMMENS, *Der hl. Bonaventura, Kardinal und Kirchenlehrer aus dem Franziskanerorden*, Kempten, 1909. G. PALHORIÈS, *Saint Bonaventure*, Paris, 1913 (La Pensée chrétienne, textes et études).

John Duns Scotus. R. SEEBERG, *Die Theologie des Johannes Duns Scotus*, Leipzig, 1900; see also his *Verhältniss zwischen Glauben und Wissen, Theologie und Philosophie, nach Duns Scotus*, Paderborn, 1908. K. WERNER, *J. Duns Scotus*, Vienna, 1881. See also the article on John Duns Scotus in no. **89** above.

Mysticism. W. K. FLEMING, *Mysticism in Christianity*, London, 1913 (Library of historic theology). W. R. INGE, *Christian mysticism*, London, 1899 (Bampton lectures). R. M. JONES, *Studies in mystical religion*, New York, 1909. E. LEHMANN, *Mysticism in heathendom and Christendom*, translated by G. M. G. HUNT, London, 1910. EVELYN UNDERHILL, *Mysticism: a study in the nature and development of man's spiritual consciousness*, 4th edition, New York, 1912. R. A. VAUGHAN, *Hours with the mystics*, 2 vols., 5th edition, London, 1888. E. GEBHARDT, *L'Italie mystique*. C. OULMONT, *Le verger, le temple et la cellule: essai sur la sensualité dans les oeuvres de mystique religieuse*, Paris, 1912. A. LECLÈRE, *Le mysticisme catholique et l'âme de Dante*, Paris, 1906. W. PREGER, *Geschichte der deutschen Mystik im Mittelalter*, 3 vols., Leipzig, 1874–1893. J. v. GÖRRES, *Die christliche Mystik*, new edition, 5 vols., Regensburg [1879–1880]. W. ÖHL, *Deutsche Mystiker*, vol. I, Munich, 1910. R. LANGENBERG, *Quellen und Forschungen zur Geschichte der deutschen Mystik*, Bonn, 1901. P. FOURNIER, *Etudes sur Joachim de Flore et ses doctrines*, Paris, 1909. For a short sketch of Joachim see SEDGWICK, *Italy in the thirteenth century*, I, ch. IV. FRANCESCA M. STEELE, *The life and visions of St. Hildegarde*, London, 1914. L. ZOEPF, *Die Mystikerin Margaretha Ebner (c. 1291–1351)*, Leipzig, 1914, part 16 of no. **749** above. V. SCULLY, *A medieval mystic: a short account of the life and writings of blessed John Ruysbroeck, canon regular of Grenendael, A.D. 1293–1381*, London, 1910. See also the literature on the Spiritual Franciscans under outline XXIII in part II above, and for books on the German mystics in the fourteenth century and the *De imitatione Christi of* THOMAS À KEMPIS see DAHLMANN-WAITZ, *Quellenkunde*, nos. 6973–6982, 7099–7107.

Special reviews of scholasticism and neo-scholasticism. *Revue néo-scolastique de philosophie*, Louvain, 1894ff. *Revue Thomiste*,

Paris, 1893ff. *Revista italiana di filosofia neo-scolastica,* Florence, 1909ff.

Original sources. THOMAS AQUINAS, *Opera omnia,* iussu impensaque Leonis XIII, vols. I–XII, Rome, 1882–1906, sometimes referred to as the "Vatican edition." ALBERT THE GREAT, *Opera omnia,* edited by A. BORGNET, 38 vols., Paris, 1890. SAINT BONAVENTURA, *Opera omnia,* 11 vols., Quaracchi, 1882–1902. JOHN DUNS SCOTUS, *Opera,* new edition, 26 vols., Paris, 1891–1895. PETER LOMBARD, *Libri quattuor sententiarum,* a critical edition in vols. I–IV of the *Opera* of *St. Bonaventura,* Quaracchi, 1882ff. See also no. 826 above.

Bibliographies. For general bibliographies on church history and history of philosophy see nos. 49–57 above. CHEVALIER, no. 16 above, is particularly useful for this outline. The fourth French edition of M. DE WULF, *Histoire de la philosophie, and* G. SORTAIS, *Histoire de la philosophie ancienne,* furnish the best practical bibliographies. For Albert the Great see P. MANDONNET, *Siger de Brabant,* I (1911), 37, note. A. NOYEN, *Inventaire des écrits théologiques du XII^e siècle non insérés dans la Patrologie latine de Migne,* fascicule I, Paris, 1912 (extract from the Revue des bibliothèques).

XVIII. RISE AND DECLINE OF INTEREST IN THE ANCIENT CLASSICS

A. OUTLINE

1. Current misconceptions about the so-called "revival of learning" and the neglect of the ancient classics in the middle ages (see outline XXXIII of part II above). Resumé: the ancient classics in the early middle ages (see especially outlines IV, VII–IX above).

2. The increasing interest in the Latin classics, taught as a part of grammar, in the beginning of the twelfth century. Northern France was the center of this growing interest.

3. The schools of Chartres. Bernard of Chartres, chancellor there from 1119 to 1126. William of Conches (died 1154). Gilbert de la Porrée. Theoderic of Chartres, chancellor from 1141 to about 1150. The famous *Eptateuchon,* or manual of the seven arts, of Theoderic. His stress on the Latin classics. The English colony of students in Chartres. Decline of the schools of Chartres in the latter half of the twelfth and in the thirteenth century.

4. John of Salisbury, 1110–1180, and humanistic studies. In 1136 he heard Abelard in Paris, but in 1138 went to Chartres to study "grammar." His denunciation of the narrow-minded

students of logic (*Cornificians*). His *Entheticus*, *Policraticus* and *Metalogicus*. His enthusiasm for classical studies as taught in Chartres. He was bishop of Chartres when he died in 1180.

5. Classical studies in the schools of Orleans towards the beginning of the thirteenth century, before it became a famous seat for the study of law. The evidence of Matthew of Vendôme (died ca. 1200), Goeffrey of Vinsauf, and the monk Helinand.

6. The decline of the study of the classics in Paris about 1200–1250. Evidence from Peter of Blois, ca. 1140–1212, Alexander Neckam, 1157–1217, Giraldus Cambrensis (Gerald of Barri), 1147–ca. 1222, and from an anonymous list of text-books. Vincent of Beauvais, died 1264, and his *Speculum mundi*, divided into three parts: *naturale, doctrinale, historiale.* Unavailing efforts made by John Garland (died ca. 1259) to check the decline (see outline XXIII below). The "Oxford school" of scholars, especially Robert Grosseteste and Roger Bacon (see outline XXI below).

7. Neglect of the ancient classics in the universities, especially the university of Paris. There is no mention of them in the statutes of this university. Causes of this neglect.

8. The *Battle of the seven arts*, a French poem written by the trouvère Henri d'Andeli in the second quarter of the thirteenth century.

9. Interest in Greek, Hebrew, and Arabic, in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries (Robert Grosseteste, Roger Bacon, William of Moerbeke, and Thomas Aquinas). Greek in southern Italy and Sicily (see outline XV above). Importance of Byzantine influences. The oriental college of Paris in the time of pope Innocent III, 1198–1216. The study of languages for missionary purposes. Raymund Lull, 1235–1315, a Franciscan, born in Majorca. The legislation of the council of Vienne, 1311, on the compulsory teaching of languages.

10. Textual criticism in the thirteenth century, concerned chiefly with the *Vulgate*. The efforts of Roger Bacon.

11. Sporadic interest in the ancient classics during the century preceding Petrarch. For Dante see outline XXVIII below. Petrarch, called the "morning star of the renaissance," shone forth so brightly in his advocacy of the Latin classics because it happened to be darkest just before the dawn.

B. Special Recommendations for Reading

Brief general surveys. Taylor, *Mediaeval mind*, 2nd edition, II, ch. xxxi. See also his "Antecedents of the quattrocento," in *Annual report of the American historical association*, 1912, 89–94.

SANDYS, *A history of classical scholarship*, I, chs. XXVIII–XXXII, *passim*. MUNRO and SELLERY, *Medieval civilization*, 285–309. H. FELDER, *Geschichte der wissenschaftlichen Studien im Franziskanerorden*, 402–417. NORDEN, *Die antike Kunstprosa*, II, 688–731. E. MICHAEL, *Culturzustände des deutschen Volkes*, III, 279–319. ROBERT, *Les écoles*, ch. IV. GRABMANN, *Geschichte der scholastischen Methode*, II, 59–64. B. HAURÉAU, "De l'enseignement des langues anciennes," in *Journal des savants*, 1891, 502–508.

Classics in European culture. E. K. RAND, "The classics in European education," pp. 260–282 in *Latin and Greek in American education: with symposia on the value of humanistic studies*, edited by F. W. KELSEY, New York, 1911.

Schools of Chartres. A. CLERVAL, "L'enseignement des arts libéraux à Chartres et à Paris dans la première moitié du XII^e^ siècle d'après l'Heptateuchon de Thierry de Chartres," in *Congrès scientifique internationale des catholiques tenu à Paris*, 1888, II, 277–296; see also his *Les écoles de Chartres*, 144–272. POOLE, *Illustrations*, ch. IV. GRABMANN, *Geschichte der scholastischen Methode*, II, 407–476, "Die Schule von Chartres," lays special stress on its influence in philosophy and theology rather than humanistic studies.

John of Salisbury. POOLE, *Illustrations of the history of medieval thought*, ch. VII; see also his article in no. 89 above. A. C. KREY, "John of Salisbury's knowledge of the classics," in *Transactions of the Wisconsin academy of sciences, arts and letters*, XVI, 2 (1909–1910), 948–987. C. C. J. WEBB, "John of Salisbury," in *Proceedings of the Aristotelian society*, II, no. 2 (1893), 91–107.

Schools of Orleans. L. DELISLE, "Les écoles d'Orléans au XII^e^ et au XIII^e^ siècle," in *Annaire-Bulletin de la Société de l'histoire de France*, VII (1869), 139–154. Mlle. A. DE FOULQUES DE VILLARET, *L'enseignement des lettres et des sciences dans l'Orléanais depuis les premiers siècles du Christianisme jusqu'à la fondation de l'université d'Orléans*, Orleans, 1875.

Vincent of Beauvais. E. BOUTARIC, *Vincent de Beauvais et la connaissance de l'antiquité classique au treizième siècle*, Paris, 1875 (also in Revue des questions historiques, XVII [1875], 5–57). BAUMGARTNER, *Geschichte der Weltliteratur*, IV, 468–475.

Neglect of classics in universities. L. J. PAETOW, *The arts course at medieval universities with special reference to grammar and rhetoric*, Urbana, Ill., 1910 (University of Illinois Studies, II, no. 7), ch. I.

Study of languages, especially Greek. A. LEFRANC, *Histoire du Collège de France*, Paris, 1893, ch. I. LOUISE R. LOOMIS, *Medieval*

hellenism, Lancaster, Pa., 1906 (dissertation, Columbia). C. JOURDAIN, "Un collège oriental à Paris au XIII^e^ siècle," in his *Excursions historiques*, 221–229. K. KRUMBACHER, "Die griechische Literatur des Mittelalters," in *Die Kultur der Gegenwart*, 1:8 (1905), 237–288, 2nd ed. (1907), 239–290.

Textual criticism. F. A. GASQUET, "Roger Bacon and the Latin Vulgate," in *Roger Bacon essays*, edited by A. G. LITTLE, Oxford, 1914, 89–99; and in his *The last abbot of Glastonbury and other essays*, London, 1908, pp. 113–140, "English biblical criticism in the thirteenth century," first published in *Dublin review*, 1898. S. A. HIRSCH, "Roger Bacon and philology," in *Roger Bacon essays*, 101–151. B. JARRETT, "A thirteenth century revision committee of the bible," in *Irish theological quarterly*, IV (1910), 56ff. For a description of the present revision committee of the *Vulgate* see the article "Vulgate, revision of," in the *Catholic encyclopedia*. E. FLÜGEL, "Roger Bacon's Stellung in der Geschichte der Philologie," in *Philosophische Studien*, XIX (1902), 164–191.

Original sources. *The battle of the seven arts*, by HENRI D'ANDELI, edited and translated, with introduction and notes and facsimiles of the two extant manuscripts, by L. J. PAETOW, University of California Press, 1914 (Memoirs of the University of California, IV, no. 1). C. H. HASKINS, "A list of text-books from the close of the twelfth century," in *Harvard studies in classical philology*, (1909), 75–94. NORTON, *Readings*, 25–35, translates some extracts from the works of John of Salisbury, and pp. 60–75 translates the section from GRATIAN'S *Decretum* entitled "Shall priests be acquainted with profane literature or no?"

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General books. Some of the general histories of literature, nos. 782–814 above, will be found useful, see *e.g.*, no. 790.

General accounts. A. MARIGO, "Cultura letteraria e preumanistica nelle maggiori enciclopedie del dugento, lo '*Speculum*' ed il '*Tresors*,'" in *Giornale storico della letteratura italiana*, LXVIII (1916), 1–42, 289–326. B. GROCHE, *Beiträge zur Geschichte einer Renaissancebewegung bei den deutschen Schriftstellern im 12 Jahrhundert*. F. NOVATI, *L'influsso del pensiero latino sopra la civiltà italiana del medio evo*, 2nd edition, Milan, 1899. J. L. HEIBERG, "Et mislykket Renaissancetillφb," in *Studier fra Sprog- og Oltidsforskning*, Copenhagen, 1892. G. KÖRTING, *Geschichte der Literatur Italiens im Zeitalter der Renaissance*, III, 1–75. A. GRAF, *Roma nella memoria e nelle immaginazioni del medio evo*. A. BARTOLI, *I precursori del rinascimento*, Florence, 1877. C. DANIEL, *Des études*

classiques dans la société chrétienne, Paris, 1853, lays special stress on conditions in France in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries. W. GIESEBRECHT, *De litterarum studiis apud Italos*, Berlin, 1845, translated into Italian by C. PASCAL, Florence, 1895. A. H. L. HEEREN, *Geschichte der classischen Literatur im Mittelalter* [to 1400], 2 vols., Göttingen, 1822.

Individual Latin classical authors in the middle ages. D. COMPARETTI, *Vergil in the middle ages.* G. ZAPPERT, *Virgils Fortleben im Mittelalter.* N. CREIZENACH, *Die Aeneis, die vierte Ecloge und die Pharsalia im Mittelalter*, Frankfurt, 1864 (Programm). T. ZIELINSKI, *Cicero im Wandel der Jahrhunderten*, is very poor for the middle ages. G. CURCIO, *Q. Orazio Flacco studiato in Italia dal secolo XIII al XVIII*, Catania, 1913. C. PASCAL, *Letteratura latina medievale*, Catania, 1909, 117–174, on Seneca, Lucretius, and Ovid in the middle ages. M. MANITIUS, *Analekten zur Geschichte des Horaz im Mittelalter* [to 1300], Göttingen, 1893; see also his "Beiträge zur Geschichte römischer Dichter im Mittelalter," in *Philologus*, XLVII (1889), 710–720; XLIX (1890), 554–564; L (1891), 354–372; LI (1892), 156–171, 530–535, 704–719; LII (1894), 536–552; LVI (1897), 535–541; his "Beiträge zur Geschichte römischer Prosaiker im Mittelalter," *ibid.*, XLVII (1889), 562–568; XLVIII (1889), 564–573; XLIX (1890), 191–192, 380–384; and his *Philologisches aus alten Bibliothekskatalogen bis 1300*, Frankfurt, 1892 (extract from Rheinisches Museum, neue Folge, XLVIII, 1892, Ergänzungsheft). The above studies of Manitius will be superseded when vol. II of no. 787 above, appears. K. DZIATZKO, "Zu Terentius im Mittelalter," in *Neue Jahrbücher für Philologie und Pädagogik*, CIL (1894), 465–477. A. COLLIGNON, *Pétrone au moyen âge et dans la littérature française*, Paris, 1893.

John of Salisbury. C. SCHAARSCHMIDT, *Johannes Saresberiensis nach Leben und Studien, Schriften und Philosophie*, Leipzig, 1862. P. GENNRICH, "Zur Chronologie des Lebens Johanns von Salisbury," in *Zeitschrift für Kirchengeschichte*, XIII (1892), 544–551. M. DEMIMUID, *Jean de Salisbury*, Paris, 1873 (dissertation).

Vincent of Beauvais. J. B. BOURGEAT, *Etudes sur Vincent de Beauvais*, Paris, 1856.

Greek in the middle ages. L. TRAUBE, *O Roma nobilis;* and his *Vorlesungen*, 83ff. J. J. v. DÖLLINGER, "Einfluss der griechischen Literatur und Cultur auf die abendländische Welt im Mittelalter," translated into English in no. 913 above. M. R. JAMES, "A Greek-Latin lexicon of the XIII century, perhaps by Grosseteste," in *Mélanges offerts à M. Emile Chatelain*, Paris, 1909. J. L. HEIBERG, "Die griechische Grammatik Roger Bacons," in *Byzantinische*

Zeitschrift, IX (1900), 479–491. L. SCHÜTZ, "Der hl. Thomas von Aquin und sein Verständnis des Griechischen," in *Philosophisches Jahrbuch*, VIII (1895), 271–283. A. TOUGARD, *L'hellénisme dans les écrivains du moyen âge du septième au douzième siècle*, Paris, 1886. C. CUISSARD, *L'étude du grec à Orléans depuis le IX^e siècle jusqu'au milieu du XVIII siècle*, Orleans, 1883. E. EGGER, *L'hellénisme en France*, 2 vols., Paris, 1869, is superficial in its treatment of the middle ages. M. VOGEL, and V. GARDTHAUSEN, *Die griechischen Schreiber des Mittelalters und der Renaissance*, Leipzig, 1909. D. BIKÉLAS, *Die Griechen des Mittelalters und ihr Einfluss auf die europäische Cultur*, translated from the Greek by W. WAGNER, Gütersloh, 1878. C. GIDEL, *Les études grecques en Europe* [fourth century to 1453], Paris, 1878, in *Nouvelles études sur la littérature grecque moderne*, pp. 1–289. J. F. CRAMER, *De Graecis medii aevi studiis*, Stralsund, 1849–1853.

For Greek in Sicily and southern Italy see outline XV above, and the following: GOTHEIN, *Die Kultur-Entwickelung Süd-Italiens*. H. F. TOZER, "The Greek-speaking population of southern Italy," in *Journal of Hellenic studies*, X (1889), 11–42. P. BATIFFOL, *L'abbaye de Rossano*, Paris, 1891; his "Inscriptions byzantines de St. George au vélabre," and "Librairies byzantines à Rome," in *Mélanges d'archéologie et d'histoire*, VII (1887), 419–431; VIII (1888), 297ff, are studies on Greek emigrants from Byzantium to Rome in the seventh and eighth centuries. J. L. HEIBERG, "Eine mittelalterliche Übersetzung der Syntaxis des Ptolemaios," in *Hermes*, XLV (1910), 57–66; see also XLVI (1911), 207–216. C. H. HASKINS, "Moses of Bergamo," in *Byzantinische Zeitschrift*, XXIII (1914), 133–142.

Hebrew. S. A. HIRSCH, "Early English Hebraists: Roger Bacon and his predecessors," in *Jewish quarterly review*, XII (1899), 34–88, reprinted in his *Book of essays*, London, 1905, 1–72. S. BERGER, *Quam notitiam linguae Hebraicae habuerint Christiani medii aevi temporibus in Gallia*, Paris, 1893. K. NEUMANN, *Über die orientalischen Sprachstudien seit dem 13 Jahrhundert, mit besonderer Rücksicht auf Wien*, Vienna, 1899.

Textual criticism in the thirteenth century. P. J. WITZEL, "De Fr. Rogero Bacon eiusque sententia de rebus biblicis," in *Archivum Franciscanum historicum*, III (1910), 1–22, 185–213, contains the best bibliography. H. DENIFLE, "Die Handschriften der Bibel-Correctorien des 13 Jahrhunderts," in *Archiv für Literatur- und Kirchengeschichte des Mittelalters*, IV (1888), 263–311, 471–601. S. BERGER, *De l'histoire de la Vulgate en France*, Paris, 1887; see also his "Les essais qui ont été faits à Paris au treizième siècle pour

corriger le texte de la Vulgate,'' in *Revue de théologie et de philosophie* (Lausanne) XVI (1883), 41–66; and his *Histoire de la Vulgate*, Paris, 1893. P. MARTIN, ''La Vulgate latine au XIII^e^ siècle d'après Roger Bacon,'' in *Museon*, VII (1888), 88–107; 169–196, 278–291, 381–393; and his ''Le texte Parisien et la Vulgate latine,'' *ibid.*, VIII (1889), 444–466; IX (1890), 301–316. SALEMBIER, *Une page inédite de l'histoire de la Vulgate*, Amiens, 1890. F. KAULEN, *Geschichte der Vulgata*, Mainz, 1868; and his *Handbuch der Vulgata*, Mainz, 1870, 2nd edition, Freiburg, 1904. H. A. A. KENNEDY, ''The old Latin versions of the Bible,'' in *Dictionary of the Bible*, III (1902), 47–62; and H. J. WHITE, ''Vulgate,'' *ibid.*, IV, 872–890.

Original sources. JOHANNIS SARESBERIENSIS, *Opera omnia*, edited by J. A. GILES, 5 vols., Oxford, 1848, reprinted in no. **953** above, *P. L.* vol. CXCIX. There is now a good new edition of the *Policraticus*, JOANNIS SARESBERIENSIS Episcopi Carnotensis *Policratici sive de Nugis*, edited by C. C. J. WEBB, 2 vols., Oxford, 1909. GIRALDUS CAMBRENSIS *Opera*, edited by J. S. BREWER, 8 vols., London, 1861 (Rolls series, 21). *De bibliorum sacrorum textibus originalibus, versionibus graeca et latina vulgata*, edited by H. HODY, Oxford, 1705, published the portions of the works of Roger Bacon referring to the revision of the *Vulgate;* note that his book dates before JEBB'S edition of the *Opus majus* of BACON. ROGER BACON, *Opus majus*, part III, on the study of language, is the best source of information on textual criticism in the thirteenth century. *The Greek grammar of Roger Bacon and a fragment of his Hebrew grammar*, edited by E. NOLAN and S. A. HIRSCH, Cambridge, 1902. For Roger Bacon and Robert Grosseteste in general see also outline XXI below. *Hebräische Grammatik aus dem 13 Jahrhundert*, edited by S. POZNANSKI, Berlin, 1894. CONRADI HIRSAUGENSIS, *Dialogus super auctores sive Didascalon*, edited by G. SCHEPSS, Würzburg, 1889. HUGO OF TRIMBERG, *Registrum multorum auctorum*, edited by J. H. HUEMER, Vienna, 1888. NICOLAI DE BIBERA, *Carmen satiricum*, edited by T. FISCHER, Halle, 1870, translated into German by A. REINÄCKER, Erfurt, 1871.

Bibliographies. There are no systematic bibliographies of this subject which has been sadly neglected until a short time ago. See bibliographies and bibliographical footnotes in the works mentioned above.

XIX. THE ARS DICTAMINIS AND THE ARS NOTARIA

A. OUTLINE

1. The transformation of rhetoric in medieval universities. For the importance of rhetoric in the Roman schools see outline I above. The comparative unimportance of rhetoric in the early middle ages, when the study of the elements of Roman law was often a part of it.

2. The art of writing formal letters and legal documents in the middle ages. This art, which had been a very subordinate part of rhetoric in the early middle ages, became an independent branch of learning in some universities, especially those which stressed the study of law. In its earliest form it was called *ars dictaminis* or *dictamen prosaicum*. In some places it usurped the whole field of rhetoric and was called *rhetorica*.

3. The *ars dictaminis* as a separate branch of instruction originated in Italy. The *Formularius tabellionum* of Irnerius. Alberich of Monte-Cassino (second half of the eleventh century) was the founder of the art. His *Rationes dictandi*. Manuals consisting of explanatory text and illustrative material. Formularies and letter-books. Collections of model letters for students and their parents. The *cursus*.

4. The *ars dictaminis* in Bologna. Close association with the study of law. Tendency to make the art more and more practical. The famous Boncompagno (ca. 1165–ca. 1240). His *Rhetorica antiqua*, *Novissima rhetorica*, *Mirrha*, *Oliva*, and *Cedrus*. Bene of Lucca's *Candelabrum* (1220–1223). Guido Faba, who wrote about 1225, systematized the art in his *Summa dictaminis* and *Dictamen*.

5. The transient character of the *ars dictaminis* and its transformation into the *ars notaria* in Bologna. Raynerius, master of the *ars notaria* in 1219. Degrees in *notaria*. Rolandinus Passagerius (died 1300), the most famous doctor of the art. His *Summa artis notariae*. The faculty of *notaria* in Bologna in the thirteenth century. The art in other Italian universities.

6. The *ars dictaminis* and the *ars notaria* beyond the Alps. The *Parisiana* of John Garland of Paris. The "Lombard dame, Rhetoric," mentioned in the *Battle of the seven arts*. Laurentius of Aquileia in Paris towards the close of the thirteenth century. The important school of the *ars dictaminis* in Orleans. The *Summa dictaminum* of Bernard Silvester of Tours (ca. 1153). Itinerant *dictatores* such as Ponce of Provence who wrote his *Summa de dictamine* about 1250. The art in Chartres, Toulouse, Montpellier, and in England and Germany.

7. Changes brought about in the curricula of medieval schools and universities by the popularity of this short-lived "business course." Rivalry of the art with the ancient classics. Causes of its decline in the universities in the fourteenth century.

8. The business world of the graduates of the *ars dictaminis* and *ars notaria*. Secretaries and notaries in the chanceries of state and church, especially the papal chancery.

B. SPECIAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR READING

Brief general surveys. P. ABELSON, *The seven liberal arts*, 52–71. PAETOW, *The arts course*, 67–91, treats the subject with special reference to medieval universities.

Fundamental works. L. ROCKINGER, *Briefsteller und Formelbücher des XI bis XIV Jahrhunderts*, in *Quellen und Erörterungen zur bayerischen und deutschen Geschichte*, IX, in 2 parts, Munich, 1863–1864; see also his "Ueber die ars dictandi und die summae dictaminium in Italien," in *Sitzungsberichte der Akademie der Wissenschaften zu München*, 1861, I, 98–151. C. V. LANGLOIS, "Formulaires de lettres du XII^e^, du XIII^e^ et du XIV^e^ siècle," six articles in *Notices et extraits*, XXXIV, part I (1891), 1–32, 305–322; part II (1895), 1–29; XXXV, part II (1897), 409–434, 793–830. Both of these authors have included many original sources which illustrate their introductions.

Model student letters. C. H. HASKINS, "Life of medieval students as seen in their letters," in *American historical review*, III (1897–1898), 203–229, has given a fine demonstration of the way in which these model student letters can be used as sources of history.

The cursus. R. L. POOLE, *Lectures on the history of the papal chancery*, ch. IV. A. C. CLARKE, *The cursus in mediaeval and vulgar Latin*, Oxford, 1910.

Boncompagno, Bene of Lucca, and Guido Faba. A. GAUDENZI, "Sulla chronologia delle opere dei dettatori Bolognesi da Buoncompagno a Bene di Lucca," in *Bullettino del' Istituto storico italiano*, XIV (1895), 85–174. C. SUTTER, *Aus Leben und Schriften des Magisters Buoncompagno*, Freiburg and Leipzig, 1894.

The business world of graduates of the art. L. B. DIBBEN, "Secretaries in the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries," in *English historical review*, XXV (1910), 430–444. BRESSLAU, *Urkundenlehre;* and POOLE, *Papal chancery, passim*. A. GIRY, *Manuel de diplomatique*, especially book V, "Les chancelleries," and book VI, ch. I, "Les notaires publics." W. WATTENBACH, *Das Schriftwesen im Mittelalter*, 456–466, "Die Kanzleibeamten." P. FOURNIER, *Les officialités au moyen âge*, Paris, 1880.

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General books. See the books on diplomatics, nos. **238–244** above.

General surveys. H. BRESSLAU, *Handbuch der Urkundenlehre*, I, first edition, 624–651 (now find the corresponding pages in vol. II, part I of the second edition, which is not in the library of the university of California due to the war). A. BÜTOW, *Die Entwicklung der mittelalterlichen Briefsteller bis zur Mitte des 12 Jahrhunderts mit besonderer Berücksicht der ars dictandi*, Greifswald, 1909 (dissertation). F. NOVATI, *L'influsso del pensiero latino*, ch. VIII. L. ROCKINGER, *Ueber Briefsteller und Formelbücher in Deutschland während des Mittelalters*, Munich, 1861; see also his *Ueber Formelbücher vom XIII bis zum XVI Jahrhundert als rechtsgeschichtliche Quelle*, Munich, 1855. W. WATTENBACH, "Ueber Briefsteller des Mittelalters," in *Archiv für Kunde österreichischer Geschichtsquellen*, XIV, 29–94, and separately as *Iter Austriacum*, Vienna, 1855. PALACKY, "Ueber Formelbücher," in *Abhandlungen der böhmischen Gesellschaft der Wissenschaften*, II (1842), 219–368; V (1847), 1–216. PESCHEK, "Ueber Formelbücher aus dem Mittelalter," in *Archiv für sächsische Geschichte*, 1843. H. BAERWALD, *Für Characteristik und Kritik mittelalterliche Formelbücher*, Vienna, 1858. F. K. v. SAVIGNY, *Geschichte des römischen Rechts*, III, ch. XXI.

Cursus. N. VALOIS, "Etude sur le rythme des bulles pontificales," in *Bibliothèque de l'Ecole de chartes*, XLII (1881), 161–198, 257–272, also published separately, Paris, 1881. H. BRESSLAU, *Handbuch*, I, first edition, 587–592 (now see corresponding pages in the second edition, vol. II, part I). E. NORDEN, *Die antike Kunstprosa*, II, 923–960. A. GIRY, *Manuel de diplomatique*, 454–462. L. COUTURE, "Le 'cursus' ou rythme prosaïque dans la liturgie et dans la littérature de l'église latine du III^e^ siècle à la renaissance," in *Revue des questions historiques*, LI (1892), 253–261. L. HAVET, *La prose métrique de Symmache et les origines métriques du cursus*, Paris, 1892. L. DUCHESNE, "Note sur l'origine du *'cursus'* ou rythme prosaïque," in *Bibliothèque de l'Ecole des chartes*, L (1889), 161–163.

Ars notaria. G. POLETTI, *Il notariato a Bergamo nel seculo XIII: appunti*, Bergamo, 1912. V. ROSE, "Ars notaria, Tironische Noten und Stenographie im 12 Jahrhundert," in *Hermes*, VIII (1874), 303–326.

Ars dictaminis in France. N. VALOIS, *De arte scribendi epistolas apud gallicos medii aevi scriptores rhetoresve*, Paris, 1880 (dissertation). C. V. LANGLOIS, "Maître Bernard," in *Bibliothèque de*

l'Ecole des chartes, LIV (1893), 225–250, 795; see also SANDYS, *A history of classical scholarship,* I, 534. A. CLERVAL, *Les écoles de Chartres,* 234, 311.

Original sources. The *Formularius tabellionum* of IRNERIUS and the *Rhetorica antiqua* of BONCOMPAGNO are published in vols. I and II of the *Bibliotheca iuridica* listed in the following outline under "Original sources." "Notice sur une 'Summa dictaminis' jadis conservée à Beauvais," in *Notices et extraits des manuscrits,* XXXVI, part I (1899), 171–205; "Des recueils épistolaires de Bérard de Naples," *ibid.,* XXVII, part 2 (1879), 87–149; "Le Formulaire de Clairmarais," in *Journal de savants,* 1899, 172–195; and *Le Formulaire de Tréguier et les écoliers bretons des écoles d'Orléans au commencement du XIV^e^ siècle,* Orleans, 1890 (in Mémoires de la Société archéologique de l'Orléanais), all edited by L. DELISLE. L. AUVRAY, *Documents orléanais du XII^e^ et du XIII^e^ siècle extraits du Formulaire de Bernard de Meung,* Orleans, 1892 (also *ibid.,* XXIII). *Eine Bologneser Ars dictandi des 12 Jahrhunderts,* edited by H. KALBFUSS, Rome, 1914 (extract from Quellen und Forschungen aus italienischen Archiven und Bibliotheken). RANIERI DA PERUGIA, *Ars notaria,* edited by A. GAUDENZI, Bologna, 1890. *Ein Donaueschinger Briefsteller,* edited by A. CARTELLIERI, Innsbruck, 1898. "Formelbücher und Briefsteller in englischen Hss," edited by K. HAMPE, in *Neues Archiv,* XXII (1897), 609–628. JOHN GARLAND, *Parisiana,* edited by G. MARI, under the title, "Poetria magistri Johannis Anglici de arte prosayca, metrica et rithmica," in *Romanische Forschungen,* XIII (1902), 883–965, except that portion on "Rithmica" which he had previously published in his *I trattati medievali di rithmica latina,* Milan, 1899, 35–80.

Bibliographies. Most of the materials essential for a thorough study of this outline are still in manuscript form and those which have been published are scattered widely in miscellaneous publications. Some help will be obtained from MOLINIER, *Les sources,* II, 204–206. See also the bibliographical foot-notes in the literature mentioned above, and nos. 20, 24, 25, and 41 above.

XX. THE STUDY OF ROMAN AND CANON LAW

A. OUTLINE

1. The history of the study and the application of Roman law in the early middle ages (see outline XII of part II above). Causes of the revival of interest in law towards the beginning of the twelfth century. The legend of the discovery of the *Digest* in Amalfi in 1135.

2. Chief centers of the study of jurisprudence in the second half of the eleventh century, (1) Provence, (2) Lombard cities, (3) Ravenna, (4) Bologna. The *Exceptiones Petri.* Pepo in Bologna.

3. Irnerius, a master of arts, began to lecture on law in Bologna about 1088. The beginnings of the university of Bologna. The intense study of the *Corpus iuris civilis*, especially the *Digest.* The glossators such as Placentius, Azo and Accursius. "In many respects the work of the School of Bologna represents the most brilliant achievement of the intellect of medieval Europe"—Rashdall. Law in other Italian universities.

4. The study of Roman law beyond the Alps. The legal knowledge of Ivo of Chartres. *Lo Codi* in Provence (ca. 1150). Placentius in Montpellier. The law school of Orleans. Influence of Roman law upon the law of the rising kingdom of France. Vacarius in England in the twelfth century. His *Liber pauperum.* The vexed question of the degree of influence of the Roman law in England. The remarkable "reception" of Roman law in Germany in the fifteenth century.

5. Influence of the revived interest in Roman law upon the civil and political life in the middle ages.

6. Growth of canon law in the early middle ages from customs, canons of church councils, and decretals of the popes. Influence of the Roman law upon the law of the church.

7. Early compilations of the law of the church. The elementary attempt by Dionysius Exiguus in the sixth century. The *Psuedo-Isidorian decretals* (see outline XV of part II above). The *Decretum* of bishop Buchard of Worms and the *Decretum* and the shorter *Panormia* of Ivo of Chartres (both in the eleventh century).

8. The famous *Decretum* of Gratian, published between 1139 and 1150 in Bologna, when the study of law was very vigorous there. He called the book, *Concordantia discordantium canonum.* Origin of its *sic-et-non* method. The three parts of Gratian's *Decretum.* Due largely to this text-book, canon law now branched off from theology and became a special study in medieval universities.

9. Compilations after Gratian. The official collections of popes Alexander III and Honorius III were superseded by the *Decretales* of pope Gregory IX, issued in 1234. The *Sextus* collection of pope Boniface VIII, 1297. The *Clementinae*, 1313. The *Extravagantes*, added towards the close of the fifteenth century. The council of Trent combined all these with Gratian's *Decretum* in the *Corpus iuris canonici*, which was issued in 1582. In 1904 pope Pius X

authorized the publication of a new edition of the canon law which is now in progress.

10. Relations between the Roman and the canon law in the universities and in the medieval legal world. The part played by the enthusiasm for law in shaping the curricula of medieval universities.

B. Special Recommendations for Reading

Brief general surveys. RASHDALL, *Universities*, I, 89–143, 254–268. TAYLOR, *Mediaeval mind*, second edition, II, ch. XXXIV. For Roman and canon law in England, where they made comparatively little impression, see POLLOCK and MAITLAND, *History of English law*, book I, ch. v, "Roman and canon law."

Introductory books on Roman law. R. SOHM, *Institutionen: ein Lehrbuch der Geschichte des römischen Privatrechts*, 9th edition, Leipzig, 1899, translated into English from the 8th and 9th German edition, by J. C. LEDLIE, *The Institutes*, 3rd edition, Oxford, 1907, see especially ch. III. A. STEPHENSON, *A history of Roman law*, Boston, 1912. P. F. GIRARD, *A short history of Roman law: being the first part of his Manuel élémentaire de droit romain*, translated by A. H. F. LEFROY, Toronto, 1906. J. HADLEY, *Introduction to Roman law: in twelve academic lectures*, New York, 1873 (often reprinted). W. C. MOREY, *Outlines of Roman law*, 2nd edition, New York, 1885. H. J. ROBEY, *An introduction to the study of Justinian's Digest*, Cambridge, 1884. See also under outline III in part II above.

Roman law in the middle ages. By far the best account is the little book by P. VINOGRADOFF, *Roman law in mediaeval Europe*, London and New York, 1909 (Harper's library of living thought). *The Continental legal history series*, published under the auspices of the Association of American law schools, 11 vols., Boston, 1912, vol. I, especially, 87–147, 206–213, 334–378, 617–658, contains translations from several European books. TAYLOR, *Classical heritage*, 56–70, has a very brief sketch. J. BRYCE, *The ancient Roman empire and the British empire in India;* and *The diffusion of Roman and English law throughout the world: two historical essays, reprinted and revised from Studies in history and jurisprudence*, Oxford University Press, 1914. W. GOETZ, "Das Wiederaufleben des römischen Rechtes im 12 Jahrhundert," in *Archiv für Kulturgeschichte*, X (1912), 25–39.

Standard work on the history of Roman law. F. C. v. SAVIGNY, *Geschichte des römischen Rechts im Mittelalter*, 6 vols., Heidelberg, 1815–1831, 2nd edition, 7 vols., 1834–1851; translated into French from the second edition, *Histoire du droit romain au moyen âge*,

4 vols., Paris, 1839. "Roman law in the universities of the middle ages," is an extract from this work translated in H. BARNARD, *An account of universities*, revised edition, Hartford, 1873, 273–330.

Canon law. EMERTON, *Mediaeval Europe*, 582–592. LAVISSE and RAMBAUD, *Histoire générale*, II, 262–265. The articles "Canon law" in the *Encyclopaedia Britannica*, and "Law, canon," in the *Catholic encyclopedia*. *The Continental legal history series*, I, 705–724. M. GRABMANN, *Die Geschichte der scolastischen Methode*, see index in vol. II under "Kanonisches Recht." For the canon law in England see F. W. MAITLAND, *Roman canon law in the church of England*, London, 1898; and W. STUBBS, "History of canon law in England," in his *Seventeen lectures*, lectures XIII–XIV. Additional material on this subject is listed in GROSS, *Sources*, no. 767.

Original sources. NORTON, *Readings*, 49–75. BARTOLUS, *On the conflict of laws*, translated into English by J. H. BEALE, Cambridge, 1914.

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General books. The constitutional histories of the various countries of western Europe are essential for a thorough study of this outline; see nos. **528–536**, **578–584**, **605–609**, and **633–635** above. For the canon law almost all general histories of the church, nos. **395–498** above, are helpful, but see especially no. **462**. The encyclopaedias for church history, nos. **104–114** above, are indispensable. See also the literature under outline XII in part II above, and the books on the university of Bologna, under outline XXII below, and nos. **183** and **937** above.

General works on Roman law. J. FLACH, *Etudes critiques sur l'histoire du droit romain au moyen âge, avec textes inédits*, Paris, 1890. M. A. v. BETHMANN-HOLLWEG, *Der Civilprozess des gemeinen Rechts in geschichtlicher Entwickelung*, 6 vols., Bonn, 1864–1874, vols., IV–VI, traverses the same field covered by SAVIGNY'S great work. H. FITTING, "Zur Geschichte der Rechtswissenschaft im Mittelalter," in no. **183** above, Romanic division, VI (1885), 94–186. M. FOURNIER, "L'église et le droit romain au XIII^e^ siècle," in *Nouvelle revue historique de droit français et étranger*, 1890. H. FITTING, *Zur Geschichte der Rechtswissenschaft am Anfange des Mittelalters: eine Rede*, Halle, 1875.

Sources and literature of Roman law. M. CONRAT (COHN), *Geschichte der Quellen und Literatur des römischen Rechts im früheren Mittelalter*, vol. I, Leipzig, 1891. P. KRÜGER, *Geschichte der Quellen und Literatur des römischen Rechts*, Leipzig, 1888, 2nd edition, 1912.

Roman law in Italy. H. FITTING, *Die Anfänge der Rechtsschule zu Bologna*, Berlin and Leipzig, 1888. B. BRUGI, *Per la storia della giurisprudenza e delle università italiane*, Turin, 1914. A. PROLOGO, *Due grandi giureconsulti del secolo XIII: Andrea de Barulo e Andrea d'Isernia*, Trani, 1914. E. BESTA, *L'opera d'Irnerio: contributo alla storia del diritto romano*, 2 vols., Turin, 1896.

Roman law in France. M. FOURNIER, *Histoire de la science du droit en France*, 3 vols., Paris, 1892, especially vol. III, which treats of law in the medieval French universities. G. PÉRIES, *La faculté de droit dans l'ancienne université de Paris, 1160–1793*, Paris, 1890. H. FITTING, "Le scuole di diritto in Francia durante l'XI seculo," in *Bullettino dell' Istituto di diritto romano*, IV (1891–1892).

Roman law in England. T. E. SCRUTTON, *The Influence of the Roman law on the law of England*, Cambridge, 1885. For special works, see GROSS, *Sources*, p. 683.

Roman law in Germany. G. v. BELOW, *Die Ursachen der Rezeption des römischen Rechts in Deutschland*, Munich, 1906 (Historische Bibliothek, 19). W. MODDERMANN, *Die Rezeption des römischen Rechts*, translated from the Dutch into German by K. SCHULTZ, Jena, 1875. E. SECKEL, *Beiträge zur Geschichte beider Rechte im Mittelalter*, Tübingen, 1898.

Canon law in general. P. HINSCHIUS, "Geschichte und Quellen des kanonischen Rechts," and "Das Kirchenrecht," in F. v. HOLTZENDORFFS, *Enzyklopädie der Rechtswissenschaft*, Leipzig, 1880–1890, supplements no. 462 above, which remained incomplete. Abbé DUBALLET, *Cours complet de droit canonique et de jurisprudence canonico-civile*, Paris, 1896ff., will be even more comprehensive than no. 462 above. J. DODD, *history of canon law*, London, 1884, ch. v. F. LAURIN, *Introductio in Corpus juris canonici*, Freiburg, 1889.

Text-books of church law. E. FRIEDBERG, *Lehrbuch des katholischen und evangelischen Kirchenrechts*, 6th edition, Leipzig, 1909. R. v. SCHERER, *Handbuch des Kirchenrechts*, 2 vols., Graz, 1886–1898. A. L. RICHTER, *Lehrbuch des katholischen und evangelischen Kirchenrechts*, Leipzig, 1842, 8th edition by R. W. DOVE and W. KAHL, Leipzig, 1886. J. B. SÄGMÜLLER, *Lehrbuch des katholischen Kirchenrechts*, Freiburg, 1904, 2nd edition, 1909. U. STUTZ, *Die kirchliche Rechtsgeschichte*, Stuttgart, 1905. J. HERGENRÖTHER, *Lehrbuch des katholischen Kirchenrechts*, 2nd edition, Freiburg, 1905. R. SOHM, *Kirchenrecht*, vol. I, Leipzig, 1892.

Sources and literature of canon law. J. F. v. SCHULTE, *Die Geschichte der Quellen und Literatur des canonischen Rechts von Gratian bis auf die Gegenwart*, 3 vols., Stuttgart, 1875–1880 (see the review of this fundamental work by P. VIOLLET, in *Bulletin critique de*

littérature d'histoire et de philologie, 1881, nos. 23 and 24). A. TARDIF, *Histoire des sources du droit canonique*, Paris, 1887. P. SCHNEIDER, *Die Lehre von den Kirchenrechtsquellen*, Regensburg, 1892. F. MAASEN, *Geschichte der Quellen und der Literatur des canonischen Rechts im Abendlande*, Gratz, 1870. A. FRANTZ, *Die Literatur des Kirchenrechts, 1884–1894*, Leipzig, 1896. F. WALTER, *Fontes juris ecclesiastici antiqui et hodierni*, Bonn, 1861.

Decretum of Gratian. F. POMETTI, *Il Decretum di Graziano nei suoi precedenti storici e nelle sue consequence storico-ecclesiastiche*, Corigliano Calabro, 1910. F. FOURNIER, "La date du Décret de Gratien," in *Revue d'histoire et de littérature religieuses*, III (1898).

Periodicals on church law. *Archiv für katholisches Kirchenrecht*, Innsbruck, 1857ff., Mainz, 1862ff. (indexes for vols. I–XXVII, XXVIII–LXVI). *Zeitschrift für Kirchenrecht*, Berlin and Tübingen, 1861–1880, 2nd series, Freiburg, 1881–1890, 3rd series with the title, *Deutsche Zeitschrift für Kirchenrecht*, Freiburg, 1891ff. See also nos. **183** and **491** above.

Original sources. For the *Corpus juris civilis* see outline III in part II above. *The Institutes of Justinian*, translated into English, by J. B. MOYLE, 5th edition, Oxford, 1913. *The Digest of Justinian*, translated by C. H. MONRO, 2 vols., Cambridge, 1904–1909. R. POUND, *Readings in Roman law*, 2nd edition, Cambridge, 1914. IRNERIUS, *Summa codicis*, and *Quaestiones de iuris subtilitatibus*, both edited by H. FITTING, Berlin, 1894 (Halle Festschriften, part III). *Bibliotheca iuridica medii aevi: scripta anecdota glossatorum*, vols. I–III, edited by A. GAUDENZI, Bologna, 1888–1901. *Juristische Schriften des früheren Mittelalters aus Handschriften meist zum ersten Mal herausgegeben und erörtert*, edited by H. FITTING, Halle, 1876. *Lo Codi*, edited by H. FITTING and H. SUCHIER, 1906.

The best edition of the canon law is *Corpus juris canonici*, edited by E. FRIEDBERG, 2 vols., Leipzig, 1879–1881. *Fontes juris canonici selecti*, edited by A. GALANTE, Innsbruck, 1906. *Kirchliche Rechtsquellen: Urkundenbuch zur Vorlesungen über Kirchenrecht*, edited by B. HÜBLER, 2nd edition, Berlin, 1893. For the Psuedo-Isidorian Decretals see under outline XV in part II above.

Bibliographies. See the general bibliographies for church history, nos. **49–55** above. For Roman law there is a short practical bibliography at the head of chapters in VINOGRADOFF, *Roman law*, and for canon law a similar bibliography in MATER, *L'église catholique*, 19–43. For more detail see the books listed under the headings, "Sources and literature" above, and no. **60** above.

XXI. RISE AND DECLINE OF INTEREST IN THE NATURAL SCIENCES

A. OUTLINE

1. Neglect of this field of medieval intellectual life in modern books. Prevalence of misconceptions about it now as in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries when the legend of friar Bacon and friar Bungay was current.

2. Résumé. The transmission of natural sciences from ancient to medieval times (see outline IV above). Neglect of the *quadrivium* in western Christendom during the early middle ages. Natural sciences among the Mohammedans (see outline X above).

3. The development of a feeling for nature in the middle ages.

4. Popular notions about nature and the world. Occult science and magic. The tendency to find religious and moral lessons in nature. Bestiaries and lapidaries.

5. Interest of the intellectual class in the natural sciences in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries. The influence of the New Aristotle together with Ptolemy, Hippocrates, and Galen. The interplay of Mohammedan, Byzantine, and Jewish interests in natural science with those of Latin Christendom. Relations of England with southern Italy and Sicily, and with the Mohammedan world. Adelard of Bath (early twelfth century). Robert of Ketene or of Chester, about 1150. Daniel of Morley (late twelfth century). Alexander Neckam, 1157–1217. Alfred of Sereshel (Alfredus Anglicus, died 1217), John of Toledo (died 1275). Michael Scot, ca. 1190–ca. 1291.

6. The "Oxford school" of scholars who reacted against the prevalent methods in logic, philosophy and theology by stressing the study of the natural sciences and the languages. (For languages see outline XVIII above.) Robert Grosseteste, bishop of Lincoln, 1235–1253, Roger Bacon, Adam Marsh. The experimental method.

7. Roger Bacon (ca. 1214–ca. 1292). His tributes to Robert Grosseteste. His *Opus maius, Opus minus,* and *Opus tertium.* Danger of overestimating Bacon and of treating him as an isolated phenomenon. The mooted question of his imprisonments. The legend of friar Bacon.

8. Other men of the thirteenth century interested in natural sciences. Vincent of Beauvais (died 1264), who wrote a *Speculum naturale.* Bartholomew the Englishman, who wrote the *De proprietatibus rerum* about 1250. Albert the Great, 1193–1280, and his interest in botany. Thomas of Cantimpré, his pupil. Peter of

Maricourt, praised by Roger Bacon. Witelo, born about 1230 in Silesia. Henry Bate of Malines, born about 1244. Theoderic of Freiburg, late in the thirteenth and early in the fourteenth century. Raymund Lull, 1235–1315. Dante (see outline XXVIII below).

9. The fate of the natural sciences in the medieval universities. Considerable interest in them at the university of Paris in the first half of the thirteenth century due especially to the influx of ancient Greek and of Mohammedan learning. Decline of interest in the second half of the thirteenth century. The Paris school of astronomers in the second half of the thirteenth century. Causes of the failure of Roger Bacon to arouse his contemporaries.

10. Geographical study and theory in the middle ages.

11. Mathematics in medieval universities. The introduction of the so-called Arabic numerals into western Europe.

12. Salerno and the beginnings of systematic higher instruction in medicine in the twelfth century. The study of medicine in other universities. Clinics and hospitals. Chirurgy. Dissections. The medical profession.

13. The forces which retarded the progress of the natural sciences in the middle ages.

B. Special Recommendations for Reading

Brief general surveys. E. S. Holden, "The renaissance of science," in *Popular science monthly*, LXIV (1903), 5–25. L. Thorndike, "Natural science in the middle ages," *ibid.*, LXXXVII (1915), 271–291. Lavisse and Rambaud, *Histoire générale*, II, 566–568; III, 244–262. T. C. Allbutt, *Science and medieval thought*, London, 1901 (Harveian oration). See also the introduction to Alexander Neckam, *De naturis rerum*, edited by T. Wright, London, 1863 (Rolls series).

Longer accounts. F. Strunz, *Geschichte der Naturwissenschaften im Mittelalter: im Grundriss dargestellt*, Stuttgart, 1910; see also his *Die Vergangenheit der Naturforschung: ein Beitrag zur Geschichte des menschlichen Geistes*, Jena, 1913, 1–85. Dannemann, *Die Naturwissenschaften in ihrer Entwicklung und in ihren Zusammenhange dargestellt*, vol. I, Leipzig, 1910, 258–287. Michael, *Culturzustände des deutschen Volkes*, III, 395–460.

Popular notions about nature and the world. C. V. Langlois, *La connaissance de la nature et du monde au moyen âge d'après quelques écrits français à l'usage des laics*, Paris, 1911.

England and Mohammedan natural science. C. H. Haskins, "The reception of Arabic science in England," in *English historical review*, XXX (1915), 56–69; see also his "Adelard of Bath,"

ibid., XXVI (1911), 491–498; XXVII (1913), 515–516. L. THORNDIKE, "Adelard of Bath and the continuity of universal nature," in *Nature*, XCIV (1915), 616–617. J. W. BROWN, *An enquiry into the life and legend of Michael Scot.* C. BAEUMKER, "Die Stellung des Alfred von Sareschel (Alfredus Anglicus) und seiner Schrift *De motu cordis* in der Wissenschaft des beginnenden XIII Jahrhunderts," in *Sitzungsberichte* der bayerischen Akademie, Munich, 1913, 9. H. GRAUERT, "Meister Johann von Toledo," *ibid.*, 1901, 111–325.

The "Oxford school." F. A. GASQUET, "English scholarship in the thirteenth century," in his *The last abbot of Glastonbury and other essays*, 141–165, reprinted from the *Dublin review*, CXXIII (1898), 356–375. FELDER, *Geschichte der wissenschaftlichen Studien*, 254–304.

Roger Bacon. The following are brief sketches. L. THORNDIKE, "The true Roger Bacon," in *American historical review*, XXI (1916), 237–257, 468–480; see also his "Roger Bacon and experimental method in the middle ages," in the *Philosophical review* (1914), 271–298. TAYLOR, *Mediaeval mind*, second edition, II, ch. XLII. J. H. BRIDGES, *The life and works of Roger Bacon, an introduction to the Opus majus*, edited, with additional notes and tables, by H. G. JONES, London, 1914; see also his "Roger Bacon," a lecture delivered in 1903 before the university extension students at Oxford, printed in his *Essays and addresses*, London, 1907. See also the articles "Roger Bacon," in nos. **89**, **104**, and **109** above.

The standard biography is still the dissertation of E. CHARLES, *Roger Bacon: sa vie, ses ouvrages, ses doctrines*, Bordeaux, 1861; but students should now begin a detailed study of the life and work of Bacon by reading the *Roger Bacon essays*, edited by A. G. LITTLE, Oxford University Press, 1914. It is reported that P. MANDONNET is at work on a biography of Roger Bacon.

Geographical theory. C. R. BEAZLEY, *The dawn of modern geography*, II, ch. VII, III, ch. VI.

Mathematics. W. R. R. BALL, *A short account of the history of mathematics*, ch. VIII. See also "Arabic numerals" and "Mathematics" under outline X above.

Medicine. RASHDALL, *Universities*, I, 75–86, 253–249, and see "medicine" in his index. T. C. ALLBUTT, *On the historical relations of medicine and surgery down to the sixteenth century*, New York, 1905, is an address. For a review of the present condition of our limited knowledge of the history of medicine in the middle ages, see the "Literaturbericht" of P. DIEPGEN, "Geschichte der Medizin," in *Archiv für Kulturgeschichte*, X (1913), 465–480.

Original sources. Our best source of information concerning natural science in the thirteenth century is the *Opus majus* of ROGER BACON, edited by J. H. BRIDGES, 2 vols., Oxford, 1897, new edition, with a supplementary volume containing a "revised text of the first three parts, corrections, emendations, and additional notes," 1900. It is strange that this famous work has never been translated into any modern language. Bridges gives an abstract of it in the introduction to his edition. Part VI of the *Opus majus*, "On experimental science," has been translated by ALICE E. BELL, *The study of natural sciences in the thirteenth century*, Berkeley, 1913, a typewritten master's thesis deposited in the library of the University of California. BARTHOLOMEW ANGLICUS, *De proprietatibus rerum*, abridged in English under the title, *Medieval lore*, translated by R. STEELE, London, 1907.

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General books. See the general books on medieval culture, nos. **728–849** above, especially those on the history of freedom of thought, nos. **738–748**. See also the literature on natural science and mathematics under outlines IV and X above, and nos. **188** and **803** above.

General accounts. L. DARMSTAEDTER, *Handbuch zur Geschichte der Naturwissenschaften und der Technik in chronologischer Darstellung*, 2nd edition, Berlin, 1908. C. JOURDAIN, *Dissertation sur l'état de la philosophie naturelle en occident et principalement en France pendant la première moitié du XII^e siècle*, Paris, 1838. A. DUFOURCQ, "Les origines de la science moderne d'après les découvertes récentes," in *Revue des deux mondes*, 6th series, XVI (1913), 349–378. W. WHEWELL, *History of the inductive sciences, from the earliest times to the present time*, 2 vols., 3rd edition, New York, 1875. J. J. WALSH, *Catholic churchmen in science*, 2 series, Philadelphia, 1906–1909; see also his *The popes and science: the history of the papal relations to science during the middle ages and down to our own time*, New York, 1908; and his *The thirteenth, the greatest of centuries*, which are popular books addressed primarily to Roman catholics and make no appeal to the world of scholarship as a whole. *Archiv für die Geschichte der Naturwissenschaften und der Technik*, edited by K. v. BUCHKA, H. STADLE, and K. SUDHOFF, Leipzig, 1909ff.

Feeling for nature. A. BIESE, *Die Entwickelung des Naturgefühls im Mittelalter*, Leipzig, 1892, translated, *The development of feeling for nature in the middle ages*, London, 1905. GERTRUD STOCK-

MAYER, *Ueber Naturgefühl in Deutschland im 10 und 11 Jahrhundert*, Leipzig and Berlin, 1910. W. GANZENMÜLLER, "Die Empfindsame Naturbetrachtung im Mittelalter," in *Archiv für Kulturgeschichte*, XII (1914), 195–228.

Popular natural science, occult science, and magic. L. THORNDIKE, "Some medieval conceptions of magic," in *The Monist*, XXV (1915), 107–139; see also his *The place of magic in the intellectual history of Europe*, New York, 1905 (dissertation, in Columbia university studies, XXIV, 1). A. LEHMANN, *Aberglaube und Zauberei, von den ältesten Zeiten*, German translation, 2nd edition, Stuttgart, 1908. C. MEYER, *Der Aberglaube des Mittelalters und der nächtsfolgenden Jahrhunderte*, Basle, 1884. P. DIEPGEN, *Traum und Traumdeutung als medizinisch-naturwissenschaftliches Problem im Mittelalter*, Berlin, 1912. L. PANNIER, *Les lapidaires français du moyen âge des XII^e, XIII^e et XIV^e siècles*, Paris, 1882. See also the introduction in *Leechdoms, wortcunning and starcraft in early England*, edited by O. COCKAYNE, 3 vols., London, 1864–1866 (Rolls series); and *Popular treatises on science written during the middle ages in Anglo-Saxon, Anglo-Norman and English*, edited by T. WRIGHT, London, 1841. See also under outline V above.

Albert the Great and natural sciences. F. A. POUCHET, *Histoire des sciences naturelles au moyen âge: ou, Albert le Grand et son époque considérés comme point de départ de l'école expérimentale*, Paris, 1853. H. STADLER, "Albertus Magnus als selbständiger Naturforscher," in *Forschungen zur Geschichte Bayerns*, XIV (1905), 95ff.; see also his "Vorbemerkungen zur neuen Ausgabe der Tiergeschichte des Albertus Magnus," in *Sitzungsberichte* der k. bayrischen Ak. der Wiss., phil.-hist. Classe, Munich (1912), 1–58. S. KILLERMANN, *Die Vogelkunde des Albertus Magnus*, Regensburg, 1910. M. STEINSCHNEIDER, "Zum *Speculum astronomicum* des Albertus Magnus: über die darin angeführten Schriftsteller und Schriften," in *Zeitschrift für Mathematik und Physik*, Leipzig, XVI (1871), 357-396. J. WIMMER, *Deutsches Pflanzenleben nach Albertus Magnus (1193–1280): ein Nachtrag zur Geschichte des deutschen Bodens*, Halle, 1908. A. FELLNER, *Albertus Magnus als Botaniker*, Vienna, 1881. For general books on Albert the Great see outline XVII above.

Robert Grosseteste. F. S. STEVENSON, *Robert Grosseteste, bishop of Lincoln*, London, 1899, is the standard biography, but does not lay enough stress on his career as a scholar. L. BAUR, *Das philosophische Lebenswerk des Robert Grosseteste, Bishofs von Lincoln*, Cologne, 1910, is a lecture; now see also his article "Der Einfluss des Robert Grosseteste auf die wissenschaftliche Richtungen des

Roger Bacon,'' in *Roger Bacon essays*, 33–54. H. S. WILLETT, *Robert Grosseteste's interest in natural sciences and languages*, Berkeley, 1913, is a typewritten master's thesis deposited in the University of California library.

Roger Bacon. In 1914 considerable interest was aroused in Bacon by the celebration at Oxford of the seventh centenary of his birth. The ceremonies in Oxford are described in *Nature*, XCIII (1914), 354–355, 405–406, where there is a photograph of a statue of Roger Bacon unveiled in the University Museum on June 10, 1914. Similar to the *Roger Bacon essays* noted above are the *Scritti vari pubblicati in occasione del VII centenario della nascita di Ruggero Bacone*, edited by A. GEMELLI, Florence, 1914 (Rivista di filosofia neo-scolastica, VI, 6), which contains the following articles: M. BRUSADELLI, ''R. Bacone nella storia''; D. FLEMING, ''R. Bacone e la scolastica''; M. BRUSADELLI, ''Lo Speculum astronomiae di R. Bacone''; P. ROBINSON, ''Alcune opere recenti su R. Bacone.'' J. I. VALENTI, ''Roger Bacon,'' in *Science catholique*, Paris, XVI (1902), 236–271. L. MARCHAL, ''Roger Bacon: sa méthode et ses principes,'' in Université catholique de Louvain, séminaire historique, *Rapport sur les travaux pendant l'année académique 1909–1910*, Louvain, 1911. A. G. LITTLE, *The Grey Friars in Oxford*, Oxford, 1892. C. NARBEY, ''Le moine Roger Bacon et le mouvement scientifique au XIII^e^ siècle,'' in *Revue des questions historiques*, XXXV (1884), 115–166. L. DOUBLIER, *Roger Bacon: eine culturgeschichtliche Studie*, Vienna, 1886. J. LANGEN, ''Roger Baco,'' in *Historische Zeitschrift*, LI (1883), 434–450. A. PARROT, *Roger Bacon, sa personne, son génie, ses oeuvres et ses contemporaires*, Paris, 1894, is an uncritical laudatory essay. H. T. ADAMSON, *Roger Bacon: the philosophy of science in the middle ages*, Manchester, 1876. L. SCHNEIDER, *Roger Bako*, Augusburg, 1873. H. SIEBERT, *Roger Bacon: sein Leben und seine Philosophie*, Marburg, 1861.

Following are some important special studies on Roger Bacon. S. VOGL, *Die Physik Roger Bacos*, Erlangen, 1906 (dissertation). P. FERET, ''Les emprisonnements de Roger Bacon,'' in *Revue des questions historiques*, L (1891), 119–142. J. E. SANDYS, ''Roger Bacon,'' in *Proceedings of the British academy*, vol. VI (1914), also printed separately by the Oxford University Press [no date]. E. DÜHRING, ''The two Bacons,'' in *Open court magazine*, XXVIII (1914), 468–485 (this whole August number of the Open court is devoted to Bacon). A. DÖRING, ''Die beiden Bacon,'' in *Archiv für Geschichte der Philosophie*, XVII (1904), 341–348. F. PICAVET, ''Deux directions de la théologie catholique au XIII^e^ siècle: Saint Thomas d'Aquin et Roger Bacon,'' in *Revue de l'histoire des reli-*

gions, (1905), 172ff. C. BAEUMKER, "Roger Bacons Naturphilosophie, insbesondere seine Lehre von Materie und Form," in *Franziskanische Studien*, III (1916), 1–40. A. VALDARNINI, *Esperienza e ragionamento in Rogero Bacone*, Rome, 1896, is a pamphlet of 20 pages. S. SCHINDELE, "Vorschläge zur Verbesserung des Studienbetriebs im 13ten Jahrhundert (Roger Bacon)," in *Mitteilungen der Gesellschaft für deutsche Erziehungs- und Schulgeschichte* (1908). C. JOURDAIN, "Discussion de quelques points de la biographie de Roger Bacon," in his *Excursions historiques*, 129–171. K. WERNER, "Die Psychologie, Erkentniss- und Wissenschaftslehre des Roger Baco," in *Sitzungsberichte* der philos.-hist. Classe d. k. Akad. der Wiss., Vienna, XCIII (1879), 467–576. O. KEICHER, "Der Intellectus agens bei Roger Baco," in *Supplementband* (1913), 297–308, of no. 826 above. For books on Bacon's interest in textual criticism see outline XVIII above.

On the works of Roger Bacon see the following: F. PICAVET, "Pour une future édition des oeuvres de Roger Bacon," in *Journal des savants*, 1912, 405–411, 456–463; see also his "Les éditions de Roger Bacon," *ibid.*, 1905, 362–369. P. MANDONNET, "Roger Bacon et la composition des trois 'opus,'" in *Revue néoscolastique*, 1913; see also his "Roger Bacon et le *Speculum astronomiae*," *ibid.*, XVII (1910), 313–335. F. M. DELORME, "Un opuscule inédit de R. Bacon," in *Archivum franciscanum historicum*, IV (1911), 209–212. V. COUSIN, "Roger Bacon: de l'Opus tertium, récemment trouvé dans la bibliothèque de Douai," in his *Fragments philosophiques*, II (1865), 218–310.

For the legend of Roger Bacon, see *The famous historie of fryer Bacon*, written about 1600, first edition, 1630, now in *Miscellanea antiqua Anglicana*, London, 1816; the play written about 1585 by R. Greene, *The honourable history of friar Bacon and friar Bungay;* and *A piece of friar Bacon's brazen heade's prophesie*, written 1604 and printed in the *Publications of the Percy society*, XV (1844). Now see also *Roger Bacon essays*, 359–372.

Peter of Maricourt. E. SCHLUND, "Petrus Peregrinus von Maricourt: sein Leben und seine Schriften (ein Beitrag zur Roger Baco-Forschung)," in *Archivum franciscanum historicum*, IV (1911), 436–455, 633–643; V (1912), 22–40. F. PICAVET, "Nos vieux maîtres, Pierre de Maricourt, le Picard, et son influence sur Roger Bacon," in *Revue internationale de l'enseignement*, LIV (1907), 289–315.

Witelo. C. BAEUMKER, *Witelo: ein Philosoph und Naturforscher des XIII Jahrhunderts*, Münster, 1908, vol. III of no. 826 above.

Theoderic of Freiburg. E. KREBS, *Meister Dietrich (Theodericus Teutonicus de Vriberg): sein Leben, seine Werke, seine Wissenschaft,*

in no. **826** above, 1906, V, parts 5–6, Münster, 1906. DIETRICH VON FREIBERG, *Über den Regenbogen und die durch Strahlen erzeugten Eindrücke* (Theodoricus Teutonicus de Vriberg de iride et radialibus impresionibus), zum ersten Male nach den Handschriften herausgegeben und mit einer Einleitung versehen, by J. WÜRSCHMIDT, Münster, 1914, *ibid.*, vol. XII, parts 5–6.

Physics. E. GERLAND, *Geschichte der Physik, von den ältesten Zeiten bis zum Ausgange des achtzehnten Jahrhunderts*, Munich, 1913 (Geschichte der Wissenschaften in Deutschland, XXIV), pp. 131–219 are on the middle ages. E. GERLAND and F. TRAUMÜLLER, *Geschichte der physikalischen Experimentierkunst*, Leipzig, 1899. A. LALANDE, "Histoire des sciences: la physique du moyen âge," in *Revue de synthèse historique*, VII (1903), 191–218. A. HELLER, *Geschichte der Physik von Aristoteles bis auf die neueste Zeit*, 2 vols., Stuttgart, 1882–1884.

Chemistry and alchemy. M. BERTHELOT, *Introduction à l'étude de la chimie des anciens et du moyen âge*, Paris, 1890, translated into German by E. KALLIWODA with notes by F. STRUNZ, *Die Chemie in Altertum und Mittelalter*, Leipzig and Vienna, 1909. M. BERTHELOT, *Histoire des sciences: la chimie au moyen âge*, 3 vols., Paris, 1893, I, Essai sur la transmission de la science antique au moyen âge, II, l'alchimie syriaque, III, L'alchimie arabe; see also his *Les origines de l'alchimie*, Paris, 1885. F. PICAVET, "La science experimentale au XIII^e^ siècle," in *Le moyen âge*, VII (1894), 241–248, is a review of Berthelot's books which had just appeared at that time. L. MABILLEAU, *Histoire de la philosophie atomistique*, Paris, 1895. K. LASSWITZ, *Geschichte der Atomistik vom Mittelalter bis Newton*, 2 vols., Leipzig, 1890. J. C. BROWN, *A history of chemistry*, London, 1913. E. v. MEYER, *Geschichte der Chemie von den ältesten Zeiten bis zur Gegenwart*, 3rd edition, Leipzig, 1905.

Astronomy and astrology. P. DUHEM, *Le système du monde: histoire des doctrines cosmologiques de Platon à Copernic*, vols. I–IV, Paris, 1913–1916, is a work of fundamental importance of which vols. II, 393–501, III–IV are on the middle ages; see also his *Essai sur la notion de théorie physique de Platon à Galilée*, Paris, 1908 (extract from Annales de philosophie chrétienne); and his *Etudes sur Léonard de Vinci*. J. L. E. DREYER, *History of the planetary systems from Thales to Kepler*, Cambridge, 1906. K. SUDHOFF, *Ein Beitrag zur Geschichte der Astronomie im Mittelalter* [9th to 15th centuries], Leipzig, 1908 (Studien zur Geschichte der Medizin, 4). R. WOLF, *Handbuch der Astronomie: ihrer Geschichte und Literatur*, 2 vols., Zürich, 1890–1893. J. P. J. DELAMBRE, *Histoire de l'astronomie au moyen âge*, Paris, 1819.

Geographical theory. K. KRETSCHMER, *Die physische Erdkunde im christlichen Mittelalter*, Vienna, 1889 (IV, part I, of Geographische Abhandlungen). O. PESCHEL, *Geschichte der Erdkunde bis auf Alexander v. Humboldt und Karl Ritter*, 2nd edition, Munich, 1878 (Geschichte der Wissenschaften in Deutschland, neuere Zeit, IV). P. MANDONNET, "Les idées cosmographiques d'Albert le Grand et de S. Thomas d'Aquin et la découverte de l'Amérique," in *Revue thomiste*, I (1893), 46–64, 200–221. C. GUIGNEBERT, *De imagine mundi ceterisque Petri de Alliaco geographicis opusculis*, Paris, 1902. M. SCHNEID, "Die Lehre von der Erdrundung und Erdbewegung im Mittelalter," in *Historisch-politische Blätter*, LXXX (1877), II, 433–451. A. BLÁSQUEZ, *Estudio acerca de la cartografía española en la edad media*, Madrid, 1906. See also "Geographical discoveries," under outline XXVI in part II above.

Zoology. J. V. CARUS, *Geschichte der Zoologie*, Munich, 1872. R. BURCKHARDT, *Geschichte der Zoologie*, Leipzig, 1907 (Sammlung Göschen). G. LOISEL, *Histoire des ménageries de l'antiquité à nos jours*, 3 vols., Paris, 1912, vol. I covers the ancient, medieval and renaissance periods.

Botany. E. L. GREENE, *Landmarks of botanical history*, part I, prior to 1562, London, 1910. J. R. GREEN, *A history of botany in the United Kingdom, from the earliest times to the end of the nineteenth century*, London, 1914. J. SACHS, *Geschichte der Botanik*, Munich, 1875.

Medicine. The study of the history of medicine in the middle ages is still in its infancy. The work that must be done is outlined by K. SUDHOFF, "Aufgaben und Forschungswege der Medizingeschichte im Mittelalter im Abendland," Vortrag auf der historischen Abteilung der 84 Versammlung deutschen Naturforscher und Ärzte in Münster i. W. am 17 September, 1912 (siehe den "Bericht" in den *Verhandlungen* der Gesellschaft).

General histories of medicine. M. NEUBURGER, *Geschichte der Medizin*, vols. I–II, Stuttgart, 1906, 1911, translated by E. PLAYFAIR, *History of medicine*, London, 1910. T. PUSCHMANN, *Handbuch der Geschichte der Medizin*, edited by M. NEUBURGER and J. PAGEL, 3 vols., Jena, 1901–1905. *Studien zur Geschichte der Medizin*, edited by T. PUSCHMANN and K. SUDHOFF, Leipzig, 1907ff. J. PAGEL, *Grundriss eines Systems der medizinischen Kulturgeschichte*, Berlin, 1905. L. MEUNIER, *Histoire de la médecine, depuis ses origines jusqu'à nos jours*, Paris, 1911. E. WITHINGTON, *History of medicine*, London, 1894.

Periodicals for the history of medicine. *Archiv für Geschichte der Medizin*, edited by K. SUDHOFF, Leipzig, 1908ff. *Mitteilungen*

zur Geschichte der Medizin und der Naturwissenschaften, edited by S. GÜNTHER and K. SUDHOFF, Hamburg and Leipzig, 1902ff. *Bulletin de la Société française de l'histoire de la médecine.*

Medicine in the middle ages. E. WICKERSHEIMER, *Les médecins de la nation anglaise (ou allemande) de l'université de Paris aux XIV^e^ et XV^e^ siècles*, Le Mans, 1913 (from the Bulletin de la Société française de l'histoire de la médecine). *Commentaires de la Faculté de médecine d l'université de Paris 1395–1516*, edited by E. WICKERSHEIMER, Paris, 1915, part of no. 965 above. F. LAUE, *Über Krankenbehandlung und Heilkunde in der Literatur des alten Frankreichs*, Arnstadt, 1904. P. DIEPGEN, "Medizinisches aus theologischen Schriften des Mittelalters," in *Medizinische Klinik*, Berlin, 1913, nos. 3, 4. MILLOT-CARPENTIER, "La médecine au XIII^e^ siècle," in *Annales internationales d'histoire*, Congrès de Paris, 1900, V^e^ section, histoire des sciences. A. RIEUNIER, *Quelques mots sur la médecine au moyen âge d'après le Speculum maius de Vincent de Beauvais*, Paris, 1892. L. REUTTER, *Des médicaments d'origine humaine et animale prescrits en Europe au moyen âge et au temps de la renaissance*, Paris, 1913 (Bibliothèque historique de la France médicale, 51). C. VIEILLARD, *Gilles de Corbeil*, Paris, 1909. L. KOTELMANN, *Gesundheitspflege im Mittelalter: kulturgeschichtliche Studien nach Predigten des 13, 14, und 15 Jahrhunderts*, Leipzig, 1890. J. J. WALSH, *Old time makers of medicine*, New York, 1911; and his *Education: how old the new*, New York, 1910, are popular books written for Roman Catholic readers.

Physicians and surgeons. H. BERTHAUD, *Les médecins et chirurgiens des rois capétiens du XI^e^ au XIII^e^ siècle*, Poitiers, 1907 (extract from the Bulletin de la Société française de l'histoire de la médecine). L. DUBREUIL-CHAMBARDEL, *Les médecins dans l'ouest de la France aux XI^e^ et XII^e^ siècles*, Paris, Société française d'histoire de la médecine, 1914. A. FRANKLIN, *La vie privée d'autrefois: les médecins*, Paris, 1892; and his *La vie privée d'autrefois: Les chirurgiens*, Paris, 1893. J. H. BAAS, *Die geschichtliche Entwicklung des ärztlichen Standes und der medizinischen Wissenschaften*, Berlin, 1896. E. GURLT, *Geschichte der Chirurgie und ihrer Ausübung*, vols. I and II, Berlin, 1898. MÉLANIE LIPINSKA, *Histoire des femmes médecins depuis l'antiquité jusqu'à nos jours*, Paris, 1900.

Anatomy. K. SUDHOFF, *Beiträge zur Geschichte der Anatomie im Mittelalter: speziel der anatomischen Graphite nach Handschriften des IX–XV Jahrhunderts*, Leipzig, 1908 (Studien zur Geschichte der Medizin, 4). R. v. TÖPLY, *Studien zur Geschichte der Anatomie im Mittelalter*, Leipzig, 1898.

Hospitals and leprosy. ROTHA M. CLAY, *The mediaeval hospitals*

of England, London, 1909 (The antiquary's books). ELIZABETH SPEAKMAN, "Mediaeval hospitals," in *Dublin review*, CXXXIII (1903), 283–296. C. MERCIER, *Leper houses and mediaeval hospitals*, London, 1915 (Fitz-Patrick lectures). L. LALLEMAND, *La lèpre et les lèproseries du X^e au XV I^e siècle* (Compte rendu des séances . . . de l'Académie des sciences morales et politiques, 1905). E. LESSER, *Die Aussatzhäuser des Mittelalters*, Zürich, 1896. See also "Epidemics" under outline XXVI in part II above, and "Hospitals" under outline XIII above.

Mathematics. M. CANTOR, *Vorlesungen über Geschichte der Mathematik*, 4 vols., 3rd edition, Leipzig, 1899–1908. FLORENCE CAJORI, *A history of mathematics*, New York, 1895. S. GÜNTHER, *Geschichte des mathematischen Unterrichts im deutschen Mittelalter bis zum Jahre 1525*, Berlin, 1887, part of no. 1012 above; and his *Geschichte der Mathematik*, I, Von den ältesten Zeiten bis Cartesius, Leipzig, 1908 (Sammlung Schubert). H. SUTER, *Die Mathematik auf den Universitäten des Mittelalters*, Zürich, 1887. H. G. ZEUTHEN, *Die Mathematik im Altertum und im Mittelalter*, Leipzig, 1912, in no. 729 above, III, 1, 1. D. E. SMITH, *Rara arithmetica: a catalogue of the arithmetics written before MDCI*, 2 vols., Boston, 1908. R. L. POOLE, *The exchequer in the twelfth century*, London, 1912; see also the introduction to the *Dialogus de Scaccario*, by RICHARD [FITZNEALE], son of Nigel, edited by A. HUGHES and others, Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1912. J. GIESING, *Leben und Schriften Leonardos da Pisa: ein Beitrag zur Geschichte der Arithmetik des 13 Jahrhunderts*, Döbeln, 1886. G. LIBRI, *Histoire des sciences mathématiques en Italie*, Paris, 1838, 2nd edition, 1865. BJÖRNBO, "Die mittelalterlichen Übersetzungen aus dem Griechischen auf dem Gebiete der mathematischen Wissenschaften," in *Archiv für die Geschichte der Naturwissenschaften und Technik*, I (1909), 385–394. *Bibliotheca mathematica: Zeitschrift für Geschichte der mathematischen Wissenschaften*, Stockholm, 1884ff. *Abhandlungen zur Geschichte der mathematischen Wissenschaften*.

Original sources. FRATRIS ROGERI BACON, ordinis minorum, *Opus majus ad Clementem quartum, pontificem Romanum*, edited by S. JEBB, London, 1733, reprinted in Venice, 1750, was the first printed edition of this the most famous work of Roger Bacon. It proved to be incomplete. The modern edition by BRIDGES has been noted above. The *Opus tertium*, the *Opus minus*, the *Compendium philosophiae*, and, as appendices, the *Epistola de secretis operibus artis et naturae*, and the *De nullitate magiae*, are in FR. ROGERI BACON, *Opera quaedam hactenus inedita*, edited by J. S. BREWER, with a valuable introduction, London, 1859 (Rolls series, 15). *Part of the*

Opus tertium of Roger Bacon, including a fragment now printed for the first time, edited by A. G. LITTLE, Aberdeen, 1912 (British society of Franciscan studies, IV); see also the editor's note, "The missing part of Roger Bacon's Opus tertium," in *English historical review*, XXVII (1912), 318–321. *Un fragment inédit de l'Opus tertium de R. Bacon précedé d'une étude sur ce fragment*, edited by P. DUHEM, Quaracchi, 1909. *Opera hactenus inedita* ROGERI BACONI, edited by R. STEELE, London, 1905ff., thus far contains the *Metaphysica* and the *Communia naturalium*. FRATRIS ROGERI BACON *Compendium studii theologiae*, edited by H. RASHDALL, Aberdeen, 1911 (British society of Franciscan studies, III). "An unpublished fragment of a work by Roger Bacon," edited by F. A. GASQUET, in *English historical review*, XII (1897), 494–517. For Bacon's Greek grammar see outline XVIII above. In connection with the Oxford Bacon celebration in 1914 a new edition of his works was planned, but the war seems to have nipped the project in the bud.

The works of the great bishop of Lincoln which touch upon the natural sciences are now well edited in *Die philosophischen Werke des Grosseteste, Bischofs von Lincoln*, edited by L. BAUR, Münster, 1912, part IX of no. 826 above.

Bibliographies. The best bibliographies on Roger Bacon are by T. WITZEL, appended to his article on "Roger Bacon" in the *Catholic encyclopedia*, and especially in his article "De Fr. Rogero Bacon," in *Archivum franciscanum historicum*, III (1910), 9–14. For Bacon's own works, both in printed and manuscript form, see A. G. LITTLE, "Roger Bacon's works," in *Roger Bacon essays*, 375–426. See also R. STEELE, "Roger Bacon," in Quarterly review, CCXX (1914), 250–274.

Apart from the literature on Roger Bacon, it is very difficult to find bibliographical guidance in this neglected field which is just beginning to attract the attention of serious scholars. See the bibliographical footnotes of the more recent publications listed above.

XXII MEDIEVAL UNIVERSITIES

A. OUTLINE

1. The institutions of learning, now known as universities, originated in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries; hence such expressions as "the universities of ancient Greece" lead to confusion and should be avoided. This outline deals with the outward aspects of medieval universities, and the life of masters and

students. Their intellectual activities and interests have been dealt with in preceding outlines.

2. How the medieval universities got their name. *Studium. Studium generale.* The derivation of the word "university" from such phrases in the early university charters as *Universitas magistorum et scolarium Parisiensium,* and *Universis presentes litteras inspecturis.* Foundation charters. *Jus ubique docendi.*

3. The university of Paris, the typical medieval university. Its legendary history. Gradual evolution from the cathedral school on the island in the Seine. The chancellor and the license to teach. Written statutes of the university. The four nations. Rector and proctors. The chancellor of Ste. Geneviève. Paris was the typical masters' university. The development of a Latin Quarter in Paris.

4. The mendicant friars in the university of Paris. Ecclesiastical control and influence in medieval universities. Growth of the influence of the mendicants during the great dispersion of 1229. The violent constitutional struggle towards the middle of the thirteenth century.

5. Organization of faculties and branches of study. The arts course and the higher faculties: theology, law, and medicine. "Graduate work."

6. University degrees. The license to teach (*licentia docendi*). The gild of masters. Inception and the mastership. The terms master, doctor, and professor were synonymous. Gradual evolution of the bachelorship in the thirteenth century. Determinations and responsions. The B.A. degree. Examinations for degrees. The LL.D. degree. The Ph.D. degree was not invented in medieval universities. Academical dress.

7. The evolution of colleges in Paris. The problem of housing the numerous students in Paris. Hospicia and self-government of students. The comfortable houses of the mendicant friars in Paris. Robert de Sorbonne, the founder of the famous Sorbonne. Multiplication of colleges in Paris in the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries. The colleges entirely transformed the life and work of medieval universities.

8. The enigmatical medical school at Salerno, famous as early as the eleventh century. Constantinus Africanus in Salerno, in the second half of the eleventh century. Frederick II and Salerno.

9. The university of Bologna was the typical law university and students' university. Large numbers of foreigners, especially Germans, in Bologna. The colleges.

10. Universities of Oxford and Cambridge. The bishop of

Lincoln and his Oxford chancellor. The famous old colleges of Oxford, especially Balliol, Merton, and University College.

11. Other important medieval universities. Padua (1222), and Naples (1224) in Italy. Montpellier (twelfth century), Toulouse 1230), and Orleans (thirteenth century), in France. Salamanca, Valladolid, and Lisbon (Coimbra), all of the thirteenth century, in Spain and Portugal. The late rise of German universities. Prague (1348), Vienna (1365), Heidelberg (1385), Leipzig (1409). Louvain (1425).

12. Daily routine in a medieval university. Lectures, disputations, university meetings, festivals, holidays, vacations. Numbers of students.

13. Life of medieval students. Their average age and previous training. Their food and shelter before and after the growth of colleges. Athletic games and other amusements. Hazing. Privileges of students. Their clerical status. Town and gown riots. Migrations of medieval universities.

14. The influence of universities in medieval life and thought.

B. SPECIAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR READING

Brief general surveys. C. V. LANGLOIS, *Questions d'histoire et d'enseignement*, 3–50, "Les universités du moyen âge." TAYLOR, *Mediaeval mind*, second edition, II, ch. XXXVIII. LAVISSE, *Histoire de France*, III, part I, 332–345; part II, 380–387. The article "Universities" by J. B. MULLINGER, in the *Encyclopaedia Britannica*.

Longer accounts. G. COMPAYRÉ, *Abelard and the early history of the universities*, New York, 1893. S. S. LAURIE, *Lectures on the rise and early constitution of universities*, London, 1886, is antiquated and should not be used if the newer literature on medieval universities is accessible.

Standard works. H. RASHDALL, *The universities of Europe in the middle ages*, 2 vols. in 3, Oxford, 1895. H. DENIFLE, *Die Entstehung der Universitäten des Mittelalters bis 1400*, vol. I, Berlin, 1885. This was the epoch-making modern book on the history of medieval universities. The author planned to complete the work in five volumes. He died in 1905.

University of Bologna. H. D. SEDGWICK, *Italy in the thirteenth century*, I, chs. XVI–XVII.

Life of medieval students. R. S. RAIT, *Life in the mediaeval university*, Cambridge, 1912, is based on the last chapter in RASHDALL, *Universities*, which see. C. H. HASKINS, "Life of mediaeval students as seen in their letters," in *American historical review*,

III (1897–1898), 203–229; see also his "The university of Paris in the sermons of the thirteenth century," *ibid.*, X (1904), 1–27. A. LUCHAIRE, *La société française*, translated into English by KREHBIEL, *Social France*, ch. III. MUNRO and SELLERY, *Medieval civilization*, 348–357. J. B. MILBURN, "University life in mediaeval Oxford," in *Dublin review*, CXXIX (1901), 72–97, is a review of *Epistolae academicae*, edited by H. ANSTEY, 2 vols., Oxford, 1901, and depicts university life in the fifteenth century. W. T. HEWETT, "University life in the middle ages," in *Harper's magazine*, XCVI (1898), 945–955.

Original sources. A. O. NORTON, *Readings in the history of education: mediaeval universities*, Harvard University Press, 1909. DUNCALF and KREY, *Parallel source problems*, 137–174, "The departure of the university from Paris, 1229–1231." *Translations and reprints*, vol. II, no. 3, "The mediaeval student." RUTEBEUF's [thirteenth century] satire on the Parisian student is freely translated under the title, "The song of the university of Paris," pp. 125–127 in *Legends and satires from mediaeval literature*, edited by MARTHA H. SHACKFORD, Boston [1913]. SYMONDS, *Wine, women and song*.

Maps. SHEPHERD, *Atlas*, 100, shows the location of the chief medieval universities. A better map is at the beginning of vol. II, part I of RASHDALL, *Universities*.

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General books. See especially the histories of education, nos. 836–849 above. For literature on the intellectual interests in medieval universities see especially outlines XIV–XV, XVII, XIX–XX above. For general works on medieval Paris, see outline XIII above.

University of Paris. Following are the important older works. C. E. DU BOULAY (BULAEUS), *Historia universitatis Parisiensis a Carolo Magno ad nostra tempora*, 6 vols. in folio, Paris, 1665–1673, which is analyzed in A. FRANKLIN, *Les sources de l'histoire de France*, 598–603. J. B. L. CREVIER, *Histoire de l'université de Paris depuis son origine jusqu'en l'année 1600*, 7 vols., Paris, 1761. E. DUBARLE, *Histoire de l'université de Paris*, 2 vols., Paris, 1844. C. RICHOMME, *Histoire de l'université de Paris*, Paris, 1840, is scarcely more than an abridgment of DUBARLE.

Among modern special books, the best is still C. THUROT, *De l'organisation de l'enseignement dans l'université de Paris au moyen âge*, Paris, 1850. A. BUDINSKY, *Die Universität Paris und die Fremden an derselben im Mittelalter*, Berlin, 1876. R. DELÈGUE,

L'université de Paris (1224–1244), Paris, 1902. A. LUCHAIRE, *L'université de Paris sous Philippe-August*, Paris, 1889. E. ALLAIN, "L'université de Paris aux XIII^e^ et XIV^e^ siècles," in *Revue du clergé français*, IV (1895), 193–206, 308–322. C. JOURDAIN, *Excursions historiques et philosophiques à travers le moyen âge*, 247–263, "La taxe des logements dans l'université de Paris"; see also pp. 265, 309, and 337. C. GROSS, "The political influence of the university of Paris in the middle ages," in *American historical review*, VI (1900–1901), 440–445. A. CALLET, *Le vieux Paris universitaire*, Paris [1907], is a popular sketch. L. LIARD, "La vieille université de Paris," in *Revue Paris*, May, 1908, 85–110. N. VALOIS, *Guillaume d'Auvergne, évêque de Paris*, Paris, 1880. P. FERET, "Les origines de l'université de Paris et son organisation aux XII^e^ et XIII^e^ siècles," in *Revue des questions historiques*, LII (1892), 337–390; this article now is the introduction to his large work entitled, *La faculté de théologie de Paris*. C. DESMAZE, *L'université de Paris, 1200–1875: La nation de Picardie; les collèges de Laon et de Presles; la loi sur l'enseignement supérieur*, Paris, 1876. Abbé PAGUELLE DE FOLLENAY, *Notice historique sur l'école épiscopale de Notre-Dame de Paris*, Paris, 1878. See also ASPINWALL, *Les écoles épiscopales*.

Mendicants in the university of Paris. F. X. SEPPELT, "Der Kampf der Bettelorden an der Universität Paris in der Mitte des 13 Jahrhunderts," in *Kirchengeschichtliche Abhandlungen*, III (1905); and his "Wissenschaft und Franziskanerorden," *ibid.*, IV (1906), 149–179; see also VI (1908), 73–139. FELDER, *Geschichte der wissenschaftlichen Studien im Franziskanerorden*. GRATIEN, "Les Franciscaines à l'université de Paris: notes et documents," in *Etudes franciscaines*, January, 1912. P. MANDONNET, "De l'incorporation des Dominicains dans l'ancienne université de Paris," in *Revue thomiste*, IV (1896), 156ff. H. DENIFLE, "Das erste Studienhaus der Benediktiner an der Universität Paris," in *Archiv für Literatur und Kirchengeschichte*, I (1885), 570–583. M. PERROT, *Maître Guillaume de Saint-Amour: l'université de Paris et les ordres mendiants au 13 siècle*, Paris, 1895, was sharply criticised by Mandonnet and Felder. E. BERNARD, *Les Dominicains dans l'université de Paris*, Paris, 1883. See also the general literature on the mendicants in outline XXIII of part II above.

Sorbonne. Colleges in Paris. O. GRÉARD, *Nos adieux à la vieille Sorbonne*, 2nd edition, Paris, 1893; see also his "Derniers souvenirs de la vieille Sorbonne," in *Revue de Paris*, VI (1901), 270–304, 560–578. A. FRANKLIN, *La Sorbonne: ses origines, sa bibliothèque*, 2nd edition, Paris, 1875. E. MÉRIC, *La Sorbonne et son fondateur*, Paris, 1888. ROBERT DE SORBON, *De consciencia et de tribus*

dietis, edited by F. CHAMBON, Paris, 1903 (fasc. 35 of Collection de textes pour servir à l'étude et à l'enseignement de l'histoire), contains a sketch of his life and a good bibliography. P. DE LONGUEMARE, *Notes sur quelques collèges parisiens de fondation normande aux XIII^e, XIV^e et XV^e siècles*, Rouen, 1911.

Other French universities. M. FOURNIER, *Histoire de la science du droit en France*, vol. III, Paris, 1892, *Les universités françaises et l'enseignement du droit en France au moyen âge.* A. MOLINIER, "Etude sur l'organisation de l'université de Toulouse, au quatorzième et au quinzième siècle (1309–1450)," in DEVIC and VAISSETTE, *Histoire générale de Languedoc*, VII, 570–608. L. SALTET, "L'ancienne université de Toulouse," in *Bulletin littéraire ecclésiastique*, 1912ff. R. GADAVE, *Les documents sur l'histoire de l'université de Toulouse et spécialement de sa faculté de droit civil et canonique (1229–1789)*, Toulouse, 1910 (dissertation). R. CAILLET, *L'université d'Avignon et sa faculté des droits au moyen âge (1303–1503)*, Paris, 1907. J. MARCHAND, *La faculté des arts de l'université d'Avignon*, Paris, 1897. F. BELIN, *Histoire de l'ancienne université de Provence (Aix) 1400–1793, d'après les manuscrits et les documents originaux*, Aix, 1892.

University of Bologna. Among the older works the following still have value. M. SARTI and M. FATTORINI, *De claris archigymnasii bononiensis professoribus a saeculo XI usque ad saeculum XIV*, Bologna, 1769–1772, new edition, 2 vols., 1888–1896. C. GHIRARDACCI, *Della historia di Bologna*, 2 parts, Bologna, 1596, 1657. SAVIGNY, *Geschichte des römischen Rechts*, ch. XXI.

Much literature was called forth by the great centenary in 1888 described by J. KIRKPATRICK, *The octocentenary festival of the university of Bologna*, June, 1888, Edinburgh, 1888. See also *Catalogo del museo dell' ottavo centenario dello studio Bolognese*, Bologna, 1892; and the reviews of the literature called forth by this celebration by A. DEL VECCHIO in *Archivio storico italiano*, 5th series, II (1888), 394-452; by C. CIPOLLA, in *Jahresbericht der Geschichtswissenschaft*, XI (1891), III, 5-7; and by LANDSBERG in *Zeitschrift der Savignystiftung für Rechtsgeschichte*, romanistische Abteilung, neue Folge, IX. Some of the best of those books are the following: H. FITTING, *Die Anfänge der Rechtsschule zu Bologna*, Leipzig, 1888. C. MALAGOLA, *Monografie storiche sullo studio bolognese*, Bologna, 1888; and his *I rettore delle università dello studio bolognese*, Bologna, 1887. C. RICCI, *I primordi dello studio bolognese: nota storica*, Bologna, 1887, 2nd edition, 1888. G. CASSANI, *Dell' antico studio di Bologna e sua origine*, Bologna, 1888. L. CHIAPPELLI, *Lo studio bolognese nelle sue origini e nei suoi rapporti colla scienza pre-irneriana*, Pistoia, 1888.

Following are some publications since that date: *Studi e memorie per la storia dell' università de Bologna,* Bologna, 1909ff. G. MANACORDA, *Storia della scuole in Italia,* vols. I–II [on middle ages], Palermo, 1914. F. CAVAZZA, *Le scuole dell' antico studio bolognese,* Milan, 1896. A. HESSEL, *Geschichte der Stadt Bologna von 1116 bis 1280,* Berlin, 1910.

Other Italian universities. E. COPPI, *Le università italiane nel medio evo,* 3rd edition, Florence, 1886. S. DE RENZI, *Storia documentata della scuola medica di Salerno,* 2nd edition, Naples, 1857. *l'Ecole de Salerne,* translation of the *Regimen sanitatis,* in French verse, with the Latin text, by C. MEAUX SAINT-MARC, with an introduction by C. DAREMBERG, Paris, 1880.

English universities. E. V. VAUGHAN, *The origin and early development of the English universities to the close of the thirteenth century,* University of Missouri, Studies, Social science series, II, no. 2, 1908. J. F. WILLARD, *The royal authority and the early English universities,* Philadelphia, 1902. H. FLETCHER [delineator], *Oxford and Cambridge,* with an introduction by J. W. CLARK, London, 1910.

University of Oxford. A. À WOOD, *The history and antiquities of the university of Oxford,* edited by J. GUTCH, 2 vols., Oxford, 1792–1786. H. C. M. LYTE, *A history of the university of Oxford to 1530,* London, 1886. G. C. BRODRICK, *A history of the university of Oxford,* London, 1886, 3rd edition, 1894. T. E. HOLLAND, "The origin of the university of Oxford," in *English historical review,* VI (1891), 238–249. C. HEADLAM, *Oxford and its story,* 2nd edition, London, 1912. A. LANG, *Oxford: brief historical and descriptive notes,* London, 1890. C. W. BOASE, *Oxford,* London, 1887 (Historic towns). E. A. G. LAMBORN, *The story of architecture in Oxford stone,* London, 1913.

Oxford colleges. *The colleges of Oxford, their history and traditions: twenty-one chapters contributed by members of the colleges,* edited by A. CLARK, London, 1891. A. VALLANCE, *The old colleges of Oxford: their architectural history,* London, 1912, has remarkable illustrations. G. C. BRODRICK, *Memorials of Merton college,* Oxford, 1885 (Oxford historical society). *Foundation statutes of Merton College, 1270, with subsequent ordinances,* from the Latin, translated by E. F. PERCIVAL, London, 1887.

University of Cambridge. J. B. MULLINGER, *The university of Cambridge from the earliest times to 1535,* Cambridge, 1873, vol. II, to Charles the First, 1884, vol. III, to 1667, 1911; his *History of the university of Cambridge,* London, 1888 (Epochs of church history), is a popular abridgement. R. WILLIS and J. W. CLARK, *The architectural history of the university of Cambridge and of the col-*

leges of Cambridge and Eton, 4 vols., Cambridge, 1886. C. H. COOPER, *Annals of Cambridge*, 5 vols., Cambridge, 1842–1908; see also his *Memorials of Cambridge*, 3 vols., new edition, Cambridge, 1884. A. GRAY, *Cambridge and its story*, London, 1912. J. W. CLARK, *Cambridge*, new edition, Philadelphia, 1908.

Spanish universities. V. DE LA FUENTE, *Historia de las universidades, colegios y demás establecimientos de enseñanza en España*, 3 vols., Madrid, 1884–1887. E. ESPERABÉ ARTEAGA, *Historia de la universidad de Salamanca*, vol. I, Salamanca, 1914. G. REYNIER, *La vie universitaire dans l'ancienne Espagne*, Paris, 1902, is chiefly concerned with Salamanca. T. BRAGA, *Historia da universidade de Coimbra*, 4 vols., Lisbon, 1892–1902, vol. I, 1289–1555.

German universities. G. KAUFMANN, *Die Geschichte der deutschen Universitäten*, 2 vols., Stuttgart, 1888–1896. F. v. BEZOLD, "Die ältesten deutschen Universitäten in ihrem Verhältnis zum Staat," in *Historische Zeitschrift*, LXXX (1898), 436–467. F. PAULSEN, "Die Gründung der deutschen Universitäten im Mittelalter," *ibid.*, XLV (1881), 251–311; and his "Organisation und Lebensordnungen der deutschen Universitäten im Mittelalter," *ibid.*, 385–440. J. v. DÖLLINGER, *Die Universitäten sonst und jetzt*, Munich, 1867, translated by APPLETON, *The universities new and old*, Oxford, 1867. A. THORBECKE, *Die älteste Zeit der Universität Heidelberg (1386–1449)*, Heidelberg, 1886.

University of Louvain. P. DELANNOY, *L'université de Louvain*, Paris, 1915. L. NOËL, *Louvain: 891–1914*, Oxford, University Press, 1915.

Original sources. *Chartularium universitatis Parisiensis*, edited by H. DENIFLE and E. CHATELAIN, 4 vols., Paris, 1889–1897; supplemented by the *Auctarium chartularium universitatis Parisiensis*, by the same editors, 2 vols., Paris, 1897–1899, containing documents which were excluded from the *Chartularium* on account of their length. See also H. DENIFLE, "Documents relatifs à la fondation et aux premiers temps de l'université de Paris," in *Mémoires de la Société de l'histoire de Paris*, X (1883), 243ff. See the review of the *Chartularium* in the *Revue des questions historiques*, XLVIII (1890), 577–586. *Les statuts et privilèges des universités françaises depuis leur fondation jusqu'en 1789*, edited by M. FOURNIER, 4 vols., Paris, 1890–1894 (see in connection with it H. DENIFLE, *Les universités françaises au moyen âge: avis à M. Fournier*, Paris, 1892). *Cartulaire de l'université de Montpellier*, edited by A. GERMAIN, Montpellier, vol. I, 1890, vol. II, 1912.

Chartularium studii Bononiensis: documenti per la storia dell' università di Bologna dalle origini fino al secolo XV, edited by L.

NORDI and E. ORIOLI, vols. I–III, Bologna and Imola, 1909–1916. *Atti della nazione germanica dei legisti allo studio di Padova,* edited by B. BRUGI, Padua, 1912ff. *Atti della nazione Germanica artistica nello studio di Padova,* Padua, 1912; and *Atti della nazione Germanica di Padova,* 2 vols., Venice., 1911, both edited by A. FAVARO.

Munimenta academica: or, documents relative of academical life and studies at Oxford, edited by H. ANSTEY, 2 vols., London, 1868 (Rolls series). *Statutes of the colleges of Oxford,* edited by H. ANSTEY, 3 vols., Oxford, 1853. *Collectanea,* edited by C. R. L. FLETCHER and others, 4 vols., Oxford, 1885–1905 (Oxford historical society, Publications), for contents see GROSS, *Sources,* no. 2779. *Enactments in Parliament, specially concerning the universities of Oxford and Cambridge, the colleges and halls therein, and the colleges of Winchester, Eton and Westminister,* edited by L. L. SHADWELL, 4 vols., Oxford, 1912 (Oxford historical society), see especially, I, 1–74. *Documents relating to the university and colleges of Cambridge,* published by direction of the commissioners appointed to inquire into the state, etc., of the university and colleges, 3 vols., London, 1852. R. L. POOLE, *A lecture on the history of the university archives,* Oxford, 1912.

Bibliographies. The best bibliographies of books which appeared before 1895 are at the head of chapters in RASHDALL, *Universities.* E. CHATELAIN, "Essai d'une bibliographie de l'ancienne université de Paris," in *Revue des bibliothèques,* I (1891). L. FRATI, *Opere della bibliografia bolognese che si conservano nella biblioteca municipale di Bologna,* 2 vols., Bologna, 1888. L. MANZONI, *Saggio di una bibliografia storica Bolognese,* part I, Bologna, 1888. W. ERMAN and E. HORN, *Bibliographie der deutschen Universitäten,* 3 parts, Leipzig, 1904.

XXIII. LATIN LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE IN THE TWELFTH AND THIRTEENTH CENTURIES

A. OUTLINE

1. The deplorable neglect of these important subjects. Strange to say, there is scarcely anything even approaching a history of medieval Latin. During the last five centuries endless effort has been expended on classical Latin, to the almost utter neglect of the form of the language which was the medium of expression of all western scholars during the middle ages. The efforts of the late Ludwig Traube, and of his successor, Paul Lehmann, in Munich, to arouse interest in medieval Latin philology. The crying need of a modern dictionary of medieval Latin.

2. The nature and importance of medieval Latin in western Christendom. Definitions of: classical Latin; vulgar Latin; low, middle, barbarous or medieval Latin; new or modern Latin.

3. The revival of interest in the study of Latin in the twelfth century. The "new grammar." The new grammars, especially the *Doctrinale* (1199) of Alexander of Villedieu, and the *Graecismus* (1212) of Eberhard of Bethune. The unpublished grammatical works of John Garland (died ca. 1259 in Paris), especially the *Clavis compendii*, the *Compendium grammatice*, and the *Accentarius*. His unavailing efforts to arouse interest in the reform of grammar. The popularity of versified grammars.

4. The teaching of grammar in medieval universities. The use of the new grammars. Special degrees in grammar in the university of Toulouse and elsewhere.

5. The decline of interest in the study of the Latin language during the thirteenth century. For the failing enthusiasm for the Latin classics and textual criticism see outline XVIII above.

6. The bloom of medieval Latin belles lettres in the twelfth century compared with the decay in the thirteenth century. Popularity of poetry. The use of rhyme. Popular poems of the day mentioned in the *Battle of the seven arts:* the *Alexandreis* of Gautier of Lille (written 1176–1179); the *Tobias* of Matthew of Vendôme (died ca. 1200); the *Architrenius*, or "Arch-Weeper," of Jean of Hauteville (near the end of the twelfth century); the *Anti-Claudianus* of Alain of Lille (ca. 1128–1202); and the *Aurora*, or versified bible, of Peter Riga, a canon of Rheims (died 1209). The fate of this literature in medieval universities.

7. The *Carmina burana*. The Goliardi. Primat of Orleans (the middle of twelfth century). Primat of Cologne (early thirteenth century) author of the *Confessio Goliae episcopi*. Walter Map (Mapes), archdeacon of Oxford, 1197. *Exempla*, or sermon stories.

8. The learned monumental prose works of the twelfth and thirteenth centuries (see outlines XVII, XX–XXI above). Decline of Latin style in these writings and in official correspondence in the thirteenth century. The great Latin hymns. The *Legenda aurea* of Jacob of Voragine. For history writing see outline XXV below.

9. The relation of Latin with the rising vernacular languages and literatures.

B. SPECIAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR READING

Short surveys of medieval Latin. F. PALGRAVE, *The history of Normandy and of England*, 2 vols., London, 1851, I, ch. II, "The Roman language." The introduction to *Das Doctrinale des Alex-*

ander de Villa-Dei, edited by D. REICHLING, Berlin, 1893, vol. XII of no. 1012 above, is the best account of the status of the Latin language at the beginning of the thirteenth century. V. S. CLARK, *Studies in the Latin of the middle ages and the renaissance*, Lancaster, Pa., 1900 (dissertation, Columbia). P. LEHMANN, *Vom Mittelalter und von der lateinischen Philologie des Mittelalters*, Munich, 1914.

Latin grammar in medieval universities. PAETOW, *The arts course*, ch. II. ABELSON, *The seven liberal arts, passim.*

Latin literature. TAYLOR, *Medieval mind*, 2nd edition, II, chs. XXXII–XXXIII. SANDYS, *Classical scholarship, passim;* see also his "English scholars of Paris and Franciscans of Oxford: Latin literature of England from John of Salisbury to Richard of Bury," in *Cambridge history of English literature*, I, ch. X. W. STUBBS, "Literature and learning at the court of Henry II," lectures VI and VII in his *Seventeen lectures*. E. MICHAEL, *Kulturzustände des deutschen Volkes*, III, 296–319. BAUMGARTNER, *Geschichte der Weltliteratur*, IV, 378–405. SEDGWICK, *Italy in the thirteenth century*, II, ch. XVII.

Original sources. COULTON, *A medieval garner. Translations and reprints*, II, no. 4, "Monastic tales of the thirteenth century." *Wine, women and song: mediaeval Latin students' songs now first translated into English verse*, with an essay, by J. A. SYMONDS, London, 1884. *Gesta Romanorum*, translated by C. SWAN, London, 1899 (Bohn library); selections from the *Gesta* along with other material are translated in *Mediaeval tales*, with an introduction by H. MORLEY, London, 1884. *Exempla* in French translation are printed in A. LECOY DE LA MARCHE, *L'esprit de nos aieux*, Paris, 1888.

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General books. See the general histories of literature, nos. 782–814 above, especially 785–799; also nos. 170, 303, 309–310, and 842–843 above. See also outline XVIII above.

Medieval Latin. L. TRAUBE, *Einleitung in die lateinische Philologie des Mittelalters*, Munich, 1911, vol. II of his *Vorlesungen. Quellen und Untersuchungen zur lateinischen Philologie des Mittelalters*, originally edited by L. TRAUBE, Munich, 1906ff. *Münchener Archiv für Philologie des Mittelalters und der Renaissance*, Munich, 1913ff. J. FELDER, *Die lateinische Kirchensprache nach ihrer geschichtlichen Entwickelung*, Feldkirch, 1905 (Programm). R. DE GOURMONT, *Le latin mystique: les poëtes de l'antiphonaire et la symbolique au moyen âge*, Paris, 1913. J. BRÜCH, *Der Einfluss der germanischen Sprachen auf das Vulgärlatein*, Heidelberg, 1913. On the Latin of medieval

official documents, see BRESSLAU, *Handbuch der Urkundenlehre*, I, 555–608 (now see the first pages in vol. II, part I of the new edition); and A. GIRY, *Manuel de diplomatique*, 433–476. EDÉLSTAND DU MÉRIL, *Mélanges archéologiques et littéraires*, Paris, 1850, especially pp. 243–289, "Des origines de la basse latinité et la nécessité de glossaires spéciaux." See also outline I above.

Medieval Latin dictionaries and glossaries. C. D. DU CANGE, *Glossarium mediae et infimae latinitatis*, 3 vols., Paris, 1678, revised edition, 10 vols., Paris, 1733–1766, another edition by G. A. L. HENSCHEL, 7 vols., Paris, 1840–1850, newest edition by L. FAVRE, 10 vols., Niort, 1883–1887. W. H. MAIGNE D'ARNIS, *Lexicon manuale ad scriptores mediae et infimae latinitatis*, Paris, 1858, reprinted 1866. L. DIEFENBACH, *Glossarium latino-germanicum mediae et infimae aetatis*, Frankfurt, 1857; and his *Novum glossarium latino-germanicum mediae et infimae aetatis*, Frankfurt, 1867. E. BRINKMEIER, *Glossarium diplomaticum*, 2 vols., Gotha, 1850–1855. A. BARTAL, *Glossarium mediae et infimae latinitatis regni hungariae*, Leipzig, 1901. M. A. SCHELER, *Lexicographie latine du XII^e et du XIII^e siècle trois traités de Jean de Garlande, Alexandre Neckam, et Adam de Petit-Pont*, Leipzig, 1867 (also in Jahrbuch für romanische und englische Literatur, VI, 141–162). T. WRIGHT, *A volume of vocabularies, 10th–15th centuries*, 2 vols., London, 1857, 2nd edition by R. P. WÜLKER, *Anglo-Saxon and old English vocabularies* [*Latin-English*], 2 vols., London, 1884. E. LITTRÉ, "Glossaires [XIII^e siècle]," in *Histoire littéraire de la France*, XXII (1852), 1–38. *Corpus glossarium latinorum*, vols. II–VII, edited by G. LOEWE, Leipzig, 1888–1903. *Prodromus corporis glossariorum latinorum*, edited by G. LOEWE, Leipzig, 1876. C. SCHMIDT, *Petit supplément au dictionnaire de Du Cange*, Strasburg, 1906. Glossaries are often appended to individual editions of works in large collections of source material like nos. **965–966**, **978** and **995** above.

Medieval Latin grammar. C. THUROT, *Notices et extraits de divers Mss. latins pour servir à l'histoire des doctrines grammaticales au moyen âge*, Paris, 1868, vol. XXII, part II of *Notices et extraits des manuscrits de la Bibliothèque nationale*. J. J. BÄBLER, *Beiträge zur Geschichte der lateinischen Grammatik im Mittelalter*, Halle, 1885. C. MARCHESI, *Due grammatici latini del medio evo*, Perugia, 1910. E. VOIGT, "Das erste Lesebuch des Triviums in den Kloster- und Stiftsschulen des Mittelalters," in *Mitteilungen der Gesellschaft für deutsche Erziehungs- und Schulgeschichte*, I, Heft I (Berlin, 1891), 42–53.

Alexander of Villa Dei. D. REICHLING, *Das Doctrinale des Alexander de Villa-Dei*, Berlin, 1893, introduction. C. THUROT, *De*

Alexandri de Villa Dei Doctrinali eiusque fatis, Paris, 1850. K. J. NEUDECKER, *Das Doctrinale des Alexanders de Villa Dei und der lateinische Unterricht während des späteren Mittelalters in Deutschland*, Pirma, 1885 (Programm). L. DELISLE, "Alexandre de Villedieu et Guillaume le Moine de Villedieu," in *Bibliothèque de l'Ecole des chartes*, LV (1894), 488–504, also LXII (1901), 158–159.

John Garland. E. HABEL, "Johannes de Garlandia," in *Mitteilungen der Gesellschaft für deutsche Erziehungs- und Schulgeschichte*, XIX (1909), 1–34, 119–130. B. HAURÉAU, "Notices sur les oeuvres authentiques ou supposées de Jean de Garlande," in *Notices et extraits des manuscrits de la Bibliothèque nationale et autres bibliothèques*, XXVII, part II (1879), 1–86. A. F. GATIEN-ARNOULT, "Jean de Garlande, docteur regent de grammaire à l'université de Toulouse de 1229 à 1232," in *Revue de Toulouse* (1866), 117–137.

Medieval Latin literature in general. A. G. LITTLE, *Initia operum latinorum quae saeculis XIII, XIV, XV attribuuntur*, Manchester, 1904. A. FRANKLIN, *Dictionnaire des noms, surnoms et pseudonymes latins de l'histoire littéraire du moyen âge (1100 à 1530)*, Paris, 1875. J. A. FABRICIUS, *Bibliotheca latina mediae et infimae aetatis*, 6 vols., Hamburg, 1734–1746, revised edition, by J. D. MANSI, 6 vols., Padua, 1754. P. LEHMANN, "Literaturgeschichte im Mittelalter," in *Germanisch-romanische Monatschrift*, IV (1912), 569–582; 617–630. NOVATI, "Rapports littéraires de l'Italie et dé la France au XII siècle," in *Academie des inscriptions, Comptes rendus*, 1910, 169ff. W. CLOETTA, *Beiträge zur Literaturgeschichte des Mittelalters und der Renaissance*, I, *Komödie und Tragödie im Mittelalter*, Halle, 1890.

Goliardic literature. C. V. LANGLOIS, "La littérature goliardique," in *Revue bleue*, L (1892), 807–813; LI (1893), 174–180. A. GABRIELLI, *Su la poesia dei goliardi: saggia critico*, Città di Castello, 1899. L. DELISLE, "Le poète Primat," in *Bibliothèque de l'Ecole des chartes*, XXXI (1870), 302–311; see also B. HAURÉAU, in *Notices et extraits*, XXXII, part I (1886), 253–314. N. SPIEGEL, *Die Grundlagen der Vagantenpoesie*, Würzburg, 1908. S. JAFFE, *Die Vaganten und ihre Lieder*, Berlin, 1908. A. STRACCALI, *I Goliardi*, Florence, 1880. W. MEYER (aus Speyer), *Gesammelte Abhandlungen zur mittellateinischen Rythmik*, 2 vols., Berlin, 1905. K. FRANKE, *Zur Geschichte der lateinischen Schulpoesie des XII und XIII Jahrhunderts*, Munich, 1879. W. WATTENBACH, "Die Anfänge lateinischer profaner Rythmer des Mittelalters," in *Zeitschrift für deutsches Alterthum*, neue Folge, III (1870), 469–506. B. E. LUNDIUS, *Deutsche Vagantenlieder in den Carmina burana*, Halle, 1907 (dissertation). A. HEINRICH, *Quatenus carminum buranorum auctores veterum*

Romanorum poetas imitati sint, Cilli, 1882 (Programm). O. HUBATSCH, *Die lateinischen Vagantenlieder des Mittelalters*, Görlitz, 1870.

Collections of Goliardic poems. *Carmina burana: lateinische und deutsche Lieder und Gedichte einer Handschrift des XIII Jahrhunderts*, edited by J. A. SCHMELLER, 3rd, unaltered, edition, Bresslau, 1894 (the first edition appeared in Bibliothek des literarischen Vereins in Stuttgart, XVI, 1847, 1–275). *Die Gedichte des Archipoeta*, edited by M. MANITIUS, Munich, 1913. "Fragmenta burana," edited by W. MEYER (aus Speyer), in *Festschrift* zum 150jährigen Bestehen der Gesellschaft der Wissenschaften zu Göttingen, 1901, phil.-hist. Classe; see also his *Carmina burana*, Berlin, 1904; and his "Die Oxforder Gedichte des Primas (des Magisters Hugo von Orleans)," in *Nachrichten* der Göttingen Ak., philos.-hist. Kl. 1907, 75–175, 231–234. *The Cambridge songs: a Goliard's song-book of the eleventh century*, edited by K. BREUL, Cambridge University Press, 1915. *The Latin poems commonly attributed to Walter Mapes*, edited by T. WRIGHT, Camden society, 1841. *Carmina medii aevi*, edited by F. NOVATI, Florence, 1883. *Carmina burana selecta*, 1880; and *Ubi sunt qui ante nos?* edited by A. P. v. BÄRNSTEIN, Würzberg, 1881.

Latin hymns and liturgy. G. M. DREVES, *Ein Jahrtausend lateinischer Hymnendichtung*, 2 vols., Leipzig, 1910; see also his *Die Kirche der Lateiner in ihren Liedern*, Kempten, 1908. J. PACHEU, *Jacopone de Todi, frère Mineur Franciscain, 1230–1306, auteur présumé du Stabat Mater*, Paris, 1914. A. D'ANCONA, *Jacopone da Todi, il giullare di Dio del seculo XIII*, Todi, 1914. C. BLUME, *Hymnologie und Kulturgeschichte des Mittelalters*, Kempten, 1914, 14 pp. J. JULIAN, *A dictionary of hymnology*, London, 1907. U. CHEVALIER, *Poésie liturgique du moyen âge*, Paris, 1893. L. GAUTIER, *Histoire de la poésie liturgique au moyen âge*, Paris, 1886.

Latin sermons. L. BOURGAIN, *La chaire française au XII^e siècle d'après les manuscrits*, Paris, 1879. A. LECOY DE LA MARCHE, *La chaire française au moyen âge, spécialement au XIII^e siècle*, Paris, 1868, 2nd edition, 1886. C. V. LANGLOIS, "Sermons parisiens de la première moitié du XIII^e siècle, contenus dans la manuscrit 691 de la bibliothèque d'Arras," in *Journal des savants*, Nov., 1916, 488–494; Dec., 1916, 548–559; see also his "L'éloquence sacrée au moyen âge," in *Revue des deux mondes* CXV (1893), 170–201. P. FUNK, *Jacob von Vitry: Leben und Werke*, Leipzig, 1909 (part 3 of Beiträge zur Kulturgeschichte des Mittelalters). J. M. NEALE, *Mediaeval preachers and mediaeval preaching: a series of extracts, translated from the sermons of the middle ages, chronologically arranged*, London, 1856.

Alexandri de Villa Dei Doctrinali eiusque fatis, Paris, 1850. K. J. NEUDECKER, *Das Doctrinale des Alexanders de Villa Dei und der lateinische Unterricht während des späteren Mittelalters in Deutschland*, Pirma, 1885 (Programm). L. DELISLE, "Alexandre de Villedieu et Guillaume le Moine de Villedieu," in *Bibliothèque de l'Ecole des chartes*, LV (1894), 488–504, also LXII (1901), 158–159.

John Garland. E. HABEL, "Johannes de Garlandia," in *Mitteilungen der Gesellschaft für deutsche Erziehungs- und Schulgeschichte*, XIX (1909), 1–34, 119–130. B. HAURÉAU, "Notices sur les oeuvres authentiques ou supposées de Jean de Garlande," in *Notices et extraits des manuscrits de la Bibliothèque nationale et autres bibliothèques*, XXVII, part II (1879), 1–86. A. F. GATIEN-ARNOULT, "Jean de Garlande, docteur regent de grammaire à l'université de Toulouse de 1229 à 1232," in *Revue de Toulouse* (1866), 117–137.

Medieval Latin literature in general. A. G. LITTLE, *Initia operum latinorum quae saeculis XIII, XIV, XV attribuuntur*, Manchester, 1904. A. FRANKLIN, *Dictionnaire des noms, surnoms et pseudonymes latins de l'histoire littéraire du moyen âge (1100 à 1530)*, Paris, 1875. J. A. FABRICIUS, *Bibliotheca latina mediae et infimae aetatis*, 6 vols., Hamburg, 1734–1746, revised edition, by J. D. MANSI, 6 vols., Padua, 1754. P. LEHMANN, "Literaturgeschichte im Mittelalter," in *Germanisch-romanische Monatschrift*, IV (1912), 569–582; 617–630. NOVATI, "Rapports littéraires de l'Italie et dè la France au XII siècle," in *Academie des inscriptions, Comptes rendus*, 1910, 169ff. W. CLOETTA, *Beiträge zur Literaturgeschichte des Mittelalters und der Renaissance*, I, *Komödie und Tragödie im Mittelalter*, Halle, 1890.

Goliardic literature. C. V. LANGLOIS, "La littérature goliardique," in *Revue bleue*, L (1892), 807–813; LI (1893), 174–180. A. GABRIELLI, *Su la poesia dei goliardi: saggia critico*, Città di Castello, 1899. L. DELISLE, "Le poète Primat," in *Bibliothèque de l'Ecole des chartes*, XXXI (1870), 302–311; see also B. HAURÉAU, in *Notices et extraits*, XXXII, part I (1886), 253–314. N. SPIEGEL, *Die Grundlagen der Vagantenpoesie*, Würzburg, 1908. S. JAFFE, *Die Vaganten und ihre Lieder*, Berlin, 1908. A. STRACCALI, *I Goliardi*, Florence, 1880. W. MEYER (aus Speyer), *Gesammelte Abhandlungen zur mittellateinischen Rythmik*, 2 vols., Berlin, 1905. K. FRANKE, *Zur Geschichte der lateinischen Schulpoesie des XII und XIII Jahrhunderts*, Munich, 1879. W. WATTENBACH, "Die Anfänge lateinischer profaner Rythmer des Mittelalters," in *Zeitschrift für deutsches Alterthum*, neue Folge, III (1870), 469–506. B. E. LUNDIUS, *Deutsche Vagantenlieder in den Carmina burana*, Halle, 1907 (dissertation). A. HEINRICH, *Quatenus carminum buranorum auctores veterum*

1901. *Lateinische Hymnen des Mittelalters*, edited by F. J. MONE, 3 vols., Freiburg, 1853–1855. *Repertorium hymnologicum: catalogue des chants, hymnes, proses, sequences, tropes, en usage dans l'église latine depuis les origines jusqu'à nos jours*, edited by U. CHEVALIER, 2 vols., Louvain, 1892–1897. *The source of "Jerusalem the golden," together with other pieces attributed to* BERNARD OF CLUNY, translated by H. PREBLE, with an introduction and notes by S. M. JACKSON, Chicago, 1910. *Latin hymns*, selected and annotated by W. A. MERRILL, Boston, 1904. E. W. BRAINERD (compiler), *Great hymns of the middle ages*, New York, 1909. S. W. DUFFIELD, *The Latin hymn writers and their hymns*, edited and completed by R. E. THOMPSON, New York, 1889. C. C. NOTT, *Seven great hymns of the mediaeval church*, New York, 1902.

Bibliographies. For the Latin languages, see BERNHEIM, *Lehrbuch der historischen Methode*, 286–288. For Latin literature see footnotes in SANDYS, *Classical scholarship*, and his bibliography in *Cambridge history of English literature*, I, 452–457. Also MOLINIER, *Les sources*, I, 192–213.

XXIV. MEDIEVAL FRENCH LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE

A. OUTLINE

1. Of the rising vernaculars, which were destined to compete with and eventually to outstrip Latin, French is the best type. About 1260–1270, the Italian Brunetto Latini (died 1290) wrote in his *Tresor*, "Et se aucuns demandoit por quoi cist livres est escriz en romans, selonc le langage des François, puisque nos somes Ytaliens, je diroie que ce est por .ij. raisons: l'une, car nos somes en France; et l'autre, porce que la parleure est plus delitable et plus commune à toutes gens."

2. The origin of the French language. Its development from the spoken Latin in Gaul, the vulgar or popular Latin. The Celtic and Germanic influence. The earliest texts. Glossaries. The oaths of Strasburg, 842. Various dialects. Chief divisions: Langue d'Oc in the south (*oc*=Latin *hoc*); Langue d'Oui in the north (*oïl*=Latin *hoc ille*). The ultimate predominance of the French spoken in Paris.

3. The influence of French in foreign countries before the end of the thirteenth century, especially in England, Germany, Italy, and the Orient, where it played an important rôle because France furnished the greatest number of crusaders.

4. The attitude of the learned class towards the vernacular. Evidence from the works of Roger Bacon. French was used

rarely even in elementary instruction and it was never taught in the schools. Before the end of the thirteenth century there was no thought of a conflict between the "ancients and the moderns" such as inflamed France in the seventeenth century.

5. The beginnings of French literature in religious narrative poetry. The earliest known piece of French literature is the *Vie de saint Alexis*, written in the middle of the eleventh century. Other lives of saints in French verse. Pious tales like the *Tumbler of Notre-Dame.*

6. The great national epics which expressed the life and ideals of the warlike feudal class. The origin of the *chansons de geste* sung by *Jongleurs.* The *Chanson de Roland. Huon de Bordeaux.*

7. The antique epic. Influence of classical history and literature. Epics of Troy, of Julius Caesar, and of Alexander the Great.

8. Epics of gallantry and courtly love. The Arthurian romances. The Holy Grail. Tristam and Iseult. Parzival. This literature was most original in the twelfth century when it reflected the new era of culture in western Christendom which had been ushered in by the crusades.

9. Lyric poetry. The songs of the troubadours in large measure reflect the highly civilized life in southern France before the Albigensian crusades in the thirteenth century. *Aucassin et Nicolette.* In Latin, the Goliardic poetry falls mainly under this heading (see the previous outline).

10. Literature of the middle class, especially satirical literature. The *Fabliaux* bear witness to the sudden rise of the burgher class and the peasants in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries. *Renard the fox.* Rutebeuf (middle of the thirteenth century).

11. Didactic and moral literature. Allegory. The *Romance of the Rose*, in two parts, the first by William of Lorris (first half of the thirteenth century), and the second by John Clopinel, of Meung (about 1277).

12. Historical writing in the vernacular. Villehardouin and Joinville. See the next outline.

13. Vernacular literature as a source for the history of culture during the twelfth and thirteenth centuries.

B. Special Recommendations for Reading

Brief general surveys. Bémont and Monod, *Medieval Europe*, 527–536. Lavisse and Rambaud, *Histoire générale*, II, 568–580, III, 212–218. Munro and Sellery, *Medieval civilization*, 310–325. H. O. Taylor, *The mediaeval mind*, 2nd edition, I, ch. xxiv, II, ch. xxv. On French in England see F. W. Maitland, "The Anglo-French

law language," in *Cambridge history of English literature*, I (1908), ch. XX (for other literature on French in England see GROSS, *Sources*, nos. 200–209).

Longer accounts. LAVISSE, *Histoire de France*, II, part II, 179–182, 389–399, III, part I, 371–382, 409–414, part II, 372–379, 404–412. C. H. C. WRIGHT, *A history of French literature*, New York, 1912, 1–110. F. BRUNETIÈRE, *Manual of the history of French literature*, authorized translation, New York, 1898, book I. G. LANSON, *Histoire de la littérature française*, 12th edition, Paris, 1912, part I, "Le moyen âge."

Standard accounts. F. E. BRUNOT, *Histoire de la langue française des origines à 1900*, vols. I–IV, Paris, 1905–1913, vol. I on the middle ages. *Histoire de la langue et de la littérature française des origines à 1900*, edited by L. PETIT DE JULLEVILLE, 8 vols., Paris, 1896–1899, vols. I–II. G. PARIS, *La littérature française au moyen âge (XI^e–XIV^e siècle)*, 5th edition, Paris, 1914, translated in Everyman's library, *Medieval French literature;* and his *Esquisse historique de la littérature française au moyen âge*, Paris, 1907, 2nd edition, 1913.

Troubadours. LUCHAIRE, *Social France*, ch. XII. J. H. SMITH, *The troubadours at home*, 2 vols., New York and London, 1899. H. J. CHAYTOR, *The troubadours*, Cambridge, 1912 (Cambridge manuals).

French literature as a source for the history of medieval culture. C. V. LANGLOIS, *La société française au XIII^e siècle d'après dix romans d'aventure*, 3rd edition, Paris, 1911; see also his *La vie en France au moyen âge d'après quelques moralistes du temps*, 2nd edition, Paris, 1911; and his *La connaissance de la nature et du monde*, which has been emphasized under outline XXI above. K. VOSSLER, *Frankreichs Kultur im Spiegel seiner Sprachentwicklung*, Heidelberg, 1913.

Original sources. Following is a short list of English translations of old French classics: *The song of Roland*, translated into English verse by L. BACON, Yale University Press, 1914; translated into English verse by A. S. WAY, Cambridge, 1913; translated into English prose by ISABEL BUTLER, Boston, 1904; translated into English verse by J. O'HAGEN, 2nd edition, London, 1883. *The romance of Tristam and Iseult*, translated from the French of J. BÉDIER by FLORENCE SIMMONDS, London, 1910. *Aucassin et Nicolette*, translated by A. LANG, London, 1887, also in Everyman's library, New York, 1910. *Of the tumbler of our Lady and other miracles*, now translated from the middle French with introduction and notes by ALICE KEMP-WELCH, in *The new medieval library*,

which see for other translations of old French classics. W. LORRIS and J. CLOPINEL, *The romance of the rose*, translated by F. S. ELLIS, 3 vols., London, 1900 (Temple classics). *Huon of Bordeaux:* done into English by Sir J. BOURCHIER, lord BERNERS, and now retold by R. STEELE, London, 1895; see also R. STEELE'S translations of *Renaud of Montauban*, London, 1897; and the *Story of Alexander*, London, 1894. For the *Battle of the seven arts* see outline XVIII above.

Old French romances, done into English by W. MORRIS, London, 1896. *Tales from the old French*, translated by ISABEL BUTLER, Boston, 1910. *French mediaeval romances from the lays of Marie de France*, translated by E. MASON, New York, 1911 (Everyman's library). *Legends and satires from mediaeval literature*, edited by MARTHA H. SHACKFORD, New York, 1913.

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General books. Many general histories of literature, nos. **782–814** above, are useful. Naturally, the great *Histoire littéraire de la France*, no. **803** above, is most essential. See also nos. **171–172** and **303–306** above, especially GRÖBER'S *Grundriss*, no. **305**, II, part II, 433–1247. Much of the literature under outline **XXVII** in part II above is important. For the legend of Charlemagne see outline VIII in part II above.

Grammars of old French. A. DARMESTETER, *Cours de grammaire historique de la langue française*, 7th to 9th edition, 4 vols., Paris [no date]. E. SCHWAN and D. BEHRENS, *Grammatik des Altfranzösichen*, 9th edition, Leipzig, 1911, translated into French by O. BLOCH, *Grammaire de l'ancien français*, 2nd edition, Leipzig, 1913. K. NYROP, *Grammaire historique de la langue française*, vols. I–IV, Copenhagen, 1903–1913, vol. I, *Histoire générale de la langue française*, in 2nd edition, revised, 1904.

Dictionaries of old French. F. GODEFROY, *Dictionnaire de l'ancienne langue française*, 10 vols., Paris, 1881–1902; and his smaller *Lexique de l'ancien française*, Paris, 1901. G. KÖRTING, *Lateinisch-romanisches Wörterbuch*, 3rd edition, Paderborn, 1907.

Histories of medieval French literature. H. SUCHIER and A. BIRCH-HIRSCHFELD, *Geschichte der französischen Literatur von den ältesten Zeiten bis zur Gegenwart*, 2nd edition, 2 vols., Leipzig, 1913. P. A. BECKER, *Grundriss der altfranzösischen Literatur*, Heidelberg, 1907. See also no. **305** above.

Special works on medieval French literature. J. BÉDIER, *Les légendes épiques: recherches sur la formation des Chansons de geste*, 4 vols., vol. I in 2nd edition, Paris, 1909–1913. L. GAUTIER, *Les*

épopées françaises, 2nd edition, 5 vols., Paris, 1878–1897. G. PARIS, *Légendes du moyen-âge*, 4th edition, Paris, 1912; see also his *La poésie du moyen âge: leçons et lectures*, 2 vols., vol. I in 5th edition, vol. II in 3rd edition, Paris, 1903–1906; and his *Mélanges de littérature française du moyen âge*, Paris, 1912. J. BÉDIER, *Les fabliaux*, Paris, 1893, 2nd edition, 1895. L. FOULET, *Le roman de renard*, Paris, 1914. E. FARAL, *Recherches sur les sources latines des contes et romans courtois du moyen âge*, Paris, 1913; see also his important study on *Les jongleurs en France au moyen âge*, Paris, 1910, part 187 of no. 888 above. G. E. B. SAINTSBURY, *The flourishing of romance and the rise of allegory*, London, 1897 (Periods of European literature). E. LANGLOIS, *Origines et sources du Roman de la rose*, Paris, 1891. L. CLÉDAT, *La poésie lyrique et satirique en France au moyen âge*, Paris, 1893. E. LANGLOIS, *Table des noms propres de toute nature compris dans les chansons de geste imprimées*, Paris, 1904. P. MEYER, *Alexandre le Grand dans la littérature française du moyen âge*, Paris, 1886.

Troubadours. J. ANGLADE, *Les troubadours*, Paris, 1908. A. JEANROY, *Les origines de la poésie lyrique en France au moyen âge*, 2nd edition, Paris, 1904. J. BECK, *La musique des troubadours*, Paris, 1910 (see his bibliography, 121–122). K. BARTSCH, *Grundriss zur Geschichte der provenzalischen Literatur*, Elberfeld, 1872. F. DIEZ, *Leben und Werke der Troubadours*, 2nd edition, Leipzig, 1882. P. AUBRY, *Trouvères et troubadours*, Paris, 1909, 2nd edition, 1910, translated by C. AVELING, *Trouvères and troubadours: a popular treatise*, New York, 1914. IDA FARNELL, *The lives of the troubadours*, London, 1896. J. F. ROWBOTHAM, *The troubadours and courts of love*, London, 1895. F. HUEFFER, *The troubadours: a history of Provençal life and literature in the middle ages*, London, 1878. J. RUTHERFORD, *The troubadours*, London, 1873.

Periodicals. *Romania*, Paris, 1872ff. *Zeitschrift für französiche Sprache und Literatur*, Leipzig, 1879ff. *Zeitschrift für romanische Philologie*, Halle, 1875ff. *The romanic review*, New York, 1910ff.

Original sources. No attempt can be made in this *Guide* to list even the most important special editions of the classics of medieval French literature. Most of them are edited in the following series: *Société des anciens textes français. Classiques français du moyen âge. Bibliothèque française du moyen âge. Bibliotheca Normannica. Gesellschaft für romanische Literatur. Romanische Bibliothek. Altfranzösische Bibliothek. Les anciens poètes de la France.*

For short selections from old French see the following: *Chrestomathie du moyen âge: extraits publiés avec des traductions, des notes, une introduction grammaticale et des notices littéraires*, edited

by G. PARIS et E. LANGLOIS, 8th edition, Paris, 1912. *Chrestomathie de l'ancien français (VIII^e–XV^e siècle)*, edited by K. BARTSCH, Leipzig, 1866, 11th edition, 1913. *La poésie française du moyen âge (XI^e–XV^e siècle): recueil de textes accompagnés de traductions, de notices et précédé d'une étude littéraire*, edited by C. OULMONT, Paris, 1913.

Bibliographies. L. FOULET, *A bibliography of medieval French literature for college libraries*, edited by A. SCHINZ and G. E. UNDERWOOD, Yale University Press, 1915. J. BÉDIER and M. ROQUES, *Bibliographie des travaux de Gaston Paris*, Paris, 1904. G. RAYNAUD, *Bibliographie des chansonniers français des XIII^e et XIV^e siècles*, Paris, 1884. L. SPENCE, *A dictionary of mediaeval romance and romance writers*, New York, 1914, is unsatisfactory. R. FEDERN, *Répertoire bibliographique de la littérature française*, Paris, 1912.

XXV. HISTORIOGRAPHY AND POLITICAL THOUGHT

A. OUTLINE

1. Unfavorable conditions for good history writing in the middle ages. Almost total absence of historical critical sense and hence a lack of trustworthy texts and bibliographical tools. Comparatively little interest in the history and historiography of the Greek and Roman world, to say nothing of Egypt or Babylonia. The history of the Jews formed the basis of all study of ancient history. Josephus was much more popular than Livy. There was no systematic study of history as a separate discipline in the schools and universities. Consequent insignificance of all medieval histories properly speaking, that is, those attempting to depict the past from records. On the other hand, the middle ages produced some remarkable chronicles, that is, accounts of contemporary events written up largely from observation and hearsay.

2. Historiography in the early middle ages. For Orosius see outline II above, for Gregory of Tours and Merovingian hagiography, outline VI, for Bede, outline VII, for the Carolingian revival of history writing, outline VIII, and for the ninth, tenth and eleventh centuries see the literature listed under outlines IX and XI above.

3. The remarkable impulse given to history writing by the crusades and by the new intellectual interests of the twelfth century. For the historiography of the crusades see outline XXI in part II above.

4. The twelfth century. Sigebert of Gembloux (died 1112), *Chronographia*, and its continuations, notably by Robert of Torigni (died 1186). Ordericus Vitalis (died ca. 1142), *Historia ecclesiastica* [1–1141 A.D.]. Suger, abbot of St. Denis (died 1151), *Vita*

Ludovici Grossi regis. William of Malmesbury (died ca. 1142), *De gestis regum Anglorum* [449–1127 A.D.], and *Historiae novellae libri tres* [1125–1142 A.D.]. Otto of Freising (died 1158), *Historia de duabus civitatibus,* or *Chronica.*

5. The thirteenth century. Rigord, a monk of St. Denis (died ca. 1209), *Gesta Philippi Augusti* [1179–1208 A.D], continued by William of Armorica, or Guillaume le Breton, to 1223. Vincent of Beauvais (died 1264), *Speculum historiale.* Matthew Paris (died ca. 1259), *Chronica majora* [to 1259]. Roger of Wendover (died 1236), *Flores historiarum* [to 1235]. Salimbene (1221–1288), *Chronica.*

6. The beginnings of history writing in the vernacular languages. The famous *Anglo-Saxon chronicle.* Historical elements in the *Chansons de geste.* The *Vie de Guillaume le Maréchal,* written about 1225, in French verse. Villehardouin (died 1213), *Conquête de Constantinople.* The *Grandes chroniques françaises de Saint-Denis.* Jean de Joinville (ca. 1224–ca. 1319), *Histoire de Saint Louis.* For Froissart and Commines see outline XXX in part II above.

7. Historical criticism in the middle ages. For the textual criticism of Roger Bacon and other scholars of the thirteenth century see outline XVIII above. Reasons for the decline, in the thirteenth century, of critical interest in the records of the past.

8. Political theory in the early middle ages. The ideas concerning the state in the New Testament and in the writings of the church fathers. For St. Augustine and Gregory the Great see outline II above. Theories concerning church and state in the period of the investiture strife. Sweeping claims made for the authority of the church. Empire versus papacy.

9. Transformation of medieval political thought in the twelfth century by the systematic study of Roman and canon law (see outline XX above). The political thought of John of Salisbury (for his *Policraticus* and other writings see outline XVIII above).

10. Another revolution of political thought came in the thirteenth century, due largely to the New Aristotle, especially the *Politics* of Aristotle (see outline XV above). Saint Thomas Aquinas as the interpreter of Aristotelian notions about the state (for general works on Thomas Aquinas see outline XVII above). For Dante see outline XXVIII below, and for the important political thought of the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries, outlines XXIX and XXXI in part II above.

B. SPECIAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR READING

General surveys of medieval historiography. M. RITTER, "Die christlich-mittelalterliche Geschichtschreibung," in *Historische Zeit-*

schrift, CVII (1911), 237–305. BAUMGARTNER, *Geschichte der Weltliteratur*, IV, 353–378.

Historiography in France. A. MOLINIER, *Les sources de l'histoire de France*, vol. V, pp. i–clxxxvii, contains the introduction to the work in the form of a history of history writing in France in the middle ages.

Historiography in the vernacular. C. V. LANGLOIS, "L'historiographie," in *Histoire de la langue et de la littérature française*, edited by L. PETIT DE JULLEVILLE, II, ch. VI.

Historiography in England. W. L. JONES, "Latin chroniclers from the eleventh to the thirteenth centuries," in *Cambridge history of English literature*, I (1908), ch. IX (see also the bibliography, 448–451).

Historiography in Germany. W. WATTENBACH, *Deutschlands Geschichtsquellen im Mittelalter bis zur Mitte des dreizehnten Jahrhunderts*. O. LORENZ, *Deutschlands Geschichtsquellen im Mittelalter seit der Mitte des dreizehnten Jahrhunderts*. E. MICHAEL, *Culturzustände*, III, 320–395, is confined to the thirteenth century.

Salimbene. TAYLOR, *Mediaeval mind*, 2nd edition, II, ch. XXII, "The world of Salimbene." COULTON, *From Saint Francis to Dante*.

Short general surveys of medieval political theories. W. A. DUNNING, *A history of political theories ancient and mediaeval*, New York, 1902. BRYCE, *Holy Roman empire*, consult the index. A. J. CARLYLE, "The sources of medieval political theory and its connection with medieval politics," in *American historical review*, XIX (1913), 1–12. C. D. BURNS, *Political ideals: their nature and their development*, Oxford, 1915, 92–121. L. GUMPLOWICZ, *Geschichte der Staatstheorien*, Innsbruck, 1905, 87–126.

Standard works on medieval political theory. R. W. CARLYLE, and A. J. CARLYLE, *A history of mediaeval political theory in the west*, vols. I–III, New York, 1903–1916. P. JANET, *Histoire de la science politique dans ses rapports avec la morale*, 2 vols., 3rd edition, Paris, 1887, I, 263–489.

Medieval theocratic ideas. POOLE, *Illustrations of the history of medieval thought*, ch. VIII, "The hierarchical doctrine of the state." O. GIERKE, *Political theories of the middle age*, translated by F. W. MAITLAND, Cambridge, 1900. O. GIERKE, "Die theokratische Idee des Mittelalters," in his *Johannes Althusius und die Entwicklung der naturrechtlichen Staatstheorien*, 2nd edition, Breslau, 1902. J. N. FIGGIS, "Republica christiana," in *Transactions of the Royal historical society*, 3rd series, V (1911), 63–88.

Original sources. *Quellen zur Geschichte der mittelalterlichen Geschichtschreibung*, I, *Geschichtsschreiber des frühen Mittelalters*, edited by F. KERN, Leipzig, 1916, II, *Deutsche Geschichtsschreiber der Kaiserzeit*, edited by F. VIGENER, Leipzig, 1914. It it announced that OTTO OF FREISING'S *Chronica* will be translated by C. C. MIEROW, in 949 above. Meanwhile it may be well to call attention to the new edition of the *Chronica* edited by A. HOFMEISTER, Hanover and Leipzig, 1912, part of no. 979 above. F. W. COKER, *Readings in political philosophy*, 121–135, translates from the works of Thomas Aquinas.

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General books. Consult the general histories on church and state in the middle ages, nos. 455–459 above; those on the medieval empire, nos. 499–507 above; and also the general histories of literature, nos. 782–814 above. See also nos. 64–67 above.

General and miscellaneous accounts of historiography. M. BÜDINGER, *Die Universalhistorie im Mittelalter*, in *Denkschriften* der kaiserlichen Akademie der Wissenschaften, philos.-hist. Klasse, XLVI, Abhandlungen 1 and 2, Vienna, 1900. H. v. EICKEN, *Mittelalterliche Weltanschauung*, 641–671, "Die Geschichtsschreibung." D. RINAUDO, *Gli studi storici nel medio evo*, Turin, 1883. R. TEUFFEL, *Individuelle Persönlichkeitsschilderung in dem deutschen Geschichtswesen des 10 und 11 Jahrhunderts*, Leipzig, 1914 (Beiträge zur Kulturgeschichte des Mittelalters und der Renaissance, XII). G. MISCH, *Geschichte der Autobiographie*, vol. I, Leipzig, 1907. R. JAHNCKE, *Guilelmus Neubrigensis: ein pragmatischer Geschichtsschreiber des zwölften Jahrhunderts*, Bonn, 1912. F. v. BEZOLD, "Astrologische Geschichtsconstruction im Mittelalter," in *Zeitschrift für Geschichtswissenschaft*, VIII (1892), 29. M. STEINSCHNEIDER, *Die Geschichtsliteratur der Juden in Druckwerken und Handschriften*, Frankfurt, 1905. For Byzantine historiography see K. KRUMBACHER, *Geschichte der byzantinischen Literatur*, 219–408. For Mohammedan historiography see outline X above.

Italian historiography. U. BALZANI, *Early chroniclers of Europe: Italy*. B. SCHMEIDLER, *Italienische Geschichtsschreiber des XII und XIII Jahrhunderts: ein Beitrag zur Kulturgeschichte*, Leipzig, 1909 (Leipziger historische Abhandlungen, 11). E. MICHAEL, *Salimbene und seine Chronik: eine Studie zur Geschichtschreibung des 13 Jahrhunderts*, Innsbruck, 1889. O. HOLDER-EGGER, "Zur Lebensgeschichte des Bruders Salimbene de Adam," in *Neues Archiv*, XXXVII (1911–1912), 165–218.

Otto of Freising. A. HOFMEISTER, "Studien über Otto von Freising," in *Neues Archiv*, XXXVII (1911–1912), 99–161, 635–768.

J. SCHMIDLIN, *Die geschichtsphilosophische und kirchenpolitische Weltanschauung Ottos von Freising*, Freiburg, 1906, part IV, 2–3, of no. 898 above. J. HASHAGEN, *Otto von Freising als Geschichtsphilosoph und Kirchenpolitiker*, Leipzig, 1900.

Historical criticism in the middle ages. MARIE SCHULZ, *Die Lehre von der historischen Methode bei den Geschichtschreibern des Mittelalters, VI–XIII Jahrhundert*, Berlin, 1909 (Abhandlungen zur mittleren und neueren Geschichte, edited by G. v. BELOW, 13). B. LASCH, *Das Erwachen und die Entwickelung der historischen Kritik im Mittelalter (vom VI–XII Jahrhundert)*, Breslau, 1887. ANITA M. CRELLIN, *Roger Bacon's historical scholarship, with a translation of part III of the Opus majus*, Berkeley, 1915, is a typewritten master's thesis deposited in the university of California library.

General and miscellaneous works on political thought. J. W. BURGESS, *The reconciliation of government with liberty*, New York, 1915. H. SIDGWICK, *Development of European polity*, London, 1903, lectures XIII–XXI. C. N. S. WOOLF, *Bartolus of Sassoferrato: his position in the history of medieval political thought*, Cambridge, 1913 (Thirwall prize essay, 1913). B. JARRETT, *Mediaeval socialism*, London, [n. d. ca. 1912] (The peoples books). TROELTSCH, *Die Soziallehren der christlichen Kirchen*, 178–358. E. MÜLLER, *Peter von Prezza, ein Publizist der Zeit des Interregnums*, Heidelberg, 1913 (Heidelberger Abhandlungen, 37). O. SCHILLING, *Naturrecht und Staat nach der Lehre der alten Kirche*, Paderborn, 1914 (Görresgesellschaft, Sektion für Rechts- und Sozialwissenschaft, 24). E. CROSA, *Il principio della sovranità popolare dal medioevo alla rivoluzione francese*, Turin, 1914 (Biblioteca di scienze moderne, 70). F. v. BEZOLD, "Die Lehre von der Volkssouveränität während des Mittelalters," in *Historische Zeitschrift*, XXXVI (1876), 313–367. E. BERNHEIM, "Politische Begriffe des Mittelalters im Lichte der Anschauungen Augustins," in *Deutsche Zeitschrift für Geschichtswissenschaft*, Neue Folge, I (1897), 1–23. V. BRANTS, *Esquisse des théories économiques professées par les écrivains des XIII^e et XIV^e siècle*, Louvain, 1895. IMBART DE LA TOUR, "L'évolution des idées sociales du XI^e au XII^e siècle," in *Séances et travaux de l'Académie des sciences morales*, Paris, 1898.

Imperial ideas in the middle ages. J. HARTUNG, *Die Lehre von der Weltherrschaft im Mittelalter*, Halle, 1909. F. KAMPERS, *Die deutsche Kaiseridee in Prophetie und Sage*, Munich, 1896 (2nd edition of *Kaiserprophetieen und Kaisersagen im Mittelalter*, Munich, 1895); see also his *Alexander der Grosse und die Idee des Weltimperiums in Prophetie und Sage*, Freiburg, 1901. M. POMTOW, *Über den Einfluss der altrömischen Vorstellungen vom Staat auf die Politik*

Kaiser Friedrichs I, Halle, 1885. A. HAUCK, *Der Gedanke der päpstlichen Weltherrschaft bis auf Bonifaz VIII*, Leipzig, 1904. For other literature see DAHLMANN-WAITZ, *Quellenkunde*, no. 1458.

Political theories of John of Salisbury. P. GENNRICH, *Die Staats- und Kirchenlehre Johannes von Salisbury*, Gotha, 1894. E. SCHUBERT, *Die Staatslehre Johanns von Salisbury*, Berlin, 1897. For other books on John of Salisbury see outline XVIII above.

Political theories of St. Thomas Aquinas. A. MALAGOLA, *Le teorie politiche di S. Tommaso d'Aquino*, Bologna, 1912. J. ZEILLER, *L'idée de l'état dans Saint Thomas d'Aquin*, Paris, 1910. J. A. ENDRES, "*De regimine principium* des hl. Thomas von Aquino," pp. 261–267 in *Supplementband* (1913) of no. **826** above. E. CRAHAY, *La politique de S. Thomas d'Aquin*, Louvain, 1896. J. J. BAUMANN, *Die Staatslehre des hl. Thomas von Aquino*, Leipzig, 1873. C. JOURDAIN, *La philosophie de Saint Thomas d'Aquin*, 2 vols., Paris, 1858. H. R. FEUGUERAY, *Essai sur les doctrines politique de Saint Thomas d'Aquin*, Paris, 1857. For general literature on St. Thomas Aquinas see outline XVII above.

Original sources. Almost all the important texts of medieval historians and chroniclers are edited in the large collections such as nos. **953**, **963**, **965ff.**, above. See especially the notes under nos. **968**, **978**, **988**, and **997** above. For guides to the works of individual authors see the bibliographies mentioned below. See also B. SCHMEIDLER, "Neuere Ausgaben mittelalterlicher Geschichtschreiber," in *Die Geisteswissenschaften*, Nov. 26, 1914.

Bibliographies. Practically all the bibliographies listed above, nos. **1–61**, are valuable for the study of this outline, but see especially MOLINIER, **21**, DAHLMANN-WAITZ, **28**, WATTENBACH and LORENZ, **29–30**, GROSS, **36**, and MÜHLBRECHT, no. **60** above.

XXVI. MEDIEVAL BOOKS AND LIBRARIES

A. OUTLINE

1. The importance of the invention of printing in the history of culture. The intellectual life of ancient and medieval times was conditioned in large measure by the lack of a cheap and rapid method of multiplying books.

2. Materials for book-making. Papyrus. Parchment and vellum. Waxed tablets. Paper. The introduction of paper into western Europe.

3. Writing implements. Stilus for waxed tablets. Reed (*calamus*), and quill (*penna*). Black ink (*atramentum* or *incaustum*).

Red ink (*minium* or *rubrica*). Gold and silver writing on purple vellum. Implements for ruling and erasing.

4. Forms of books. The roll (*liber, volumen, rotulus*). "Pipe roll." "Master of the Rolls." The codex was the ordinary style of book in the middle ages. Forms of public documents (diplomatics). Seals (sphragistics). Palimpsests.

5. Latin palaeography. Book-hand and cursive writing. Majuscule writing; capitals and uncials. Minuscule book-hands. The famous Caroline minuscule writing (see outline VIII above). Distinct characteristics of writing in different countries. Elegance of the book-hand in the twelfth century. Compressed "Gothic" writing of the thirteenth century. Increase of abbreviations and contractions. Tironian notes or short-hand. Official and legal scripts. Degeneracy of writing in the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries. Reversion of the humanists to older forms of medieval writing, which they called "Roman" script. The effect of style and habits of handwriting upon the art of printing.

6. The ornamentation of books. Illuminated manuscripts. Ornamental titles and initials, usually in red ink. Rubrics. Ornate margins and miniature paintings. The use of gold and silver in this art. Costly bindings.

7. The making of books and the book trade. Medieval scribes or copyists, especially monks and nuns. The *scriptorium* in a monastery. Correction of copies. The commonest errors in manuscripts. The scribes of official documents (see outline XIX above). Professional lay scribes under the jurisdiction of medieval universities. Beginnings of a book-trade in medieval university towns. The *stationarii* and *librarii*. The price of books.

8. The love of books in the middle ages. The collection of St. Louis (Louis IX of France) in the Sainte Chapelle. Richard of Bury (1287–1345), the typical bibliophile, author of the *Philobiblon*.

9. The censorship of books before the establishment of the Congregation of the Index in 1571. For the condemnation of books of Abelard and Aristotle see outlines XIV and XV above.

10. The beginnings of medieval libraries. The almost complete disappearance of ancient classical books and libraries. Foundation and growth of monastic libraries. Some famous early libraries were, Monte Cassino, Bobbio, Fleury, Cluny, St. Riquier, Corbie, Tours, St. Germain-des-Prés, Fulda, Reichenau, St. Gall, Canterbury, and York. Libraries attached to cathedrals.

11. Striking increase in the multiplication and collection of books in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries. Private collections

by kings and princes. The beginnings of college libraries in universities. Founders and patrons of medieval libraries. The libraries of Paris.

12. Arrangements and rules in medieval libraries. The *armarium* or book-press. The *armarius*. Need of a special room set aside for books. The lectern system. The stall system. Chained books. Sources of income. Donors of books. Readers in a medieval library. Library hours. The loan of books, especially to university students. Catalogues of medieval libraries. Their value as sources for the history of culture. The destruction of medieval books and libraries. The dispersion of books which survived.

13. Medieval archives. The papal archives in the Lateran palace. Remarkable preservation of the contents of English archives.

B. SPECIAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR READING

Short general account. MICHAEL, *Culturzustände des deutschen Volkes*, III, 1–62.

Books and their makers. G. H. PUTNAM, *Books and their makers during the middle ages*, 2 vols., New York, 1896–1897, vol. I, part I, "Books in manuscript." C. DAVENPORT, *The book: its history and development*, New York, 1908, chs. II–III. R. PIETSCHMANN, "Das Buch," in *Die Kultur der Gegenwart*, I, part I, 2nd edition, Berlin, 1912, 556–580. R. K. ROOT, "Publication before printing," in *Publications of the Modern language association*, XXVIII (1913), 417–431.

Writing in the middle ages. E. M. THOMPSON, *Greek and Latin palaeography*, chs. II–V, XIII–XIX; or see his chapter in *A companion to Latin studies*, 765–791. W. WATTENBACH, *Das Schriftwesen im Mittelalter*, 3rd edition, Leipzig, 1896.

Stationarii and librarii in Paris. P. DELALAIN, *Etude sur le libraire parisien du XIII^e^ au XV^e^ siècle*, d'après les documents publiés dans le Cartulaire de l'université de Paris, Paris, 1891. See also RASHDALL, *Universities*, I, 191, 415–418.

Censorship of books. G. H. PUTNAM, *The censorship of the church of Rome and its influence upon the production and distribution of literature*, 2 vols., New York and London, 1907, I, chs. I–III. For additional literature see his bibliography, pp. xvii–xxv of vol. I, and the books under outline XVI above.

Short popular sketches of medieval libraries. F. A. GASQUET, *The old English bible and other essays*, London, 1897, new edition, 1908, "Medieval monastic libraries," 1–34, "The monastic scriptorium," 35–53. J. W. CLARK, *Libraries in the medieval and renais-*

sance periods, Cambridge, 1894 (The Rede lecture, 1894). E. C. RICHARDSON, "The medieval library," in *Harper's monthly magazine*, CX (1905), 788–798. J. J. WALSH, *The thirteenth, greatest of centuries*, ch. IX, "Libraries and bookmen." E. A. SAVAGE, *The story of libraries and book-collecting*, London [no date; after 1908], especially chs. II and III. Article "Libraries," in *Encyclopaedia Britannica. Cambridge history of English literature*, IV (1909), ch. XIX, "Foundation of libraries," by J. B. MULLINGER. F. MILKAU, "Die Bibliotheken," in *Die Kultur der Gegenwart*, I, part I, 2nd edition, Berlin, 1912, 580–629.

Standard works on medieval libraries. J. W. CLARK, *The care of books, an essay on the development of libraries from the earliest times*, Cambridge, 1901, 2nd edition, 1902, new and cheaper edition, 1909. E. EDWARDS, *Memoirs of libraries*, 2 vols., London, 1859, I, book II; see also his *Libraries and founders of libraries*, London, 1864, chs. II–IV.

Original sources. The *Philobiblon* of RICHARD DE BURY, bishop of Durham, treasurer and chancellor of Edward III, edited and translated by E. C. THOMAS, London, 1888 (contains the Latin text also), the translation was issued separately under the title, *The love of books:* the *Philobiblon* of RICHARD DE BURY, London, 1902, 2nd edition, 1903 (The king's classics). RICHARD DE BURY, *Il Philobiblon: testo, note illustrative, traduzione e documenti*, edited by M. BESSO, Rome, 1914.

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General books. See the literature on the largest libraries in the world, nos. **3–6** above; on palaeography, diplomatics, and sphragistics, nos. **212–249** above; also the pictorial works, nos. **187–207**, above, particularly **187, 188,** and **207.** Many of the general histories of literature, nos. **782–814** above, are useful; see especially **785.**

Books in the middle ages. A. CIM, *Le livre*, 5 vols., Paris, 1905–1908. E. EGGER, *Histoire du livre depuis ses origines jusqu'à nos jours*, 2nd edition, Paris, 1880. M. P. LOUISY, *Le livre et les arts qui s'y rattachent, depuis les origines jusqu'à la fin du XVIII^e siècle*, Paris, 1886. G. MEIER, *Die Bücher im Mittelalter*, Einsiedeln, 1899 (extract from Pädagogische Blätter). V. GARDTHAUSEN, *Griechische Palaeographie*, I, *Das Buchwesen im Altertum und im byzantinischen Mittelalter*, 2nd edition, Leipzig, 1911. F. MADAN, *Books in manuscript: a short introduction to their study and use, with a chapter on records*, London, 1893.

I. TAYLOR, *A history of the transmission of ancient books to modern times*, Liverpool, 1889 (first written about 1828). S. R. MAITLAND, *The dark ages*. F. W. HALL, *A companion to classical texts*, Oxford, 1913, ch. IV, "The history of Latin texts from the age of Charlemagne to the Italian Renaissance," ch IX, "The nomenclature of Greek and Latin manuscripts with the names of former possessors." C. I., and MARY A. ELTON, *The great book-collectors*, London, 1893, chs. II–V. W. BLADES, *Books in chains and other bibliographical papers*, London, 1892 (Book lovers' library).

Book-making and book trade. A. A. BJÖRNBO, "Ein Beitrag zum Werdegang der mittelalterlichen Pergamenthandschriften," in *Zeitschrift für Bücherfreunde*, XI (1907–1908). J. LOUBIER, "Die Herstellung der mittelalterlichen Bücher nach einer Miniatur des 12 Jahrhunderts," *ibid.*, XII (1908–1909). A. KIRCHHOFF, *Die Handschriftenhändler des Mittelalters*, Leipzig, 1852, 2nd edition, 1853, with additions in J. PETZOLDTS, *Anzeiger für Bibliographie und Bibliothekwissenschaft*, 1854. R. FOCKE and others, *Das Buchgewerbe und die Kultur*, six lectures, Leipzig, 1907. K. J. BENZIGER, *Geschichte des Buchgewerbes im fürstlichen Benediktinerstife von Einsiedeln*, Einsiedeln, 1912. G. J. GRAY, *The earlier Cambridge stationers and bookbinders and the first Cambridge printer*, Oxford University Press, for the Bibliographical society, 1914, part I, "Stationarii or stationers to the fifteenth century." M. SPIRGATIS, *Personalverzeichniss der Pariser Universität von 1464 und die darin aufgeführten Handschriften- und Pergamenthändler*, Leipzig, 1888. E. KIRCHNER, *Das Papier*, Biberach, 1897.

Illuminated manuscripts. J. A. HERBERT, *Illuminated manuscripts*, New York, 1911. J. H. MIDDLETON, *Illuminated manuscripts in classical and mediaeval times*, Cambridge, 1892. G. VITZTHUM, *Die Pariser Miniaturmalerei von der Zeit des hl. Ludwig bis zu Philipp von Valois und ihr Verhältniss zur Malerei in Nordwesteuropa*, Leipzig, 1907. A. MOLINIER, *Les manuscrits et les miniatures*, Paris, 1892. H. M. R. MARTIN, *Les peintures de manuscrits et la miniatures en France*, Paris, 1909 (Les grands artistes). A. LABITTE, *L'art de l'enluminure: métier, histoire, pratique*, Paris, 1914. J. BRADLEY, *Illuminated manuscripts*, Chicago, 1909; see also his *Dictionary of miniaturists, illuminators, calligraphers and copyists*, 3 vols., London, 1887–1889. W. DE GRAY BIRCH and H. JENNER, *Early drawings and illuminations: an introduction to the study of illustrated manuscripts*, London, 1897. E. M. THOMPSON, *English illuminated manuscripts*, London, 1895. H. SHAW, *A handbook of the art of illumination in the middle ages*, London, 1866. M. D. WYATT, *The art of illuminating as practiced in Europe from the earliest times*,

London, 1866. H. N. HUMPHREYS, *Illuminated books of the middle ages*, London, 1848. A. MERTEN, *Die Buchmalerie in St. Gallen vom 9 bis zum 11 Jahrhundert*, Leipzig, 1912. A. NIEDLING, *Bücher-ornamentik in Miniaturen, Initialen usw., in historischer Darstellung vom 9–18 Jahrhundert*, 2nd edition, Weimar, 1897. A. LECOY DE LA MARCHE, *Les manuscrits et la miniature*, new edition, Paris [1884] (Bibliothèque de l'enseignement des beaux-arts); in his *L'art d'enluminer*, Paris, 1890, he prints, with commentary, an ancient Latin tract entitled, *De arte illuminandi*, dating 1350–1400 A.D. F. WICKHOFF, *Beschriebenes Verzeichniss der illuminierten Handschriften in Oesterreich*, 5 vols., Leipzig, 1905–1910.

Facsimiles of illuminated manuscripts. *Reproductions de manuscrits et miniatures de la Bibliothèque nationale*, published under the direction of, and with notices by H. OMONT, Paris, 1901ff.; see also his *Listes des recueils de fac-similés et des reproductions de manuscrits conservés à la Bibliothèque nationale*, 2nd edition, Paris, 1912. *Société française pour la publication des livres à miniatures*, Paris, 1910ff. (interrupted in 1914). *Schools of illumiiation: reproductions from manuscripts in the British Museum*, part I, *Hiberno-Saxon and early English schools, A. D. 700–1000*, London, 1915, II, *English, 12th and 13th centuries*, 1915. *Reproductions from illuminated manuscripts in the British Museum*, by G. F. WARNER, 3 series, London, 1907–1908. F. G. KENYON, *Facsimiles of biblical manuscripts in the British Museum*, London, 1900. *Collection d'éditions photographiques de la Bibliothèque royale de Bruxelles. Le musée des enluminures*, Haarlem, 1904ff. L. v. KOBELL, *Kunstvolle Miniaturen mit Initialen aus Hss. des 4–16 Jahrhunderts*, 2nd edition, Munich, 1892 (from manuscripts in Munich). A. BOINET, *La miniature carolingienne*, Paris, 1913. A. DE BASTARD, *Peintures et ornements des manuscrits depuis le 14e siècle jusqu'au fin du 16e*, 2 vols., Paris, 1832ff. J. O. WESTWOOD, *Palaeographia sacra pictoria: being a series of 50 illustrations of the ancient versions of the Bible*, copied from illuminated manuscripts executed between the fourth and sixteenth centuries, London, 1843. J. P. MORGAN, *Catalogue of manuscripts of:* edited by M. R. JAMES with many plates, New York, 1906. *Illustrations from one hundred manuscripts in the library of Henry Yates Thompson*, consisting of 82 plates illustrating 16 manuscripts of English origin from the XIIth to the XVth centuries, London, 1914. L. DOREZ, *Les manuscrits à peintures de la bibliothèque de lord Leicester à Holkham Hall*, Norfolk, Paris, 1908. P. DURRIEU, *Le très riches heures du duc de Berri*, Plon, 1914. For a bibliography of other reproductions of individual manuscripts containing miniatures, see J. A. HERBERT, *Illuminated manuscripts*, 333–337. Most of the gen-

eral manuals on illuminated manuscripts also contain good facsimiles. See also nos. 230–237 above.

Waxed tablets in the middle ages. EDÉLSTAND DU MÉRIL, "Le l'usage des tablettes en cire," in no. 914 above. L. SERBAT, *Tablettes à écrire du XIV^e siècle*, Paris, 1914 (extract of Mémoires de la Société nationale des antiquaires de France, LXXIII).

Medieval libraries. F. S. MERRYWEATHER, *Bibliomania in the middle ages, with anecdotes illustrating the history of the monastic libraries of Great Britain*, London, 1849, reprinted with an introduction by C. ORR, New York, 1900. E. A. SAVAGE, *Old English libraries: the making, collection, and use of books during the middle ages*, London and Chicago, 1912 (Antiquaries books). S. GIBSON, *Some Oxford libraries*, Oxford University Press, 1914. M. BEAZLEY, "History of the chapter library of Canterbury cathedral," in *Transactions of the Bibliographical society*, London, VIII (1904–1906), 113–185. M. R. JAMES, "On the abbey of S. Edmund at Bury," in *Cambridge antiquarian society*, Cambridge, 1895. D. R. PHILLIPS, *The romantic history of the monastic libraries of Wales: from the fifth to the sixteenth centuries, Celtic and mediaeval periods*, London, 1912. E. BEGNI, *The Vatican*. E. MÜNTZ and P. FABRE, *La bibliothèque du Vatican au XV^e siècle*, Paris, 1887, part 48 of no. 887 above. H. OMONT, *Recherches sur la bibliothèque de l'église cathédrale de Beauvais*, Paris, 1914 (extract from Memoires de l'Académie des inscriptions et belles-lettres, XL). L. DELISLE, *Recherches sur l'ancienne bibliothèque de Corbie*, Paris, 1860. J. A. B. MORTREUIL, *L'ancienne bibliothèque de l'abbaye St. Victor* [of Marseilles], Marseilles, 1854, prints a list of books of this monastery, 1195–1198 A.D., which includes several of the Latin classics. For the transmission of classical books see outline XVIII above. ELLEN JÖRGENSEN, "Les bibliothèques danoises au moyen âge," in *Nordisk Tidskrift för Bok- och Biblioteksväsen*, 1915. K. O. MEINSMA, *Middeleeuwsche Bibliotheken*, Zutphen, 1904. P. LEHMANN, "Johannes Sichardus und die von ihm benutsten Bibliotheken und Handschriften," in *Quellen und Untersuchungen zur lateinischen Philologie des Mittelalters*, IV, part I. A. CZERNY, *Die Bibliothek des Chorherrenstiftes St. Florian: Geschichte und Beschreibung, ein Beitrag zur Kulturgeschichte Oesterreichs*, Linz, 1874. R. P. M. ZIEGELBAUER, *Historia rei literariae Ordinis S. Benedicti*, 4 vols., 1754, vol. I, on Benedictine schools and libraries. C. SCHMIDT, "Livres et bibliothèques à Strasbourg au moyen-âge," in *Annales de l'est*, Nancy, VII (1893), 538–593. L. TRAUBE, "Die Bibliotheken," in his *Vorlesungen und Abhandlungen*, I, 103–127. E. G. VOGEL, "Einiges über Amt und Stellung des Armarius in den abendländischen Klöstern des Mittelalters," in *Serapeum*, IV (1843), 17–29, 33–43, 49–55.

Libraries in medieval Paris. A. FRANKLIN, *Les anciennes bibliothèques de Paris*, 3 vols., Paris, 1867–1873 (Histoire générale de Paris); his *La Sorbonne* is devoted in large part to the library. L. DELISLE, *Le cabinet des manuscrits de la Bibliothèque nationale: étude sur la formation de ce dépôt, comprenant les éléments d'une histoire de la calligraphie, de la miniature, de la reliure, et du commerce des livres à Paris avant l'invention de l'imprimerie*, 4 vols., Paris, 1868–1881 (Histoire générale de Paris). H. MARCEL and others, *La Bibliothèque nationale*, 2 vols., Paris, 1907. T. MORTREUIL, *La Bibliothèque nationale*, Paris, 1878. A. FRANKLIN, *Histoire de la bibliothèque de l'abbaye de Saint-Victor à Paris*, Paris, 1865; see also his *Recherches sur la bibliothèque de médecine de Paris*, Paris, 1864; and his *Recherches sur la bibliothèque publique de Notre-Dame de Paris au XIII^e siècle*, Paris, 1863. H. MEYER, "Mittelalterliche Bibliotheksordnungen für Paris und Erfurt," in *Archiv für Kulturgeschichte*, XI (1913), 152–165. See also the general books on medieval Paris under outline XIII above.

Catalogues of medieval libraries. T. GOTTLIEB, *Über mittelalterliche Bibliotheken*, Leipzig, 1890, additions by G. MEIER, in *Centralblatt für Bibliothekswesen*, XX (1903), 16ff. G. BECKER, *Catalogi bibliothecarum antiqui*, Bonn, 1885, with additions by G. MEIER, in *Centralblatt für Bibliothekswesen*, II (1885), 239–241. M. B. JAMES, *The ancient libraries of Canterbury and Dover: the catalogues of the libraries of Christ Church priory and St. Augustine's abbey at Canterbury and of St. Martin's priory at Dover*, now first collected and published with an introduction and identifications of the extant remains, Cambridge, 1903; see also his "The catalogue of the library of the Augustinian friars at York, now first edited from the manuscript at Trinity college, Dublin," in *Fasciculus Ionni Willis Clark dicatus*, Cambridge, 1909, 2–96. F. EHRLE, "Un catalogo fin qui sconosciuto della biblioteca papale d'Avignone (1407)," *ibid.*, 97–114. H. DEGERING-BERLIN, "Der Katalog der Bibliothek des Klosters Marienfeld vom Jahre 1185," in *Beiträge zum Bibliotheks- und Buchwesen Paul Schwenke gewidmet*, Berlin, 1913, 53–64. A. DANTIER, *Les monastères bénédictins d'Italie*, Paris, 1866, describes the contents of the library of Monte Cassino. For Cluny, see SACKUR, *Die Cluniacenser*. L. DELISLE, "Documents sur les livres et les bibliothèques au moyen âge," in *Bibliothèque de l'Ecole des chartes*, 3rd series, I (1849), 216–231. *Catalogi veteres librorum, ecclesiae cathedralis Dunelm*, edited by B. BOTFIELD, *Surtees society*, VII (1840); see also his *Notes on cathedral libraries of England*, London, 1849. For other catalogues see *Centralblatt für Bibliothekswesen*, E. EDWARDS, *Memoirs of libraries*, I, and nos. 951–952 above.

Medieval archives. See the literature under outline XIX above, especially BRESSLAU and GIRY, nos. 239–340 above. For English archives see GROSS, no. 36 above, pp. 77ff.

Bibliographies. A. HORTZSCHANSKY, *Bibliographie des Bibliotheks- und Buchwesens,* Leipzig, 1905ff., in *Beiheften* of *Centralblatt für Bibliothekswesen.* E. M. THOMPSON, *Greek and Latin palaeography,* 571–583. PUTNAM, *Books and their makers,* I, xvii–xxviii. J. A. HERBERT, *Illuminated manuscripts,* 331–340. E. A. SAVAGE, *Old English libraries,* 286–290.

XXVII. MEDIEVAL ART

A. OUTLINE

1. In the nineteenth century the prejudice against medieval art began to disappear. Today the word "Gothic," as applied in art, has lost all the connotations of barbarism which it suggested to the architects of the Italian renaissance. Importance of ecclesiastical and military architecture in medieval art.

2. The evolution of Christian art in the Greek East, especially in Constantinople. The influence of Byzantine art in the Latin West, especially in Rome and Ravenna. The basilica. For Rome see outline III above, for Ravenna, outline II in part II above, for Byzantine art, outline III in part II above.

3. Merovingian and Carolingian art. Paucity of remains from the Merovingian period. Byzantine influences in Carolingian art. For Charlemagne's chapel in Aix-la-Chapelle and his other buildings see outline VIII above.

4. Romanesque art which culminated in the eleventh and early twelfth century. Compare with the evolution of Romanic languages. The finest specimens of romanesque ecclesiastical architecture are abbeys, not cathedrals. The French schools and the German and Lombard schools of romanesque art. The Norman genius exemplified in art. The abbey of Mont-Saint-Michel.

5. Gothic art, the chief glory of the remarkable civilization of the twelfth and thirteenth centuries. The characteristic elements of the Gothic style are: the pointed arch, the flying buttress, and an original style of ornamentation, derived from nature and not from tradition. Northern France was the chief center of Gothic art.

6. Chief Gothic monuments in France. Notre Dame and the Sainte Chapelle of Paris. Amiens. Chartres. Rheims. Beauvais. For the churches of Paris see outline XIII above.

7. Architects and workmen employed in building medieval cathedrals. Masters of masonry. Plans of medieval buildings.

The cost of cathedrals and the methods of raising funds. It usually required many decades and sometimes several centuries to build the large cathedrals, and most of them were left incomplete.

8. Main features of a Gothic cathedral. Nave, aisle, transept, choir, apse, ambulatory, altar, chapel, ribbed vaulting, triforium, clerestory, façade, tower, porch, spire, flying buttress, rose-window, chapter house.

9. Symbolism in medieval art. Educative value of the elaborate medieval cathedrals, which served as important social as well as religious centers in medieval towns.

10. Civil and military architecture. For the latter see outline XXVII of part II above.

11. Decorative arts. The sudden improvement of sculpture in the twelfth century employed chiefly in the internal and external decoration of cathedrals. The "beau Dieu d'Amiens." Gargoyles and grotesque figures on church buildings. Stained glass windows. The wonderful glass of Chartres cathedral and of the Sainte Chapelle in Paris. Mural painting.

12. The minor arts and crafts in the middle ages, carving, metal-work, jewelry, enameling, tapestry-work, needle-work, etc. For the art of illuminating manuscripts see the previous outline.

13. Music. For Gregorian music see outline V in part II above. Music as one of the seven liberal arts in the schools and universities. Musical theory and notation. The thirteenth and fourteenth century witnessed the highest development of medieval music, and its chief center was France. Musical instruments. For the music of the troubadours see outline XXIV above.

B. Special Recommendations for Reading

Brief general accounts. MILMAN, *History of Latin Christianity*, IX, 267–342. LAVISSE, *Histoire de France*, II, part I, 251–255, 349–356, part II, 399–411; III, part I, 323–327, part II, 413–429. LAVISSE and RAMBAUD, *Histoire générale*, II, 580–595. G. GRÖBER, *Grundriss* der romanischen Philologie, vol. II, part III, 533–549. S. REINACH, *Apollo*, chs. XI–XIII.

General works on medieval art. C. ENLART, *Manuel d'archéologie française;* see also his paper on "The teaching of mediaeval archaeology," in *Annual report of the American historical association* (1909), 105–114, and the February, 1914, number of the *Revue de synthèse historique*, which is devoted entirely to the history of art. W. R. LETHABY, *Mediaeval art from the peace of the church to the eve of the renaissance, 312–1350*, London, 1904, new edition, revised, 1912, is much inferior to the accurate volumes of ENLART, which,

however, are very detailed and somewhat difficult for American students. L. GONSE, *L'art gothique; l'architecture, la peinture, le décor, la sculpture*, Paris, no date, is better than LETHABY.

Brief sketches of medieval architecture. A. D. F. HAMLIN, *A text-book of the history of architecture*, chs. X–XIX. A. MICHEL, "L'art 'Gothique' oeuvre de France," in *Revue de deux mondes*, August, 1917. R. A. CRAM, and others, *Six lectures on architecture*, Chicago University Press, 1917 (the first lecture is by CRAM, "The beginnings of Gothic art.")

Byzantine and Romanesque architecture. T. G. JACKSON, *Byzantine and romanesque architecture*, 2 vols., Cambridge University Press, 1913. G. B. BROWN, *From schola to catnedral: a study of early Christian architecture and its relation to the life of the church*, Edinburgh, 1886.

Standard works on Gothic architecture. T. G. JACKSON, *Gothic architecture in France, England, and Italy*, 2 vols., Cambridge University Press, 1915. A. K. PORTER, *Medieval architecture: its origins and development*, 2 vols., New York, 1909, new edition, 1912, is not limited to Gothic architecture. C. H. MOORE, *The development and character of Gothic architecture*, London, 1890, 2nd edition, enlarged, 1899, reprinted, 1904; and his *The medieval church architecture of England*, London, 1912. F. BOND, *An introduction to English church architecture, from the eleventh to the sixteenth century*, 2 vols., London and New York, 1913.

Symbolism in Gothic art. E. MÂLE, *L'art religieux du XIII^e^ siècle en France: étude sur l'iconographie du moyen âge et sur ses sources d'inspiration*, 3rd edition, revised, 1910, translated by DORA NUSSEY, *Religious art in France*, London and New York, 1913; and his *L'art religieux de la fin du moyen âge en France*, Paris, 1908 (see the review of this work in *Revue de synthèse historique*, XVIII, 1908, 311–330). Y. HIRN, *The sacred shrine*. J. RUSKIN, *The nature of Gothic: a chapter from The stones of Venice*, with a preface by W. MORRIS, Orpington, 1899.

Mont-Saint-Michel and Chartres. H. ADAMS, *Mont-Saint-Michel and Chartres*, with an introduction by R. A. CRAM, Boston and New York, 1913. E. CORROYER, *Description de l'abbaye Mont-Saint-Michel et de ses abords*, Paris, 1877, has 130 illustrations. P. GONT, *Le mont Saint-Michel: histoire de l'abbaye et de la ville*, Paris, 1911. MARGARET and E. MARRIAGE, *The sculptures of Chartres cathedral*, Cambridge, 1909, with text in both English and French.

The Gothic revival. C. L. EASTLAKE, *A history of the Gothic revival: an attempt to show how the taste for mediaeval architecture which lingered in England during the two last centuries has since been*

encouraged and developed, London, 1872. R. A. CRAM, *The Gothic quest*, New York, 1907.

Thirteenth century art in Italy. H. D. SEDGWICK, *Italy in the thirteenth century*, I, chs. XIX–XXI, XXIV, II, chs. XII–XV.

Original sources. *Recueil de textes relatifs à l'histoire de l'architecture et à la condition des architectes en France, au moyen âge, XI^e–XII^e siècles*, edited by V. MORTET, Paris, 1911, part 44 of no. 968 above.

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General books. See the pictorial and archaeological works, nos. 187–207, 299–302 above; also nos. 108 and 111. On military architecture, see outline XXVII in part II above; on renaissance art, especially painting, outline XXXIII in part II above. Some works on Christian iconography are listed under outline V above. No attempt is made in the bibliography below to include works on early Christian art.

General histories of art. A. MICHEL, *Histoire de l'art depuis les temps chrétiens jusqu'à nos jours*, vols. I–V, Paris, 1905–1913, vol. II, *L'art gothique*. W. LÜBKE, *Grundriss der Kunstgeschichte*, 13th edition, 5 vols., Stuttgart, 1904–1907, 14th edition, 1908ff., translated by R. STURGIS, *Outlines of the history of art*, 2 vols., New York, 1904. A. SPRINGER, *Handbuch der Kunstgeschichte*, 5 vols., 8th edition, Leipzig, 1905–1909, vol. II, *Das Mittelalter*. G. CAROTTI, *A history of art*, revised by Mrs. A. STRONG, vols. I, II, New York, 1908–1909, vol. II, *The middle ages*. J. PIJOAN Y SOTERAS, *Historia del arte: el arte al traves de la historia*, vols., I–III, Barcelona [1914ff.]. M. CARRIERE, *Die Kunst im Zusammenhang der Culturgeschichte*, 3rd edition, revised, 5 vols., Leipzig, 1877–1886, vol. III, *Mittelalter*. C. WOERMANN, *Geschichte der Kunst aller Zeiten und Völker*, 3 vols., Leipzig, 1901–1911, vol. II, *Die Kunst der christlichen Völker bis zum Ende des 15 Jahrhunderts*. H. KNACKFUSS and M. E. ZIMMERMANN, *Allgemeine Kunstgeschichte*, 3 vols., Bielefeld, 1897–1903, vol. II, *Kunstgeschichte der Gotik und Renaissance*.

S. SPOONER, *A biographical dictionary of the fine arts*, 2 vols., New York, 1865. E. BÉNÉZIT, *Dictionnaire critique et documentaire des peintres, sculpteurs, dessinateurs et graveurs de tous les temps et de tous les pays*, Paris, 1911ff. U. THIEME and F. BECKER, *Allgemeines Lexikon der bildenden Künstler von der Antike bis zur Gegenwart*, Leipzig, 1907ff. (in process).

Medieval art. A. VENTURI, *Storia dell' arte italiana*, vol. I–VII, Milan, 1901–1915, vols. II–IV are especially valuable for the middle ages. F. X. KRAUS, *Geschichte der christlichen Kunst*, 3 vols., Frei-

burg, 1896–1908, vol. II, *Mittelalter*. C. SCHNAASE, *Geschichte der bildenden Künste im Mittelalter*, 7 vols., Düsseldorf, 1843–1864, 2nd edition, 8 vols., 1865–1879. R. BÜRKNER, *Geschichte der kirchlichen Kunst*, Freiburg, 1903, 3rd edition, Göttingen, 1907. H. v. D. GABELENTZ, *Die kirchliche Kunst im italienischen Mittelalter: ihre Beziehungen zu Kultur und Glaubenslehre*, Strassburg, 1907. A. N. DIDRON, *Manuel d'iconographie chrétien*, Paris, 1843, translated by E. J. MILLINGTON, *Christian iconography: history of Christian art in the middle ages*, 2 vols., London, 1851. W. H. GOODYEAR, *Roman and mediaeval art*, New York, 1897, is a brief text-book.

Byzantine art. O. M. DALTON, *Byzantine art and archaeology*, Oxford, 1911. C. DIEHL, *Manuel d'art Byzantin*, Paris, 1910. J. STRZYGOWSKI, *Orient oder Rom: Beiträge zur Geschichte der spätantiken und frühchristlichen Kunst*, Leipzig, 1901. A. J. GAYET, *L'art byzantin d'après les monuments de l'Italie, de l'Istrie et de la Dalmatie*, 3 vols., Paris [1901–1907]. C. BAYET, *L'art Byzantin*, Paris, 1883, new edition, 1892.

General histories of architecture. R. STURGIS and A. L. FROTHINGHAM, *A history of architecture*, vols., I–IV, 1906–1915, vols. III–IV on Gothic architecture. F. M. SIMPSON, *A history of architectural development*, 3 vols., London, 1905–1911, reprinted 1913, vol. II, *Medieval*. J. FERGUSSON, *A history of architecture in all countries*, 3rd edition, revised, 5 vols., London, 1891–1893, vols. I–II, *Ancient and mediaeval architecture* (Porter says this work does not deserve its good reputation). C. O. HARTMANN, *Die Baukunst in ihrer Entwicklung von der Urzeit bis zur Gegenwart*, vols. I–III, Leipzig, 1910–1911, vol. II, *Die Baukunst des Mittelalters und der Renaissance*. R. BORRMANN and J. NEUWIRTH, *Geschichte der Baukunst*, vol. II, *Die Baukunst des Mittelalters*, by J. NEUWIRTH, Leipzig, 1904. R. STURGIS, *A dictionary of architecture and building*, 3 vols., New York, 1901–1902.

R. STURGIS, *European architecture: an historical study*, New York, 1896, new edition under the title, *A short history of architecture*, 1908; and B. FLETCHER, *A history of architecture on the comparative method, for the student, craftsman, and amateur*, London, 1896, 5th edition, revised, 1905, are convenient text-books.

Medieval architecture. G. DEHIO and G. v. BEZOLD, *Die kirchliche Baukunst des Abendlandes*, 2 vols. of text and an atlas in 5 vols. with 601 plates, Stuttgart, 1887–1901. E. S. PRIOR, *English mediaeval architecture*, London, 1900. V. MORTET, *Mélanges d'archéologie (antiquité, romaine, et moyen âge)*, 2nd series: *Histoire de l'architecture*, Paris, 1915. Mrs. ELIZABETH (ROBINS) PENNELL, *French cathedrals, monasteries, abbeys, and sacred sites of France*,

New York, 1909. C. WARD, *Mediaeval church vaulting*, Princeton University Press, 1915. W. R. LETHABY, *Westminster abbey and the kings' craftsmen: a study of mediaeval building*, New York, 1906. C. E. NORTON, *Historical studies of church-building in the middle ages: Venice, Sienna, Florence*, New York, 1880. V. LAMPÉREZ, *Historia de la arquitectura cristiana española en la edad media*, Madrid, 1908–1909. G. HUMANN, *Die Beziehungen der Handschriftenornamentik zur romanischen Baukunst erläutert*, Strasburg, 1907. C. A. AUBER, *De l'an mille et de son influence prétendue sur l'architecture religieuse*, Paris, 1861.

Romanesque architecture. A. K. PORTER, *Lombard architecture*, 4 vols., Yale University Press, 1915–1917. G. T. RIVOIRA, *Lombardic architecture: its origin, development, and derivatives*, translated from the Italian by G. MCN. RUSHFORTH, London, 1910. R. CATTANEO, *L'architecttura in Italia del secolo VI al mille circa*, Venice, 1888, translated by the Countess ISABEL CURTIS, *Architecture in Italy from the sixth to the eleventh century*, London, 1896. V. RUPRICH-ROBERT, *L'architecture normande en Normandie et en Angleterre*, 2 vols., Paris [1884–1889]. C. MARTIN, *l'Art roman in France: l'architecture et la décoration*, Paris, 1910. R. DE LASTEYRIE, *L'architecture religieuse en France à l'époque romane*, Paris, 1912. J. BAUM, *Romanische Baukunst in Frankreich*, Stuttgart, 1910, edited in English by the author, *Romanesque architecture in France*, London, 1912. E. CORROYER, *L'architecture romane*, Paris, 1888. EDITH A. BROWN, *Romanesque architecture*, New York, 1910; and her *Norman architecture*, London, 1907. L. CLOQUET, *Les cathedrales et basiliques latines, byzantines, et romanes du monde catholique*, Lille, 1912.

Gothic architecture. E. VIOLLET-LE-DUC, *Dictionnaire raisonné de l'architecture française du XIe au XVIe siècle*, 10 vols., Paris, 1854–1868, there is an index to this work by H. SABINE, *Table analytique*, Paris, 1889; see also his *Entretiens sur l'architecture*, 2 vols., Paris, 1863–1872, translated by B. BUCKNALL, *Discourses on architecture*, 2 vols., London and Boston, 1875. T. F. BUMPUS, *A guide to Gothic architecture*, New York, 1914. R. A. CRAM, *Heart of Europe*, New York, 1915. H. STEIN, *Les architects des cathédrales gothiques: étude critique*, Paris [1909]. L. GILLET, *Histoire artistiques des ordres mendiants, études sur l'art religieux en Europe du XIIIe au XVIIe siècle*, Paris, 1912. E. CORROYER, *L'architecture gothique*, Paris, 1891, translated by W. ARMSTRONG, *Gothic architecture*, New York, 1893. W. H. GOODYEAR, *Vertical curves and other architectural refinements in the Gothic cathedrals*, New York, 1904; see also his *Illustrated catalogue of photographs and surveys of*

architectural refinements in medieval buildings, Edinburgh, 1905, which contains a bibliography on this subject.

A. RODIN, *Les cathédrales de France*, Paris, 1914. C. MARTIN, *L'art gothique en France*, Paris, 1911, plates without text. E. A. LEFÈVRE-PONTALIS, *L'architecture religieuse dans l'ancien diocèse de Soissons au XI^e^ et au XII^e^ siècle*, 2 vols., Paris, 1894–1896. ELSIE W. ROSE, *Cathedrals and cloisters of northern France*, 2 vols., London, 1914; and her *Cathedrals and cloisters of the Isle de France*, 2 vols., New York, 1910. F. MILTOUN, *The cathedrals of northern France*, London, 1904. T. F. BUMPUS, *The cathedrals of northern France*, New York, 1910; and his *The cathedrals of southern France*, New York, 1913.

F. BOND, *Gothic architecture in England*, London, 1905; and his *Cathedrals of England and Wales*, London, 1899, 4th edition, 1912. E. S. PRIOR, *The cathedral builders in England*, London, 1905; and his *A history of Gothic art in England*, London, 1900. H. M. PRATT, *The cathedral churches of England*, London, 1910. G. H. WEST, *Gothic architecture in England and France*, London, 1911.

W. W. COLLINS, *Cathedral cities of Italy*, New York, 1911. H. HARTUNG, *Ziele und Ergebnisse der italienischen Gotik*, Berlin, 1912.

W. W. COLLINS, *Cathedral cities of Spain*, New York, 1909. C. RUDY, *The cathedrals of northern Spain*, Boston, 1906. G. E. STREET, *Some account of Gothic architecture in Spain*, 2nd edition, London, 1869, edited by GEORGIANA G. KING, 2 vols., London, 1914.

Great monuments of Gothic architecture. L. DEMAISON, *Album de la cathédrale de Reims*, 2 vols., [Paris, 1902]; see also his smaller, *La cathédrale de Reims: son histoire, les dates de sa construction*, Caen, 1902. L. BRÉHIER, *La cathédrale de Reims*, Paris, 1916, supplemented by the author's "L'histoire de France à la façade de la cathédrale de Reims," in *Revue historique*, CXXII (1916), 288–300. C. SCHAEFER, *Die Kathedrale von Reims*, Berlin, 1898. E. MOREAU-NÉLATON, *La cathédrale de Reims*, Paris [1915]. G. DURAND, *Monographie de l'église Notre Dame, cathédrale d'Amiens*, 2 vols., Amiens and Paris, 1903; and his *Description abrégée de la cathédrale d'Amiens*, Amiens, 1904. E. LEFÈVRE-PONTALIS, *Les architects et la construction des cathédrales de Chartres*, Paris, 1905. A. GERMAIN, *La cathédrale de Chartres*, Paris, 1914. C. HEADLAM, *The story of Chartres*, London, 1902 (Mediaeval towns). E. POTTET, *La Sainte-Chapelle de Paris, histoire, archéologie (1246–1912)*, Paris, 1913. For other books on the churches of Paris see outline XIII above.

Sculpture. A. GARDNER, *French sculpture of the 13th century*, London, 1915. LOUISE PILLION, *Les sculpteurs français du XIII^e^*

siècle, Paris [1912]. R. DE LAYSTERIE, *Etudes sur la sculpture française au moyen âge*, Paris, 1902 (Monuments et mémoires publiés par l'Académie des inscriptions et belles-lettres, VIII). L. G. ADAMS, *Recueil de sculptures gothiques en France depuis le onzième jusqu'au quinzième siècle*, Paris, 1866, 2 vols. of plates, without text. P. VITRY and G. BRIÈRE, *Documents de sculpture française*, vol. II, *Moyen* âge, second edition, Paris [1906]. *Le musée de sculpture comparée du palais du Trocadéro du XI au XV siècle*, 3 vols., Paris, no date. E. S. PRIOR and A. GARDNER, *An account of mediaeval figure sculpture in England*, London, 1912. M. HASAK, *Geschichte der deutschen Bildhauerkunst im 13ten Jahrhundert*, Berlin, 1899. W. H. v. D. MUELBE, *Die Darstellung des jüngsten Gerichts an den romanischen und gotischen Kirchenportalen Frankreichs*, Leipzig, 1911. A. MARQUAND and A. L. FROTHINGHAM, *History of sculpture*.

Stained glass. H. ARNOLD, *Stained glass of the middle ages in England and France;* painted by L. B. SAINT, New York, 1913. A. J. DE H. BUSHNELL, *Storied windows, a traveller's introduction to the study of old church glass from the twelfth century to the renaissance, especially in France*, London, 1914. H. OIDTMANN, *Die Glasmalerei*, 2 vols., Cologne, 1896–1898.

Arts and crafts. Mrs. JULIA ADDISON, *Arts and crafts in the middle ages*, Boston, 1908. A. D. F. HAMLIN, *A history of ornament, ancient and medieval*, New York, 1916. J. TAVENOR-PERRY, *Didanderie: a history and description of medieval art work in copper, brass and bronze*, London, 1910. G. B. BROWN, *The arts in early England* [to 1066], 2 vols., London, 1903. M. KEMMERICH, *Die frühmittelalterliche Porträtplastik in Deutschland bis zum Ende des XIII Jahrhunderts*, Leipzig, 1909. E. VIOLLET-LE-DUC, *Dictionnaire raisonné du mobilier français de l'époque carlovingienne à la renaissance*, Paris, 1875.

History of medieval music. *The Oxford history of music*, 6 vols., Oxford, 1901–1905, vol. I, to 1600 A.D. H. RIEMANN, *Handbuch der Musikgeschichte*, vols. I–II, Leipzig, 1904–1913, vol. I, part II, *Mittelalter*. G. RAYNAUD, *Recueil de motets français des XII^e^ et XIII^e^ siècles, suivis d'une étude sur la musique au siècle de Saint Louis* par H. LAVOIX fils, 2 vols., Paris, 1881–1883. P. AUBRY, *La musicologie médiévale: histoire des méthodes*, Paris, 1900. E. COUSSEMAKER, *L'art harmonique aux XII^e^ et XIII^e^ siècle*, Paris, 1865; and his *Histoire de l'harmonie au moyen âge*, Paris, 1852. E. DICKINSON, *Music in the history of the western church*, New York, 1903. *Paléographie musicale*, Tournai, 1899ff. *Scriptorum de musica medii aevi nova series a Gerbertina altera*, 4 vols., edited by E. COUSSE-

MAKER, Paris, 1864–1876, reprinted, Graz, 1904. J. COMBARIEU, "La musique au moyen âge," in *Revue de synthèse historique*, I (1900), 84–110, is a very important review of recent literature and methods. For Latin hymns see outline XXIII, and for the music of the troubadours, outline XXIV above.

Periodicals for history of art. *Revue de l'art ancien et moderne*, Paris, 1897ff. *Gazette des beaux-arts*, Paris, 1859ff. *Archivio storico dell' arte*, Rome, 1888ff., since 1898, under the title, *L'arte*. *Revue de l'art chrétien*, Paris, 1857ff. *Zeitschrift für christliche Kunst*, Düsseldorf, 1888ff. *Die christliche Kunst*, Münster, 1904ff.

Original sources. *Quellenschriften für Kunstgeschichte und Kunsttechnik des Mittelalters und der Neuzeit*, edited by R. EITELBERGER v. EDELBERG, vols. I–XVIII, Vienna, 1871ff., new series continued by A. ILG and C. LIST, Vienna, 1883ff.

Bibliographies. The best critical bibliography on medieval architecture, and many an allied subject, is in A. K. PORTER, *Medieval architecture*, I, 335–450, II, 419–470. *Catalogue of books relating to architecture, construction and decoration in the public library of the city of Boston*, 2nd edition, Boston, 1914. R. STURGIS and H. E. KREHBIEL, *Annotated bibliography of fine art*, Boston, 1897. *Internationale Bibliographie der Kunstwissenschaft*, Berlin, 1902ff. E. MÂLE, "L'art du moyen âge en France depuis vingt ans," in *Revue de synthèse historique*, II (1901), 81–108, is an important review of recent literature. The best collection of books on medieval art is in the Bibliothèque d'art et d'archéologie in Paris, which contains over 100,000 volumes.

XXVIII. THE SCHOLARSHIP OF DANTE

A. OUTLINE

1. An inspection of the bibliographies listed below will show how stupendous is the amount of literature on Dante. Petrarch and the medieval scholars who shared his enthusiasm for ancient classical literature have fared almost as well in the modern world of scholarship, whereas many learned men of the twelfth and thirteenth centuries are still very shadowy figures. The *Opus majus* of Roger Bacon, *e. g.*, was not printed until 1733, and even today there is no translation of the work in any modern language, whereas all the works of Dante have been translated into practically all the modern languages and snatches of them even in Volapük. In the future the best progress in Dante investigations will be made by means of a closer study of the culture of the twelfth

and thirteenth centuries which he synthesized even better than did Thomas Aquinas.

2. The life of Dante Alighieri. Born in Florence, 1265. Dante and Beatrice. For Dante's political career in Florence see outline XXXII in part II above. In 1302 he was exiled from Florence and never returned. Several years before his exile he married Gemma di Manetto Donati and had four children. Dante was befriended by Bartolommeo della Scala, lord of Verona, and his younger brother, Can Grande della Scala. Dante seems to have gone to Bologna in 1304, and he may have been in Paris, 1307–1309. For his enthusiastic support of the emperor Henry VII see outline XXXI in part II above. After many wanderings in Italy he went to Ravenna in 1317 where he completed his great poem. He died in Ravenna in 1321 and was buried there.

3. The writings of Dante. His minor works in Italian: *Canzoniere, Convito,* and *Vita nuova.* His minor works in Latin: *De monarchia, De vulgari eloquentia, Quaestio de aqua et terra, Eclogae,* and *Epistolae.* His great masterpiece in Italian, the *Divina commedia,* in three parts, *Inferno, Purgatorio,* and *Paradiso.*

4. Dante's knowledge of theology. His familiarity with the *Vulgate,* with the works of Augustine and with the *Summa theologica* of Thomas Aquinas. Comparison of the Divine comedy with the *Summa.* Dante and the mystics.

5. His knowledge of ancient and medieval philosophy and logic. Reference in his works to Aristotle and Plato. His scholastic method of reasoning, exemplified especially in the *De monarchia.*

6. His acquaintance with the Latin classical belles-lettres, especially Virgil, Horace, Ovid, Lucan, Statius, and Cicero. The sources of Dante's knowledge of the Latin classics in a period when they were so generally neglected (see outline XVIII above). His ignorance of Greek.

7. His interests in history and in political theory. His references to Livy and to Orosius. The sources of his knowledge of the history of his own time. His *De monarchia* gives him a very important place in the history of political thought. His ideas of world peace.

8. His acquaintance with the Roman and canon law which were studied so assiduously in Bologna in his day.

9. His knowledge of the natural sciences, especially astronomy and geography. Was he acquainted with the writings on natural sciences by Robert Grosseteste, Albert the Great, and Roger Bacon?

10. The conflict in Dante's mind concerning the use of Latin and Italian. Evidence from his *De vulgari eloquentia*. His decision on the question compared with that of Petrarch. Importance of the influence of these two men in bringing about the decline of Latin and the rise of vernaculars as the learned languages of western Europe.

11. Dante's belated but well-deserved fame as one of the greatest of the world's poets. The influence of his *Divine comedy* on modern learning, literature, and art.

B. SPECIAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR READING

Brief general surveys. TAYLOR, *Mediaeval mind*, 2nd edition, II, ch. XLIV, "The mediaeval synthesis: Dante." R. W. CHURCH, *Dante: an essay*, to which is added a translation of *De monarchia*, London, 1878. J. R. LOWELL, "Essay on Dante," in his *Among my books*, 2nd series. SANDYS, *Classical scholarship*, I, 613–616.

Short books on Dante. E. G. GARDNER, *Dante*, London, 1900. P. TOYNBEE, *Dante Alighieri, his life and works*, New York, 1900, 4th edition, 1910. A. J. BUTLER, *Dante: his times and his work*, London, 1897, 2nd edition, 1901. L. RAGG, *Dante and his Italy*, New York [1907]. K. FEDERN, *Dante and his time*, New York, 1902. C. H. GRANDGENT, *Dante*, New York, 1916 (Master spirits of literature). C. A. DINSMORE, *The teachings of Dante*, Boston, 1903. MARIA F. ROSSETTI, *A shadow of Dante*, Boston, 1886. G. A. SCARTAZZINI, *A companion to Dante*, London, 1893. V. BOTTA, *Introduction to the study of Dante: being a new edition of Dante as philosopher, patriot, and poet*, New York, 1895. J. A. SYMONDS, *Introduction to the study of Dante*, Edinburgh, 1890, 4th edition, London, 1899. K. WITTE, *Essays on Dante: being selections from the two volumes of Dante-forschungen*, translated by C. MABEL LAWRENCE, London, 1898.

Scholarship of Dante. E. MOORE, *Studies in Dante*, 3 series, Oxford, 1896–1904, see especially I for his knowledge of books, and III for his astronomy and geography. P. H. WICKSTEED, *Dante and Aquinas: being the substance of the Jowett lectures for 1911*, London and New York, 1913. P. TOYNBEE, *Dante studies and researches*, London, 1902, treats among other things of his relations with the ideas of Albert the Great and Alfraganus. G. SANTAYANA, *Three philosophical poets: Lucretius, Dante, and Goethe*, Cambridge, 1910 (Harvard studies in comparative literature, I). For treatises and atlases of medieval geography, which help to explain Dante's ideas of the world and the universe, see the headings "Geographical discoveries," and "Original sources," under outline XXVI in part II above.

Dante as an historian. H. FINKE, "Dante als Historiker," *Historische Zeitschrift*, CIV (1909–1910), 473–503.

Dante and the mystics. E. GARDNER, *Dante and the mystics: a study of the mystical aspect of the Divina commedia and its relations with some of its mediaeval sources*, London and New York, 1913.

Early biographies of Dante. *The early lives of Dante* (BOCCACCIO and LIONARDO BRUNI), translated by P. H. WICKSTEED, London, 1907 (King's classics). *The earliest lives of Dante*, translated from the Italian of GIOVANNI BOCCACCIO and LIONARDO BRUNI ARETINO by J. R. SMITH, New York, 1901 (Yale studies in English, X). E. MOORE, *Dante and his early biographers*, London, 1890.

Original sources. Since all the works of Dante may be read in good English translations, students should study his scholarship and his thought by the direct method. Following are some of the best translations: *The Divine comedy* of DANTE ALIGHIERI, translated by C. E. NORTON, 3 vols., Boston, 1891–1892. *The Divine comedy* of DANTE ALIGHIERI translated by H. F. CARY, together with D. G. ROSSETTI'S translation of the *New life*, edited by O. KUHNS, New York, 1897. *The Divine comedy* of DANTE ALIGHIERI, translated by H. W. LONGFELLOW, 3 vols., Boston, 1867–1871. *La commedia* di DANTE ALIGHIERI: the *Divine comedy*, translated by H. JOHNSON, Yale University Press, 1916. *The Divina commedia* of DANTE ALIGHIERI, literally translated into English verse in the hendecasyllabic measure of the original Italian, by S. W. GRIFFITH, 3 vols., London [1912]. *The Divine comedy*, translated by C. E. WHEELER, 3 vols., London, 1911. *Vision: or Hell, purgatory, and paradise*, translated by H. F. CARY, with life of Dante, New York, 1845, revised, with an introduction by P. TOYNBEE, 3 vols., London, 1900–1902 (The Little library), also in *Everyman's library*, London, 1910. *The Hell* of DANTE ALIGHIERI, edited with translation and notes by A. J. BUTLER, London and New York, 1892. DANTE'S *Divine comedy: The Inferno*, a literal prose translation with the text of the original collated from the best editions, and explanatory notes, by J. A. CARLYLE, New York, 1849, reprinted in the *Temple classics*, London, 1903. *The Paradiso* of DANTE ALIGHIERI, translated by P. H. WICKSTEED, with Italian and English on opposite pages, London, 1904 (Temple classics).

The Convivio of DANTE ALIGHIERI, translated by P. H. WICKSTEED, London, 1903 (Temple classics). DANTE'S *Convivio*, translated into English by W. W. JACKSON, Oxford, 1909. *The Banquet (Il convito)* of DANTE ALIGHIERI, translated by KATHERINE HILLARD, London, 1889. *Il Convito: the Banquet of* DANTE ALIGHIERI, translated by ELIZABETH P. SAYER, London and New York, 1887 (Morley's universal library, 49).

DANTE ALIGHIERI, *Vita nuova*, translated into English by D. G. ROSSETTI in his *Dante and his circle*, London, 1874, I, 29–109. *The New life* of DANTE ALIGHIERI, translated by C. E. NORTON, Boston, 1867.

The De monarchia of DANTE ALIGHIERI, edited with translations and notes, by AURELIA HENRY, Boston and New York, 1904. DANTE, *De vulgari eloquentia*, translated with notes by A. G. F. HOWELL, London, 1890. DANTE, *Quaestio de aqua et terra*, edited and translated, with Latin text and its English translation on opposite pages, by C. L. SHADWELL, Oxford, 1909, who considers it a genuine work of Dante. DANTE ALIGHIERI, *Eleven letters*, translated with notes and historical comments, by C. S. LATHAM, Boston, 1892. *A translation of the Latin works* of DANTE ALIGHIERI, by A. G. F. HOWELL and P. H. WICKSTEED, London, 1904 (Temple classics).

C. BIBLIOGRAPHY

General books. See the general histories of Italian literature, nos. **808–811** above, and the general literature listed under outline XXXIII in part II above.

Forerunners of Dante. A. J. BUTLER, *Forerunners of Dante*, Oxford, 1910. K. VOSSLER, *Die göttliche Komödie*, 2 vols., in 4 parts, Heidelberg, 1907–1910, parts I–II. M. DODS, *Forerunners of Dante*, Edinburgh, 1903. A. D'ANCONA, *I precursori di Dante*, Florence, 1874. C. S. BOSWELL, *An Irish precursor of Dante:* a study on the *Vision of heaven and hell* ascribed to the eighth-century Irish saint, ADAMNAN, with a translation of the Irish text, London, 1908.

Dante's political thought. F. KERN, *Humana civilitas: eine Dante Untersuchung*. Leipzig, 1913 (Mittelalterliche Studien, I, part I). F. KAMPERS, *Dantes Kaisertraum*, Breslau, 1909 (86th Jahrbuch der Schles. Gesellschaft für vaterländische Kultur). H. GRAUERT, *Dante und die Idee des Weltfriedens*, Munich, 1909 (Festrede). H. KELSEN, *Die Staatslehre des Dante Alighieri*, Vienna and Leipzig, 1905 (in Wiener staatswissenschaftliche Studien, VI, 3). F. X. KRAUS, *Dante, sein Leben und sein Werk, sein Verhältniss zur Kunst und zur Politik*, Berlin, 1897. DANTE, *De monarchia*, the Oxford text, edited by E. G. MOORE, with an introduction on the political theory of Dante by W. H. V. READE, Oxford University Press, 1916.

Dante's philosophy. B. NARDI, *Sigieri di Brabante nella Divina commedia e le fonti della filosofia di Dante*, Firenze, 1912. C. BAEUMKER, "Dantes philosophische Weltanschauung," in *Deutsche Literaturzeitung*, 1913, no. 44. A. F. OZANAM, *Dante et la philosophie catholique au XIII^e siècle*, in vol. VI of his *Oeuvres complètes*, Paris,

1872–1881, translated as, *Dante and catholic philosophy*, New York, 1897. G. BUSHNELL, *L'Etica nicomachea e l'ordinamento morale dell' "Inferno" di Dante*, Bologna, 1907. W. H. V. READE, *The moral system of Dante's Inferno*, Oxford, 1909. F. PALERMO, *San Tommaso, Aristotile e Dante: ovvero della prima filosofia italiana*, Florence, 1869.

Aids to the study of Dante. E. K. RAND and E. H. WILKINS, *Dantis Alagherii operum latinorum concordantiae*, Oxford, 1912. E. S. SHELDON, *Concordanza delle opere italiane in prosa e del canzonieri di Dante Alighieri*, Oxford, 1905. G. A. SCARTAZZINI, *Enciclopedia Dantesca*, 3 vols., Milan, 1896–1905. P. J. TOYNBEE, *A dictionary of proper names and notable matters in the works of Dante*, Oxford, 1898, republished under the title, *Concise dictionary of proper names and notable matters in the works of Dante*, Oxford, 1914. F. J. SNELL, *Handbook to the works of Dante*, London, 1909. C. A. DINSMORE, *Aids to the study of Dante*, Boston, 1903.

Miscellaneous books. R. T. HOLBROOK, *Portraits of Dante from Giotto to Raffael*, London, 1911. M. A. ORR, *Dante and the early astronomers*, London [1914]. E. G. GARDNER, *Dante's ten heavens, a study of the Paradiso*, Westminster, 1898, 2nd edition, 1900. C. MARIOTTI, *S. Francesco, i Francescani e Dante Alighieri*, Quaracchi, 1913. H. BEATTY, *Dante and Virgil*, London, 1905. G. FINSLER, *Homer in der Neuzeit, von Dante bis Goethe: Italien, Frankreich, England, Deutschland*, Leipzig and Berlin, 1912.

Periodicals. *Annual report* of the Dante society, Cambridge, Mass., Cambridge, 1882ff. Società Dantesca Italiana [of Florence], *Bullettino*, 1894ff.

Original sources. The handiest edition of all the works of Dante in the original is *Tutte le opere* di DANTE ALIGHIERI, edited by E. MOORE, Oxford, 1894.

Bibliographies. T. W. KOCH, *Catalogue of the Dante collection presented by W. Fiske to the Cornell University library*, 2 vols., Ithaca, 1898–1900; and his *A list of Danteiana in American libraries, supplementing the catalogue of the Cornell collection*, Boston, 1901. This collection in the Cornell University library is the largest in the world. W. C. LANE, *The Dante collections in the Harvard college and Boston public libraries*, Cambridge, Mass., 1890; *Additions*, 1890ff. *Catalogue of the Dante collection in the library of the University college*, London, Oxford, 1910. For the books on Dante in the British Museum, see no. 3 above. *Bibliografía dantesca*, Cividale del Friuli, 1902ff.





INDEX



INDEX

This index comprises authors, editors, subjects, and the titles of large collections in one alphabet. The black-faced figures refer to numbers in part I; the light-faced figures to pages in parts II and III. Reference is made only to the place where the title of a work is given in full. ä, ö, and ü are indexed as ae, oe, and ue.

Abbassides, 145.
Abbot, G., Israel, **852**.
Abbreviations, **224–229**.
Abdy, J., Feudalism, 162.
Abel, S., and Simson, B., Jahrbücher 141.
Abelard, Historia calamitatum, 393; Love letters, 393; Sic et non, 395; Works, 395.
Abelson, P., Seven liberal arts, 350.
Abhandlungen, Berlin, **894**; Göttingen, **897**; Leipzig, **896**; München, **895**; zur Geschichte der mathematischen Wissenschaften, 436.
Abrahams, I., Jewish life, **857**.
Académie des inscriptions, **885**, **975**; des sciences morales, **891**; royale de Belgique, **892**.
Academies, **885–907**.
Acloque, G., Corporations à Chartres, 252.
Acta et diplomata graeca, 330; imperii, **985** note; imperii Angliae et Franciae, 292; pontificum Danica, **1008** note; pontificum Romanorum, **960**; res Albaniae, **1006** note; sanctorum, **963**; sanctorum Benedicti, 121.
Adamnan, Life of St. Columba, 131.
Adams, C., Manual, **14** note.
Adams, G., Civilization, **363**; European history, **362** note; French nation, **518**; Medieval and modern history, **362**; Petrarch, 306.
Adams, H., Mont-Saint-Michel, 472.
Adams, L., Sculptures gothiques, 477.
Adamson, H., Roger Bacon, 431.
Addison, C., Templars, 208.
Addison, J., Arts and crafts, 477.
Adelaide, 169, 172.
Adinolfi, P., Roma, 347.
Adler, E., Auto de fé, **883**; Benjamin of Tudela, **884**.
Adolf of Nassau, 286, 287, 289.
Adrian, *see* Hadrian.
Adrianople, battle of, 108.
Ady, C., Milan, 298; Pius II, 296.
Ady, J., Isabella the Catholic, 319; Painters of Florence, 313.
Aeneas Sylvius, Briefwechsel, 314; De rebus Basiliae gestis, 275; How I became pope, 297.
Agats, A., Hansische Baienhandel, 257.
Agincourt, battle of, 277, 280.
Agriculture, 247, 251.
Aidan, 126.
Alain de Lille, Complaint of nature, 451.
Alaric, 108.
Albers, J., Dagobert, 136.
Albert I., 286, 287, 289.
Albert II, 287, 291.
Albert, F., Geschichte der Predigt, 238.
Albert-Petit, A., Normandie, 197.
Albert the Great, 405, 408, 410; and natural sciences, 426, 430; Opera omnia, 410.
Albigensians, 400, 401, 403.
Alboin, 114.
Albon, marquis d', Cartulaire de l'ordre de Temple, 211.
Album paléographique, **231** note.
Alchemy, 433.
Alcuin of York, 362, 364, 366, 367.
Aldhelm, 362, 364.
Aldhoch, Roscelin, 382.
Aldinger, P., Bistümer, 237.
Aldus Manutius, 304, 307, 312.
Alemany, J., St. Dominic, 232.
Alengry, C., Foires de Champagne, 255.
Alexander of Hales, 405, 406.
Alexander of Villedieu, 446, 448.
Alexius Comnenus, 186, 191, 201, 207.
Alfarabi, 374, 377, 379.
Alfred the Great, 150, 152, 368, 370.
Alivisatos, H. S., Justinian, 116.
Allain, E., Université de Paris, 441.
Allard, P., Esclaves, 163; Julien l'Apostat, 338; Saint Sidoine, 337; Servage en France, 163.
Allbutt, T., Medicine and surgery, 428; Science, 427.
Allen, C., Danemark, **721**.
Allen, M., Verona, 302.
Allen, R., Sylvester II, 176.
Allgemeine deutsche Biographie, **90**; Encyklopädie, **100**; Geschichte, **313**; Staatengeschichte, **332**.
Allies, T. W., Monastic life, 119.
Allshorn, L., Stupor mundi, 215.
Allström, C., Dictionary, **278**.
Almanach de Gotha, **277**.
Almaric, 400, 402.
Alphandéry, P., Hétérodoxes latines, 402; Messianisme médiéval latin, 402.
Alsace-Lorraine, **597–598**.
Altamira, R., Enseñanza de la historia, **42** note; Historia de España, **628**.

Altfranzösische Bibliothek, 456.
Altmann, W., Römerzug Ludwigs, 289.
Altmann, W. and Bernheim, E., Ausgewählte Urkunden, **578** note.
Alves, A., Dom Henrique, 321.
Alzog, J., Manual, **401**.
Amador de los Rios, J., Arte latino-bizantino, 359; Judios de España, 321.
Amari, M., Biblioteca Arabo-Sicula, 150; Musulmani di Sicilia, 149; Vespro Siciliano, 301.
Amatus, L'ystoire de li Normant, 200.
Amboesius, F., Petri Abelardi opera, 395.
Ambrosi, A., Corses, 302.
Ameer Ali Syed, Saracens, 148; Islam, 148.
Amélineau, E., Egypte, 148.
American historical review, **148**.
Ametller y Vinyas, D., Alfonso V, 301.
Amiens cathedral, 470, 476.
Amira, K., Grundriss, 163.
Ampère, J., Histoire littéraire, 360.
Amtliche Sammlung der Abschiede, 292.
Anagni, scene at, 267, 271.
Analecta Bollandiana, **177**; Byzantino-russica, **1003** note; Franciscana, 232; hymnica medii aevi, 451.
Anatomy, 435.
Anciens poètes de la France, 456.
Ancient cities series, 251.
Ancona, A., Jacopone da Todi, 450; Precursori di Dante, 482.
Ancona, A., and Bacci, O., Manuale, **810**.
Anderson, W., Architecture, 313.
Andouin, E., Armée royale, 245.
Andrássy, J., Hungarian constitutional liberty, 329.
André, M., Raymond Lulle, 240.
Andreas, W., Venezianischen Relazionen, 299.
Andrews, C., Gambrill, J., and Tall, Lida, Bibliography, **14** note.
Angevin empire, 194.
Angevins in Naples, 293, 294, 301.
Anglade, J., Troubadours, 456.
Angles, Saxons and Jutes, 108.
Angus, S., Augustine's De civitate, 342.
Annalen der deutschen Geschichte, **571**.
Annuaire des bibliothèques, **25** note.
Annual library index, **8**; report of the Dante society, 483.
Anrich, G., Mysterienwesen, 356.
Anselm, **759** note, 380–382; Proslogium, 381.
Anstey, H., Epistolae academicae, 440; Munimenta academica, 445; Statutes of colleges, 445.
Antequera, J. M., Legislación española, **633** note.
Anthony, Saint, 117.
Antichrist, 353, 355.
Antiquitates Italicae, **989**.
Anton, A., Petrarca, 310.
Antony, C., In St. Dominic's country, 232.
Appuhn, A., Trivium, 351.
Aquinas, *see* Thomas Aquinas.
Arabic numerals, 373, 375, 377.
Aragon, 315, 316, 320; and Sicily, 293, 294, 301; kings of, 1213–1516 A.D., 317.
Arbois de Jubainville, H., Abbayes cisterciennes, 227; Déclinaison latine, 360; Langue des Francs, 360; Littérature celtique, 363.
Arbusow, L., Geschichte von Liv-, Esth- und Kurland, **691** note.
Archaeology, **299–302**; classical, 303; Christian, of Rome, 345, 348.
Archer, T., Council of Clermont, 205; Crusade of Richard I, 204.
Archer, T., and Kingsford, C., Crusades, 204.
Architecture, medieval, 470–478; renaissance, 305, 307, 313.
Archiv der Gesellschaft für ältere deutsche Geschichtskunde, **167**; für die Geschichte der Naturwissenschaften, 429; für Geschichte der Medizin, 434; für Geschichte der Philosophie, **181**; für Kirchenrecht, 425; für Kulturgeschichte, **169**; für Literatur- und Kirchengeschichte, **170**; für Schweizergeschichte, 290; für slavische Philologie, **311**; für Urkundenforschung, **248**.
Archives, **4** note, **5**, **6**, **20**, **25**, **83–85**, **163**, 464, 470.
Archives de la France monastique, 121.
Archivio Muratoriana, **168**; paleografico italiano, **233**; storico dell' arte, 478; storico italiano, **160**.
Archivium Franciscanum historicum, 231.
Arians, 122, 125, 334, 338.
Arias, G., Comuni, 297.
Aristotle, the New, 396–399.
Armbrust, L., Territorialpolitik der Päpste, 136.
Armellini, M., Chiese di Roma, 348.
Armitage, E., Norman castles, 262.
Armstrong, E., Lorenzo de' Medici, 296.
Arndt, W., Schrifttafeln, **237**.
Arne, T., Suède et l'orient, 154.
Arnold, F., Cäsarius von Arelate, 361.
Arnold, H., Stained glass, 477.

T., Islam, 147; Little Flowers Francis, 225.
f Brescia, 211, 218.
s, 222, 227.
J., Regesten, **1013**.
aminis and ars notaria, 417–

olingian, 365, 367; classical, ldle ages, 352; medieval, 470– Mohammedan, 374, 375, 378; umination, 466–467; renais- 305–307, 312–314.
érifier les dates, **255**.
M., Mouvement de 1314, 246. crafts, 471, 477.
ren liberal, 349–352.
m, **479–487**, 353, 354, 356.
, J., Sigmund, 291; West- 112.
W., Economic history, 250; d III, 280; James and Philip rtevelde, 281; Surveys, 250.
J., Romances of chivalry, 264.
lacios, M., Abenmasarra, 376; l, 376; Averroismo de Santo , 409.
l, W., Ecoles épiscopales, 371.
ife of Alfred, 370.
23, 230.
f Jerusalem, 201, 205.
. W., Geschichte des Mittelal- **42**.
, 433.
y, 433.
us, Saint, 117; Life of St. y, 119.
60.
ount, 117, 120.
s anciens plans de Paris, 388.
21–129.
Hun, 108, 112.
., L'an mille, 475.
F., Parlement de Paris, 246.
M., Notre-Dame-de-Paris, 389.
., Musicologie médiévale, 477; res, 456.
et Nicolette, 454.
e, Saint, 339–343; City of 41; Confessions, 341; Solilo- 341; Works, 341.
e, Saint, of Canterbury, 126, 30.
ians, 222.
ur und Geisteswelt, **947**.
, 334, 337.
ses, F., L'armée byzantine, 190.
anons, 222, 227; Friars, 222. **35**, **588–594**, **805**, **900–902**.

L., Bernard de Meung, 420.

Auxiliaries to medieval history, **212–312**.
Avars, 156, 159.
Avenel, G., Evêques de Paris, 389; Histoire économique, 250; La fortune privée, 250; Les riches, 250; Paysans, 250.
Averroës, 374, 376, 379.
Averroism, 397, 400, 402.
Avicenna, 374, 376, 379.
Avignon, popes in, 267, 271.
Ayer, J., Source book, **383**.
Ayroles, J., Jeanne d'Arc, 283.
Azarias, Brother, Aristotle, 397.

Baas, J., Aerzliche Stand, 435.
Babcock, W., Norse visits, 154.
Babelon, E., Commerce des Arabes, 149.
Babut, E., Saint Martin, 120.
Babylonish captivity, 267, 271.
Bach, J., Albertus Magnus, 408; Dogmengeschichte, **478**.
Bacher, W., Moses ben Maimon, 376.
Bachfeld, G., Mongolen, 328.
Bachmann, A., Böhmen, **701**; Friedrich III und Maximilian I, 291.
Bachmann, J., Päpstliche Legaten, 237.
Bacon, L., Song of Roland, 454.
Bacon, Roger, 411, 413, 416, 426, 428, 429, 431–432, 436–437; Communia naturalium, 437; Compendium philosophiae, 436; Compendium studii theologiae, 437; De nullitate magiae, 436; De secretis, 436; Greek grammar, 416; Metaphysica, 437; Opus majus, 429; Opus minus, 436; Opus tertium, 436–437.
Baddeley, W., Queen Johana I, 301; Robert the Wise, 301.
Bäbler, J., Grammatik, 448.
Bächtold, H., Norddeutsche Handel, 256.
Baedeker, K., Paris, 387.
Baer, F., Juden, **876**.
Bärnstein, A., Carmina burana, 450; Ubi sunt qui ante nos, 450.
Baerwald, H., Formelbücher, 419.
Baethgen, F., Innocenz III, 218.
Baeumker, C., Alfred von Sareschel, 428; Amalricaner, 403; Avencebrolis fons vitae, 379; Beiträge, **826**; Dantes Weltanschauungen, 482; Europäische Philosophie, **831**; Roger Bacon's Naturphilosophie, 432; Witelo, 432.
Bahr, K., Hanse, 257.
Baier, H., Päpstliche Provisionen, 237.
Baissac, J., Diable, 355; Sorcellerie, 404.
Baist, G., Capitulare de villis, 142.
Baker, B., Constantinople, **664**.

Baker, E., Guide to fiction, **77.**
Baker, F., Model republic, 290.
Balaquer, V., Calalufia y Aragón, 320; Granada, 322; Reyes católicos, 322.
Balari y Jovany, J., Catalufia, 320.
Balcarres, D., Italian sculpture, 313.
Balearic islands, 138, 149.
Balfour, C., Life of Saint Clare, 226.
Balkans, **706–716**, 324, 326.
Ball, W., History of mathematics, 377.
Ballester y Castell, R., Las fuentes narativas de la historia de España, **997** note.
Ballhausen, C., Bouvines, 245.
Balthaser, K., Armutsstreit, 230.
Baltic, **691–692.**
Baltzer, O., Sentenzen des Petrus Lombardus, 408.
Balzac, H., Les proscrits, 387.
Balzani, V., Chroniclers of Italy, **988** note; Popes and Hohenstaufen, 214.
Bangs, M., Jeanne d'Arc, 279.
Banking, 247, 254.
Bappert, J., Richard von Cornwallis, 220.
Barande, H., Jeanne d'Arc, 283.
Barante, A., Ducs de Bourgogne, 284.
Barbarians and ancient culture, 334, 339.
Barber, W., Raymond Lull, 240.
Bardenhewer, O., Patrologie, 123.
Barine, A., St. François, 229.
Baring, M., Russian people, **681** note; Thoughts by Leonardo da Vinci, 314.
Baring-Gould, S., Saints, **963** note.
Barker, E., Dominican order, 231; Rome of the Pilgrims, 348.
Barlow, J., Normans, 199.
Barmby, J., Gregory the Great, 123.
Barnard, H., Universities, 423.
Baronius, C., Annales, **425.**
Barozzi, L., and Sabbadini, R., Panormita e Valla, 312.
Barradas, M., Don Henrique, 321.
Barrière-Flavy, C., Arts industriels, 143.
Barroux, M., Bibliographie de Paris, 391.
Barry, W., Papacy and modern times, 269; Papal monarchy, **444.**
Bartal, A., Glossarium, 448.
Barth, F., Hildebert von Lavardin, 183.
Barth, H., Bibliographie der Schweizer Geschichte, **43.**
Barth, H., Constantinople, **667.**
Barthélemy, E., Montmartre, 391.
Barthold, F., Deutsche Städte, 252.
Bartholomew Anglicus, De proprietatibus rerum, 429.
Bartoli, A., Precursori, 413.
Bartolus, Conflict of laws, 423.
Bartsch, K., Chrestomathie, **457**; Provenzalische Literatur, **456.**
Bas, H., Saint Martin, 120.
Baschet, A., Archives de Venice, 299.
Bascome, E., Epidemic pestilences, 254.
Basil II, emperor, 156, 186, 189, 191.
Basil, Saint, 117, 120.
Basle, council of, 268, 274, 275.
Bassenge, F., Sendung Augustins, 130.
Bastard, A., Peintures des manuscrits, 467.
Bastgen, H., Alcuin, 366.
Bates, F., and Titsworth, P., Mediaeval towns, 248; Mediaeval commerce, 248.
Bateson, M., Laws of Breteuil, 252.
Batiffol, L., Châtelet de Paris, 389; France, **508** note.
Batiffol, P., Inscriptions byzantines, 415; L'abbaye de Rossano, 415; Librairies byzantines, 415.
Battistella, A., Venezia, 298.
Battle of the seven arts, 411, 413.
Baudrillart, A., Dictionnaire, **110**; Droit d'intervention, 290; L'église, **405** note; Saint Séverin, 339.
Baudrillart, H., Histoire de luxe, **738.**
Baum, J., Romanische Baukunst, 475.
Baumann, J., Thomas von Aquino, 462.
Baumeister, A., Erziehungslehre, **838.**
Baumgarten, P., Kanzlei und Kammer, 236; Werke von Lea, 401.
Baumgartner, A., Lateinische und griechische Literatur, **782**; Weltliteratur, **782.**
Baumstark, A., Palästinerpilger, 205.
Baur, F., Kirche, **403.**
Baur, G., Boetius und Dante, 343.
Baur, L., Robert Grosseteste, 430; Werke des Grosseteste, 437.
Bautz, J., Fegefeuer, 355; Hölle, 355.
Baxmann, R., Politik der Päpste, 124.
Baxter, L., Renaissance of art, 312.
Bayet, C., L'art Byzantin, 474.
Bayeux tapestry, **202**, 194, 199.
Bayliss, W., Seven angels, 313.
Bayot, A., Grand schisme, 272.
Beale, J., Bartolus, On laws, 423.
Beale, S., Churches of Paris, 389.
Beatty, H., Dante and Virgil, 483.
Beauchet, L., Jurisdiction ecclésiastique, 238.
Beaudoin, E., Régime féodal, 162.
Beaufreton, V., Sainte Clare, 230.
Beaunier, Dom, France monastique, 387.
Beaurepaire, E., Paris, 388.
Beazley, C., Dawn of modern geography, 236; Henry the Navigator, 318; James I, 318; Marco Polo, 249;

Russian expansion, 326; Texts and versions, 241.
Beazley, M., Library of Canterbury, 468.
Bebel, A., Mohammedanisch-arabische Kulturperiode, 376.
Bec, monastery of, 380, 382.
Bechmann, G., Kampf Sigmunds gegen Osmanen, 329.
Beck, J., Musique des troubadours, 456.
Beck, L., Eisen, 258.
Becker, C., Geschichte Aegyptens, 149; Islam, 147.
Becker, G., Catalogi bibliothecarum, 469.
Becker, H., Augustin, 342.
Becker, P., Altfranzösische Literatur, 455.
Bédarride, I., Les juifs, **856**.
Bede, the Venerable, 127, 362, 364; Complete works, 363; Ecclesiastical history, 129.
Bedford, W., and Holbeche, R., Order of St. John, 208.
Bédier, J., Fabliaux, 456; Légendes épiques, 455.
Bédier, J., and Roques, M., Bibliographie des travaux de Gaston Paris, 457.
Beer, A., Kirche gegenüber Laien, 178.
Beer, R., Handschriftenschätze Spaniens, **42** note.
Beeson, C., Isidor-Studien, 351.
Beet, W., Papacy, **454**.
Begni, E., Vatican, **5** note.
Behaghel, W., Stellung der Frau, 252.
Beissel, S., Verehrung Marias, 239.
Beiträge Paul Schwenke gewidmet, 469; zur Geschichte der Philosophie des Mittelalters, **826**; zur Geschichte des Benediktinerordens, 120; zur Kulturgeschichte des Mittelalters, **749**.
Belgium, **45**, **549–556**, **892–893**, **977**.
Belin, F., Latinité de Constantinople, 336; Université de Provence, 442.
Belisarius, 113, 115.
Bell, A., Saints, 356.
Bell, A. E., Natural sciences, 429.
Bell, K., Mediaeval Europe, **364**.
Bellandi, S., Luigi Marsili, 311.
Belloc, H., Baveux tapestry, **202**; Crécy, 280; French people, **519**; Poitiers, 280; Warfare in England, 262.
Bellonotto, Storia del medio evo, **354**.
Below, G. v., Der deutsche Staat, **581**; Rezeption des römischen Rechts, 424; Städtewesen, 252; Stadtverfassung, 252.
Below, G. v., and F. Meinecke, Handbuch, **330**.
Belviglieri, C., Tavole di storia italiana, **603**.
Bémont, C., Condemnation de Jean-Sans-Terre, 244; Melanges offerts à, **934**.
Bémont, C., and Monod, G., Europe, **365**.
Bene of Lucca, 417, 418.
Benecke, C., and Howell, A., Chronicle of Dino Compagni, 297.
Benedetti, D., Gregorio Magno, 125.
Benedict Biscop, 127.
Benedict of Nursia, 118, 120.
Benefit of clergy, 175.
Bénézit, E., Dictionnaire des peintres, 473.
Benigni, V., Storia sociale della chiesa, 339.
Benjamin of Tudela, the itinerary of, **884**.
Bennett, R., and Elton, J., Cornmilling, 258.
Bensaude, J., L'astronomie nautique, 257.
Bent, J., Genoa, 299; Lords of Chios, 327.
Bentzinger, J., Adelheid, 172.
Benzerath, M., Kirchenpatrone, 239.
Benzinger, K., Buchgewerb, 466.
Berbers, 145, 148.
Berchtold, J., Bulle Unam sanctam, 271.
Berengar, 380, 383.
Berenson, B., Central Italian painters, 313; Florentine painters, 313; North Italian painters, 313; Sienese painter, 231; Venetian painters, 313.
Bergengrün, A., Adolf von Nassau, 289.
Berger, E., Blanche de Castille, 245; Saint Louis, 245.
Berger, S., Essais pour corriger le Vulgate, 415; Histoire de la Vulgate, 416; Quam notitiam linguae Hebraicae, 415; Vulgate en France, 415.
Berger, W., Hus, 274.
Bergmann, A., Manfred, 220.
Bergmüller, L., Latinität des Jordanes, 336.
Bergner, H., Rom, 348.
Bergot, R., Jeanne d'Arc, 284.
Berlière, U., Loup de Ferrières, 371.
Berliner, A., Juden in Rom, **871**.
Bernard, E., Dominicains, 441.
Bernard of Clairvaux, 222, 224, 227, 391–395; Lettres, 393; On consideration, 393; Works, 393, 395.
Bernhardi, W., Konrad III, 217.
Bernheim, E., Lehrbuch der historischen Methode, **64**; Politische Begriffe, 461; Quellen des Investiturstreites, 184; Wormser Konkordat, 184.

Bernouilli, A., Tell, 291.
Bernouilli, C., Heiligen der Merovinger, 360.
Berr, H., L'évolution de l'humanité, **319**.
Bertaux, E., L'art dans l'Italie, 199; Rome, 348.
Berthaud, Abbé, Gilbert de la Porrée, 402.
Berthaud, H., Médecins, 435.
Berthelot, M., Alchimie, 433; Chimie, 433; Chimie au moyen âge, 351; Histoire des sciences: la chimie, 433; Transmission de la science, 351.
Bertrand du Guesclin, 277, 279, 281.
Bertrand, J., Tapisserie brodée de Mathilde, 199.
Bertrand, L., Saint Augustin, 340.
Berty, A., and Legrand, H., Topographie du vieux Paris, 388.
Besant, W., Early London, 251; Mediaeval London, 251.
Besnier, M., Catacombes, 347.
Besse, J., Moines de France, 120; Moines d'Orient, 120; Monachisme Africain, 120.
Besso, M., Il Philobiblon, 465.
Best books, **7**.
Besta, E., Diritto italiano, **606**; L'opera d'Irnerio, 424; Sardegna, **601** note.
Bestuschew, K., Geschichte Russlands, **687**; Quellen und Literatur zur russischen Geschichte, **46**.
Bethmann-Hollweg, M., Civilprozess, 423; Lombardische Städtefreiheit, 217.
Beurlier, E., Raison et la foi, 382.
Beuzart, P., Hérésies, 402.
Bezold, F., Astrologische Geschichtsconstruction, 460; Deutsche Universitäten, 444; Husitentum, 274; Selbstbiographie, 394; Volkssouveränität, 461.
Bibliografia dantesca, 483.
Bibliographical works, **1–62**, **87–88**, **151** note.
Bibliographie der deutschen Zeitschriftenliteratur, **10**; der fremdsprachigen Zeitschriftenliteratur, **11**; der Kirchengeschichtliche Literatur, **54**; der Rezensionen, **87**; Volkswirtschaftslehre, 259; zur deutschen Geschichte, **151** note.
Biblioteca Arabo-Sicula, 150.
Bibliotheca Arabico-hispana, 150; hagiographica, **53**; historica, **151** note; iuridica medii aevi, 425; mathematica, 436; Normannica, 456; rerum Germanicarum, **983**; scriptorum medii aevi Teubneriana, **950**.
Bibliothek der Geschichtswissenschaft, **320**; des kgl. preussischen historischen Instituts in Rom, **899**; deutscher Geschichte, **566**.
Bibliothèque d'art et d'archéologie, 478; de la Faculté des lettres, **889**; de l'Ecole des chartes, **184**; de l'Ecole pratique des hautes études, **888**; des écoles françaises d'Athènes et de Rome, **887**, **959**; française, 456; historique de la ville de Paris, 391.
Bibliothèque nationale, **4**, 469.
Bibliothèques, livres et librairies, **6** note.
Bidault des Chaumes, S., Mallum, 164.
Biedermann, K., Deutsche Volks- und Kulturgeschichte, **774**.
Biehringer, F., Friedrich II, 219.
Bielowski, A., Monumenta Poloniae, **1004** note.
Biese, A., Feeling for nature, 429.
Bigg, C., Church's task, 338; Neoplatonism, 338.
Bikel, H., St. Gallen, 250.
Bikélas, D., Griechen des Mittelalters, 415; La Grèce, **659** note.
Bilfinger, G., Horen, **267**.
Binding, C., Burgundisch-Romanisches Königreich, 112.
Biographical dictionaries, **16**, **89–95**.
Biographie nationale, **92**; universelle, **93**.
Biographisches Jahrbuch, **95** note; Lexikon, **91**.
Birch, W., and Jenner, H., Drawings and illuminations, 466.
Biron, R., Pierre Damien, 179.
Birot, J., Le saint empire, **504**.
Bischoff, H., and Möller, J., Wörterbuch, **135**.
Bishop and his diocese, 233, 237.
Björnbo, A., Pergamenthandschriften, 466; Uebersetzungen aus dem Griechischen, 436.
Black Death, 247, 249, 253.
Black Prince, 277, 279, 281.
Blades, W., Books in chains, 466.
Blanche of Castille, 242, 244.
Blanchet, J., and Dieudonné, A., Manuel de numismatique, **294**.
Blasel, K., Langobarden, 116.
Blasi, E., Regno di Sicilia, 301.
Blásquez, A., Cartografía española, 257; San Isidoro de Sevilla, Mapa-Mundi, 351.
Blatchford, A., Church councils, 237.
Blennerhassett, C., Jungfrau von Orleans, 283.
Bliemetzrieder, F., Caterina von Siena, 272; Generalkonzil, 272; Polemik, 275.

Bloch, H., Heinrich VI, 218; Kaiserwahlen, 216.
Bloch, M., Ile-de-France, 243.
Block, H., Geistesleben im Elsass, 367.
Block, W., Condottieri, 298.
Blok, P., Netherlands, **557**.
Blondel, G., Frédéric II, 219.
Blume, C., Hymnologie, 450.
Blume, C., and Dreves, G., Analecta hymnica, 451.
Blumenthal, H., Konstanzer Konzil, 273.
Blumschein, G., Germanisierung, 220.
Blythe, E., Jerusalem, 210.
Boase, C., Oxford, 443.
Bobbio, 126.
Boccaccio, G., 304, 310; Dante, 481; Decameron, 250.
Bode, W., Florentine sculptors, 313.
Böckh, A., Enzyklopädie, **303**.
Böhmer, H., Kirche und Staat, 198.
Böhmer, J., Acta imperii selecta, **985** note; Fontes rerum Germanicarum, **984**; Regesta imperii, **985**.
Böhringer, F., Väter des Papsttums, 124.
Bönhoff, L., Aldhelm, 364.
Boer, T., Philosophie im Islam, 376.
Boethius, 340–341, 343; Consolations of Philosophy, 341.
Böttcher, C., Wegweiser, **144**.
Bogomiles, 156.
Bohemia, **47** note, **461** note, **699–703**, **986** note, 156, 158, 268, 274.
Boileau, Etienne, Réglemens sur arts de Paris, 258.
Boinet, A., Miniature, 467.
Bois, J., Satanisme, 355.
Boissier, G., Christianisme de Boèce, 343; Fin du paganism, 338.
Boissonade, P., Navarre, 322.
Bollandus, J., Acta sanctorum, **903**.
Bollettino critico di cose Francescane, 231.
Bologna, G., Petrarca, 310.
Bologna, university of, 438, 439, 442, 444–445.
Bonaventura, 406, 409, 410; Life of St. Francis, 225; Opera omnia, 410.
Boncompagni, B., Gherardo Cremonese, 399.
Boncompagno, 417, 418, 420; Rhetorica antiqua, 420.
Bond, F., Cathedral churches of England, 476; Dedications and patron saints, 239; English church architecture, 472; Gothic architecture in England, 476.
Bond, J., Handybook, **263**.
Bongars, J., Gesta dei per Francos, 210.
Boniface, Saint, 127–131, 362, 364.
Boniface VIII, pope, 267, 268, 270.
Bonilla, A., Filosofía española, **866** note.
Bonnard, F., Honorat de Lérins, 120.
Bonnardot, A., Enceintes de Paris, 388; Iconographie du vieux Paris, 388; Plans de Paris, 388.
Bonneau, A., Donation de Constantin, 314.
Bonnel, H., Anfänge des karolingischen Hauses, 136.
Bonnet, M., Latin de Grégoire, 360.
Bonnin, T., Registrum visitationum, 240.
Bonsmann, T., Gregor der Grosse, 124.
Bonwetch, G., Dogmengeschichte, **477**.
Book of the popes, **949** note.
Book review digest, **88**.
Book reviews, **87–88**.
Books and libraries, 462–470.
Books of reference, **63–211**.
Borden, G., Syllabus on Florence, 311.
Bordier, H., Eglises de Paris, 389.
Borinski, K., Antike in Poetik, 351.
Borrelli de Serres, L., Philippe Auguste, 244; Services publics, 245; Variations monétaires, 245.
Borrmann, R., and Neuwirth, J., Baukunst, 474.
Bosnia, **716**.
Boswell, C., Irish precursor of Dante, 355.
Botany, 434.
Botta, V., Dante, 480.
Bottfield, B., Catalogi veteres librorum, 469; Cathedral libraries, 469.
Bouard, A., Châtelet de Paris, 390.
Boucher de Molandon, and Beaucorps, A., Jeanne d'Arc, 283.
Boudet, M., Jacquerie, 281.
Bouillart, J., Saint-Germain-des-Prés, 389.
Boulay, C. E. du, Historia universitatis Parisiensis, 440.
Boulé, A., Jeans sans Peur, 284.
Boulger, D., Belgium, **554**.
Boulting, W., Aeneas Sylvius 296; Italian republics, **613**.
Bouquet, M., Rerum Gallicarum et Francicarum scriptores, **967**.
Bourgain, L., Chaire française, 450.
Bourgeat, J., Vincent de Beauvais, 414.
Bourgeois, E., Capitulaire de Kiersy, 163.
Bourges, Pragmatic Sanction of, 268, 274.
Bourgin, G., Soissons, 252.
Bourne, E., Essays, 318; Henry the Navigator, 318.
Bourne, H., Mediaeval and modern Europe, **366**.

Bournou, F., Rectifications, 387.
Bourquelot, F., Foires de Champagne, 255.
Bourret, E., L'école de Séville, 359.
Bousquet, G., Peuple bulgare, 712.
Bousset, W., Antichrist legend, 355.
Boutaric, E., Institutions militaires, 262; Philippe le Bel, 245; Régime féodal, 162; Saint Louis, 245; Vincent de Beauvais, 412.
Boutell, C., Heraldry, 284.
Boutflower, D., Life of Ceolfrid, 131.
Boutié, L., Paris, 386.
Bouvier, C., Vienne, 271.
Bouvines, battle of, 242, 245.
Boyd, H., Triumph of Petrarch, 307.
Boyd, W., Ecclesiastical edicts, 338.
Boyeson, H., Norway, 724.
Bozzo, S., Storiche siciliane, 302.
Brachet, A., Pathologie mentale des rois de France, 283.
Bradley, H., Goths, 110.
Bradley, J., Dictionary of miniaturists, 466; Illuminated manuscripts, 466.
Braga, T., Universidade de Coimbra, 444.
Brainerd, E., Great hymns, 452.
Bramhall, E., Privileges of crusaders, 208.
Brand, J., Popular antiquities, 251.
Brandenburg, E., and Seeliger, G., Quellensammlung, 980.
Brandenburger, C., Polnische Geschichte, 698.
Brandi, K., Renaissance, 311; Werden der Renaissance, 308.
Branford, V., St. Columba, 129.
Brants, V., Théories économiques, 461.
Bratke, E., Wegweiser, 49.
Brehaut, E., History of the Franks, 949 note; Isidore of Seville, 350.
Bréhier, L., Cathédrale de Reims, 476; Colonies d'orientaux, 359; Croisades, 205; L'hagiographie Byzantine, 190; Querelle des images, 142; Schisme oriental, 177.
Brem, E., Gregor IX, 219.
Bréquigny, L., Table chronologique, 975 note.
Bresslau, H., Handbuch der Urkundenlehre, 240; Jahrbücher, Konrad II, 172; Quellen und Hilfsmittel, 19.
Bretholz, B., Geschichte Böhmens und Mährens, 700; Lateinische Palaeographie, 217.
Brétigny, treaty of, 277, 281.
Bretschneider, E., Mediaeval researches, 327.
Brett, E., Arms and armour, 200.
Breul, K., Cambridge songs, 450.
Brewer, J., Cistercians, 224; Giraldus Cambrensis Opera, 416; Monumenta Franciscana, 232; Opera inedita of Bacon, 436.
Brewster, H., Saints and festivals, 239.
Breyer, R., Arnold von Brescia, 218.
Breysig, K., Kulturgeschichte, 732.
Breysig, T., Jahrbücher, 136.
Bridges, J., Essays, 428; Jews, 857 note; Life and works of Roger Bacon, 428; Opus majus of Bacon, 429; Roger Bacon, 428.
Bridget, Saint, 126.
Bridrey, E., Privilège de la croix, 208.
Brièle, L., Hôpital de Sainte-Catherine, 389; Hôtel-Dieu, 389.
Brièle, L., and Coyecque, E., Hôtel-Dieu, 389.
Briggs, M., Heel of Italy, 199.
Bright, W., English church, 128.
Brinkmeier, E., Chronologie, 266; Glossarium, 448.
Brischar, J., Innocenz III, 218.
Brissaud, J., Droit français, 531.
British academy, 904.
British Isles, learning in the, 361–364.
British Museum, 3.
British society of Franciscan studies, 232.
Brittany, 541, 363.
Broadribb, W., and Besant, W., Constantinople, 663 note.
Brochet, J., Paulin de Nole, 338; S. Jérôme, 337.
Brockelmann, C., Arabische Literatur, 378.
Brockhaus Konversations-Lexicon, 191.
Brodrick, G., Merton college, 443; Oxford, 443.
Broeking, W., Eusebius Bruno, 383.
Brogger, A., Osebergfundet, 154.
Brom, G., Guide, 5 note.
Brook, Z., Investiture struggle, 182.
Brooks, E., Arab occupation of Crete, 146; Byzantines and Arabs, 189.
Brooks, S., King Alfred, 370.
Brosien, H., Karl der Grosse, 142.
Brou, L'évangélisation de l'Inde, 240.
Brown, A., Italian painting, 313.
Brown, E., Norman architecture, 475; Romanesque architecture, 475.
Brown, G., Arts in early England, 477; Schola to cathedral, 472.
Brown, H., Venetian republic, 296; Venice, 298; Venice, an historical sketch, 296.
Brown, J. B., Last great dreamer of crusades, 249.
Brown, J. C., Chemistry, 433.
Brown, J. W., Builders of Florence, 300; Florence, past and present, 300; Michael Scot, 398.

Brown, R., Calendar of State papers: Venetian, 302.
Browne, G., Alcuin, 366; Aldhelm, 364; Augustine, 130; Bede, 364; Boniface, 128; Christian church, 129; Conversion of Heptarchy, 130; Theodore and Wilfrith, 364.
Browning, O., Guelfs and Ghibellines, **618**; Condottieri, **618**.
Bruce, H., Age of schism, 269.
Brüch, J., Vulgärlatein, 447.
Brückner, A., Geschichte Russlands, **684**; Russische Literatur, **814**; Slavenapostel, 158.
Brugerette, J., Grégoire VII, 182.
Brugi, B., Atti della nazione germanica, 445; Giurisprudenza, 424.
Bruhnes, G., Foi chrétienne, **366**.
Brunetière, F., French literature, **454**.
Brunhild, 133.
Brunner, H., Deutsche Rechtgeschichte, **579**; Forschungen, **579** note; Grundzüge der deutschen Rechtsgeschichte, **579** note; Schwurgerichte, 142.
Brunot, F., Langue française, **454**.
Brusadelli, M., R. Bacone, 431.
Brutails, J., Précis d'archéologie, **299** note.
Bryan, M., Dictionary of painters, 313.
Bryce, J., Holy Roman empire, **499**; Iceland, **728** note; Roman and English law, 422; Studies, **728** note.
Bryce, W., Scottish Grey Friars, 228.
Bubnov, N., Gerberti opera mathematica, 372.
Buchon, C., Français dans Grèce, 329.
Buchon, J., Choix de chroniques, **973**; Collection des chroniques, **972**.
Buck, M., Conciliumbuch of Ulrich von Richenthal, 275.
Buck, W., Deutsche Kaufmann, 257.
Buckley, J., and Williams, W., Guide to fiction, **79**.
Budge, A., Paradise of the fathers, 119.
Budinsky, A., Universität Paris, 440.
Bücher, K., Frankfurt, 252.
Büchmann, G., Geflügelte Worte, **80**.
Büdinger, M., Allgemeine Geschichte, 106; Universalhistorie, 460.
Bühlmann, J., and Wagner, A., Das alte Rom, 347.
Bündgens, C., Länderkunde, 257.
Bürkner, R., Kirchliche Kunst, 474.
Bütow, A., Briefsteller, 419.
Bugge, A., Icelandic saga, 152; Vikingerne, 153.
Bulaeus, C., Historia universitatis Parisiensis, 440.
Bulfinch, T., Mythology, **796**.
Bulgaria, **710–713**, 156.
Bullarium Franciscanum, 232.
Bulletin critique de littérature, d'histoire, **172**; de la bibliothèque et des travaux historique (de Paris), 391; de la Société française de l'histoire de la médecine, 435; mensuel, **4** note.
Bullettino della Commissione archeologica comunale di Rome, 348; dell' Istituto storico italiano, **162**; di archeologia cristiana, 348.
Bumpus, J., Dictionary, **108** note.
Bumpus, T., Cathedrals of northern France, 476; of southern France, 476; Gothic architecture, 475.
Burckhardt, F., Bibliographie der Schweizergeschichte, **44**.
Burckhardt, J., Cicerone, 306; Renaissance, 305.
Burckhardt, R., Zoologie, **434**.
Burdach, K., Humanismus, 308; Renaissance, 308; Vom Mittelalter zur Reformation, **750**.
Burgess, J., Reconciliation, 461.
Burgundians, 108, 112.
Burgundy, 165, 168, 278, 284.
Burke, V., Spain, **629**.
Burns, C., Political ideals, 459.
Burnt Njal, story of, 152.
Burr, G., Anent the middle ages, 106; Literature of witchcraft, 404; Sources for a history of witchcraft, 404; The year 1000, 171.
Burton, M., Problem of evil, 342.
Bury, J., Constitution of later Roman empire, 189; Gibbon's Decline and Fall, **341**; Eastern Roman empire, **644**; Fall of Constantinople, 327; Freedom of thought, **740**; Hungarians, 159; Imperial administrative system, 190; Later Roman empire, **643**; Lombards and Venetians, 326; Naval policy of Roman empire, 190; Roman emperors, 189; St. Patrick, 128; Romances of chivalry, 264; The great palace, **661** note.
Bury, Richard de, Philobiblon, 465.
Buser, B., Lorenzo, 300; Mediceer, 300.
Bushnell, A., Storied windows, 477.
Bushnell, G., Inferno di Dante, 483.
Busk, W., Mediaeval popes, 216.
Buss, F., Winifrid-Bonifacius, 131.
Bussell, F., Roman empire, **648**.
Butler, A., Dante, 480; Forerunners of Dante, 482.
Butler, E., Lausiac history, 119; Sancti Benedicti regula, 121.
Butler, G., Echoes of Petrarch, 310.
Butler, I., Song of Roland, 454; Tales from old French, 455.
Butler, J., Walafrid Strabo, 371.

Butler, W., Lombard communes, 215.
Byrne, M., Prolegomena to Ausonius, 337.
Byzantinae historiae scriptores, **1002**.
Byzantine art, 470, 472, 474; literature, **800–802**; scholarship, 189, 190.
Byzantine chronical, **175**.
Byzantine emperors, lists of, 565–1118 A.D., 186–188, 1259–1453 A.D., 325.
Byzantine empire, **174–175**, **643–679**, **800–802**, **1003**; in sixth century, 113–116; and Charlemagne, 139, 142; and the Mohammedans, 144–146; and pope Gregory VII, 181; from 565 to 1095, 184–191; and the crusaders, 201, 206–207; under the Palaeologi, 324, 327, 330.
Byzantine review, **175** note.
Byzantinische Zeitschrift, **174**.

Cabrol, F., Angleterre chrétienne, 130; Dictionnaire, **111**.
Cadier, L., Naples, 301.
Caesar of Heisterbach, Dialogus miraculorum, 451.
Caetani, L., Annali dell' Islam, 147; Maometto, 148.
Caffin, C., How to study pictures, 313.
Cahun, L., Turcs et Mongols, 328.
Caillet, R., Université d'Avignon, 442.
Caird, L., Corsica, 302.
Cajori, F., Mathematics, 377.
Callet, A., Paris universitaire, 441.
Calligraphy, Carolingian, 365, 366.
Calmette, J., Diplomatie carolingienne, 167.
Calthrop, M., Crusades, 204.
Calvert, A., Alhambra, 375; Moorish remains, 375.
Calvi, E., Bibliografia di Roma, 348; Bibliografia Petrarchese, 315; Biblioteca de bibliografia storica italiana, **38**.
Cam, H., Local government, **534**.
Camaldolites, 222.
Cambridge historical essays, **941**; historical series, **940**; history of English literature, **812**; manuals of science and literature, **942**; medieval history, **340**.
Cambridge, university of, 438, 443, 445.
Camerlinck, R., Saint Léger, 361.
Campagna, Roman, 348.
Campaner, Arabes en Baleares, 149.
Cañal, C., San Isidoro, 352.
Canale, M., Genova, 299.
Canon law, 421–425.
Canonge, F., Jeanne d'Arc, 283.
Canons Regular, 222, 227.
Canossa, 180–183.
Cantor, M., Mathematik, **436**.
Cantù, C., Ezelino da Romano, 219; Storia degli Italiani, **600**.
Canute the Great, 151, 152.
Capasso, B., Fonti Napolitane, **40**.
Capella, Martianus, De nuptiis Philogiae, 352.
Capet, Hugh, 166–168.
Cappelletti, L., Le chiese d'Italia, **466**; Storia d'Italia, **881**.
Cappelli, A., Cronologia, **262**; Dizionario di abbreviature, **224**.
Cappello, G., Gregorio I, 124.
Capponi, G., Firenze, 299.
Carden, R., Genoa, 299.
Cárdenas, F., Propriedad en España, **635**.
Cardinals, 174, 178, 233, 236.
Carducci, J., Gregorio Magno, 124.
Carlile, W., Modern money, 254.
Carlini, A., Africa di Petrarca, 310.
Carlyle, A., Sources of medieval political theory, 459.
Carlyle, J., Inferno, 481.
Carlyle, R. and A., Mediaeval political theory, 459.
Carlyle, T., Early kings, 153.
Carmelites, 222.
Carmichael, M., Lady Poverty, 225.
Carmina burana, 450.
Caro, E., Saint Dominique, 232.
Caro, G., Genua, 299; Juden, **858**; Spanische Geschichte, 319.
Caro, J., Geschichte Polens, **697** (*see also* **696**).
Carolingian culture, 364–368.
Carolingians, decline of, 165, 167.
Carotti, G., History of art, 473.
Carr, A., Church and Roman empire, **418**.
Carra de Vaux, B., Avicenne, 376; Gazali, 376.
Carriere, M., Kunst, 473.
Carrière, V., Ordre du Temple, 208.
Cartellieri, A., Defensor pacis, 292; Donaueschinger Briefsteller, 420; Heinrich VI, 218; Philipp II, 244; Richard Löwenherz, 206.
Cartellieri, O., Herzöge von Burgund, 284; Sizilianische Vesper, 301; Suger, 244.
Carter, J., Religious life, 335.
Carthusians, 222, 227.
Cartography, 248, 259.
Cartwright, J., Beatrice d'Este, 298; Isabella D'Este, 302.
Carus, J., Zoologie, 434.
Carus, P., Devil, 355.
Cary, H., Divine comedy, 481; Vision, or Hell, of Dante, 481.

Caspar, E., Pippin, 136; Roger II, 199.
Cassani, G., Studio di Bologna, 442.
Cassian, of Marseilles, 117.
Cassiodorus, 118, 340, 341, 343; Letters, 110.
Castelnau, A., Médicis, 300.
Castiglione, Baldassare, Courtier, 308.
Castile, 315, 316, 320; list of kings of, 1214–1504 A.D., 317.
Castles, 260, 262.
Castro, G., Arnaldo da Brescia, 218.
Catacombs of Rome, 347.
Catalan culture, 317, 321, 322.
Catalani, M., Aeneas Sylvius, 275.
Catalina y Garcia, J., Castilla y Léon, 320.
Catalogo del museo dell' ottavo centenario dello studio Bolognese, 442.
Catalogue des ouvrages Normands de Caen, 201; général der Bibliothèque national, 4; général des bibliothèques publiques de France, 4 note; général des manuscrits des bibliothèques de France, 4 note; of books relating to architecture, 478; of printed books in the British Museum, 3; of the Dante collection in University college, 483.
Catalogues of libraries and archives, 3–5; of manuscripts, 4 note, 5; of medieval libraries, 469.
Catalonia, 315, 320.
Cathedral schools, 368, 371.
Cathedrals, 470–478.
Catherine of Siena, 267, 271.
Catholic encyclopedia, 104.
Cattaneo, R., Architecture in Italy, 475.
Caudel, M., Invasions arabes, 148.
Cauzons, T., Albigeois, 403; Inquisition, 403; Magie, 404; Vaudois, 403.
Cavaignac, E., France, 523.
Cavanna, N., Umbria serafica, 230.
Cavazza, F., Studio bolognese, 443.
Cazenove, J., St. Hilary, 120.
Cecchuchi, E., Conciles, 471 note.
Cecconi, E., Concilio di Firenze, 274.
Celano, Lives of St. Francis, 225.
Celier, L., Réforme de la cour pontificale, 270.
Cellini, Benvenuto, Life, 308.
Celtic Christianity, 129.
Cenni, Monumenta dominiationis pontificae, 960 note.
Censorship of books, 463, 464.
Centralblatt für Bibliothekswesen, 6 note.
Century dictionary of names, 86.
Cerroti, F., and Celani, E., Bibliografia di Roma, 348.
Cesare, Fioretti, 225.
Chalandon, F., Alexis Comnène, 207; Domination normande, 199; Jean II Comnène, 207.
Challamel, A., Peuple français, 767.
Chambers, E., Mediaeval stage, 253.
Chambon, F., Robert de Sorbon, 442.
Champion, P., François Villon, 282; Guillaume de Flavy, 283.
Chan Ju-Kua, Chinese and Arab trade, 249.
Chapotin, M., Dominicaines, 231.
Charency, H., Grande-Trappe, 227.
Charlemagne, 138–144; age of, in history of culture, 364–368.
Charles IV, emperor, 286, 287, 291.
Charles V, of France, 278, 282.
Charles VI, of France, 277, 278.
Charles VII, of France, 277, 278, 282.
Charles VIII, of France, 278, 284, 295, 296.
Charles, E., Roger Bacon, 428.
Charles Martel, 134, 136.
Charles of Anjou, 293, 301.
Charles the Bold, 278, 279, 284.
Charles the Fat, 151, 153, 165.
Charmatz, R., Wegweiser, 35.
Chartes et diplômes de France, 975.
Chartier, F., Notre-Dame-de-Paris, 389.
Chartres cathedral, 470, 472, 476; schools of, 380–381, 410, 412.
Chartularium studii Bononiensis, 444; universitatis Parisiensis, 444.
Chassant, A., Dictionnaire des abréviations, 225; Paléographie, 221.
Chatelain, E., Bibliographie de l'université de Paris, 445; Mélanges offerts à, 935; Notes tironiennes, 226.
Châtelet in Paris, 386, 389.
Chaumont, L., Cluny, 177.
Chauvin, V., Bibliographie des ouvrages arabes, 379.
Chaytor, H., Troubadours, 454.
Check-list of collections, 15.
Cheetham, S., Mysteries, 356.
Chélard, R., Civilisation français, 781.
Chemistry, 433.
Chérancé, L., Saint Clare, 230; Saint François, 229.
Chevalier, A., Hôtel-Dieu, 389.
Chevalier, E., Marine français, 547.
Chevalier, G., Saint Bernard, 394.
Chevalier, U., Poésie liturgique, 450; Repertoire des sources historiques, 16, 17; Repertorium hymnologicum, 452.
Chevin, l'abbé, Dictionnaire, 137.
Cheyney, E., European background, 248; Industrial history, 251; Readings, 280.
Chiappelli, L., Studio bolognese, 442.
Children's crusade, 202, 207.

Chilperic, 133.
Chivalry, 260, 261, 263.
Chledowski, C., Rom, 311.
Choix de chroniques, **973.**
Chollet, L'aristotélisme, 398.
Chone, H., Friedrich II, 219.
Chossat, M., Thomas d'Aquin, 408.
Christen, B., Franciscus von Assisi, 229.
Christendom, foes of, 144–158.
Christian, A., Paris, 388.
Christian archaeology, **301–302**; cult, 174, 178.
Christianity and ancient culture, 334, 338; Celtic, 129; expansion of, 174, 178; expansion of, among the Slavs, 156, 158; triumph of, 334, 335, 338.
Christliche Kunst, 478.
Chronicles and memorials of Great Britain and Ireland, **995**; of the crusades, 204.
Chroniken der deutschen Städte, **982.**
Chronology, **68–76**, **250–267.**
Chroust, A., Monumenta palaeographica, **232.**
Church, **49–55**, **104–114**, **127–128**, **176–180**, **394–498**, **953–964**: and Charlemagne, 139, 141; and feudalism, 161, 163, 174, 178; from the 8th to the 11th centuries, 173–179; Greek, 190; in the 12th and 13th centuries, 233–241; from about 1300 to about 1450, 267–275; in Spain, 316, 321.
Church, A., Stories of Charlemagne, 143.
Church, R., Anselm, 381; Beginnings of the middle ages, **335** note; Cassiodorus, 341; Dante, 480.
Chwolson, D., Judentum, **874.**
Ciampi, I., I Cassiodori, 343.
Cid Campeador, 315, 318, 319.
Cim, A., Le livre, 465.
Cipolla, C., Signorie italiane, 297; Storia italiana, **37**; Vêpres Siciliennes, 303; Verona, 302.
Cirot, C., Historiographie espagnole, **997** note.
Cistercians, 222, 227.
Cities, 247, 251–253.
Civilization, history of, **729–738**, **749–755.**
Claar, M., Venetianische Verfassung, 299.
Claparède, H., Burgondes, 112.
Clare of Assisi, 223, 225, 230.
Clark, A., Colleges of Oxford, 443.
Clark, G., Military architecture, 263.
Clark, H., Cid Campeador, 318.
Clark, J., Cambridge, 444; Care of books, 465; Libraries, 464.
Clark, V., Studies in Latin, 447.
Clarke, A., Cursus, **418.**
Clarke, W., St. Basil, 120.
Classical heritage in early middle ages, 348–352; literature, art, and archaeology in Italy, 303–315; scholarship, **765–786.**
Classics, **765–786**; in time of Charlemagne, 365, 366; Latin, 349–352; rise and decline of interest in the ancient, 410–416.
Classiques français, 456.
Clausen, J., Honorius III, 219.
Clausier, E., Grégoire le Grand, 124.
Clavel, V., Arnauld de Brescia, 218.
Clay, R., Hospitals, 435.
Clédat, L., Poésie lyrique, **456.**
Clemen, P., Plastik, 367; Portraitsdarstellung Karls, 142.
Clement, C., Christian symbols, 356; Constantinople, **666.**
Clément, P., Jacques Coeur, 282.
Clergy, life of, 174, 179.
Clerval, A., Arts libéraux à Chartres, 412; Ecoles de Chartres, 371.
Cleveland, R., Soliloquies of St. Augustine, 341.
Clinch, G., Costume, **198.**
Cloetta, W., Komödie und Tragödie, 449.
Cloquet, L., Cathedrales, 475.
Clouzot, E., Dépouillement d'inventaires, 391; Inondations à Paris, 388.
Clovis, 132–135.
Cluny, monastery of, 173, 176, 177.
Cobham, C., Patriarchs, **671.**
Cochin, H., Ami de Pétrarque, 310; Frère de Pétrarch, 310.
Cockayne, O., Leechdoms, 430.
Codera, F., Almoravides, 322; Bibliotheca arabico-hispana, 150; Historia arabe española, 322.
Codex diplomaticus Hungariae, **1006** note; diplomaticus neerlandicus, **977** note; diplomaticus Poloniae, **1005**; diplomaticus Poloniae minoris, **1005** note; diplomaticus regni Croatiae, **1006** note; regularum monasticarum, **964**; diplomaticus, S. Sedis, **960** note.
Cohen, G., Théâtre à Paris, 253; Théâtre religieux, 253.
Cohn, W., Normannisch-sizilische Flotte, 200.
Coimbra, university of, 439, 444.
Coins, **292–298.**
Coker, F., Readings, 288.
Cola di Rienzo, 293, 295, 297, 302; Briefwechsel, **750** note; Letters, 302.
Cole, P., Later Roman education, 337.
Coleman, C., Constantine, 136, 314.

Colección de documentos, historia de Aragon, 999 note; de documentos ineditos, Corona de Arsgón, 999; de documentos ineditos, historia de España, 997; de documentos ineditos, historia de Navarre, 999 note; de las crónicas y memorias de los reyes de Castilla, 998.
Colleccao de historia Portugueza, 1001 note.
Collection complète des mémoires, 969; des chroniques Belges inédites, 977; de documents inédits sur l'histoire de France, 965; d'éditions photographiques de la Bibliothèque royale de Bruxelles, 467; des chroniquers et trouvères Belges, 977 note; des chroniques nationales françaises, 972; des meilleurs dissertations, 545; des mémoires relatifs à l'histoire de France, 971; de textes et documents pour l'étude historique du christianisme, 955; de textes pour servir à l'étude et à l'enseignement de l'histoire, 968; d'études et de documents, 231.
Collections of church history, 488–498; of original sources, 949–1013; of secondary material, 885–948.
College of cardinals, 174, 178.
Colleges in medieval universities, 438, 441, 443, 445.
Collignon, A., Pétrone, 414.
Collinet, P., Droit de Justinien, 116.
Collins, W., Cathedral cities of Italy, 476; Cathedral cities of Spain, 476.
Colmeiro, M., Constitución de Léon y Castilla, 633; Cortes, 1000; Derecho administrativo español, 633 note; Reyes cristianos, 319.
Coluccio Salutati, 304, 311; Epistolario, 314.
Columba, 126, 129.
Columban, 126, 129, 130.
Comba, E., Vaudois, 403.
Combarieu, J., Musique, 478.
Combet, J., Louis XI, 284.
Comenge, L., Medicina, 321.
Commemorative historical essays, 934–939.
Commerce, 247, 248, 255–257; Arabian, 149.
Commines, Philip de, Mémoires, 279.
Compagni, Dino, Chronicle, 296.
Comparetti, D., Vergil, 335.
Compass, 248, 258.
Compayré, G., Abelard, 393.
Conciliar movement, 267, 269, 272.
Concilium Basiliense, 275.
Conclave, 453.
Concordat of Worms, 181, 184.
Condé, J., Arabs in Spain, 149.
Conder, C., Latin kingdom, 205.
Conrad II, 170, 172, 174.
Conrad III, 202, 206, 211, 213, 217.
Conrad IV, 213, 214, 219.
Conrad, J., Handwörterbuch, 116.
Conradi Hirsaugensis, Dialogus, 416.
Conradin, 213, 220.
Conrat, M., Quellen des römischen Rechts, 423.
Constance, council of, 267, 269, 273, 275.
Constans, L., Les grands historiens du moyen âge, 968 note.
Constantine (Cyrillus), 156, 158.
Constantinople, 661–669; 113–114; Northmen in, 151; and the fourth crusade, 202, 204, 206; Latin emperors of, 1204–1261, 208; fall of, in 1453 A.D., 325, 327, 328, 330.
Consuetudines monasticae, 121.
Continental legal history, 943, 422.
Conway, M., Demonology, 355.
Conway, P., Thomas Aquinas, 406.
Conybeare, E., Key of truth, 402.
Cook, T., Rouen, 198.
Cooke, E., St. Columba, 129.
Cooper, C., Annals of Cambridge, 444; Memorials of Cambridge, 444.
Cooper-Marsden, A., Lerins, 120.
Coppée, H., Arab Moors, 149.
Coppi, E., Università italiane, 443.
Corazzini, G., Madre di Petrarca, 310.
Corbin, P., France, 537.
Cordey, J., Comtes de Savoie, 281.
Cornish, F., Chivalry, 261.
Cornu, P., Paris, 386.
Coroleu, J., and Pella y Forgas, D., Cortes, 321.
Corpo diplomatico Portuguez, 1001 note.
Corpus iuris civilis, 116; juris canonici, 425; poeticum boreale, 154; scriptorum christianorum, 121; scriptorum ecclesiasticorum latinorum, 954; scriptorum historiae Byzantinae, 1003.
Correa da Serra, Colleccao de livros ineditos, 1001 note.
Corroyer, E., Architecture romane, 475; Gothic architecture, 475; Mont-Saint-Michel, 472.
Corsica, 302.
Cortes de los antiguos reinos de Aragón y de Valencia, 1000 note; de Léon y de Castilla, 1000.
Cortes of Spain, 316, 318, 320.
Cosack, H., Konrads III Kreuzzug, 206.
Cosenza, M., Petrarca and Cola di Rienzo, 295; Petrarch's letters, 307.

Cosneau, E., Connétable de Richemont, 282; Traités de Guerre de cent ans, 285.
Costelloe, L., Bonaventure, 228.
Costume, history of, **191–199.**
Cotterill, H., Italy, **617.**
Coulanges, Fustel de, *see* Fustel de Coulanges.
Coulton, G., Francis to Dante, 216; Mediaeval garner, **384**; Mediaeval studies, **909.**
Councils, church, **469–471**, **982**, 234, 237.
Courland, **691.**
Cousin, L., Constantinople, **1002** note.
Cousin, V., Ouvrages d'Abelard, 395; Opera, 395; Roger Bacon, 432.
Coussemaker, E., Art harmonique, 477; Histoire de l'harmonie, 477; Scriptorum de musica medii aevi, 477.
Couture, L., Cursus, 419.
Coville, A., Cabochiens, 282.
Cox, C., Sanctuaries, 239.
Cox, G., Crusades, 204.
Coxe, W., Austria, 288.
Coyecque, E., L'Hôtel-Dieu, 389.
Crahay, E., Thomas d'Aquin, 462.
Craigie, W., Icelandic sagas, 154.
Cram, R., Gothic quest, 473; Heart of Europe, 475; Lectures on architecture, 472.
Cramer, J., De Graecis studiis, 415.
Crane, T., Exempla, 451.
Crawford, F., Rulers of the south, 197; Salve Venetia, 298.
Crawfurd, R., Plague and pestilence, 254.
Creasy, E., Ottoman Turks, 329.
Crécy, battle of, 277, 280.
Creighton, C., Epidemics, 254.
Creighton, L., Heroes of European history, **911.**
Creighton, M., Historical lectures, **910**; Papacy, 269.
Creizenach, N., Aeneis im Mittelalter, 414.
Crellin, A., Roger Bacon's historical scholarship, 461.
Crete, Mohammedans in, 145, 146.
Crevier, J., Université de Paris, 440.
Criticism, historical, 458, 461.
Crivellucci, A., Stato e la chiesa, 136.
Croiset, A. and M., Abridged history of Greek literature, 336; Littérature grecque, 336.
Crosa, E., Sovranità popolare, 461.
Crowe, E., France, **516.**
Crowe, J., and Cavalcaselle, G., History of painting, 313.
Crozals, J., Lanfranc, 382.
Cruel, R., Geschichte der Predigt, 238.
Cruickshank, J. and A., Christian Rome, **347.**
Crusades, 201–211.
Cubberley, E., Syllabus, **59.**
Cuissard, C., Grec à Orléans, 415; Théodulfe, 367.
Cult, Christian, 234, 239.
Culture, history of, **109**, **729–848**, 333–483.
Cumont, F., Latin le langue liturgique, 336; Mysteries of Mithra, 337; Oriental religions, 337.
Cumulative book review digest, **88.**
Cunha, V., Portuguese monarchy, 318.
Cunningham, W., S. Austin, 342; Western civilization, 248.
Curcio, G., Q. Orazio Flacco, 414.
Curiosum urbis regionum XIV, 345, **346.**
Curschmann, F., Hungersnöte, 254.
Cursus, 417–419.
Curteis, A., Roman empire, **346.**
Curtin, J., Mongols: a history, 326; Mongols in Russia, 326.
Curtis, E., Roger of Sicily, 197.
Cusa, Nicholas, 268, 273.
Cusani, F., Storia di Milano, 298.
Cust, R., Life of Cellini, 308.
Cuthbert, Father, Friars, 226; Romanticism of St. Francis, 228; St. Francis, 224.
Cutts, E., Parish priests, 235; Saint Augustine, 340; Saint Augustine of Canterbury, 130; Saint Jerome, 337; Scenes and characters, **912.**
Cyclopedia of education, **117.**
Cyprus, 209.
Czechs, 155–156.
Czeppan, R., Crécy, 280.
Czerny, A., Bibliothek St. Florian, 468.

Dändliker, K., Geschichte der Schweiz, 290; Schweizerische Geschichte, 290; Switzerland, 288.
Daenell, E., Hanse, 257.
Daering, O., Deutschlands Kunstdenkmäler, **204.**
Dagassan, J., Autorité publique, 164.
Dagobert, 133, 136.
Dahlmann, F., Dänemark, **722.**
Dahlmann-Waitz, Quellenkunde, **28.**
Dahmen, R., Abälardsche Ethik, 394.
Dahn, F., Könige der Germanen, 111; Urgeschichte, 111; Westgothen, 112.
Dalton, O., Byzantine art, 474; Letters of Sidonius, 335.
Damian, Peter, 174, 179, 380, 382.
Danes in England, 150, 152.
Daniel, C., Etudes classiques, 413.
Danmarks riges historie, **720.**

Dann, E., Historical geography, **139** note.
Dannemann, F., Naturwissenschaften, 351, 427.
Dannenberg, H., Münzkunde, **293** note.
Dante, 478–483; Convivio, 481; De monarchia, 482; De vulgari eloquentia, 482; Divine comedy, 481; Letters, 482; Quaestio de aqua et terra, 482; Vita nuova, 482; Works, 483.
Dante society, Annual report, 483.
Dantier, A., Monastères bénédictins, 469.
Danvila y Collado, M., El poder civil en España, **634**; Cortes, 320.
Danzas, A., Jourdain de Saxe, 231.
Daquet, A., Confédération suisse, 290.
Dareste, M., France, **511**.
Darmesteter, A., Cours de grammaire, 455.
Darmstaedter, L., Naturwissenschaften, 429.
Daru, P., Venise, 298.
Dasent, G., Burnt Njal, 152.
Dates, lists of, **68–71**.
Daumet, G., France et Castille, 320.
D'Auvergne, E., Castles, 263.
Davenport, C., The book, 464.
Davenport, E., False Decretals, 177.
David of Dinant, 400, 402.
Davidsohn, R., Florenz, 299; Forschungen, 299; Philipp II, 244.
Davies, G., Renascence, 313.
Davis, E., Invasion of Egypt by Louis IX, 207.
Davis, H., Charlemagne, 140; Medieval Europe, **367**.
Davis, W., Mediaeval and modern Europe, **368**; Roman empire, 109.
Davison, E., Forerunners of St. Francis, 227.
Day, C., History of commerce, 248.
Deane, S., Proslogium of St. Anselm, 381.
Debidour, A., Du Guesclin, 281.
Debidour, A., and Etienne, E., Chroniquers français, **968** note.
Debout, H., Jeanne d'Arc, 283.
Dechamps, P., Dictionnaire de géographie, **131**.
Declareuil, O., Epreuves judiciaires, 164.
Decretals, pseudo-Isidorian, or False, 173, 177.
Dedieu, L., Columban, 130.
Degering-Berlin, H., Katalog der Bibliothek Marienfeld, 469.
De Guignes, M., Huns, 328.
Dehio, G., and Bezold, G., Baukunst, **474**.
Dejob, C., Foi religieuse, 312.
Delaborde, H., Charles VIII, 284; Enseignements de Saint-Louis, 246; Jean de Joinville, 207.
Delabre, Baron de, Rhodes, 208.
Delachenal, R., Charles V., 282.
Delacroix, H., Philosophie médiévale, 407.
Delalain, P., Libraire parisien, **464**.
Delambre, J., Astronomie, 433.
Delannoy, P., Louvain, 444.
Delarc, O., Normands, 199; Saint Grégoire VII, 182.
Delaunay, H., Sociétés savantes, **210**.
Delaville le Roulx, J., Cartulaire des Hospitaliers, 211; France en Orient, 208; Hospitaliers, 208; Ordre de S. Jean, 208.
Delbrück, H., Kriegskunst, 115.
Del Castillo, Diccionario de España, 319.
Delehaye, H., Culte des martyrs, 356; Grégoire le Grand, 125; Legends of the saints, 354; Stylites, 120.
Delèque, R., Université de Paris, 440–441.
Delisle, L., Actes de Henri II, 198; Album paléographique, **231** note; Alexandre de Villedieu, 449; Bérard de Naples, 420; Bibliothèque de Corbie, 468; Cabinet des manuscrits, 469; Classe agricole, 198, 251; Documents sur les livres, 469; Ecole calligraphique de Tours, 366; Ecoles d'Orléans, 412; Formulaire de Clairmarais, 420; Formulaire de Tréguier, 420; Instruction de la noblesse, 264; Littérature latine, **797**; Philippe Auguste, 244; Primat, 449; Summa dictaminis à Beauvais, 420; Templiers, 208.
Del Mar, A., Middle ages revisited, **352**; Monetary systems, 254; Money and civilization, 254.
Delorme, F., Opuscule de R. Bacon, 432.
Delpech, H., Tactique, 262.
Demaison, L., Album de la cathédrale de Reims, 476; Cathédrale de Reims, 476.
Demay, G., Costume, **197**.
Demimuid, M., Jean de Salisbury, 414; Pierre le Vénérable, 227.
Demonology, 353, 355.
Denicke, H., Hansestädte, 330.
Deniel, J., Blanche de Castille, 245.
Denifle, H., Archiv für Literaturgeschichte, **789**; Benediktiner an der Universität Paris, 441; Bibel-Correctorien, 415; Délégués des universités au concile de Constance, 273;

Désolation des églises, 281; Documents relatifs à l'université de Paris, 444; Sentenzen Abälards, 394; Universitäten, 439; Universités françaises, 444.
Denifle, H., and Chatelain, E., Chartularium, 444; Jeanne d'Arc et l'université, 284.
Denis, E., Bohême, 274; Huss, 274.
Denison, G., Cavalry, 262.
Denk, O., Unterrichtswesen, 337.
Denmark, 720–722, 1007–1008.
Dennistoun, J., Dukes of Urbino, 302.
Denzinger, H., Enchiridion symbolorum, 241.
De Pauw, N., Vie intime, 264.
Depoin, J., Chartes de Saint-Martin-les-Champs, 390; Questions mérovingiennes, 137.
Depping, G., Juifs, 875; Normands, 153; Réglemens d'Etienne Boileau, 258.
Déprez, E., Guerre de cent ans, 281.
De Renzi, S., Salerno, 443.
Derichsweiler, H., Lotheringen, 597.
Der Islam, Zeitschrift, 149.
Descloux, E., Tiers ordre, 230.
Desdevises du Dézert, G., Croisades, 209; Don Carlos, 320..
De Selincourt, B., Homes of Franciscans, 230.
Des Essarts, A., Croisade des enfants, 207.
Desiderius, 134, 138.
Desjardins, A., Etats généraux, 281; Louis, XI, 284.
Deslandres, P., Conciles de Latran, 471; Eglise catholique, 480 note; Innocent IV, 219.
Des Marez, G., Luttes sociales, 251.
Desmaze, C., Sainte Chapelle, 389; Université de Paris, 441.
Deutsch, S., Abälard, 394; Verurteilung Abälard, 395.
Deutsche Literaturkalender, 95 note; Reichstagsakten, 292; Zeitschrift für Geschichtswissenschaft, 151 note.
Devic, Dom, and Vaissette, Dom, Languedoc, 540.
Deville, A., Château-Gaillard, 262.
Devil-lore, 353, 355.
De Vinne, T., Invention of printing, 307; Notable printers, 307.
Devrient, E., Genealogisches Handbuch, 273.
Dewe, J., Mediaeval and modern history, 337.
D'Hozier, Armorial, 291.
Dialogue of the Exchequer, 197, 436.
Dibben, L., Secretaries, 418.
Dickinson, E., Music, 477.
Dictatus papae, 180, 183.
Dictionaries and encyclopaedias, 86, 89–120, 136–138, 445, 448.
Dictionnaire d'archéologie chrétienne, 111; de biographie française, 93 note; de geographie, 131; d'histoire et de géographie ecclésiastique, 110; de la bible, 107; de théologie catholique, 109; du droit canonique, 107; topographique de la France, 138.
Didot, A., Alde Manuce, 312.
Didron, A., Iconographie chrétien, 474.
Die Kultur der Gegenwart, 720.
Die osteuropäischen Literaturen, 312.
Die Philosophie der Gegenwart, 57.
Dieckhoff, A., Waldenser, 403.
Diederichs, E., Deutsches Leben, 203.
Diefenbach, L., Glossarium, 448; Novum glossarium, 448.
Diehl, C., Etudes byzantines, 674; Exarchat de Ravenne, 115; Figures byzantines, 673; Justinien, 114; L'Afrique byzantine, 115; L'art byzantin, 199; Manuel d'art Byzantin, 474; Palerme, 199; Ravenne, 110; Théodora, 115; Venise, 298.
Diepgen, P., Medizin, 428; Medizinisches, 435; Traum und Traumdeutung, 430.
Dierauer, J., Eidgenossenschaft, 290.
Diercks, G., Geschichte Spaniens, 630; Spanische Geschichte, 630 note.
Dierks, F., Araber, 376.
Dieterich, K., Byzantinische Charakterköpfe, 679.
Dieterici, F., Alfarabi's philosophische Abhandlungen, 379; Philosophie der Araber, 376.
Dietrich, K., Byzantinische Zeitschrift, 116.
Dieudonné, A., Denier parisis, 254; Monnaie royale, 254.
Diez, F., Troubadours, 456.
Digest of book reviews, 88.
Di Giovanni, Palermo, 199.
Dill, S., Roman society, 335.
Dilthey, W., Analyse des Menschen, 309; Geisteswissenschaften, 826; Weltanschauung, 818.
Dinsmore, C., Aids to the study of Dante, 483; Dante, 480.
Dionysius the Areopagite, 353, 354, 357; Celestial hierarchy, 354; Works, 354.
Dios de la Rada y Delgado, J., España cristiana, 319.
Diplomatarium Norvegicum, 1009; Suecanum, 1011.
Diplomatics, 238–249.
Dixon, E., Florentine wool trades, 256.
Dizionario di erudizione, 114.

Djuvara, T., Partage de la Turquie, 330.
Dmitrewski, M., Freiwillige Armut, 179.
Dobiache-Rojdestvensky, O., Vie paroissiale, 237.
Documenta antiqua Franciscana, 232.
Documenti di storia italiana, **992**.
Documents inédits relatifs à l'histoire de la Grèce, 330.
Documents inédits sur l'histoire de France, **965**.
Documents relating to Cambridge, 445.
Dodd, J., Canon law, 424.
Dods, M., Forerunners of Dante, 482; Works of St. Augustine, 341.
Dodsworth, R., and Dugdale, W., Monasticon, 226.
Dodu, G., Royaume latin de Jerusalem, 206.
Doeberl, M., Monumenta Germaniae selecta, **983** note.
Döllinger, J. Fables respecting the popes, **445**; Griechische Literatur, 414; Jews, **857** note; Ludwig of Bavaria, 289; Papst und das Konzil, 446; Sectengeschichte, 402; Studies, **913**; Universitäten, 444.
Döring, A., Die beiden Bacon, 431.
Dogma, history of, **472–478**.
Doize, J., Grégoire le Grand, 124.
Dollfus, L., Espagnes, 319.
Domet de Vorges, E., Saint Anselme, 382.
Dominicans, 223, 231.
Dominici, Cardinal, 273.
Donation of Constantine, 134, 135, 136; of Pepin, 139, 141.
Donatus, Ars grammatica, 349, 352.
Dondorff, H., Normannen, 197.
Donower, F., Genova, 299.
Dopffel, H., Kaisertum, 176.
Dopsch, A., Wirtschaftsentwickelung, 142.
Doren, A., Florentiner Wirthschaftsgeschichte, 256; Florentiner Zünfte, 300; Kaufmannsgilden, 253.
Dorez, L., Manuscrits à peintures, 467.
Dorner, A., Augustinus, 342; Glaubenslehren, 239.
Douais, C., Albigèisme, 403; Albigeois, 403; Bernard Guido, Practica inquisitionis, 404; Confessions de St. Augustin, 340; Documents a l'histoire de l'inquisition, 404; Inquisition, 403.
Doublier, L., Roger Bacon, 431.
Douglas, N., Calabria, 199.
Dow, E., Atlas, **121** note; Feudal régime, 161.
Dowling, T., and Fletcher, E., Hellenism in England, 363.
Dozy, R., Cid, 319; Islamisme, 148; Recherches, 321; Spanish Islam, 149.
Dozy, R., and Engelmann, W., Glossaire, 378.
Dräseke, J., Anselm von Havelberg, 207; Johannes Scotus, 372.
Drake, F., Masters of the spiritual life, 340.
Drake, M. and W., Saints, 356.
Drane, A., Christian schools, **845**; Dominican order, 231; St. Dominic, 232.
Draper, J., Intellectual development, **746**.
Draper, W., Petrarch's secret, 307.
Draycott, G., Mahomet, 146.
Drehmann, J., Leo IX, 178.
Dresdner, A., Kultur- und Sittengeschichte, **465**.
Dreves, G., Hymnendichtung, 450; Hymnologische Beiträge, 451; Kirche der Lateiner, 450.
Driault, E., Histoire de la civilisation, **733** note.
Droysen, G., Handatlas, **123**.
Drumann, W., Bonifacius VIII, 271.
Dryer, J., Planetary systems, 433.
Duballet, Abbé, Droit canonique, 424.
Dubarle, E., Université de Paris, 440.
Dubnow, S., Jews in Russia, **856** note.
Dubois, A., Latinité d'Ennodius, 336.
Dubois, G., Historia ecclesiae Parisiensis, 389.
Dubois, L., St. Francis, 229.
Dubois, P., De recuperatione Terra Sanctae, 211.
Du Bourg, A., Saint Odon, 178.
Dubreuil-Chambardel, L., Médecins, 435.
Du Breul, J., Paris, 388.
Du Cange, C., Constantinople, 207; Glossarium, 448.
Du Chaillu, P., Viking age, 153.
Duchesne, A., Historiae Normannorum scriptores, 200.
Duchesne, L., Christian worship, 179; Churches separated from Rome, 177; Cursus, 419; Early history of church, 119; Liber pontificalis, **959** note; Temporal sovereignty, 141.
Duckett, G., Charters of Cluni, 179.
Dudan, A., Monarchia degli Absburgo, **588** note.
Dudden, F., Gregory the Great, 123.
Dühring, E., The two Bacons, 431.
Dümmler, E., Alchvin, 367; Anselm, 382; Hrabanstudien, 371; Ostfränkishes Reich, 168.
Duff, N., Matilda, 184.

Duffield, S., Latin hymn writers, 452.
Duffy, B., Tuscan republics, 300.
Dufourcq, A., Christianisme, **426**; Saint Anselme, 382; Science, 429.
Dugdale, W., and Dodsworth, R., Monasticon, 226.
Duhem, P., Fragment de l'Opus tertium, 437; Léonardo de Vinci, 314; Physique d'Aristote, 398; Système du monde, 433; Théorie physique, 433.
Dulaurier, E., Albigeois, 403.
Dumoulin, M., Théodoric, 111.
Dunand, P., Etudes critiques, 282; Jeanne d'Arc, 282.
Dunbar, B., Dictionary of saintly women, **482** note.
Duncalf, F., and Krey, A., Parallel source problems, **385**.
Dungern, O., Heerenstand, 262; War Deutschland ein Wahlreich, **585**.
Dunham, S., Poland, **694** note; Spain and Portugal, **627**.
Dunning, W., Political theories, 459.
Dunn-Pattison, R., Black Prince, 279.
Duns Scotus, John, 405, 409, 410; Opera, 410.
Dupuy, A., Alcuin, 367.
Dupuy, P., Boniface VIII, 271.
Durand, G., Cathédrale d'Amiens, 476.
Durrieu, P., Archives de Naples, 301; Heures du duc de Berri, 467.
Duruy, V., France, **522**; Moyen âge, **369**.
Dussieux, France, **976** note.
Dussieux, L., Hongrois, 159.
Duvernoy, E., Duc de Lorraine, 244.
Dwight, H., Constantinople, **665**.
Dyer, T., Rome, 348.
Dziatzko, K., Terentius, 414.

Eales, S., St. Bernard, 394; Works of S. Bernard, 393.
Eannes de Azurara, G., Chronicle of Guinea, 322.
Easterby, W., Law of tithes, 238.
Eastern empire, *see* Byzantine empire.
Eastern Europe, **311–312**, **680–716**, **1004–1006**, 323–331.
Eastlake, C., Gothic revival, 472.
Eberbach, O., Reichsritterschaft, 291.
Ebersolt, J., Bérengar de Tours, 383; Palais de Constantinople, **661** note.
Eberstadt, R., Gewerberecht, 253; Zunftwesen, 253.
Ebert, A., Literatur des Mittelalters, **788**.
Ebrard, J., Bonifatius, 130; Iroschottische Missionskirche, 130.
Eckel, A., Charles le Simple, 167.
Eckenstein, L., Women under monasticism, **482**.
Eckert, H., Krämer, 257.
Eckstein, A., Finanzlage Felix V, 275.
Eckstein, F., Lateinischer und griechischer Unterricht, **843**; Lateinischer Unterricht, **842**.
Ecole des chartres, **800**, **164**, **231**; pratique des hautes études, **888**.
Ecoles françaises d'Athènes et de Rome, **887**, **959**.
Economic conditions, 247–259; history of Jews, **857–861**.
Edélstand du Méril, M., Etudes, **914**; Mélanges archéologiques, **915**; Poésies inédites, 451; poésies populaires, 451; Tablettes en cire, **468**.
Education, history of, **58–59**, **117–118**, **182**, **838–848**, **1012**, 304, 306, 312.
Edward III of England, 276.
Edwards, E., Founders of libraries, 465; Memoirs of libraries, 465.
Effmann, W., Centula, 367.
Egger, E., Hellénisme, 415; Livre, 465.
Egidi, P., Colonia Saracena di Lucera, 219.
Egli, J., Geographische Namenkunde, **133**; Nomina geographica, **132**.
Ehrhard, A., Mittelalter, 107.
Ehrle, F., Augustinismus, 398; Biblioteca papale d'Avignone, 469; John Peckham, 398; Spiritualen, 230.
Ehrmann, F., Bulle Unam sanctam, 271.
Eichmann, E., Kirche und Staat, **455**.
Eicken, H., Weltanschauung, **816**; Weltuntergang, 370.
Eigl, L., Walahfrid Strabo, 372.
Einhard, 140, 143, 364, 367.
Eitel, A., Kirchenstaat, 271.
Eitelberger v. Edelberg, R., Quellenschriften für Kunstgeschichte, 478.
Eiten, G., Unterkönigtum, 136.
El-Bokhari, Traditions islamiques, 149.
Eleanor of Aquitaine, 242, 244.
Elections, ecclesiastical, 175, 178.
Electors, the seven, 286, 291.
Eleventh century, culture in the, 380–383.
Elias, N., Moghuls, 328.
Eliot, C., Turkey in Europe, 329.
Ellis, F., Romance of the rose, 455.
Elsee, C., Neoplatonism, 337.
Elster, L., Wörterbuch der Volkswirtschaft, **116** note.
Elton, C. and M., Book-collectors, 466.
Elton, O., and Powell, F., Danish history, 328.
Emerton, E., Beginnings of modern Europe, **371** note; Introduction to

the middle ages, **370**; Mediaeval Europe, **371**; Religious environment, 335; Salimbene, 226.
Emperors, lists of German, 887–1056 A.D., 170; 1125–1272 A.D., 213; 1273–1519 A.D., 287.
Empire, medieval, **499–507**, 139, 141, 169–172.
Enchiridion fontium historiae ecclesiasticae, **384** note; fontium historiae Hungarorum, 159; symbolorum, 241.
Enciclopedia universel, **103**.
Encyclopaedia Britannica, **96**; of Islam, **120**; of missions, 240; of religion and ethics, **195**.
Encyclopaedias, **96–120**. **193**.
Encyclopédie des sciences religieuses, **107**.
Endres, J., Alexander von Hales, 406; De regimine principium, 462; Dialektiker, 382; Manegold von Lautenbach, 382; Mittelalterlichen Philosophie, **832**; Otloh von St. Emmeran, 382; Petrus Damiani, 382; Scholastische Lehrmethode, 381; Thomas von Aquin, 408.
Engel, A., and Serrure, R., Traité de numismatique, **292**.
Engelmann, E., Philipp von Schwaben, 218.
England, history of, **36**. **149**. **812**, **903–904**, **955–998**; economic history of, 250; kings of, 1327–1485 A.D., 278; learning in, 361, 363, 364; natural sciences in, 426, 427–428; universities in, 438, 443.
Enlart, C., L'art gothiques en Chypre, 209; Manuel d'archéologie, **299**; Rouen, 198; Teaching of mediaeval archaeology, 471.
Ensor, R., Belgium, **556**.
Enzyklopädisches Handbuch, **118** note.
Epidemics, 247, 253.
Epistolae pontificum Romanorum, **961**.
Epochs of church history, **418**; of modern history, **335**.
Equilaz Yanguas, D., Granada, 322.
Erkert, R., Wanderungen, 111.
Erman, W., and Horn, E., Bibliographie der deutschen Universitäten, 445.
Ernault, E., De Virgilio Marone, 360.
Ernst, H., Kolonisation von Ostdeutschland, 220.
Errera, C., Scoperte geografiche, 258.
Ersch, J., and Gruber, J., Allgemeine Encyklopädie, **100**.
Erslev, K., Repertorium diplomaticum, **1008**.
Esmain, A., Droit française, **532**.
España sagrada, **467**.
Espenberger, J., Petrus Lombardus, 408.
Esperabé Arteaga, E., Salamanca, 444.
Espinas, G., Bibliographie de l'histoire économique, 259; Douai, 252.
Essays, historical, **908–939**.
Essen, L., *see* Van der Essen, L.
Essenwein, A., Kulturhistorischer Bilderatlas, **190**.
Estado de la cultura española, 321.
Estates General, 242, 246.
Esthonia, **691**.
Etablissements de Saint Louis, 246.
Etienne de Bourbon, Anecdotes historiques, 451.
Etienne Marcel, 277, 281.
Etudes Franciscaines, 231.
Eubel, C., Hierarchia catholica medii aevi, **422**; Missionsgebiet der Dominikaner, 240.
Eucken, R., Problem of human life, **819**.
Eugippius, Life of Saint Severinus, 335.
Evans, H., Castles, 263.
Everett, W., Italian poets, 309.
Everyman's library, **944**.
Ewald, P., Gregorii I epistolae, 125.
Ewalt, A., Eroberung Preussens, 221.
Ewart, K., Cosimo de' Medici, 300.
Exarchate of Ravenna, 114.
Execrabilis, the papal bull, 268, 274.
Exempla, 446, 447, 451.

Faba, Guido, 417, 418.
Fabre, A., Jeanne d'Arc, 283.
Fabre, J., Philosophie, **824**; Procès de condemnation de Jeanne d'Arc, 285 Procès de réhabilitation, 285.
Fabre, P., **Mélanges offerts à**, **936**.
Fabre, P., and Duchesne, L., Liber censuum, 221.
Fabricius, A., Normands dans l'Espagne, 153.
Fabricius, J., Bibliotheca latina, 449.
Facsimiles of manuscripts, **230–237**; 467.
Faculté des lettres, Paris, **889**.
Fages, R., Saint Vincent Ferrier, 272.
Fagnan, E., Histoire de l'Afrique, 322.
Fagniez, G., Documents de l'industrie, 258.
Falke, J., Deutscher Handel, 257.
Falke, J. v., Geschichte des Geschmacks, **798**; Ritterliche Gesellschaft, 264.
Falletti-Fossati, C., Ciompi, 300.
Famines, 247, 254.
Famous historie of fryer Bacon, 432.
Fangeron, H., Bénéfices, 163.

Fanuzzi, G., Veneziani, 297.
Faral, E., Contes et romans courtois, 456; Jongleurs, 456.
Farinelli, A., Petrarca, 310.
Farnell, I., Troubadours, 456.
Fasciculus Ionni Willis Clark dicatus, 469.
Favaro, A., Atti della nazione Germanica, 445.
Favre, E., Eudes, comte de Paris, 167.
Feast of Fools, 235, 236.
Febvre, L., Franche-Comté, 542.
Fedele, P., Nazionalità, 694.
Federn, K., Dante, 480.
Federn, R., Répertoire bibliographique, 457.
Fehling, F., Friedrich II, 219.
Fehmi, Y., Turquie, 330.
Fehr, J., Gottesfriede, 163; Staat und Kirche, 136.
Feierabend, H., Reichsabteien, 183.
Felder, H., Studien im Franziskanerorden, 406.
Felder, J., Kirchensprache, 447.
Félibien, M., and Lobineau, G., Ville de Paris, 388.
Fellner, A., Albertus Magnus als Botaniker, 430.
Felten, J., Gregor IX, 219.
Felten, W., Mittelalter, 355.
Ferdinand II of Aragon, 316, 317, 319, 322.
Feret, P., Emprisonnements de Roger Bacon, 431; Faculté de théologie, 397; Sainte-Geneviève, 389; Université de Paris, 441.
Fergusson, J., History of architecture, 474.
Fernández Duro, C., Marina de Castilla, 320.
Fernández Guerra, A., Caida del imperio visigótico-español, 149; España, 111; D. Pedro, 320.
Ferrand, G., Relations de voyages, 258.
Ferrara, 302.
Ferrara-Florence, council of, 268, 274.
Ferrer del Río, A., Don Pedro, 320.
Ferrère, Sept arts, 351; Situation religieuse de l'Afrique, 343.
Festgabe zum Bonifatius-Jubiläum, 130.
Feudalism, 159–164, 174, 178.
Feugueray, H., Thomas d'Aquin, 462.
Ficker, G., Ausgehendes Mittelalter, 270.
Ficker, G., and Hermelink, H., Kirchengeschichte, 429.
Ficker, J., Deutsches Kaiserreich, 503; Reichsgeschichte Italiens, 607.
Ficker, J., and Winkelmann, E., Regesta imperii V, 221.
Fiction, historical, 77–79.
Field, L., Renaissance, 305.
Fierville, C., Grammaire latine, 451.
Figgis, J., Divine right, 287; Political thought, 269; Republica christiana, 459.
Figuier, L., Vies des savants, 701.
Finances of papacy, 274.
Financial system of the church, 234, 235, 238.
Finch, G., Letters of Hildebrand, 184.
Finke, H., Acta Aragonensia, 322; Acta concilii Constantiensis, 275; Aragonesische Könige, 321; Bonifaz VIII, 270; Constanzer Konzil, 273; Dante als Historiker, 481; Dietrich von Niem, 290; Geschichtsforschung in Spanien, 319; Katalanische Renaissance, 322; Papsttum, 271.
Finkel, L., Bibliografia historyj polskiej, 47.
Finlay, G., Byzantine empire, 645; Greece, 650.
Finnland, 692.
Finot, J., Flandre et France, 256; Flandre et Gênes, 256; Flandre et l'Espagne, 256.
Finsler, G., Homer in der Neuzeit, 483.
Finzi, G., Petrarca, 310.
Fioretto, G., Umanisti, 309.
Fiorvanti, A., Petrarca, 310.
Firearms, origin of, 260, 263.
Fischer, E., Rumänen, 158.
Fischer, J., Normannen, 154.
Fischer, K., Kreuzzug Friedrichs, I, 206.
Fischer, O., Bonifatius, 131.
Fischer, T., Genoese world map, 259; Nicolai de Bibera Carmen, 416; Seekarten, 257; Welt- und Seekarten, 259.
Fischer, W., Byzantinische Geschichte, 191.
Fish, C., Italian archives, 5 note.
Fisher, G., Christian church, 465; Christian doctrine, 474.
Fisher, H., Medieval empire, 506.
Fisher, J., Bibliography of church history, 50 note.
Fisquet, H., France pontificale, 469 note.
Fitting, H., Irnerius, Summa codicis, 425; Juristische Schriften, 425; Mélanges offerts à, 937; Rechtsschule zu Bologna, 424; Rechtswissenschaft, 423; Scuole di diritto in Francia, 424.
Fitting, H., and Suchier, H., Lo codi, 425.

Fitzgerald, V., Saint John Capistran, 228.
Fitzmaurice-Kelley, J., Spanish literature, **813**.
Flach, J., Comté de Flandre, 167; Droit romain, 423; Origines de France, 167.
Flade, P., Inquisitionsverfahren, 404.
Flanders, 276, 281.
Flateyjarbók, 155.
Fleming, D., R. Bacone, 431.
Fleming, W., Mysticism, 409.
Fletcher, B., History of architecture, 474.
Fletcher, C., Collectanea, 445; Western Europe, **350**.
Fletcher, H., Oxford and Cambridge, 443.
Fletcher, W., Black Friars, 231.
Fliche, A., Cardinal Humbert, 178; Philippe I, 168; Polémique religieuse, 184.
Flick, A., Medieval church, **428**.
Fling, F., Studies, **386**.
Flojshaus, W., Hus,- opera omnia, 275.
Flom, G., Konung skuggsjá, 331.
Florence, 294, 296, 299, 304, 311.
Florez, H., España sagrada, **467**.
Floto, H., Heinrich der Vierte, 183.
Flügel, E., Roger Bacon, 413.
Focke, R., Buchgewerbe, 466.
Foedera, by T. Rymer, **996**.
Förster, F., Wegweiser, **32** note.
Foes of western Christendom, 144–158.
Folz, A., Friedrich II, 219.
Fontana, L., Bibliografia: comuni dell' Italia, 303.
Fontes rerum Austriacarum, **986**; Byzantinarum, **1003** note; Germanicarum, **984**.
Fontevrault, Order of, 222, 227.
Fonti per la storia d'Italia, **990**.
Foord, E., Byzantine empire, **647**; Repulse of the Saracens, 189.
Forbes, N., Balkans, **706** note.
Forcella, V., Iscrizione delle chiese, 348.
Formentini, M., Il ducato di Milano, 298.
Forrest, J., Western civilization, 336.
Forschungen zur christlichen Literatur- und Dogmengeschichte, **489**.
Forst-Battaglia, O., Genealogie, **271**; Genealogische Tabellen, **271** note.
Fortescue, A., Eastern church, 190.
Fortescue, G., Subject index . . . British Museum, **3** note.
Foster, J., Lives of Vasari, 307.
Fotheringham, J., Marco Sanudo, 207.
Foucault, A., Yves de Chartres, 381.
Foulcher of Chartres, Historia Hierosolymitana, 210.
Foulet, L., Bibliography of medieval French literature, 457; Roman de renard, 456.
Foulke, D., Langobards, 116.
Foulke, W., Love songs of Petrarch, 307.
Foulkes, C., Armour, 262.
Foulques de Villaret, A., L'enseignement des lettres, 412.
Fourier-Bonnard, Saint-Victor de Paris, 389.
Fournel, H., Berbers, 148.
Fournier, E., Enseignes de Paris, 388; L'esprit dans l'histoire, **82**; Paris-capitale, 388; Rues de Paris, 388.
Fournier, F., Décret de Gratien, 425.
Fournier, M., Affranchissements, 251; Droit romain, 423; Science du droit, 424; Statuts et privilèges, 444; Universités françaises, 442.
Fournier, P., Arles, 245; Joachim de Flore, 409; Officialités, 418; Yves de Chartres, 381.
Fowke, F., Bayeux tapestry, **202** note.
Fowler, M., Petrarch collection, 315.
Fox-Davies, A., Art of heraldry, **285** note; Guide to heraldry, **285**.
Fracassetti, G., Epistolae of Petrarch, 314; Lettere, 314.
Fragmenta historicorum Graecorum, **1002** note.
Fraknói, W., Mathias Corvinus, 329.
France, **21–28**, **129**, **460**, **508–548**, **762–767**, **863**, **885–891**, **965–975**; Northmen in, 151, 153; beginnings of, 165–169; political history from 1108 to 1328 A.D., 241–246; economic history of, 250; cities in, 252; commerce in, 255; Hundred Years' War in, 276–284; kings of, 1328–1498 A.D., 278; culture in, 278, 279; universities in, 439, 442, 444; language and literature in, 452–457.
France, A., Jeanne d'Arc, 279.
Franche-Comté, **542**.
Franchetti, A., Signorie, 297.
Francis of Assisi, 223–226, 228–233.
Franciscans, 223, 228–231.
Franck, A., Gerbert, 372.
Francke, K., Personality in German literature, 308.
Frank, A., Réformateurs, 290.
Franke, K., Schulpoesie, 449.
Franke, W., Romuald, 179.
Franklin, A., Bibliothèque de médecine, 469; Bibliothèque de Notre-Dame, 469; Bibliothèques de Paris, 469; Bibliothèque de Saint-Victor, 469;

Chirurgiens, 435; Corporations de Paris, 390; Dictionnaire des arts, 390; Dictionnaire des noms, 449; Guide des savants, 4 note; Médecins, 435; Plans de Paris, 388; Sorbonne, 441; Sources de France, 23; Vie privée, 390.
Franks, 132–138, 357–361.
Frantz, A., Kirchenrecht, 425.
Franz, A., Benediktionen, 239; Messe, 239; Minoritenprediger, 228.
Franz, A. M., Cassiodorus, 343.
Franz-Pascha, J., Baukunst des Islam, 379.
Franziskanische Studien, 231.
Frati, L., Bibliografia bolognese, 445.
Fred, W., Briefe von Abälard, 393.
Fredegund, 133.
Frederick I (Barbarossa), 202, 206, 211, 213, 217.
Frederick II, 202, 207, 213, 215, 219.
Frederick III, 287, 291.
Frédéricq, P., Corpus inquisitionis, 404; Ducs de Bourgogne, 284; Histoires catholiques de l'inquisition, 404; Historiographie de l'inquisition, 401; Inquisitie, 403.
Freedom of thought, 739–748.
Freeman, E., Charles the Bold, 279; Europe in the 8th century, 137; Historical essays, 916; Historical geography of Europe, 139; Medieval Greece, 326; Mediaeval Italy, 295; Normans at Palermo, 197; Ottoman power, 329; Saracens, 148; Sieges of Paris, 153; Western Europe in fifth century, 110.
Freeman, L., Italian sculpture, 313.
Freiburger historische Studien, 488.
Frenken, G., Exempla, 451.
Fresne de Beaucourt, G., Charles VII, 282.
Fréville, R., Organisation judiciaire en Normandie, 198.
Freville de Lorme, C., Commerce de Rouen, 255.
Frey, K., Vite of Vasari, 307.
Freytag, G., Deutsche Vergangenheit, 769.
Friars, mendicant, 222–223.
Friedberg, E., Corpus juris canonici, 425; Kirchenrecht, 424; Lehren über Staat und Kirche, 458; Staat und Kirche, 458.
Friedensburg, F., Deutsche Münzgeschichte, 295; Die Münze, 296.
Friedländer, L., Erinnerungen, 351; Nachleben der Antike, 351.
Friedländer, M., Guide to the perplexed, 379.
Friedmann, E., Welthandel von Florenz, 256.
Friedrich, J., Kirchengeschichte, 131.
Friedrich, R., Canossa, 183.
Froissart, J., Chronicles, 279.
Frothingham, A., Monuments of Christian Rome, 348.
Froude, J., Short studies, 917.
Fuente, V. de la, Aragón, 320.
Fulda, 127.
Funck-Brentano, F., France, le roi, 535; Guerre de cent ans, 281; Philippe le Bel, 245.
Funk, F., Kirchengeschichtliche Abhandlungen, 407; Lehrbuch der Kirchengeschichte, 409.
Funk, P., Jacob von Vitry, 450; Renaissance, 308.
Fustel de Coulanges, N., Institutions politiques, 137; Recherches, 137.
Fuzet, E., Pétrarque, 310.

Gabelentz, H., Kirchliche Kunst, 474.
Gabotto, F., Storia dell' Italia, 919.
Gabrielli, A., Epistolario di Cola di Rienzo, 302; Goliardi, 449.
Gadave, R., Université de Toulouse, 442.
Gaggese, R., Firenze, 300.
Gaggia, G., Arnaldo da Brescia, 218.
Gagliardi, E., Eidgenossenschaft, 292.
Gaiseric, 108.
Galabert, F., Paléographie, 236.
Galante, A., Fontes iuris canonici, 425.
Gall, Saint, 126.
Gallia christiana, 460.
Gallion, W., Zünfte in Paris, 390.
Galy, C., Famille mérovingienne, 360.
Gama Barros, H., Portugal, 641.
Gams, P., Kirchengeschichte von Spanien, 468; Series episcoporum, 423.
Ganay, M., Dominicaines, 231.
Gandert, F., Busswesen, 239.
Gandilhon, A., Louis XI, 284.
Ganem, H., Sultans Ottomans, 330.
Ganzenmüller, W., Naturbetrachtung, 430.
Gapp, J., Franciscus von Assisi, 229.
Gardner, A., John the Scot, 370; Julian, 338; Lascarids, 207; Theodore of Studium, 177.
Gardner, A., French sculpture, 476.
Gardner, E., Catherine of Siena, 271; Dante, 480; Dante and the mystics, 481; Dante's ten heavens, 483; Dialogues of St. Gregory, 118; Florence, 296; Siena, 302.
Gardthausen, V., Buchwesen, 465.
Garland, John, 446, 449, 451; De triumphis ecclesiae, 451; Parisiana, 420.

t., Italian literature, **809.**
)., Tapisserie de la reine Ma- 199.
L., Etat social de la France,

I., and Mowat, R., Life of agne, 143.
, Exhiquier o diwan? 199.
O., Alcuin, 366.
., Granada, 322.
A., Italian literature, **808.**
A., Etudes byzantines, 142.
F., Biblical criticism, 413; Death, 249; English scholar- 28; Fragment of a work by 437; Henry the Third, 237; bot of Glastonbury, 413; Let- St. Bernard, 393; Life of St. , 124; Monastic libraries, Monastic life, 128; Monastic ium, 464; Old English bible, arish life, 235; Roger Bacon Vulgate, 413; Rule of St. t, 119.
Serments de Strasbourg, 167.
., Musique, 125.
ioult, A., Jean de Garlande,

A., Bibliotheca iuridica, 425; i Bolognesi, 418: Italia e d'Oriente, 115; Ranieri da Ars notaria, 420.
Alberts des Grossen Verhält- Plato, 408.
rs in, 145, 149.
L., Averroés, 376.
P., Catherine de Sienne, 272.
L., Chivalry, 261; Epopées es, 455–456.
h, M., Traité de Paris de 45.
'Italie méridionale, 149.
Glossaire archéologique, **300.**
P., Chronicle of James I,

Art arabe, 379; L'art byzan-

Grand schisme, 272.
s beaux-arts, 478.
B., Handbuch der deutschen ite, **562.**
E., Armées mercenaires de 262; Italie mystique, 228; de la renaissance, 309; ince italienne, 309.
and Hardy, W., Documents,

, Mohammed, 148.
Renaissance, 306.
Geschichte Schwedens, **726.**
Gelzer, H., Ausgewählte kleine Schriften, **649** note; Byzantinische Kaisergeschichte, 189; Byzantinische Kulturgeschichte, **649.**
Gemelli, A., Scritti vari, 431.
Genealogy, **268–282.**
Gengel, A., Feudalismus, 163.
Genghis Khan, 323, 326, 328.
Gennrich, P., Johann von Salisbury, 414; Staatslehre Johannes von Salisbury, 462.
Geographical discoveries, 248, 249, 257–259; theory, 427, 428, 434.
Geography and history, **130–146,** 107.
George, H., Genealological tables, **276;** Geography and history, 107.
Gérard, P., Francs, 136.
Géraud, H., Paris sous Philippe le Bel, 390.
Gerbert of Aurillac (Sylvester II), 170, 172, 174, 176, 369, 370, 372.
Gerdes, H., Geschichte des deutsches Volkes, **574.**
Gerland, E., Balduin I, 206.
Gerland, E., Physik, 433.
Gerland, E., and Traumüller, F., Experimentierkunst, 433.
Germain, A., Cartulaire de l'université de Montpellier, 444.
Germain, A., Cathédrale de Chartres, 476.
Germany, **28–34, 461–463, 560–567, 768–781, 804–807, 894–899, 978–985;** conversion of, 130; early kingdom of, 165–169; eastward expansion of, 213, 215, 220; economic history of, 250; cities in, 252; commerce in, 256; from the Great Interregnum to Maximilian, 285–292; emperors of, 1125–1272 A.D., 213, 1273–1519 A.D., 287; constitutional history of, 291; universities in, 439, **444.**
Germon, L. de, and Polain, L., Catalogue de la bibliothèque de Riant, 211.
Gerosa, P., Sant' Agostino, 342.
Gerson, Jean, 267, 273, 275.
Geschichte der Erziehung, **836;** der europäischen Staaten, **332.**
Geschichtschreiber der deutschen Vorzeit, **981.**
Gesellschaft für romanische Literatur, 456.
Gesta Romanorum, 447.
Gevaert, F., Chant liturgique, 124.
Geyer, B., Stellung Abaelards, 394.
Gfrörer, A., Byzantinische Geschichten, **677;** Gregorius VII, 182.
Ghellinck, J., Liber sententiarum, 406; Littérature polémique, 183; Mouve-

ment théologique, 407; Pierre Lombard, 408.
Ghettos, **869–872.**
Ghibellines, 211.
Ghirardacci, C., Historia di Bologna, 442.
Giannone, P., Regno di Napoli, 301.
Giard, Sainte-Geneviève, 389.
Gibbins, H., History of commerce, 248.
Gibbon, E., Decline and fall, **341.**
Gibbons, H., Ottoman empire, 329.
Gibson, S., Oxford libraries, 468.
Gidel, C., Etudes grecques, 415.
Gierke, O., Genossenschaftsrecht, **580**; Johannes Althusius, 459; Political theories, 459.
Giesebrecht, W., De litterarum studiis apud Italos, 371; Geschichte der deutschen Kaiserzeit, **561.**
Gieseler, J., Church history, **400.**
Giesing, J., Leonardo da Pisa, 436.
Gilbert de la Porrée, 392, 396, 399, 402.
Gilds, 247, 253.
Giles, J., Complete works of Bede, 363; Matthew Paris, English history, 328; Opera omnia of John of Salisbury, 416.
Gillet, L., Histoire artistique des ordres mendiants, 475.
Gillett, E., Huss, 274.
Gilliat-Smith, E., Saint Clare, 230.
Gilliodts, van Severen, L., Cartulaire, estaple de Bruges, 258.
Gilman, A., Saracens, 148.
Gindraux, J., Christianisme dans le monde paien, 240.
Ginzel, F., Chronologie, **257.**
Giordani, F., Storia della Russia, **682** note.
Giovanni, V., Boezio, 343.
Gipsies, 324, 327.
Giraldus Cambrensis, Opera, 416.
Girard, P., Roman law, 422.
Girgensohn, P., Hanse, 330.
Giry, A., Choix de documents, 258; Manuel de diplomatique, **239**; Rouen, 252.
Giry, A., and Réville, A., Emancipation of towns, 248; Medieval commerce, 248.
Giseke, P., Hirschauer, 227.
Giudice, P., Diritto in Italia, 111.
Giulini, G., Milano, 298.
Gjerset, K., Norwegian people, **723.**
Glaser, F., Franziskanische Bewegung, 229.
Glasson, E., Histoire du droit, **528**; Parlement, 282.
Glossaires, Latin, 448.
Glover, T., Conflict of religions, 337; Life and letters, 335.
Glyn, A., Civilization in fifth century, 336.
Gobineau, J., Renaissance, 301.
Godefroy, F., Dictionnaire, 455; Lexique, 455.
Godkin, G., Monastery of San Marco, 311.
Goeje, M., Arabische Literatur, 378.
Göller, E., Apostolische Kammer, 275; Päpstliche Pönitentiarie, 238; Sigismund, 291.
Goelzer, H., Latinité de Jérome, 336; Latinité de S. Avit, 336.
Görres, J., Mystik, 409.
Görresgesellschaft, **152** note, **898.**
Göschen Sammlung, **945.**
Goetz, L., Kiever Höhlenkloster, 158; Konstantinus, 158; Staat und Kirche, 158.
Goetz, W., Beiträge zur Kulturgeschichte, **749**; Franz von Assisi, 229; Mittelalter und Renaissance, 308; Robert von Nespel, 311; Wiederaufleben des römischen Rechts, 422.
Götz, W., Historische Geographie, **143.**
Goff, C., Assisi, 231.
Gokstad ship, 150, 154.
Goldast, M., Monarchia romani imperii, 292.
Golden Bull of 1356, 286, 288, 291.
Goldstaub, M., Physiologus, 350.
Goldziher, I., Islam, 147; Islamische Philosophie, 375.
Goliardic literature, 446, 449–451.
Golubovich, G., Bibliotheca bio-bibliografia della Terra Santa, 240.
Gonse, L., L'art gothique, 472.
Gont, P., Mont Saint-Michel, 472.
Goodyear, W., Architectural refinements, 476; Renaissance art, 312; Roman and mediaeval art, 474; Vertical curves in Gothic cathedrals, 475.
Gordon, C., Innocent the Great, 215.
Gordon, L., Assisi, 230.
Gothein, E., Culturentwicklung Süditaliens, 197; Renaissance, 309.
Gothic art, 470–478.
Gottlieb, T., Mittelalterliche Bibliotheken, 469.
Gottlob, A., Camera apostolica, 275; Kreuzzugssteuern, 238.
Gottron, A., Ramon Lulls Kreuzzugsideen, 208.
Gougaud, L., Chrétientés celtiques, 129; Scotti, 130.
Gourmont, R., Latin mystique, 447.
Gower, R., Joan of Arc, 283.

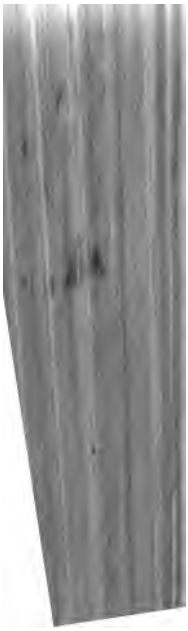
Goyau, G., Jeanne d'Arc, 284.
Grabmann, M., Geschichte der scholastischen Methode, **830**; Mittelalterliche Philosophie, 408; Thomas von Aquin, 408.
Gräf, F., Alexandria, 217.
Graefe, F., Friedrich II, 219.
Gräfe, K., Heinrich VII, 289.
Graesel, A., Führer für Bibliotheksbenutzer, **6** note; Handbuch, **6**.
Graesse, J., Orbis latinus, **130**.
Grätz, H., Jews, **850**.
Graevenitz, G., Deutsche in Rom, **920**.
Graf, A., Miti, 356; Petrarchismo, 310; Roma, 351.
Graham, R., English monasteries, 371; Gilbert of Sempringham, 228.
Grammar, Latin, 446–448, 451.
Grammont, Order of, 222.
Granada, 316, 322.
Grandes chroniques françaises, 458.
Grandgent, C., Dante, 480; Vulgar Latin, 336.
Grandgeorge, L., Saint Augustin, 842.
Grant, A., Charlemagne, 140; Europe, **372**.
Graphia aureae urbis Romae, 346.
Gratian, 421, 425.
Gratien, Franciscaines, 441; S. François, 229.
Grauert, H., Dante, 482; Johann von Toledo, 428.
Graves, F., Education during the middle ages, **841**.
Gray, A., Cambridge, 444.
Gray, G. E., Crusade of children, 207.
Gray, G. J., Cambridge stationers, 466.
Gréa, A., Archidiacres, 237.
Gréard, O., Sorbonne, 441.
Great artists series, 314.
Great Interregnum, 213, 214, 220.
Great masters in painting, 314.
Great peoples, **323**.
Great western schism, 267, 272.
Greece, **856–860**.
Greek church, 113, 116, 190; East, 113–116; in the renaissance, 304, 306, 311; learning in the British Isles, 362–364.
Greek, study of, in the middle ages, 333, 336, 411, 412, 414, 416.
Green, J., Botany, 434.
Green, Mrs. J., Irish world, 129.
Greene, E., Botanical history, 434.
Greene, R., Friar Bacon, 432.
Greenwood, A., Empire and papacy, **459**.
Greenwood, T., Cathedra Petri, **443**.
Gregorian music, 125.
Gregorovius, F., Athen, **860**; Rome, **440**.
Gregory I (the Great), 121–125, 128, 340, 341, 342; Dialogues, 119, 123; Letters, 123; Pastoral rule, 123; Works, 125.
Gregory VII, 180–184.
Gregory IX, 213, 214, 219.
Gregory XI, 267, 268, 271.
Gregory of Tours, 133, 135, 357, 359; History of the Franks, 137.
Greinacher, A., Nikolaus I, 177.
Grenier, P., L'empire byzantin, **851**.
Greven, J., Beginen, 239.
Grierson, E., Northumbrian saints, 130; St. Francis, 229.
Griffith, S., Divina comedia, 481.
Grimm, H., Michael Angelo, 314.
Grimm, J., Gedichte, Friedrich I, 217.
Grimme, H., Mohammed, 146, 148.
Grindle, G., Destruction of paganism, 338.
Grisar, H., Gregorio Magno, 124; History of Rome, **441**; Mittelalter, 107.
Gritzner, M., Heraldik, **287**.
Groche, B., Renaissancebewegung, 385.
Gröber, G., Grundriss der romanischen Philologie, **305**.
Gröhler, H., Französische Ortsnamen, **136**.
Grössler, H., Begründung der Kirche, 221.
Groh, H., Avaren, 159; Justin II, 190.
Gromer, G., Laienbeichte, 239.
Gross, C., Bibliography of British municipal history, 259; Gild merchant, 253; Sources of English history, **36**; University of Paris, 441.
Grosseteste, Robert, 411, 416, 426, 430, 437; Epistolae, 241; Rules, 258; Works, 437.
Grosvenor, E., Constantinople, **862**.
Grote, G., Aristotle, 397.
Grote, H., Stammtafeln, **275**.
Grotefend, H., Abriss der Chronologie, **252**; Taschenbuch der Zeitrechnung, **251**; Zeitrechnung, **250**.
Grotefend, S., Karl IV, 291.
Grützmacher, G., Benedikt, 120; Hieronymus, 336; Pachomius, 119.
Gruhn, A., Byzantinische Politik, 207; Kreuzzug Richards I, 206.
Grundriss der germanischen Philologie, **307**; der Geschichtswissenschaft, **331**; der romanischen Philologie, **305**.
Grupp, G., Kulturgeschichte, **751**.
Guarino of Verona, 304, 312.
Gudeman, A., Klassiche Philologie, **785** note.

Güdemann, M., Erziehungswesen der Juden, **868**; Quellenschriften, Juden, **868** note.
Guelfs, 211.
Guenin, L., Sténographie, **228**.
Günter, H., Mittelalter, 107. note.
Günther, S., Erdkunde, 258; Mathematik, 436; Mathematischer Unterricht, 436.
Guérard, B., Cartulaire de Notre-Dame de Paris, 390; Polyptique de Irmion, 164.
Guerber, H., Myths, 356.
Guerzoni, G., Arnaldo da Brescia, 218.
Güterbock, C., Islam, 148.
Güterbock, F., Friede von Montebello, 217; Prozess Heinrichs des Löwen, 218.
Guggenheim, M., Marsilius von Padua, 290.
Guglia, E., Geburts- Sterbe- und Grabstätten der römisch-deutschen Kaiser, 507.
Guibal, G., Arnauld de Brescia, 218; Sentiment national, 280.
Guichot, J., Pedro Primero, 320.
Guido, Bernard, Practica inquisitionis, 404.
Guignebert, C., De imagine mundi, 434.
Guilhermy, F., Monuments de Paris, 388.
Guilhermy, F. de, and Lasteyrie, R. de, Inscriptions de Paris, 391.
Guilhiermoz, P., Noblesse, 163.
Guillaume le Maire, Le livre de, 240.
Guilmoto, Navigation de la Seine, 390.
Guiraud, J., L'église romaine, 270; L'état pontificale, 272; Questions d'histoire, 403; Saint Dominic, 224.
Guiscard, Robert, 181.
Guizot, F., Civilisation en France, **763**; Collection des mémoires, **971**; France, **517**; History of civilization, **736**.
Gummere, F., Germanic origins, 111.
Gumplowicz, L., Staatstheorien, 459.
Gundlach, W., Barbarossalieder, 217; Kirchenstaat, 142.
Gurlitt, C., Konstantinopel, **668**.
Gurlt, E., Chirurgie, 435.
Gutsche, O., Deutsche Geschichte, 111.
Gutsche, O., and Schultze, W., Deutsche Geschichte, 135.
Guttmann, J., Scholastik und Judentum, 408.
Guyard, S., Civilisation musulmane, 374.
Gwatkin, H., Arian controversy, 338; Arianism, 338; Knowledge of God, 338.
Haag, O., Latinität Fredegars, 360.
Habel, E., Johannes de Garlandia, 449.
Habershon, A., Miracles, 356.
Hablitzel, J., Hrabanus Maurus, 371.
Hackwood, F., Christ-lore, 356.
Haddan, A., and Stubbs, W., Councils, 364.
Haddon, A., Wanderings of peoples, 111.
Hadley, J., Roman law, 422.
Hadrian IV, pope, 212, 214, 217.
Häbler, K., Geschichte Spaniens, 322; Hermandades, 321.
Hänlein, T., Bekehrung der Germanen, 131.
Häpke, R., Brügge, 256; Deutsche Kaufmann, 256.
Hagenbach, K., Christian doctrines, 474 note.
Hagendorn, B., Schiffstypen, 255.
Hagenmeyer, H., Anonymi gesta Francorum, 210; Chronologie de la première croisade, 205; Ekkehardi Hierosolymita, 210; Foulcher of Chartres, 210; Kreuzzugsbriefe, 210; Peter der Eremite, 209.
Haggard, A., Louis XI, 279.
Hahn, A., Bibliothek der Symbole, 179.
Hahn, B., Die wirtschaftliche Tätigkeit der Juden, **859**.
Hahn, C., Ketzer, 402.
Hahn, H., Bonifaz und Lul, 131; Jahrbücher, 136; Missionen, 240.
Hahn, L., Kaisertum, **506**; Lateinische Sprache in Konstantinopel, 336.
Halban-Blumenstock, A., Römisches Recht, 164.
Halbe, M., Friedrich II, 219.
Hale, E. and S., Spain, 319.
Halke, H., Numismatik, **293** note.
Hall, F., A companion to classical texts, **219**.
Hall, H., Bibliography, English economic history, 259; English documents, **243**; Formula book, **243** note.
Hallam, H., State of Europe, **348**.
Hallays, A., Nancy, 168.
Haller, J., Concilium Basiliense, 275; Heinrich VI, 218; Karolinger, 142; Papsttum, 270; Pragmatische Sanktion von Bourges, 274; Quellen des Kirchenstaates, 143; Sturz Heinrichs des Löwen, 218.
Halm, C., Rhetores latini, 451.
Halm, O., Goldene Bulle, 291.
Halphen, L., Annales royales, 143; Comté d'Anjou, 167; Cour d'Otto III, 172; Paris, 386; Rome, 141.
Halphen, L., and Poupardin, R., Chroniques des comtes d'Anjou, 200.

Hamelin, F., Alcuin, 367.
Hamlin, A., Architecture, 307; Ornament, 477.
Hammer-Purgstall, J., Goldene Horde, 328; Literaturgeschichte der Araber, 378; Osmanisches Reich, 329.
Hampe, K., Formelbücher, 420; Friedrich II. 219; Kaisergeschichte, 171; Konradin, 220; Stigmatisation, 230; Urban IV, 220.
Hampe, T., Fahrende Leute, 257.
Hampson, R., Medii aevi kalendarium, **259**.
Handbook of learned societies, **208**.
Handbuch der deutschen Geschichte, **562**; der klassischen Altertumswissenschaft, **330** note; der mittelalterlichen und neueren Geschichte, **330**.
Handwörterbuch der Staatswissenschaften, **116**.
Haneberg, D., Schulwesen der Muhamedaner, 378.
Hannay, J. O., Monasticism, 118.
Hanotaux, G., Jeanne d'Arc, 279.
Hanseatic League, 247, 257, 258.
Hanserecesse, 259.
Hansische Geschichtsblätter, 259; Geschichtsquellen, 259.
Hansisches Urkundenbuch, 259.
Hanssen, J., Hexenwahn, 404; Zauberwahn, 404.
Hantos, E., Magna carta, 326.
Hapsburgs, 286, 289, 291.
Harding, S., Medieval and modern history, **373**.
Hardt, H., Magnum Constantiense concilium, 275.
Hardwick, C., Christian church, **432**.
Hardy, E., Guerre de cent ans, 280.
Hardy, R., Eastern monasticism, 120.
Hare, A., Paris, 387.
Hare, C., Baldassare Castiglione, 308; Italian renaissance, 311; Louis XI, 279; Maximilian, 291; Queen of queens, 319.
Harnack, A., Dogmengeschichte, **472**; Monasticism, 118; Reden und Aufsätze, **498**.
Harnack, O., Beziehungen des fränkisch-italischen zum byzantinischen Reiche, 190; Karolingische Reich, 142; Kurfürstencollegium, 291.
Haroun-al-Raschid, 139.
Harris, M., Mediaeval Jews, **873**.
Harrison, F., Byzantine history, 115; Meaning of history, **921**; Paris, 386; Rome revisited, 345; Thirteenth century, 385.
Hartley, C., Moorish cities, 375.
Hartmann, C., Baukunst, 474.
Hartmann, L., Byzantinische Verwaltung, 115; Geschichte Italiens im Mittelalter, **611**; Spätantiken Staate, 189.
Hartmann, M., Islam, 148.
Hartmeyer, H., Weinhandel, 257.
Hartung, H., Italienische Gotik, 476.
Hartung, J., Weltherrschaft, 461.
Hartwig, O., Uebersetzungsliteratur, 399.
Harvey, A., Castles, 262.
Hasak, M., Bildhauerkunst, 477.
Hase, K., Franz von Assisi, 230; Jungfrau von Orléans, 283.
Hasenöhrl, V., Südöstliche Marken, 220.
Hashagen, J., Otto von Freising, **461**.
Haskins, C., Adelard of Bath, 427; Arabic science, 427; Canterbury monk, 189; England and Sicily, 197; Hugo; Sanctelliensis, 377; Life of medieval students, 439; List of text books, 398; Moses of Bergamo, 415; Norman institutions, 198; Norman jury, 164; Normans, 196; Posterior analytics, 398; Robert le Bougre, 401; University of Paris in sermons, 440; Vatican archives, **5**.
Haskins, C., and Lockwood, D., Sicilian translators, 398.
Hassall, A., French people, **520**; Handbook, **75**.
Hassonville, comte, Saint Barnard, 394.
Hasting, 151.
Hastings, J., Encyclopaedia of religion and ethics, **105**.
Hatch, E., church institutions, 178; Greek ideas, 338.
Hatzfeld, A., Saint Augustin, 342.
Hauck, A., Kirchengeschichte Deutschlands, **461**; Weltherrschaft, 462.
Haudecoeur, A., Saint Rémi, 361.
Haupt, H., Literaturberichte über Inquisition, 404; Waldensertum, 403.
Hauréau, B., Charlemagne, 142; David de Dinan, 402; Hugues de St.-Victor, 395; Jean de Garlande, 449; Langues anciennes, 412; Philosophie scolastique, **829**; Primat, 449; Singularités historiques, **759**.
Haury, J., Procopius, 116.
Hausrath, A., Abälard, 394; Arnoldisten, 227; Arnold von Brescia, 218.
Haverfield, F., Rome and Ireland, 363.
Havet, J., Hérésie, 402; Lettres de Gerbert, 370; Questions mérovingiennes, 137; Recueil de travaux d'érudition dédiés à, **936**.
Havet, L., Classiques latins, 366; Prose métrique, 419.
Hawkwood, Sir John, 293, 298.

Haydn's Dictionary of dates, **70**.
Hayem, J., Mémoires et documents, 255.
Hayes, C., Germanic invasions, 112.
Hazlitt, W., Venetian republic, 296.
Headlam, C., Chartres, 476; France, **521**; Oxford, 443.
Healey, J., City of God, 341.
Healy, J., Insula sanctorum, 362; St. Patrick, 128.
Heath, S., Pilgrim life, 238; Symbolism, 356.
Hébert, M., Foi catholique, 239.
Hebrew, study of, 411, 415, 416.
Hecker, J., Black Death, 254; Epidemics, 253.
Heeren, A., Classische Literatur, 414.
Heeren, A., and Ukert, F., Staatengeschichte, **332**.
Heermann, O., Gefechtsführung, 209.
Hefele, C., Conciliengeschichte, **469**; Ximenez, 321.
Hefele, H., Bettelorden, 228.
Hefner-Alteneck, J., Costumes, **194**.
Hegel, K., Städte und Gilden, 252; Städtewesen, 252.
Hegira, **144**.
Heiberg, J., Griechische Grammatik Roger Bacons, 414; Renaissancetillob, 413; Syntaxis des Ptolemaios, 415.
Heidelberg, university of, 439, 444.
Heidelberger, F., Kreuzzugsversuche, 208.
Heil, A., Otto und Ludwig IV, 167.
Heil, B., Deutsche Städte, 252; Kolonialstädte, 220.
Heilprin, L., Historical reference book, **69**.
Heimbucher, M., Orden und Kongregationen, **483**; Papstwahlen, 177.
Heimskringla saga, 152.
Heinemann, F., Tell-Bibliographie, 292.
Heinemann, L., Normannen, 199; Stadtverfassung, 217.
Heinrich, A., Carmina burana, 449.
Heitz, T., Philosophie et la foi, 395.
Hell, J., Kultur der Araber, 374.
Heller, A., Physik, 433.
Heller, J., Deutschland und Frankreich, 289.
Hellmann, S., Grafen von Savoyen, 168; Gregor von Tours, 359.
Hellwald, F., Kulturgeschichte, **733**.
Helmolt, H., Weltgeschichte, **315**.
Hemmer, H., and P. Lejay, Collections de textes, **955**.
Hemming, G., Festum stultorum, 236.
Henckelum, M., Spiritualistische Strömungen, 321.
Henderson, E., Germany in the middle ages, **575**; Select documents, **387**; Short history of Germany, **563**.
Henke, E., and Lindenkohl, G., Abelard's Sic et non, 395.
Henne-am-Rhyn, O., Allgemeine Kulturgeschichte, **734**; Kulturgeschichte des deutschen Volkes, **770**; Kulturgeschichte des jüdischen Volkes, **854**; Kulturgeschichte der Kreuzzüge, 209; Rittertum, 261; Schweizervolk, 291.
Henneberg, H., Albrecht I, 289.
Henner, C., Ketzergericht, 403.
Hennig, E., Päpstlichen Zehnten, 274.
Hennig, R., Verkehrgeschichte, 256.
Henri d'Andeli, Battle of the seven arts, 413.
Henrion, M., Missions catholiques, 240.
Henriot, G., and La Monneraye, J., Sociétés d'histoire de Paris, 391.
Henry I (the Fowler), 165, 168.
Henry II, 170, 172, 174.
Henry III, 170, 172, 174.
Henry IV, 180–184.
Henry V, 181, 183.
Henry VI, 202, 206, 212, 213, 218.
Henry VII, 286, 287, 289.
Henry, A., De monarchia of Dante, 482.
Henry, P., S. François, 229.
Henry the Lion, 212, 215, 218.
Henry the Navigator, 317, 318, 321.
Heraclius, 185, 190.
Heraldry, **284–291**.
Herbert, J., Illuminated manuscripts, 466.
Herbst, E., Zug Karl's VIII, 284.
Herculano, A., Portugal, **636**.
Heresies and the inquisition, 399–404.
Hergenröther, J., Anti-Janus, **446** note; Catholic church, 182; Kirchengeschichte, **397**; Kirchenrecht, 424; Photius, 177.
Herkless, J., Francis and Dominic, 228.
Hermandades, 316, 321.
Hermann, M., Theatergeschichte, 253.
Hermanni, F., Rom, 297.
Hermannson, H., Icelandic collection, 155.
Heroes of the nations, **324**.
Herrad von Landsberg, Hortus deliciarum, **206**.
Herre, P., Deutsche Kultur, **776**; Herrschaft im Mittelmeer, **361**; Quellenkunde, **14**.
Herrmann, E., Hausmeieramt, 136.
Herrmann, F., Geschichte des jüdischen Volkes, **853**.
Herrmann, P., Islam, **728**.
Herrmann, W., Alfons X, 320.

ıg, F., Albertus Magnus, 408.
ıg, G., Augustin, 342; Wissen-
ıftliche Richtungen, 407.
et, W., Treppenwitz, 81.
ıerg, G., Byzantiner, 652; Griech-
nd, 658; Römisches Kaiserreich,
note.
s, J., Renacimiento, 308.
ːu, H., Etats généraux, 246.
ːux, A., Fabulistes latins, 790.
ərg-Fränkel, S., Landfrieden, 163.
ːld, M., Zeitalter der Renaissance,
.
g, G., Sainte Vierge, 239.
g, J., Realencyklopädie, 112.
g (II), Waldenser, 403.
H., Franz von Assisi, 231.
, A., Bologna, 443.
ing, D., Byzantium, 650.
s, J., Gutenberg fiction, 307.
ng, E., Paris, 388.
ər, H., Renaissance, 309.
evant, R., Durand de Troarn, 383.
ər, A., Deutsche Verfassungsge-
chte, 581 note.
i, K., Kirchengeschichte, 414.
i, K., and Mulert, H., Atlas zur
chengeschichte, 127.
ːt, W., University life, 440.
, E., Deutsche Geschichte, 566;
ːenz, 300; Genua, 299; Kreuz-
e, 205.
W., Levantehandel, 255.
ːnreich, E., Genealogie, 272.
lder, E., Renaissance, 308.
ood, W., Little Flowers of St.
ncis, 225.
C., Notre Dame de Paris, 389.
ɔrand (pope Gregory VII), 180,
.
ɔrand, A., Boethius, 343.
D., Diplomacy, 338.
G., Arabic numerals, 375.
d, K., Banquet of Dante, 481.
, B., Abälard, 394.
H., Artillery, 263; Roger Bacon
. gunpowder, 263.
, A., Formation territoriale, 140;
la, 168.
ıar, 173, 177.
ːberg, P., Kultur der Gegenwart,
).
osa, E., Catalufia, 320.
hius, P., Decretales pseudo-Isidori-
.e, 179: Kanonisches Recht, 424;
ːchenrecht, 462.
Y., Sacred shrine, 236.
h, F., Eröffnung Asiens, 255.
h R., Ludwig VII, 244.
Hirsch, S., Jahrbücher, Heinrich II, 172.
Hirsch, S. A., Early English Hebraists, 415; Essays, 415; Roger Bacon and philology, 413.
Hirschau, monastery of, 222, 227.
Hirth, F., and Rockhill, W., Chan Ju-Kua, 249.
Hispaniae illustratae, 997 note.
Histoire de France, edited by Lavisse, 508; de France racontée à tous, 508 note; de l'Ordre de Fontevrault, 227; générale, edited by Lavisse and Rambaud, 328; générale de Languedoc, 540; générale de Paris, 387; littéraire de la France, 803.
Historia general de la España, 822.
Historic towns series, 251.
Historiography, 457–462; Mohammedan, 378; of the crusades, 205.
Historische Vierteljahrschrift, 151; Zeitschrift, 150.
Historisch-pädagogischer Literaturbericht, 58, 182.
Historisches Jahrbuch, 152; Literaturblatt, 154.
History for ready reference, 70; of all nations, 314.
History teachers' magazine, 184.
History [teachers' periodical], 185.
Hitchcock, F., St. Patrick, 128.
Hitti, P., Origins of Islamic state, 150.
Hobhouse, W., Church and world, 495 note.
Hodges, G., Early church, 338; Fountains abbey, 227.
Hodgkin, T., Charles the Great, 140; Italy and her invaders, 345; Letters of Cassiodorus, 110; Theodoric, 110; Visigothic Spain, 110.
Hodgson, F., Early history of Venice, 298; Venice in thirteenth and fourteenth centuries, 298.
Hody, H., De bibliorum sacrorum textibus, 416.
Höfler, C., Hus, 274; Ruprecht, 291.
Höhlbaum, K., Kurverein zu Rense, 289.
Höhne, E., Heinrich IV, 183.
Hoeniger, R., Schwarze Tod, 254.
Hoffbauer, T., Paris, 386.
Hoffmann, M., Geldhandel der Juden, 860.
Hofmann, M., Stellung Königs von Sizilien, 198.
Hofmeister, A., Chronica of Otto of Freising, 460; Deutschland und Burgund, 168; Genealogie, 281; Otto von Freising, 460.



Hollings, M., Renaissance : tion, 309.
Holloway-Calthrop, H., Petra
Holm, A., Lübeck, 257.
Holme, L., Extinction of c Africa, 343.
Holmes, T., Church in Gaul,
Holmes, W., Justinian and 114.
Holsten, L., Codex regularum carum, **964**.
Holtzendorff, F., Enzyklopä Rechtswissenschaft, 424.
Holtzmann, R., Französische sungsgeschichte, **533**; Wilhe Nogaret, 245.
Holy Roman empire, **499–507** 171.
Holzapfel, H., Franziskanerorden
Holzhey, C., Inspiration der h Schrift, 407.
Home university library, **946**.
Honorius III, 214, 219.
Hoops, J., Reallexicon, **587**.
Hopf, K., Chroniques Gréco-Ron 330; Geschichte Griechenlands,
Hore, A., Greek church, 190.
Horsburgh, E., Lorenzo, 300; Sa rola, 300.
Horten, M., Glauben und Wisse Islam, 379; Hauptlehren des roes, 379; Metaphysik Avic 376.
Hortis, A., Boccaccio, 310.
Hortus deliciarum, **206**.
Hortzschansky, A
Bibl

Humann, G., Handschriftenornamentik, 475; Karolingische Baukunst, 367.
Hume, M., Spanish people, **631**.
Humiliati, 222, 227.
Humphrey, E., Politics and religion, 342.
Humphreys, H., Illuminated books, 467.
Hundred Years' War, 276–284.
Hungarian raids, 157, 159.
Hungary, **704–705**, **1006**, 324, 326, 329.
Hungerford, E., Arab learning, 374.
Huns, 108, 112.
Hunt, J., Literature of theology, **50** note.
Hunt, W., English church, 128.
Huntington, E., Civilization, 107; Pulse of Asia, 158.
Hunyadi, John, 324.
Hurd, Letters of chivalry, 263.
Hurgronje, C., Mohammedanism, 146.
Hurst, J., Christian church, **415**.
Hurter, F., Innocenz III, 218; Institutions de l'église, 239.
Hurter, H., Nomenclator litterarius theologiae, **51**.
Husik, I., Jewish philosophy, **866** note.
Huss, John, 268, 269, 273, 275; De ecclesia, 270; Opera omnia, 275.
Hussite wars, 268, 274.
Hutchinson, L., Oriental trade, 248.
Huttmann, M., Establishment of Christianity, 338.
Hutton, E., Attila, 112; Boccaccio, 310; Cities of Lombardy, 218; Cities of Umbria, 230; Siena, 302; Sigismundo Pandolfo, 302.
Hutton, W., Church and barbarians, 176; Constantinople, **661**; Influence of Christianity, 130; Philip Augustus, 243.
Huyskens, A., Karl der Grosse, 142.
Hyett, F., Florence, 300.
Hymns, Latin, 446, 450, 451–452.

Ibarra y Rodriguez, E., Colección de documentos, **999** note.
Iceland, **728**.
Iconoclastic controversy, 173, 177, 185.
Iconography, Christian, 353, 354, 356, 474.
Ideler, L., Chronologie, **253**.
Ile de France, 241, 243.
Ilgen, T., Sphragistik, **247**.
Illustrations from manuscripts of H. Y. Thompson, 467.
Imbart de la Tour, H., Liberté commerciale, 255.
Imbart de la Tour, P., Elections épiscopales, 237; Idées sociales, 461; Immunités commerciales, 178; Origines religieuses de la France, 179.
Imbault-Huart, C., Recueil de documents sur l'Asie centrale, 331.
Inama-Sternegg, K., Wirtschaftsgeschichte, 250.
Indulgences, **433**.
Industries, 247, 258.
Inge, W., Mysticism, 409.
Innocent III, 202, 206, 212, 214, 215, 218.
Innocent IV, 213, 214, 219.
Inquisition, 318, 400, 403, 404.
Institutions, early medieval, 159–164.
Insurrections, popular, 247, 251.
Interdict, 175, 176, 234, 235.
Internationale Bibliographie der Kunstwissenschaft, 478; Bibliographie der Zeitschriftenliteratur, **10**, **11**, **87**.
Investiture strife, 179–184.
Iorga, N., Croisades au XV^e^ siècle, 208.
Ireland, Christianity in, 126; learning in, 361–364; schools of, **759** note.
Irene, empress of Constantinople, 139.
Irnerius, 421, 424, 425; Formularius tabellionum, 420; Quaestiones, 425; Summa codicis, 425.
Isabella of Castile, 316, 317, 319, 322.
Isidore of Seville, 349–352; Etymologiae, 352; Geschichte der Goten, 112.
Islam, 144–150.
Islamic culture, 373–379.
Islandica, 155.
Israel, W., Robert von Neapel, 301.
Istituto storico italiano, **905**, **162**, **890**, **993**.
Italia sacra, **464**.
Italy, **37–41**, **464–466**, **599–621**, **808–811**, **905–906**, **088–944**; Mohammedans in, 145, 146, 149; early kingdom of, 166–168; and the Byzantine empire, 188–189; and the Normans, 195, 197, 199; cities in, 253; commerce in, 256; in the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries, 293–303.
Ivo of Chartres, 380, 381, 421.

Jack, A., Life insurance, 253.
Jackson, F., Condottieri, 298.
Jackson, S., Jerusalem the golden, 451.
Jackson, T., Byzantine architecture, 472; Gothic architecture, 472.
Jackson, W., Dante's Convivio, 481.
Jacob, G., Handel der Araber, 149.
Jacob, K., Benedikt XII, 271.
Jacob, K., Quellenkunde, **34**.
Jacob, L., Bourgogne, 168.
Jacob van Artevelde, 276, 281.

Jacobs, W., Gerold von Jerusalem, 207.
Jacquerie, 247, 277, 281.
Jacques de Vitry, Exempla, 451.
Jäger, O., Deutsche Geschichte, **507**.
Jähns, M., Kriegswesen, 262; Kriegswissenschaften, 262.
Jaffé, P., Bibliotheca rerum Germanicarum, **983**; Regesta pontificum Romanorum, **950**.
Jaffe, S., Vaganten, 449.
Jahn, A., Burgundionen, 112.
Jahncke, R., Guilelmus Neubrigensis, 460.
Jahrbuch für Schweizergeschichte, 290.
Jahrbücher der deutschen Geschichte, **570**; für Nationalökonomie, 259.
Jahresbericht der germanischen Philologie, **397** note.
Jahresberichte der Geschichtswissenschaft, **13**.
Jaillot, Recherches de Paris, 387.
James I of Aragon, 315, 317–319.
James, G., Joan of Arc, 279.
James, H., Consolations of philosophy, 341.
James, K., Perugia, 302.
James, M. B., Catalogue of the library at York, 469; Libraries of Canterbury and Dover, 469.
James, M. R., Abbey of S. Edmund, 468; Catalogue of manuscripts of J. P. Morgan, 467; De nugis by Map, 451; Greek-Latin lexicon, 414.
James, W., Religious experiences, 354.
Jameson, A., Legends, **487**.
Jamison, E., Norman administration, 198.
Janauschek, L., Bibliographia Bernardina, 395; Origines Cistercienses, 227.
Jane, L., Chronicle of Jocelin of Brakelonde, 226.
Janet, P., Science politique, 459.
Janitschek, H., Renaissance, 309.
Jansen, M., and Schmitz-Kallenberg, L., Historiographie, **33**.
Janssen, J., German people, 171.
Janssens, de, Etienne de Cloves, 207.
Jardet, P., Saint Odilon, 178.
Jarrett, B., Mediaeval socialism, 461; Revision committee of the bible, 413.
Jarry, E., Domination française à Gênes, 299.
Jarry, L., Louis de France, 282; Siège d'Orléans, 283.
Jastrow, I., and Winter, G., Hohenstaufen, 216.
Jastrow, J., Handbuch zu Literaturberichten, **147**.
Jaulmes, A., Satanisme, 355.
Jaurgain, J., Vasconie, 320.
Jean de Jandun, Eloges de Paris, 387
Jean de Troyes, Scandalous chronicle 279.
Jeanroy, A., Poésie lyrique, 456.
Jebb, R., Humanism, 306.
Jebb, S., Opus majus of Bacon, 436.
Jenghiz Khan, 323, 326, 328.
Jenkinson, F., Hisperica famina, 384
Jenkinson, H., Palaeography, **242** note.
Jenks, E., Law and politics, 164.
Jerome of Prague, 268, 270.
Jerome, Saint, 117, 333, 335, 336.
Jerrold, M., Francesco Petrarca, 306.
Jerusalem, kings of, 1099–1284, 203; Latin kingdom of, 201, 205.
Jervis, W., France, **524**.
Jessopp, A., Coming of the friars, **922**; Great pillage, 237; Studies by a recluse, **923**.
Jewett, S., God's troubadour, 229; Normans, 152.
Jewish encyclopaedia, **110**.
Jewries, medieval, **869–872**.
Jews, **62**. **119**, **850–884**. **1013**; and Mohammedan culture, 373, 375, 376. in Paris, 386, 390; in Spain, 317, 321.
Jirecek, K., Bulgaren, **713**; Serben, **714**; Serbien, 329; Ragusa, 255; Romanen in die Städten Dalmatiens, **707**.
Joachim of Flora, 406, 409.
Joan of Arc, 277, 279, 282, 285.
Jocelin of Brakelonde, Chronicle, 226.
Jörgensen, E., Bibliothèques danoises, 468.
Jörgensen, J., Franciscan Italy, 230; Pèlerinages franciscains, 238; St. Francis, 224.
John Garland, 411.
John of Salisbury, 410, 412, 414, 416, 458, 462; Opera omnia, 416; Policraticus, 416.
John the Deacon, Vita Gregorii, 125.
Johnson, A., Drapers of London, 253; Normans, 153.
Johnson, C., and Jenkinson, H., English court hand, **242**.
Johnson, H., Divine comedy, 481.
Johnston, H., Latin manuscripts, **212** note.
Johnston, K., Historical geography, **139** note.
Johnstone, P., Muhammad, 148.
Joinville, 458; Crusade of St. Lewis, 204.
Jolly, Philippe le Bel, 245.
Joly, H., Psychology of saints, 356.
Jonas, Life of Columban, 128.

Jones, R., Mystical religion, 409.
Jones, W., Latin chroniclers, 459.
Jonquière, A., Empire Ottoman, 330.
Jordan, E., Domination Angevine, 301.
Jordan, H., Topographie, Rom, 346.
Jordan, L., Arabische Zahlzeichen, 378.
Jordanes, Origin of the Goths, 110.
Jorga, N., Civilisation roumaine, 158; Geschichte des rumänischen Volkes, 708; Lateinische Westen, 189; Moyen âge, 107; Osmanisches Reich, 329.
Joubert, A., Invasions anglaises, 280.
Jourdain, A., Traductions d'Aristote, 399.
Jourdain, C., Amaury de Chartres, 402; Aristote et la découverte du nouveau-monde, 399; Collège oriental, 413; Excursions historiques, 924; Philosophie naturelle, 429; Roger Bacon, 432; Thomas d'Aquin, 462; Université de Paris, 441.
Journal of Royal Asiatic societv, 330.
Joyce, P., Irish civilization, 362; social history of Ireland, 362.
Judson, W., Hroswitha, 370.
Julian, J., Hymnology, 450.
Julian, the Apostate, 334, 338.
Jullian, C., Ausone, 337; Fustel de Coulanges, Institutions, 137.
Jundt, A., Walafrid Strabon, 372.
Jungfer, E., Papstwahl, 236.
Junghändel, M., Baukunst Spaniens, 378.
Juritsch, G., Otto I von Bamberg, 221.
Jusserand, J., Sports, 264; Wayfaring life, 238.
Justinian, 113–116.

Kämmel, O., Deutsche Geschichte, 500; Rom, 348; Werdegang des deutschen Volkes, 568 note.
Kahn, L., Juifs à Paris, 390.
Kaiser, E., Abélard, 394.
Kaiserurkunden in Abbildungen, 240.
Kalbfuss, H., Bologneser Ars dictandi, 420.
Kampers, F., Alexander der Grosse, 461; Dantes Kaisertraum, 482; Kaiseridee, 461; Karl der Grosse, 140.
Kanitz, F., Serbien, 715.
Karst, A., Manfred, 219.
Kaser, K., Maximilian I, 291.
Kaufmann, G., Deutsche Geschichte, 135; Deutsche Universitäten, 444; Rhetorenschulen, 337.
Kaufmann, K., Christliche Archäologie, 302.
Kaulen, F., Vulgata, 416.
Kayserling, M., Juden in Spanien, 321.
Keary, C., Coinages, 208; Vikings, 152.
Kehr, K., Urkunden der normannisch-sizilischen Könige, 200.
Kehr, P., Geschichte Ottos III, 172; Regesta pontificum Romanorum, 958.
Keicher, O., Roger Baco, 432.
Keil, H., Grammatici latini, 352.
Kelle, J., Deutsche Literatur, 807.
Kellett, F., Gregory the Great, 124.
Kellner, K., Heortologie, 258.
Kelsen, H., Staatslehre des Dante, 482.
Kelsey, F., Latin and Greek, 412.
Kemmerich, M., Porträtplastik, 477; Porträts deutscher Kaiser, 807 note.
Kemp-Welch, A., Tumbler of our Lady, 454.
Kempf, J., Grosses Interregnum, 220.
Kennedy, H., Latin versions of Bible, 416.
Kenyon, F., Biblical manuscripts, 467.
Keppler, J., Konstanz, 273.
Ker, W., Dark ages, 365; Medieval literature, 793.
Kerler, D., Patronate, 239.
Kern, F., Acta imperii, 292; Französische Ausdehnungspolitik, 245; Geschichtschreiber, 460; Humana civilitas, 482.
Kerner, R., Bibliography of Slavic Europe, 40 note.
Kervyn de Lettenhove, baron, Attentat d'Anagni, 271; Flandre, 281; Jacques d'Artevelde, 281.
Ketrzynski, W., Deutschen Orden, 221.
Ketterer, J., Karl der Grosse, 141.
Keussen, H., Köln, 252.
Keutgen, F., Hanse, 257; Study of modern nations, 106.
Khuda Buksh, S., Islamic libraries, 375.
Kiener, F., Provence, 169.
Kiepert, H., and Huelsen, C., Formae urbis Romae, 347.
Kiesselbach, A., Hanse, 257.
Kilgenstein, J., Hugo von Saint-Victor, 395.
Killermann, S., Vogelkunde des Albertus, 430.
King, W., Three free cities, 252.
King's mirror, 327, 331.
Kingslev, C., Hermits, 119; Roman and Teuton, 110.
Kington, T., Frederick II, 215.
Kirch, C., Enchiridion, 384 note.
Kirchengeschichtliche Abhandlungen, 490; Studien, 492.
Kirchenlexikon der katholischen Theologie, 113.
Kirchenrechtliche Abhandlungen, 491.

Kirchhoff, A., Handschriftenhändler, 466.
Kirchner, E., Das Papier, 466.
Kirk, J., Charles the Bold, 284.
Kirkpatrick, J., Octocentenary festival of the university of Bologna, 442.
Kirsch, J., Annaten, 274; Rükkehr der Päpste, 272; Saints, 356.
Kitchin, G., France, **514**.
Kitts, E., Days of the councils, 273; Pope John XXII, 269.
Klaic, V., Geschichte Bosniens, **716** note.
Klaszko, J., Rome and the renaissance, 311.
Kleemann, G., Papst Gregor VIII, 217.
Klein, V., Italiens historie, **621**.
Kleinclausz, A., Dijon, 168; L'empire carolingien, 141.
Kleinpaul, R., Das Mittelalter, **189**.
Klette, T., Italienischen Gelehrtenrenaissance, 311.
Klopp, O., Politische Geschichte, **334**.
Kluchevsky, V., Russia, **681**.
Kluckholm, A., Gottesfriede, 163.
Klüpfel, L., Alfonso III, 320; Aragon, 320.
Knackfuss, H., and Zimmermann, M., Kunstgeschichte, 473.
Knapp, F., Piero di Medici, 300.
Knatchbull-Hugessen, C., Hungarian nation, 326.
Kneer, A., Konziliare Theorie, 272.
Knights of the Sword, 213, 221.
Knöpfler, A., Kirchengeschichte, **408**.
Knox, W., Court of a saint, 245.
Knüll, B., Historische Geographie, **145**.
Kobell, L., Kunstvolle Miniaturen, 467.
Koch, A., Hermann von Salza, 221.
Koch, H., Bonifatius, 364; Pseudo-Dionysius, 357.
Koch, T., Catalogue of the Dante collection, 483; Danteiana, 483.
Koebner, R., Venantius Fortunatus, 360.
Köhler, C., Friedrich II, 219.
Köhler, G., Kriegswesen, 262.
Köhler, H., Ketzerpolitik, 404.
König, E., Orsini, 273.
Koeniger, A., Die Beicht, 239.
Köpke, R., and Dümmler, E., Jahrbücher, Otto der Grosse, 172.
Körting, G., Boccaccio's Leben, 310; Enzyklopädie der romanischen Philologie, **304**; Handbuch der romanischen Philologie, **304**; Petrarca's Leben, 310; Renaissance-literatur, 309; Wörterbuch, 455.
Kötzschke, R., Ostdeutsche Kolonisation, 220; Quellen der historischen Geographie, **142**; Quellen der ostdeutschen Kolonisation, 216; Wirthschaftsgeschichte, 250.
Kolde, T., Staatsideal, 342.
Konen, W., Heidenpredigt, 131.
Konversations-Lexicon, **101–102**.
Koran, 144, 147, 148.
Korrespondenzblatt, **155**.
Kostanecki, A., Kreditwesen, 254.
Kotelmann, L., Gesundheitspflege, 435.
Kounik, Tatars en Russie, 328.
Kovalewsky, M., Oekonomische Entwickelung, 250.
Krabbes, T., Die Frau, 263.
Krabbo, H., Besetzung der Bistümer, 237.
Kracauer, I., Frankfurter Juden, 252; Urkundenbuch, Juden, 252.
Krafft, A., Serments de Strasbourg, 167.
Kralik, R., Oesterreichische Geschichte, **591**.
Krammer, M., Kurfürstenkolleg, 291.
Kraus, F., Christliche Kunst, 473; Dante, 482; Lehrbuch der Kirchengeschichte, **410**.
Kraus, V., Deutsche Geschichte, 288.
Krause, J., Die Byzantiner, **654**; Konstantinopel, 330.
Kraussold, M., Heinrich VII, 289.
Krebs, E., Meister Dietrich, 432; Theologie und Wissenschaft, 407.
Krehbiel, E., Interdict, 176.
Krek, G., Slavische Literaturgeschichte, **814** note.
Kremer, A., Europa und Orient, 209; Ideen des Islams, 376; Islamic civilization, 375; Kulturgeschichte des Orients, 375.
Kretschmayr, H., Venedig, 298.
Kretschmer, K., Erdkunde, 434; Historische Geographie, **141**.
Krey, A., John of Salisbury, 412.
Krieg, J., Kampf der Bischöfe, 237.
Kritischer Jahresbericht, **305** note.
Kroeger, A., Guide to reference books, **63**.
Kröll, M., Immunité, 163.
Kroener, A., Wahl und Krönung, 172.
Krones, F., Geschichte Oesterreichs, **588**; Grundriss der österreichischen Geschichte, **588** note; Oesterreichische Geschichte, **588** note.
Krüger, G., Papsttum, **452**; Sammlung ausgewählter Quellenschriften, **955** note.
Krüger, P., Quellen des römischen Rechts, 423.
Krumbacher, K., Byzantinische Literatur, **800**; Byzantinische Zeitschrift,

174; Griechische Literatur, 336; Populäre Aufsätze, 675.
Krusch, B., Bonnet's Untersuchungen, 360; Sprache Fredegars, 360.
Küch, F., Landfriedensbestrebungen, 163.
Kühn, F., Cola di Rienzo, 297.
Kühne, A., Herrscherideal, 217.
Kühne, E., Antiochia, 200.
Külb, P., Missionsreisen, 240.
Künstlermonographien, 314.
Kürschner, J., Literaturkalender, 95 note.
Kugler, B., Albert von Aachen, 209; Analekten, 206; Boemund und Tankred, 200; Kreuzzüge, 205.
Kuhlman, B., Bonifatius, 130.
Kuhn, A., Roma, 347.
Kuhn, L., Petrus Damiani, 382.
Kuhns, O., Poets of Italy, 309; Saint Francis, 229.
Kultur der Gegenwart, 729.
Kulturgeschichtliche Bibliothek, 730.
Kunstmann, F., Rhabanus Maurus, 371.
Kupelwieser, L., Kämpfe Ungarns mit den Osmanen, 329.
Kurth, F., Niederdeutsche Kreuzfahrer, 321.
Kurth, G., Boniface, 128; Civilisation moderne, 752; Clovis, 135; Grégoire de Tours, 360; Histoire poétique, 360; Moyen âge, 107; Notger de Liège, 179; Sainte Clotilde, 361.
Kurtz, J., Church history, 407.
Kurze, F., Einhard, 367; Karolingische Annalen, 143.
Kutschera, H., Chasaren, 158.
Kybal, V., Franz von Assisi, 228.
Kylie, E., Boniface, 131; Letters of Boniface, 129.

Labanca, B., Marsilio da Padova, 290.
Labarte, J., Handbook of arts, 207; Histoire des arts, 207.
Labitte, A., L'art de l'enluminure, 466.
Laborde, L., Ecoles de droit, 190.
Labriolle, P., Ausone et Paulin de Nola, 337.
Labutte, A., Ducs de Normandie, 198.
Lacabane, L., Poudre à canon, 263.
Lachauvelaye, J., Guerres des Français, 280.
Lacordaire, H., Saint Dominique, 232.
Lacroix, P., Arts, 188; Chevalerie, 263; Costumes, 192; Manners, customs and dress, 188; Military and religious life, 188; Science and literature, 188.
Lacroix, P., and Séré, F., Le moyen âge, 188.
La Curne de Sainte-Palaye, Chevalerie, 263.
Lafont, G., Nationalité française, 137.
Lafontaine, A., Gerson, 273.
Laforêt, J., Alcuin, 367.
Laforge, F., Alexander III, 217.
La France Franciscaine, 231.
Lafuente, M., Historia de España, 623.
La Fuente, V. de, Historia ecclesiastica de España, 467 note; Universidades en España, 444.
Lagarde, A., Latin church, 431.
La grande encyclopédie, 98.
Lagrèze, G., Normands, 154.
Lahargou, P., De scholis Lerinensi, 360.
Laing, S., Heimskringla, 152.
Lake, K., Mount Athos, 120.
Lalande, A., Physique, 433.
Lalanne, J., Pères de l'église, 338.
Lallemand, L., Charité, 239; Lèpre, 436.
Lamborn, E., Oxford stone, 443.
Lamond, E., Walter of Henley's Husbandry, 258.
Lampérez, V., Arquitectura cristiana, 475.
Lamprecht, K., Deutsche Geschichte, 561; Wirtschaftsleben, 250.
Lanciani, R., Ancient Rome, 346; Destruction of ancient Rome, 346; Forma urbis Romae, 347; Golden days of the renaissance in Rome, 311; L'itineraria di Einsiedeln, 346; Pagan and Christian Rome, 346; Roman Campagna, 346.
Landau, M., Boccaccio, 310; Hölle, 355.
Landon, E., Manual of councils, 470.
Lane, E., Arabian society, 376; Kúran, 147.
Lane, W., Dante collections, 483.
Lanéry d'Arc, P., Livre d'or de Jeanne d'Arc, 282.
Lanfranc, 380, 382.
Lang, A., Aucassin et Nicolette, 454; Maid of France, 279; Oxford, 443.
Lange, C., Diplomatarium Norvegicum, 1009.
Langebek, J., Scriptores rerum Danicarum medii aevi, 1007.
Langen, J., Geschichte der römischen Kirche, 427; Roger Baco, 431; Römische Kirche, 216.
Langenberg, R., Mystik, 409.
Langeron, E., Grégoire VII, 183.
Langlois, C. R., Vie en France, 264.
Langlois, C. V., Connaissance de la nature, 427; Eloquence sacrée, 450; England and France, 539; Etat des

inventaires des Archives nationales, 4 note; Formulaires de lettres, 418; Historic rôle of France, 543; Historiographie, 459; Inquisition, 401; Lectures historiques, 358; Littérature goliardique, 449; Maître Bernard, 419; Manuel de bibliographie historique, 12; Nogaret, 271; Parlement de Paris, 246; Philippe III, 245; Pierre Dubois, 211; Questions d'histoire et d'enseignement, 625; Saint Louis, 245; Sermons parisiens, 450; Service militaire, 262; Société française, 454; Travaux sur la société française, 264; Universités, 439; Vie en France, 454.
Langlois, C. V., and Seignobos, C., Introduction aux études historiques, 65.
Langlois, C. V., and Stein, H., Les archives, 25.
Langlois, E., Noms propres dans les chansons, 456; Roman de la rose, 456.
Language and literature, Latin, 445–452.
Language, study of, 304–309, 410–416.
Languedoc, 540.
Lansdale, M., Paris, 387.
Lanson, G., Littérature française, 454.
Lanzani, F., Comuni italiani, 217; I comuni, 620.
Lapôtre, A., L'Europe et la Saint-Siège, 177.
Largent, A., Saint Jérôme, 337.
La Rive, M., Confédération suisse, 290.
L'armée à travers les âges, 262.
Larned, J., History for ready reference, 78.
La Roncière, C., Marine française, 546.
Larousse Grand dictionnaire, 99.
Larson, L., Canute the Great, 152; Household of Norwegian kings, 327; King's mirror, 331.
L'arte, 478.
Lasch, B., Historische Kritik, 461.
La Servière, J., Charlemagne, 141.
Lasswitz, K., Atomistik, 433.
Lastevrie, R., Architecture religieuse, 475; Cartulaire générale de Paris, 390; Sculpture française, 477.
Lastevrie, R., and Vidier, A., Bibliographie: sociétés savantes, 26.
La storia d'Italia, 994.
Lateran, 345, 348.
Latham, C., Eleven letters of Dante, 482.
Latin Christendom, expansion of, 125–131; church in middle ages, 424–429; classical authors in the middle ages, 414; empire of Constantinople, 202, 206; kingdom of Jerusalem, 201, 205; language and literature, 333, 335, 336, 445–452; palaeography, 212–237; West in sixth century, 107–112.
Latin, medieval, 445–452; Merovingian, 358, 360.
Latins in the Levant, 324, 326, 329.
Latouche, R., comté du Maine, 167.
La Trappe, 222, 227.
Lattes, E., Banche a Venezia, 299.
Lau, H., Missionsweise, 131.
Lauchert, F., Physiologus, 350.
Laue, F., Krankenbehandlung, 435.
Lauer, P., Lateran, 348; Louis IV, 167; Robert Ier, 167; Tapisserie de Bayeux, 199.
Lauer, P., and Samaran, C., Diplômes des Mérovingiens, 138.
Launoy, L., L'église Gauloise, 120.
Laurent, F., Barbares et le catholicisme, 339.
Laurentie, J., Ferdinand III, 320.
Laurie, S., Universities, 439.
Lauriel, P., Bibliografia: Vespro Siciliano, 303.
Laurin, F., Corpus iuris canonici, 424.
Lavallée, T., Histoire des français, 513; Turquie, 330.
Lavisse, E., Charles V, 282; Décadence mérovingienne, 358; Foi des Francs, 358; General view of political history, 328 note; Histoire de France, 508; L'éntrée de la papauté, 123; Saint-Empire, 141.
Lavisse, E., and Rambaud, A., Histoire générale, 328.
Lavoix, H., Musique au siècle de Saint Louis, 477.
Law, bibliography of, 66; canon, 421–425; Germanic, 159, 161, 163; periodical for history of, 183; Roman, 113, 159, 161, 164, 420–425.
Law, A., Medieval shipping, 248; Nouveaux-riches, 248.
Lawrence, W., Mediaeval story, 794.
Lazard, L., Etienne Marcel, 281; Juifs, 246.
Lazarovich-Hrebelianovich, prince, Servian people, 329.
Lazarus, P., Basler Konzil, 274.
Lea, H., Auricular confession, 434; Inquisition of middle ages, 401; Inquisition of Spain, 318; Moriscoes, 318; Papal Penitentiary, 238; Sacerdotal celibacy, 179, 436; Studies, 436; Superstition and force, 161; Usury, 248.
Leach, A., Educational charters, 849; Education in England, 848.

Le Beau, C., Histoire du Bas-Empire, **655**.
Leber, C., Dissertations, **545**.
Lebeuf, abbé, Ville de Paris, 387.
Le Blanc, H., Lettres profanes, 351.
Le Blant, E., Inscriptions chrétiennes de la Gaule, 361.
Le Bon, G., Civilisation des Arabes, 374.
Le Brun, A., Saint-Julien le Pauvre, 389.
Lechfeld, 169, 172.
Lechler, G., Hus, 273; Kirchenstaat, 290.
Lechner, J., Regesten, Karolingern, 169.
Lechner, K., Grosse Geisselfahrt, 254; Grosse Sterben, 253.
Lechner, P., Benedict, 120.
Lecky, W., European morals, **753**; Rise of rationalism, **741**.
Leclerc, L., Médecine arabe, 377.
Leclercq, H., L'Afrique, 120; L'Afrique chrétienne, 343; L'Espagne, 112; Manuel d'archéologie chrétienne, **301**.
Leclère, A., Mysticisme, 409.
Leclère, L., Philippe III, 245.
Lecoy de la Marche, A., Anecdotes historiques, 451; Chaire française, 450; Foundation de la France, 136; L'art d'enluminer, 467; L'esprit de nos aieux, 447; Manuscrits, 467; Oeuvres complètes de Suger, 246; Prédication de la croisade, 208; St. Louis, 245; Saint Martin, 120.
Lector, L., Le conclave, **453** note.
Lee, G., Hincmar, 177.
Lee, V., *see* Paget, V.
Lees, B., Central period, **379**.
Lefebvre, F., Bruno, 227.
Léfèvre, A., Germains et Slaves, 158.
Lefèvre, G., Guillaume de Champeaux, 395.
Lefèvre-Pontalis, E., Cathédrales de Chartres, 476; L'architecture religieuse, 476.
Lefranc, A., Collège de France, 412.
Legates of the popes, 233, 237.
Legend of the year 1000, 170, 171, 369, 370, 475.
Leger, L., Cyrille, 158; Etudes slaves, 157; History of Austro-Hungary, **590**; Monde slave, 157; Mythologie slave, 157; Serbes, **706** note.
Legge, F., Forerunners of Christianity, 337.
Legrand, E., Bibliographie Hellénique, 311.
Lehmann, A., Aberglaube, 430.
Lehmann, E., Mysticism, 409.
Lehmann, P., Johannes Sichardus, 468; Literaturgeschichte, 449; Vom Mittelalter, 106.
Lehugeur, P., Philippe le Long, 246.
Leist, F., Urkundenlehre, **241**.
Leitschuh, F., Karolingische Malerei, 367.
Lelewel, J., Géographie, 257.
Lelong, J., Bibliothèque historique, **27**.
Lembke, F., Spanien, **620**.
Lemcke, G., Richard von Cornwall, 220.
Lemcke, H., Reisen des Marco Polo, 249.
Lemmens, L., Bonaventura, 409; Documenta antiqua Franciscana, 232.
Le Monnier, L., St. François, 229.
Le moyen âge, revue d'histoire, **165**.
Le musée des enluminures, 467.
Le Nain de Tillemont, L., Mémoires, 119; Saint Louis, 245.
Lenel, W., Venedig, 299.
Lenfant, J., Concile de Bâsle, 274; Concile de Constance, 273; Concile de Pise, 273.
Lenoir, A., Statistique monumentale de Paris, 388.
Leo I, pope, 108.
Leo III, emperor, 185, 190.
Leo III, pope, 139.
Leo IX, pope, 173–175.
Leonardo da Vinci, 305; 314; Thoughts on art, 314.
Leonhardt, W., Kreuzzugsplan Heinrichs VI, 206.
Leprosy, 435.
Lepszy, L., Cracow, **694** note.
Léroux, A., Allemagne et la France, 281; France et l'empire, **538**; Nouvelles recherches, France avec l'Allemagne, 282.
Le Roux de Lincy, A., and Tisserand, L., Paris, 387.
Leroy-Beaulieu, A., Empire of the tsars, **686**.
Lersch, B., Einleitung in die Chronologie, **254** note.
Les grandes chroniques de France, **974**.
Lesne, E., Propriété ecclésiastique, 163.
Lespinasse, R., and Bonnardot, F., Réglemens d'Etienne Boileau, 258.
Lesser, E., Aussatzhäuser, 436.
Le Strange, G., Palestine, 210.
Lethaby, W., Mediaeval art, 471; Westminster abbey, 475.
Letters, model, 417, 418, 420.
Levant, Latins in, 324, 326, 329.
Levant trade, 247, 255.
Levasseur, E., Classes ouvrières, 250; Commerce de la France, 255; Population française, 280.

Levillain, A., Lettres de Loup de Ferrières, 371.
Levison, W., Die Iren, 130.
L'évolution de l'humanité, 316.
Lévy-Bruhl, H., Elections abbatiales, 178.
Lewis, A., Paganism, 338.
Lewis, C., Germany, 585.
Lewis, G., Bernard's On consideration, 393.
Lex Salica, 159.
Lexicon abbreviaturarum, 224.
Leyser, P., Historia poetarum, 451.
L'histoire de France, edited by Dussieux, 976 note; edited by B. Zeller, 976.
Liard, L., Université de Paris, 441.
Liber censuum, 221; diurnus, 658 note; pontificalis, 649 note.
Libraries, 3, 4, 5, 6, 83–85, 462–470.
Libri, G., Sciences mathématiques, 436.
Liebe, G., Judentum, 655.
Liebert, A., Ausgewählte Schriften von Pico della Mirandola, 315.
Life of nobles, 260–264.
Liliencron, R., Zeit der Scholastik, 407.
Lilienfein, H., Staat und Kirche, 141.
Linden, H. van der, *see* Van der Linden, H.
Lindenschmit, Alterthümer, 360.
Lindisfarne, 126, 150.
Lindner, T., Deutsche Geschichte, 288; Hanse, 257; Heinrich IV, 183; Königswahlen, 172; Kurfürstenthum, 291; Veme, 292; Vemgerichte, 292; Weltgeschichte, 333; Wenzel, 291.
Lindsay, W., Isidori Etymologiae, 352.
Linsenmayer, A., Geschichte der Predigt, 238.
Linton, E., Women of chivalry, 263.
Lionardo Bruni, Dante, 481.
Lipinska, M., Femmes médecins, 435.
Lippert, W., Rudolf von Frankreich, 167.
Lippmann, E., Schiesspulver, 263.
Lipson, E., Economic history, 251.
List of books in reading room in British Museum, 3 note; of European historical societies, 208 note; of works on history of Jews, 62.
Literature, history of, 170–173, 782–814; 800–801; Latin, 445–452; old French, 452–457.
Little, A., Grey Friars, 228; Initia operum latinorum, 449; Part of the Opus tertium, 437; Roger Bacon essays, 428; Roger Bacon's works, 437.
Little, C., Cyclopedia of dates, 71.
Little, W., St. Francis, 229.
Little Flowers of St. Francis, 225.
Littré, E., Glossaires, 448.
Lives of friar saints, 228.
Livonia, 891.
Livret de l'Ecole des chartes, 164 note.
Lizerand, G., Templiers, 208.
Locke, C., Great western schism, 272.
Lodge, E., End of the middle age, 379; Saint-André of Bordeaux, 280.
Lodge, R., Close of the middle ages, 329 note.
Löbbel, H., Bruno, 227.
Loebell, J., Gregor von Tours, 359.
Löher, F., Kulturgeschichte, 778.
Loeschcke, G., Jüdisches und heidnisches, 339.
Loew, E., Beneventan script, 220.
Loewe, G., Corpus glossarium latinorum, 448; Prodromus, 448.
Loewe, V., Bücherkunde, 32.
Loewenfeld, S., Epistolae pontificum, 991.
Logic, New, 396, 398; Old, 396; study of, 391–395.
Lohmeyer, K., Ostpreussen, 221.
Loiseau, A., Littérature portugaise, 813 note.
Loisel, G., Ménageries, 434.
Loisel, S., Législation économiques, 143.
Loisne, A., Azincourt, 280.
Lokys, G., Kämpfe der Araber, 149.
Lombard, A., Constantin V, 190.
Lombard kings, 568–774 A.D., 114; League, 212, 215, 217.
Lombards, 114–116.
Loncao, E., Odoacre, 111.
Lones, T., Aristotle's natural science, 399.
Longfellow, H., Divine comedy, 481.
Longman's historical illustrations, 701.
Longnon, A., Atlas historique de la France, 129; Géographie de la Gaule, 359; Livre des vassaux, 164; Nationalité française, 167; Polyptique de Irmion, 164.
Longuemare, P., Collèges parisiens, 442.
Loofs, F., Dogmengeschichte, 475; Kirchengeschichte, 413.
Loofs, F., Nestorius, 376.
Loomis, L., Book of the popes, 949 note; Greek renaissance, 306; Mediæval hellenism, 412.
Lo Porco, F., Petrarca, 310.
Lorenz, F., Alcuin, 367.
Lorenz, O., Deutsche Geschichte, 288; Deutschlands Geschichtsquellen, 30; Genealogisches Handbuch, 269; Geschichtswissenschaft, 106; Lehrbuch der Genealogie, 268.
Lorenzo the Magnificent, 294, 296, 300.

Lorraine, 165, 168.
Lorris, W., and Clopinel, J., Romance of the rose, 455.
Loserth, J., Geschichte des späteren Mittelalters, **347**; Husitische Bewegung, 275; Huss, 273.
Lot, F., Abbaye de Saint-Wandrille, 153; Dernier Carolingiens, 168; Fidèles, 162; Histoire bretonne, 167; Hugues Capet, 168; Invasion normande, 153; Migrations saxonnes, 111.
Lot, F., and Halphen, L., Charles le Chauve, 167.
Loth, J., L'émigration bretonne, 363.
Lotharingia, 165, 168.
Loubier, J., Mittelalterlichen Bücher, 466.
Louergan, W., Churches of Paris, 389.
Louis I. the Pious, 165.
Louis VI, 241, 244.
Louis VII, 202, 206, 242, 244.
Louis VIII, 242, 244.
Louis IX. Saint, 202, 204, 207, 242, 243, 245.
Louis XI, 278, 279, 284.
Louis of Bavaria, 286, 289.
Louisy, M., Livre, 465.
Louvain, university of, 439, 444.
Love letters of Abelard and Heloise, 393.
Lowell, H., Joan of Arc, 279.
Lowell, J., Essay on Dante, 480.
Lozzi, C., Bibliotheca della Italia, **39**.
Luard, H., Roberti Grosseteste epistolae, 241.
Lubbock, J., Coins and currency, 254.
Lucas, H., Savonarola, 300.
Luce, S., Du Guesclin, 263; Guerre de cent ans, 280; Jacquerie, 281; Jeanne d'Arc, 283; Jeunesse de Bertrand du Guesclin, 281.
Luchaire, A., Communes française, 252; Innocent III, 215; Institutions monarchiques, 168; Louis VI, 244; Louis VII, 244; Manuel des institutions françaises, **530**; Mélanges d'histoire du moyen âge, **926**; Social France, 243; Université de Paris, 441.
Lucius, E., Heiligenkult, 356.
Luck, E., Life of St. Benedict, 118.
Ludlow, J., Crusades, 204; Epics of the middle ages, **792**.
Ludwig, F., Reisegeschwindigkeit, 255.
Lübke, W., History of art, 473.
Lüttich, R., Ungarnzüge, 159.
Lützow, F., Bohemia, **702**; Historians of Bohemia, **702** note; Hussite wars, 274; John Hus, 270; Prague, **702** note.
Lull, Raymund, 203, 208, 235, 240, 411.
Lumby, J., Greek learning, 363.
Lundgreen, F., Wilhelm von Tyrus, 208.
Lundius, B., Vagantenlieder, 449.
Lungo, J., Bonifazio VIII, 271.
Lunt, W., Financial system of papacy, 235; Papal annates, 238; Papal taxation, 238.
Luquet, G., Aristote, 397; Hermann l'Allemand, 399.
Luschin von Ebengreuth, A., Grundriss der österreichischen Reichgeschichte, **594** note; Münzkunde, **293**; Oesterreichische Reichgeschichte, **594**.
Lux, C., Papst Silvester II, 172.
Luxeuil, 126.
Luzzatto, G., Storia del commercio, 255.
Lybyer, A., Ottoman Turks, 255.
Lyle, E., English bishop, 237.
Lyte, H., Oxford, 443.

Maasen, F., Canonisches Recht, 425.
Mabilleau, L., Atomistik, 433.
Mabillon, J., Annales, 119; De re diplomatica, **238**; Etudes monastiques, **760** note.
Macaulay, G., Capture of a council, 215; Chronicles of Froissart, 279.
McCabe, J., Abelard, 393; Crises in the history of the papacy, **450**; Empresses of Constantinople, **678**; St. Augustine, 340.
Maccarrone, N., Vita in Sicilia, 199.
McClellan, G., Venice, 298.
McClure, E., Historical church atlas, **128**.
McCracken, W., Swiss republic, 288.
Macdonald, D., Muslim theology, 376.
Macdonald, J., France, **515**.
Macdonell, A., Sons of St. Francis, 228; Words of Saint Francis, 225.
McHardy, G., Savonarola, 300.
Macherl, P., Karl der Grosse, 142.
Machiavelli, N., Florence and The Prince, 297.
Macken, T., Canonisation of saints, 239.
Mackenzie, J., Castles, 263.
Mackie, J., Pope Adrian IV, 217.
McKilliam, A., Chronicle of the popes, **449**.
Mackinnon, J., French monarchy, **525**.
McLaughlin, E., Mediaeval life, 795.
Maclear, G., Apostles; Conversion of northern nations; Conversion of Slavs; Christian missions, 178.
Mac Murdo, E., Portugal, **640**.

Mac Neal, E., Minores, 163.
Madan, F., Books in manuscript, 465; Palaeography, **235**.
Madelaine, Histoire de saint Norbert, 227.
Magic, 426, 430.
Magnin, M., L'église wisigothique, 129.
Magnum oecumenicum Constantiense concilium, 275.
Magnus, L., Armament of Igor, 331.
Magnusson, E., and Morris, W., Volsunga saga, 152.
Magyars or Hungarians, 157, 159.
Mahrenholtz, A., Jeanne Darc, 283.
Maigne d'Arnis, W., Lexicon manuale, 448.
Maillet, H., L'église et l'hérésie, 403.
Mainz, Pragmatic Sanction of, 268, 274.
Maitland, F., Anglo-French, 453; English law, 164; Political theories, **580**; Roman canon law, 423.
Maitland, S., Dark ages, **760**.
Maître, L., Ecoles épiscopales, 366.
Major, R., Prince Henry, 322.
Making of the nations, **322**.
Malagola, A., Tommaso d'Aquino, 462.
Malagola, C., I rettore dello studio bolognese, 442; Studio bolognese, 442.
Mâle, E., L'art du moyen âge, 478; L'art religieux de la fin du moyen âge, 472; Religious art in France, 472.
Malesissie, C., Jehanne d'Arc, 283.
Malfatti, B., Imperatori e papi, 141.
Mallet, C., Theodora, 115.
Malnory, A., St. Césaire, 361.
Malo, H., Renaud de Dammartin, 245.
Malsch, R., Heinrich Raspe, 219.
Manacorda, G., Scuole in Italia, 443.
Mancini, G., Valla, 312.
Mandeville, Sir John, Travels, 241.
Mandonnet, P., Albert le Grand, 408; Crise scolaire, 385; Dominicains dans université de Paris, 441; Dominici, 273; Ecrits de S. Thomas d'Aquin, 408; Idées cosmographiques, 434; Ordo de Poenitentia, 230; Roger Bacon, 428; Roger Bacon et le Speculum, 432; Roger Bacon et les trois opus, 432; Siger de Brabant, 398.
Manegold of Lautenbach, 380, 382.
Manfred of Sicily, 213, 219.
Manfroni, C., Il dominio del Mediterraneo, **360**; Marina italiana, **610**.
Manichaeism, 334, 337.
Manitius, M., Aldhelm und Beda, 364; Bibliothekskatalogen, 414; Deutsche Geschichte, 911–1125, 171; Gedichte des Archipoeta, 450; Geschichte der lateinischen Literatur des Mittelalters, **787**; Horaz im Mittelalter, 414; Römische Dichter, 414; Römische Prosaiker, 414.
Mann, H., Lives of the popes, **430**. Nicholas Breakspear, 217.
Manser, G., Scholastik, 407.
Mansfield, M., Castles, 262.
Mansi, J., Sacrorum conciliorum collectio, **902**.
Mantellier, P., Marchands de Loire, 255.
Mantever, G., Provence, 168.
Manuscripts, 4 note, **5**, **212–237**, 461, 466-467.
Manutius, Aldus, 304, 307, 312.
Manzikert, battle of, 186.
Manzoni, L., Bibliografia storica Bolognese, 445.
Map, Walter, 446, 449–451; De nugis, 451; Latin poems, 450.
Marcais, G., Arabes en Berberie, 209.
Marcais, W., Monuments arabes, 379.
Marcel, Etienne, 277, 281.
Marcel, H., Bibliothèque nationale, 469.
Marcellin de Civezza, R., Missions franciscaines, 240.
Marchal, L., Roger Bacon, 431.
Marchand, J., Faculté des arts, 442.
Marchesi, C., Due grammatici latini, 448; L'Etica Nicomachea, 399.
Marco Polo, 248, 249.
Marczali, H., Enchiridion, 159.
Maréchaux, D., Saint Benoît, 120.
Margoliouth, D., Mohammed, 146; Mohammedanism, 148.
Mari, G., I trattati di rithmica, 420; John Garland's Parisiana, 420.
Mariana, J., España, **625**.
Marichalar, A., and Manrique, C., Legislación de España, **633** note.
Mariéjol, J., Ferdinand et Isabelle, 322.
Mariétan, J., Classification de sciences, 407.
Marignan, A., Civilisation française, 360.
Marigo, A., Cultura letteraria e preumanistica, 413.
Marin, E., De Studio, 177; Moines de Constantinople, 177.
Marin, P., Jeanne d'Arc, 283.
Mariotti, C., S. Francesco, 483.
Markham, C., Book of the knowledge of all the kingdoms, 249.
Marquand, A., and Frothingham, A., Sculpture, 307.
Marquart, I., Osteuropäische Streifzüge, **680** note.
Marriage, M. and E., Sculptures of Chartres, 472.

h, F., English rule in Gascony,).
iall, G., Genealogist's guide, **280**.
gli of Florence, 304, 311.
glio of Padua, 286–290, 292; Desor pacis, 292.
ne, E., and Durand, V., Thesaui novus, **951**: Veterum scriptorum . collectio, **952**; Voyage littéraire,).
ns, W., Gregor VII, 182.
n, A., Colluccio Salutatis, 311; telalterliche Weltanschauung, 311.
n, C., L'art gothique, 476; L'Art ian, 475.
n, Mrs. C., St. Jerome, 337.
n, C. T., Record interpreter, **244**.
n, E., Saint Columban, 130.
n, H., Charlemagne, 142; France,).
n, H. M., Peintures de manuscrits,).
n, J., Saint Augustin, 342.
n, P., Texte Parisien de la Vule, 416; Vulgate, 416.
n, Saint, of Tours, 117.
nez, F., Ascéticisme, 356.
nez Alcubilla, M., Códiges de ıaña, 322.
nez Marina, F., Legislación de ón y Castilla, **633** note.
nez, Vigil R., Predicadores, 231.
nu, J., Waldesier, 274.
ove, F., Gensèric, 112; L'occiit, 111.
', A., Jeanne d'Arc, 283; Notreme de Paris, 389.
cchi, O., Epigrafia cristiana, **223**.
J., Inquisition, 403.
L., Gesta Normannorum, 200.
tta-Caracci, L., Dante e Petrarca,).
s, H., Erziehung, **844**.
us, C., Otto I von Bamberg, 221.
atrie, L., Traités de paix, 150; sor de chronologie, **256**.
ı, A., St. Augustine, 129.
ı, E., French medieval romances,).
ı, W., Cistercian order, 224.
n, A., Gerson, 273.
n, G., Early chronicles: France, note: Medieval France, **526**.
rman, J., Medieval Europe, **379**.
rs in art, 314.
', A., L'église catholique, **405** note.
matics, 349, 350, 427, 428, 436; hammedan, 373, 375, 377.
w, A., Hildebrand, 182.
ws, S., Mediaeval documents, **388**.
Mathias I (Corvinus), 324, 326, 329.
Matilda of Tuscany, 180, 184.
Matrod, H., Guillaume de Rubrouck, 240.
Mau, G., Kaiser Julian, 338.
Maubach, J., Kardinäle, 236.
Maugis, E., Parlement de Paris, 246.
Maulde la Clavière, A., Juifs, **882**.
Maurer, G., Frohnhöfe, 162; Städteverfassung, 252.
Maurer, K., Bekehrung des norwegischen Stammes, 178; Vorlesungen, **719**.
Maurice, C., Bohemia, **699**.
Maury, L., Croyances, 356.
Mausbach, J., Ethik des Augustinus, 342.
Mavor, J., Russia, **681** note.
Mawer, A., Vikings, 152.
Maximilian I, 287, 291.
Mayer, E., Italienische Verfassungsgeschichte, **608**: Mittelalterliche Verfassungsgeschichte, **584**.
Mayer, F., Geschichte Oesterreichs, **582**.
Mayer-Homberg, E., Die fränkischen Volksrechte, **536**.
Mayors of the palace, 134, 136.
Mayrwald, M., Lehre von der zweifachen Wahrheit, 408.
Mazzatinti, G., Archivi della storia d'Italia, **5** note; Inventari dei manoscritti, **5**.
Mazzoni, G., Rinascimento, 309.
Meaux, C., Ecole de Salerne, 443.
Mediaeval towns series, 251.
Medici family, 294, 300.
Medicine, 427, 428, 434.
Mediterranean, **360–361**.
Medley, D., Church and empire, 181.
Meier, G., Bücher, 465; Sieben freien Künste, 351.
Meier, P., Ausgewählte Schriften, 367.
Meinsma, K., Bibliotheken, 468.
Meister, A., Deutsche Verfassungsgeschichte, **582**; Grundriss der Geschichtswissenschaft, **331**.
Meitzen, A., Ausbreitung der Deutschen, 220; Siedelung und Agrarwesen, 158.
Mélanges d'archéologie et d'histoire de l'Ecole de Rome, **887** note: dédiées à G. Monod par Prou, **939**; Fitting, **937**; offerts à M. Charles Bémont, **934**; offerts à M. Emile Chatelain, **935**; Paul Fabre, **936**.
Melillo, E., Poste italiene, 297.
Meltzing, O., Bankhaus der Medici, 254.
Mely, F., Excuviae, 211.
Mémoires et documents, commerce en France, 255.

Mendiçant friars, 222–223; in university of Paris, 438, 441; artistic history of, 475.
Menéndez Pidal, R., Primera crónica general, 322.
Menéndez y Pelayo, M., Antología de poeta castellanos, 321; Heterodoxos españoles, 321.
Mengozzi, G., Città italiana, 168.
Ménorval, E., Paris, 388 Promenades à travers Paris, 388.
Menzel, V., Lehnswesen, 162.
Meo, A., Regno di Napoli, 301.
Merbach, H., Slawenkriege, 58.
Mercier, C., Leper houses, 436.
Mercier, E., Afrique septentrionale, 148.
Méric E., Sorbonne, 441
Mérimée, P., Don Pèdre Ier, 320.
Merivale, C., Conversion of northern nations, 178.
Merkt, J., Wundmale des Franziskus, 230.
Merlet, L., Lettres de saint Ives, 381.
Merovingians, 132–138; learning of, 357, 359, 360.
Merrill, W., Latin hymns, 452.
Merriman, R., Cortes, 318.
Merryweather, F., Bibliomania, 468; Glimmerings in the dark, **755**.
Merten, A., B chmalerei, 467.
Mesnage, J., Afrique chrétienne, 343; Christianisme en Afrique, 343.
Messer, A., Codice aragonese, 301.
Method, historical, **64–67**.
Methodius, 156, 158.
Meunier, L., Médecine, 434.
Meyer, A., Weihnachtsfest, 239.
Meyer, C., Aberglaube, 430.
Meyer, E., Mormonen und Islam, 148.
Meyer, E. v., Chemie, 433.
Meyer, G., Jahrbücher, Heinrich IV, 183.
Meyer, H., Bibliotheksordnungen, 469.
Meyer, K., Aberglaube, 56.
Meyer, K., .earning in Ireland, 362.
Meyer, P., Alexandre le Grand, 456.
Meyer, R., Mittelalter, 107.
Meyer, W., Bernhard gegen Abälard, 395; Carmina burana, 450; Fragmenta burana, 450; Gedichte des Primas, 450; Ludus de Antichristo, 356; Rythmik, 449.
Meyer Lübke, W., Die romanischen Sprachen, **306**.
Meyers Historischer Handatlas, **121** note; Konversations-Lexicon, **102**.
Meyers, P., Mediaeval and modern history, **375**.
Mézières, A., Pétrarque, 310.
Michael Angelo, 305, 314.
Michael, E., Culturzustände des deutschen Volkes, **778**; Salimbene, 460.
Michael Scot, 396, 398.
Michaud, E., Guillaume de Champeaux, 395.
Michaud, J., Bibliothèque de croisades, 2 0 Croisades, 205.
Michaud, J and Poujoulat, P., Nouvelle collection des mémoires, **976**.
Michel, A., Histoire de l'art, 473; L'art Gothique, 472.
Michel, F., Ecossais en France, 281; Portugais en France, **642**.
Michel, M., Origines d'Isidore, 351.
Michel, W., Das Teuflische, 355.
Michelet, J., France, **512**; Jeanne d'Arc, 283.
Michell, R., and Forbes, N., Chronicle of Novgorod, 327.
Middle ages as a period, 105–107.
Middleton, J., Illuminated manuscripts, 466.
Mierow, C., Chronica of Otto of Freising, 460; Origin of Goths by Jordanes, 110.
Migne, J., Patrologia, **953**.
Mignon, A., Hugues de Saint-Victor, 395.
Mijatovich, C., Constantine, 330.
Miklosich, F., and Müller, J., Acta et diplomata graeca, 330.
Milan, 293, 298.
Milburn, J., University life, 440.
Milkau, F., Bibliotheken, 465.
Millard, E., Les Belges, **553**.
Miller, K., Ebstorfkarte, 259; Mappae mundi, 259; Tabula Peutingeriana, 135.
Miller, W., Balkans, **706**; Genoese in Chios, 326; Latins in the Levant, **657**; Serbian empire, **714** note.
Millington, E., Christian iconography, 474.
Millot-Carpentier, Médecine, 435.
Mills, J., Great days of Northumbria, 130.
Milman, H., Latin Christianity, **424**.
Miltoun, F., Cathedrals of northern France, 476.
Milyoukov, P., Russische Kulturgeschichte, **737**.
Minasi, G., Cassiodoro, 343.
Minerva: Handbuch, **84**; Jahrbuch, **83**.
Minocchi, S., San Francesco, 229.
Mirabilia Romae, 346.
Miracles and mysteries, 353, 356.
Mirbt, C., Publizistik, 183; Quellen, **953** note; Wahl Gregors VII, 183.
Miron, E., Queens of Aragon, 320.

Mirot, L., Insurrections urbaines, 251; Les inventaires d'archives, **25** note; Politique pontificale, 272; Tentative d'invasion, 282.
Mirza Muhammad Haidar, Moghuls of central Asia, 328.
Miscellanea antiqua Anglicana, 432; Francescana, 231.
Misch, G., Autobiographie, 460.
Missalek, E., Polnische Geschichte, 158.
Missionaries in eastern Germany, 213, 220; in the north and east, 174, 178; mendicant, 223, 228, 231; Slavic, 156, 158.
Missions, 126, 235, 236, 240.
Mithraism, 334, 337.
Mitteilungen aus der historischen Literatur, **153**; der Gesellschaft für deutsche Erziehungsgeschichte, **182**; des Instituts für österreichische Geschichtsforschung, **166**; zur Geschichte der Medizin, 435–436; zur vaterländischen Geschichte, St. Gall, **987** note.
Moddermann, W., Rezeption des römischen Rechts, 424.
Möhler, J., Kirchengeschichte, **404**.
Moeller, C., Moyen âge, **356**.
Moeller, E., Elendenbrüderschaften, 239.
Möller, N., Johannes Scotus, 372.
Moeller, R., Ludwig der Bayer, 289.
Moeller, W., Christian church, **395**.
Moeser, H., Villehardouin, 206.
Moffat, D., Complaint of nature, 451.
Mohammed, 144, 146, 148.
Mohammedans, 144–150; and the Byzantine empire, 185, 189; and culture, 375–379.
Mohl, F., Latin vulgaire, 336.
Mohler, L., Calonna, 271.
Moiraghi, P., Lanfranco, 382.
Moisant, J., Prince Noir, 281.
Moisson, L., Sainte Claire, 230.
Molinier, A., Géographie féodale de Languedoc, 163; Gesta Ludovici, 246; Louis IX, 245; Manuscrits, 366; Obituaires françaises, **548**; Sources de l'histoire de France, **21**; Université de Toulouse, 442.
Molinier, C., Hérésie et la persécution, 382; Inquisition, 403.
Moll, W., Kerkgeschiedenis van Nederland, **481** note.
Mollat, G., Papes d'Avignon, 271.
Mollat, G., and Samaran, C., Fiscalité pontificale, 274.
Molmenti, P., Venice, 298.
Moltmann, J., Theophano, 172.
Mombert, J., Charles the Great, 140; Crusades, 204.
Mommsen, T., Apollinaris Sidonius, 337; Ostgothische Studien, 111; Reden und Aufsätze, 337.
Monaci, E., Archivio paleografico, **233**.
Monarchies, beginnings of, 165–169.
Monarchy and feudalism, 161.
Monastery schools, 368, 371.
Monasticism, **50**, **479–487**, **964**; in sixth century, 117–121; in eleventh to thirteenth centuries, 222–233.
Mone, F., Hymnen, 452; Schauspiele, 253.
Money and banking, 247, 254.
Mongols, in Russia, 323, 326, 328.
Monnier, F., Alcuin, 367.
Monnier, M., Quattrocento, 309; Renaissance, 309.
Monod, B., Pascal II, Philippe I, 183.
Monod, G., Bibliographie de l'histoire de France, **22**; Mélanges dédiées à, **939**; Nationalités, 167; Normandie, 198; Renaissance carolingienne, 366; Rôle de Paris, 386; Sources de l'histoire carolingienne, 143.
Monographien zur deutschen Kulturgeschichte, **775**; zur Weltgeschichte, **328**.
Monographs on artists, 314.
Monro, C., Digest, 425.
Monroe, P., Cyclopedia of education, **117**; Source book, history of education, 335; Syllabus on the history of education, **59** note.
Monroe, W., Bohemia, **703**.
Monstrelet, E., Chronicles, 279.
Montalembert, Monks of the west, **479**.
Monte Cassino, 118, 119, 145, 195, 200.
Montelatici, G., Letterature Bizantina, **802**.
Montelius, O., Kulturgeschichte Schwedens, 153; Sveriges historia, **727**.
Montgomery, W., St. Augustine, 342.
Montpellier, university of, 439, 444.
Mont-Saint-Michel, 194, 197, 470, 472.
Monumenta conciliorum, 275; dominationis pontificae, **960** note; Franciscana, 232; Germaniae historica, **978**; Germaniae paedagogica, **1012**; Germaniae selecta, **983** note; historiae Bohemica, **986** note; historiae patriae, **991**; Hungariae historica, **1006**; medii aevi historiae res gestas Poloniae illustrantia, **1004**; ordinis Fratrum Praedicatorum historica, 232; Poloniae historica, **1004** note; spectantia historiam Slavorum, **1008** note.

Monumentos arquitectónicos de España, 378.
Moore, C., Church architecture of England, 472; Gothic architecture, 472.
Moore, E., Dante and his early biographers, 481; De monarchia of Dante, 482; Studies in Dante, 480; Tutte le opere di Dante, 483.
Moors, 144–150; expulsion of, from Spain, 315, 316, 322.
Moraleda, Q., El rito mozárabe, 321.
Morand, S., Sainte Chapelle, 389.
Moravia, **700**, **703**, 156, 158.
Mordtmann, A., Esquisse topographique de Constantinople, **663** note; Konstantinopel, 330.
Morey, W., Roman law, 422.
Morf, H., Die romanischen Literaturen, **306**.
Morfill, W., Poland, **694**; Russia, **683**; Slavonic literature, **814** note.
Morgan, J., Catalogue of manuscripts, 467.
Morgan, M., Ten books on architecture by Vitruvius, 307.
Morin, F., Saint François, 229.
Morin, G., Chant grégorien, 125; Etudes, textes, découvertes, **437**; L'idéal monastique, **485**.
Morison, E., Basil, 120.
Morison, J., St. Bernard, 393.
Morison, M., Time-tables, **73**.
Morley, E., Hurd's letters on chivalry, 263.
Morley, H., Medieval tales, 447.
Moroni, G., Dizionario de erudizione, **114**.
Morris, W., Old French romances, 455.
Mortet, V., Cathédrale de Paris, 389; Féodalité, 161; Institutiones de Cassidore, 343; Mélanges d'archéologie, 474; Recueil de textes relatifs à l'histoire de l'architecture, 473.
Mortier, R., Frères Prêcheurs, 231.
Mortreuil, J., Bibliothèque de St. Victor, 468.
Mortreuil, T., Bibliothèque nationale, 469.
Moscato, G., Musulmani in Calabria, 149.
Moses Maimonides, 373, 376, 379; Guide to the perplexed, 379.
Mosher, J., Exemplum, 451.
Moslems or Muslims, 144–150.
Mourret, F., Histoire de l'église, **398**.
Moyle, J., Institutes, 425.
Moyne de la Borderie, A., Bretange, **541**.
Mühlbacher, E., Deutsche Geschichte, 141; Regesten, 143.
Mühlbrecht, O., Wegweiser, **60**.
Muelbe, W., Darstellung des jüngsten Gerichts, 477.
Müldener, W., Gedichte von Walther von Lille, 451.
Müller, A., Griechischen Philosophen, 399; Islam, 147; Orientalische Bibliographie, 379.
Müller, A., Das heilige Deutschland, 238.
Müller, C., Altgermanische Meeresherrschaft, 153.
Müller, C., Fragmenta historicorum Graecorum, **1002** note.
Müller, E., Peter von Prezza, 461.
Müller, J., Vereine und Gesellschaften, **211**.
Müller, J., Diözesanbehörden, 237.
Müller, J. v., Eidgenossenschaft, 290.
Müller, I., Handbuch, **330** note.
Müller, K., Christentum und Kirche, **406** note; Kampf Ludwigs des Bayern, 289; Kirchengeschichte, **486**; Minoriten-orden, 228; Waldenser, 403.
Müller, M., Averroes, 379.
Müller, S., Nordische Altertumskunde, 153.
Müller-Mann, G., Otto II, 172.
Münch, W., Fürstenerziehung, 264.
Münchener Archiv für Philologie des Mittelalters, 447.
Müntz, E., Art pendant la renaissance, 312; Arts à la cour des papes, 312; Cour d'Avignon, 271; Légende de Charlemagne, 143; Leonardo da Vinci, 314; Précurseurs, 312; Renaissance en Italie, 312.
Müntz, E., and Fabre, P., Bibliothèque du Vatican, 468.
Münz, J., Moses ben Maimon, 376.
Muir, R., Atlas, **121** note.
Muir, W., Caliphate, 147; Coran, 148; Mohammed, 146.
Mullinger, J., Cambridge, 443; Foundation of libraries, 465; Schools of Charles the Great, 365.
Munk, S., Guide des egarés, 379; Philosophie juive, 376.
Muñoz, A., Iconografia della Madonna, 357.
Munro, D., Attitude towards classics, 350; Children's crusade, 207; Middle ages, **376**; Renaissance of twelfth century, 384; Speech of Urban II, 204.
Munro, D., Prutz, H., and Diehl, C., Essays on the crusades, 209.
Munro, D., and Sellery, G., Mediaeval civilization, **359**.

L., Annali d'Italia, **812**; Antes Italicae, **969**; Rerum Italiscriptores, **988**.
d., Südslawischen Literaturen,

H., Chess, 264.
J., Oxford dictionary, **308**.
T., Jeanne d'Arc, 280.
E., Venezia, 298.
sculpture du Trocadéro, 477.
3, **5** note, **83–85**.
istory of, 125, 471, 477–478.
B. van, Nation suisse, 290.
)., Spiritual Franciscans, 230.
s, B., Byzantinisch-deutsche
ıngen, 190.
plays, 247, 253.
, 392, 395, 405, 409.
56.

.., Kirchengeschichte Böhmens,
te.
Gerbert, 372.
and Zeidler, J., Deutschchische Literaturgeschichte,

., Northern mists, 154.
I., Florentine history, 300.
94, 301: and humanism, 304,

., Roger Bacon, 431: Supplé-
ux Acta sanctorum, **963** note.
. Sigieri di Brabante, 482.
eeling for, 426, 429.
315, 320.
Mediaeval preachers, 450.
, and Webb, B., Symbolism,

A., Heilige Bernhard, 394.
J., Christian religion, **399**.
Alexander, De naturis rerum,

Giuliano l'Apostata, 338.
., Trial by combat, 161.
O., Samo, 158.
ıism, 334, 337.
ısticism, 406, 409.
376.
ds, **45**, **461** note, **557–559**,

r, M., Medizin, 434.
., K., Das Doctrinale, 449.
C., Bernhard von Clairvaux,
Byzantinische Kultur, 308;
ıche Geschichtschreiber, 205;
llung des byzantinischen
, 191.
K., Orientalische Sprach-
415.

Neumark, D., Jüdische Literatur, **863** note; Jüdische Philosophie, **866**.
New international encyclopaedia, **97**; medieval library, 454; Palaeographical Society: facsimiles, **230**; Schaff-Herzog encyclopedia, **106**.
Newman, cardinal, Antichrist, 355.
Nicene and post-Nicene fathers, **954** note.
Nichol, J., Tables, **74**.
Nicholas I, pope, 173, 176, 177.
Nichols, F., Mirabilia urbis Romae, 346.
Nicholson, R., Literary history of Arabs, 378.
Nicolai de Bibera, Carmen satiricum, 416.
Nicolas, N., Agincourt, 280.
Niedling, A., Bücherornamentik, 467.
Niedner, F., Islands Kultur, 153; Turnier, 264.
Niehues, B., Kaiserthum und Papstthum, **457**.
Nield, J., Historical novels, **78**.
Niemann, A., Augustins Geschichtsphilosophie, 343.
Niese, H., Gesetzgebung, 198.
Niethe, F., Azincourt, 280.
Niortet, Maurice de Sully, 237.
Nitsch, F., Scholastik, 398.
Nitzsch, K., Geschichte des deutschen Volkes, **573**; Gottesfrieden, 163.
Noack, L., Johannes Scotus, 372.
Nobili-Vitelleschi, F., Storia del papato, 136.
Nobles, **277**, 161; life of, 260–264.
Noël, L., Louvain, 444.
Noël, O., Commerce, 255.
Nöldeke, T., Leben Muhammed's, 148; Qoran, 148.
Nolan, E., and Hirsch, S., Greek grammar of Roger Bacon, 416.
Nolhac, P., Petrarch and the ancient world, 306; Pétrarque, 310.
Nomads, Asiatic, 155–159, 323, 326, 328.
Noorden, C., Hincmar, 177.
Norden, E., Antike Kunstprosa, **786**; Lateinische Literatur, 350.
Norden, W., Otto der Grosse, 172; Papsttum und Byzanz, **447**; Vierte Kreuzzug, 206.
Nordenskiold, A., Facsimile atlas, 259; Periplus, 259.
Nordi, L., and Orioli, E., Chartularium studii Bononiensis, 444.
Nordisk Tidskrift för Bok- och Biblioteksväsen, 468.
Normand, C., Guide artistique de Paris, 388.

Normandy, **966** note, 194, 197; dukes of, 911–1204 A.D., 196.
Normans, 180, 186, 194–201; kings of, in the Two Sicilies, 1130–1250 A.D., 196.
Norroena, 154.
Northcote, J., and Brownlow, W., Roma sotterranea, 347.
Northern Europe, **1097–1011**; 323–331.
Northmen, 150–155.
Norton, A., Readings: universities, 440.
Norton, C., Church building, 475; Divine comedy, 481; New life of Dante, 482; St. Louis, 245.
Norway, **723–725**, **1009**, 325, 327, 330.
Notices et extraits, 4 note, **885**.
Notitia [of Rome], 346.
Notre Dame de Paris, 386, 387, 389.
Nott, C., Hymns, 452.
Nottrott, L., Wendenmission, 221.
Nouveau Larousse illustré, **99** note.
Nouvelle collection des mémoires, **970**.
Novakovic, S., Problèmes serbes, **716** note.
Novati, F., Carmina medii aevi, 450: Epistolario of Coluccio, 314: Pensiero latino, **758**: Rapports littéraires, 449.
Noyen, A., Inventaire des écrits théologiques, 410.
Noves, E., Ferrara, 302: Milan, 298.
Nübling, E., Ulm's Handel, 257.
Nueva colección de documentos ineditos, **997**.
Numismatics, **292–298**.
Nuova rivista storica, **161** note.
Nuovo bullettino di archeologia cristiana, 348.
Nyrop, K., Grammaire, 455.

Oberhummer, E., Constantinopolis, **669** note.
Obituaries, **548**.
Ockam, William of, 405.
Odo, count of Paris, 165, 167.
Odo of Cluny, **759** note, 173, 178.
Odovacar, 108.
Oechsli, W., Eidgenossenschaft, 290: Quellenbuch der Schweizergeschichte, 292: Schweizergeschichte, 290.
Oechsli-Baldamus Wandkarte zur Schweizergeschichte, 288.
Oehl, W., Mystiker, 409.
Oehler, M., Dänemark, 330: Deutsche Ritterorden, 221.
Oelsner, L., Jahrbücher, 136.
Oesterley, H., Historisch-geographisches Wörterbuch, **134**: Wegweiser, **20**.
Oesterreichische Geschichtquellen, **986**.
Ogden, C., Orosius, 341.
Ogg, F., Source book, **380**.
O'Hagen, J., Song of Roland, 454.
Ohnesorge, W., Slawen, 158.
Ohr, W., Karolingische Gottesstat, 141.
Oidtmann, H., Glasmalerei, 477.
Okey, T., Avignon, 271; Paris, **386**; Venice, 298.
Oldham, J., Renaissance, 305.
Oliphant, M., Francis of Assisi, **229**; Jeanne d'Arc, 283; Makers of Florence, 300; Makers of Venice, 298.
Oliveira Martins, J., Civilização ibérica, 321; Historia de Portugal, **636** note; Prince Henry the Navigator, 318.
Olleris, A., Cassidore, 343; Oeuvres de Gerbert, 372.
Olrik, A., Nordisches Geistesleben, 153.
Olschki, L., Bibliotheca Savonaroliana, 303; Ideale Mittelpunkt Frankreichs, 386; Paris, 386.
Oman, C., Art of war, 115; Byzantine empire, **646**; Dark ages, **329** note; England, 152.
Ommiads, 145.
Omont, H., Bibliothèque de Beauvais, 468; Listes des recueils de fac-similés, 467; Reproductions de manuscrits, 467.
Oncken, W., Allgemeine Geschichte, **313**.
Opdycke, L., Courtier by Castiglione, 308.
Opladen, P., Stellung der Könige, 227.
Ordericus Vitalis, Historia ecclesiastica, 457.
Orders of monks, 222, 226.
Ordonnances des rois de France, **975** note; du Louvre, **975** note.
Oriens christianus, 120.
Original narratives: Northmen, 155.
Origines Islandicae, 154.
Orleans, schools of, 411, 412.
Ormsby, J., Poem of the Cid, 318.
Orosius, History against pagans, 341.
Orr, M., Dante and astronomers, 483.
Orsi, P., L'anno mille, 370; Paure del finimondo, 370; Signorie, 297; Storia d'Italia, **994**.
Ortega y Rubio, J., Visigodos, 112.
Orton, C., House of Savoy, 168.
Orvis, J., Poland, **693**.
Oschinsky, H., Ritter, 264.
Oseberg ship, 150, 154.
Osebergfundet, 154.
Ostrogoths, 108, 111, 113: kings of, 493–553 A.D., 109.
Othloh of St. Emmeran, 380, 382.
Ott, A., Thomas von Aquin, 228.

Otté, E., Scandinavian history, **717** note.
Ottendorff, H., Tancred und Wilhelm III, 199.
Ottenthal, E., Regesten, 919–1024 A.D., **169**.
Otto I, 169–173.
Otto II, 170, 172.
Otto III, 170, 172, 174.
Otto IV, of Brunswick, 212, 213, 218.
Otto of Freising, 458, 460–461; Gesta Friderici, 216.
Otto, H., Rudolf von Habsburg, 289; Streben nach der römischen Kaiserkrone, **538** note.
Ottoman court, learning in, 368–372.
Ottoman Turks, 324, 327, 329.
Oulmont, C., Le verger, 409; Poésie française, 457.
Overmann, A., Mathilde, 184.
Owen, J., Skeptics, 312.
Oxford English dictionary, **308**; history of music, 477.
Oxford school, the, 411, 426, 428; university of, 438, 443, 445.
Ozanam, A., Civilisation au cinquième siècle, 336; Civilisation chrétienne, 360; Dante, 482; Documents inédits, 346; Ecoles en Italie, 371; Oeuvres complètes, 360; Poètes Franciscains, 231.

Pace, B., I barbari e i byzantini in Sicilia, 189.
Pachomius, 117, 119.
Pädagogischer Jahresbericht, **58** note.
Paetow, L., Arts course, 412; Battle of the seven arts, 413.
Paganism, end of, 334, 335, 338.
Page, R., Alcuin, 367.
Pagel, J., Medizinische Kulturgeschichte, 434.
Paget, V., Euphorion, 312; Renaissance fancies, 312; Revelations of the monk of Evesham Abbey, 354.
Paguelle de Follenay, Abbé, Ecole episcopale de Notre-Dame-de-Paris, 441.
Pahncke, H., Bischöfe Italiens, 178.
Painting, renaissance, 305, 307, 313.
Palacky, F., Böhmen, **700** note; Formelbücher, 419; Husitenkriege, 274.
Palaeographical society: facsimiles, **230**.
Palaeography, **212–237**, 365, 366, 463, 464.
Palaeologi, 324, 325, 327, 330.
Palermo, F., San Tommaso, Aristotile, e Dante, 483.
Palestine pilgrims text society, 210.
Palgrave, F., Normandy, 198.
Palgrave, R., Dictionary of political economy, **115**.
Palhoriès, G., Saint Bonaventure, 409.
Palmarocchi, R., Montecassino, 200.
Palmer, E., Koran, 147.
Palmer, J., Pestilences, 249.
Palomes, A., Nurmanni, 199.
Palomes, L., S. Francesco, 229.
Palustre, L., L'architecture, 313.
Panfilo la Magliano, S. Francesco, 229.
Pannier, L., Lapidaires, 430.
Pantenius, T., Geschichte Russlands, **686**.
Pantheon, **85**.
Papacy, **439–454**, **956–961**; in sixth century, 121–125; and the Normans, 195, 200; curia of, 233, 236; finances of, 274; in later middle ages, 293–295; and humanism, 304, 311.
Papers of the American society of church history, **493**.
Paoli, C., Paleografia, **213**.
Papencordt, F., Rom, 347.
Paravicini, A., Senato romano, 347.
Pardo Bazán, San Francisco de Assis, 229.
Pargoire, J., L'église byzantine, 116.
Paris, in the middle ages, 385–391; libraries in, **4** note, 469; university of, 438, 440–442, 444.
Paris, G., Esquisse de la littérature française, 454; Histoire poétique de Charlemagne, 366; Légendes, 456; L'estoire de la Guerre sainte, 209; Littérature française, 454; Mélanges, 456; Poésie, 456.
Paris, G., and Langlois, E., Chrestomathie, 456–457.
Paris, Matthew, Chronica, 216, 328.
Parish priests, 234, 235, 237.
Parisot, R., Lorraine, 168.
Parker, E., Tartars, 158.
Parker, H., Seven liberal arts, 350.
Parker, J., Works of Dionysius, 354.
Parlement of Paris, 242, 246.
Parmentier, A., Album historique, **187**.
Parrot, A., Roger Bacon, 431.
Parsy, P., Saint Eloi, 361.
Pascal, C., Letteratura latina, 414.
Pascheu, J., Jacopone de Todi, 450.
Pastor, L., Päpste, 269.
Patarini, 180.
Pater, W., Renaissance, 312.
Patetta, F., Le ordalie, 164.
Patrick, Saint, 126, 128.
Patrologia orientalis, 121.
Patrologiae cursus completus, **953**.
Pattison, R., Leading figures, **927**.
Paul, H., Grundriss, **307**.

Paul the Deacon, Langobards, 116; Vita Gregorii, 125.
Paul of Thebes, 117.
Pauli, G., Alfred the Great, 341.
Paulinus of Nola, 334, 338.
Paulsen, F., Bildungswesen, 847; Universitäten, 444.
Paulus, N., Weltliche Berufe, 262.
Payne-Gallwey, R., Crossbow, 262.
Paz y Melia, A., España, 319.
Peace of God, 161–163.
Pears, E., Capture of Constantinople, 327; Fall of Constantinople, 206.
Peck, H., Classical philology, 785 note.
Peddie, R., British Museum reading room, 3 note.
Pedrick, G., Heraldry, 289.
Peiser, G., Investiturstreit, 183.
Pennell, E., French cathedrals, 474.
Pepin, 134, 136.
Pepper, C., Portugal, 321.
Percival, E., Foundation statutes of Merton, 443.
Pérez Pujol, E., España goda, 112.
Péries, G., Faculté de droit, 424.
Periodicals, 8–11, 147–186.
Periods of European history, 329.
Perkins, C., Spain, 632.
Pernice, A., L'imperatore Eraclio, 190.
Pérouse, G., Cardinal Louis Aleman, 274.
Perrens, F., Civilisation florentine, 311; Démocratie en France, 281; Etienne Marcel, 281; Florence, 299; Savonarola, 301.
Perret, P., Venise, 299.
Perrier, J., Scholastic philosophy, 407.
Perrot, E., Cas royaux, 246.
Perrot, M., Université de Paris et les mendiants, 441.
Perry, F., Saint Louis, 243.
Pertbech, M., Statuten des deutschen Ordens, 221.
Perthes, J., Geschichts-Atlas, 121 note.
Pertile, A., Diritto italiano, 605.
Pertz, G., Hausmeier, 136; Monumenta Germaniae historica, 978.
Perugi, G., Note tironiane, 227.
Perugia, 302.
Peruzzi, S., Storia del commercio, 254.
Peschek, Formelbücher, 419.
Peschel, O., Erdkunde, 434; Zeitalter der Entdeckungen, 258.
Pessard, G., Dictionnaire de Paris, 288.
Pestilence, 247, 253.
Peter I, the Cruel, 316, 317, 320.
Peter Lombard, 405, 406, 407, 408, 410; Sentences, 407, 410.
Peter of Maricourt, 426, 432.
Peter the Hermit, 201, 209.
Peter the Venerable, 392, 395.
Pétiet, R., Ordre de Saint-Lazare, 208.
Pétis de la Croix, F., Genghizcan, 329.
Petit, E., Ducs de Bourgogne, 168; Philippe le Hardi, 284.
Petit de Julleville, L., Jeanne d'Arc, 283; Langue et littérature française, 454.
Petit-Dutaillis, C., Louis VIII, 244.
Petit-Dutaillis, C., and Collier, P., Brétigny, 281.
Petit Larousse illustré, 90 note.
Petitot, C., and Mommerqué, M., Mémoires, 969.
Petrarch, F., 303, 306, 307, 310, 314, 315; Letters, 306, 307, 314; Love songs, 307; Secret, 307; Triumph, 307.
Petrie, W., Migrations, 111.
Petrovitch, G., Scander-beg, 329.
Petzoldt, J., Anzeiger für Bibliographie, 466; Bibliotheca Bibliographica, 2.
Peyrat, N., Albigeois, 403.
Pfahler, P., Bonifacius, 131.
Pfeifer, F., Scholastik und Naturwissenschaft, 408.
Pfeilschifter, G., Theodorich, 110.
Pfister, C., Alsace, 137; Baptême de Clovis, 136; Charlemagne, 142; Robert le Pieux, 168.
Pfleiderer, O., Das deutsche Nationalbewusstsein, 586.
Pfleiderer, R., Attribute der Heiligen, 357.
Pflugk-Harttung, J., Acta pontificum, 960; Great migrations, 110; Irish, 130; Konrad II, 172; Papstwahlen, 182; Weltgeschichte, 318.
Pfund, T., Hrotsvitha Gedicht, 171.
Philip II, of France, 202, 206, 242, 243, 244.
Philip II of Swabia, 212, 213, 218.
Philip III, of France, 242, 245.
Philip IV, 242, 245.
Philip V, 243, 246.
Philipp, H., Etymologiae des Isidorus, 352.
Philippe, J., Lucrèce, 367.
Philippi, A., Kunst der Renaissance, 312; Renaissance, 308.
Philippson, M., Heinrich der Löwe, 218.
Philipson, D., Jewries, 869.
Phillimore, J., St. Paulinus of Nola, 338.
Phillips, D., Libraries of Wales, 468.
Phillips, W., Poland, 695.
Philology, 304–309.
Philosophisches Jahrbuch, 56.

Philosophy, **56–57**, **181**, **822–835**, 405–410.
Phranza, T., Fall of Constantinople, 328.
Physicians, 435.
Physics, 433.
Piat, C., Aristotle, 397.
Picarda, E., Hanse Parisienne, 390.
Picavet, F., Abélard, 394; Editions de Roger Bacon, 432; Essais, 407; Gerbert, 176; Guillaume de Champeaux, 395; Moyen âge, 107; Oeuvres de Roger Bacon, 432; Esquisse des philosophies médiévales, **828**; Pierre de Maricourt, 432; Roscelin, 382; Science experimentale, 433; Thomas d'Aquin et Bacon, 431.
Pichler, A., Kirchliche Trennung, 177.
Pichon, R., Littérature latine, 337; Panégyristes, 337.
Pico della Mirandola, Ausgewählte Schriften, 314.
Picot, G., Documents relatifs aux états généraux, 246; Etats généraux, 246.
Picotti, G., Execrabilis, 274.
Pictorial works, **187–207**.
Pidoux, P., Jehan de Gand, 284.
Pierling, P., Russie, **690**.
Pierre d'Ailly, 267, 273, 275.
Pietschmann, R., Das Buch, 464.
Pigeonneau, H., Commerce de France, 255; Le cycle de la croisade, 209.
Pijoan y Soteras, J., Historia del arte, **473**.
Pijper, F., Slavery, 163.
Pilgrim life, 234, 238.
Pilgrimages to Jerusalem, 201, 204, 205.
Pillion, L., Sculpteurs français, 476.
Pingaud, L., Grégoire le Grand, 124.
Pinton, P., Donazioni ai papi, 142.
Piper, O., Abriss der Burgenkunde, 263; Burgenkunde, 263; Oesterreichische Burgen, 263.
Pirenne, H., Belgian democracy, **550**; Belgique, **549**; Bibliographie de Belgique, **45**; Constitutions urbaines, 251; Soulèvement de la Flandre, 281; Villes, 255.
Pirson, J., Latin de formules mérovingiennes, 360.
Pisa, 302; council of, 267, 273.
Pisko, J., Scanderbeg, 329.
Piton, C., Lombards, 255.
Piur, K., Briefwechsel des Cola di Rienzo, 302.
Pius II, 295, 296.
Pizzi, I, Letteratura araba, 378.
Plaine, B., Colonisation de l'Armorique, 363.
Plaine, F., L'an mille, 370.
Planché, J., Cyclopaedia of costume, **193**.
Plano Carpini, John of, 235, 240, 241.
Plath, K., Königspfalzen, 137; Nimwegen, 367.
Plattner, W., Freistaat, 290.
Playfair, R., Mediterranean, 107.
Pliny, Natural history, 351.
Ploetz, C., Epitome, **68**.
Plummer, C., Alfred the Great, 152; Bedae Opera historica, 363; Church of the early fathers, **418**; Churches in Britain, 128.
Plunket, I., Isabel of Castile, 319.
Pöschl, A., Bischofsgut, 237.
Poëte, M., L'enfance de Paris, 386; Répertoire des sources manuscrits de l'histoire de Paris, 391; Sources de l'histoire de Paris, 386.
Poetry, Latin, 446, 447, 450, 451.
Poggio Bracciolini, 303, 310.
Pohler, J., Bibliotheca historico-militaris, **61**.
Poland, **47**, **693–698**, **1004–1005**, 156, 323.
Poletti, G., Notariato a Bergamo, 419.
Political economy, **115–116**.
Political thought, 457–462; of Dante, 482.
Politics, bibliography of, **60**.
Pollak, J., Arabische Philosophie, 376.
Pollock, F., and Maitland, F., English law, 164.
Polyptique de l'abbé Irmion, 164.
Pometti, F., Decretum di Graziano, 425.
Pompili-Olivieri, L., Senato romano, 347.
Pomptow, M., Altrömische Vorstellungen vom Staat, 461.
Pons Boigues, F., Historiadores arabigo-españoles, 378.
Pontificum Romanorum vitae, **961** note.
Poole, A., Henry the Lion, 215.
Poole, L., Moors in Spain, 146.
Poole, R., Atlas, **122**; Exchequer, 436; Mediaeval thought, **815**; Papal chancery, **240** note; University archives, 445; Wycliffe, 269.
Poole, S., Coins, **297**; Egypt, 148; Mohammedan dynasties, 148; Saladin, 206; Speeches of Mohammed, 147.
Poole, S., Turkey, 327.
Poole's index, **8**.
Popes and Hohenstaufen, 211–221; lists of, 440–604 A.D., 122; 604–816 A.D., 127; 816–1054 A.D., 175; 1124–1276 A.D., 214; 1276–1503 A.D., 268.
Porée, A., Abbaye du Bec, 382.

Portalié, E., Abélard, 394.
Porter, A., Lombard architecture, 475; Medieval architecture, 472.
Porter, G., Biographical works in British Museum, 3 note.
Porter, W., Knights of Malta, 208.
Portolani, 248, 259.
Portugal, 636–642, 1001, 317, 318, 321.
Portugaliae monumenta historica, 1001.
Potter, A., Library of Harvard, 211.
Pottet, E., Sainte-Chapelle, 476.
Potthast, A., Bibliotheca historica: Wegweiser, 18; Regesta pontificum Romanorum, 957.
Pouchet, F., Sciences naturelles, 430.
Pound, R., Readings in Roman law, 425.
Poupardin, R., Bourgogne, 168; Chartes de Saint-Germain-des-Prés, 390; Provence, 168.
Pouzet, T., Succession de Charlemagne, 167.
Powicke, F., Loss of Normandy, 198.
Poznanski, S., Hebräische Grammatik, 416.
Pragmatic Sanctions of Bourges and Mainz, 268, 274.
Prague, 702 note.
Prantl, K., Logik, 833.
Preaching, 235, 238.
Preger, W., Mystik, 409; Waldesier, 403.
Preiswerk, E., Basler Konzil, 274.
Premonstratensians, 222.
Prentout, H., Caen, 198; Dudon de Saint-Quentin, 197; Normandie, 197.
Prescott, W., Ferdinand and Isabella, 319.
Presland, J., Belisarius, 115.
Preston, H., Kingdom of Jerusalem, 206.
Preuss, H., Antichrist, 355.
Prévost, G., L'église et campagnes, 237.
Primat of Orleans, 446, 449.
Primera crónica general, 322.
Printing, invention of, 305, 307, 462.
Prior, E., English mediaeval architecture, 474.
Priot, E., and Gardner, A., Figure sculpture, 477.
Priscian, Institutionum grammaticorum, 349, 352.
Probst, J., Raymond Lulle, 240.
Procopius, Works, 116.
Proctor, J., Triumph of the cross by Savonarola, 297.
Prologo, A., Andrea de Barulo, 424.
Prost, A., L'immunité, 162.
Protois, F., Pierre Lombard, 408.
Prou, M., Gaule mérovingienne, 135; Mélanges, dédiées à, 939; Paléographie, 214; Politique monétaire, 246; Urbain V, 282.
Provence, 165, 168.
Provisions, papal, 237.
Prussia, 595–596.
Prutz, E., Briefe Jeanne d'Arcs, 283; Falsche Jungfrau von Orléans, 284; Jungfrau von Orléans, 284.
Prutz, H., Friedrich I, 217; Heinrich der Löwe, 218; Jacques Coeur, 282; Kulturgeschichte der Kreuzzüge, 209; Preussische Geschichte, 596; Ritterorden, 207; Staatengeschichte des Abendlandes, 343; Templerherrenorden, 208.
Prutz, H., and Pflugk-Harttung, J., Geschichte des Mittelalters, 344.
Psellos, Michael, 380, 381, 396.
Pseudo-Isidorian Decretals, 173, 177.
Publications de la Société de l'histoire de France, 966; de la Société de l'histoire de Normandie, 966 note.
Publishers' weekly, 8.
Publikation des österreichischen historischen Instituts in Rom, 900.
Püschel, A., Deutsche Städte, 220.
Puschmann, T., Handbuch der Medizin, 434.
Putnam, G. H., Books and their makers, 464; Censorship, 464.
Putnam, G. P., Tabular views, 72.
Putnam, R., Alsace and Lorraine, 598; Charles the Bold, 279.
Putzger, F., Schulatlas, 121 note.
Puyol y Alonso, J., Hermandades, 321.

Quadro elementar . . . Portugal, 1001 note.
Quarterly journal of the Historical association, 185.
Quellen der Religionsgeschichte, 953 note; und Forschungen aus italienischen Archiven, 41; und Forschungen zur Geschichte des Dominikanerordens, 231; und Forschungen zur Sprach- und Kulturgeschichte, 731; und Untersuchungen zur Philogie des Mittelalters, 447; zur Geschichte der mittelalterlichen Geschichtschreibung, 460; zur Geschichte des Papsttums, 953 note; zur Schweizer Geschichte, 987.
Quellensammlung für den geschichtlichen Unterricht, 949 note; zur deutschen Geschichte, 980; zur Geschichte der deutschen Reichsverfassung, 985 note.
Quentin, H., Martyrologes, 356.

Quetif, J., and Echard, J., Scriptores ordinis praedicatorum, 232.
Qui êtes-vous? **95** note.
Quicherat, J., Aperçus nouveaux sur Jeanne d'Arc, 283; Histoire du costume, **199**; Procès de condemnation de Jeanne d'Arc, 285; Rodrique de Villandrano, 282.
Quintilian, Institutes, 335.
Quoidbach, T., Charlemagne, 142.

Rabanus Maurus, 368, 371.
Racinet, A., Costume, **191**.
Ragey, P., St. Anselme, 382.
Ragg, L., Dante, 480.
Ragnisco, Abelardo, 394.
Rahn, J., Psalterium aureum, 367.
Raine, J., Historians of the church of York, 367.
Rait, R., Life in the mediaeval university, **439**.
Ralston, W., Early Russian history, 158.
Rambaud, A., Civilisation française, **762**; Constantin Porphyrogénète, 190; Etudes sur l'histoire byzantine, **676**; Russia, **682**.
Ramin, H., Paris, 388.
Rand, E., Boethius' Consolatio, 343; Classics, 412; Johannes Scotus, 371.
Rand, E., and Wilkins, E., Dantis Alagherii operum latinorum concordantiae, 483.
Ranieri da Perugia, Ars notaria, 420.
Ranke, L., Preussische Geschichte, **595**; Savonarola, 301; Weltgeschichte, **316**.
Rapport . . . Archives nationales, **25** note.
Rashdall, H., Compendium of Bacon, 437; Universities, 439.
Rastoul, A., Grand schisme, 272; Templiers, 208.
Ratzel, F., Anthropogeographie, 107; History of mankind, 158.
Ratzinger, G., Franziskus, 230.
Rauers, F., Handelsstrassen, 257.
Raumer, F., Hohenstaufen, 216.
Raure, L., Figures franciscaines, 228.
Rauschen, G., Griechisch-römische Schulwesen, 337; Legende Karls des Grossen, 143.
Ravenna, 114.
Rawnsley, canon, Sacrum commercium, 225.
Raynaud, G., Bibliographie des chansonniers français, 457; Motets français, 477; Société en France, 264.
Raynerius of Perugia, 417, 420.
Reade, W., Moral system of Dante, 483; Political theory of Dante, 482.
Readers' guide, **9**.
Real academia de la historia, Madrid, **907**.
Reale academia dei Lincei, **906**.
Realencyklopädie für protestantische Theologie, **112**.
Reason and faith, 380, 382, 395.
Reber, F., Karolingische Palastbau, 367.
Recesse der Hansetage, 258.
Reckendorf, H., Mohammed, 148.
Records of civilization, **949**.
Recueil de chroniques de la Flandre, **977** note; de fac-similes à l'usage de l'Ecole des chartes, **231**; de travaux d'erudition dédiés à la mémoire de Julien Havet, **936**; de travaux . . . Université de Louvain, **893**; de voyages, 259; des historiens des croisades, 210; des historiens des Gaules et de la France, **967**; général des anciennes lois françaises, **975** note.
Redlich, O., Rudolf von Habsburg, 289.
Redtenbacher, R., Architectur, 313.
Reeb, W., Russische Geschichte, **689**.
Reeve, H., Petrarch, 306.
Reeves, W., Life of Columba, 131.
Reference books, **63–211**.
Reformation and renaissance, 309.
Regesta chartarum Italiae, **993**; diplomatica historiae Danicae, **1008** note; imperii, **985**; pontificum Romanorum, by P. Jaffé, **956**; pontificum Romanorum, by P. Kehr, **958**; pontificum Romanorum, by A. Potthast, **937**.
Regesten zur Geschichte der Juden, **1013**.
Régné, J., Juifs, **878**.
Reich, E., Select documents, **390**.
Reichert, B., Monumenta Fratres Praedicatorum, 232.
Reichling, D., Das Doctrinale, 448.
Reinach, S., Apollo, 266; Orpheus, **394**.
Reinaud, M., Sarrazins en France, 149.
Reinelt, P., Paulinus von Nola, 338.
Reinhold, P., Empörung König Heinrichs, 219.
Reinstadler, A., Elementa philosophiae scholasticae, 407.
Reisner, W., Einwohnerzahl deutscher Städte, 252.
Reitzenstein, J., Schiesspulver, 263.
Relics, 353, 356.
Religion and humanism, 304, 312.
Rémusat, C., Abélard, 394; Saint Anselme, 382.
Renaissance, 303–315.
Renaissance library, The, 309.

Renan, E., Averroès, 376; Etudes d'histoire religieuse, **419**; Influence of institutions, 339; L'Islamisme et la science, 374; Philippe le Bel, 245.
Repertoire bibliographique des revues françaises, 11 note; des travaux historiques, **305** note.
Repertorium diplomaticum regni Danici, **1008**.
Rerum Britannicarum medii aevi scriptores, **995**; Gallicarum et Francicarum scriptores, **967**; Italicarum scriptores, **988**.
Rettberg, F., Kirchengeschichte, 131.
Reumont, A., Geschichte der Stadt Rom, **442**; Lorenzo, 800.
Reusens, E., Eléments de paléographie, **215**.
Reuter, H., Augustinische Studien, 342; Geschichte Alexanders des Dritten, 217; Geschichte der religiösen Aufklärung, **817**.
Reutter, L., Médicaments, 435.
Reverdy, G., Childebert II et Byzance, 189.
Review of books, **87–88**.
Réville, A., Diable, 355.
Revista de archivos, **163**; italiana di filosofia neo-scholastica, 410; storica italiano, **161**.
Revival of learning, 303.
Revue critique d'histoire et de littérature, **159**; de l'art ancien et moderne, 478; de l'art chrétien, 478; de l'histoire des religions, **180**; de l'histoire littéraire de France, **171**; de synthèse historique, **158**; d'histoire ecclésiastique, **178**; des études historiques, **156** note; des questions historiques, **157**; historique, **156**; néo-scolastique, 409; Thomiste, 409.
Rey, G., Colonies franques, 206; Monuments des croisades, 209; Normans in Syria, 200.
Rey, R., Louis XI, 284.
Reynaud, L., Influence française en Allemagne, **765**.
Reynier, G., Vie universitaire dans l'ancienne Espagne, 444.
Rheims cathedral, 470, 476.
Rhetoric, 417.
Rhoen, C., Karolingische Pfalz zu Aachen, 367.
Riant, P., Catalogue de la bibliothèque de, 211; Exuviae, 211; Pélerinages, 205; Quatrième croisade, 207.
Riat, G., Paris, 388.
Ribeiro, J., Dissertaçoes sobre a historia de Portugal, **637**.
Ribera, J., Bibliófilos en la España musulmana, **378**; Enseñanza entre los Musulmanes, **378**; Justicia Mayor, 320.
Ricci, C., Studio bolognese, 442.
Richard de Bury, Philobiblon, 465.
Richard, E., German civilization, **771**.
Richard, J., Thierri d'Hireçon, 251.
Richard the Lion-Hearted, 202, 206.
Richardson, A., Doges of Venice, **998**.
Richardson, E., Medieval library, 465.
Richardson, J., Mystic bride, 272.
Richemont, F., Jeanne d'Arc, 283.
Richental, U., Conciliumbuch, 275.
Richomme, C., Université de Paris, 440.
Richter, A., Kirchenrecht, 424.
Richter, G., Annalen, 135.
Richter, G., and Kohl, H., Annalen der deutschen Geschichte, **571**.
Richter, O., Baseler Konzil, 274; Monumenta conciliorum, 275.
Richterich, J., Nikolaus I, 177.
Rickaby, J., Scholasticism, **835**.
Riemann, H., Musikgeschichte, 477.
Rienzo, Cola di, 293, 295, 297, 302.
Ries, J., Bernhard, 394.
Rieunier, A., Médecine, 435.
Riezler, S., Wiedersacher der Päpste, 289.
Rigaud, Registrum visitationum, 240.
Rigg, J., S. Anselm, 381.
Riguet, l'abbé, Saint Patrice, 128.
Riley, A., Athos, 120.
Rilliet, A., Confédération suisse, 291.
Rinaudo, D., Studi storici, 460.
Ringholz, O., Odilo von Cluny, 178.
Ripley, W., Races of Europe, 107.
Ritter, M., Christlich-mittelalterliche Geschichtschreibung, 458.
Rivoira, G., Lombardic architecture, 475.
Robert de Sorbon, De consciencia, 441.
Robert, G., Ecoles, 385.
Robert Guiscard, 195, 199.
Robert, U., Signes d'infamie, **872**.
Roberts, M., Catherine of Siena, 272.
Robertson, A., Regnum Dei, 340.
Robertson, J., Christian church, **424** note; History of free thought, **742**.
Robey, H., Justinian's Digest, 422.
Robinson, G., Life of Boniface, 129; Life of Saint Severimus, 335.
Robinson, J., History of western Europe, **377** note; Intellectual history, 335; Medieval and modern times, **377**; New history, 106; Petrarch's Confessions, 310; Readings, **391**.
Robinson, J., and Rolfe, H., Petrarch, **306**.

Robinson, P., Franciscan literature, 232; Life of Saint Clare, 225; R. Bacone, 431; Rule of St. Clare, 230; Writings of St. Francis, 225.
Rocafort, J., Paulin de Pella, 338.
Rochegude, marquis de, Guide à travers Paris, 387.
Rocholz, E., Tell, 291.
Rockhill, W., Journey of William Rubruk, 241.
Rockinger, L., Ars dictandi, 418; Briefsteller, 418; Briefsteller in Deutschland, 419; Formelbücher, 419.
Rocquain, F., Cour de Rome, 236; Nicolas Ier, 177; Papauté, **451**.
Rodd, R., Princes of Achaia, 207.
Rodenberg, A., Innocenz IV, 219.
Rodin, A., Cathédrales, 476.
Rodocanachi, E., Boccace, 310; Cola di Rienzo, 297; Monuments de Rome, 348; Renaissance, 309; Roman capitol, 348; Rome au XIVe siècle, 297; Sainte-Siège et les juifs, **870**.
Rodwell, J., Koran, 147.
Röhricht, R., Beiträge Kreuzzüge, 209; Fünfter Kreuzzug, 207; Geschichte des ersten Kreuzzuges, 205; Kinder Kreuzzug, 207; Königreich Jersualem, 206; Kreuzfahrt Friedrich II, 207; Kreuzpredigten, 208; Kreuzzüge, 205; Regesta regni Hierosolymitani, 210.
Röhricht, R., and Meisner, H., Deutsche Pilgerreisen, 210.
Römische Quartalschrift, **179**.
Roepell, R., Geschichte Polens, **696**.
Roersch, A., Humanisme, 309.
Rösler, A., Johannes Dominici, 273.
Rösler, M., Erziehung in England, 363.
Rössler, O., Geschichte Roms, 347.
Roger Bacon essays, 428.
Roger, M., L'enseignement, 192.
Rogers, J., Agriculture, 250; Economic interpretation, 251; Holland, **558**; Work and wages, 251.
Rohde, H., Sizilien, 301.
Rohner, A., Schöpfungsproblem, 408.
Rolf or Rollo, 151, 153.
Rolland, R., Michaelangelo, 314.
Rolls series, **995**.
Roloff, G., Fränkisches Heer, 137.
Roman, J., Manuel de sigillographie, **246**.
Roman Question, 139, 141.
Romances of chivalry, 260, 264.
Romania, 456.
Romanic review, 456.
Romanin, S., Venezia, 298.
Romanische Bibliothek, 456.
Romano, G., Dominazioni barbariche, 168.
Rome, **440–442**, **870–871**; transformation of, into a medieval city, 344–348; and the Mohammedans, 145, 146, 149; in later middle ages, 293, 295, 297; and humanism, 304, 311.
Romey, M., Espagne, **624** note.
Romuald, 174, 179.
Romulus Augustulus, 107.
Roncesvalles, 138.
Roos, W., Swedish part in viking expeditions, 153.
Rooseboom, M., Scottish staple, 256.
Root, R., Publication, 464.
Rope, I., Jeanne d'Arc, 283.
Ropp, G., Deutsche Kolonien, 220; Sozialpolitische Bewegungen, 251.
Roscelin, 380, 382.
Roscoe, W., Lorenzo, 300.
Rose, E., Cathedrals of northern France, 476; cathedrals of the Isle de France, 476.
Rose, V., Ars notaria, 419; Lücke im Diogenes Laertius, 399; Ptolomäus, 399.
Rosenberg, A., Kostüm, **196**.
Rosenmund, R., Diplomatik, **238** note.
Rosenstock, E., Könighaus in Deutschland, 171.
Rosières, R., Légende de l'an mil, 370; Société française, **764**.
Roskoff, G., Geschichte des Teufels, 355.
Ross, J., Medici, 297.
Ross, J., and Brichsen, N., Pisa, 302.
Rosseeuw, Saint Hilaire, Espagne, **624**.
Rossetti, D., Dante and his circle, 482; New life, 481.
Rossetti, M., Shadow of Dante, 480.
Rossi, G., Bullettino di archeologia cristiana, 348; Inscriptiones Christianae urbis Romae, 348; Roma sotterranea, 347.
Roswitha, 369, 370, 372; Gandersheims Gründung, 171.
Roth, F., Adolf I, 289.
Roth, K., Geschichte des byzantinischen Reiches, **653**.
Roth, P., Benefizialwesen, 162; Feudalität, 162.
Roth von Schreckenstein, K., Ritterwürde, 261.
Rousselot, P., Saint-Thomas, 408.
Rowbotham, J., Troubadours, 456.
Roy, J., L'an mille, 370; St. Nicholas Ier, 176.
Roy Gonsales de Clavijo, Tamerlane, 328.
Royal historical society: Transactions, **903**.

Royalty, **277**, **278**, **282**, **283**.
Roziére, E., Formules, 164.
Ruano-Prieto, D., Navarra, 322.
Rubió y Lluch, A., Cultura catalana, 322.
Rubruck, William, 235, 240; Journey, 241.
Rudolf I of Hapsburg, 286, 287, 289.
Rudwin, M., Der Teufel, 355.
Rudy, C., Cathedrals of northern Spain, 476.
Rück, K., Plinius im Mittelalter, 351.
Rückert, H. Kulturgeschichte, 360.
Rühl, F. Chronologie, **254**.
Rüling, J., Eschatologie des Islam, 376.
Ruess, K., Päpstliche Legaten, 237.
Ruffini, F., Religious liberty, **744**.
Ruge, S., Entdeckungen, **313** note (*see also* 249); Literature der Erdkunde, 258.
Rule, M., St. Anselm, 381.
Rumania, **708–709**, 158.
Rupert, 287, 291.
Ruprich-Robert, V., Architecture normande, 475.
Rural life, 247, 251.
Rurik, 151, 152, 154.
Ruskin, J., Modern painters, 312; Mornings in Florence, 312; Nature of Gothic, 472; Stones of Venice, 312.
Russia, **46**, **681–690**, **814**, 151, 152, 154, 155, 156, 186, 323, 326, 328.
Rutebeuf, 453; Song of the university of Paris, 440.
Rutherford, J., Troubadours, 456.
Rydberg, V., Magic, 354.
Rye, W., Records, **279**.
Rymer, T., Foedera, **996**.

Saavedra, E., Arabes en España, 149.
Sabatier, P., Floretum S. Francisci, 225; Franciscan essays, 224; Opuscules de critique historique, 232; St. Francis, 224.
Sabbadini, R., Ciceronianismo, 309; Guarini, 312; Letters of Guarino, 312; Scoperte dei codici, 309.
Sachs, J., Botanik, 434.
Sachse, W., Canossa, 183.
Sacken, E., Heraldik, **290**.
Sackur, E., Cluniacenser, 177.
Sacristán y Martinez, A., Municipalidades de Castilla, 321.
Sacrorum conciliorum collectio, **962**.
Sägmüller, D., Cardinäle, 236.
Sägmüller, J., Bischofswahl, 237; Kirchenrecht, 424.
Saga book of Viking society, 154.
Sagas, 150, 152, 154–155.
Saint-Léon, M., Corporations, 253.
Saint-Réne Taillandier, Scot Erigène, 372.
Sainte-Chapelle, **470**, **476**.
Saints, 353, 354, **356**, **358**, **360**; lives of the, **963**.
Saintsbury, G., **Flourishing of romance**, 456; History of criticism, **783**.
Saintyves, P. **Miracle**, **356**; **Reliques**, 356; Saints, **356**.
Saitschick, R., Renaissance, **309**.
Saladin, 202, 206.
Saladin, H., and Migeon, G., Art musulman, 378.
Salamanca, university of, 439, **444**.
Salcedo y Ruiz, A., Historia de España, 319.
Sale, G., Koran, 147.
Salembier, L., Deux conciles, 272; Grand schisme, 272; Petrus de Alliaco, 273; Pierre d'Ailly, 258; Vulgate, **416**.
Salerno, university of, **438**, **443**.
Salic law, 135.
Salimbene, Chronica, 458, 459.
Salter, E., Franciscan legends, 230; Legend of St. Francis, 225; Life of St. Francis, 225.
Saltet, L., Réordinations, 184; Université de Toulouse, 442.
Salvayre, G. Saint Bernard, 394.
Salvemini, G. Firenze, 300.
Salvini, J., Pragmatique Sanction, 274.
Salvioli, G., L'istruzione in Italia, 371; Sullo stato d'Italia, 111.
Salvisberg, P. Kriegsarchitektur, 263.
Salzer, E., Signorie, 297
Salzmann, L. English industries, 251; Mediaeval byways, **928**.
Sammlung ausgewählter kirchen- und dogmengeschichtlicher Quellenschriften, **955** note; gemeinverständlicher Vorträge, 197.
Samo, 156, 158.
Samuelson, J., Bulgaria, **711**.
Sander, P. Nürnberg, 252; Wirthschaftsentwicklung, 142.
Sanders, *s*, St. Jérôme, 337.
Sandys, J., Classical scholarship, **765**; Companion to Latin, **212** note; Revival of learning, 305; Roger Bacon, 431; Short history of classical scholarship, **785** note.
San Filippo, Storia di Sicilia, 301.
Santarem, F., Cosmographie, 258; Quadro elementar, **1001** note.
Santayana, G., Life of reason, **743**; Poetry and religion, 354; Reason in Religion, 354; Three philosophical poets: Lucretius, Dante, and Goethe, 480.

Saranzo, G., Bibliografia Veneziana, 303.
Sarrazin, A., Jeanne d'Arc, 284; Pierre Cauchon, 284.
Sarti, M., and Fattorini, M., De claris bononiensis professoribus, 442.
Sathas, C., Documents inédits, 330.
Sauerland, H., Johannes Dominici, 273.
Sauter, C., Avicennas Bearbeitung der Aristotelischen Metaphysik, 376; Peripatetische Philosophie, 376.
Sauvage, R., L'abbaye de Saint-Martin, 198.
Sauval, H., Ville de Paris, 388.
Savage, E., Libraries, 465; Old English libraries, 468.
Savigny, F., Geschichte des römischen Rechts, 422.
Savio, F., Gli antichi vescovi d'Italia, **464**.
Savonarola, 295, 296, 300, 302, 303; Prediche e scritta, 302; Triumph of the cross, 297.
Saxo Grammaticus, Danish history, 328.
Sayer, E., Banquet of Dante, 481.
Sayous, E., Hongrois, **705**.
Sbaralea, J., Bullarium Franciscanum, 232.
Scaduto, F., Due Sicilie, 301.
Scaduto, L., Stato e chiese, **456**.
Scaife, W., Florentine life, 311.
Scanderbeg, 325, 329.
Scandinavia, **814** note, **717–728**, 325, 327, 328, 330, 331.
Scarpetta, D., Giovanni I, 301.
Scartazzini, G., Companion to Dante, 480; Enciclopedia Dantesca, 483.
Schaarschmidt, C., Johannes Saresberiensis, 414.
Schack, A., Normannen, 199; Poesie der Araber, 378.
Schaefer, C., Kathedrale von Reims, 476.
Schäfer, D., Dänische Annalen, 330; Deutsche Geschichte, **569**; Hanse, 249; Hansestädte und König Waldemar, 330.
Schäfer, H., Portugal, **639**.
Schaff, D., Jan Hus, De ecclesia, 270; Jews, **857** note; John Huss, 269.
Schaff, P., Christian church, **398**; Creeds of Christendom, 179; Renaissance, 305.
Schaff, P., and Wace, H., Nicene and post-Nicene fathers, **954** note.
Schaff-Herzog encyclopedia, **106**.
Schalck de la Faverie, A., Normands, 154.
Schanz, M., Römische Literatur, 336.
Scharnagl, A., Investitur, 184.
Schaub, F., Caritas, 239; Sklaverei, 163; Zinswucher, 254.
Schaube, A., Galeerenfahrten, 256; Handelsgeschichte, 255.
Scheel, O., Augustin's Enchiridion, 343.
Scheer, J., Germania, **773**.
Scheffel, P., Verkehrsgeschichte der Alpen, 256.
Scheffer-Boichorst, P., Geschichte des XII und XIII Jahrhunderts, 217; Philipp II, 244.
Scheffler, W., Karl IV, 291; Portraits deutscher Kaiser, 288.
Scheler, M., Lexicographie, 448.
Scheler, S., Französische Geistlichkeit, 239.
Scheller, M., Zoll und Markt, 257.
Schemmel, F., Hochschule von Konstantinopel, 190.
Schenk, K., Leo III, 190.
Schepss, G., Conradi Hirsaugensis Dialogus, 416.
Scherer, H., Pädagogik, **840**.
Scherer, R., Kirchenrecht, 424.
Scherer, W., German literature, **804**.
Scheuffgen, F., Grosses Schisma, 272.
Schevill, F., San Galgano, 227; Siena, 253.
Schiemann, T., Russland, **313** note; Russland, Polen, und Livland, **685**.
Schilling, O., Naturrecht, 461; Staatslehre Augustinus, 342.
Schindele, S., Studienbetrieb, 432.
Schipa, M., Contese sociali napoletane, 301.
Schipper, I., Kapitalismus bei den Juden, **861**.
Schirmer, F., Friedrich II, 219.
Schirrmacher, F., Friedrich der Zweite, 219; Letzten Hohenstaufen, 219.
Schism between Greek and Latin churches, 173, 177; great western, 267, 272.
Schiwietz, S., Mönchtum, 120.
Schlager, P., Mongolenfahrten, 240.
Schleiden, M., Jews, **862**.
Schlockwerder, K., Gerbert, 372.
Schlosser, J., Schriftquellen, karolingischen Kunst, 368.
Schlumberger, G., Almugavares, 329; Amaury I, 206; Byzance et des croisades, 207; Deux chefs normands, 200; Fin de la domination franque, 206; L'épopée byzantine, 191; Nicéphore Phocas, 191; Principautés franques, 206; Renaud de Châtillon, 206.
Schlund, E., Petrus Peregrinus, 432.
Schmaus, J., Franken, 135.

Schmeidler, B., Briefwechsel, Abälard und Heloise, 393; Dux Venetiarum, 299; Geschichtschreiber, 462 Italienische Geschichtsschreiber, 460.
Schmeller, J Carmina burana, 450.
Schmelzer, H., Petrarca, 310.
Schmid, J., Die Osterfestberechnung, **269.**
Schmid, K., Erziehung, **836.**
Schmidlin, J., Otto von Freising, 461.
Schmidt, A., Sprache Einhards, 367.
Schmidt, C., Cathares, 403; Cusanus, 273; Livres, 468.
Schmidt, Ch., Supplément au Du Cange, 448.
Schmidt, F., Kolonisation, 220; Rubrucks Reise, 240.
Schmidt, G., and Riat, G., Paris, 388.
Schmidt, K., Enzyklopädie des Erziehungswesens, **118.**
Schmidt, L., Deutsche Stämme, 110; Germanischen Reiche, 111; Germanischen Völker, 1; Wandalen, 2.
Schmidt, L., Heilige Ivo, 381; Renaissance, 314.
Schmidt, O., Hugo von St.-Victor, 395.
Schmidt, R., Inquisitionsprozess, 404.
Schmitt, J., Chronicle of Morea, 211.
Schmitz, H., Bussbücher, 239
Schmitz, W Alcuins ars grammatica, 367; Chrodegangi Regula, 9.
Schmoller, G., Strassburgs Blüte, 252.
Schnaase, C., Bildende Künste, 474.
Schneid, M., Aristoteles, 398; Erdrundung, 434.
Schneider, A., Abendländische Spekulation, 398; Psychologie Alberts des Grossen, 408.
Schneider, F., Friedrich II, 219.
Schneider, F. R., Artillerie, 263.
Schneider, G., Florentiner Bankiers, 238.
Schneider, G. A., Theodor von Studion, 177.
Schneider, L., Roger Bako, 431.
Schneider, P., Kirchenrechtsquellen, 425.
Schneiderhan, J., Roswitha, 372.
Schnitzer, J., Berengar von Tours, 383; Savonarola, 301.
Schnürer, G., Bonifatius, 130; Franz von Assisi, 224; Kirchenstaat, 111.
Schober, G., Wahldekret von 1059, 178.
Schönfelder, A., Liturgische Bibliothek, 241.
Schönherr, F., Reichsfürstenstand, 292.
Schoenhof, J., Money and prices, 254.
Scholasticism, **826-835**, 397, 398, 405, 407, 409.
Scholz, H., Glaube und Unglaube, 342.
Scholz, R., Bonifaz VIII, 271; Defensor pacis, 292; Marsilius von Padua, 289; Publizistik, 271; Streitschriften, 289; Unbekannte Streitschriften, 292.
Schomburg, M., Dominikaner, 231.
Schools of illumination, 467.
Schott, A., Hispaniae illustratae, **997** note.
Schottmüller, K., Templerorden, 208.
Schrader, F., Atlas, **124.**
Schram, R., Kalendariographische Tafeln, **261.**
Schreiber, G., Kurie und Kloster, 227.
Schreuer, H., Die rechtlichen Grundlagen, **525** note.
Schröder, R., Rechtsgeschichte, **583.**
Schrörs, H., Friedrich I. 217; Hincmar, 177.
Schubert, E., Johann von Salisbury, 462.
Schubert, H., Church history, 411; Staat und Kirche im Reiche Chlodwigs, 135; Staat und Kirche von Constantin, 136.
Schüpferling, M., Templerherren Orden, 208.
Schuetz, A., Renaissance, 313.
Schütz, L., Thomas von Aquin, 415.
Schütz, O., Renaissance, 09.
Schulte, A., Adel, 262 Alpenwelt, 288; Handel und Verkehr, 256.
Schulte, J., Canonisches Recht, 424.
Schultess, K., Silvester II (Gerbert), 372.
Schultz, A., Deutsches Leben, 288; Höfische Leben, 261.
Schultze, V., Untergang des Heidentums, '338; Konstantinopel, **669.**
Schultze, W., Iroschottischen Mönche, 363.
Schulz, F., Hanse, 257
Schulz, M., Historische Methode, 461.
Schulze, E., Kolonisierung, 220.
Schumann, O., Päpstliche Legaten, 183.
Schupfer, F Diritto italiano, **609.**
Schwab, J., Gerson, 273.
Schwab, M., Bibliographie d'Aristote, 399.
Schwahn, W., Valla, 312.
Schwan, E., and Behrens, D., Grammatik, 455.
Schwartz, C., Robert Guiscard, 200.
Schwarz, Aragonische Hofordnungen, 320.
Schwarze, W., John Hus, 270.
Schwarzlose, K., Bilderstreit, 177.
Schweitzer, P., Skandinavische Literatur, **814** note.
Schwemer, R., Innocenz III, 218.

L., Eroberung Spaniens,

g, J., Speer und Schwert,

, M., Finlands historica,

d learning in France: a
, 4 note.
itory of natural, 739–748,
396, 399, 426–437.
architecture, 313.
oorish empire, 149.
ieff, P., Paganism and
ty, 338.
gena, 368, 369, 371.
rdinis minorum, 232; ordi-
icatorum, 232; rerum Dani-
dii aevi, 1007; rerum Ger-
n in usum scholarum, 979;
Polonicarum, 1004 note;
ecicarum medii aevi, 1019.
in occasione della nascita
ro Bacone, 431.
, Roman law, 424.
John Ruysbroeck, 409.
nedieval, 471, 476–477; re-
305, 307, 313.
246–247.
Ostmarkenpolitik, 220.
Geschichte beider Rechte,

I., Italy in thirteenth cen-
l; Short history of Italy,

Instruments astronomiques,

, Sciences mathématiques,

lasses rurales, 163; Louis

Columba, 130.
, Franz von Assisi, 233;
nd Wissen, 409; Grundriss
engeschichte, 476 note; Jo-
uns Scotus, 409; Lehrbuch
engeschichte, 476.
, English village community,

Untergang der antiken Welt,

, Hofmeisteramt, 292; Ka-
, 142.
V., Totentänze, 254.
toria del commercio, 255.
tudi Petrarcheschi, 310.
Lehre des Augustinus, 342.
C., Feudal regime, 161;
and modern civilization,
en âge, 357; Régime féodal,

Sela, G., Reyes Católicos, 322.
Select library of Nicene and post-Nicene fathers, 954 note.
Seligman, E., Medieval gilds, 258.
Seljuk Turks, 186, 191.
Sell, E., Qurán, 148.
Sell, K., Christentum, 430.
Sellar, A., Bede's Ecclesiastical history, 354.
Semeran, A., Condottieri, 298.
Semeria, G., Christianesimo di Boezio, 343.
Sémichon, E., Paix de dieu, 163.
Semper, H., Fortleben der Antike, 352.
Semple, E., Geographical environment, 107.
Sepet, M., Jeanne d'Arc, 283; Jeanne d'Arc et historiens, 282; Observations sur Jeanne d'Arc, 284; Saint Louis, 245.
Seppelt, F., Bettelorden an der Universität Paris, 441; Papsttum und Byzanz, 448; Wissenschaft und Franziskanerorden, 441; Wundmale des Franz von Assisi, 230.
Seraphim, E., Baltische Geschichte, 691 note; Liv- Esth- und Kurland, 691; Livland, 691 note.
Serbat, L., Tablettes à écrire, 468.
Serbia, 714–716, 324, 326, 329.
Serfdom, 161, 163.
Sergeant, The Franks, 135.
Sermons, Latin, and sermon stories, 446, 447, 450, 451.
Serrana, L., Fuentes para la historia de Castilla, 322.
Sertillanges, A., Thomas d'Aquin, 408.
Servatus Lupus, 368, 371.
Sesan, V., Kirche und Staat, 670.
Seton-Watson, R., Racial problems, 158.
Setterwall, K., Svensk hist. bibliografi, 48.
Severinus, Saint, 334, 335, 339.
Seyfarth, E., Fränkische Reichsversammlungen, 142.
Seeler, G., Heraldik, 288.
Sforza family, 294, 298.
Shackford, M., Legends and satires, 455.
Shadwell, C., Quaestio de aqua et terra by Dante, 482.
Shadwell, L., Enactments in Parliament concerning Oxford and Cambridge, 445.
Shahan, T., Middle ages, 929.
Shapiro, I., Koran, 148.
Shaw, H., Art of illumination, 466.
Shaw, W., Currency, 254; Knights of England, 284 note.
Sheldon, H., Christian church, 402.



Letters, 335. [illegible], 331
Siebeck, H., Aristoteles, 397
Bacon, 431.
Siena, 302.
Sieniawski, Otto von Bamberg,
Sievers, G., Ludwig der Bayer,
Siger de Brabant, 482.
Sigüenza, J., Saint Jerome, 337.
Silbernagl, J., Wilhelm von Occa
Silesia, **703**.
Silvestre, J., Paléographie univ
235.
Simeon Stylites, Saint, 117.
Simmonds, F., Tristam and Iseult
Simonsfeld, H., Jahrbücher, Fri
I. 217: Tedeschi in Venedig, 2
Simony, 175, 178.
Simpson, F., Architectural develop
474.
Simpson, W., St. Augustine, 342.
Simson, B., Jahrbücher, Ludwig,
Sinding, P., Scandinavian races, 71
Siragusa, G., Guglielmo I, 199.
Sirén, O., Leonardo da Vinci, 314.
Sismondi, J., Histoire des fran
599: Italian republics, **613**: Lit
ture of the south of Europe, **784**
Sitzungsberichte der k. Akad. der W
enschaften zu Berlin, **894**: der
bayerischen Akad. der Wissenschaf
zu München, **895**; der kaiserlich
Akad. der Wissenschaften zu Wi
901: der königlichen böhmisch
Gesellschaft der Wissenschaften
Prag, **902**.
Six ages of European [illegible]

Sources, collections of original, **949–1013.**
Southey, R., Chronicle of the Cid, 319.
Souttar, R., Mediaeval peoples, **351.**
Spain, **42**, **467–468**, **622–635**, **813**, **907**, **997–1000**; Visigoths in, 108, 110; Moors in, 145, 146, 149; Vikings in, 151, 153; Normans in, 195, 197; in the later middle ages, 315–323; universities in, 439, 444.
Spangenberg, H., Can Grande della Scala, 302; Lehntsaat zum Standestaat, 292.
Speakman, E., Mediaeval hospitals, 436.
Specht, F., Unterrichtswesen, **846.**
Speculum regale, 327, 331.
Spence, L., Dictionary of mediaeval romance, 457.
Spence-Jones, H., Early Christians in Rome, 348.
Sperry, E., Clerical celibacy, 239.
Sphragistics, **246–247**
Spiegel, N., Vagantenpoesie, 449
Spingarn, J., Literary criticism, 309.
Spirgatis, M., Personalverzeichniss, 466.
Spiritual Franciscans, 223, 230.
Spooner, S., Biographical dictionary of fine arts, 473.
Sports of nobles, 260, 264.
Sprenger, A., Mohammad, 148.
Springer, A., Kunstgeschichte, 473; Nachleben der Antike, 352; Paris, 386.
Spruner, K., and Menke, T., Handatlas, **125.**
Stadler, H., Albertus Magnus, 430.
Stained glass, 471, 477.
Staley, E., Guilds of Florence, 300.
Stanley, A., Eastern church, 190.
State and church, **455–459.**
Statuts et privilèges des universités françaises, 444.
Staudenmaier, F., Johannes Scotus, 372.
Stead, M., Manegold of Lautenbach, 184.
Steele, F., Hildegarde, 409.
Steele, R., Huon of Bordeaux, 455; Medieval lore, 429; Mirror of perfection, 225; Opera hactenus inedita of Bacon, 437; Renaud of Montauban, 455; Roger Bacon, 437; Story of Alexander, 455.
Steenstrup, J., Danmarks riges historie, **720**; Normannerne, 152.
Stefansson, J., Denmark and Sweden, **717**; Viking Club, 155.
Steffens, F., Lateinische Paläographie, **216**; Proben aus Handschriften, **216** note.
Steiger, A., Bernhard von Clairvaux, 394.
Stein, H., Bibliographie générale des cartulaires français, **24**; Manuel de bibliographie, **1.**
Stein, H., Architects des cathédrales, 475.
Stein, W., Hanse, 257; Kaufleute zu Brügge, 256.
Steinacher, H., Griechische Sprachkentnisse, 336.
Steinberg, A., Juden, **879.**
Steindorf, E., Jahrbücher, Heinrich III, 172.
Steinhausen, G., Archiv für Kulturgeschichte, **169**; Geschichte der deutschen Kultur, **768**; Geschichte des deutschen Briefes, **789**; Kaufmann, 257; Kulturgeschichte, **777**; Monographien zur Kulturgeschichte, **775**; Privatbriefe, **789** note.
Steinmann, E., Rom in der Renaissance, 311.
Steinschneider, M., Al Farabi, 377; Arabischen Uebersetzungen, 377; Geschichtsliteratur der Juden, **865**; Hebräischen Uebersetzungen, **864**; Speculum des Albertus, 430; Uebersetzungen aus dem Arabischen, 377.
Stengel, E., Den Kaiser macht das Heer, **595.**
Stenography, **228–229.**
Stephen, J., France, **544.**
Stephen, L., and Lee, S., Dictionary of national biography, **89.**
Stephens, H., Portugal, **638.**
Stephens, W., Hildebrand, 182.
Stephenson, A., Roman law, 422.
Stern, M., Stellung der Päpste zu den Juden, **881.**
Sternfeld, R., Ludwigs des Heiligen Kreuzzug, 207.
Stevenson, E., Marine world chart, 259.
Stevenson, F., Robert Grosseteste, 430.
Stevenson, J., Expulsion of the English, 285; Wars of English in France, 285.
Stevenson, W., Crusaders, 204.
Stewart, A., Buildings of Justinian, 116.
Stewart, B., Cyprus, 209.
Stewart, C., Mulfaz al Timury, 328.
Stewart, H., Boethius, 343.
Sticker, G., Die Pest, 254.
Stieda, W., Handelsstatistik, 259; Hansisch-Venezianische Handelsbeziehungen, 256.
Stieglitz, L., Marsilius von Padua, 289.
Stieve, F., Ezzelino von Romano, 219.

Stiglmayr, J., Kichenväter, 351; Pseudodionysischen Schriften, 357.
Stigmata of St. Francis, 223, 230.
Stillé, C., Studies, **930**.
Stobbe, O., Juden, **880**.
Stockmayer, G., Naturgefühl, 429–430.
Stockvis, A., Manuel de généalogie, **270**.
Stoddard, A., Francis of Assisi, 229.
Stoddard, E., Bertrand du Guesclin, 279.
Stöckl, A., Geschichte der Philosophie des Mittelalters, **834**.
Stölzle, R., Abaelards de unitate et trinitate divina, 395.
Stokes, E., Kingdom of ends, 342.
Stokes, G., Celtic church, 129; Greek in Ireland, 363.
Stokes, M., Three months in forests of France, 130; Six months in Apennines, 130.
Stone, J., Reformation and renaissance, 309.
Storia della letteratura italiana, **811**; politica d'Italia, **599**.
Storrs, R., Bernard of Clairvaux, 393.
Story of the nations, **321**.
Straccali, A., Goliardi, 449.
Strakosch-Grassmann, G., Mongolen, 328.
Strange, J., Dialogus miraculorum of Caesar of Heisterbach, 451.
Strasburg oaths, 165, 167.
Strathman, H., Askese, 356.
Straubinger, J., Kreuzzauffindungslegende, 209.
Strauss, R., Juden, **877**; Juden in Sizilien, 199.
Street, G., Gothic architecture in Spain, 476.
Streit, L., Vierte Kreuzzug, 206.
Strieder, J., Kapitalistische Organisationsformen, 250.
Strunz, F., Naturforschung, 427; Naturwissenschaften, 427.
Strutt, J., Sports, 264.
Strzygowski, J., Cimabue und Rom, 311; Orient oder Rom, 474.
Stuart, D., Stage decoration, 253.
Stubbs, W., Canon law in England, 423; Cyprus, 209; Constitutional history of England, **578** note; European history, **931**; Germany in the early middle ages, **576**; Germany in the later middle ages, **577**; Literature and learning at court of Henry II, 447; Select charters, **578** note; Seventeen lectures, **932**.
Studi e memorie, università de Bologna, 443.
Studi medievali, **173**.
Studien Benediktinerordens, 120; und Darstellungen aus dem Gebiete der Geschichte, **898**; und Mitteilungen der theologischen Fakultät zu Wien, **494**; zur Geschichte der Medizin, 434; zur Geschichte der Theologie, **495**.
Stübe, R., Tschinghizchan, 328.
Stuhlfath, W., Gregor I, 124.
Sturgis, R., Dictionary of architecture, 474; European architecture, 474.
Sturgis, R., and Frothingham, A., History of architecture, 474.
Sturgis, R., and Krehbiel, H., Bibliography of fine art, 478.
Stutz, U., Benefizialwesen, **163**; Rechtsgeschichte, 424.
Suchier, H., and Birch-Hirschfeld, A., Französische Literatur, 455.
Sudendorf, H., Berengarius Turonensis, 383.
Sudhoff, K., Anatomie, **435**; Astronomie, 433; Medizingeschichte, 434.
Suger, abbot of Saint-Denis, 241, 244, 457; Gesta Ludovici, 246; Oeuvres complètes, 246.
Sullivan, J., Marsiglio of Padua, 289
Surgeons, 435.
Suter, H., Araber, 375; Mathematik, 436; Mathematiker der Araber, 377.
Sutter, C., Buoncompagno, 418.
Sutterer, J., Letzte Römer, 343.
Sven Hedin, Central Asia, 158.
Svenskt diplomatarium, **1011**.
Swan, C., Gesta Romanorum, 447.
Sweden, **48**, **726–727**, **1010–1011**.
Sweetser, S., Theology and free inquiry, 392.
Swift, F., James the First, 318.
Switzerland, **43–44**, **987**, 286, 288, 290, 292.
Sybel, H., Entstehung des deutschen Königthums, 136; Geschichte des ersten Kreuzzuges, 205.
Sybel, H., and Sickel, T., Kaiserurkunden, **249**.
Sydow, O., Tancred, 200.
Sykes, M., Caliph's last heritage, 329.
Symbolism, 353; in Gothic art, 471, 472.
Symon, J., and Bensusan, S., Renaissance, 308.
Symonds, J., Boccaccio, 310; Dante, 480; Life of Cellini, 308; Renaissance, 306; Short history of the renaissance, 305; Wine, women and song, 447.
Symonds, M., and Gordon, L., Perugia, 302.
Synge, M., Book of discovery, 258.

the Normans, 200.
r Gaul, 357, 359.

onologique des diplômes, **975**

events and date, **68–76.**
ermania, 110.
Komnenen, 200.
and Thomas, G., Urkunden: byzantinische Beziehungen,

, Philosophie de l'art, 312.
., Aristotelismo, 398.
N., Lanfranc, 382; Saint , 224.
, 324, 328.
f Hauteville, sons of, 196.
, Briefe des Bonifatius, 129; esen, 238.
., Notitia monastica, 226.
., Inquisition, 403.
., Feudal times, 264.
., Droit canonique, 425.
., Etymologies d'Isidore, 359; ions de la France, 137.
F., Francesco d'Assisi, 229.
T., Gregorio Magno, 124.
erry, J., Didanderie, 477.
., Aristotle, 397.
., Antecedents of the quattro- 384: Classical heritage, 334; al mind, **756.**
. Transmission of books, 466.
V., History of education, **59**

periodicals for, **184–186.**
d, 286, 288, 291, 292.
202, 208, 243.
ader, G., and Marcotti, G., ni Acuto, 298.
k, B., and Scherer, W., Quell- Forschungen, **731.**
, A., St. Simeon Stylites, 118.
History of Europe, **380.**
., Financing the Hundred War, 280.
of St. Francis, 223, 230.
J., Etienne Marcel, 281; me croisade, 206.
Communes of Lombardy, 217.
., Persönlichkeitsschilderung,

V., Römische Literatur, 336.
., Lavettes, 164.
Knights, 202, 207, 213, 221.
, **354–357, 362–382, 405–28–432, 562–569, 629–631.**
riticism in thirteenth century, 13, 415.

Thallóczy, L., Geschichte Bosniens und Serbiens, **718.**
Thaner, F., Abälard, 394.
Thatcher, O., Adrian IV, 217; Latin sources of first crusade, 205.
Thatcher, O., and McNeal, E., Source book, **392.**
Thatcher, O., and Schwill, F., Europe in the middle age, **381.**
Thayer, J., Evidence, 161.
Thayer, W., Venice, 296.
Theiner, A., Codex diplomaticus, **960** note.
Theiner, A., and Miklosich, F., Monumenta spectanta ad uniorum ecclesiarum, 330.
Theloe, H., Ketzerverfolgungen, 403.
Theocracy, ideas about, 458, 459.
Theoderic of Freiburg, 427, 432.
Theodora, 113–115.
Theodore of Tarsus, 127, 361, 364.
Theodoric, the Ostrogoth, 108–111, 132.
Theodoricus de Niem, De schismate, 275.
Theodoricus Teutonicus, De iride, 433.
Theodulf, bishop of Orleans, **759** note, 364, 367.
Theologischer Jahresbericht, **55.**
Theology, and science, **739–748**; and philosophy, 405–410.
Theophano, 169, 172.
Théremin, W., Kirche und Staat, 272.
Thesaurus linguae latinae, **309**; novus anecdotorum, **951.**
Thévenin, M., Textes, 164.
Thibault, M., Louis XI, 284.
Thiel, J., Bernhard von Clairvaux, 394.
Thieme, U., and Becker, F., Lexikon der bildenden Künstler, 473.
Thierry, A., Attila, 159; Récits de l'histoire romaine, 110; Récits de temps mérovingiens, 137; Recueil du tiers état, 258; Tiers état, 251.
Thimme, W., Augustin, 342; Augustins geistige Entwickelung, 342.
Thirteenth century in history of culture, 384.
Thode, H., Franz von Assisi, 230; Michelangelo, 314.
Thoemes, N., Albertus Magnus, 408.
Thomas, E., Philobiblon of Richard de Bury, 465.
Thomas, G., Florence, 299.
Thomas, P., Morceaux choisis, 451.
Thomas à Kempis, De imitatione Christi, 409.
Thomas Aquinas, 405–410, 458, 462; Of God and his creatures, 407; Opera omnia, 410; Summa theologica, 407.

Thomas of Eccleston, De adventu Fratrum minorum, 226.
Thommen, R., Schmitz-Kallenberg, L., and Steinacker, H., Urkundenlehre, **240** note.
Thompson, A., English monasteries, 227; English parish church, 236; Military architecture, 262.
Thompson, E., Handbook of palaeography, **212**; Illuminated manuscripts, 466; Introduction to palaeography, **212**.
Thompson, J., Commerce of France, 255; German church, 220; Louis VI, 244; Missi dominici, 167; Reference studies, 210; Vergil, 351.
Thompson, S., Rose of the winds, 258.
Thompson, T., Aristotle, 399.
Thompson, V., Russia and Scandinavia, 154.
Thorbecke, A., Cassiodorus, 343; Heidelberg, 444.
Thorndike, L., Adelard of Bath, 428; Conceptions of magic, 430; Magic in intellectual history, 430; Medieval Europe, **381** note; Medieval thought, 266; Natural science, 427; Roger Bacon and experimental method, 428; Roger Bacon and gunpowder, 263; True Roger Bacon, 428.
Thousand and one nights tales, 379.
Thoyts, E., How to decipher old manuscripts, **212** note.
Thubert, E., Northmen, 153.
Thudichum, F., Papsttum, 270.
Thurot, C., De Alexandri de Villa Dei, 448; Doctrines grammaticales, 448; Université de Paris, 440.
Ticknor, G., Spanish literature, **813** note.
Tiede, C., Beziehungen Carls des Grossen zu Ost-Rom, 190.
Tilemann, H., Franziskus von Assisi, 229.
Timur, 324, 328; Mulfaz al Timury, 328.
Tinti, L., Odorico, 240.
Tiraboschi, G., Letteratura italiana, **811**.
Tironian notes, **226–229**.
Tixeront, J., History of dogmas, 473.
Tocco, F., Eresia, 402.
Toeche, T., Heinrich VI, 218.
Töply, R., Anatomie, 435.
Tomassetti, G., Campagna romana, 348.
Tomek, E., Reform der Klöster, 227.
Tomek, W., Johann Zizka, 274.
Tommasini, O., Roma, 347.
Toniolo, G., Potenza economica di Firenze, 256.
Tonna-Barthet, A., Juana de Arco, 283.
Torre, A. della, Accademia platonica, 311.
Torreánaz, conde de, Consejos del rey, 319.
Tosti, L., Bonifazio VIII, 271; Cencilio di Constanza, 273; San Benedetto, 120.
Totila, 113.
Touflet, J., Millénaire de la Normandie, 198.
Tougard, A., Hellénisme, 415.
Toulouse, manuscripts in, **236**; university of, 439, 442.
Toustain and Tassin, Nouveau traité de diplomatique, **238** note.
Tout, T., Empire and papacy, **329** note; Firearms, 263.
Toutey, E., Charles le Téméraire, 284.
Towns, 247, 251–253.
Toynbee, P., Dante Alighieri, 480; Dante studies, 480; Dictionary of Dante, 483.
Tozer, H., Church and eastern empire, 190; Franks in the Peloponnesus, 326; Greek-speaking population of Italy, 415.
Trail, F., Italian literature, 309.
Traill, H., Social England, **735**.
Transactions of the Royal historical society, **903**.
Transition period 400–600, types of the, 339–344.
Translations and reprints, **393**.
Translations from the Arabic, 373, 377; of Aristotle, 396, 399.
Trappists, 222, 227.
Traub, E., Kreuzzugsplan Heinrichs VI, 206.
Traube, L., Lateinische Philologie, 397; O Roma nobilis, 346; Perrona Scottorum, 363; Zur Paläographie, **218**.
Trench, R., Lectures on church history, **438**.
Trevelyan, G., Wycliffe, 273.
Troels-Lund, T., Himmelsbild, **821**.
Troeltsch, E., Augustin, 342; Renaissance, 308; Soziallehren, **816** note.
Trollope, T., Florence, 299.
Troubadours, 453, 454, 456.
Troya, C., Storia d'Italia, **814**; Studi agli Annali del Muratori, **812** note.
Truce of God, 161, 163.
Tschackert, P., Peter von Ailli, 273.
Türnau, D., Rabanus Maurus, 371.
Tuetey, A., Ecorcheurs, 282.
Tunison, S., Dramatic traditions, 253.
Turks, Seljuk, 186, 191; Ottoman, 324, 327, 329.
Turmel, J., St. Jérôme, 337.

Turner, S., Charlemagne, 140; Germanic constitution, 162.
Turner, W., History of philosophy, **822** note; Irish teachers, 366; John the Scot, 369.
Tuttle, H., Prussia, **596** note.
Twelfth and thirteenth centuries in history of culture, 384.
Two Sicilies, Kingdom of, 195, 197, 199, 212–213, 218–219.

Uebersicht der staatswissenschaftlichen Literatur, **60** note.
Ueberweg, F., History of philosophy, **822**.
Ughelli, F., Italia sacra, **464**.
Uhde, C., Baudenkmäler in Spanien, 379.
Uhlhorn, G., Conflict of Christianity, 338; Liebestätigkeit, 239.
Uhlirz, K., Jahrbücher, Otto II und Otto III, 172.
Underhill, E., Mysticism, 409.
Undset, I., Viking ship, 154.
Universities, **83–84**, 437–445.
Unsere religiösen Erzieher, **417**.
Unwin, G., Gilds, 253.
Urban II and the first crusade, 201, 204.
Urban life, 247, 251–253.
Urbat, R., Latein der Historia Francorum, 360.
Urquhart, W., Francesco Sforza, 298.
Usener, H., Anecdoton Holderi, 343.
Usher, A., Grain trade, 256.
Usinger, R., Deutsch-Dänische Geschichte, 330.
Uspenski, M., Russie et Byzance, 158.

Vacandard, E., Abélard, 394; Arnauld de Brescia, 218; Divorce de Louis le Jeune, 244; Etudes de critique et d'histoire religieuse, **420**; Inquisition, 401; L'idolatrie en Gaule, 359; St. Bernard, 393; Saint Bernard et la royauté, 244; Saint Ouen, 361; Scola du palais, 359.
Vacant, A., Morale à Nicomaque, 399.
Vacant, A., and Mangenot, E., Dictionnaire, **109**.
Valdarnini, A., Esperienza in Bacone, 432.
Valenti, J., Roger Bacon, 431.
Valentin, L., Saint Prosper, 336.
Valin, L., Duc de Normandie, 198.
Valla, Laurentius, 304, 312, 314; De falso Donatione Constantini, 314.
Vallance, A., Colleges of Oxford, 443.
Vallet de Viriville, A., Charles VII, 282.
Vallombrosians, 222.
Valois, N., Conseil du roi, 281; De arte scribendi epistolas, 419; France et le grand schisme, 272; Guillaume d'Auvergne, 441; Jean de Jandun, 289; Pape et le concile, 272; Pragmatique Sanction de Bourges, 274; Rythme des bulles pontificales, 419.
Vámbéry, A., Central Asia, 158; Hungary, **704**; Magyaren, 159; Türkenvolk, 330.
Van Cauwenbergh, P., Moines d'Egypte, 119.
Vandals, 108, 112, 113.
Van den Gheyn, J., Charles Martel, 136.
Van der Essen, L., Belgium, **555**; Vitae des saints, 360.
Vanderkindere, L., Artevelde, 281; Principautés belges, **552**.
Van der Linden, H., Histoire de Belgique, **551**; Normands, 153.
Van der Linden, H., and Obreen, H., Album historique, **205**.
Van Dyke, J., Painting, 307.
Van Dyke, P., Renascence, 269; Renascence portraits, 308.
Van Milligen, A., Byzantine Constantinople, **663**.
Van Weddingen, A., St. Anselme, 382.
Varangians, 151.
Varese, C., Genova, 299.
Vasari, G., Lives, 307.
Vast, H., Bessarion, 311; Prise de Constantinople, 327.
Vatican, **5** note.
Vaucelle, E., Collégiale de Martin de Tours, 361.
Vaughan, E., English universities, 443.
Vaughan, R., Mystics, 409; Thomas of Aquin, 406.
Vedel, W., Heldenleben, 262.
Venantius Fortunatus, 358, 360.
Venice, 294, 296, 298, 302, 303.
Venturi, A., Arte italiana, **473**; Pittura veneziana, 313.
Verdun, treaty of, 165.
Vere, G., Lives of Vasari, 307.
Vergangenheit und Gegenwart, **186**.
Vernet, Cathares, 403.
Veröffentlichungen aus dem kirchenhistorischen Seminar zu München, **496**.
Verona, 302.
Verri, P., Storia di Milano, 298.
Vespasiano da Bisticci, Uomini illustri, 314.
Vétault, A., Charlemagne, 142.
Veterum scriptorum et monumentorum amplissima collectio, **952**.

Vetusta monumenta, **202** note.
Viard, J., Philippe de Valois, 281.
Viard, P., Dime ecclésiastique, 238.
Vicini, Modena, 302.
Victorines, 222.
Vidal, J., Inquisition, 403; Jean Galland, 403.
Vidal de la Blache, P., Atlas, **126**; Géographie de la France, **146**.
Vidier, A., Repertoire methodique, **165** note.
Vieillard, C., Gilles de Corbeil, 435.
Vigener, F., Geschichtschreiber, 460.
Vigfusson, G., and Powell, F., Corpus poeticum, 154; Origines Islandicae, 154.
Vigna, L., San Anselmo, 382.
Vignati, C., Lega Lombarda, 217.
Vikings, 150–155.
Vildhaut, H., Quellenkunde, **31**.
Villani, G., Chroniche, 296.
Villari, P., Barbarian invasions, **615**; Florentine history, 296; Machiavelli, 295; Mediaeval Italy, **616**; Savonarola, 296; Storia politica d'Italia, **599**.
Villari, P., and Casanova, E., Prediche e scritta di Savonrola, 302.
Villehardouin, Chronicle of fourth crusade, 204, 458.
Villemain, A., Gregoire VII, 182.
Vincent, J., Municipal problems, 251.
Vincent, J. H., Historical research, **67**.
Vincent, M., Hildebrand, 182.
Vincent of Beauvais, 411, 412, 414, 426, 435, 458.
Vinogradoff, P., Roman law, 422.
Viollet, P., Droit public, **529**; Etablissements de Saint Louis, 246; Histoire du droit français, **529** note.
Viollet-le-Duc, E., Annals of a fortress, 261; Cité de Carcassonne, 262; Dictionnaire de l'architecture, 475; Dictionnaire du mobilier, 477; Discourses on architecture, 475; Military architecture, 262.
Visconti family, 293, 298.
Visigoths, 108, 110, 111, 126, 129, 132; kings of, 415–711 A.D., 109; faith, morals and learning of, 357–361.
Visitations, episcopal, 233, 240.
Vitruvius, Ten books of architecture, 307.
Vitry, P., and Brière, G., Sculpture française, 477.
Vittorino da Feltre, 304, 306.
Vitzthum, G., Pariser Miniaturmalerei, 466.
Vivell, C., Gregorianische Gesang, 125.
Vizantijskij vremenik, **175**.
Vizantijskoe obozriénie, **175** note.
Vladimir, the "Clovis" of Russia, **154**.
Vlasto, E., Derniers jours de Constantinople, 330.
Vögelin, J., Atlas der Schweiz, **288**.
Vogel, E., Armarius, **468**.
Vogel, M., and Gardthausen, V., Griechische Schreiber, 415.
Vogel, W., Normannen, 153; Seeschiffahrt, 256.
Vogl, S., Physik Roger Bacos, 431.
Vogt, A., Basile Ier, 190.
Vogt, F., and Koch, M., Deutsche Literatur, **800**.
Voigt, E., Lesebuch des Triviums, **448**.
Voigt, G., Enea Silvio, 296; Wiederbelebung, 806.
Voigt, H., Adalbert von Prag, 221; Brun von Querfurt, 221.
Voigt, J., Hildebrand, 183.
Volk, O., Kreuzzugsidee, 209.
Volpe, G., Comuni italiani, 217.
Volsunga saga, 152.
Vom Mittelalter zur Reformation, **750**.
Vorreformationsgeschichtliche Forschungen, 270.
Vossler, K., Frankreichs Kultur, **766**; Göttliche Komödie, 482.
Voyage littéraire de deux Benedictines, **799**.
Vuitry, A., Régime financier de la France, 245.
Vulliemin, L., Confédération suisse, 291.
Vulliéty, H., Suisse, 290.

Waal, Kirchengeschichtliche Festgabe, **421**.
Wace, H., and Piercy, W., Dictionary of Christian biography, **94** note.
Wadding, L., Annales Minorum, 228; Scriptores ordinis minorum, 232.
Wadstein, E., Eschatologische Ideengruppe, 356.
Wächter, A., Verfall des Griechentums, 327.
Waern, C., Mediaeval Sicily, 197.
Wagner, A., Normannen, 200.
Wagner, P., Messe, 239.
Wailly, N., Paléographie, **222**.
Waitz, G., Jahrbücher, Heinrich I, 168; Lehnwesen, 162; Vassalität, 162; Verfassungsgeschichte, **578**.
Walafrid Strabo, 368, 371, 372.
Waldensians, 400, 403.
Waliszewski, K., Littérature russe, **814** note.
Walker, W., Philip Augustus, 244.

Wallon, H., Jeanne d'Arc, 283; Saint Louis, 245.
Walser, E., Christentum und Antike, 312; Poggius, 310.
Walsh, J., Churchmen in science, 429; Education: how old the new, 435; Makers of medicine, 435; Popes and science, 429; Thirteenth, greatest of centuries, 385.
Walter, F., Fontes iuris ecclesiastici, 425.
Walter, J., Lexicon diplomaticum, **245**.
Walter, J. v., Franz von Assisi, 229; Robert von Abrissel, 227.
Walter of Henley, Husbandry, 258.
War, bibliography of, **61**.
Ward, C., Church vaulting, 475.
Warfare, 185, 189, 190, 209, 260–263.
Warner, G., Reproductions from illuminated manuscripts, 467.
Warr, C., Writings of St. Francis, 225.
Watson, C., Jerusalem, 209.
Watson, J., Christianity and idealism, 354.
Wattenbach, W., Deutschlands Geschichtsquellen, **29**; Germanisierung der Grenzmarken, 220; Iter Austriacum, or Briefsteller, 419; Palaeographie, **212** note; Profaner Rythmer, 449; Schriftwesen, 464.
Watterich, J., Pontificum Romanorum vitae, **961** note.
Watts, H., Christian recovery of Spain, 318.
Watts, W., Confessions of St. Augustine, 341.
Waxed tablets, 462, 468.
Way, A., Song of Roland, 454.
Webb, C., John of Salisbury, 412; Policraticus of John of Salisbury, 416; Scotus Erigena, 371; Studies in natural theology, **815** note.
Weber, G., Weltgeschichte, **317**.
Weber, M., Handelsgesellschaften, 255.
Wechssler, E., Frauendienst, 263.
Wedgewood, E., Memoirs of the lord of Joinville, 204.
Wegele, F., Historiographie, 106.
Weil, G., Chalifen, 148.
Weimann, K., Sittliche Begriffe in Gregor von Tours, 360.
Weingarten, H., Zeittafeln zur Kirchengeschichte, **416**.
Weinhold, K., Deutsche Frauen, 263.
Weise, G., Königtum und Bischofswahl, 178.
Weiss, A., Aeneas Sylvius, 296.
Weissenborn, F., Gerbert, 372.
Welch, A., Anselm, 381; Six mediaeval women, 370.
Wellhausen, J., Arabisches Reich, 147; Muhammed in Medina, 150.
Wells, C., Charlemagne, 140.
Welschinger, H., Strasbourg, 168.
Weltanschauung, edited by W. Dilthey, **818**.
Weltanschauung, medieval, **814–821**, 352–357.
Welter, J., Exempla, 451.
Weltgeschichte, by Helmolt, **315**; by J. v. Pflugk-Harttung, **316**.
Weltgeschichte in Karakterbildern, **327**.
Wenck, K., Bonifaz VIII, 271; Franz von Assisi, 229; Heilige Elizabeth, 272; Heinrich VII, 289; Konrad von Gelnhausen, 273.
Wendland, P., Hellenistisch-römische Kultur, 339.
Wendt, G., Germanisierung, 220.
Wenzel, 287, 291.
Wenzelburger, K., Niederlande, **559**.
Wergeland, A., Slavery, 163; Working classes, 250.
Wer ist's? **95** note.
Werken uitgegeven door het Historisch Genootschap te Utrecht, **977** note.
Werminghoff, A., Deutsche Orden, 221; Kirchenverfassung, **463**; Nationalkirchlich Bestrebungen, 274; Verfassungsgeschichte der deutschen Kirche, **463** note.
Werner, A., Bonifacius, 131.
Werner, K., Alcuin, 367; Beda, 364; Duns Scotus, 409; Gerbert, 372; Roger Baco, 432.
Wernle, P., Renaissance, 308.
Werunsky, E., Karl IV, 291.
Wessely, J., Ikonographie Gottes, 357.
Wessenberg, J., Kirchenversammlungen, 272.
West, A., Alcuin, 350.
West, G., Gothic architecture, 476.
West, W., Modern world, **382**.
Westcott, R., Dionysius the Areopagite, 354.
Westermann, W., Economic basis of decline of ancient culture, 334.
Westlake, N., Portraiture of St. Francis, 231.
Weston, J., Romance cycle, 143.
Westwood, J., Palaeographia sacra pictoria, 467.
Wetzer, H., and Welte, B., Kirchenlexikon, **113**.
Wheeler, C., Divine comedy, 481.
Wheeler, E., Women, **482** note.
Wherry, E., Qurán, 147.

Whetham, W. and C., Science and the human mind, **745**.
Whewell, W., Inductive sciences, 429.
Whishaw, B. and E., Arabic Spain, 379.
Whitcomb, M., Source book of the renaissance, 307.
White, A., Warfare of science with theology, **739**.
White, H., Vulgate, 416.
Whitwell, R., Italian bankers, 254.
Who's who, **95**.
Wiart, R., Precaria, 162.
Wickersheimer, E., Faculté de médecine, 435; Médecins, 435.
Wickhoff, F., Illuminierten Handschriften, 467.
Wicksteed, P., Chroniche of Villani, 296; Convivio of Dante, 481; Dante and Aquinas, 480; Early lives of Dante, 481; Paradiso, 481.
Wiclif, 267, 273.
Widukind, 138.
Wieck, H., Die Teufel, 355.
Wiedemann, E., Alchemie bei den Arabern, 377; Chimie bei den Arabern, 377; Geschichte des Kompasses, 377; Naturwissenschaften bei den Arabern, 377.
Wiel, A., House of Savoy, 302; Navy of Venice, 296; Verona, 302.
Wieschoff, J., Bettelorden, 228.
Wiesener, W., Kirche in Pommern, 221.
Wietersheim, E., Völkerwanderung, 111.
Wilde, A., Ecoles du palais, 359; Learning in Gaul, 359.
Wilken, F., Kreuzzüge, 205.
Wilkins, T., Niederländische Handel, 256.
Willard, J., English universities, 443.
Willemaers, Le Cid, 319.
Willert, P., Louis XI, 284.
Willett, H., Robert Grosseteste, 431.
William, E., Lombard towns, 218.
William of Champeaux, 391, 395.
William of Conches, **759** note.
William of Jumièges, Gesta Normannorum, 200.
William of Ockam, Works against the papacy, 292.
Williams, H., Christianity, 129.
Williams, H. S., Manuscripts, **234**.
Williamson, J., St. Boniface, 131.
Willibald, Life of Boniface, 129.
Willis, R. and Clark, J., Cambridge, 443.
Willmann, O., Didaktik, **837**.
Willson, T., Church in Norway, **725**.
Wilmans, R., Jahrbücher, Otto III, 172.
Wilser, L., Germanen, 111.
Wimmer, E., Adelheid, 172.
Wimmer, J., Pflanzenleben, 430.
Winckler, A., Gregor VII und die Normannen, 200.
Windelband, W., History of philosophy, **823**.
Winkelmann, E., Angelsachsen, 311 note; Friedrich II, 219; Philipp von Schwaben, 218.
Winkler, A., Hanse, 257.
Winter, F., Cistercienser, 227; Prämonstratenser, 227.
Winterfeld, P., Hrotsvithae opera, 372; Hrotsvits Stellung, 372.
Wirth, A., Geschichte Asiens, **686**.
Wisbaum, W., Gregor der Grosse, 124.
Wishart, A., Short history of monks, **480**.
Wislicenus, W., Chronologie, **264**; Der Kalender, **265**.
Wissenschaft und Bildung, **948**.
Witch persecutions, 401, 404.
Witelo, 427, 432.
Withington, E., Medicine, 434.
Witigis, 113.
Witte, H., Germanisation unseres Ostens, 220.
Witte, K., Essays on Dante, 480.
Wittmann, M., Avencebrol, 376; Thomas von Aquin, 408.
Witzel, P., De Fr. Rogero Bacon, 415.
Wölfflin, H., Klassische Kunst, 312.
Woermann, C., Geschichte der Kunst, 473.
Wörterbuch der Volkswirtschaft, **116** note.
Wolf, G., Studium der neueren Geschichte, **66**.
Wolf, R., Astronomie, 433.
Wolff, M., Valla, 312.
Wolff, O., Mongolen, 328.
Wolfsgruber, C., Augustinus, 342, Gregor der Grosse, 124.
Wolkan, R., Aeneas Sylvius, 314.
Wollschack, T., Gregor I, 124.
Woltmann, A. and Woermann, K., History of painting, 313.
Women of chivalry, 260, **268**.
Wood, A., Oxford, 443.
Woodcock, C., Saint Anthony of Padua, 228.
Woodhouse, F., Military orders, 208; Monasticism, **486**.
Woods, F., Heredity in royalty, **282**.
Woodward, E., Christianity and nationalism, 116.
Woodward, J. and Burnett, G., Heraldry, **286**.
Woodward, W., Studies in education, 306; Vittorino da Feltre, 306.

Wooley, R., Coronation rites, **339**.
Woolf, C., Bartolus of Sassoferrato, 461.
Workman, H., Christian thought, **757**; Hus, 273; Monastic ideal, **481**.
World histories, **313–327**.
World's epoch-makers, **325**.
Worms, Concordat of, 181, 184.
Worsaae, J., Pre-history of north, 153.
Wostry, W., Albrecht II, 291.
Wozasek, B., Norbert, 227.
Wrangham, D., Liturgical poetry, 451.
Wright, C., French literature, 454.
Wright, G., Asiatic Russia, 158.
Wright, R., Respublica Romana, 176.
Wright, T., Anglo-Latin satirical poets, 451; Archaeological subjects, **754**; De naturis rerum by Neckam, 427; De triumphis ecclesiae of John Garland, 451; Domestic manners, 264; Early travels in Palestine, 210; Homes of other days, 264; Latin poems of Walter Mapes, 450; Latin stories, 451; Popular science, 430; Vocabularies, 448.
Wright, T. and Halliwell, J., Reliquae antiquae, **933**.
Wroth, W., Byzantine coins, 191.
Wrottlesley, G., Crécy, 280.
Würschmidt, J., Regenbogen of Dietrich von Freiburg, 433.
Wüstenfeld, F., Academien der Araber, 378; Arabische Aerzte, 377; Geschichtschreiber der Araber, 378; Uebersetzungen arabischer Werke, 377.
Wulf, M., History of medieval philosophy, **827**; Philosophie scholastique dans les Pays-Bas, **825**; Scholasticism, 406.
Wulff, F., Pétrarque, 310.
Wurm, H., Albornoz, 297; Papstwahl, **453**.
Wyatt, M., Art of illuminating, 466.
Wylie, J., Council of Constance, 269.

Xénopol, A., Roumains, **709**.

Year-book of the scientific and learned societies of Great Britain, **209**.
Yellin, D. and Abrahams, I., Maimonides, **867**.
Young, G., East and west, **349**; Medici, 300.
Young, K., Passion play, 253.
Young, N., Rome, 345.
Yriarte, C., Florence, 300.
Yule, H., Book of Marco Polo, 249; Cathay, 241.
Yver, G., Commerce dans l'Italie, 256.

Zachariae von Lingenthal, K., Geschichte des griechisch-römischen Rechts, **672**.
Zangemeister, C., Orosius, 341.
Zappert, G., Virgil's Fortleben, 351.
Zarnke, F., Priester Johannes, 240.
Zechbauer, F., Inquisitionsverfahren, 404.
Zehetbauer, F., Kirchenrecht, 130.
Zeiller, J., Thomas d'Aquin, 462.
Zeitschrift der Savigny-Stiftung, **183**; für christliche Kunst, 478; für französische Sprache, 456; für Geschichte der Erziehung, **182**; für Kirchengeschichte, **176**; für Kirchenrecht, 425; für Kulturgeschichte, **189** note; für romanische Philologie, 456.
Zeller, B., L'histoire de France, **976**.
Zeller, E., Aristotle, 397.
Zeller, J., Frédéric II, 219; Histoire d'Allemagne, **572**; L'empire germanique et l'église, **572**; L'empire germanique sous les Hohenstaufen, 216–217; Otton le Grand, 171.
Zeller-Werdmüller, H., Burganlagen, 263.
Zeno, eastern emperor, 108.
Zerffi, G., Mathias Hunyady, 326.
Zeumer, K., Formulae Merovingici, 164; Goldene Bulle, 291; Heiliges römisches Reich, **502**; Quellensammlung, **985** note; Westgothische Gesetzgebung, 359.
Zeuthen, H., Mathematik, 436.
Zharski, E., Slawenkriege, 158.
Ziegelbauer, R., Historia rei literariae S. Benedicti, 468.
Ziegler, T., Pädagogik, **839**.
Zielinski, T., Antike und wir, 309; Cicero, 351.
Zimmer, H., Berührungen der Iren, 363; Celtic church, 129; Handelsverbindungen Westgalliens mit Irland, 363; Irische Heldensage, 363; Irish element, 128; Keltische Studien, 363.
Zimmer, Helen, Hansa towns, 249.
Zimmermann, A., Stenographie, **229**.
Zimmermann, H., Päpstliche Legation, 237.
Zimmermann, M., Giotto, 313.
Zingerle, J., Geographie, 259.
Zinkeisen, J., Osmanisches Reich, 329.
Zirbt, C., Bibliografie ceské historie, **47** note.
Ziska, John, 268, 274.
Zöckler, O., Askese und Mönchthum, **484**; Beziehungen zwischen Theologie und Naturwissenschaften, **748**.
Zöpf, L., Heiligenleben, **179**; Margaretha Ebner, 409.
Zoepffel, R., Papstwahlen, 236.

Zoology, 434.
Zorn, P., Staat und Kirche in Norwegen, 330.
Zotenberg, M., Visigoths et Arabes en France, 149.
Zumbini, B., Petrarca, 310.
Zur Geschichte der Costüme, 195.
Zwemer, S., Raymund Lull, 240.
Zwiedeneck-Südenhorst, H., Bibliothek deutscher Geschichte, 566; Venedig, 298.
Zycha, A., Ursprung der Städte in Böhmen, 700 note.

JUN 8 1918

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

SYLLABUS SERIES

1. Economics 1. Introduction to Economics. Topical Outline and References. 1905. [Revised, 1910.] Price, 50 cents.
3. Economics 8a. Money. Topics and References. 1906. Price, [illegible] cents.
4. Economics 43. History of Social Reform Movements. Topics and References. 1907. Price, 50 cents.
7. English 1A. Sections I–II. Narration and Description. Outline of the Course. 1908. Price, 10 cents.
11. Mathematics. Syllabus of Mathematics for Engineering Students. 1909. Price, 5 cents. [Revised, 1910.]
12. Anthropology 20. Outlines of Ethnology. 1909. Price, 10 cents.
13. Synopsis of the Families of Insects Inhabiting California. 1909. Price, 5 cents.
14. English 13A. Analysis of the Sources of Accented Vowels in Chaucer's Canterbury Tales, B 4011–4060. 1909. Price, 25 cents.
15. Syllabus of Historical Geography. 1908. Price, 25 cents.
16. Exercises for Economics 8. Theory and History of Banking. 1910. Price, 15 cents.
17. Economics 151M. Crime as a Social Problem. 1910. Revised, 1912. Price, 35 cents.
19. Laboratory Instructions in Physiological Chemistry. 1910. Price, 20 cents.
20. Synopsis of Lectures in Palaeontology 1. 1913. Revised August, 1916. Price, 50 cents.
21. Specimen Themes. English 1. 1911. Price, $1.
22. Laboratory Instructions in Experimental Biology. 1911. Price, 25 cents.
24. Hygiene. The Biological Interpretation of Public Health. 1911. Price, 25 cents.
25. Laboratory Instructions in Introductory Physiology. Revised 1916. Price, 25 cents.
27. Outline of Lectures in General Science 1. 1911. Price, 50 cents.
30. Outline of Lectures in General Science 2. 1912. Price, 45 cents.

SYLLABUS SERIES—CONTINUED

31. Economics 119. The Care of Dependents. 1912. Price, 80 cents.
34. Agricultural Education. Lesson Exercises. 1912. Price, 25 cents.
35. Home Economics. Recipes. 1912. Price, 25 cents.
39. Contemporary Political Questions. 1912. Price, 50 cents.
41A. Hydraulic Tables. 1913. Price, 15 cents.
45. Economics 113B. Labor Organizations in Great Britain and the United States. 1914. Price, 60 cents.
47. Agricultural Chemistry 1. Application of Chemistry to Agriculture. 1914. Price, 30 cents.
48. Economics 113A. Labor Problems. September, 19. Price, 35 cents.
51. Zoology 108. Embryology. Laboratory Exercises. 1914. Revised August, 1916. Price, 25 cents.
53. Money and Banking. Economics 108. Revised August 1916. Price 15 cents.
55. Economics 118. The Control of Poverty. 1914. Mimeographed edition, 1916. Price, 40 cents.
58. Education 14. Social Aspects of the Liquor Problem. 1915. Price, 75 cents.
59. Economics 101. Economic and Commercial History. Revised August, 1916. Price, 20 cents.
60. Shakespeare and Modern Prose and Nineteenth Century Prose. English S15, S117A and S126. 1915. Price, 10 cents.
61. Outline of Combined Courses in Pathology, including: Bacteriology and Protozoology. Infection and Immunity. Experimental Pathology. Histopathology and Morbid Anatomy. 1915. Price, $1.50.
64. Political Science 101. Theory of the State. 1915. (Reprinted August, 1917.) Price, 75 cents.
65. Anthropology 1B. Origin and Development of Civilization. 1916. Price, 15 cents.
66. English 2B. Analysis of Milton's "Paradise Lost." 1916. Price, 15 cents.
69. Physics 1A Lectures on Mechanics, Properties of Matter and Heat. August, 1916. Price, 30 cents.
70. Laboratory Directions in Physiology. August, 1916. Price, $1.
73. Problems for Economics 14A. August, 1916. Price, 20 cents.
74. Biochemistry. Revised, January, 1917. Price, $1.



SYLLABUS SERIES—CONTINUED

Physics 1B. January, 1917. Price, 50 cents.

Anthropology 1B. Origin and Development of Civilization. Revised January, 1917. Price, 25 cents.

77. Selected Readings in Anthropology. January, 1917. Price 35 cents.

78. Political Science 112. Legislative Failure and Reform. 1917. Price, 10 cents.

79. Elementary Mathematics for Prospective Teachers. April, 1917. Price, 10 cents.

80. Jurisprudence 18A. Problems in Commercial Law. June, 1917. Price, 35 cents.

81. Jurisprudence 18B. Problems in Commercial Law. June, 1917. Price, 30 cents.

82. English S130, 14, and S117A. Studies in American Literature and Biography, Modern Drama, and Shakespeare. June, 1917. Price, 25 cents.

83. Anthropology 1A. August, 1917. Price, 25 cents.

84. Notes on Crime and Delinquency. July, 1917. Price, 50 cents.

85. Topics for Lectures on the Greeks in Literature and Life. August, 1917. Price, 5 cents.

86. The Short Story, Medieval and Modern. August, 1917. Price, 35 cents.

87. Zoology 1A. General Zoology. August, 1917. Price, 60 cents.

88. Elements of Law Latin. Latin L. August, 1917. Price, $1.00.

89. Selected Readings in Anthropology. Series A. August, 1917. Price, 75 cents.

90. Guide to the Study of Medieval History. Louis John Paetow. xvi + 552 pages. November, 1917. Price, bound in cloth, $2.00.



